Preface

Welcome to *College Physics*, an OpenStax resource. This textbook was written to increase student access to high-quality learning materials, maintaining highest standards of academic rigor at little to no cost.

About OpenStax

OpenStax is a nonprofit based at Rice University, and it’s our mission to improve student access to education. Our first openly licensed college textbook was published in 2012, and our library has since scaled to over 20 books for college and AP courses used by hundreds of thousands of students. Our adaptive learning technology, designed to improve learning outcomes through personalized educational paths, is being piloted in college courses throughout the country. Through our partnerships with philanthropic foundations and our alliance with other educational resource organizations, OpenStax is breaking down the most common barriers to learning and empowering students and instructors to succeed.

About OpenStax Resources

Customization

College Physics is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International (CC BY) license, which means that you can distribute, remix, and build upon the content, as long as you provide attribution to OpenStax and its content contributors.

Because our books are openly licensed, you are free to use the entire book or pick and choose the sections that are most relevant to the needs of your course. Feel free to remix the content by assigning your students certain chapters and sections in your syllabus, in the order that you prefer. You can even provide a direct link in your syllabus to the sections in the web view of your book.

Instructors also have the option of creating a customized version of their OpenStax book. The custom version can be made available to students in low-cost print or digital form through their campus bookstore. Visit your book page on openstax.org for more information.

Errata

All OpenStax textbooks undergo a rigorous review process. However, like any professional-grade textbook, errors sometimes occur. Since our books are web based, we can make updates periodically when deemed pedagogically necessary. If you have a correction to suggest, submit it through the link on your book page on openstax.org. Subject matter experts review all errata suggestions. OpenStax is committed to remaining transparent about all updates, so you will also find a list of past errata changes on your book page on openstax.org.

Format

You can access this textbook for free in web view or PDF through openstax.org, and in low-cost print and iBooks editions.

About *College Physics*

College Physics meets standard scope and sequence requirements for a two-semester introductory algebra-based physics course. The text is grounded in real-world examples to help students grasp fundamental physics concepts. It requires knowledge of algebra and some trigonometry, but not calculus. *College Physics* includes learning objectives, concept questions, links to labs and simulations, and ample practice opportunities for traditional physics application problems.

Coverage and Scope

College Physics is organized such that topics are introduced conceptually with a steady progression to precise definitions and analytical applications. The analytical aspect (problem solving) is tied back to the conceptual before moving on to another topic. Each introductory chapter, for example, opens with an engaging photograph relevant to the subject of the chapter and interesting applications that are easy for most students to visualize.

Concepts and Calculations

The ability to calculate does not guarantee conceptual understanding. In order to unify conceptual, analytical, and calculation skills within the learning process, we have integrated Strategies and Discussions throughout the text.

Modern Perspective

The chapters on modern physics are more complete than many other texts on the market, with an entire chapter devoted to medical applications of nuclear physics and another to particle physics. The final chapter of the text, “Frontiers of Physics,” is devoted to the most exciting endeavors in physics. It ends with a module titled “Some Questions We Know to Ask.”

Key Features

Modularity

This textbook is organized as a collection of modules that can be rearranged and modified to suit the needs of a particular professor or class. That being said, modules often contain references to content in other modules, as most topics in physics cannot be discussed in isolation.

Learning Objectives

Every module begins with a set of learning objectives. These objectives are designed to guide the instructor in deciding what content to include or assign, and to guide the student with respect to what he or she can expect to learn. After completing the module and end-of-module exercises, students should be able to demonstrate mastery of the learning objectives.

Call-Outs

Key definitions, concepts, and equations are called out with a special design treatment. Call-outs are designed to catch readers' attention, to make it clear that a specific term, concept, or equation is particularly important, and to provide easy reference for a student reviewing content.

Key Terms

Key terms are in bold and are followed by a definition in context. Definitions of key terms are also listed in the Glossary, which appears at the end of the module.

Worked Examples

Worked examples have four distinct parts to promote both analytical and conceptual skills. Worked examples are introduced in words, always using some application that should be of interest. This is followed by a Strategy section that emphasizes the concepts involved and how solving the problem

relates to those concepts. This is followed by the mathematical Solution and Discussion.

Many worked examples contain multiple-part problems to help the students learn how to approach normal situations, in which problems tend to have multiple parts. Finally, worked examples employ the techniques of the problem-solving strategies so that students can see how those strategies succeed in practice as well as in theory.

Problem-Solving Strategies

Problem-solving strategies are first presented in a special section and subsequently appear at crucial points in the text where students can benefit most from them. Problem-solving strategies have a logical structure that is reinforced in the worked examples and supported in certain places by line drawings that illustrate various steps.

Misconception Alerts

Students come to physics with preconceptions from everyday experiences and from previous courses. Some of these preconceptions are misconceptions, and many are very common among students and the general public. Some are inadvertently picked up through misunderstandings of lectures and texts. The Misconception Alerts feature is designed to point these out and correct them explicitly.

Take-Home Investigations

Take Home Investigations provide the opportunity for students to apply or explore what they have learned with a hands-on activity.

Things Great and Small

In these special topic essays, macroscopic phenomena (such as air pressure) are explained with submicroscopic phenomena (such as atoms bouncing off walls). These essays support the modern perspective by describing aspects of modern physics before they are formally treated in later chapters. Connections are also made between apparently disparate phenomena.

Simulations

Where applicable, students are directed to the interactive PHeT physics simulations developed by the University of Colorado. There they can further explore the physics concepts they have learned about in the module.

Summary

Module summaries are thorough and functional and present all important definitions and equations. Students are able to find the definitions of all terms and symbols as well as their physical relationships. The structure of the summary makes plain the fundamental principles of the module or collection and serves as a useful study guide.

Glossary

At the end of every module or chapter is a Glossary containing definitions of all of the key terms in the module or chapter.

End-of-Module Problems

At the end of every chapter is a set of Conceptual Questions and/or skills-based Problems & Exercises. Conceptual Questions challenge students' ability to explain what they have learned conceptually, independent of the mathematical details. Problems & Exercises challenge students to apply both concepts and skills to solve mathematical physics problems.

In addition to traditional skills-based problems, there are three special types of end-of-module problems: Integrated Concept Problems, Unreasonable Results Problems, and Construct Your Own Problems. All of these problems are indicated with a subtitle preceding the problem.

Integrated Concept Problems

In Integrated Concept Problems, students are asked to apply what they have learned about two or more concepts to arrive at a solution to a problem. These problems require a higher level of thinking because, before solving a problem, students have to recognize the combination of strategies required to solve it.

Unreasonable Results

In Unreasonable Results Problems, students are challenged to not only apply concepts and skills to solve a problem, but also to analyze the answer with respect to how likely or realistic it really is. These problems contain a premise that produces an unreasonable answer and are designed to further emphasize that properly applied physics must describe nature accurately and is not simply the process of solving equations.

Construct Your Own Problem

These problems require students to construct the details of a problem, justify their starting assumptions, show specific steps in the problem's solution, and finally discuss the meaning of the result. These types of problems relate well to both conceptual and analytical aspects of physics, emphasizing that physics must describe nature. Often they involve an integration of topics from more than one chapter. Unlike other problems, solutions are not provided since there is no single correct answer. Instructors should feel free to direct students regarding the level and scope

of their considerations. Whether the problem is solved and described correctly will depend on initial assumptions.

Additional Resources

Student and Instructor Resources

We’ve compiled additional resources for both students and instructors, including Getting Started Guides, an instructor solution manual, and PowerPoint slides. Instructor resources require a verified instructor account, which can be requested on your openstax.org log-in. Take advantage of these resources to supplement your OpenStax book.

Partner Resources

OpenStax Partners are our allies in the mission to make high-quality learning materials affordable and accessible to students and instructors everywhere. Their tools integrate seamlessly with our OpenStax titles at a low cost. To access the partner resources for your text, visit your book page on openstax.org.

About the Authors

Senior Contributing Authors

Paul Peter Urone, Professor Emeritus at California State University, Sacramento
Roger Hinrichs, State University of New York, College at Oswego

Contributing Authors

Kim Dirks, University of Auckland
Manjula Sharma, University of Sydney

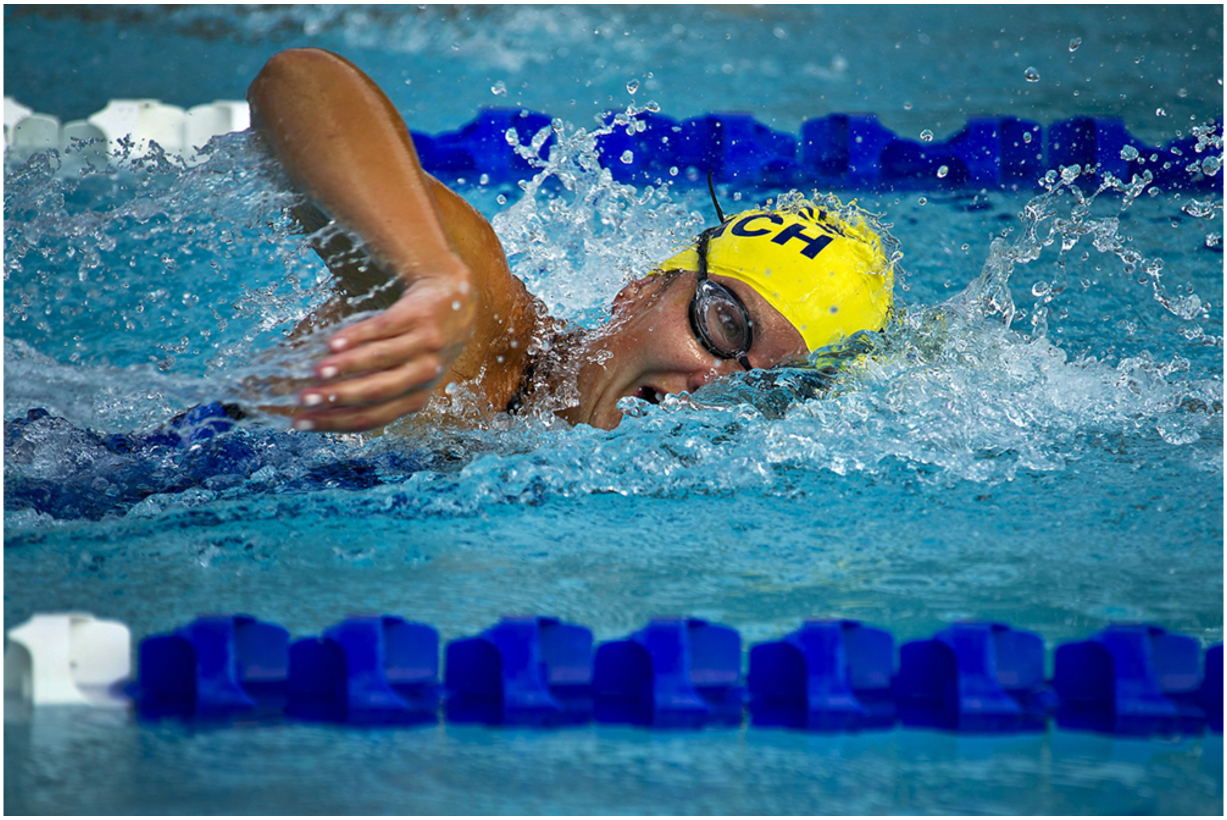
Reviewers

Matthew Adams, Crafton Hills College, San Bernardino Community College District
Erik Christensen, South Florida Community College
Douglas Ingram, Texas Christian University
Eric Kincanon, Gonzaga University
Lee H. LaRue, Paris Junior College
Chuck Pearson, Virginia Intermont College
Marc Sher, College of William and Mary
Ulrich Zurcher, Cleveland State University

Introduction to Fluid Statics

class="introduction"

The fluid essential to all life has a beauty of its own. It also helps support the weight of this swimmer. (credit: Terren, Wikimedia Commons)

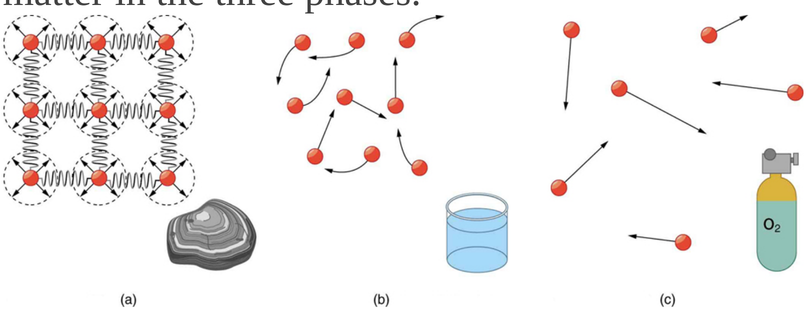


Much of what we value in life is fluid: a breath of fresh winter air; the hot blue flame in our gas cooker; the water we drink, swim in, and bathe in; the blood in our veins. What exactly is a fluid? Can we understand fluids with the laws already presented, or will new laws emerge from their study? The physical characteristics of static or stationary fluids and some of the laws that govern their behavior are the topics of this chapter. Fluid Dynamics and Its Biological and Medical Applications explores aspects of fluid flow.

What Is a Fluid?

- State the common phases of matter.
- Explain the physical characteristics of solids, liquids, and gases.
- Describe the arrangement of atoms in solids, liquids, and gases.

Matter most commonly exists as a solid, liquid, or gas; these states are known as the three common *phases of matter*. Solids have a definite shape and a specific volume, liquids have a definite volume but their shape changes depending on the container in which they are held, and gases have neither a definite shape nor a specific volume as their molecules move to fill the container in which they are held. (See [link].) Liquids and gases are considered to be fluids because they yield to shearing forces, whereas solids resist them. Note that the extent to which fluids yield to shearing forces (and hence flow easily and quickly) depends on a quantity called the viscosity which is discussed in detail in Viscosity and Laminar Flow; Poiseuille's Law. We can understand the phases of matter and what constitutes a fluid by considering the forces between atoms that make up matter in the three phases.



(a) Atoms in a solid always have the same neighbors, held near home by forces represented here by springs. These atoms are essentially in contact with one another. A rock is an example of a solid. This rock retains its shape because of the forces holding its atoms together. (b) Atoms in a liquid are also in close contact but can slide over one another. Forces between them strongly resist attempts to push them closer together and also hold them in close contact.

Water is an example of a liquid. Water can flow, but it also remains in an open container because of the forces between its atoms. (c) Atoms in a gas are separated by distances that are considerably larger than the size of the atoms themselves, and they move about freely. A gas must be held in a closed container to prevent it from moving out freely.

Atoms in *solids* are in close contact, with forces between them that allow the atoms to vibrate but not to change positions with neighboring atoms. (These forces can be thought of as springs that can be stretched or compressed, but not easily broken.) Thus a solid *resists* all types of stress. A solid cannot be easily deformed because the atoms that make up the solid are not able to move about freely. Solids also resist compression, because their atoms form part of a lattice structure in which the atoms are a relatively fixed distance apart. Under compression, the atoms would be forced into one another. Most of the examples we have studied so far have involved solid objects which deform very little when stressed.

Note:
Connections: Submicroscopic Explanation of Solids and Liquids
Atomic and molecular characteristics explain and underlie the macroscopic characteristics of solids and fluids. This submicroscopic explanation is one theme of this text and is highlighted in the Things Great and Small features in Conservation of Momentum. See, for example, microscopic description of collisions and momentum or microscopic description of pressure in a gas. This present section is devoted entirely to the submicroscopic explanation of solids and liquids.

In contrast, *liquids* deform easily when stressed and do not spring back to their original shape once the force is removed because the atoms are free to slide about and change neighbors—that is, they *flow* (so they are a type of fluid), with the molecules held together by their mutual attraction. When a liquid is placed in a container with no lid on, it remains in the container (providing the container has no holes below the surface of the liquid!). Because the atoms are closely packed, liquids, like solids, resist compression.

Atoms in *gases* are separated by distances that are large compared with the size of the atoms. The forces between gas atoms are therefore very weak, except when the atoms collide with one another. Gases thus not only flow (and are therefore considered to be fluids) but they are relatively easy to compress because there is much space and little force between atoms. When placed in an open container gases, unlike liquids, will escape. The major distinction is that gases are easily compressed, whereas liquids are not. We shall generally refer to both gases and liquids simply as **fluids**, and make a distinction between them only when they behave differently.

Note:
PhET Explorations: States of Matter—Basics
Heat, cool, and compress atoms and molecules and watch as they change between solid, liquid, and gas phases.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/states-of-matter-basics/latest/states-of-matter-basics_en.html

Section Summary

- A fluid is a state of matter that yields to sideways or shearing forces. Liquids and gases are both fluids. Fluid statics is the physics of stationary fluids.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What physical characteristic distinguishes a fluid from a solid?

Exercise:

Problem:

Which of the following substances are fluids at room temperature: air, mercury, water, glass?

Exercise:

Problem: Why are gases easier to compress than liquids and solids?

Exercise:

Problem: How do gases differ from liquids?

Glossary

fluids
: liquids and gases; a fluid is a state of matter that yields to shearing forces

Density

- Define density.
- Calculate the mass of a reservoir from its density.
- Compare and contrast the densities of various substances.

Which weighs more, a ton of feathers or a ton of bricks? This old riddle plays with the distinction between mass and density. A ton is a ton, of course; but bricks have much greater density than feathers, and so we are tempted to think of them as heavier. (See [link].)

Density, as you will see, is an important characteristic of substances. It is crucial, for example, in determining whether an object sinks or floats in a fluid. Density is the mass per unit volume of a substance or object. In equation form, density is defined as
Equation:

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V},$$

where the Greek letter ρ (rho) is the symbol for density, m is the mass, and V is the volume occupied by the substance.

Note:
Density
Density is mass per unit volume.
Equation:

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V},$$

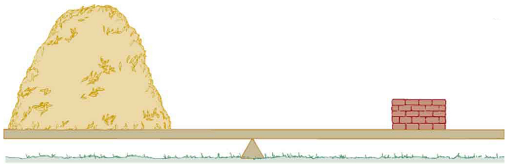
where ρ is the symbol for density, m is the mass, and V is the volume occupied by the substance.

In the riddle regarding the feathers and bricks, the masses are the same, but the volume occupied by the feathers is much greater, since their density is much lower. The SI unit of density is kg/m^3, representative values are given in [link]. The metric system was originally devised so that water would have a density of $1\ \text{g/cm}^3$, equivalent to $10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$. Thus the basic mass unit, the kilogram, was first devised to be the mass of 1000 mL of water, which has a volume of 1000 cm^3.

Substance	$\rho(10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3\text{ or g/mL})$	**Substance**	$\rho(10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3\text{ or g/mL})$	**Substance**	$\rho($
Solids		**Liquids**		**Gases**	
Aluminum	2.7	Water (4ºC)	1.000	Air	

Substance	$\rho(10^3\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}\ \text{or}\ \mathrm{g/mL})$	Substance	$\rho(10^3\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}\ \text{or}\ \mathrm{g/mL})$	Substance	$\rho($
Brass	8.44	Blood	1.05	Carbon dioxide	
Copper (average)	8.8	Sea water	1.025	Carbon monoxide	
Gold	19.32	Mercury	13.6	Hydrogen	
Iron or steel	7.8	Ethyl alcohol	0.79	Helium	
Lead	11.3	Petrol	0.68	Methane	
Polystyrene	0.10	Glycerin	1.26	Nitrogen	
Tungsten	19.30	Olive oil	0.92	Nitrous oxide	
Uranium	18.70			Oxygen	
Concrete	2.30–3.0			Steam $(100^o\ \mathrm{C})$	
Cork	0.24				
Glass, common (average)	2.6				
Granite	2.7				
Earth’s crust	3.3				
Wood	0.3–0.9				
Ice (0°C)	0.917				
Bone	1.7–2.0				

Densities of Various Substances



A ton of feathers and a ton of bricks have the same mass, but the feathers make a much bigger pile because they have a much lower density.

As you can see by examining [link], the density of an object may help identify its composition. The density of gold, for example, is about 2.5 times the density of iron, which is about 2.5 times the density of aluminum. Density also reveals something about the phase of the matter and its substructure. Notice that the densities of liquids and solids are roughly comparable, consistent with the fact that their atoms are in close contact. The densities of gases are much less than those of liquids and solids, because the atoms in gases are separated by large amounts of empty space.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment Sugar and Salt
A pile of sugar and a pile of salt look pretty similar, but which weighs more? If the volumes of both piles are the same, any difference in mass is due to their different densities (including the air space between crystals). Which do you think has the greater density? What values did you find? What method did you use to determine these values?

Example:
Calculating the Mass of a Reservoir From Its Volume
A reservoir has a surface area of $50.0\ \text{km}^2$ and an average depth of 40.0 m. What mass of water is held behind the dam? (See [link] for a view of a large reservoir—the Three Gorges Dam site on the Yangtze River in central China.)
Strategy
We can calculate the volume V of the reservoir from its dimensions, and find the density of water ρ in [link]. Then the mass m can be found from the definition of density
Equation:

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V}.$$

Solution
Solving equation $\rho = m/V$ for m gives $m = \rho V$.
The volume V of the reservoir is its surface area A times its average depth h:
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll} V & = & \text{Ah} = \left(50.0\ \text{km}^2\right)\left(40.0\ \text{m}\right) \\ & = & \left[\left(50.0\ \text{km}^2\right)\left(\frac{10^3\ \text{m}}{1\ \text{km}}\right)^2\right]\left(40.0\ \text{m}\right) = 2.00 \times 10^9\ \text{m}^3 \end{array}$$

The density of water ρ from [link] is $1.000 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$. Substituting V and ρ into the expression for mass gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} m &= \left(1.00 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}\right)\left(2.00 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{m^3}\right) \\ &= 2.00 \times 10^{12}\ \mathrm{kg}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
A large reservoir contains a very large mass of water. In this example, the weight of the water in the reservoir is $\mathrm{mg} = 1.96 \times 10^{13}\ \mathrm{N}$, where g is the acceleration due to the Earth's gravity (about $9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$). It is reasonable to ask whether the dam must supply a force equal to this tremendous weight. The answer is no. As we shall see in the following sections, the force the dam must supply can be much smaller than the weight of the water it holds back.

Three Gorges Dam in central China. When completed in 2008, this became the world's largest hydroelectric plant, generating power equivalent to that generated by 22 average-sized nuclear power plants. The concrete dam is 181 m high and 2.3 km across. The reservoir made by this dam is 660 km long. Over 1 million people were displaced by the creation of the reservoir. (credit: Le Grand Portage)

Section Summary

- Density is the mass per unit volume of a substance or object. In equation form, density is defined as
  Equation:

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V}.$$

- The SI unit of density is $\mathrm{kg/m^3}$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem: Approximately how does the density of air vary with altitude?

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example in which density is used to identify the substance composing an object. Would information in addition to average density be needed to identify the substances in an object composed of more than one material?

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows a glass of ice water filled to the brim. Will the water overflow when the ice melts? Explain your answer.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: Gold is sold by the troy ounce (31.103 g). What is the volume of 1 troy ounce of pure gold?

Solution:

$1.610\ \text{cm}^3$

Exercise:

Problem:

Mercury is commonly supplied in flasks containing 34.5 kg (about 76 lb). What is the volume in liters of this much mercury?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the mass of a deep breath of air having a volume of 2.00 L? (b) Discuss the effect taking such a breath has on your body’s volume and density.

Solution:

(a) 2.58 g

(b) The volume of your body increases by the volume of air you inhale. The average density of your body decreases when you take a deep breath, because the density of air is substantially smaller than the average density of the body before you took the deep breath.

Exercise:

Problem:

A straightforward method of finding the density of an object is to measure its mass and then measure its volume by submerging it in a graduated cylinder. What is the density of a 240-g rock that displaces $89.0\ \text{cm}^3$ of water? (Note that the accuracy and practical applications of this technique are more limited than a variety of others that are based on Archimedes' principle.)

Solution:

$2.70\ \text{g/cm}^3$

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a coffee mug with a circular cross section and vertical sides (uniform radius). What is its inside radius if it holds 375 g of coffee when filled to a depth of 7.50 cm? Assume coffee has the same density as water.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A rectangular gasoline tank can hold 50.0 kg of gasoline when full. What is the depth of the tank if it is 0.500-m wide by 0.900-m long? (b) Discuss whether this gas tank has a reasonable volume for a passenger car.

Solution:

(a) 0.163 m

(b) Equivalent to 19.4 gallons, which is reasonable

Exercise:

Problem:

A trash compactor can reduce the volume of its contents to 0.350 their original value. Neglecting the mass of air expelled, by what factor is the density of the rubbish increased?

Exercise:

Problem:

A 2.50-kg steel gasoline can holds 20.0 L of gasoline when full. What is the average density of the full gas can, taking into account the volume occupied by steel as well as by gasoline?

Solution:

$7.9 \times 10^2\ \text{kg/m}^3$

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the density of 18.0-karat gold that is a mixture of 18 parts gold, 5 parts silver, and 1 part copper? (These values are parts by mass, not volume.) Assume that this is a simple mixture having an average density equal to the weighted densities of its constituents.

Solution:

$15.6\ \text{g/cm}^3$

Exercise:

Problem:

There is relatively little empty space between atoms in solids and liquids, so that the average density of an atom is about the same as matter on a macroscopic scale—approximately 10^3 kg/m^3. The nucleus of an atom has a radius about 10^{-5} that of the atom and contains nearly all the mass of the entire atom. (a) What is the approximate density of a nucleus? (b) One remnant of a supernova, called a neutron star, can have the density of a nucleus. What would be the radius of a neutron star with a mass 10 times that of our Sun (the radius of the Sun is $7 \times 10^8 \text{ m}$)?

Solution:

(a) 10^{18} kg/m^3

(b) $2 \times 10^4 \text{ m}$

Glossary

density
: the mass per unit volume of a substance or object

Pressure

- Define pressure.
- Explain the relationship between pressure and force.
- Calculate force given pressure and area.

You have no doubt heard the word **pressure** being used in relation to blood (high or low blood pressure) and in relation to the weather (high- and low-pressure weather systems). These are only two of many examples of pressures in fluids. Pressure P is defined as

Equation:

$$P = \frac{F}{A}$$

where F is a force applied to an area A that is perpendicular to the force.

Note:

Pressure

Pressure is defined as the force divided by the area perpendicular to the force over which the force is applied, or

Equation:

$$P = \frac{F}{A}.$$

A given force can have a significantly different effect depending on the area over which the force is exerted, as shown in [link]. The SI unit for pressure is the *pascal*, where

Equation:

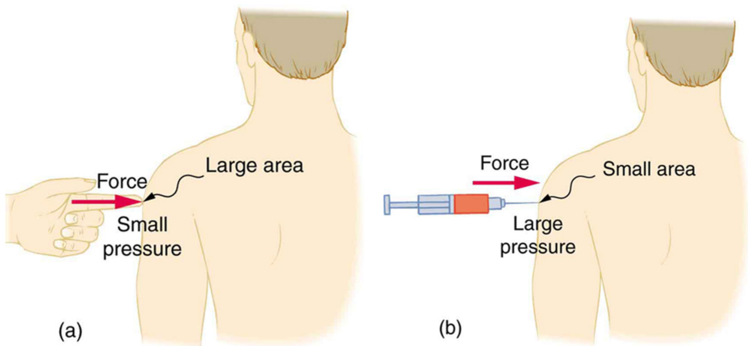
$$1\ \text{Pa} = 1\ \text{N/m}^2.$$

In addition to the pascal, there are many other units for pressure that are in common use. In meteorology, atmospheric pressure is often described in units of millibar (mb), where

Equation:

$$100\text{ mb} = 1 \times 10^4\text{ Pa}\ \ .$$

Pounds per square inch $\left(\text{lb/in}^2\text{ or psi}\right)$ is still sometimes used as a measure of tire pressure, and millimeters of mercury (mm Hg) is still often used in the measurement of blood pressure. Pressure is defined for all states of matter but is particularly important when discussing fluids.



(a) While the person being poked with the finger might be irritated, the force has little lasting effect. (b) In contrast, the same force applied to an area the size of the sharp end of a needle is great enough to break the skin.

Example:
Calculating Force Exerted by the Air: What Force Does a Pressure Exert?
An astronaut is working outside the International Space Station where the atmospheric pressure is essentially zero. The pressure gauge on her air tank

reads 6.90×10^6 Pa. What force does the air inside the tank exert on the flat end of the cylindrical tank, a disk 0.150 m in diameter?

Strategy

We can find the force exerted from the definition of pressure given in $P = \frac{F}{A}$, provided we can find the area A acted upon.

Solution

By rearranging the definition of pressure to solve for force, we see that

Equation:

$$F = \text{PA}.$$

Here, the pressure P is given, as is the area of the end of the cylinder A, given by $A = \pi r^2$. Thus,

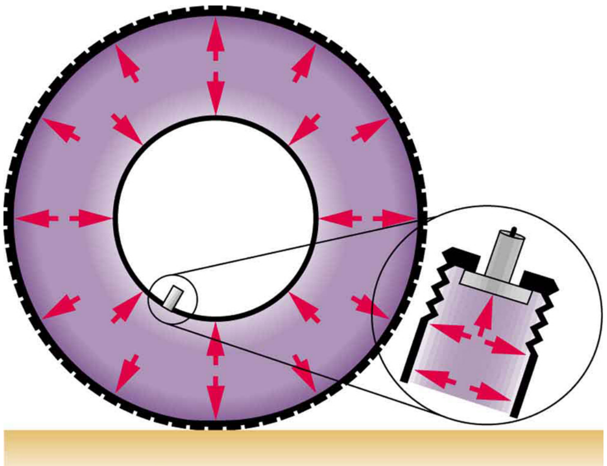
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} F &= \left(6.90 \times 10^6 \text{ N/m}^2\right)(3.14)(0.0750 \text{ m})^2 \\ &= 1.22 \times 10^5 \text{ N}. \end{aligned}$$

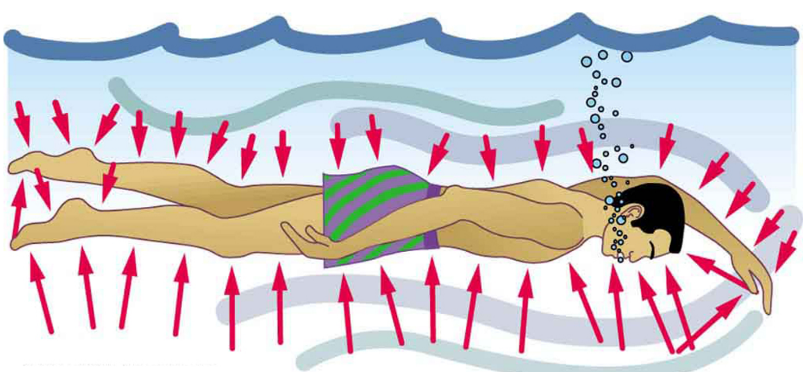
Discussion

Wow! No wonder the tank must be strong. Since we found $F = \text{PA}$, we see that the force exerted by a pressure is directly proportional to the area acted upon as well as the pressure itself.

The force exerted on the end of the tank is perpendicular to its inside surface. This direction is because the force is exerted by a static or stationary fluid. We have already seen that fluids cannot *withstand* shearing (sideways) forces; they cannot *exert* shearing forces, either. Fluid pressure has no direction, being a scalar quantity. The forces due to pressure have well-defined directions: they are always exerted perpendicular to any surface. (See the tire in [link], for example.) Finally, note that pressure is exerted on all surfaces. Swimmers, as well as the tire, feel pressure on all sides. (See [link].)



Pressure inside this tire exerts forces perpendicular to all surfaces it contacts. The arrows give representative directions and magnitudes of the forces exerted at various points. Note that static fluids do not exert shearing forces.



Pressure is exerted on all sides of this swimmer, since the water would flow into the space he occupies if he were not there. The arrows represent the directions and magnitudes of the forces exerted at various points on the swimmer. Note that the forces are larger underneath, due to greater depth,

giving a net upward or buoyant force that is balanced by the weight of the swimmer.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Gas Properties
Pump gas molecules to a box and see what happens as you change the volume, add or remove heat, change gravity, and more. Measure the temperature and pressure, and discover how the properties of the gas vary in relation to each other. Click to open media in new browser.

Section Summary

- Pressure is the force per unit perpendicular area over which the force is applied. In equation form, pressure is defined as
  Equation:
  $$P=\frac{F}{A}.$$
- The SI unit of pressure is pascal and $1\text{ Pa}=1\text{ N/m}^2$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How is pressure related to the sharpness of a knife and its ability to cut?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why does a dull hypodermic needle hurt more than a sharp one?

Exercise:

Problem:

The outward force on one end of an air tank was calculated in [link]. How is this force balanced? (The tank does not accelerate, so the force must be balanced.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Why is force exerted by static fluids always perpendicular to a surface?

Exercise:

Problem:

In a remote location near the North Pole, an iceberg floats in a lake. Next to the lake (assume it is not frozen) sits a comparably sized glacier sitting on land. If both chunks of ice should melt due to rising global temperatures (and the melted ice all goes into the lake), which ice chunk would give the greatest increase in the level of the lake water, if any?

Exercise:

Problem:

How do jogging on soft ground and wearing padded shoes reduce the pressures to which the feet and legs are subjected?

Exercise:

Problem:

Toe dancing (as in ballet) is much harder on toes than normal dancing or walking. Explain in terms of pressure.

Exercise:

Problem:

How do you convert pressure units like millimeters of mercury, centimeters of water, and inches of mercury into units like newtons per meter squared without resorting to a table of pressure conversion factors?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

As a woman walks, her entire weight is momentarily placed on one heel of her high-heeled shoes. Calculate the pressure exerted on the floor by the heel if it has an area of $1.50\ \text{cm}^2$ and the woman's mass is 55.0 kg. Express the pressure in Pa. (In the early days of commercial flight, women were not allowed to wear high-heeled shoes because aircraft floors were too thin to withstand such large pressures.)

Solution:

$3.59 \times 10^6\ \text{Pa}$; or $521\ \text{lb/in}^2$

Exercise:

Problem:

The pressure exerted by a phonograph needle on a record is surprisingly large. If the equivalent of 1.00 g is supported by a needle, the tip of which is a circle 0.200 mm in radius, what pressure is exerted on the record in N/m^2?

Exercise:

Problem:

Nail tips exert tremendous pressures when they are hit by hammers because they exert a large force over a small area. What force must be exerted on a nail with a circular tip of 1.00 mm diameter to create a pressure of $3.00 \times 10^9\ \text{N/m}^2$?(This high pressure is possible because the hammer striking the nail is brought to rest in such a short distance.)

Solution:

$2.36 \times 10^3\ \text{N}$

Glossary

pressure
: the force per unit area perpendicular to the force, over which the force acts

Variation of Pressure with Depth in a Fluid

- Define pressure in terms of weight.
- Explain the variation of pressure with depth in a fluid.
- Calculate density given pressure and altitude.

If your ears have ever popped on a plane flight or ached during a deep dive in a swimming pool, you have experienced the effect of depth on pressure in a fluid. At the Earth’s surface, the air pressure exerted on you is a result of the weight of air above you. This pressure is reduced as you climb up in altitude and the weight of air above you decreases. Under water, the pressure exerted on you increases with increasing depth. In this case, the pressure being exerted upon you is a result of both the weight of water above you *and* that of the atmosphere above you. You may notice an air pressure change on an elevator ride that transports you many stories, but you need only dive a meter or so below the surface of a pool to feel a pressure increase. The difference is that water is much denser than air, about 775 times as dense.

Consider the container in [link]. Its bottom supports the weight of the fluid in it. Let us calculate the pressure exerted on the bottom by the weight of the fluid. That **pressure** is the weight of the fluid mg divided by the area A supporting it (the area of the bottom of the container):
Equation:

$$P=\frac{\text{mg}}{A}.$$

We can find the mass of the fluid from its volume and density:
Equation:

$$m=\rho V.$$

The volume of the fluid V is related to the dimensions of the container. It is
Equation:

$$V=\text{Ah},$$

where A is the cross-sectional area and h is the depth. Combining the last two equations gives

Equation:

$$m = \rho \text{Ah}.$$

If we enter this into the expression for pressure, we obtain

Equation:

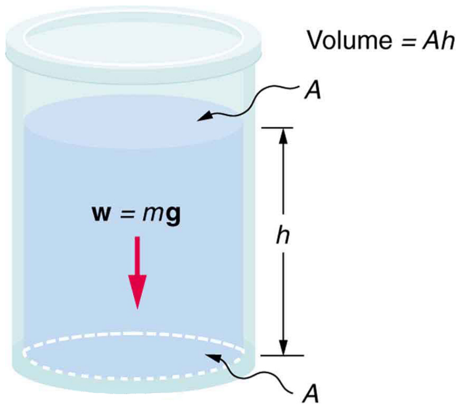
$$P = \frac{(\rho \text{Ah})g}{A}.$$

The area cancels, and rearranging the variables yields

Equation:

$$P = h\rho g.$$

This value is the *pressure due to the weight of a fluid*. The equation has general validity beyond the special conditions under which it is derived here. Even if the container were not there, the surrounding fluid would still exert this pressure, keeping the fluid static. Thus the equation $P = h\rho g$ represents the pressure due to the weight of any fluid of *average density* ρ at any depth h below its surface. For liquids, which are nearly incompressible, this equation holds to great depths. For gases, which are quite compressible, one can apply this equation as long as the density changes are small over the depth considered. [link] illustrates this situation.



The bottom of this container supports the entire weight of the fluid in it. The vertical sides cannot exert an upward force on the fluid (since it cannot withstand a shearing force), and so the bottom must support it all.

Example:
Calculating the Average Pressure and Force Exerted: What Force Must a Dam Withstand?
In [link], we calculated the mass of water in a large reservoir. We will now consider the pressure and force acting on the dam retaining water. (See [link].) The dam is 500 m wide, and the water is 80.0 m deep at the dam. (a) What is the average pressure on the dam due to the water? (b) Calculate the force exerted against the dam and compare it with the weight of water in the dam (previously found to be 1.96×10^{13} N).
Strategy for (a)

The average pressure $\overline{P}$ due to the weight of the water is the pressure at the average depth $\overline{h}$ of 40.0 m, since pressure increases linearly with depth.

Solution for (a)

The average pressure due to the weight of a fluid is

Equation:

$$\overline{P} = \overline{h}\rho g.$$

Entering the density of water from [link] and taking $\overline{h}$ to be the average depth of 40.0 m, we obtain

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{P} &= (40.0\text{ m})\left(10^3\ \frac{\text{kg}}{\text{m}^3}\right)\left(9.80\ \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2}\right)\\ &= 3.92\times10^5\ \frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2} = 392\text{ kPa}.\end{aligned}$$

Strategy for (b)

The force exerted on the dam by the water is the average pressure times the area of contact:

Equation:

$$F = \overline{P}A.$$

Solution for (b)

We have already found the value for $\overline{P}$. The area of the dam is $A = 80.0\text{ m}\times500\text{ m} = 4.00\times10^4\text{ m}^2$, so that

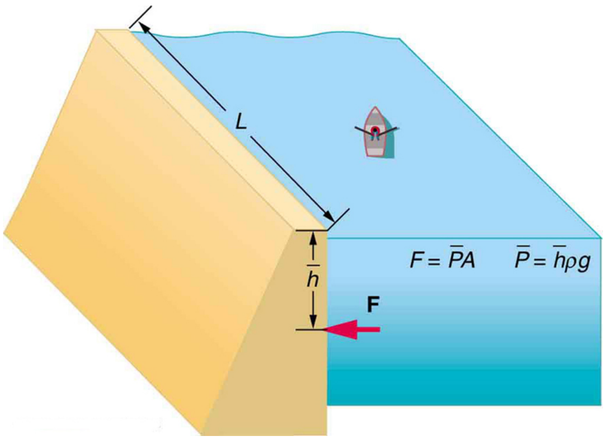
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}F &= (3.92\times10^5\text{ N/m}^2)(4.00\times10^4\text{ m}^2)\\ &= 1.57\times10^{10}\text{ N}.\end{aligned}$$

Discussion

Although this force seems large, it is small compared with the 1.96×10^{13} N weight of the water in the reservoir—in fact, it is only 0.0800% of the weight. Note that the pressure found in part (a) is completely independent of the width and length of the lake—it depends only on its average depth at the dam. Thus the force depends only on the

water's average depth and the dimensions of the dam, *not* on the horizontal extent of the reservoir. In the diagram, the thickness of the dam increases with depth to balance the increasing force due to the increasing pressure.epth to balance the increasing force due to the increasing pressure.



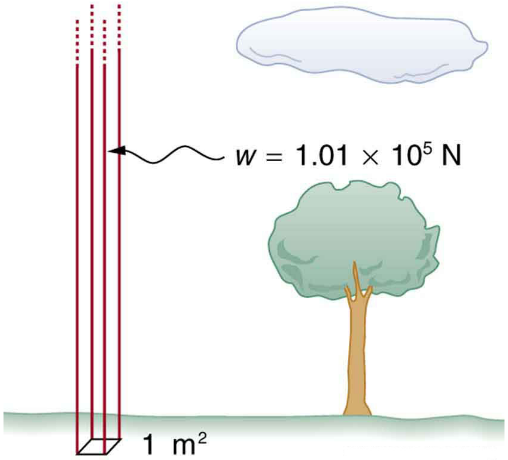
The dam must withstand the force exerted against it by the water it retains. This force is small compared with the weight of the water behind the dam.

Atmospheric pressure is another example of pressure due to the weight of a fluid, in this case due to the weight of *air* above a given height. The atmospheric pressure at the Earth's surface varies a little due to the large-scale flow of the atmosphere induced by the Earth's rotation (this creates weather "highs" and "lows"). However, the average pressure at sea level is given by the *standard atmospheric pressure* P_{atm}, measured to be

Equation:

$$1\text{ atmosphere (atm)} = P_{\text{atm}} = 1.01 \times 10^5\text{ N/m}^2 = 101\text{ kPa}.$$

This relationship means that, on average, at sea level, a column of air above 1.00 m^2 of the Earth's surface has a weight of $1.01 \times 10^5 \text{ N}$, equivalent to 1 atm. (See [link].)



Atmospheric pressure at sea level averages $1.01 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa}$ (equivalent to 1 atm), since the column of air over this 1 m^2, extending to the top of the atmosphere, weighs $1.01 \times 10^5 \text{ N}$.

Example:

Calculating Average Density: How Dense Is the Air?

Calculate the average density of the atmosphere, given that it extends to an altitude of 120 km. Compare this density with that of air listed in [link].

Strategy

If we solve $P = h\rho g$ for density, we see that

Equation:

$$\bar{\rho} = \frac{P}{\text{hg}}.$$

We then take P to be atmospheric pressure, h is given, and g is known, and so we can use this to calculate $\bar{\rho}$.
Solution
Entering known values into the expression for $\bar{\rho}$ yields
Equation:

$$\bar{\rho} = \frac{1.01 \times 10^5 \text{ N/m}^2}{(120 \times 10^3 \text{ m})(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)} = 8.59 \times 10^{-2} \text{ kg/m}^3.$$

Discussion
This result is the average density of air between the Earth's surface and the top of the Earth's atmosphere, which essentially ends at 120 km. The density of air at sea level is given in [link] as 1.29 kg/m^3 —about 15 times its average value. Because air is so compressible, its density has its highest value near the Earth's surface and declines rapidly with altitude.

Example:
Calculating Depth Below the Surface of Water: What Depth of Water Creates the Same Pressure as the Entire Atmosphere?
Calculate the depth below the surface of water at which the pressure due to the weight of the water equals 1.00 atm.
Strategy
We begin by solving the equation $P = h\rho g$ for depth h:
Equation:

$$h = \frac{P}{\rho g}.$$

Then we take P to be 1.00 atm and ρ to be the density of the water that creates the pressure.
Solution
Entering the known values into the expression for h gives

Equation:

$$h = \frac{1.01 \times 10^5 \text{ N/m}^2}{(1.00 \times 10^3 \text{ kg/m}^3)(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)} = 10.3 \text{ m}.$$

Discussion

Just 10.3 m of water creates the same pressure as 120 km of air. Since water is nearly incompressible, we can neglect any change in its density over this depth.

What do you suppose is the *total* pressure at a depth of 10.3 m in a swimming pool? Does the atmospheric pressure on the water's surface affect the pressure below? The answer is yes. This seems only logical, since both the water's weight and the atmosphere's weight must be supported. So the *total* pressure at a depth of 10.3 m is 2 atm—half from the water above and half from the air above. We shall see in Pascal's Principle that fluid pressures always add in this way.

Section Summary

- Pressure is the weight of the fluid mg divided by the area A supporting it (the area of the bottom of the container):
  Equation:

  $$P = \frac{\text{mg}}{A}.$$

- Pressure due to the weight of a liquid is given by
  Equation:

  $$P = h\rho g,$$

  where P is the pressure, h is the height of the liquid, ρ is the density of the liquid, and g is the acceleration due to gravity.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Atmospheric pressure exerts a large force (equal to the weight of the atmosphere above your body—about 10 tons) on the top of your body when you are lying on the beach sunbathing. Why are you able to get up?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why does atmospheric pressure decrease more rapidly than linearly with altitude?

Exercise:

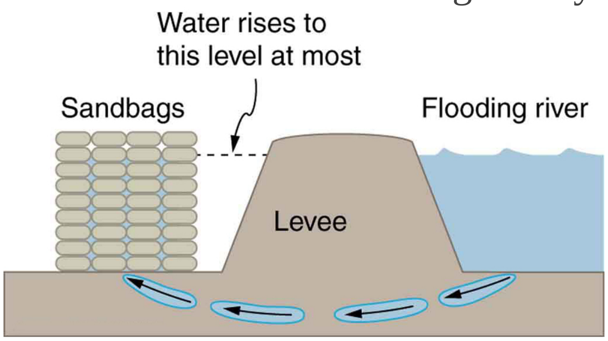
Problem:

What are two reasons why mercury rather than water is used in barometers?

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows how sandbags placed around a leak outside a river levee can effectively stop the flow of water under the levee. Explain how the small amount of water inside the column formed by the sandbags is able to balance the much larger body of water behind the levee.



Because the river level is very high, it has started to leak under the levee. Sandbags are placed around the leak, and the water held by them rises until it is the same level as the river, at which point the water there stops rising.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why is it difficult to swim under water in the Great Salt Lake?

Exercise:

Problem:

Is there a net force on a dam due to atmospheric pressure? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Does atmospheric pressure add to the gas pressure in a rigid tank? In a toy balloon? When, in general, does atmospheric pressure *not* affect the total pressure in a fluid?

Exercise:

Problem:

You can break a strong wine bottle by pounding a cork into it with your fist, but the cork must press directly against the liquid filling the bottle—there can be no air between the cork and liquid. Explain why the bottle breaks, and why it will not if there is air between the cork and liquid.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: What depth of mercury creates a pressure of 1.00 atm?

Solution:

0.760 m

Exercise:

Problem:

The greatest ocean depths on the Earth are found in the Marianas Trench near the Philippines. Calculate the pressure due to the ocean at the bottom of this trench, given its depth is 11.0 km and assuming the density of seawater is constant all the way down.

Exercise:

Problem: Verify that the SI unit of $h\rho g$ is $\mathrm{N/m^2}$.

Solution:
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} (h\rho g)_{\text{units}} &= (\mathrm{m})\left(\mathrm{kg/m^3}\right)\left(\mathrm{m/s^2}\right) = \left(\mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}\right)/\left(\mathrm{m^3 \cdot s^2}\right) \\ &= \left(\mathrm{kg \cdot m/s^2}\right)\left(1/\mathrm{m^2}\right) \\ &= \mathrm{N/m^2} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Water towers store water above the level of consumers for times of heavy use, eliminating the need for high-speed pumps. How high above a user must the water level be to create a gauge pressure of $3.00 \times 10^5\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$?

Exercise:

Problem:

The aqueous humor in a person's eye is exerting a force of 0.300 N on the 1.10-cm^2 area of the cornea. (a) What pressure is this in mm Hg? (b) Is this value within the normal range for pressures in the eye?

Solution:

(a) 20.5 mm Hg

(b) The range of pressures in the eye is 12–24 mm Hg, so the result in part (a) is within that range

Exercise:

Problem:

How much force is exerted on one side of an 8.50 cm by 11.0 cm sheet of paper by the atmosphere? How can the paper withstand such a force?

Exercise:

Problem:

What pressure is exerted on the bottom of a 0.500-m-wide by 0.900-m-long gas tank that can hold 50.0 kg of gasoline by the weight of the gasoline in it when it is full?

Solution:

$1.09 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the average pressure exerted on the palm of a shot-putter's hand by the shot if the area of contact is $50.0\ \text{cm}^2$ and he exerts a force of 800 N on it. Express the pressure in N/m^2 and compare it with the $1.00 \times 10^6\ \text{Pa}$ pressures sometimes encountered in the skeletal system.

Exercise:

Problem:

The left side of the heart creates a pressure of 120 mm Hg by exerting a force directly on the blood over an effective area of $15.0\ \text{cm}^2$. What force does it exert to accomplish this?

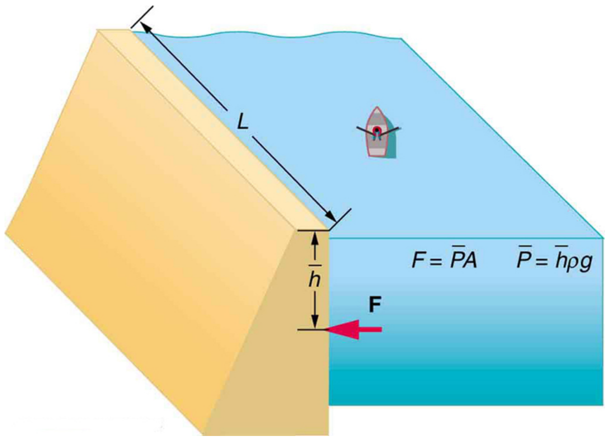
Solution:

24.0 N

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the total force on a rectangular dam due to the water behind it increases with the *square* of the water depth. In particular, show that this force is given by $F = \rho g h^2 L/2$, where ρ is the density of water, h is its depth at the dam, and L is the length of the dam. You may assume the face of the dam is vertical. (Hint: Calculate the average pressure exerted and multiply this by the area in contact with the water. (See [link].)



Glossary

pressure
: the weight of the fluid divided by the area supporting it

Pascal’s Principle

- Define pressure.
- State Pascal’s principle.
- Understand applications of Pascal’s principle.
- Derive relationships between forces in a hydraulic system.

Pressure is defined as force per unit area. Can pressure be increased in a fluid by pushing directly on the fluid? Yes, but it is much easier if the fluid is enclosed. The heart, for example, increases blood pressure by pushing directly on the blood in an enclosed system (valves closed in a chamber). If you try to push on a fluid in an open system, such as a river, the fluid flows away. An enclosed fluid cannot flow away, and so pressure is more easily increased by an applied force.

What happens to a pressure in an enclosed fluid? Since atoms in a fluid are free to move about, they transmit the pressure to all parts of the fluid and to the walls of the container. Remarkably, the pressure is transmitted *undiminished*. This phenomenon is called **Pascal’s principle**, because it was first clearly stated by the French philosopher and scientist Blaise Pascal (1623–1662): A change in pressure applied to an enclosed fluid is transmitted undiminished to all portions of the fluid and to the walls of its container.

Note:
Pascal’s Principle
A change in pressure applied to an enclosed fluid is transmitted undiminished to all portions of the fluid and to the walls of its container.

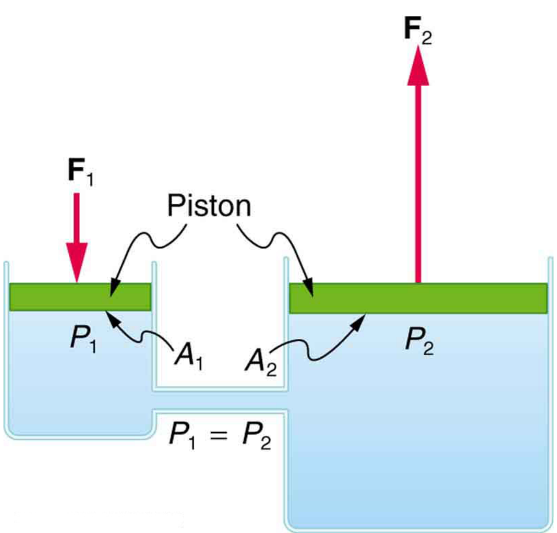
Pascal’s principle, an experimentally verified fact, is what makes pressure so important in fluids. Since a change in pressure is transmitted undiminished in an enclosed fluid, we often know more about pressure than other physical quantities in fluids. Moreover, Pascal’s principle implies that

the total pressure in a fluid is the sum of the pressures from different sources. We shall find this fact—that pressures add—very useful.

Blaise Pascal had an interesting life in that he was home-schooled by his father who removed all of the mathematics textbooks from his house and forbade him to study mathematics until the age of 15. This, of course, raised the boy’s curiosity, and by the age of 12, he started to teach himself geometry. Despite this early deprivation, Pascal went on to make major contributions in the mathematical fields of probability theory, number theory, and geometry. He is also well known for being the inventor of the first mechanical digital calculator, in addition to his contributions in the field of fluid statics.

Application of Pascal’s Principle

One of the most important technological applications of Pascal’s principle is found in a *hydraulic system*, which is an enclosed fluid system used to exert forces. The most common hydraulic systems are those that operate car brakes. Let us first consider the simple hydraulic system shown in [link].



A typical hydraulic system with two fluid-filled cylinders, capped with

pistons and connected by a tube called a hydraulic line. A downward force $\mathbf{F}_1$ on the left piston creates a pressure that is transmitted undiminished to all parts of the enclosed fluid. This results in an upward force $\mathbf{F}_2$ on the right piston that is larger than $\mathbf{F}_1$ because the right piston has a larger area.

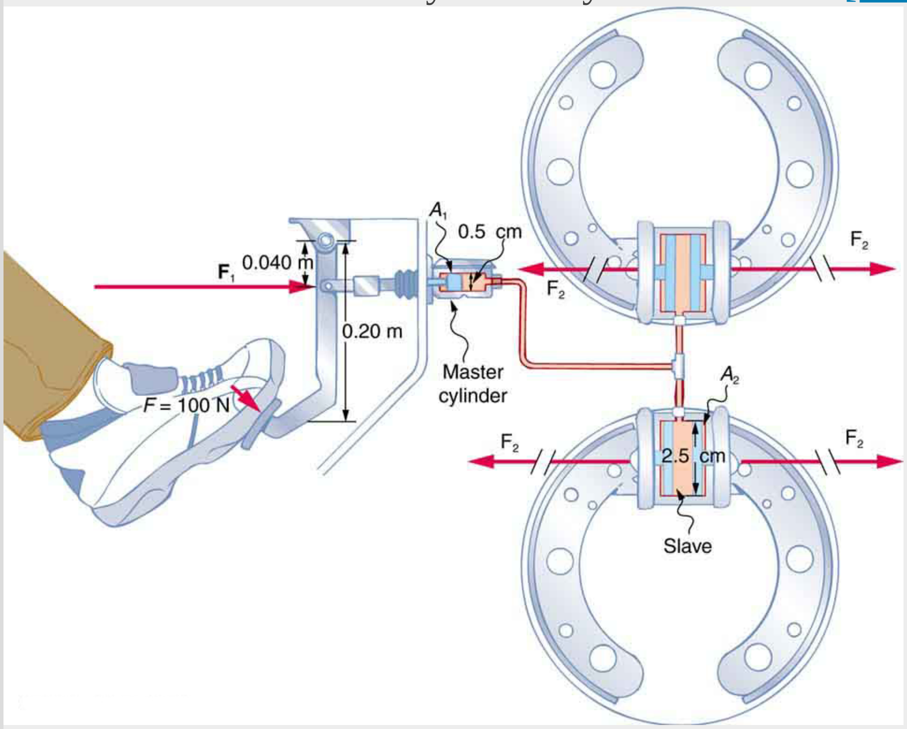
Relationship Between Forces in a Hydraulic System

We can derive a relationship between the forces in the simple hydraulic system shown in [link] by applying Pascal's principle. Note first that the two pistons in the system are at the same height, and so there will be no difference in pressure due to a difference in depth. Now the pressure due to F_1 acting on area A_1 is simply $P_1 = \frac{F_1}{A_1}$, as defined by $P = \frac{F}{A}$. According to Pascal's principle, this pressure is transmitted undiminished throughout the fluid and to all walls of the container. Thus, a pressure P_2 is felt at the other piston that is equal to P_1. That is $P_1 = P_2$.

But since $P_2 = \frac{F_2}{A_2}$, we see that $\frac{F_1}{A_1} = \frac{F_2}{A_2}$.

This equation relates the ratios of force to area in any hydraulic system, providing the pistons are at the same vertical height and that friction in the system is negligible. Hydraulic systems can increase or decrease the force applied to them. To make the force larger, the pressure is applied to a larger area. For example, if a 100-N force is applied to the left cylinder in [link] and the right one has an area five times greater, then the force out is 500 N. Hydraulic systems are analogous to simple levers, but they have the advantage that pressure can be sent through tortuously curved lines to several places at once.

Example:
Calculating Force of Slave Cylinders: Pascal Puts on the Brakes
Consider the automobile hydraulic system shown in [link].



Hydraulic brakes use Pascal’s principle. The driver exerts a force of 100 N on the brake pedal. This force is increased by the simple lever and again by the hydraulic system. Each of the identical slave cylinders receives the same pressure and, therefore, creates the same force output F_2. The circular cross-sectional areas of the master and slave cylinders are represented by A_1 and A_2, respectively

A force of 100 N is applied to the brake pedal, which acts on the cylinder—called the master—through a lever. A force of 500 N is exerted on the master cylinder. (The reader can verify that the force is 500 N using techniques of statics from Applications of Statics, Including Problem-Solving Strategies.) Pressure created in the master cylinder is transmitted to four so-called slave cylinders. The master cylinder has a diameter of

0.500 cm, and each slave cylinder has a diameter of 2.50 cm. Calculate the force F_2 created at each of the slave cylinders.

Strategy

We are given the force F_1 that is applied to the master cylinder. The cross-sectional areas A_1 and A_2 can be calculated from their given diameters. Then $\frac{F_1}{A_1} = \frac{F_2}{A_2}$ can be used to find the force F_2. Manipulate this algebraically to get F_2 on one side and substitute known values:

Solution

Pascal's principle applied to hydraulic systems is given by $\frac{F_1}{A_1} = \frac{F_2}{A_2}$:

Equation:

$$F_2 = \frac{A_2}{A_1}F_1 = \frac{\pi r_2^2}{\pi r_1^2}F_1 = \frac{(1.25\text{ cm})^2}{(0.250\text{ cm})^2} \times 500\text{ N} = 1.25 \times 10^4\text{ N}.$$

Discussion

This value is the force exerted by each of the four slave cylinders. Note that we can add as many slave cylinders as we wish. If each has a 2.50-cm diameter, each will exert 1.25×10^4 N.

A simple hydraulic system, such as a simple machine, can increase force but cannot do more work than done on it. Work is force times distance moved, and the slave cylinder moves through a smaller distance than the master cylinder. Furthermore, the more slaves added, the smaller the distance each moves. Many hydraulic systems—such as power brakes and those in bulldozers—have a motorized pump that actually does most of the work in the system. The movement of the legs of a spider is achieved partly by hydraulics. Using hydraulics, a jumping spider can create a force that makes it capable of jumping 25 times its length!

Note:

Making Connections: Conservation of Energy

Conservation of energy applied to a hydraulic system tells us that the system cannot do more work than is done on it. Work transfers energy, and so the work output cannot exceed the work input. Power brakes and other similar hydraulic systems use pumps to supply extra energy when needed.

Section Summary

- Pressure is force per unit area.
- A change in pressure applied to an enclosed fluid is transmitted undiminished to all portions of the fluid and to the walls of its container.
- A hydraulic system is an enclosed fluid system used to exert forces.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose the master cylinder in a hydraulic system is at a greater height than the slave cylinder. Explain how this will affect the force produced at the slave cylinder.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

How much pressure is transmitted in the hydraulic system considered in [link]? Express your answer in pascals and in atmospheres.

Solution:

2.55×10^7 Pa; or 251 atm

Exercise:

Problem:

What force must be exerted on the master cylinder of a hydraulic lift to support the weight of a 2000-kg car (a large car) resting on the slave cylinder? The master cylinder has a 2.00-cm diameter and the slave has a 24.0-cm diameter.

Exercise:

Problem:

A crass host pours the remnants of several bottles of wine into a jug after a party. He then inserts a cork with a 2.00-cm diameter into the bottle, placing it in direct contact with the wine. He is amazed when he pounds the cork into place and the bottom of the jug (with a 14.0-cm diameter) breaks away. Calculate the extra force exerted against the bottom if he pounded the cork with a 120-N force.

Solution:

5.76×10^3 N extra force

Exercise:

Problem:

A certain hydraulic system is designed to exert a force 100 times as large as the one put into it. (a) What must be the ratio of the area of the slave cylinder to the area of the master cylinder? (b) What must be the ratio of their diameters? (c) By what factor is the distance through which the output force moves reduced relative to the distance through which the input force moves? Assume no losses to friction.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Verify that work input equals work output for a hydraulic system assuming no losses to friction. Do this by showing that the distance the output force moves is reduced by the same factor that the output force is increased. Assume the volume of the fluid is constant. (b) What effect would friction within the fluid and between components in the system have on the output force? How would this depend on whether or not the fluid is moving?

Solution:

(a) $V = d_{\mathrm{i}}A_{\mathrm{i}} = d_{\mathrm{o}}A_{\mathrm{o}} \Rightarrow d_{\mathrm{o}} = d_{\mathrm{i}}\left(\frac{A_{\mathrm{i}}}{A_{\mathrm{o}}}\right).$

Now, using equation:
Equation:

$$\frac{F_1}{A_1} = \frac{F_2}{A_2} \Rightarrow F_{\mathrm{o}} = F_{\mathrm{i}}\left(\frac{A_{\mathrm{o}}}{A_{\mathrm{i}}}\right).$$

Finally,
Equation:

$$W_{\mathrm{o}} = F_{\mathrm{o}}d_{\mathrm{o}} = \left(\frac{F_{\mathrm{i}}A_{\mathrm{o}}}{A_{\mathrm{i}}}\right)\left(\frac{d_{\mathrm{i}}A_{\mathrm{i}}}{A_{\mathrm{o}}}\right) = F_{\mathrm{i}}d_{\mathrm{i}} = W_{\mathrm{i}}.$$

In other words, the work output equals the work input.

(b) If the system is not moving, friction would not play a role. With friction, we know there are losses, so that $W_{\mathrm{out}} = W_{\mathrm{in}} - W_{\mathrm{f}}$; therefore, the work output is less than the work input. In other words, with friction, you need to push harder on the input piston than was calculated for the nonfriction case.

Glossary

Pascal’s Principle
: a change in pressure applied to an enclosed fluid is transmitted undiminished to all portions of the fluid and to the walls of its container

Gauge Pressure, Absolute Pressure, and Pressure Measurement

- Define gauge pressure and absolute pressure.
- Understand the working of aneroid and open-tube barometers.

If you limp into a gas station with a nearly flat tire, you will notice the tire gauge on the airline reads nearly zero when you begin to fill it. In fact, if there were a gaping hole in your tire, the gauge would read zero, even though atmospheric pressure exists in the tire. Why does the gauge read zero? There is no mystery here. Tire gauges are simply designed to read zero at atmospheric pressure and positive when pressure is greater than atmospheric.

Similarly, atmospheric pressure adds to blood pressure in every part of the circulatory system. (As noted in Pascal's Principle, the total pressure in a fluid is the sum of the pressures from different sources—here, the heart and the atmosphere.) But atmospheric pressure has no net effect on blood flow since it adds to the pressure coming out of the heart and going back into it, too. What is important is how much *greater* blood pressure is than atmospheric pressure. Blood pressure measurements, like tire pressures, are thus made relative to atmospheric pressure.

In brief, it is very common for pressure gauges to ignore atmospheric pressure—that is, to read zero at atmospheric pressure. We therefore define **gauge pressure** to be the pressure relative to atmospheric pressure. Gauge pressure is positive for pressures above atmospheric pressure, and negative for pressures below it.

Note:
Gauge Pressure
Gauge pressure is the pressure relative to atmospheric pressure. Gauge pressure is positive for pressures above atmospheric pressure, and negative for pressures below it.

In fact, atmospheric pressure does add to the pressure in any fluid not enclosed in a rigid container. This happens because of Pascal's principle. The total pressure, or **absolute pressure**, is thus the sum of gauge pressure and atmospheric pressure: $P_{\text{abs}} = P_{\text{g}} + P_{\text{atm}}$ where P_{abs} is absolute pressure, P_{g} is gauge pressure, and P_{atm} is atmospheric pressure. For example, if your tire gauge reads 34 psi

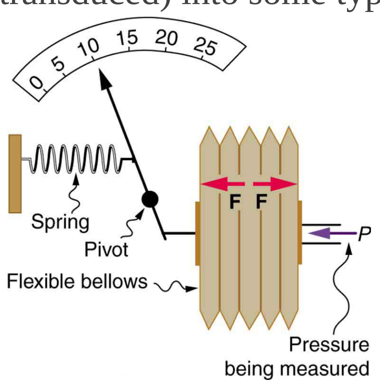
(pounds per square inch), then the absolute pressure is 34 psi plus 14.7 psi (P_{atm} in psi), or 48.7 psi (equivalent to 336 kPa).

Note:
Absolute Pressure
Absolute pressure is the sum of gauge pressure and atmospheric pressure.

For reasons we will explore later, in most cases the absolute pressure in fluids cannot be negative. Fluids push rather than pull, so the smallest absolute pressure is zero. (A negative absolute pressure is a pull.) Thus the smallest possible gauge pressure is $P_{\text{g}} = -P_{\text{atm}}$ (this makes P_{abs} zero). There is no theoretical limit to how large a gauge pressure can be.

There are a host of devices for measuring pressure, ranging from tire gauges to blood pressure cuffs. Pascal's principle is of major importance in these devices. The undiminished transmission of pressure through a fluid allows precise remote sensing of pressures. Remote sensing is often more convenient than putting a measuring device into a system, such as a person's artery.

[link] shows one of the many types of mechanical pressure gauges in use today. In all mechanical pressure gauges, pressure results in a force that is converted (or transduced) into some type of readout.

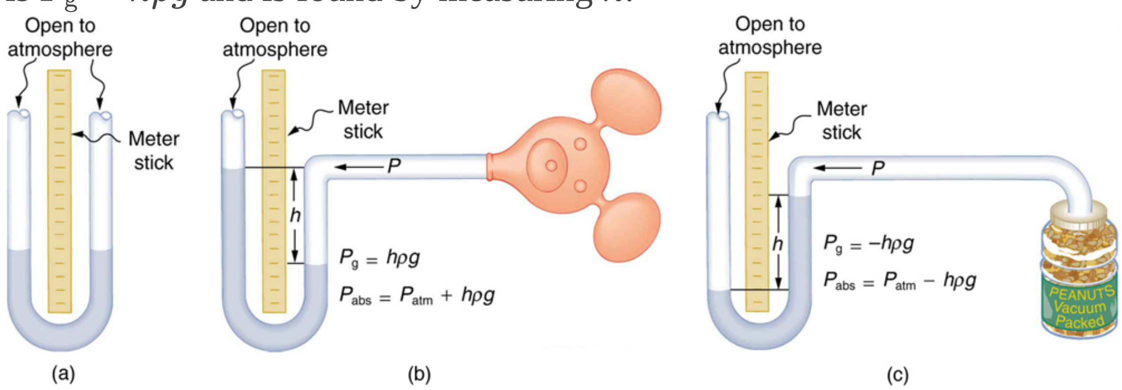


This aneroid gauge utilizes flexible bellows connected to a mechanical

indicator to
measure pressure.

An entire class of gauges uses the property that pressure due to the weight of a fluid is given by $P = h\rho g$. Consider the U-shaped tube shown in [link], for example. This simple tube is called a *manometer*. In [link](a), both sides of the tube are open to the atmosphere. Atmospheric pressure therefore pushes down on each side equally so its effect cancels. If the fluid is deeper on one side, there is a greater pressure on the deeper side, and the fluid flows away from that side until the depths are equal.

Let us examine how a manometer is used to measure pressure. Suppose one side of the U-tube is connected to some source of pressure P_{abs} such as the toy balloon in [link](b) or the vacuum-packed peanut jar shown in [link](c). Pressure is transmitted undiminished to the manometer, and the fluid levels are no longer equal. In [link](b), P_{abs} is greater than atmospheric pressure, whereas in [link](c), P_{abs} is less than atmospheric pressure. In both cases, P_{abs} differs from atmospheric pressure by an amount $h\rho g$, where ρ is the density of the fluid in the manometer. In [link](b), P_{abs} can support a column of fluid of height h, and so it must exert a pressure $h\rho g$ greater than atmospheric pressure (the gauge pressure P_{g} is positive). In [link](c), atmospheric pressure can support a column of fluid of height h, and so P_{abs} is less than atmospheric pressure by an amount $h\rho g$ (the gauge pressure P_{g} is negative). A manometer with one side open to the atmosphere is an ideal device for measuring gauge pressures. The gauge pressure is $P_{\text{g}} = h\rho g$ and is found by measuring h.



An open-tube manometer has one side open to the atmosphere. (a) Fluid depth must be the same on both sides, or the pressure each side exerts at the bottom will be unequal and there will be flow from the

deeper side. (b) A positive gauge pressure $P_g = h\rho g$ transmitted to one side of the manometer can support a column of fluid of height h. (c) Similarly, atmospheric pressure is greater than a negative gauge pressure P_g by an amount $h\rho g$. The jar's rigidity prevents atmospheric pressure from being transmitted to the peanuts.

Mercury manometers are often used to measure arterial blood pressure. An inflatable cuff is placed on the upper arm as shown in [link]. By squeezing the bulb, the person making the measurement exerts pressure, which is transmitted undiminished to both the main artery in the arm and the manometer. When this applied pressure exceeds blood pressure, blood flow below the cuff is cut off. The person making the measurement then slowly lowers the applied pressure and listens for blood flow to resume. Blood pressure pulsates because of the pumping action of the heart, reaching a maximum, called **systolic pressure**, and a minimum, called **diastolic pressure**, with each heartbeat. Systolic pressure is measured by noting the value of h when blood flow first begins as cuff pressure is lowered. Diastolic pressure is measured by noting h when blood flows without interruption. The typical blood pressure of a young adult raises the mercury to a height of 120 mm at systolic and 80 mm at diastolic. This is commonly quoted as 120 over 80, or 120/80. The first pressure is representative of the maximum output of the heart; the second is due to the elasticity of the arteries in maintaining the pressure between beats. The density of the mercury fluid in the manometer is 13.6 times greater than water, so the height of the fluid will be 1/13.6 of that in a water manometer. This reduced height can make measurements difficult, so mercury manometers are used to measure larger pressures, such as blood pressure. The density of mercury is such that $1.0 \text{ mm Hg} = 133 \text{ Pa}$.

Note:
Systolic Pressure
Systolic pressure is the maximum blood pressure.

Note:
Diastolic Pressure
Diastolic pressure is the minimum blood pressure.

In routine blood pressure measurements, an inflatable cuff is placed on the upper arm at the same level as the heart. Blood flow is detected just below the cuff, and corresponding pressures are transmitted to a mercury-filled manometer. (credit: U.S. Army photo by Spc. Micah E. Clare\4TH BCT)

Example:
Calculating Height of IV Bag: Blood Pressure and Intravenous Infusions

Intravenous infusions are usually made with the help of the gravitational force. Assuming that the density of the fluid being administered is 1.00 g/ml, at what height should the IV bag be placed above the entry point so that the fluid just enters the vein if the blood pressure in the vein is 18 mm Hg above atmospheric pressure? Assume that the IV bag is collapsible.

Strategy for (a)

For the fluid to just enter the vein, its pressure at entry must exceed the blood pressure in the vein (18 mm Hg above atmospheric pressure). We therefore need to find the height of fluid that corresponds to this gauge pressure.

Solution

We first need to convert the pressure into SI units. Since $1.0\text{ mm Hg} = 133\text{ Pa}$,

Equation:

$$P = 18\text{ mm Hg} \times \frac{133\text{ Pa}}{1.0\text{ mm Hg}} = 2400\text{ Pa}.$$

Rearranging $P_{\text{g}} = h\rho g$ for h gives $h = \frac{P_{\text{g}}}{\rho g}$. Substituting known values into this equation gives

Equation:

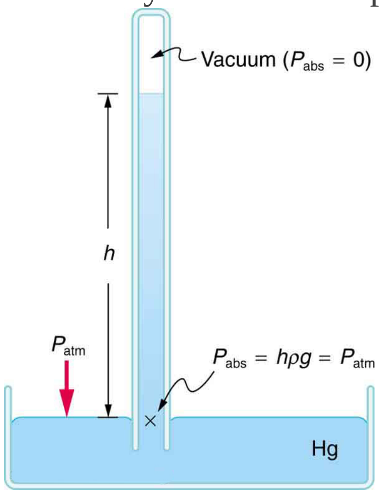
$$\begin{aligned} h &= \frac{2400\text{ N/m}^2}{\left(1.0\times10^3\text{ kg/m}^3\right)\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right)} \\ &= 0.24\text{ m.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

The IV bag must be placed at 0.24 m above the entry point into the arm for the fluid to just enter the arm. Generally, IV bags are placed higher than this. You may have noticed that the bags used for blood collection are placed below the donor to allow blood to flow easily from the arm to the bag, which is the opposite direction of flow than required in the example presented here.

A *barometer* is a device that measures atmospheric pressure. A mercury barometer is shown in [link]. This device measures atmospheric pressure, rather than gauge pressure, because there is a nearly pure vacuum above the mercury in the tube. The height of the mercury is such that $h\rho g = P_{\text{atm}}$. When atmospheric pressure varies, the mercury rises or falls, giving important clues to weather forecasters. The barometer can also be used as an altimeter, since average atmospheric pressure varies with altitude. Mercury barometers and manometers

are so common that units of mm Hg are often quoted for atmospheric pressure and blood pressures. [link] gives conversion factors for some of the more commonly used units of pressure.



A mercury barometer measures atmospheric pressure. The pressure due to the mercury's weight, $h\rho g$, equals atmospheric pressure. The atmosphere is able to force mercury in the tube to a height h because the pressure above the mercury is zero.

Conversion to N/m^2 (Pa)	Conversion from atm
$1.0 \text{ atm} = 1.013 \times 10^5 \text{ N/m}^2$	$1.0 \text{ atm} = 1.013 \times 10^5 \text{ N/m}^2$
$1.0 \text{ dyne/cm}^2 = 0.10 \text{ N/m}^2$	$1.0 \text{ atm} = 1.013 \times 10^6 \text{ dyne/cm}^2$
$1.0 \text{ kg/cm}^2 = 9.8 \times 10^4 \text{ N/m}^2$	$1.0 \text{ atm} = 1.013 \text{ kg/cm}^2$
$1.0 \text{ lb/in.}^2 = 6.90 \times 10^3 \text{ N/m}^2$	$1.0 \text{ atm} = 14.7 \text{ lb/in.}^2$
$1.0 \text{ mm Hg} = 133 \text{ N/m}^2$	$1.0 \text{ atm} = 760 \text{ mm Hg}$
$1.0 \text{ cm Hg} = 1.33 \times 10^3 \text{ N/m}^2$	$1.0 \text{ atm} = 76.0 \text{ cm Hg}$
$1.0 \text{ cm water} = 98.1 \text{ N/m}^2$	$1.0 \text{ atm} = 1.03 \times 10^3 \text{ cm water}$
$1.0 \text{ bar} = 1.000 \times 10^5 \text{ N/m}^2$	$1.0 \text{ atm} = 1.013 \text{ bar}$
$1.0 \text{ millibar} = 1.000 \times 10^2 \text{ N/m}^2$	$1.0 \text{ atm} = 1013 \text{ millibar}$

Conversion Factors for Various Pressure Units

Section Summary

- Gauge pressure is the pressure relative to atmospheric pressure.
- Absolute pressure is the sum of gauge pressure and atmospheric pressure.
- Aneroid gauge measures pressure using a bellows-and-spring arrangement connected to the pointer of a calibrated scale.
- Open-tube manometers have U-shaped tubes and one end is always open. It is used to measure pressure.
- A mercury barometer is a device that measures atmospheric pressure.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why the fluid reaches equal levels on either side of a manometer if both sides are open to the atmosphere, even if the tubes are of different diameters.

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows how a common measurement of arterial blood pressure is made. Is there any effect on the measured pressure if the manometer is lowered? What is the effect of raising the arm above the shoulder? What is the effect of placing the cuff on the upper leg with the person standing? Explain your answers in terms of pressure created by the weight of a fluid.

Exercise:

Problem:

Considering the magnitude of typical arterial blood pressures, why are mercury rather than water manometers used for these measurements?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the gauge and absolute pressures in the balloon and peanut jar shown in [link], assuming the manometer connected to the balloon uses water whereas the manometer connected to the jar contains mercury. Express in units of centimeters of water for the balloon and millimeters of mercury for the jar, taking $h = 0.0500\ \text{m}$ for each.

Solution:

Balloon:

$$\begin{aligned} P_{\text{g}} &= 5.00\ \text{cm H}_2\text{O}, \\ P_{\text{abs}} &= 1.035 \times 10^3\ \text{cm H}_2\text{O}. \end{aligned}$$

Jar:

$$\begin{aligned} P_{\text{g}} &= -50.0\ \text{mm Hg}, \\ P_{\text{abs}} &= 710\ \text{mm Hg}. \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Convert normal blood pressure readings of 120 over 80 mm Hg to newtons per meter squared using the relationship for pressure due to the weight of a fluid $(P = h\rho g)$ rather than a conversion factor. (b) Discuss why blood pressures for an infant could be smaller than those for an adult. Specifically, consider the smaller height to which blood must be pumped.

Exercise:

Problem:

How tall must a water-filled manometer be to measure blood pressures as high as 300 mm Hg?

Solution:

4.08 m

Exercise:

Problem:

Pressure cookers have been around for more than 300 years, although their use has strongly declined in recent years (early models had a nasty habit of exploding). How much force must the latches holding the lid onto a pressure cooker be able to withstand if the circular lid is 25.0 cm in diameter and the gauge pressure inside is 300 atm? Neglect the weight of the lid.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you measure a standing person's blood pressure by placing the cuff on his leg 0.500 m below the heart. Calculate the pressure you would observe (in units of mm Hg) if the pressure at the heart were 120 over 80 mm Hg. Assume that there is no loss of pressure due to resistance in the circulatory system (a reasonable assumption, since major arteries are large).

Solution:

$$\Delta P = 38.7\text{ mm Hg},$$

$$\text{Leg blood pressure} = \frac{159}{119}.$$

Exercise:

Problem:

A submarine is stranded on the bottom of the ocean with its hatch 25.0 m below the surface. Calculate the force needed to open the hatch from the inside, given it is circular and 0.450 m in diameter. Air pressure inside the submarine is 1.00 atm.

Exercise:

Problem:

Assuming bicycle tires are perfectly flexible and support the weight of bicycle and rider by pressure alone, calculate the total area of the tires in contact with the ground. The bicycle plus rider has a mass of 80.0 kg, and the gauge pressure in the tires is $3.50 \times 10^5\text{ Pa}$.

Solution:

$22.4\ \text{cm}^2$

Glossary

absolute pressure
: the sum of gauge pressure and atmospheric pressure

diastolic pressure
: the minimum blood pressure in the artery

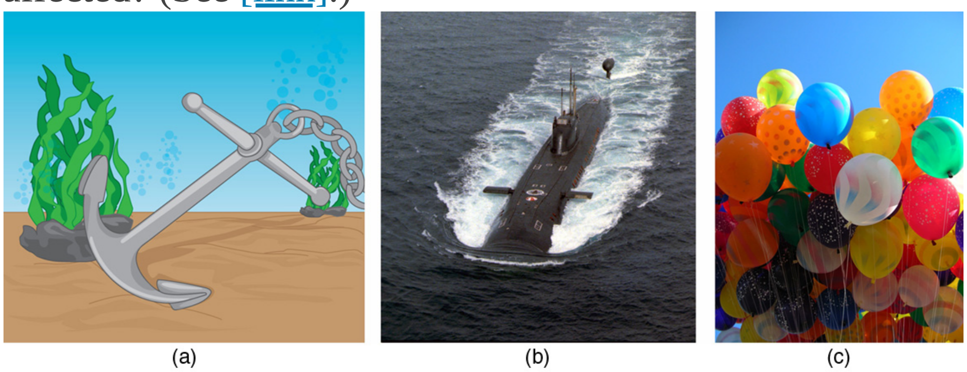
gauge pressure
: the pressure relative to atmospheric pressure

systolic pressure
: the maximum blood pressure in the artery

Archimedes’ Principle

- Define buoyant force.
- State Archimedes’ principle.
- Understand why objects float or sink.
- Understand the relationship between density and Archimedes’ principle.

When you rise from lounging in a warm bath, your arms feel strangely heavy. This is because you no longer have the buoyant support of the water. Where does this buoyant force come from? Why is it that some things float and others do not? Do objects that sink get any support at all from the fluid? Is your body buoyed by the atmosphere, or are only helium balloons affected? (See [link].)

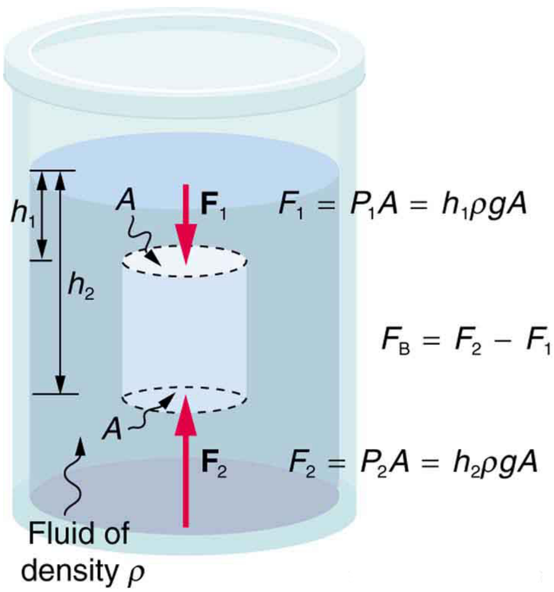


(a) Even objects that sink, like this anchor, are partly supported by water when submerged. (b) Submarines have adjustable density (ballast tanks) so that they may float or sink as desired. (credit: Allied Navy) (c) Helium-filled balloons tug upward on their strings, demonstrating air’s buoyant effect. (credit: Crystl)

Answers to all these questions, and many others, are based on the fact that pressure increases with depth in a fluid. This means that the upward force on the bottom of an object in a fluid is greater than the downward force on the top of the object. There is a net upward, or **buoyant force** on any object in any fluid. (See [link].) If the buoyant force is greater than the object’s

weight, the object will rise to the surface and float. If the buoyant force is less than the object’s weight, the object will sink. If the buoyant force equals the object’s weight, the object will remain suspended at that depth. The buoyant force is always present whether the object floats, sinks, or is suspended in a fluid.

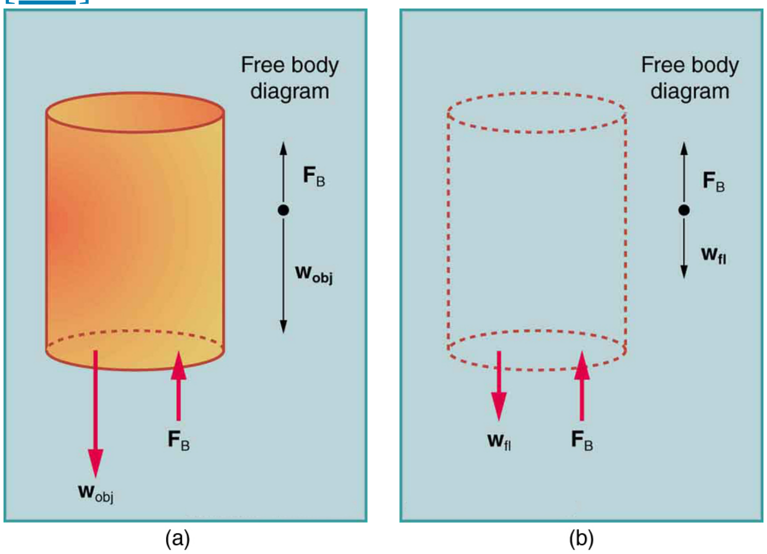
Note:
Buoyant Force
The buoyant force is the net upward force on any object in any fluid.



Pressure due to the weight of a fluid increases with depth since $P = h\rho g$. This pressure and associated upward force on the bottom of the cylinder are greater than the downward force on the top of the cylinder. Their difference is the buoyant

force $\mathbf{F}_{\mathrm{B}}$. (Horizontal forces cancel.)

Just how great is this buoyant force? To answer this question, think about what happens when a submerged object is removed from a fluid, as in [link].



(a) An object submerged in a fluid experiences a buoyant force F_{B}. If F_{B} is greater than the weight of the object, the object will rise. If F_{B} is less than the weight of the object, the object will sink. (b) If the object is removed, it is replaced by fluid having weight w_{fl}. Since this weight is supported by surrounding fluid, the buoyant force must equal the weight of the fluid displaced. That is, $F_{\mathrm{B}} = w_{\mathrm{fl}}$,a statement of Archimedes' principle.

The space it occupied is filled by fluid having a weight w_{fl}. This weight is supported by the surrounding fluid, and so the buoyant force must equal w_{fl}, the weight of the fluid displaced by the object. It is a tribute to the genius

of the Greek mathematician and inventor Archimedes (ca. 287–212 B.C.) that he stated this principle long before concepts of force were well established. Stated in words, **Archimedes' principle** is as follows: The buoyant force on an object equals the weight of the fluid it displaces. In equation form, Archimedes' principle is

Equation:

$$F_{\mathrm{B}} = w_{\mathrm{fl}},$$

where F_{B} is the buoyant force and w_{fl} is the weight of the fluid displaced by the object. Archimedes' principle is valid in general, for any object in any fluid, whether partially or totally submerged.

Note:

Archimedes' Principle

According to this principle the buoyant force on an object equals the weight of the fluid it displaces. In equation form, Archimedes' principle is

Equation:

$$F_{\mathrm{B}} = w_{\mathrm{fl}},$$

where F_{B} is the buoyant force and w_{fl} is the weight of the fluid displaced by the object.

Humm … High-tech body swimsuits were introduced in 2008 in preparation for the Beijing Olympics. One concern (and international rule) was that these suits should not provide any buoyancy advantage. How do you think that this rule could be verified?

Note:

Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation

The density of aluminum foil is 2.7 times the density of water. Take a piece of foil, roll it up into a ball and drop it into water. Does it sink? Why or why not? Can you make it sink?

Floating and Sinking

Drop a lump of clay in water. It will sink. Then mold the lump of clay into the shape of a boat, and it will float. Because of its shape, the boat displaces more water than the lump and experiences a greater buoyant force. The same is true of steel ships.

Example:
Calculating buoyant force: dependency on shape
(a) Calculate the buoyant force on 10,000 metric tons $(1.00 \times 10^{7}\ \text{kg})$ of solid steel completely submerged in water, and compare this with the steel's weight. (b) What is the maximum buoyant force that water could exert on this same steel if it were shaped into a boat that could displace $1.00 \times 10^{5}\ \text{m}^{3}$ of water?
Strategy for (a)
To find the buoyant force, we must find the weight of water displaced. We can do this by using the densities of water and steel given in [link]. We note that, since the steel is completely submerged, its volume and the water's volume are the same. Once we know the volume of water, we can find its mass and weight.
Solution for (a)
First, we use the definition of density $\rho = \frac{m}{V}$ to find the steel's volume, and then we substitute values for mass and density. This gives
Equation:

$$V_{\text{st}} = \frac{m_{\text{st}}}{\rho_{\text{st}}} = \frac{1.00 \times 10^{7}\ \text{kg}}{7.8 \times 10^{3}\ \text{kg/m}^{3}} = 1.28 \times 10^{3}\ \text{m}^{3}.$$

Because the steel is completely submerged, this is also the volume of water displaced, V_{w}. We can now find the mass of water displaced from the relationship between its volume and density, both of which are known. This gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} m_{\text{w}} &= \rho_{\text{w}} V_{\text{w}} = (1.000 \times 10^3 \text{ kg/m}^3)(1.28 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3) \\ &= 1.28 \times 10^6 \text{ kg}. \end{aligned}$$

By Archimedes' principle, the weight of water displaced is $m_{\text{w}} g$, so the buoyant force is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{B}} &= w_{\text{w}} = m_{\text{w}} g = \left(1.28 \times 10^6 \text{ kg}\right)\left(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2\right) \\ &= 1.3 \times 10^7 \text{ N}. \end{aligned}$$

The steel's weight is $m_{\text{w}} g = 9.80 \times 10^7$ N, which is much greater than the buoyant force, so the steel will remain submerged. Note that the buoyant force is rounded to two digits because the density of steel is given to only two digits.

Strategy for (b)

Here we are given the maximum volume of water the steel boat can displace. The buoyant force is the weight of this volume of water.

Solution for (b)

The mass of water displaced is found from its relationship to density and volume, both of which are known. That is,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} m_{\text{w}} &= \rho_{\text{w}} V_{\text{w}} = \left(1.000 \times 10^3 \text{ kg/m}^3\right)\left(1.00 \times 10^5 \text{ m}^3\right) \\ &= 1.00 \times 10^8 \text{ kg}. \end{aligned}$$

The maximum buoyant force is the weight of this much water, or

Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_{\mathrm{B}} &= w_{\mathrm{w}} = m_{\mathrm{w}} g = \left(1.00 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{kg}\right)\left(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^{2}}\right) \\
&= 9.80 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{N}.
\end{aligned}
$$

Discussion
The maximum buoyant force is ten times the weight of the steel, meaning the ship can carry a load nine times its own weight without sinking.

Note:
Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation
A piece of household aluminum foil is 0.016 mm thick. Use a piece of foil that measures 10 cm by 15 cm. (a) What is the mass of this amount of foil? (b) If the foil is folded to give it four sides, and paper clips or washers are added to this “boat,” what shape of the boat would allow it to hold the most “cargo” when placed in water? Test your prediction.

Density and Archimedes’ Principle

Density plays a crucial role in Archimedes’ principle. The average density of an object is what ultimately determines whether it floats. If its average density is less than that of the surrounding fluid, it will float. This is because the fluid, having a higher density, contains more mass and hence more weight in the same volume. The buoyant force, which equals the weight of the fluid displaced, is thus greater than the weight of the object. Likewise, an object denser than the fluid will sink.

The extent to which a floating object is submerged depends on how the object’s density is related to that of the fluid. In [link], for example, the unloaded ship has a lower density and less of it is submerged compared with the same ship loaded. We can derive a quantitative expression for the fraction submerged by considering density. The fraction submerged is the ratio of the volume submerged to the volume of the object, or
Equation:

$$\text{fraction submerged} = \frac{V_{\text{sub}}}{V_{\text{obj}}} = \frac{V_{\text{fl}}}{V_{\text{obj}}}.$$

The volume submerged equals the volume of fluid displaced, which we call V_{fl}. Now we can obtain the relationship between the densities by substituting $\rho = \frac{m}{V}$ into the expression. This gives

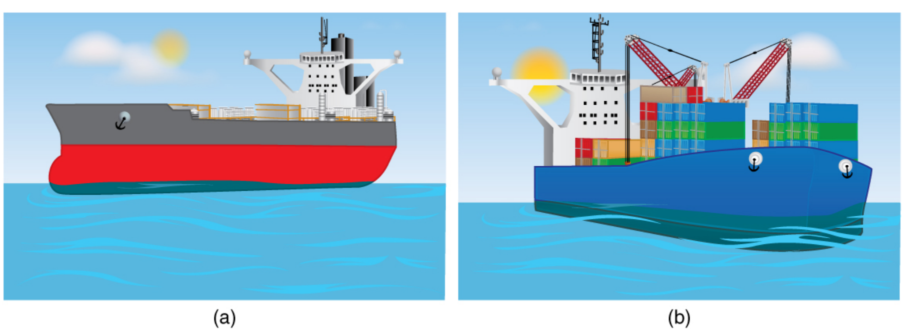
Equation:

$$\frac{V_{\text{fl}}}{V_{\text{obj}}} = \frac{m_{\text{fl}}/\rho_{\text{fl}}}{m_{\text{obj}}/\overline{\rho}_{\text{obj}}},$$

where $\overline{\rho}_{\text{obj}}$ is the average density of the object and ρ_{fl} is the density of the fluid. Since the object floats, its mass and that of the displaced fluid are equal, and so they cancel from the equation, leaving

Equation:

$$\text{fraction submerged} = \frac{\overline{\rho}_{\text{obj}}}{\rho_{\text{fl}}}.$$



An unloaded ship (a) floats higher in the water than a loaded ship (b).

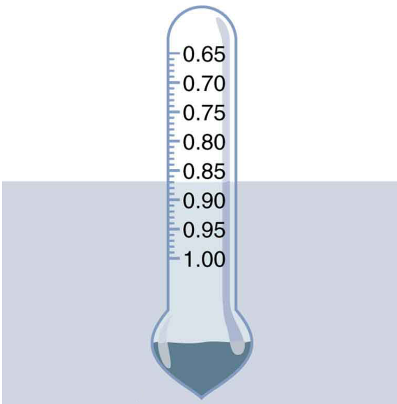
We use this last relationship to measure densities. This is done by measuring the fraction of a floating object that is submerged—for example, with a hydrometer. It is useful to define the ratio of the density of an object to a fluid (usually water) as **specific gravity**:

Equation:

$$\text{specific gravity} = \frac{\bar{\rho}}{\rho_{\text{w}}},$$

where $\bar{\rho}$ is the average density of the object or substance and ρ_{w} is the density of water at 4.00°C. Specific gravity is dimensionless, independent of whatever units are used for ρ. If an object floats, its specific gravity is less than one. If it sinks, its specific gravity is greater than one. Moreover, the fraction of a floating object that is submerged equals its specific gravity. If an object's specific gravity is exactly 1, then it will remain suspended in the fluid, neither sinking nor floating. Scuba divers try to obtain this state so that they can hover in the water. We measure the specific gravity of fluids, such as battery acid, radiator fluid, and urine, as an indicator of their condition. One device for measuring specific gravity is shown in [link].

Note:
Specific Gravity
Specific gravity is the ratio of the density of an object to a fluid (usually water).



This hydrometer is floating in a fluid of specific gravity 0.87. The glass hydrometer is filled with air and weighted with lead at the bottom. It floats highest in the densest fluids and has been calibrated and labeled so that specific gravity can be read from it directly.

Example:
Calculating Average Density: Floating Woman
Suppose a 60.0-kg woman floats in freshwater with 97.0% of her volume submerged when her lungs are full of air. What is her average density?
Strategy
We can find the woman's density by solving the equation
Equation:

$$\text{fraction submerged} = \frac{\bar{\rho}_{\text{obj}}}{\rho_{\text{fl}}}$$

for the density of the object. This yields

Equation:

$$\bar{\rho}_{\text{obj}} = \bar{\rho}_{\text{person}} = (\text{fraction submerged}) \cdot \rho_{\text{fl}}.$$

We know both the fraction submerged and the density of water, and so we can calculate the woman's density.

Solution

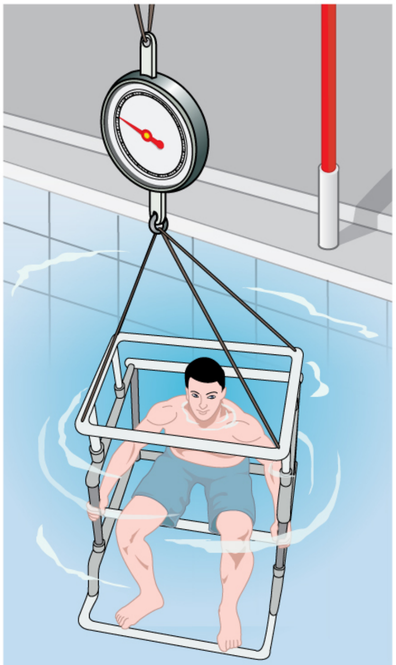
Entering the known values into the expression for her density, we obtain

Equation:

$$\bar{\rho}_{\text{person}} = 0.970 \cdot \left(10^3 \frac{\text{kg}}{\text{m}^3}\right) = 970 \frac{\text{kg}}{\text{m}^3}.$$

Discussion

Her density is less than the fluid density. We expect this because she floats. Body density is one indicator of a person's percent body fat, of interest in medical diagnostics and athletic training. (See [link].)



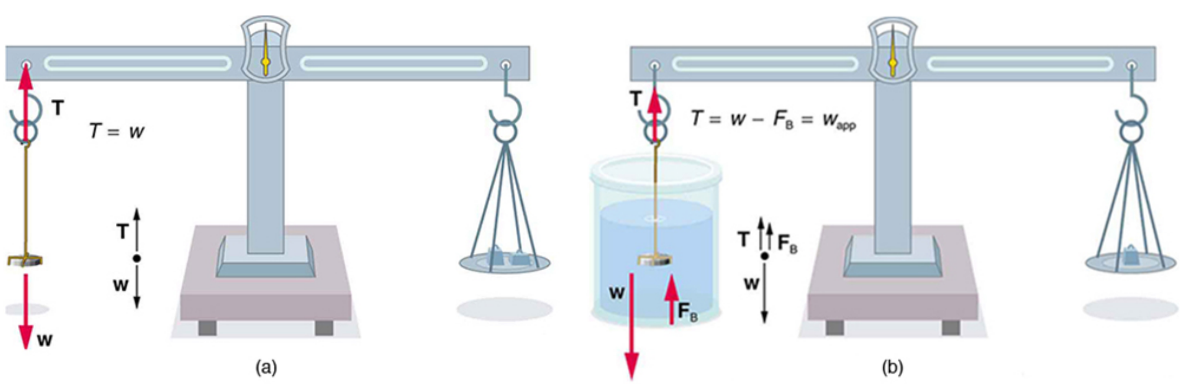
Subject in a “fat tank,” where he is weighed while completely submerged as part of a body density determination. The subject must completely empty his lungs and hold a metal weight in order to sink. Corrections are made for the residual air in his lungs (measured separately) and the metal weight. His corrected submerged weight, his weight in air,

and pinch tests of strategic fatty areas are used to calculate his percent body fat.

There are many obvious examples of lower-density objects or substances floating in higher-density fluids—oil on water, a hot-air balloon, a bit of cork in wine, an iceberg, and hot wax in a “lava lamp,” to name a few. Less obvious examples include lava rising in a volcano and mountain ranges floating on the higher-density crust and mantle beneath them. Even seemingly solid Earth has fluid characteristics.

More Density Measurements

One of the most common techniques for determining density is shown in [link].



(a) A coin is weighed in air. (b) The apparent weight of the coin is determined while it is completely submerged in a fluid of known density. These two measurements are used to calculate the density of the coin.

An object, here a coin, is weighed in air and then weighed again while submerged in a liquid. The density of the coin, an indication of its authenticity, can be calculated if the fluid density is known. This same technique can also be used to determine the density of the fluid if the density of the coin is known. All of these calculations are based on Archimedes' principle.

Archimedes' principle states that the buoyant force on the object equals the weight of the fluid displaced. This, in turn, means that the object *appears* to weigh less when submerged; we call this measurement the object's *apparent weight*. The object suffers an *apparent weight loss* equal to the weight of the fluid displaced. Alternatively, on balances that measure mass, the object suffers an *apparent mass loss* equal to the mass of fluid displaced. That is

Equation:

$$\text{apparent weight loss} = \text{weight of fluid displaced}$$

or

Equation:

$$\text{apparent mass loss} = \text{mass of fluid displaced.}$$

The next example illustrates the use of this technique.

Example:
Calculating Density: Is the Coin Authentic?

The mass of an ancient Greek coin is determined in air to be 8.630 g. When the coin is submerged in water as shown in [link], its apparent mass is 7.800 g. Calculate its density, given that water has a density of $1.000\ \text{g/cm}^3$ and that effects caused by the wire suspending the coin are negligible.

Strategy

To calculate the coin’s density, we need its mass (which is given) and its volume. The volume of the coin equals the volume of water displaced. The volume of water displaced V_{w} can be found by solving the equation for density $\rho = \frac{m}{V}$ for V.

Solution

The volume of water is $V_{\mathrm{w}} = \frac{m_{\mathrm{w}}}{\rho_{\mathrm{w}}}$ where m_{w} is the mass of water displaced. As noted, the mass of the water displaced equals the apparent mass loss, which is $m_{\mathrm{w}} = 8.630\ \mathrm{g} - 7.800\ \mathrm{g} = 0.830\ \mathrm{g}$. Thus the volume of water is $V_{\mathrm{w}} = \frac{0.830\ \mathrm{g}}{1.000\ \mathrm{g/cm^3}} = 0.830\ \mathrm{cm}^3$. This is also the volume of the coin, since it is completely submerged. We can now find the density of the coin using the definition of density:

Equation:

$$\rho_{\mathrm{c}} = \frac{m_{\mathrm{c}}}{V_{\mathrm{c}}} = \frac{8.630\ \mathrm{g}}{0.830\ \mathrm{cm}^3} = 10.4\ \mathrm{g/cm^3}.$$

Discussion

You can see from [link] that this density is very close to that of pure silver, appropriate for this type of ancient coin. Most modern counterfeits are not pure silver.

This brings us back to Archimedes’ principle and how it came into being. As the story goes, the king of Syracuse gave Archimedes the task of determining whether the royal crown maker was supplying a crown of pure gold. The purity of gold is difficult to determine by color (it can be diluted with other metals and still look as yellow as pure gold), and other analytical techniques had not yet been conceived. Even ancient peoples, however, realized that the density of gold was greater than that of any other then-known substance. Archimedes purportedly agonized over his task and had his inspiration one day while at the public baths, pondering the support the water gave his body. He came up with his now-famous principle, saw how to apply it to determine density, and ran naked down the streets of Syracuse crying “Eureka!” (Greek for “I have found it”). Similar behavior can be observed in contemporary physicists from time to time!

Note:
PhET Explorations: Buoyancy
When will objects float and when will they sink? Learn how buoyancy works with blocks. Arrows show the applied forces, and you can modify the properties of the blocks and the fluid.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/density-and-buoyancy/buoyancy_en.html

Section Summary

- Buoyant force is the net upward force on any object in any fluid. If the buoyant force is greater than the object's weight, the object will rise to the surface and float. If the buoyant force is less than the object's weight, the object will sink. If the buoyant force equals the object's weight, the object will remain suspended at that depth. The buoyant force is always present whether the object floats, sinks, or is suspended in a fluid.
- Archimedes' principle states that the buoyant force on an object equals the weight of the fluid it displaces.
- Specific gravity is the ratio of the density of an object to a fluid (usually water).

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

More force is required to pull the plug in a full bathtub than when it is empty. Does this contradict Archimedes' principle? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Do fluids exert buoyant forces in a "weightless" environment, such as in the space shuttle? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Will the same ship float higher in salt water than in freshwater? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Marbles dropped into a partially filled bathtub sink to the bottom. Part of their weight is supported by buoyant force, yet the downward force on the bottom of the tub increases by exactly the weight of the marbles. Explain why.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What fraction of ice is submerged when it floats in freshwater, given the density of water at 0°C is very close to $1000\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$?

Solution:

91.7%

Exercise:

Problem:

Logs sometimes float vertically in a lake because one end has become water-logged and denser than the other. What is the average density of a uniform-diameter log that floats with 20.0% of its length above water?

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the density of a fluid in which a hydrometer having a density of $0.750\ \mathrm{g/mL}$ floats with 92.0% of its volume submerged.

Solution:

$815\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$

Exercise:

Problem:

If your body has a density of $995\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$, what fraction of you will be submerged when floating gently in: (a) freshwater? (b) salt water, which has a density of $1027\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$?

Exercise:

Problem:

Bird bones have air pockets in them to reduce their weight—this also gives them an average density significantly less than that of the bones of other animals. Suppose an ornithologist weighs a bird bone in air and in water and finds its mass is $45.0\ \mathrm{g}$ and its apparent mass when submerged is $3.60\ \mathrm{g}$ (the bone is watertight). (a) What mass of water is displaced? (b) What is the volume of the bone? (c) What is its average density?

Solution:

(a) $41.4\ \mathrm{g}$

(b) $41.4\ \mathrm{cm^3}$

(c) $1.09\ \mathrm{g/cm^3}$

Exercise:

Problem:

A rock with a mass of 540 g in air is found to have an apparent mass of 342 g when submerged in water. (a) What mass of water is displaced? (b) What is the volume of the rock? (c) What is its average density? Is this consistent with the value for granite?

Exercise:

Problem:

Archimedes' principle can be used to calculate the density of a fluid as well as that of a solid. Suppose a chunk of iron with a mass of 390.0 g in air is found to have an apparent mass of 350.5 g when completely submerged in an unknown liquid. (a) What mass of fluid does the iron displace? (b) What is the volume of iron, using its density as given in [link] (c) Calculate the fluid's density and identify it.

Solution:

(a) 39.5 g

(b) $50\ \text{cm}^3$

(c) $0.79\ \text{g/cm}^3$

It is ethyl alcohol.

Exercise:

Problem:

In an immersion measurement of a woman's density, she is found to have a mass of 62.0 kg in air and an apparent mass of 0.0850 kg when completely submerged with lungs empty. (a) What mass of water does she displace? (b) What is her volume? (c) Calculate her density. (d) If her lung capacity is 1.75 L, is she able to float without treading water with her lungs filled with air?

Exercise:

Problem:

Some fish have a density slightly less than that of water and must exert a force (swim) to stay submerged. What force must an 85.0-kg grouper exert to stay submerged in salt water if its body density is $1015\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$?

Solution:

8.21 N

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the buoyant force on a 2.00-L helium balloon. (b) Given the mass of the rubber in the balloon is 1.50 g, what is the net vertical force on the balloon if it is let go? You can neglect the volume of the rubber.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the density of a woman who floats in freshwater with 4.00% of her volume above the surface? This could be measured by placing her in a tank with marks on the side to measure how much water she displaces when floating and when held under water (briefly). (b) What percent of her volume is above the surface when she floats in seawater?

Solution:

(a) $960\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$

(b) 6.34%

She indeed floats more in seawater.

Exercise:

Problem:

A certain man has a mass of 80 kg and a density of $955\ \text{kg/m}^3$ (excluding the air in his lungs). (a) Calculate his volume. (b) Find the buoyant force air exerts on him. (c) What is the ratio of the buoyant force to his weight?

Exercise:

Problem:

A simple compass can be made by placing a small bar magnet on a cork floating in water. (a) What fraction of a plain cork will be submerged when floating in water? (b) If the cork has a mass of 10.0 g and a 20.0-g magnet is placed on it, what fraction of the cork will be submerged? (c) Will the bar magnet and cork float in ethyl alcohol?

Solution:

(a) 0.24

(b) 0.68

(c) Yes, the cork will float because $\rho_{\text{obj}} < \rho_{\text{ethyl alcohol}}(0.678\ \text{g/cm}^3 < 0.79\ \text{g/cm}^3)$

Exercise:

Problem:

What fraction of an iron anchor's weight will be supported by buoyant force when submerged in saltwater?

Exercise:

Problem:

Scurrilous con artists have been known to represent gold-plated tungsten ingots as pure gold and sell them to the greedy at prices much below gold value but deservedly far above the cost of tungsten. With what accuracy must you be able to measure the mass of such an ingot in and out of water to tell that it is almost pure tungsten rather than pure gold?

Solution:

The difference is 0.006%.

Exercise:

Problem:

A twin-sized air mattress used for camping has dimensions of 100 cm by 200 cm by 15 cm when blown up. The weight of the mattress is 2 kg. How heavy a person could the air mattress hold if it is placed in freshwater?

Exercise:

Problem:

Referring to [link], prove that the buoyant force on the cylinder is equal to the weight of the fluid displaced (Archimedes' principle). You may assume that the buoyant force is $F_2 - F_1$ and that the ends of the cylinder have equal areas A. Note that the volume of the cylinder (and that of the fluid it displaces) equals $(h_2 - h_1)A$.

Solution:

$$F_{\text{net}} = F_2 - F_1 = P_2A - P_1A = (P_2 - P_1)A$$

$$= (h_2\rho_{\text{fl}}g - h_1\rho_{\text{fl}}g)A$$

$$= (h_2 - h_1)\rho_{\text{fl}}\text{gA}$$

where ρ_{fl} = density of fluid. Therefore,

$$F_{\text{net}} = (h_2 - h_1)A\rho_{\text{fl}}g = V_{\text{fl}}\rho_{\text{fl}}g = m_{\text{fl}}g = w_{\text{fl}}$$

where is w_{fl} the weight of the fluid displaced.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A 75.0-kg man floats in freshwater with 3.00% of his volume above water when his lungs are empty, and 5.00% of his volume above water when his lungs are full. Calculate the volume of air he inhales—called his lung capacity—in liters. (b) Does this lung volume seem reasonable?

Glossary

Archimedes' principle
: the buoyant force on an object equals the weight of the fluid it displaces

buoyant force
: the net upward force on any object in any fluid

specific gravity
: the ratio of the density of an object to a fluid (usually water)

Cohesion and Adhesion in Liquids: Surface Tension and Capillary Action

- Understand cohesive and adhesive forces.
- Define surface tension.
- Understand capillary action.

Cohesion and Adhesion in Liquids

Children blow soap bubbles and play in the spray of a sprinkler on a hot summer day. (See [link].) An underwater spider keeps his air supply in a shiny bubble he carries wrapped around him. A technician draws blood into a small-diameter tube just by touching it to a drop on a pricked finger. A premature infant struggles to inflate her lungs. What is the common thread? All these activities are dominated by the attractive forces between atoms and molecules in liquids—both within a liquid and between the liquid and its surroundings.

Attractive forces between molecules of the same type are called **cohesive forces**. Liquids can, for example, be held in open containers because cohesive forces hold the molecules together. Attractive forces between molecules of different types are called **adhesive forces**. Such forces cause liquid drops to cling to window panes, for example. In this section we examine effects directly attributable to cohesive and adhesive forces in liquids.

Note:
Cohesive Forces
Attractive forces between molecules of the same type are called cohesive forces.

Note:
Adhesive Forces

Attractive forces between molecules of different types are called adhesive forces.

The soap bubbles in this photograph are caused by cohesive forces among molecules in liquids. (credit: Steve Ford Elliott)

Surface Tension

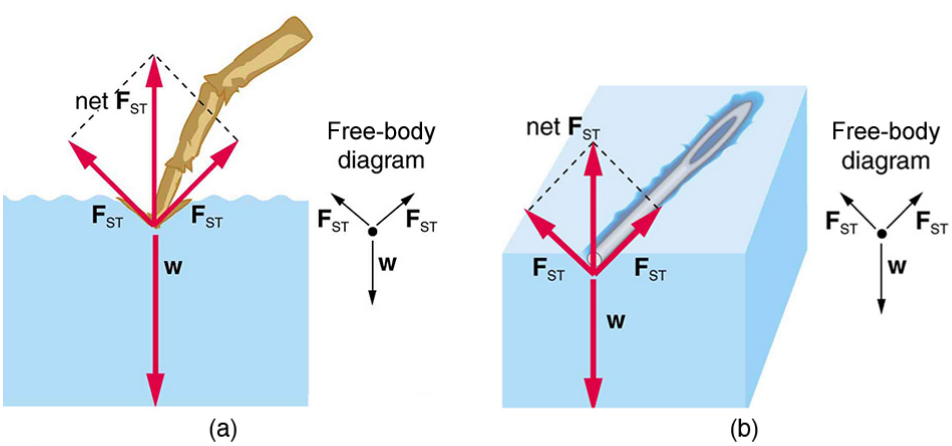
Cohesive forces between molecules cause the surface of a liquid to contract to the smallest possible surface area. This general effect is called **surface tension**. Molecules on the surface are pulled inward by cohesive forces, reducing the surface area. Molecules inside the liquid experience zero net force, since they have neighbors on all sides.

Note:
Surface Tension

Cohesive forces between molecules cause the surface of a liquid to contract to the smallest possible surface area. This general effect is called surface tension.

Note:
Making Connections: Surface Tension
Forces between atoms and molecules underlie the macroscopic effect called surface tension. These attractive forces pull the molecules closer together and tend to minimize the surface area. This is another example of a submicroscopic explanation for a macroscopic phenomenon.

The model of a liquid surface acting like a stretched elastic sheet can effectively explain surface tension effects. For example, some insects can walk on water (as opposed to floating in it) as we would walk on a trampoline—they dent the surface as shown in [link](a). [link](b) shows another example, where a needle rests on a water surface. The iron needle cannot, and does not, float, because its density is greater than that of water. Rather, its weight is supported by forces in the stretched surface that try to make the surface smaller or flatter. If the needle were placed point down on the surface, its weight acting on a smaller area would break the surface, and it would sink.



Surface tension supporting the weight of an insect and an iron needle, both of which rest on the surface without penetrating it. They are not floating; rather, they are supported by the surface of the liquid. (a) An insect leg dents the water surface. F_{ST} is a restoring force (surface tension) parallel to the surface. (b) An iron needle similarly dents a water surface until the restoring force (surface tension) grows to equal its weight.

Surface tension is proportional to the strength of the cohesive force, which varies with the type of liquid. Surface tension γ is defined to be the force F per unit length L exerted by a stretched liquid membrane:
Equation:

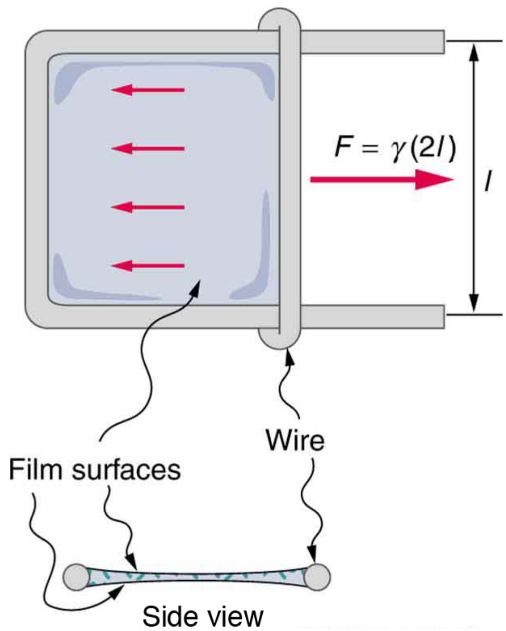
$$\gamma = \frac{F}{L}.$$

[link] lists values of γ for some liquids. For the insect of [link](a), its weight w is supported by the upward components of the surface tension force: $w = \gamma L \sin \theta$, where L is the circumference of the insect's foot in contact with the water. [link] shows one way to measure surface tension. The liquid film exerts a force on the movable wire in an attempt to reduce its surface area. The magnitude of this force depends on the surface tension of the liquid and can be measured accurately.

Surface tension is the reason why liquids form bubbles and droplets. The inward surface tension force causes bubbles to be approximately spherical and raises the pressure of the gas trapped inside relative to atmospheric pressure outside. It can be shown that the gauge pressure P inside a spherical bubble is given by
Equation:

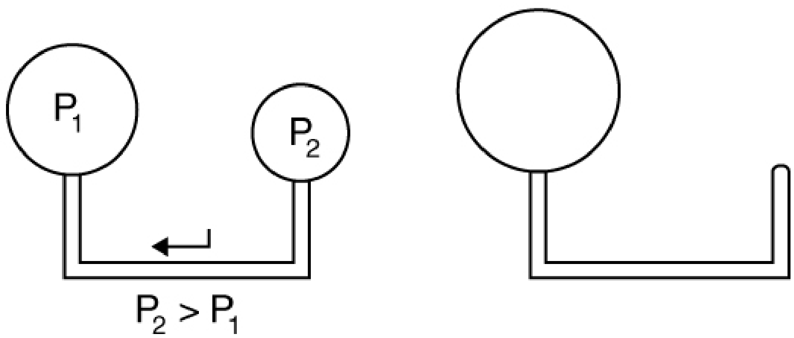
$$P = \frac{4\gamma}{r},$$

where r is the radius of the bubble. Thus the pressure inside a bubble is greatest when the bubble is the smallest. Another bit of evidence for this is illustrated in [link]. When air is allowed to flow between two balloons of unequal size, the smaller balloon tends to collapse, filling the larger balloon.



Sliding wire device used for measuring surface tension; the device exerts a force to reduce the film's surface area. The force needed to hold the wire in place is $F = \gamma L = \gamma(2l)$, since there are *two* liquid surfaces attached to the wire. This force remains nearly constant as the

film is stretched, until the film approaches its breaking point.



With the valve closed, two balloons of different sizes are attached to each end of a tube. Upon opening the valve, the smaller balloon decreases in size with the air moving to fill the larger balloon. The pressure in a spherical balloon is inversely proportional to its radius, so that the smaller balloon has a greater internal pressure than the larger balloon, resulting in this flow.

Liquid	**Surface tension γ(N/m)**
Water at 0ºC	0.0756

Liquid	Surface tension γ(N/m)
Water at $20^{\circ}C$	0.0728
Water at $100^{\circ}C$	0.0589
Soapy water (typical)	0.0370
Ethyl alcohol	0.0223
Glycerin	0.0631
Mercury	0.465
Olive oil	0.032
Tissue fluids (typical)	0.050
Blood, whole at $37^{\circ}C$	0.058
Blood plasma at $37^{\circ}C$	0.073
Gold at $1070^{\circ}C$	1.000
Oxygen at $-193^{\circ}C$	0.0157
Helium at $-269^{\circ}C$	0.00012

Surface Tension of Some Liquids[footnote]
At 20ºC unless otherwise stated.

Example:
Surface Tension: Pressure Inside a Bubble
Calculate the gauge pressure inside a soap bubble 2.00×10^{-4} m in radius using the surface tension for soapy water in [link]. Convert this pressure to

mm Hg.

Strategy

The radius is given and the surface tension can be found in [link], and so P can be found directly from the equation $P=\frac{4\gamma}{r}$.

Solution

Substituting r and γ into the equation $P=\frac{4\gamma}{r}$, we obtain

Equation:

$$P=\frac{4\gamma}{r}=\frac{4(0.037\text{ N/m})}{2.00\times10^{-4}\text{ m}}=740\text{ N/m}^2=740\text{ Pa.}$$

We use a conversion factor to get this into units of mm Hg:

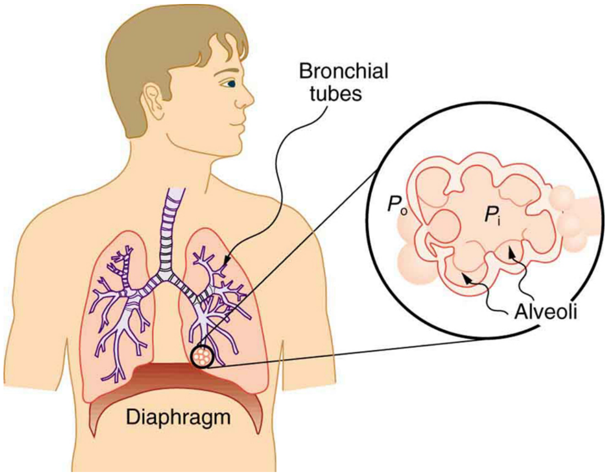
Equation:

$$P=\left(740\text{ N/m}^2\right)\frac{1.00\text{ mm Hg}}{133\text{ N/m}^2}=5.56\text{ mm Hg.}$$

Discussion

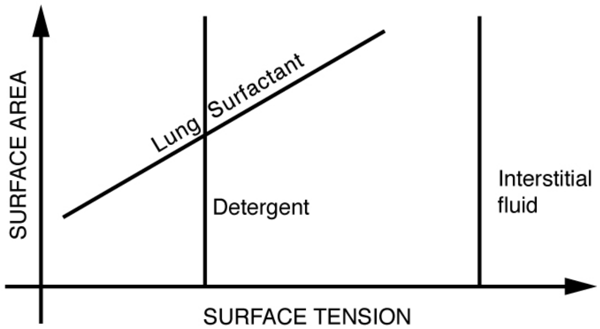
Note that if a hole were to be made in the bubble, the air would be forced out, the bubble would decrease in radius, and the pressure inside would *increase* to atmospheric pressure (760 mm Hg).

Our lungs contain hundreds of millions of mucus-lined sacs called *alveoli*, which are very similar in size, and about 0.1 mm in diameter. (See [link].) You can exhale without muscle action by allowing surface tension to contract these sacs. Medical patients whose breathing is aided by a positive pressure respirator have air blown into the lungs, but are generally allowed to exhale on their own. Even if there is paralysis, surface tension in the alveoli will expel air from the lungs. Since pressure increases as the radii of the alveoli decrease, an occasional deep cleansing breath is needed to fully reinflate the alveoli. Respirators are programmed to do this and we find it natural, as do our companion dogs and cats, to take a cleansing breath before settling into a nap.



Bronchial tubes in the lungs branch into ever-smaller structures, finally ending in alveoli. The alveoli act like tiny bubbles. The surface tension of their mucous lining aids in exhalation and can prevent inhalation if too great.

The tension in the walls of the alveoli results from the membrane tissue and a liquid on the walls of the alveoli containing a long lipoprotein that acts as a surfactant (a surface-tension reducing substance). The need for the surfactant results from the tendency of small alveoli to collapse and the air to fill into the larger alveoli making them even larger (as demonstrated in [link]). During inhalation, the lipoprotein molecules are pulled apart and the wall tension increases as the radius increases (increased surface tension). During exhalation, the molecules slide back together and the surface tension decreases, helping to prevent a collapse of the alveoli. The surfactant therefore serves to change the wall tension so that small alveoli don’t collapse and large alveoli are prevented from expanding too much. This tension change is a unique property of these surfactants, and is not shared by detergents (which simply lower surface tension). (See [link].)



Surface tension as a function of surface area. The surface tension for lung surfactant decreases with decreasing area. This ensures that small alveoli don’t collapse and large alveoli are not able to over expand.

If water gets into the lungs, the surface tension is too great and you cannot inhale. This is a severe problem in resuscitating drowning victims. A similar problem occurs in newborn infants who are born without this surfactant—their lungs are very difficult to inflate. This condition is known as *hyaline membrane disease* and is a leading cause of death for infants, particularly in premature births. Some success has been achieved in treating hyaline membrane disease by spraying a surfactant into the infant’s breathing passages. Emphysema produces the opposite problem with alveoli. Alveolar walls of emphysema victims deteriorate, and the sacs combine to form larger sacs. Because pressure produced by surface tension decreases with increasing radius, these larger sacs produce smaller pressure, reducing the ability of emphysema victims to exhale. A common test for emphysema is to measure the pressure and volume of air that can be exhaled.

Note:
Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation

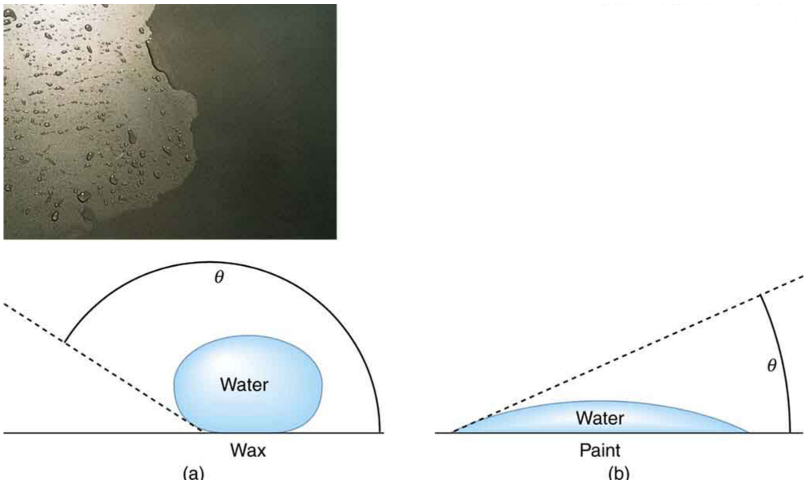
(1) Try floating a sewing needle on water. In order for this activity to work, the needle needs to be very clean as even the oil from your fingers can be sufficient to affect the surface properties of the needle. (2) Place the bristles of a paint brush into water. Pull the brush out and notice that for a short while, the bristles will stick together. The surface tension of the water surrounding the bristles is sufficient to hold the bristles together. As the bristles dry out, the surface tension effect dissipates. (3) Place a loop of thread on the surface of still water in such a way that all of the thread is in contact with the water. Note the shape of the loop. Now place a drop of detergent into the middle of the loop. What happens to the shape of the loop? Why? (4) Sprinkle pepper onto the surface of water. Add a drop of detergent. What happens? Why? (5) Float two matches parallel to each other and add a drop of detergent between them. What happens? Note: For each new experiment, the water needs to be replaced and the bowl washed to free it of any residual detergent.

Adhesion and Capillary Action

Why is it that water beads up on a waxed car but does not on bare paint? The answer is that the adhesive forces between water and wax are much smaller than those between water and paint. Competition between the forces of adhesion and cohesion are important in the macroscopic behavior of liquids. An important factor in studying the roles of these two forces is the angle θ between the tangent to the liquid surface and the surface. (See [link].) The **contact angle** θ is directly related to the relative strength of the cohesive and adhesive forces. The larger the strength of the cohesive force relative to the adhesive force, the larger θ is, and the more the liquid tends to form a droplet. The smaller θ is, the smaller the relative strength, so that the adhesive force is able to flatten the drop. [link] lists contact angles for several combinations of liquids and solids.

Note:
Contact Angle

The angle θ between the tangent to the liquid surface and the surface is called the contact angle.



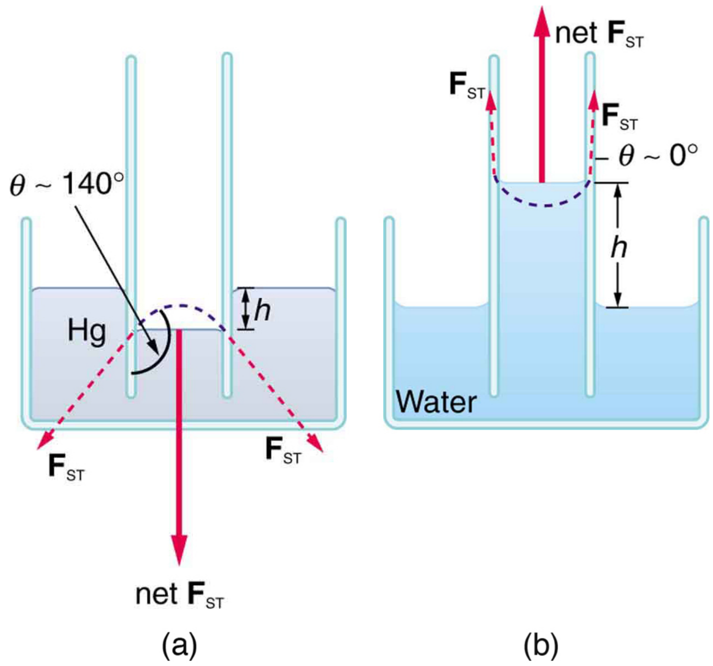
In the photograph, water beads on the waxed car paint and flattens on the unwaxed paint. (a) Water forms beads on the waxed surface because the cohesive forces responsible for surface tension are larger than the adhesive forces, which tend to flatten the drop. (b) Water beads on bare paint are flattened considerably because the adhesive forces between water and paint are strong, overcoming surface tension. The contact angle θ is directly related to the relative strengths of the cohesive and adhesive forces. The larger θ is, the larger the ratio of cohesive to adhesive forces. (credit: P. P. Urone)

One important phenomenon related to the relative strength of cohesive and adhesive forces is **capillary action**—the tendency of a fluid to be raised or

suppressed in a narrow tube, or *capillary tube*. This action causes blood to be drawn into a small-diameter tube when the tube touches a drop.

Note:
Capillary Action
The tendency of a fluid to be raised or suppressed in a narrow tube, or capillary tube, is called capillary action.

If a capillary tube is placed vertically into a liquid, as shown in [link], capillary action will raise or suppress the liquid inside the tube depending on the combination of substances. The actual effect depends on the relative strength of the cohesive and adhesive forces and, thus, the contact angle θ given in the table. If θ is less than 90°, then the fluid will be raised; if θ is greater than 90°, it will be suppressed. Mercury, for example, has a very large surface tension and a large contact angle with glass. When placed in a tube, the surface of a column of mercury curves downward, somewhat like a drop. The curved surface of a fluid in a tube is called a **meniscus**. The tendency of surface tension is always to reduce the surface area. Surface tension thus flattens the curved liquid surface in a capillary tube. This results in a downward force in mercury and an upward force in water, as seen in [link].



(a) Mercury is suppressed in a glass tube because its contact angle is greater than 90º. Surface tension exerts a downward force as it flattens the mercury, suppressing it in the tube. The dashed line shows the shape the mercury surface would have without the flattening effect of surface tension. (b) Water is raised in a glass tube because its contact angle is nearly 0º. Surface tension therefore exerts an upward force when it flattens the surface to reduce its area.

Interface	Contact angle Θ
Mercury–glass	140º
Water–glass	0º
Water–paraffin	107º
Water–silver	90º
Organic liquids (most)–glass	0º
Ethyl alcohol–glass	0º
Kerosene–glass	26º

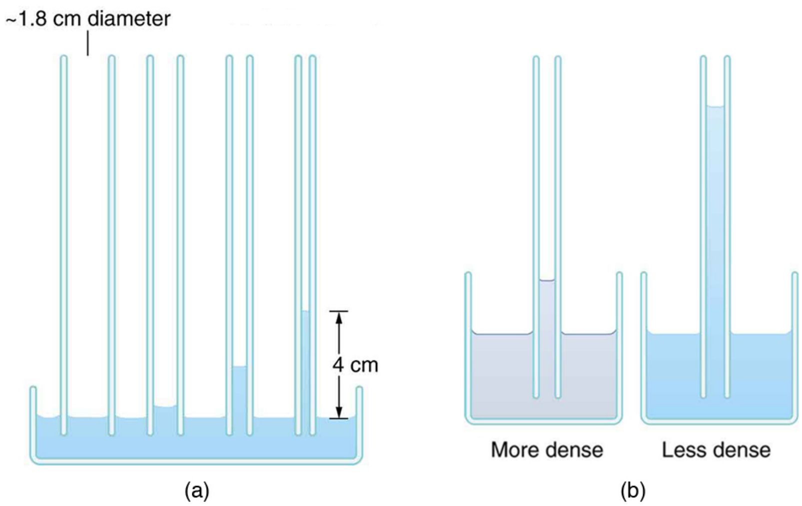
Contact Angles of Some Substances

Capillary action can move liquids horizontally over very large distances, but the height to which it can raise or suppress a liquid in a tube is limited by its weight. It can be shown that this height h is given by

Equation:

$$h=\frac{2\gamma \cos \theta}{\rho g r}.$$

If we look at the different factors in this expression, we might see how it makes good sense. The height is directly proportional to the surface tension γ, which is its direct cause. Furthermore, the height is inversely proportional to tube radius—the smaller the radius r, the higher the fluid can be raised, since a smaller tube holds less mass. The height is also inversely proportional to fluid density ρ, since a larger density means a greater mass in the same volume. (See [link].)



(a) Capillary action depends on the radius of a tube. The smaller the tube, the greater the height reached. The height is negligible for large-radius tubes. (b) A denser fluid in the same tube rises to a smaller height, all other factors being the same.

Example:
Calculating Radius of a Capillary Tube: Capillary Action: Tree Sap

Can capillary action be solely responsible for sap rising in trees? To answer this question, calculate the radius of a capillary tube that would raise sap 100 m to the top of a giant redwood, assuming that sap's density is 1050 kg/m^3, its contact angle is zero, and its surface tension is the same as that of water at 20.0° C.

Strategy

The height to which a liquid will rise as a result of capillary action is given by $h = \frac{2\gamma\cos\theta}{\rho gr}$, and every quantity is known except for r.

Solution

Solving for r and substituting known values produces

Equation:

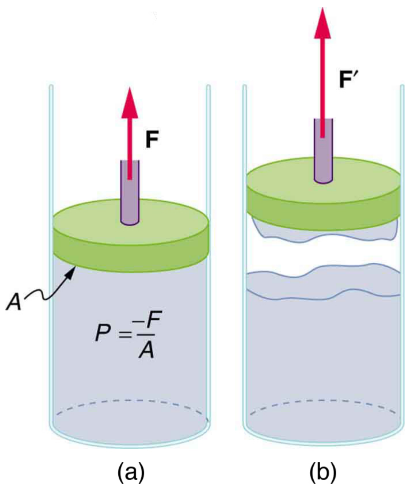
$$\begin{aligned} r &= \frac{2\gamma\cos\theta}{\rho gh} = \frac{2(0.0728\text{ N/m})\cos(0^\circ)}{\left(1050\text{ kg/m}^3\right)\left(9.80\text{ m/s}^2\right)(100\text{ m})} \\ &= 1.41\times10^{-7}\text{ m.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

This result is unreasonable. Sap in trees moves through the *xylem*, which forms tubes with radii as small as $2.5\times10^{-5}\text{ m}$. This value is about 180 times as large as the radius found necessary here to raise sap 100 m. This means that capillary action alone cannot be solely responsible for sap getting to the tops of trees.

How *does* sap get to the tops of tall trees? (Recall that a column of water can only rise to a height of 10 m when there is a vacuum at the top—see [link].) The question has not been completely resolved, but it appears that it is pulled up like a chain held together by cohesive forces. As each molecule of sap enters a leaf and evaporates (a process called transpiration), the entire chain is pulled up a notch. So a negative pressure created by water evaporation must be present to pull the sap up through the xylem vessels. In most situations, *fluids can push but can exert only negligible pull*, because the cohesive forces seem to be too small to hold the molecules tightly together. But in this case, the cohesive force of water molecules provides a very strong pull. [link] shows one device for studying negative pressure.

Some experiments have demonstrated that negative pressures sufficient to pull sap to the tops of the tallest trees *can* be achieved.



(a) When the piston is raised, it stretches the liquid slightly, putting it under tension and creating a negative absolute pressure $P = -F/A$. (b) The liquid eventually separates, giving an experimental limit to negative pressure in this liquid.

Section Summary

- Attractive forces between molecules of the same type are called cohesive forces.
- Attractive forces between molecules of different types are called adhesive forces.
- Cohesive forces between molecules cause the surface of a liquid to contract to the smallest possible surface area. This general effect is called surface tension.
- Capillary action is the tendency of a fluid to be raised or suppressed in a narrow tube, or capillary tube which is due to the relative strength of cohesive and adhesive forces.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

The density of oil is less than that of water, yet a loaded oil tanker sits lower in the water than an empty one. Why?

Exercise:

Problem:

Is surface tension due to cohesive or adhesive forces, or both?

Exercise:

Problem:

Is capillary action due to cohesive or adhesive forces, or both?

Exercise:

Problem:

Birds such as ducks, geese, and swans have greater densities than water, yet they are able to sit on its surface. Explain this ability, noting that water does not wet their feathers and that they cannot sit on soapy water.

Exercise:

Problem:

Water beads up on an oily sunbather, but not on her neighbor, whose skin is not oiled. Explain in terms of cohesive and adhesive forces.

Exercise:

Problem:

Could capillary action be used to move fluids in a “weightless” environment, such as in an orbiting space probe?

Exercise:

Problem:

What effect does capillary action have on the reading of a manometer with uniform diameter? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Pressure between the inside chest wall and the outside of the lungs normally remains negative. Explain how pressure inside the lungs can become positive (to cause exhalation) without muscle action.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the pressure inside an alveolus having a radius of 2.50×10^{-4} m if the surface tension of the fluid-lined wall is the same as for soapy water? You may assume the pressure is the same as that created by a spherical bubble.

Solution:

592 N/m^2

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The pressure inside an alveolus with a 2.00×10^{-4}-m radius is 1.40×10^3 Pa, due to its fluid-lined walls. Assuming the alveolus acts like a spherical bubble, what is the surface tension of the fluid? (b) Identify the likely fluid. (You may need to extrapolate between values in [link].)

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the gauge pressure in millimeters of mercury inside a soap bubble 0.100 m in diameter?

Solution:

2.23×10^{-2} mm Hg

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the force on the slide wire in [link] if it is 3.50 cm long and the fluid is ethyl alcohol.

Exercise:

Problem:

[link](a) shows the effect of tube radius on the height to which capillary action can raise a fluid. (a) Calculate the height h for water in a glass tube with a radius of 0.900 cm—a rather large tube like the one on the left. (b) What is the radius of the glass tube on the right if it raises water to 4.00 cm?

Solution:

(a) 1.65×10^{-3} m

(b) 3.71×10^{-4} m

Exercise:

Problem:

We stated in [link] that a xylem tube is of radius 2.50×10^{-5} m. Verify that such a tube raises sap less than a meter by finding h for it, making the same assumptions that sap's density is 1050 kg/m^3, its contact angle is zero, and its surface tension is the same as that of water at 20.0^{o} C.

Exercise:

Problem:

What fluid is in the device shown in [link] if the force is 3.16×10^{-3} N and the length of the wire is 2.50 cm? Calculate the surface tension γ and find a likely match from [link].

Solution:

$6.32 \times 10^{-2} \text{ N/m}$

Based on the values in table, the fluid is probably glycerin.

Exercise:

Problem:

If the gauge pressure inside a rubber balloon with a 10.0-cm radius is 1.50 cm of water, what is the effective surface tension of the balloon?

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the gauge pressures inside 2.00-cm-radius bubbles of water, alcohol, and soapy water. Which liquid forms the most stable bubbles, neglecting any effects of evaporation?

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned} P_{\text{w}} &= 14.6\ \text{N/m}^2, \\ P_{\text{a}} &= 4.46\ \text{N/m}^2, \\ P_{\text{sw}} &= 7.40\ \text{N/m}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Alcohol forms the most stable bubble, since the absolute pressure inside is closest to atmospheric pressure.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose water is raised by capillary action to a height of 5.00 cm in a glass tube. (a) To what height will it be raised in a paraffin tube of the same radius? (b) In a silver tube of the same radius?

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the contact angle θ for olive oil if capillary action raises it to a height of 7.07 cm in a glass tube with a radius of 0.100 mm. Is this value consistent with that for most organic liquids?

Solution:

5.1^{o}

This is near the value of $\theta = 0^{\text{o}}$ for most organic liquids.

Exercise:

Problem:

When two soap bubbles touch, the larger is inflated by the smaller until they form a single bubble. (a) What is the gauge pressure inside a soap bubble with a 1.50-cm radius? (b) Inside a 4.00-cm-radius soap bubble? (c) Inside the single bubble they form if no air is lost when they touch?

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the ratio of the heights to which water and mercury are raised by capillary action in the same glass tube.

Solution:

-2.78

The ratio is negative because water is raised whereas mercury is lowered.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the ratio of heights to which ethyl alcohol and water are raised by capillary action in the same glass tube?

Glossary

adhesive forces
: the attractive forces between molecules of different types

capillary action
: the tendency of a fluid to be raised or lowered in a narrow tube

cohesive forces
: the attractive forces between molecules of the same type

contact angle
: the angle θ between the tangent to the liquid surface and the surface

surface tension
: the cohesive forces between molecules which cause the surface of a liquid to contract to the smallest possible surface area

Pressures in the Body

- Explain the concept of pressure the in human body.
- Explain systolic and diastolic blood pressures.
- Describe pressures in the eye, lungs, spinal column, bladder, and skeletal system.

Pressure in the Body

Next to taking a person's temperature and weight, measuring blood pressure is the most common of all medical examinations. Control of high blood pressure is largely responsible for the significant decreases in heart attack and stroke fatalities achieved in the last three decades. The pressures in various parts of the body can be measured and often provide valuable medical indicators. In this section, we consider a few examples together with some of the physics that accompanies them.

[link] lists some of the measured pressures in mm Hg, the units most commonly quoted.

Body system	**Gauge pressure in mm Hg**
Blood pressures in large arteries (resting)	
Maximum (systolic)	100–140
Minimum (diastolic)	60–90
Blood pressure in large veins	4–15
Eye	12–24
Brain and spinal fluid (lying down)	5–12
Bladder	
While filling	0–25
When full	100–150
Chest cavity between lungs and ribs	−8 to −4
Inside lungs	−2 to +3
Digestive tract	

Body system	Gauge pressure in mm Hg
Esophagus	−2
Stomach	0–20
Intestines	10–20
Middle ear	<1

Typical Pressures in Humans

Blood Pressure

Common arterial blood pressure measurements typically produce values of 120 mm Hg and 80 mm Hg, respectively, for systolic and diastolic pressures. Both pressures have health implications. When systolic pressure is chronically high, the risk of stroke and heart attack is increased. If, however, it is too low, fainting is a problem. **Systolic pressure** increases dramatically during exercise to increase blood flow and returns to normal afterward. This change produces no ill effects and, in fact, may be beneficial to the tone of the circulatory system. **Diastolic pressure** can be an indicator of fluid balance. When low, it may indicate that a person is hemorrhaging internally and needs a transfusion. Conversely, high diastolic pressure indicates a ballooning of the blood vessels, which may be due to the transfusion of too much fluid into the circulatory system. High diastolic pressure is also an indication that blood vessels are not dilating properly to pass blood through. This can seriously strain the heart in its attempt to pump blood.

Blood leaves the heart at about 120 mm Hg but its pressure continues to decrease (to almost 0) as it goes from the aorta to smaller arteries to small veins (see [link]). The pressure differences in the circulation system are caused by blood flow through the system as well as the position of the person. For a person standing up, the pressure in the feet will be larger than at the heart due to the weight of the blood $(P = h\rho g)$. If we assume that the distance between the heart and the feet of a person in an upright position is 1.4 m, then the increase in pressure in the feet relative to that in the heart (for a static column of blood) is given by

Equation:

$$\Delta P = \Delta h\rho g = (1.4\ \text{m})\left(1050\ \text{kg/m}^3\right)\left(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2\right) = 1.4 \times 10^4\ \text{Pa} = 108\ \text{mm Hg.}$$

Note:
Increase in Pressure in the Feet of a Person

Equation:

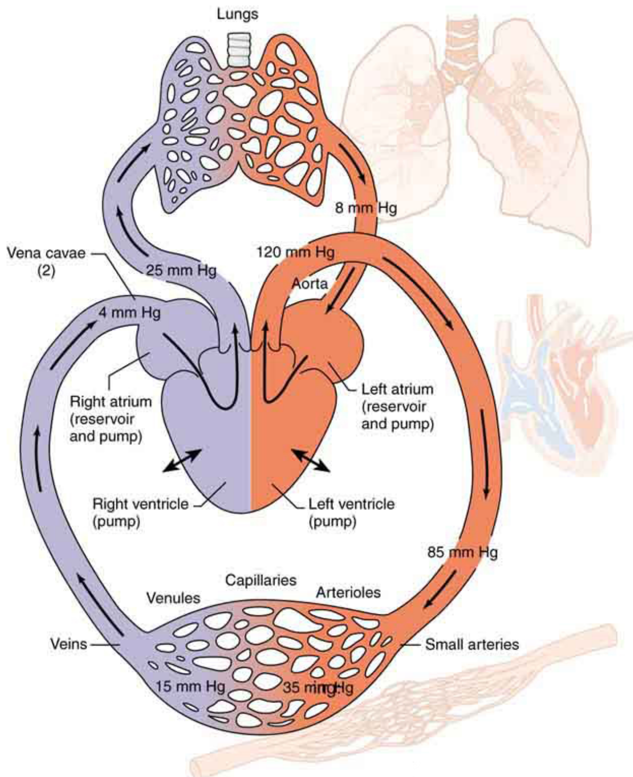
$$\Delta P = \Delta h\rho g = (1.4\ \text{m})\left(1050\ \text{kg/m}^3\right)\left(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2\right) = 1.4 \times 10^4\ \text{Pa} = 108\ \text{mm Hg.}$$

Standing a long time can lead to an accumulation of blood in the legs and swelling. This is the reason why soldiers who are required to stand still for long periods of time have been known to faint. Elastic bandages around the calf can help prevent this accumulation and can also help provide increased pressure to enable the veins to send blood back up to the heart. For similar reasons, doctors recommend tight stockings for long-haul flights.

Blood pressure may also be measured in the major veins, the heart chambers, arteries to the brain, and the lungs. But these pressures are usually only monitored during surgery or for patients in intensive care since the measurements are invasive. To obtain these pressure measurements, qualified health care workers thread thin tubes, called catheters, into appropriate locations to transmit pressures to external measuring devices.

The heart consists of two pumps—the right side forcing blood through the lungs and the left causing blood to flow through the rest of the body ([link]). Right-heart failure, for example, results in a rise in the pressure in the vena cavae and a drop in pressure in the arteries to the lungs. Left-heart failure results in a rise in the pressure entering the left side of the heart and a drop in aortal pressure. Implications of these and other pressures on flow in the circulatory system will be discussed in more detail in Fluid Dynamics and Its Biological and Medical Applications.

Note:
Two Pumps of the Heart
The heart consists of two pumps—the right side forcing blood through the lungs and the left causing blood to flow through the rest of the body.



Schematic of the circulatory system showing typical pressures. The two pumps in the heart increase pressure and that pressure is reduced as the blood flows through the body. Long-term deviations from these pressures have medical implications discussed in some detail in the Fluid Dynamics and Its Biological and Medical Applications. Only aortal or arterial blood pressure can be measured noninvasively.

Pressure in the Eye

The shape of the eye is maintained by fluid pressure, called **intraocular pressure**, which is normally in the range of 12.0 to 24.0 mm Hg. When the circulation of fluid in the eye is blocked, it can lead to a buildup in pressure, a condition called **glaucoma**. The net pressure can become as great as 85.0 mm Hg, an abnormally large pressure that can permanently damage the optic nerve. To get an idea of the force involved, suppose the back of the eye has an area of $6.0\ \text{cm}^2$, and the net pressure is 85.0 mm Hg. Force is given by $F = \text{PA}$. To get F in newtons, we convert the area to m^2 ($1\ \text{m}^2 = 10^4\ \text{cm}^2$). Then we calculate as follows:

Equation:

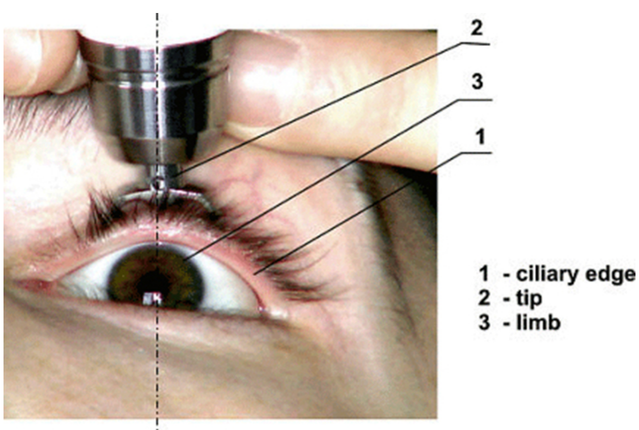
$$F = h\rho \text{g} \text{A} = \left(85.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}\right)\left(13.6 \times 10^{3}\ \text{kg/m}^{3}\right)\left(9.80\ \text{m/s}^{2}\right)\left(6.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}^{2}\right) = 6.8\ \text{N}.$$

Note:
Eye Pressure
The shape of the eye is maintained by fluid pressure, called intraocular pressure. When the circulation of fluid in the eye is blocked, it can lead to a buildup in pressure, a condition called glaucoma. The force is calculated as
Equation:

$$F = h\rho \text{g} \text{A} = \left(85.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}\right)\left(13.6 \times 10^{3}\ \text{kg/m}^{3}\right)\left(9.80\ \text{m/s}^{2}\right)\left(6.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}^{2}\right) = 6.8\ \text{N}.$$

This force is the weight of about a 680-g mass. A mass of 680 g resting on the eye (imagine 1.5 lb resting on your eye) would be sufficient to cause it damage. (A normal force here would be the weight of about 120 g, less than one-quarter of our initial value.)

People over 40 years of age are at greatest risk of developing glaucoma and should have their intraocular pressure tested routinely. Most measurements involve exerting a force on the (anesthetized) eye over some area (a pressure) and observing the eye's response. A noncontact approach uses a puff of air and a measurement is made of the force needed to indent the eye ([link]). If the intraocular pressure is high, the eye will deform less and rebound more vigorously than normal. Excessive intraocular pressures can be detected reliably and sometimes controlled effectively.



The intraocular eye pressure can be read with a tonometer. (credit: DevelopAll at the Wikipedia Project.)

Example:
Calculating Gauge Pressure and Depth: Damage to the Eardrum
Suppose a 3.00-N force can rupture an eardrum. (a) If the eardrum has an area of $1.00\ \mathrm{cm}^2$, calculate the maximum tolerable gauge pressure on the eardrum in newtons per meter squared and convert it to millimeters of mercury. (b) At what depth in freshwater would this person's eardrum rupture, assuming the gauge pressure in the middle ear is zero?
Strategy for (a)
The pressure can be found directly from its definition since we know the force and area. We are looking for the gauge pressure.
Solution for (a)
Equation:

$$P_{\mathrm{g}} = F/A = 3.00\ \mathrm{N}/(1.00 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{m}^2) = 3.00 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{N/m}^2.$$

We now need to convert this to units of mm Hg:
Equation:

$$P_{\mathrm{g}} = 3.0 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{N/m}^2 \left(\frac{1.0\ \mathrm{mm\ Hg}}{133\ \mathrm{N/m}^2} \right) = 226\ \mathrm{mm\ Hg}.$$

Strategy for (b)
Here we will use the fact that the water pressure varies linearly with depth h below the surface.
Solution for (b)
$P = h\rho g$ and therefore $h = P/\rho g$. Using the value above for P, we have
Equation:

$$h = \frac{3.0 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{N/m}^2}{(1.00 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{kg/m}^3)(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s}^2)} = 3.06\ \mathrm{m}.$$

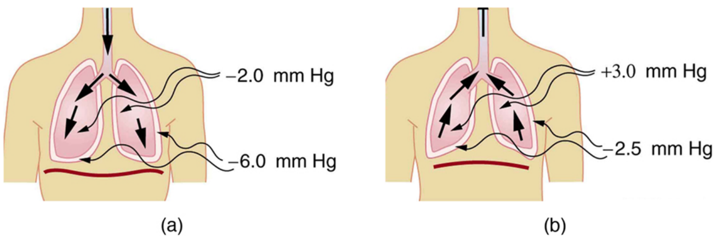
Discussion
Similarly, increased pressure exerted upon the eardrum from the middle ear can arise when an infection causes a fluid buildup.

Pressure Associated with the Lungs

The pressure inside the lungs increases and decreases with each breath. The pressure drops to below atmospheric pressure (negative gauge pressure) when you inhale, causing air to flow into the lungs. It increases above atmospheric pressure (positive gauge pressure) when you exhale, forcing air out.

Lung pressure is controlled by several mechanisms. Muscle action in the diaphragm and rib cage is necessary for inhalation; this muscle action increases the volume of the lungs thereby reducing the pressure within them [link]. Surface tension in the alveoli creates a positive pressure opposing inhalation. (See Cohesion and Adhesion in Liquids: Surface Tension and Capillary Action.) You can exhale without muscle action by letting surface tension in the alveoli create its own positive pressure. Muscle action can add to this positive pressure to produce forced exhalation, such as when you blow up a balloon, blow out a candle, or cough.

The lungs, in fact, would collapse due to the surface tension in the alveoli, if they were not attached to the inside of the chest wall by liquid adhesion. The gauge pressure in the liquid attaching the lungs to the inside of the chest wall is thus negative, ranging from -4 to -8 mm Hg during exhalation and inhalation, respectively. If air is allowed to enter the chest cavity, it breaks the attachment, and one or both lungs may collapse. Suction is applied to the chest cavity of surgery patients and trauma victims to reestablish negative pressure and inflate the lungs.



(a) During inhalation, muscles expand the chest, and the diaphragm moves downward, reducing pressure inside the lungs to less than atmospheric (negative gauge pressure). Pressure between the lungs and chest wall is even lower to overcome the positive pressure created by surface tension in the lungs. (b) During gentle exhalation, the muscles simply relax and surface tension in the alveoli creates a positive pressure inside the lungs, forcing air out. Pressure between the chest wall and lungs remains negative to keep them attached to the chest wall, but it is less negative than during inhalation.

Other Pressures in the Body

Spinal Column and Skull

Normally, there is a 5- to12-mm Hg pressure in the fluid surrounding the brain and filling the spinal column. This cerebrospinal fluid serves many purposes, one of which is to supply flotation to the brain. The buoyant force supplied by the fluid nearly equals the weight of the brain, since their densities are nearly equal. If there is a loss of fluid, the brain rests on the inside of the skull, causing severe headaches, constricted blood flow, and serious damage. Spinal fluid pressure is measured by means of a needle inserted between vertebrae that transmits the pressure to a suitable measuring device.

Bladder Pressure

This bodily pressure is one of which we are often aware. In fact, there is a relationship between our awareness of this pressure and a subsequent increase in it. Bladder pressure climbs steadily from zero to about 25 mm Hg as the bladder fills to its normal capacity of $500\ \mathrm{cm}^3$. This pressure triggers the **micturition reflex**, which stimulates the feeling of needing to urinate. What is more, it also causes muscles around the bladder to contract, raising the pressure to over 100 mm Hg, accentuating the sensation. Coughing, straining, tensing in cold weather, wearing tight clothes, and experiencing simple nervous tension all can increase bladder pressure and trigger this reflex. So can the weight of a pregnant woman’s fetus, especially if it is kicking vigorously or pushing down with its head! Bladder pressure can be measured by a catheter or by inserting a needle through the bladder wall and transmitting the pressure to an appropriate measuring device. One hazard of high bladder pressure (sometimes created by an obstruction), is that such pressure can force urine back into the kidneys, causing potentially severe damage.

Pressures in the Skeletal System

These pressures are the largest in the body, due both to the high values of initial force, and the small areas to which this force is applied, such as in the joints.. For example, when a person lifts an object improperly, a force of 5000 N may be created between vertebrae in the spine, and this may be applied to an area as small as $10\ \mathrm{cm}^2$. The pressure created is $P = F/A = (5000\ \mathrm{N})/(10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m}^2) = 5.0 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{N/m}^2$ or about 50 atm! This pressure can damage both the spinal discs (the cartilage between vertebrae), as well as the bony vertebrae themselves. Even under normal circumstances, forces between vertebrae in the spine are large enough to create pressures of several atmospheres. Most causes of excessive pressure in the skeletal system can be avoided by lifting properly and avoiding extreme physical activity. (See Forces and Torques in Muscles and Joints.)

There are many other interesting and medically significant pressures in the body. For example, pressure caused by various muscle actions drives food and waste through the digestive system. Stomach pressure behaves much like bladder pressure and is tied to the sensation of hunger. Pressure in the relaxed esophagus is normally negative because pressure in the chest cavity is normally negative. Positive pressure in the stomach may thus force acid into the esophagus, causing “heartburn.” Pressure in the middle ear can result in significant force on the eardrum if it differs greatly from atmospheric pressure, such as while scuba diving. The decrease in external pressure is also noticeable during plane flights (due to a decrease in the weight of air above

relative to that at the Earth’s surface). The Eustachian tubes connect the middle ear to the throat and allow us to equalize pressure in the middle ear to avoid an imbalance of force on the eardrum.

Many pressures in the human body are associated with the flow of fluids. Fluid flow will be discussed in detail in the Fluid Dynamics and Its Biological and Medical Applications.

Section Summary

- Measuring blood pressure is among the most common of all medical examinations.
- The pressures in various parts of the body can be measured and often provide valuable medical indicators.
- The shape of the eye is maintained by fluid pressure, called intraocular pressure.
- When the circulation of fluid in the eye is blocked, it can lead to a buildup in pressure, a condition called glaucoma.
- Some of the other pressures in the body are spinal and skull pressures, bladder pressure, pressures in the skeletal system.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

During forced exhalation, such as when blowing up a balloon, the diaphragm and chest muscles create a pressure of 60.0 mm Hg between the lungs and chest wall. What force in newtons does this pressure create on the $600\ \text{cm}^2$ surface area of the diaphragm?

Solution:

479 N

Exercise:

Problem:

You can chew through very tough objects with your incisors because they exert a large force on the small area of a pointed tooth. What pressure in pascals can you create by exerting a force of $500\ \text{N}$ with your tooth on an area of $1.00\ \text{mm}^2$?

Exercise:

Problem:

One way to force air into an unconscious person’s lungs is to squeeze on a balloon appropriately connected to the subject. What force must you exert on the balloon with your hands to create a gauge pressure of 4.00 cm water, assuming you squeeze on an effective area of $50.0\ \text{cm}^2$?

Solution:

1.96 N

Exercise:

Problem:

Heroes in movies hide beneath water and breathe through a hollow reed (villains never catch on to this trick). In practice, you cannot inhale in this manner if your lungs are more than 60.0 cm below the surface. What is the maximum negative gauge pressure you can create in your lungs on dry land, assuming you can achieve $-3.00\ \text{cm}$ water pressure with your lungs 60.0 cm below the surface?

Solution:

$-63.0\ \text{cm}\ \text{H}_2\text{O}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Gauge pressure in the fluid surrounding an infant's brain may rise as high as 85.0 mm Hg (5 to 12 mm Hg is normal), creating an outward force large enough to make the skull grow abnormally large. (a) Calculate this outward force in newtons on each side of an infant's skull if the effective area of each side is $70.0\ \text{cm}^2$. (b) What is the net force acting on the skull?

Exercise:

Problem:

A full-term fetus typically has a mass of 3.50 kg. (a) What pressure does the weight of such a fetus create if it rests on the mother's bladder, supported on an area of $90.0\ \text{cm}^2$? (b) Convert this pressure to millimeters of mercury and determine if it alone is great enough to trigger the micturition reflex (it will add to any pressure already existing in the bladder).

Solution:

(a) $3.81 \times 10^3\ \text{N/m}^2$

(b) $28.7\ \text{mm Hg}$, which is sufficient to trigger micturition reflex

Exercise:

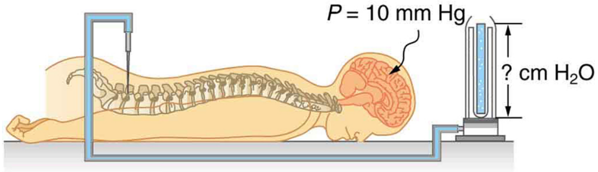
Problem:

If the pressure in the esophagus is $-2.00\ \text{mm Hg}$ while that in the stomach is $+20.0\ \text{mm Hg}$, to what height could stomach fluid rise in the esophagus, assuming a density of 1.10 g/mL? (This movement will not occur if the muscle closing the lower end of the esophagus is working properly.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Pressure in the spinal fluid is measured as shown in [link]. If the pressure in the spinal fluid is 10.0 mm Hg: (a) What is the reading of the water manometer in cm water? (b) What is the reading if the person sits up, placing the top of the fluid 60 cm above the tap? The fluid density is 1.05 g/mL.



A water manometer used to measure pressure in the spinal fluid. The height of the fluid in the manometer is measured relative to the spinal column, and the manometer is open to the atmosphere. The measured pressure will be considerably greater if the person sits up.

Solution:

(a) 13.6 m water

(b) 76.5 cm water

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the maximum force in newtons exerted by the blood on an aneurysm, or ballooning, in a major artery, given the maximum blood pressure for this person is 150 mm Hg and the effective area of the aneurysm is $20.0\ \text{cm}^2$. Note that this force is great enough to cause further enlargement and subsequently greater force on the ever-thinner vessel wall.

Exercise:

Problem:

During heavy lifting, a disk between spinal vertebrae is subjected to a 5000-N compressional force. (a) What pressure is created, assuming that the disk has a uniform circular cross section 2.00 cm in radius? (b) What deformation is produced if the disk is 0.800 cm thick and has a Young's modulus of $1.5 \times 10^9\ \text{N/m}^2$?

Solution:

(a) $3.98 \times 10^6\ \text{Pa}$

(b) 2.1×10^{-3} cm

Exercise:

Problem:

When a person sits erect, increasing the vertical position of their brain by 36.0 cm, the heart must continue to pump blood to the brain at the same rate. (a) What is the gain in gravitational potential energy for 100 mL of blood raised 36.0 cm? (b) What is the drop in pressure, neglecting any losses due to friction? (c) Discuss how the gain in gravitational potential energy and the decrease in pressure are related.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How high will water rise in a glass capillary tube with a 0.500-mm radius? (b) How much gravitational potential energy does the water gain? (c) Discuss possible sources of this energy.

Solution:

(a) 2.97 cm

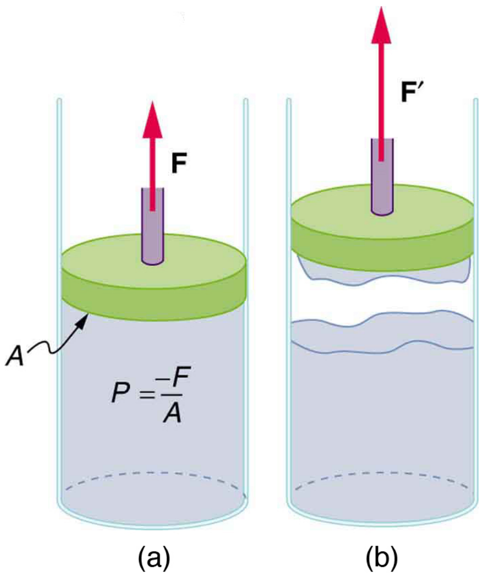
(b) 3.39×10^{-6} J

(c) Work is done by the surface tension force through an effective distance $h/2$ to raise the column of water.

Exercise:

Problem:

A negative pressure of 25.0 atm can sometimes be achieved with the device in [link] before the water separates. (a) To what height could such a negative gauge pressure raise water? (b) How much would a steel wire of the same diameter and length as this capillary stretch if suspended from above?



(a) When the piston is raised, it stretches the liquid slightly, putting it under tension and creating a negative absolute pressure $P = -F/A$ (b) The liquid eventually separates, giving an experimental limit to negative pressure in this liquid.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you hit a steel nail with a 0.500-kg hammer, initially moving at 15.0 m/s and brought to rest in 2.80 mm. (a) What average force is exerted on the nail? (b) How much is the nail compressed if it is 2.50 mm in diameter and 6.00-cm long? (c) What pressure is created on the 1.00-mm-diameter tip of the nail?

Solution:

(a) $2.01 \times 10^{4} \text{ N}$

(b) $1.17 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}$

(c) $2.56 \times 10^{10} \text{ N/m}^2$

Exercise:

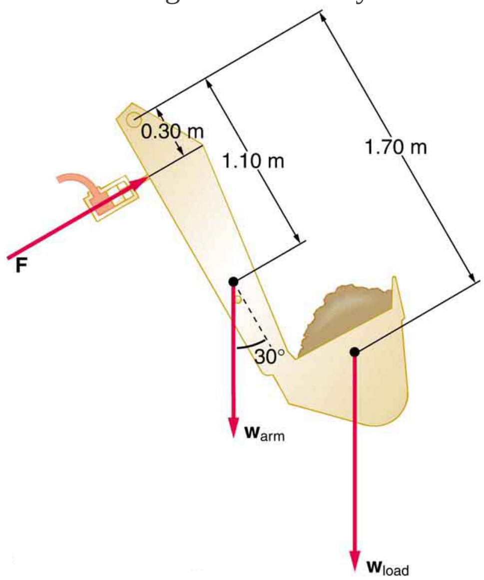
Problem:

Calculate the pressure due to the ocean at the bottom of the Marianas Trench near the Philippines, given its depth is 11.0 km and assuming the density of sea water is constant all the way down. (b) Calculate the percent decrease in volume of sea water due to such a pressure, assuming its bulk modulus is the same as water and is constant. (c) What would be the percent increase in its density? Is the assumption of constant density valid? Will the actual pressure be greater or smaller than that calculated under this assumption?

Exercise:

Problem:

The hydraulic system of a backhoe is used to lift a load as shown in [link]. (a) Calculate the force F the slave cylinder must exert to support the 400-kg load and the 150-kg brace and shovel. (b) What is the pressure in the hydraulic fluid if the slave cylinder is 2.50 cm in diameter? (c) What force would you have to exert on a lever with a mechanical advantage of 5.00 acting on a master cylinder 0.800 cm in diameter to create this pressure?



Hydraulic and mechanical lever systems are used in heavy machinery such as this back hoe.

Solution:

(a) $1.38 \times 10^4\text{ N}$

(b) $2.81 \times 10^7\text{ N/m}^2$

(c) 283 N

Exercise:

Problem:

Some miners wish to remove water from a mine shaft. A pipe is lowered to the water 90 m below, and a negative pressure is applied to raise the water. (a) Calculate the pressure needed to raise the water. (b) What is unreasonable about this pressure? (c) What is unreasonable about the premise?

Exercise:

Problem:

You are pumping up a bicycle tire with a hand pump, the piston of which has a 2.00-cm radius.

(a) What force in newtons must you exert to create a pressure of $6.90 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa}$ (b) What is unreasonable about this (a) result? (c) Which premises are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) 867 N

(b) This is too much force to exert with a hand pump.

(c) The assumed radius of the pump is too large; it would be nearly two inches in diameter—too large for a pump or even a master cylinder. The pressure is reasonable for bicycle tires.

Exercise:

Problem:

Consider a group of people trying to stay afloat after their boat strikes a log in a lake. Construct a problem in which you calculate the number of people that can cling to the log and keep their heads out of the water. Among the variables to be considered are the size and density of the log, and what is needed to keep a person’s head and arms above water without swimming or treading water.

Exercise:

Problem:

The alveoli in emphysema victims are damaged and effectively form larger sacs. Construct a problem in which you calculate the loss of pressure due to surface tension in the alveoli because of their larger average diameters. (Part of the lung’s ability to expel air results from pressure created by surface tension in the alveoli.) Among the things to consider are the normal surface tension of the fluid lining the alveoli, the average alveolar radius in normal individuals and its average in emphysema sufferers.

Glossary

diastolic pressure
: minimum arterial blood pressure; indicator for the fluid balance

glaucoma
: condition caused by the buildup of fluid pressure in the eye

intraocular pressure
: fluid pressure in the eye

micturition reflex
: stimulates the feeling of needing to urinate, triggered by bladder pressure

systolic pressure
: maximum arterial blood pressure; indicator for the blood flow

Introduction to Fluid Dynamics and Its Biological and Medical Applications
class="introduction"

Many fluids are flowing in this scene. Water from the hose and smoke from the fire are visible flows. Less visible are the flow of air and the flow of fluids on the ground and within the people fighting the fire. Explore all types of flow, such as visible, implied, turbulent, laminar, and so on,

present in this scene. Make a list and discuss the relative energies involved in the various flows, including the level of confidence in your estimates. (credit: Andrew Magill, Flickr)

We have dealt with many situations in which fluids are static. But by their very definition, fluids flow. Examples come easily—a column of smoke rises from a camp fire, water streams from a fire hose, blood courses through your veins. Why does rising smoke curl and twist? How does a nozzle increase the speed of water emerging from a hose? How does the body regulate blood flow? The physics of fluids in motion—**fluid dynamics**—allows us to answer these and many other questions.

Glossary

fluid dynamics
: the physics of fluids in motion

Flow Rate and Its Relation to Velocity

- Calculate flow rate.
- Define units of volume.
- Describe incompressible fluids.
- Explain the consequences of the equation of continuity.

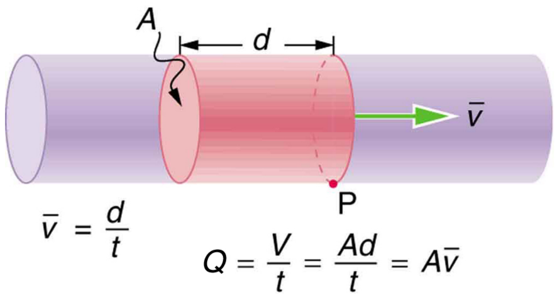
Flow rate Q is defined to be the volume of fluid passing by some location through an area during a period of time, as seen in [link]. In symbols, this can be written as

Equation:

$$Q = \frac{V}{t},$$

where V is the volume and t is the elapsed time.

The SI unit for flow rate is m^3/s, but a number of other units for Q are in common use. For example, the heart of a resting adult pumps blood at a rate of 5.00 liters per minute (L/min). Note that a **liter** (L) is 1/1000 of a cubic meter or 1000 cubic centimeters ($10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3$ or $10^3\ \text{cm}^3$). In this text we shall use whatever metric units are most convenient for a given situation.



Flow rate is the volume of fluid per unit time flowing past a point through the area A. Here the shaded cylinder of fluid flows past point P in a uniform pipe in time t. The volume of the cylinder is Ad

and the average velocity is $\bar{v} = d/t$ so that the flow rate is $Q = \mathrm{Ad}/t = A\bar{v}$.

Example:
Calculating Volume from Flow Rate: The Heart Pumps a Lot of Blood in a Lifetime

How many cubic meters of blood does the heart pump in a 75-year lifetime, assuming the average flow rate is 5.00 L/min?

Strategy

Time and flow rate Q are given, and so the volume V can be calculated from the definition of flow rate.

Solution

Solving $Q = V/t$ for volume gives

Equation:

$$V = \mathrm{Qt}.$$

Substituting known values yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \left(\frac{5.00\ \mathrm{L}}{1\ \mathrm{min}}\right)(75\ \mathrm{y})\left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{m}^3}{10^3\ \mathrm{L}}\right)\left(5.26 \times 10^5\ \frac{\mathrm{min}}{\mathrm{y}}\right) \\ &= 2.0 \times 10^5\ \mathrm{m}^3. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

This amount is about 200,000 tons of blood. For comparison, this value is equivalent to about 200 times the volume of water contained in a 6-lane 50-m lap pool.

Flow rate and velocity are related, but quite different, physical quantities. To make the distinction clear, think about the flow rate of a river. The

greater the velocity of the water, the greater the flow rate of the river. But flow rate also depends on the size of the river. A rapid mountain stream carries far less water than the Amazon River in Brazil, for example. The precise relationship between flow rate Q and velocity $\overline{v}$ is

Equation:

$$Q = A\overline{v},$$

where A is the cross-sectional area and $\overline{v}$ is the average velocity. This equation seems logical enough. The relationship tells us that flow rate is directly proportional to both the magnitude of the average velocity (hereafter referred to as the speed) and the size of a river, pipe, or other conduit. The larger the conduit, the greater its cross-sectional area. [link] illustrates how this relationship is obtained. The shaded cylinder has a volume

Equation:

$$V = \text{Ad},$$

which flows past the point P in a time t. Dividing both sides of this relationship by t gives

Equation:

$$\frac{V}{t} = \frac{\text{Ad}}{t}.$$

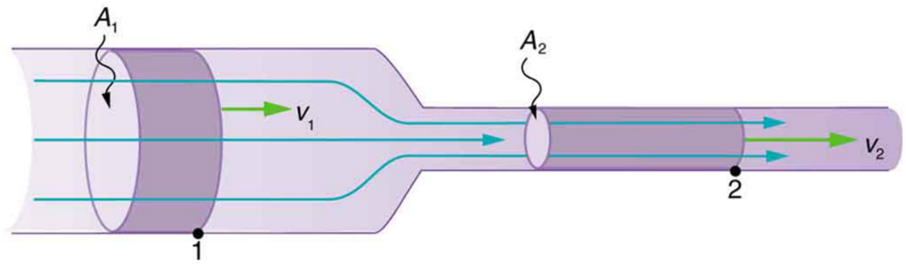
We note that $Q = V/t$ and the average speed is $\overline{v} = d/t$. Thus the equation becomes $Q = A\overline{v}$.

[link] shows an incompressible fluid flowing along a pipe of decreasing radius. Because the fluid is incompressible, the same amount of fluid must flow past any point in the tube in a given time to ensure continuity of flow. In this case, because the cross-sectional area of the pipe decreases, the velocity must necessarily increase. This logic can be extended to say that the flow rate must be the same at all points along the pipe. In particular, for points 1 and 2,

Equation:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} Q_1 &= Q_2 \\ A_1\overline{v}_1 &= A_2\overline{v}_2 \end{aligned}\right\}.$$

This is called the equation of continuity and is valid for any incompressible fluid. The consequences of the equation of continuity can be observed when water flows from a hose into a narrow spray nozzle: it emerges with a large speed—that is the purpose of the nozzle. Conversely, when a river empties into one end of a reservoir, the water slows considerably, perhaps picking up speed again when it leaves the other end of the reservoir. In other words, speed increases when cross-sectional area decreases, and speed decreases when cross-sectional area increases.



When a tube narrows, the same volume occupies a greater length. For the same volume to pass points 1 and 2 in a given time, the speed must be greater at point 2. The process is exactly reversible. If the fluid flows in the opposite direction, its speed will decrease when the tube widens. (Note that the relative volumes of the two cylinders and the corresponding velocity vector arrows are not drawn to scale.)

Since liquids are essentially incompressible, the equation of continuity is valid for all liquids. However, gases are compressible, and so the equation must be applied with caution to gases if they are subjected to compression or expansion.

Example:

Calculating Fluid Speed: Speed Increases When a Tube Narrows

A nozzle with a radius of 0.250 cm is attached to a garden hose with a radius of 0.900 cm. The flow rate through hose and nozzle is 0.500 L/s. Calculate the speed of the water (a) in the hose and (b) in the nozzle.

Strategy

We can use the relationship between flow rate and speed to find both velocities. We will use the subscript 1 for the hose and 2 for the nozzle.

Solution for (a)

First, we solve $Q = A\bar{v}$ for v_1 and note that the cross-sectional area is $A = \pi r^2$, yielding

Equation:

$$\bar{v}_1 = \frac{Q}{A_1} = \frac{Q}{\pi r_1^2}.$$

Substituting known values and making appropriate unit conversions yields

Equation:

$$\bar{v}_1 = \frac{(0.500\ \text{L/s})(10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3/\text{L})}{\pi(9.00 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})^2} = 1.96\ \text{m/s}.$$

Solution for (b)

We could repeat this calculation to find the speed in the nozzle $\bar{v}_2$, but we will use the equation of continuity to give a somewhat different insight. Using the equation which states

Equation:

$$A_1\bar{v}_1 = A_2\bar{v}_2,$$

solving for $\bar{v}_2$ and substituting πr^2 for the cross-sectional area yields

Equation:

$$\bar{v}_2 = \frac{A_1}{A_2}\bar{v}_1 = \frac{\pi r_1^2}{\pi r_2^2}\bar{v}_1 = \frac{r_{1^2}}{r_{2^2}}\bar{v}_1.$$

Substituting known values,

Equation:

$$\bar{v}_2 = \frac{(0.900\ \text{cm})^2}{(0.250\ \text{cm})^2} 1.96\ \text{m/s} = 25.5\ \text{m/s}.$$

Discussion
A speed of 1.96 m/s is about right for water emerging from a nozzleless hose. The nozzle produces a considerably faster stream merely by constricting the flow to a narrower tube.

The solution to the last part of the example shows that speed is inversely proportional to the *square* of the radius of the tube, making for large effects when radius varies. We can blow out a candle at quite a distance, for example, by pursing our lips, whereas blowing on a candle with our mouth wide open is quite ineffective.

In many situations, including in the cardiovascular system, branching of the flow occurs. The blood is pumped from the heart into arteries that subdivide into smaller arteries (arterioles) which branch into very fine vessels called capillaries. In this situation, continuity of flow is maintained but it is the *sum* of the flow rates in each of the branches in any portion along the tube that is maintained. The equation of continuity in a more general form becomes
Equation:

$$n_1 A_1 \bar{v}_1 = n_2 A_2 \bar{v}_2,$$

where n_1 and n_2 are the number of branches in each of the sections along the tube.

Example:
Calculating Flow Speed and Vessel Diameter: Branching in the Cardiovascular System

The aorta is the principal blood vessel through which blood leaves the heart in order to circulate around the body. (a) Calculate the average speed of the blood in the aorta if the flow rate is 5.0 L/min. The aorta has a radius of 10 mm. (b) Blood also flows through smaller blood vessels known as capillaries. When the rate of blood flow in the aorta is 5.0 L/min, the speed of blood in the capillaries is about 0.33 mm/s. Given that the average diameter of a capillary is 8.0 μm, calculate the number of capillaries in the blood circulatory system.

Strategy

We can use $Q = A\bar{v}$ to calculate the speed of flow in the aorta and then use the general form of the equation of continuity to calculate the number of capillaries as all of the other variables are known.

Solution for (a)

The flow rate is given by $Q = A\bar{v}$ or $\bar{v} = \frac{Q}{\pi r^2}$ for a cylindrical vessel. Substituting the known values (converted to units of meters and seconds) gives

Equation:

$$\bar{v} = \frac{(5.0\ \text{L/min})\left(10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3/\text{L}\right)(1\ \text{min}/60\ \text{s})}{\pi(0.010\ \text{m})^2} = 0.27\ \text{m/s}.$$

Solution for (b)

Using $n_1 A_1 \bar{v}_1 = n_2 A_2 \bar{v}_1$, assigning the subscript 1 to the aorta and 2 to the capillaries, and solving for n_2 (the number of capillaries) gives $n_2 = \frac{n_1 A_1 \bar{v}_1}{A_2 \bar{v}_2}$. Converting all quantities to units of meters and seconds and substituting into the equation above gives

Equation:

$$n_2 = \frac{(1)(\pi)\left(10 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}\right)^2 (0.27\ \text{m/s})}{(\pi)\left(4.0 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}\right)^2 \left(0.33 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m/s}\right)} = 5.0 \times 10^9\ \text{capillaries}.$$

Discussion

Note that the speed of flow in the capillaries is considerably reduced relative to the speed in the aorta due to the significant increase in the total cross-sectional area at the capillaries. This low speed is to allow sufficient

time for effective exchange to occur although it is equally important for the flow not to become stationary in order to avoid the possibility of clotting. Does this large number of capillaries in the body seem reasonable? In active muscle, one finds about 200 capillaries per mm^3, or about 200×10^6 per 1 kg of muscle. For 20 kg of muscle, this amounts to about 4×10^9 capillaries.

Section Summary

- Flow rate Q is defined to be the volume V flowing past a point in time t, or $Q = \frac{V}{t}$ where V is volume and t is time.
- The SI unit of volume is m^3.
- Another common unit is the liter (L), which is $10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3$.
- Flow rate and velocity are related by $Q = A\bar{v}$ where A is the cross-sectional area of the flow and $\bar{v}$ is its average velocity.
- For incompressible fluids, flow rate at various points is constant. That is,

  Equation:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} Q_1 &= Q_2 \\ A_1\bar{v}_1 &= A_2\bar{v}_2 \\ n_1A_1\bar{v}_1 &= n_2A_2\bar{v}_2 \end{aligned}\right\}.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the difference between flow rate and fluid velocity? How are they related?

Exercise:

Problem:

Many figures in the text show streamlines. Explain why fluid velocity is greatest where streamlines are closest together. (Hint: Consider the relationship between fluid velocity and the cross-sectional area through which it flows.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Identify some substances that are incompressible and some that are not.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the average flow rate in cm^3/s of gasoline to the engine of a car traveling at 100 km/h if it averages 10.0 km/L?

Solution:

$2.78\ \text{cm}^3/\text{s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

The heart of a resting adult pumps blood at a rate of 5.00 L/min. (a) Convert this to cm^3/s. (b) What is this rate in m^3/s?

Exercise:

Problem:

Blood is pumped from the heart at a rate of 5.0 L/min into the aorta (of radius 1.0 cm). Determine the speed of blood through the aorta.

Solution:

27 cm/s

Exercise:

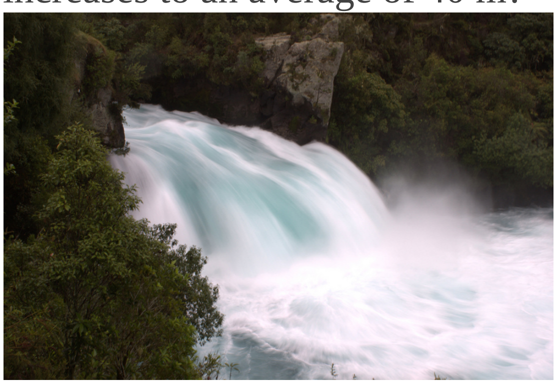
Problem:

Blood is flowing through an artery of radius 2 mm at a rate of 40 cm/s. Determine the flow rate and the volume that passes through the artery in a period of 30 s.

Exercise:

Problem:

The Huka Falls on the Waikato River is one of New Zealand's most visited natural tourist attractions (see [link]). On average the river has a flow rate of about 300,000 L/s. At the gorge, the river narrows to 20 m wide and averages 20 m deep. (a) What is the average speed of the river in the gorge? (b) What is the average speed of the water in the river downstream of the falls when it widens to 60 m and its depth increases to an average of 40 m?



The Huka Falls in Taupo, New Zealand, demonstrate flow rate. (credit: RaviGogna, Flickr)

Solution:

(a) 0.75 m/s

(b) 0.13 m/s

Exercise:

Problem:

A major artery with a cross-sectional area of $1.00\ \text{cm}^2$ branches into 18 smaller arteries, each with an average cross-sectional area of $0.400\ \text{cm}^2$. By what factor is the average velocity of the blood reduced when it passes into these branches?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) As blood passes through the capillary bed in an organ, the capillaries join to form venules (small veins). If the blood speed increases by a factor of 4.00 and the total cross-sectional area of the venules is $10.0\ \text{cm}^2$, what is the total cross-sectional area of the capillaries feeding these venules? (b) How many capillaries are involved if their average diameter is $10.0\ \mu\text{m}$?

Solution:

(a) $40.0\ \text{cm}^2$

(b) 5.09×10^7

Exercise:

Problem:

The human circulation system has approximately 1×10^9 capillary vessels. Each vessel has a diameter of about $8\ \mu\text{m}$. Assuming cardiac output is 5 L/min, determine the average velocity of blood flow through each capillary vessel.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Estimate the time it would take to fill a private swimming pool with a capacity of 80,000 L using a garden hose delivering 60 L/min. (b) How long would it take to fill if you could divert a moderate size river, flowing at $5000 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$, into it?

Solution:

(a) 22 h

(b) 0.016 s

Exercise:

Problem:

The flow rate of blood through a $2.00 \times 10^{-6}\text{-m}$ -radius capillary is $3.80 \times 10^{-9} \text{ cm}^3/\text{s}$. (a) What is the speed of the blood flow? (This small speed allows time for diffusion of materials to and from the blood.) (b) Assuming all the blood in the body passes through capillaries, how many of them must there be to carry a total flow of $90.0 \text{ cm}^3/\text{s}$? (The large number obtained is an overestimate, but it is still reasonable.)

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the fluid speed in a fire hose with a 9.00-cm diameter carrying 80.0 L of water per second? (b) What is the flow rate in cubic meters per second? (c) Would your answers be different if salt water replaced the fresh water in the fire hose?

Solution:

(a) 12.6 m/s

(b) $0.0800\ \mathrm{m}^3/\mathrm{s}$

(c) No, independent of density.

Exercise:

Problem:

The main uptake air duct of a forced air gas heater is 0.300 m in diameter. What is the average speed of air in the duct if it carries a volume equal to that of the house's interior every 15 min? The inside volume of the house is equivalent to a rectangular solid 13.0 m wide by 20.0 m long by 2.75 m high.

Exercise:

Problem:

Water is moving at a velocity of 2.00 m/s through a hose with an internal diameter of 1.60 cm. (a) What is the flow rate in liters per second? (b) The fluid velocity in this hose's nozzle is 15.0 m/s. What is the nozzle's inside diameter?

Solution:

(a) 0.402 L/s

(b) 0.584 cm

Exercise:

Problem:

Prove that the speed of an incompressible fluid through a constriction, such as in a Venturi tube, increases by a factor equal to the square of the factor by which the diameter decreases. (The converse applies for flow out of a constriction into a larger-diameter region.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Water emerges straight down from a faucet with a 1.80-cm diameter at a speed of 0.500 m/s. (Because of the construction of the faucet, there is no variation in speed across the stream.) (a) What is the flow rate in cm^3/s? (b) What is the diameter of the stream 0.200 m below the faucet? Neglect any effects due to surface tension.

Solution:

(a) $127\ \text{cm}^3/\text{s}$

(b) 0.890 cm

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A mountain stream is 10.0 m wide and averages 2.00 m in depth. During the spring runoff, the flow in the stream reaches $100{,}000\ \text{m}^3/\text{s}$. (a) What is the average velocity of the stream under these conditions? (b) What is unreasonable about this velocity? (c) What is unreasonable or inconsistent about the premises?

Glossary

flow rate
: abbreviated *Q*, it is the volume *V* that flows past a particular point during a time *t*, or *Q* = *V/t*

liter
: a unit of volume, equal to $10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3$

Bernoulli's Equation

- Explain the terms in Bernoulli's equation.
- Explain how Bernoulli's equation is related to conservation of energy.
- Explain how to derive Bernoulli's principle from Bernoulli's equation.
- Calculate with Bernoulli's principle.
- List some applications of Bernoulli's principle.

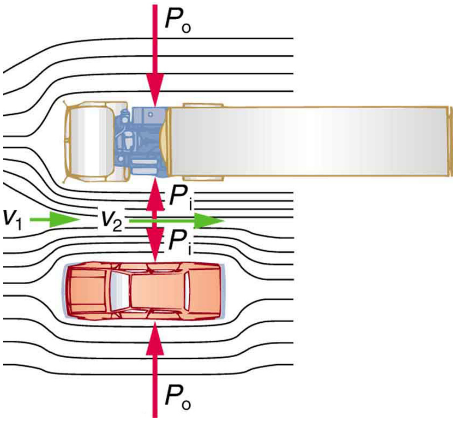
When a fluid flows into a narrower channel, its speed increases. That means its kinetic energy also increases. Where does that change in kinetic energy come from? The increased kinetic energy comes from the net work done on the fluid to push it into the channel and the work done on the fluid by the gravitational force, if the fluid changes vertical position. Recall the work-energy theorem,

Equation:

$$W_{\text{net}} = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{mv}^2 - \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{mv}_0^2.$$

There is a pressure difference when the channel narrows. This pressure difference results in a net force on the fluid: recall that pressure times area equals force. The net work done increases the fluid's kinetic energy. As a result, the *pressure will drop in a rapidly-moving fluid*, whether or not the fluid is confined to a tube.

There are a number of common examples of pressure dropping in rapidly-moving fluids. Shower curtains have a disagreeable habit of bulging into the shower stall when the shower is on. The high-velocity stream of water and air creates a region of lower pressure inside the shower, and standard atmospheric pressure on the other side. The pressure difference results in a net force inward pushing the curtain in. You may also have noticed that when passing a truck on the highway, your car tends to veer toward it. The reason is the same—the high velocity of the air between the car and the truck creates a region of lower pressure, and the vehicles are pushed together by greater pressure on the outside. (See [link].) This effect was observed as far back as the mid-1800s, when it was found that trains passing in opposite directions tipped precariously toward one another.



An overhead view of a car passing a truck on a highway. Air passing between the vehicles flows in a narrower channel and must increase its speed (v_2 is greater than v_1), causing the pressure between them to drop (P_i is less than P_o). Greater pressure on the outside pushes the car and truck together.

Note:

Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation with a Sheet of Paper

Hold the short edge of a sheet of paper parallel to your mouth with one hand on each side of your mouth. The page should slant downward over your hands. Blow over the top of the page. Describe what happens and explain the reason for this behavior.

Bernoulli’s Equation

The relationship between pressure and velocity in fluids is described quantitatively by **Bernoulli’s equation**, named after its discoverer, the Swiss scientist Daniel Bernoulli (1700–1782). Bernoulli’s equation states that for an incompressible, frictionless fluid, the following sum is constant:

Equation:

$$P+\frac{1}{2}\rho v^{2}+\rho \mathrm{gh}=\mathrm{constant},$$

where P is the absolute pressure, ρ is the fluid density, v is the velocity of the fluid, h is the height above some reference point, and g is the acceleration due to gravity. If we follow a small volume of fluid along its path, various quantities in the sum may change, but the total remains constant. Let the subscripts 1 and 2 refer to any two points along the path that the bit of fluid follows; Bernoulli’s equation becomes

Equation:

$$P_1+\frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^{2}+\rho\, gh_1=P_2+\frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^{2}+\rho\, gh_2\,.$$

Bernoulli’s equation is a form of the conservation of energy principle. Note that the second and third terms are the kinetic and potential energy with m replaced by ρ. In fact, each term in the equation has units of energy per unit volume. We can prove this for the second term by substituting $\rho = m/V$ into it and gathering terms:

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\rho v^{2}=\frac{\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{mv}^{2}}{V}=\frac{\mathrm{KE}}{V}\,.$$

So $\frac{1}{2}\rho v^{2}$ is the kinetic energy per unit volume. Making the same substitution into the third term in the equation, we find

Equation:

$$\rho\, gh = \frac{mgh}{V} = \frac{\mathrm{PE_g}}{V},$$

so ρgh is the gravitational potential energy per unit volume. Note that pressure P has units of energy per unit volume, too. Since $P = F/A$, its units are $\mathrm{N/m^2}$. If we multiply these by m/m, we obtain $\mathrm{N \cdot m/m^3 = J/m^3}$, or energy per unit volume. Bernoulli's equation is, in fact, just a convenient statement of conservation of energy for an incompressible fluid in the absence of friction.

Note:
Making Connections: Conservation of Energy
Conservation of energy applied to fluid flow produces Bernoulli's equation. The net work done by the fluid's pressure results in changes in the fluid's KE and $\mathrm{PE_g}$ per unit volume. If other forms of energy are involved in fluid flow, Bernoulli's equation can be modified to take these forms into account. Such forms of energy include thermal energy dissipated because of fluid viscosity.

The general form of Bernoulli's equation has three terms in it, and it is broadly applicable. To understand it better, we will look at a number of specific situations that simplify and illustrate its use and meaning.

Bernoulli's Equation for Static Fluids

Let us first consider the very simple situation where the fluid is static—that is, $v_1 = v_2 = 0$. Bernoulli's equation in that case is
Equation:

$$P_1 + \rho\, gh_1 = P_2 + \rho\, gh_2\,.$$

We can further simplify the equation by taking $h_2 = 0$ (we can always choose some height to be zero, just as we often have done for other situations involving the gravitational force, and take all other heights to be relative to this). In that case, we get

Equation:

$$P_2 = P_1 + \rho g h_1 \,.$$

This equation tells us that, in static fluids, pressure increases with depth. As we go from point 1 to point 2 in the fluid, the depth increases by h_1, and consequently, P_2 is greater than P_1 by an amount $\rho g h_1$. In the very simplest case, P_1 is zero at the top of the fluid, and we get the familiar relationship $P = \rho g h$. (Recall that $P = \rho g h$ and $\Delta \mathrm{PE}_{\mathrm{g}} = \mathrm{mgh}$.) Bernoulli's equation includes the fact that the pressure due to the weight of a fluid is ρgh. Although we introduce Bernoulli's equation for fluid flow, it includes much of what we studied for static fluids in the preceding chapter.

Bernoulli's Principle—Bernoulli's Equation at Constant Depth

Another important situation is one in which the fluid moves but its depth is constant—that is, $h_1 = h_2$. Under that condition, Bernoulli's equation becomes

Equation:

$$P_1 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 = P_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2.$$

Situations in which fluid flows at a constant depth are so important that this equation is often called **Bernoulli's principle**. It is Bernoulli's equation for fluids at constant depth. (Note again that this applies to a small volume of fluid as we follow it along its path.) As we have just discussed, pressure drops as speed increases in a moving fluid. We can see this from Bernoulli's principle. For example, if v_2 is greater than v_1 in the equation, then P_2 must be less than P_1 for the equality to hold.

Example:
Calculating Pressure: Pressure Drops as a Fluid Speeds Up
In [link], we found that the speed of water in a hose increased from 1.96 m/s to 25.5 m/s going from the hose to the nozzle. Calculate the pressure in the hose, given that the absolute pressure in the nozzle is $1.01 \times 10^5 \text{ N/m}^2$ (atmospheric, as it must be) and assuming level, frictionless flow.

Strategy
Level flow means constant depth, so Bernoulli's principle applies. We use the subscript 1 for values in the hose and 2 for those in the nozzle. We are thus asked to find P_1.

Solution
Solving Bernoulli's principle for P_1 yields

Equation:

$$P_1 = P_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2 - \frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 = P_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho(v_2^2 - v_1^2).$$

Substituting known values,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} P_1 &= 1.01 \times 10^5 \text{ N/m}^2 \\ &\quad + \tfrac{1}{2}(10^3 \text{ kg/m}^3)\left[(25.5 \text{ m/s})^2 - (1.96 \text{ m/s})^2\right] \\ &= 4.24 \times 10^5 \text{ N/m}^2. \end{aligned}$$

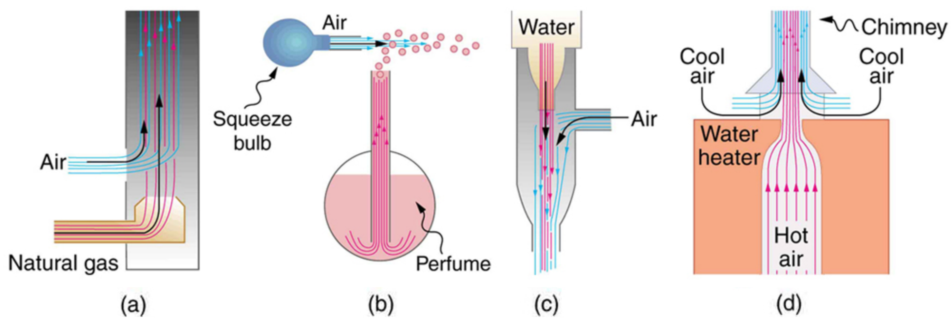
Discussion
This absolute pressure in the hose is greater than in the nozzle, as expected since v is greater in the nozzle. The pressure P_2 in the nozzle must be atmospheric since it emerges into the atmosphere without other changes in conditions.

Applications of Bernoulli's Principle

There are a number of devices and situations in which fluid flows at a constant height and, thus, can be analyzed with Bernoulli's principle.

Entrainment

People have long put the Bernoulli principle to work by using reduced pressure in high-velocity fluids to move things about. With a higher pressure on the outside, the high-velocity fluid forces other fluids into the stream. This process is called *entrainment*. Entrainment devices have been in use since ancient times, particularly as pumps to raise water small heights, as in draining swamps, fields, or other low-lying areas. Some other devices that use the concept of entrainment are shown in [link].



Examples of entrainment devices that use increased fluid speed to create low pressures, which then entrain one fluid into another. (a) A Bunsen burner uses an adjustable gas nozzle, entraining air for proper combustion. (b) An atomizer uses a squeeze bulb to create a jet of air that entrains drops of perfume. Paint sprayers and carburetors use very similar techniques to move their respective liquids. (c) A common aspirator uses a high-speed stream of water to create a region of lower pressure. Aspirators may be used as suction pumps in dental and surgical situations or for draining a flooded basement or producing a reduced pressure in a vessel. (d) The chimney of a water heater is designed to entrain air into the pipe leading through the ceiling.

Wings and Sails

The airplane wing is a beautiful example of Bernoulli’s principle in action. [link](a) shows the characteristic shape of a wing. The wing is tilted upward at a small angle and the upper surface is longer, causing air to flow faster over it. The pressure on top of the wing is therefore reduced, creating a net upward force or lift. (Wings can also gain lift by pushing air downward, utilizing the conservation of momentum principle. The deflected air molecules result in an upward force on the wing — Newton’s third law.) Sails also have the characteristic shape of a wing. (See [link](b).) The pressure on the front side of the sail, P_{front}, is lower than the pressure on the back of the sail, P_{back}. This results in a forward force and even allows you to sail into the wind.

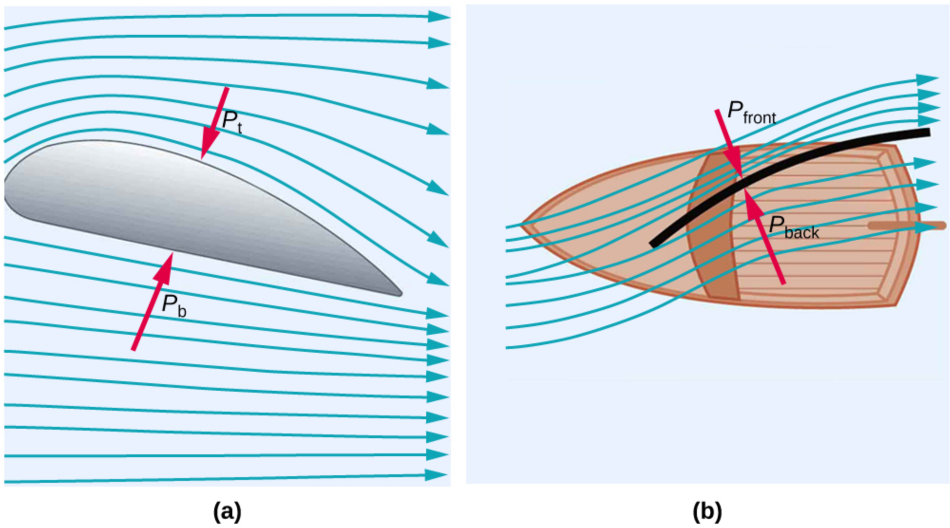
Note:
Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation with Two Strips of Paper
For a good illustration of Bernoulli’s principle, make two strips of paper, each about 15 cm long and 4 cm wide. Hold the small end of one strip up to your lips and let it drape over your finger. Blow across the paper. What happens? Now hold two strips of paper up to your lips, separated by your fingers. Blow between the strips. What happens?

Velocity measurement

[link] shows two devices that measure fluid velocity based on Bernoulli’s principle. The manometer in [link](a) is connected to two tubes that are small enough not to appreciably disturb the flow. The tube facing the oncoming fluid creates a dead spot having zero velocity ($v_1 = 0$) in front of it, while fluid passing the other tube has velocity v_2. This means that Bernoulli’s principle as stated in $P_1 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 = P_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2$ becomes

Equation:

$$P_1 = P_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2.$$



(a) The Bernoulli principle helps explain lift generated by a wing. (b) Sails use the same technique to generate part of their thrust.

Thus pressure P_2 over the second opening is reduced by $\frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2$, and so the fluid in the manometer rises by h on the side connected to the second opening, where

Equation:

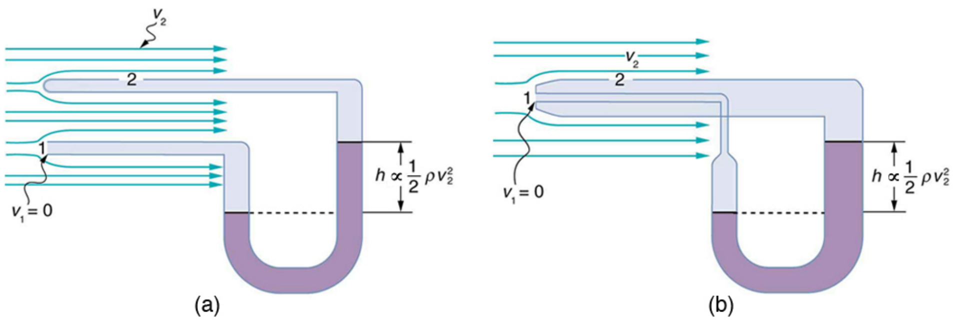
$$h \propto \frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2.$$

(Recall that the symbol $\propto$ means "proportional to.") Solving for v_2, we see that

Equation:

$$v_2 \propto \sqrt{h}.$$

[link](b) shows a version of this device that is in common use for measuring various fluid velocities; such devices are frequently used as air speed indicators in aircraft.



Measurement of fluid speed based on Bernoulli's principle. (a) A manometer is connected to two tubes that are close together and small enough not to disturb the flow. Tube 1 is open at the end facing the flow. A dead spot having zero speed is created there. Tube 2 has an opening on the side, and so the fluid has a speed v across the opening; thus, pressure there drops. The difference in pressure at the manometer is $\frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2$, and so h is proportional to $\frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2$. (b) This type of velocity measuring device is a Prandtl tube, also known as a pitot tube.

Summary

- Bernoulli's equation states that the sum on each side of the following equation is constant, or the same at any two points in an incompressible frictionless fluid:
  Equation:

$$P_1 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 + \rho\, g h_1 = P_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2 + \rho \mathrm{gh}_2.$$

- Bernoulli’s principle is Bernoulli’s equation applied to situations in which depth is constant. The terms involving depth (or height h) subtract out, yielding

  Equation:

$$P_1 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 = P_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2.$$

- Bernoulli’s principle has many applications, including entrainment, wings and sails, and velocity measurement.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

You can squirt water a considerably greater distance by placing your thumb over the end of a garden hose and then releasing, than by leaving it completely uncovered. Explain how this works.

Exercise:

Problem:

Water is shot nearly vertically upward in a decorative fountain and the stream is observed to broaden as it rises. Conversely, a stream of water falling straight down from a faucet narrows. Explain why, and discuss whether surface tension enhances or reduces the effect in each case.

Exercise:

Problem:

Look back to [link]. Answer the following two questions. Why is P_o less than atmospheric? Why is P_o greater than P_i?

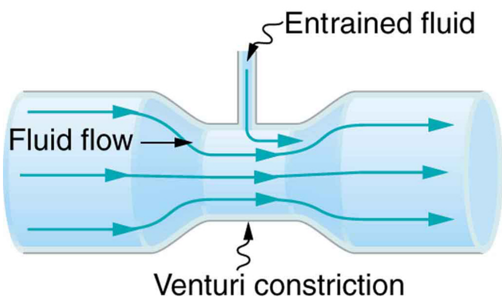
Exercise:

Problem: Give an example of entrainment not mentioned in the text.

Exercise:

Problem:

Many entrainment devices have a constriction, called a Venturi, such as shown in [link]. How does this bolster entrainment?



A tube with a narrow segment designed to enhance entrainment is called a Venturi. These are very commonly used in carburetors and aspirators.

Exercise:

Problem:

Some chimney pipes have a T-shape, with a crosspiece on top that helps draw up gases whenever there is even a slight breeze. Explain how this works in terms of Bernoulli's principle.

Exercise:

Problem:

Is there a limit to the height to which an entrainment device can raise a fluid? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why is it preferable for airplanes to take off into the wind rather than with the wind?

Exercise:

Problem:

Roofs are sometimes pushed off vertically during a tropical cyclone, and buildings sometimes explode outward when hit by a tornado. Use Bernoulli's principle to explain these phenomena.

Exercise:

Problem: Why does a sailboat need a keel?

Exercise:

Problem:

It is dangerous to stand close to railroad tracks when a rapidly moving commuter train passes. Explain why atmospheric pressure would push you toward the moving train.

Exercise:

Problem:

Water pressure inside a hose nozzle can be less than atmospheric pressure due to the Bernoulli effect. Explain in terms of energy how the water can emerge from the nozzle against the opposing atmospheric pressure.

Exercise:

Problem:

A perfume bottle or atomizer sprays a fluid that is in the bottle. ([link].) How does the fluid rise up in the vertical tube in the bottle?

Atomizer: perfume bottle with tube to carry perfume up through the bottle. (credit: Antonia Foy, Flickr)

Exercise:

Problem:

If you lower the window on a car while moving, an empty plastic bag can sometimes fly out the window. Why does this happen?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: Verify that pressure has units of energy per unit volume.

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \frac{\text{Force}}{\text{Area}}, \\ (P)_{\text{units}} &= \mathrm{N/m^2} = \mathrm{N \cdot m/m^3} = \mathrm{J/m^3} \\ &= \text{energy/volume} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a wind speed gauge like the pitot tube shown in [link](b). By what factor must wind speed increase to double the value of h in the manometer? Is this independent of the moving fluid and the fluid in the manometer?

Exercise:

Problem:

If the pressure reading of your pitot tube is 15.0 mm Hg at a speed of 200 km/h, what will it be at 700 km/h at the same altitude?

Solution:

184 mm Hg

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the maximum height to which water could be squirted with the hose in [link] example if it: (a) Emerges from the nozzle. (b) Emerges with the nozzle removed, assuming the same flow rate.

Exercise:

Problem:

Every few years, winds in Boulder, Colorado, attain sustained speeds of 45.0 m/s (about 100 mi/h) when the jet stream descends during early spring. Approximately what is the force due to the Bernoulli effect on a roof having an area of $220\ \mathrm{m}^2$? Typical air density in Boulder is $1.14\ \mathrm{kg/m}^3$, and the corresponding atmospheric pressure is $8.89 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{N/m}^2$. (Bernoulli's principle as stated in the text assumes laminar flow. Using the principle here produces only an approximate result, because there is significant turbulence.)

Solution:

$2.54 \times 10^5\ \mathrm{N}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the approximate force on a square meter of sail, given the horizontal velocity of the wind is 6.00 m/s parallel to its front surface and 3.50 m/s along its back surface. Take the density of air to be $1.29\ \mathrm{kg/m}^3$. (The calculation, based on Bernoulli's principle, is approximate due to the effects of turbulence.) (b) Discuss whether this force is great enough to be effective for propelling a sailboat.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the pressure drop due to the Bernoulli effect as water goes into a 3.00-cm-diameter nozzle from a 9.00-cm-diameter fire hose while carrying a flow of 40.0 L/s? (b) To what maximum height above the nozzle can this water rise? (The actual height will be significantly smaller due to air resistance.)

Solution:

(a) $1.58 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{N/m}^2$

(b) 163 m

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Using Bernoulli's equation, show that the measured fluid speed v for a pitot tube, like the one in [link](b), is given by

Equation:

$$v = \left(\frac{2\rho\prime gh}{\rho} \right)^{1/2},$$

where h is the height of the manometer fluid, $\rho\prime$ is the density of the manometer fluid, ρ is the density of the moving fluid, and g is the acceleration due to gravity. (Note that v is indeed proportional to the square root of h, as stated in the text.) (b) Calculate v for moving air if a mercury manometer's h is 0.200 m.

Glossary

Bernoulli's equation
: the equation resulting from applying conservation of energy to an incompressible frictionless fluid: $P + 1/2pv^2 + pgh = \text{constant}$, through the fluid

Bernoulli's principle
: Bernoulli's equation applied at constant depth: $P_1 + 1/2pv_1^2 = P_2 + 1/2pv_2^2$

The Most General Applications of Bernoulli’s Equation

- Calculate using Torricelli’s theorem.
- Calculate power in fluid flow.

Torricelli’s Theorem

[link] shows water gushing from a large tube through a dam. What is its speed as it emerges? Interestingly, if resistance is negligible, the speed is just what it would be if the water fell a distance h from the surface of the reservoir; the water’s speed is independent of the size of the opening. Let us check this out. Bernoulli’s equation must be used since the depth is not constant. We consider water flowing from the surface (point 1) to the tube’s outlet (point 2). Bernoulli’s equation as stated in previously is

Equation:

$$P_1 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 + \rho g h_1 = P_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2 + \rho g h_2.$$

Both P_1 and P_2 equal atmospheric pressure (P_1 is atmospheric pressure because it is the pressure at the top of the reservoir. P_2 must be atmospheric pressure, since the emerging water is surrounded by the atmosphere and cannot have a pressure different from atmospheric pressure.) and subtract out of the equation, leaving

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 + \rho g h_1 = \frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2 + \rho g h_2.$$

Solving this equation for v_2^2, noting that the density ρ cancels (because the fluid is incompressible), yields

Equation:

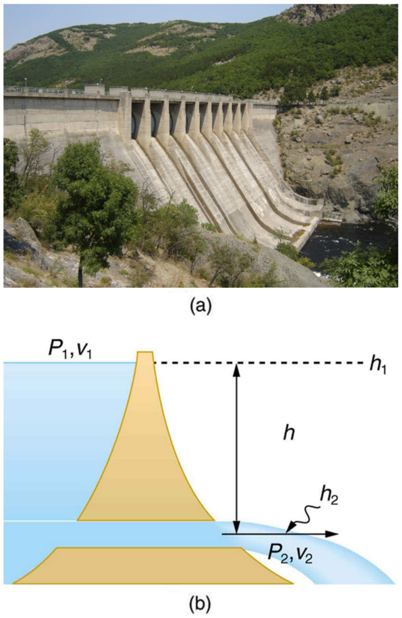
$$v_2^2 = v_1^2 + 2g(h_1 - h_2).$$

We let $h = h_1 - h_2$; the equation then becomes

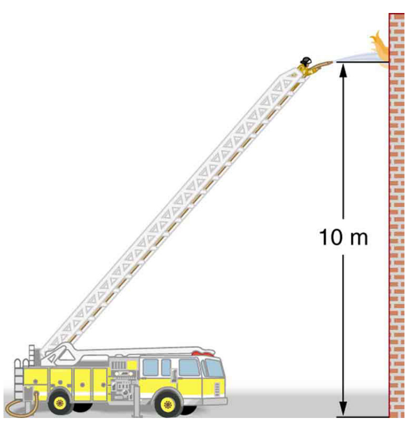
Equation:

$$v_2^2 = v_1^2 + 2\text{gh}$$

where h is the height dropped by the water. This is simply a kinematic equation for any object falling a distance h with negligible resistance. In fluids, this last equation is called *Torricelli’s theorem*. Note that the result is independent of the velocity’s direction, just as we found when applying conservation of energy to falling objects.



(a) Water gushes from the base of the Studen Kladenetz dam in Bulgaria. (credit: Kiril Kapustin; http://www.ImagesFromBulgaria.com) (b) In the absence of significant resistance, water flows from the reservoir with the same speed it would have if it fell the distance h without friction. This is an example of Torricelli’s theorem.



Pressure in the nozzle of this fire hose is less than at ground level for two reasons: the water has to go uphill to get to the nozzle, and speed increases in the nozzle. In spite of its

lowered pressure, the water can exert a large force on anything it strikes, by virtue of its kinetic energy. Pressure in the water stream becomes equal to atmospheric pressure once it emerges into the air.

All preceding applications of Bernoulli’s equation involved simplifying conditions, such as constant height or constant pressure. The next example is a more general application of Bernoulli’s equation in which pressure, velocity, and height all change. (See [link].)

Example:
Calculating Pressure: A Fire Hose Nozzle
Fire hoses used in major structure fires have inside diameters of 6.40 cm. Suppose such a hose carries a flow of 40.0 L/s starting at a gauge pressure of $1.62 \times 10^6\ \text{N/m}^2$. The hose goes 10.0 m up a ladder to a nozzle having an inside diameter of 3.00 cm. Assuming negligible resistance, what is the pressure in the nozzle?
Strategy
Here we must use Bernoulli’s equation to solve for the pressure, since depth is not constant.
Solution
Bernoulli’s equation states
Equation:

$$P_1 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 + \rho g h_1 = P_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2 + \rho g h_2,$$

where the subscripts 1 and 2 refer to the initial conditions at ground level and the final conditions inside the nozzle, respectively. We must first find the speeds v_1 and v_2. Since $Q = A_1 v_1$, we get
Equation:

$$v_1 = \frac{Q}{A_1} = \frac{40.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3/\text{s}}{\pi(3.20 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m})^2} = 12.4\ \text{m/s}.$$

Similarly, we find
Equation:

$$v_2 = 56.6\ \text{m/s}.$$

(This rather large speed is helpful in reaching the fire.) Now, taking h_1 to be zero, we solve Bernoulli’s equation for P_2:
Equation:

$$P_2 = P_1 + \frac{1}{2}\rho\left(v_1^2 - v_2^2\right) - \rho g h_2.$$

Substituting known values yields
Equation:

$$P_2 = 1.62 \times 10^6\ \text{N/m}^2 + \frac{1}{2}(1000\ \text{kg/m}^3)\left[(12.4\ \text{m/s})^2 - (56.6\ \text{m/s})^2\right] - (1000\ \text{kg/m}^3)(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)(10.0\ \text{m}$$

Discussion

This value is a gauge pressure, since the initial pressure was given as a gauge pressure. Thus the nozzle pressure equals atmospheric pressure, as it must because the water exits into the atmosphere without changes in its conditions.

Power in Fluid Flow

Power is the *rate* at which work is done or energy in any form is used or supplied. To see the relationship of power to fluid flow, consider Bernoulli's equation:
Equation:

$$P+\frac{1}{2}\rho v^2+\rho \mathrm{gh}=\text{constant}.$$

All three terms have units of energy per unit volume, as discussed in the previous section. Now, considering units, if we multiply energy per unit volume by flow rate (volume per unit time), we get units of power. That is, $(E/V)(V/t)=E/t$. This means that if we multiply Bernoulli's equation by flow rate Q, we get power. In equation form, this is
Equation:

$$\left(P+\frac{1}{2}\rho v^2+\rho \mathrm{gh}\right)Q=\text{power}.$$

Each term has a clear physical meaning. For example, PQ is the power supplied to a fluid, perhaps by a pump, to give it its pressure P. Similarly, $\frac{1}{2}\rho v^2 Q$ is the power supplied to a fluid to give it its kinetic energy. And $\rho \mathrm{ghQ}$ is the power going to gravitational potential energy.

Note:
Making Connections: Power
Power is defined as the rate of energy transferred, or E/t. Fluid flow involves several types of power. Each type of power is identified with a specific type of energy being expended or changed in form.

Example:
Calculating Power in a Moving Fluid
Suppose the fire hose in the previous example is fed by a pump that receives water through a hose with a 6.40-cm diameter coming from a hydrant with a pressure of $0.700\times 10^6\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$. What power does the pump supply to the water?
Strategy
Here we must consider energy forms as well as how they relate to fluid flow. Since the input and output hoses have the same diameters and are at the same height, the pump does not change the speed of the water nor its height, and so the water's kinetic energy and gravitational potential energy are unchanged. That means the pump only supplies power to increase water pressure by $0.92\times 10^6\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$ (from $0.700\times 10^6\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$ to $1.62\times 10^6\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$).
Solution
As discussed above, the power associated with pressure is
Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text{power} &= \text{PQ} \\
&= \left(0.920 \times 10^6 \text{ N/m}^2\right)\left(40.0 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3/\text{s}\right). \\
&= 3.68 \times 10^4 \text{ W} = 36.8 \text{ kW}
\end{aligned}
$$

Discussion
Such a substantial amount of power requires a large pump, such as is found on some fire trucks. (This kilowatt value converts to about 50 hp.) The pump in this example increases only the water's pressure. If a pump—such as the heart—directly increases velocity and height as well as pressure, we would have to calculate all three terms to find the power it supplies.

Summary

- Power in fluid flow is given by the equation $\left(P_1 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v^2 + \rho \text{gh}\right)Q = \text{power}$, where the first term is power associated with pressure, the second is power associated with velocity, and the third is power associated with height.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Based on Bernoulli's equation, what are three forms of energy in a fluid? (Note that these forms are conservative, unlike heat transfer and other dissipative forms not included in Bernoulli's equation.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Water that has emerged from a hose into the atmosphere has a gauge pressure of zero. Why? When you put your hand in front of the emerging stream you feel a force, yet the water's gauge pressure is zero. Explain where the force comes from in terms of energy.

Exercise:

Problem:

The old rubber boot shown in [link] has two leaks. To what maximum height can the water squirt from Leak 1? How does the velocity of water emerging from Leak 2 differ from that of leak 1? Explain your responses in terms of energy.

Water emerges from two leaks in an old boot.

Exercise:

Problem:

Water pressure inside a hose nozzle can be less than atmospheric pressure due to the Bernoulli effect. Explain in terms of energy how the water can emerge from the nozzle against the opposing atmospheric pressure.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Hoover Dam on the Colorado River is the highest dam in the United States at 221 m, with an output of 1300 MW. The dam generates electricity with water taken from a depth of 150 m and an average flow rate of $650\ \mathrm{m^3/s}$. (a) Calculate the power in this flow. (b) What is the ratio of this power to the facility's average of 680 MW?

Solution:

(a) $9.56 \times 10^8\ \mathrm{W}$

(b) 1.4

Exercise:

Problem:

A frequently quoted rule of thumb in aircraft design is that wings should produce about 1000 N of lift per square meter of wing. (The fact that a wing has a top and bottom surface does not double its area.) (a) At takeoff, an aircraft travels at 60.0 m/s, so that the air speed relative to the bottom of the wing is 60.0 m/s. Given the sea level density of air to be $1.29\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$, how fast must it move over the upper surface to create the ideal lift? (b) How fast must air move over the upper surface at a cruising speed of 245 m/s and at an altitude where air density is one-fourth that at sea level? (Note that this is not all of the aircraft's lift—some comes from the body of the plane, some from engine thrust, and so on. Furthermore, Bernoulli's principle gives an approximate answer because flow over the wing creates turbulence.)

Exercise:

Problem:

The left ventricle of a resting adult's heart pumps blood at a flow rate of $83.0\ \mathrm{cm^3/s}$, increasing its pressure by 110 mm Hg, its speed from zero to 30.0 cm/s, and its height by 5.00 cm. (All numbers are averaged over the entire heartbeat.) Calculate the total power output of the left ventricle. Note that most of the power is used to increase blood pressure.

Solution:

1.26 W

Exercise:

Problem:

A sump pump (used to drain water from the basement of houses built below the water table) is draining a flooded basement at the rate of 0.750 L/s, with an output pressure of $3.00 \times 10^5\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$. (a) The water enters a hose with a 3.00-cm inside diameter and rises 2.50 m above the pump. What is its pressure at this point? (b) The hose goes over the foundation wall, losing 0.500 m in height, and widens to 4.00 cm in diameter. What is the pressure now? You may neglect frictional losses in both parts of the problem.

Viscosity and Laminar Flow; Poiseuille’s Law

- Define laminar flow and turbulent flow.
- Explain what viscosity is.
- Calculate flow and resistance with Poiseuille’s law.
- Explain how pressure drops due to resistance.

Laminar Flow and Viscosity

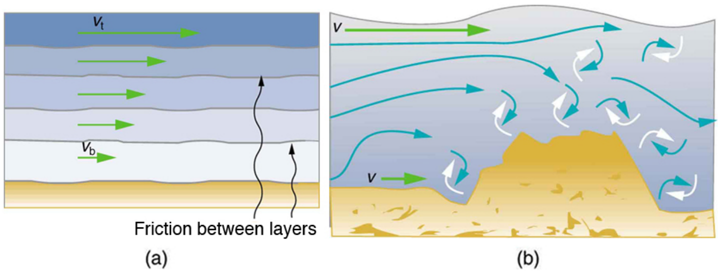
When you pour yourself a glass of juice, the liquid flows freely and quickly. But when you pour syrup on your pancakes, that liquid flows slowly and sticks to the pitcher. The difference is fluid friction, both within the fluid itself and between the fluid and its surroundings. We call this property of fluids *viscosity*. Juice has low viscosity, whereas syrup has high viscosity. In the previous sections we have considered ideal fluids with little or no viscosity. In this section, we will investigate what factors, including viscosity, affect the rate of fluid flow.

The precise definition of viscosity is based on *laminar*, or nonturbulent, flow. Before we can define viscosity, then, we need to define laminar flow and turbulent flow. [link] shows both types of flow. **Laminar** flow is characterized by the smooth flow of the fluid in layers that do not mix. Turbulent flow, or **turbulence**, is characterized by eddies and swirls that mix layers of fluid together.

Smoke rises smoothly for a while and then

begins to form swirls and eddies. The smooth flow is called laminar flow, whereas the swirls and eddies typify turbulent flow. If you watch the smoke (being careful not to breathe on it), you will notice that it rises more rapidly when flowing smoothly than after it becomes turbulent, implying that turbulence poses more resistance to flow. (credit: Creativity103)

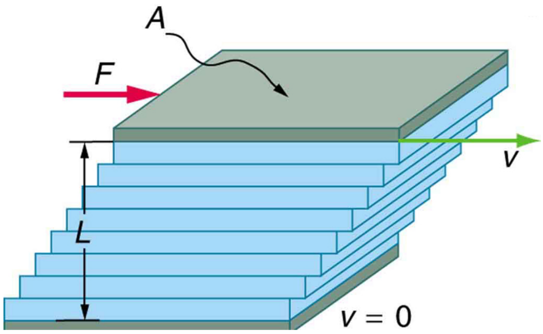
[link] shows schematically how laminar and turbulent flow differ. Layers flow without mixing when flow is laminar. When there is turbulence, the layers mix, and there are significant velocities in directions other than the overall direction of flow. The lines that are shown in many illustrations are the paths followed by small volumes of fluids. These are called *streamlines*. Streamlines are smooth and continuous when flow is laminar, but break up and mix when flow is turbulent. Turbulence has two main causes. First, any obstruction or sharp corner, such as in a faucet, creates turbulence by imparting velocities perpendicular to the flow. Second, high speeds cause turbulence. The drag both between adjacent layers of fluid and between the fluid and its surroundings forms swirls and eddies, if the speed is great enough. We shall concentrate on laminar flow for the remainder of this section, leaving certain aspects of turbulence for later sections.



(a) Laminar flow occurs in layers without mixing. Notice that viscosity causes drag between layers as well as with the fixed surface. (b) An obstruction in the vessel produces turbulence. Turbulent flow mixes the fluid. There is more interaction, greater heating, and more resistance than in laminar flow.

Note:
Making Connections: Take-Home Experiment: Go Down to the River
Try dropping simultaneously two sticks into a flowing river, one near the edge of the river and one near the middle. Which one travels faster? Why?

[link] shows how viscosity is measured for a fluid. Two parallel plates have the specific fluid between them. The bottom plate is held fixed, while the top plate is moved to the right, dragging fluid with it. The layer (or lamina) of fluid in contact with either plate does not move relative to the plate, and so the top layer moves at v while the bottom layer remains at rest. Each successive layer from the top down exerts a force on the one below it, trying to drag it along, producing a continuous variation in speed from v to 0 as shown. Care is taken to insure that the flow is laminar; that is, the layers do not mix. The motion in [link] is like a continuous shearing motion. Fluids have zero shear strength, but the *rate* at which they are sheared is related to the same geometrical factors A and L as is shear deformation for solids.



The graphic shows laminar flow of fluid between two plates of area A. The bottom plate is fixed. When the top plate is pushed to the right, it drags the fluid along with it.

A force F is required to keep the top plate in [link] moving at a constant velocity v, and experiments have shown that this force depends on four factors. First, F is directly proportional to v (until the speed is so high that turbulence occurs—then a much larger force is needed, and it has a more complicated dependence on v). Second, F is proportional to the area A of the plate. This relationship seems reasonable, since A is directly proportional to the amount of fluid being moved. Third, F is inversely proportional to the distance between the plates L. This relationship is also reasonable; L is like a lever arm, and the greater the lever arm, the less force that is needed. Fourth, F is directly proportional to *the coefficient of viscosity*, η. The greater the viscosity, the greater the force required. These dependencies are combined into the equation

Equation:

$$F = \eta\frac{\mathrm{vA}}{L},$$

which gives us a working definition of fluid **viscosity** η. Solving for η gives

Equation:

$$\eta = \frac{\mathrm{FL}}{\mathrm{vA}},$$

which defines viscosity in terms of how it is measured. The SI unit of viscosity is $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}/[(\mathrm{m}/\mathrm{s})\mathrm{m}^2] = (\mathrm{N}/\mathrm{m}^2)\mathrm{s}$ or $\mathrm{Pa} \cdot \mathrm{s}$. [link] lists the coefficients of viscosity for various fluids.

Viscosity varies from one fluid to another by several orders of magnitude. As you might expect, the viscosities of gases are much less than those of liquids, and these viscosities are often temperature dependent. The viscosity of blood can be reduced by aspirin consumption, allowing it to flow more easily around the body. (When used over the long term in low doses, aspirin can help prevent heart attacks, and reduce the risk of blood clotting.)

Laminar Flow Confined to Tubes—Poiseuille’s Law

What causes flow? The answer, not surprisingly, is pressure difference. In fact, there is a very simple relationship between horizontal flow and pressure. Flow rate Q is in the direction from high to low pressure. The greater the pressure differential between two points, the greater the flow rate. This relationship can be stated as

Equation:

$$Q = \frac{P_2 - P_1}{R},$$

where P_1 and P_2 are the pressures at two points, such as at either end of a tube, and R is the resistance to flow. The resistance R includes everything, except pressure, that affects flow rate. For example, R is greater for a long tube than for a short one. The greater the viscosity of a fluid, the greater the value of R. Turbulence greatly increases R, whereas increasing the diameter of a tube decreases R.

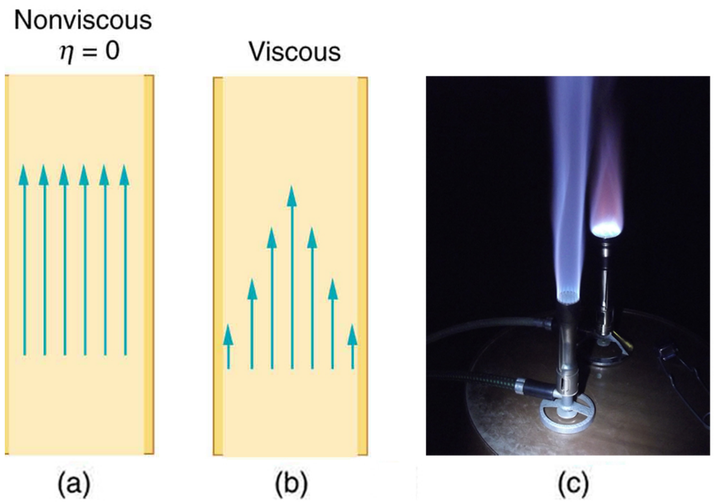
If viscosity is zero, the fluid is frictionless and the resistance to flow is also zero. Comparing frictionless flow in a tube to viscous flow, as in [link], we see that for a viscous fluid, speed is greatest at midstream because of drag at the boundaries. We can see the effect of viscosity in a Bunsen burner flame, even though the viscosity of natural gas is small.

The resistance R to laminar flow of an incompressible fluid having viscosity η through a horizontal tube of uniform radius r and length l, such as the one in [link], is given by

Equation:

$$R = \frac{8\eta l}{\pi r^4}.$$

This equation is called **Poiseuille’s law for resistance** after the French scientist J. L. Poiseuille (1799–1869), who derived it in an attempt to understand the flow of blood, an often turbulent fluid.



(a) If fluid flow in a tube has negligible resistance, the speed is the same all across the tube. (b) When a viscous fluid flows through a tube, its speed at the walls is zero, increasing steadily to its maximum at the center of the tube. (c) The shape of the Bunsen burner flame is due to the velocity profile across the tube. (credit: Jason Woodhead)

Let us examine Poiseuille’s expression for R to see if it makes good intuitive sense. We see that resistance is directly proportional to both fluid viscosity η and the length l of a tube. After all, both of these directly affect the amount of friction encountered—the greater either is, the greater the resistance and the smaller the flow. The radius r of a tube affects the resistance, which again makes sense, because the greater the radius, the greater the flow (all other factors remaining the same). But it is surprising that r is raised to the *fourth* power in Poiseuille’s law. This exponent means that any change in the radius of a tube has a very large effect on resistance. For example, doubling the radius of a tube decreases resistance by a factor of $2^4 = 16$.

Taken together, $Q = \frac{P_2 - P_1}{R}$ and $R = \frac{8\eta l}{\pi r^4}$ give the following expression for flow rate:
Equation:

$$Q = \frac{(P_2 - P_1)\pi r^4}{8\eta l}.$$

This equation describes laminar flow through a tube. It is sometimes called Poiseuille's law for laminar flow, or simply **Poiseuille's law**.

Example:
Using Flow Rate: Plaque Deposits Reduce Blood Flow
Suppose the flow rate of blood in a coronary artery has been reduced to half its normal value by plaque deposits. By what factor has the radius of the artery been reduced, assuming no turbulence occurs?
Strategy
Assuming laminar flow, Poiseuille's law states that
Equation:

$$Q = \frac{(P_2 - P_1)\pi r^4}{8\eta l}.$$

We need to compare the artery radius before and after the flow rate reduction.
Solution
With a constant pressure difference assumed and the same length and viscosity, along the artery we have
Equation:

$$\frac{Q_1}{r_1^4} = \frac{Q_2}{r_2^4}.$$

So, given that $Q_2 = 0.5Q_1$, we find that $r_2^4 = 0.5r_1^4$.
Therefore, $r_2 = (0.5)^{0.25} r_1 = 0.841r_1$, a decrease in the artery radius of 16%.
Discussion
This decrease in radius is surprisingly small for this situation. To restore the blood flow in spite of this buildup would require an increase in the pressure difference $(P_2 - P_1)$ of a factor of two, with subsequent strain on the heart.

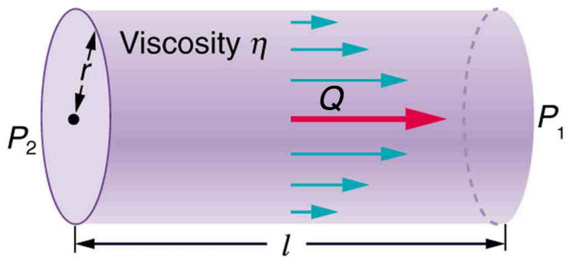
Fluid	Temperature (ºC)	Viscosity η (mPa·s)
Gases		
Air	0	0.0171
	20	0.0181
	40	0.0190
	100	0.0218
Ammonia	20	0.00974
Carbon dioxide	20	0.0147
Helium	20	0.0196
Hydrogen	0	0.0090
Mercury	20	0.0450
Oxygen	20	0.0203
Steam	100	0.0130
Liquids		
Water	0	1.792
	20	1.002
	37	0.6947
	40	0.653
	100	0.282
Whole blood[footnote]	20	3.015

Fluid	Temperature (ºC)	Viscosity η (mPa·s)
The ratios of the viscosities of blood to water are nearly constant between 0°C and 37°C.	37	2.084
Blood plasma[footnote] See note on Whole Blood.	20	1.810
	37	1.257
Ethyl alcohol	20	1.20
Methanol	20	0.584
Oil (heavy machine)	20	660
Oil (motor, SAE 10)	30	200
Oil (olive)	20	138
Glycerin	20	1500
Honey	20	2000–10000
Maple Syrup	20	2000–3000
Milk	20	3.0
Oil (Corn)	20	65

Coefficients of Viscosity of Various Fluids

The circulatory system provides many examples of Poiseuille's law in action—with blood flow regulated by changes in vessel size and blood pressure. Blood vessels are not rigid but elastic. Adjustments to blood flow are primarily made by varying the size of the vessels, since the resistance is so sensitive to the radius. During vigorous exercise, blood vessels are selectively dilated to important muscles and organs and blood pressure increases. This creates both greater overall blood flow and increased flow to specific areas. Conversely, decreases in vessel radii, perhaps from plaques in

the arteries, can greatly reduce blood flow. If a vessel's radius is reduced by only 5% (to 0.95 of its original value), the flow rate is reduced to about $(0.95)^4 = 0.81$ of its original value. A 19% decrease in flow is caused by a 5% decrease in radius. The body may compensate by increasing blood pressure by 19%, but this presents hazards to the heart and any vessel that has weakened walls. Another example comes from automobile engine oil. If you have a car with an oil pressure gauge, you may notice that oil pressure is high when the engine is cold. Motor oil has greater viscosity when cold than when warm, and so pressure must be greater to pump the same amount of cold oil.



Poiseuille's law applies to laminar flow of an incompressible fluid of viscosity η through a tube of length l and radius r. The direction of flow is from greater to lower pressure. Flow rate Q is directly proportional to the pressure difference $P_2 - P_1$, and inversely proportional to the length l of the tube and viscosity η of the fluid. Flow rate increases with r^4, the fourth power of the radius.

Example:
What Pressure Produces This Flow Rate?

An intravenous (IV) system is supplying saline solution to a patient at the rate of $0.120\ \text{cm}^3/\text{s}$ through a needle of radius 0.150 mm and length 2.50 cm. What pressure is needed at the entrance of the needle to cause this flow, assuming the viscosity of the saline solution to be the same as that of water? The gauge pressure of the blood in the patient's vein is 8.00 mm Hg. (Assume that the temperature is 20ºC .)

Strategy

Assuming laminar flow, Poiseuille's law applies. This is given by

Equation:

$$Q = \frac{(P_2 - P_1)\pi r^4}{8\eta l},$$

where P_2 is the pressure at the entrance of the needle and P_1 is the pressure in the vein. The only unknown is P_2.

Solution

Solving for P_2 yields

Equation:

$$P_2 = \frac{8\eta l}{\pi r^4}Q + P_1.$$

P_1 is given as 8.00 mm Hg, which converts to $1.066 \times 10^3\ \text{N/m}^2$. Substituting this and the other known values yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} P_2 &= \left[\frac{8(1.00\times10^{-3}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{s/m}^2)(2.50\times10^{-2}\ \text{m})}{\pi(0.150\times10^{-3}\ \text{m})^4}\right](1.20\times10^{-7}\ \text{m}^3/\text{s}) + 1.066\times10^3\ \text{N/m}^2 \\ &= 1.62\times10^4\ \text{N/m}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

This pressure could be supplied by an IV bottle with the surface of the saline solution 1.61 m above the entrance to the needle (this is left for you to solve in this chapter's Problems and Exercises), assuming that there is negligible pressure drop in the tubing leading to the needle.

Flow and Resistance as Causes of Pressure Drops

You may have noticed that water pressure in your home might be lower than normal on hot summer days when there is more use. This pressure drop occurs in the water

main before it reaches your home. Let us consider flow through the water main as illustrated in [link]. We can understand why the pressure P_1 to the home drops during times of heavy use by rearranging

Equation:

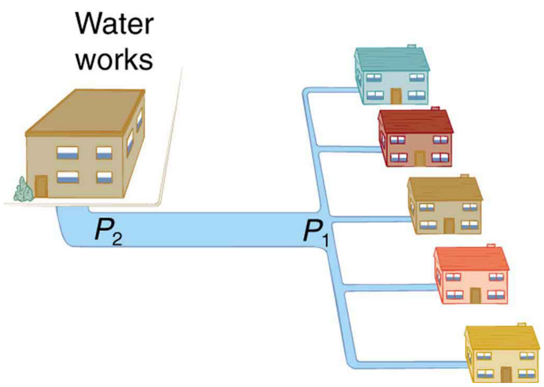
$$Q = \frac{P_2 - P_1}{R}$$

to

Equation:

$$P_2 - P_1 = RQ,$$

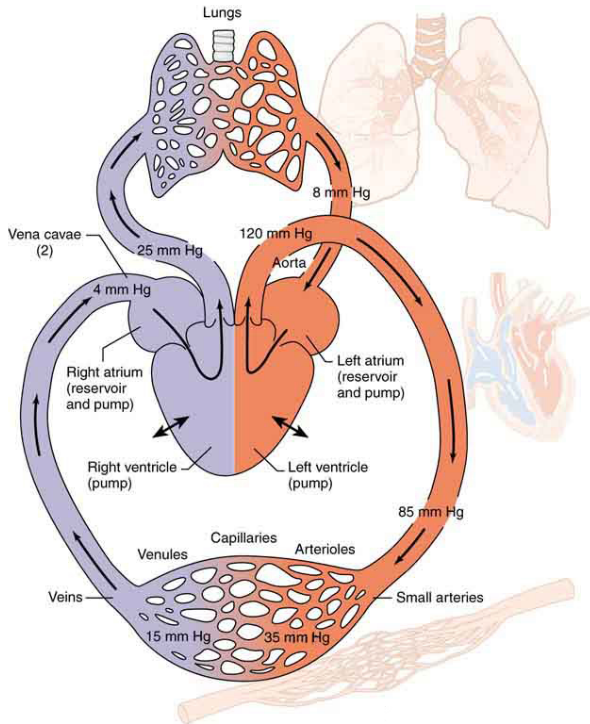
where, in this case, P_2 is the pressure at the water works and R is the resistance of the water main. During times of heavy use, the flow rate Q is large. This means that $P_2 - P_1$ must also be large. Thus P_1 must decrease. It is correct to think of flow and resistance as causing the pressure to drop from P_2 to P_1. $P_2 - P_1 = RQ$ is valid for both laminar and turbulent flows.



During times of heavy use, there is a significant pressure drop in a water main, and P_1 supplied to users is significantly less than P_2 created at the water works. If the flow is very small, then the pressure drop is negligible, and $P_2 \approx P_1$.

We can use $P_2 - P_1 = RQ$ to analyze pressure drops occurring in more complex systems in which the tube radius is not the same everywhere. Resistance will be much greater in narrow places, such as an obstructed coronary artery. For a given flow rate Q, the pressure drop will be greatest where the tube is most narrow. This is how water faucets control flow. Additionally, R is greatly increased by turbulence, and a constriction that creates turbulence greatly reduces the pressure downstream. Plaque in an artery reduces pressure and hence flow, both by its resistance and by the turbulence it creates.

[link] is a schematic of the human circulatory system, showing average blood pressures in its major parts for an adult at rest. Pressure created by the heart’s two pumps, the right and left ventricles, is reduced by the resistance of the blood vessels as the blood flows through them. The left ventricle increases arterial blood pressure that drives the flow of blood through all parts of the body except the lungs. The right ventricle receives the lower pressure blood from two major veins and pumps it through the lungs for gas exchange with atmospheric gases – the disposal of carbon dioxide from the blood and the replenishment of oxygen. Only one major organ is shown schematically, with typical branching of arteries to ever smaller vessels, the smallest of which are the capillaries, and rejoining of small veins into larger ones. Similar branching takes place in a variety of organs in the body, and the circulatory system has considerable flexibility in flow regulation to these organs by the dilation and constriction of the arteries leading to them and the capillaries within them. The sensitivity of flow to tube radius makes this flexibility possible over a large range of flow rates.



Schematic of the circulatory system. Pressure difference is created by the two pumps in the heart and is reduced by resistance in the vessels. Branching of vessels into capillaries allows blood to reach individual cells and exchange substances, such as oxygen and waste products, with them. The system has an impressive ability to regulate flow to individual organs, accomplished largely by varying vessel diameters.

Each branching of larger vessels into smaller vessels increases the total cross-sectional area of the tubes through which the blood flows. For example, an artery with a cross section of $1\ \mathrm{cm}^2$ may branch into 20 smaller arteries, each with cross sections of $0.5\ \mathrm{cm}^2$, with a total of $10\ \mathrm{cm}^2$. In that manner, the resistance of the branchings is reduced so that pressure is not entirely lost. Moreover, because $Q = Av$ and A increases through branching, the average velocity of the blood in the smaller vessels is reduced. The blood velocity in the aorta ($\mathrm{diameter} = 1\ \mathrm{cm}$) is about 25 cm/s, while in the capillaries ($20\mu\mathrm{m}$ in diameter) the velocity is about 1

mm/s. This reduced velocity allows the blood to exchange substances with the cells in the capillaries and alveoli in particular.

Section Summary

- Laminar flow is characterized by smooth flow of the fluid in layers that do not mix.
- Turbulence is characterized by eddies and swirls that mix layers of fluid together.
- Fluid viscosity η is due to friction within a fluid. Representative values are given in [link]. Viscosity has units of $(\mathrm{N/m^2})\mathrm{s}$ or $\mathrm{Pa \cdot s}$.
- Flow is proportional to pressure difference and inversely proportional to resistance:
  Equation:
  $$Q = \frac{P_2 - P_1}{R}.$$
- For laminar flow in a tube, Poiseuille's law for resistance states that
  Equation:
  $$R = \frac{8\eta l}{\pi r^4}.$$
- Poiseuille's law for flow in a tube is
  Equation:
  $$Q = \frac{(P_2 - P_1)\pi r^4}{8\eta l}.$$
- The pressure drop caused by flow and resistance is given by
  Equation:
  $$P_2 - P_1 = RQ.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why the viscosity of a liquid decreases with temperature—that is, how might increased temperature reduce the effects of cohesive forces in a liquid? Also explain why the viscosity of a gas increases with temperature—that is, how does increased gas temperature create more collisions between atoms and molecules?

Exercise:

Problem:

When paddling a canoe upstream, it is wisest to travel as near to the shore as possible. When canoeing downstream, it may be best to stay near the middle. Explain why.

Exercise:

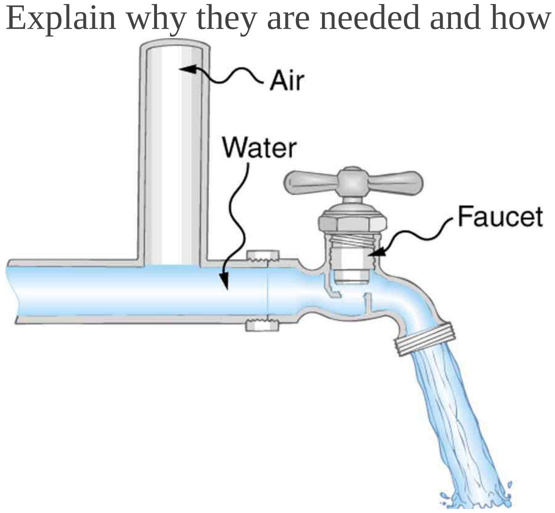
Problem:

Why does flow decrease in your shower when someone flushes the toilet?

Exercise:

Problem:

Plumbing usually includes air-filled tubes near water faucets, as shown in [link]. Explain why they are needed and how they work.



The vertical tube near the water tap remains full of air and serves a useful purpose.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the retarding force due to the viscosity of the air layer between a cart and a level air track given the following information—air temperature is $20^{\mathrm{o}}\ \mathrm{C}$, the cart is moving at 0.400 m/s, its surface area is $2.50 \times 10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m}^2$, and the thickness of the air layer is $6.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{m}$. (b) What is the ratio of this force to the weight of the 0.300-kg cart?

Solution:

(a) $3.02 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{N}$

(b) 1.03×10^{-3}

Exercise:

Problem:

What force is needed to pull one microscope slide over another at a speed of 1.00 cm/s, if there is a 0.500-mm-thick layer of $20^{\mathrm{o}}\ \mathrm{C}$ water between them and the contact area is $8.00\ \mathrm{cm}^2$?

Exercise:

Problem:

A glucose solution being administered with an IV has a flow rate of $4.00\ \mathrm{cm}^3/\mathrm{min}$. What will the new flow rate be if the glucose is replaced by whole blood having the same density but a viscosity 2.50 times that of the glucose? All other factors remain constant.

Solution:

$1.60\ \mathrm{cm}^3/\mathrm{min}$

Exercise:

Problem:

The pressure drop along a length of artery is 100 Pa, the radius is 10 mm, and the flow is laminar. The average speed of the blood is 15 mm/s. (a) What is the net force on the blood in this section of artery? (b) What is the power expended maintaining the flow?

Exercise:

Problem:

A small artery has a length of $1.1 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}$ and a radius of $2.5 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}$. If the pressure drop across the artery is 1.3 kPa, what is the flow rate through the artery? (Assume that the temperature is $37^{\text{o}}\ \text{C}$.)

Solution:

$8.7 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{m}^3/\text{s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Fluid originally flows through a tube at a rate of $100\ \text{cm}^3/\text{s}$. To illustrate the sensitivity of flow rate to various factors, calculate the new flow rate for the following changes with all other factors remaining the same as in the original conditions. (a) Pressure difference increases by a factor of 1.50. (b) A new fluid with 3.00 times greater viscosity is substituted. (c) The tube is replaced by one having 4.00 times the length. (d) Another tube is used with a radius 0.100 times the original. (e) Yet another tube is substituted with a radius 0.100 times the original and half the length, *and* the pressure difference is increased by a factor of 1.50.

Exercise:

Problem:

The arterioles (small arteries) leading to an organ, constrict in order to decrease flow to the organ. To shut down an organ, blood flow is reduced naturally to 1.00% of its original value. By what factor did the radii of the arterioles constrict? Penguins do this when they stand on ice to reduce the blood flow to their feet.

Solution:

0.316

Exercise:

Problem:

Angioplasty is a technique in which arteries partially blocked with plaque are dilated to increase blood flow. By what factor must the radius of an artery be increased in order to increase blood flow by a factor of 10?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Suppose a blood vessel’s radius is decreased to 90.0% of its original value by plaque deposits and the body compensates by increasing the pressure difference along the vessel to keep the flow rate constant. By what factor must the pressure difference increase? (b) If turbulence is created by the obstruction, what additional effect would it have on the flow rate?

Solution:

(a) 1.52

(b) Turbulence will decrease the flow rate of the blood, which would require an even larger increase in the pressure difference, leading to higher blood pressure.

Exercise:

Problem:

A spherical particle falling at a terminal speed in a liquid must have the gravitational force balanced by the drag force and the buoyant force. The buoyant force is equal to the weight of the displaced fluid, while the drag force is assumed to be given by Stokes Law, $F_s = 6\pi r\eta v$. Show that the terminal speed is given by
Equation:

$$v = \frac{2R^2 g}{9\eta}(\rho_{\text{s}} - \rho_1),$$

where R is the radius of the sphere, ρ_{s} is its density, and ρ_1 is the density of the fluid and η the coefficient of viscosity.

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the equation of the previous problem, find the viscosity of motor oil in which a steel ball of radius 0.8 mm falls with a terminal speed of 4.32 cm/s. The densities of the ball and the oil are 7.86 and 0.88 g/mL, respectively.

Solution:
Equation:

$$225\ \text{mPa} \cdot \text{s}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

A skydiver will reach a terminal velocity when the air drag equals their weight. For a skydiver with high speed and a large body, turbulence is a factor. The drag force then is approximately proportional to the square of the velocity. Taking the drag force to be $F_{\text{D}} = \frac{1}{2}\rho Av^2$ and setting this equal to the person's weight, find the terminal speed for a person falling "spread eagle." Find both a formula and a number for v_{t}, with assumptions as to size.

Exercise:

Problem:

A layer of oil 1.50 mm thick is placed between two microscope slides. Researchers find that a force of 5.50×10^{-4} N is required to glide one over the other at a speed of 1.00 cm/s when their contact area is $6.00\ \text{cm}^2$. What is the oil's viscosity? What type of oil might it be?

Solution:
Equation:

$$0.138\ \text{Pa} \cdot \text{s},$$

or

Olive oil.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Verify that a 19.0% decrease in laminar flow through a tube is caused by a 5.00% decrease in radius, assuming that all other factors remain constant, as stated in the text. (b) What increase in flow is obtained from a 5.00% increase in radius, again assuming all other factors remain constant?

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] dealt with the flow of saline solution in an IV system. (a) Verify that a pressure of $1.62 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$ is created at a depth of 1.61 m in a saline solution, assuming its density to be that of sea water. (b) Calculate the new flow rate if the height of the saline solution is decreased to 1.50 m. (c) At what height would the direction of flow be reversed? (This reversal can be a problem when patients stand up.)

Solution:

(a) $1.62 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$

(b) $0.111\ \mathrm{cm^3/s}$

(c)10.6 cm

Exercise:

Problem:

When physicians diagnose arterial blockages, they quote the reduction in flow rate. If the flow rate in an artery has been reduced to 10.0% of its normal value by a blood clot and the average pressure difference has increased by 20.0%, by what factor has the clot reduced the radius of the artery?

Exercise:

Problem:

During a marathon race, a runner’s blood flow increases to 10.0 times her resting rate. Her blood’s viscosity has dropped to 95.0% of its normal value, and the blood pressure difference across the circulatory system has increased by 50.0%. By what factor has the average radii of her blood vessels increased?

Solution:

1.59

Exercise:

Problem:

Water supplied to a house by a water main has a pressure of $3.00 \times 10^5 \ \mathrm{N/m^2}$ early on a summer day when neighborhood use is low. This pressure produces a flow of 20.0 L/min through a garden hose. Later in the day, pressure at the exit of the water main and entrance to the house drops, and a flow of only 8.00 L/min is obtained through the same hose. (a) What pressure is now being supplied to the house, assuming resistance is constant? (b) By what factor did the flow rate in the water main increase in order to cause this decrease in delivered pressure? The pressure at the entrance of the water main is $5.00 \times 10^5 \ \mathrm{N/m^2}$, and the original flow rate was 200 L/min. (c) How many more users are there, assuming each would consume 20.0 L/min in the morning?

Exercise:

Problem:

An oil gusher shoots crude oil 25.0 m into the air through a pipe with a 0.100-m diameter. Neglecting air resistance but not the resistance of the pipe, and assuming laminar flow, calculate the gauge pressure at the entrance of the 50.0-m-long vertical pipe. Take the density of the oil to be $900 \ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$ and its viscosity to be $1.00 \ (\mathrm{N/m^2}) \cdot \mathrm{s}$ (or $1.00 \ \mathrm{Pa} \cdot \mathrm{s}$). Note that you must take into account the pressure due to the 50.0-m column of oil in the pipe.

Solution:

$2.95 \times 10^6 \ \mathrm{N/m^2}$(gauge pressure)

Exercise:

Problem:

Concrete is pumped from a cement mixer to the place it is being laid, instead of being carried in wheelbarrows. The flow rate is 200.0 L/min through a 50.0-m-long, 8.00-cm-diameter hose, and the pressure at the pump is $8.00 \times 10^6 \ \mathrm{N/m^2}$. (a) Calculate the resistance of the hose. (b) What is the viscosity of the concrete, assuming the flow is laminar? (c) How much power is being supplied, assuming the point of use is at the same level as the pump? You may neglect the power supplied to increase the concrete’s velocity.

Exercise:

Problem: **Construct Your Own Problem**

Consider a coronary artery constricted by arteriosclerosis. Construct a problem in which you calculate the amount by which the diameter of the artery is decreased, based on an assessment of the decrease in flow rate.

Exercise:

Problem:

Consider a river that spreads out in a delta region on its way to the sea. Construct a problem in which you calculate the average speed at which water moves in the delta region, based on the speed at which it was moving up river. Among the things to consider are the size and flow rate of the river before it spreads out and its size once it has spread out. You can construct the problem for the river spreading out into one large river or into multiple smaller rivers.

Glossary

laminar
: a type of fluid flow in which layers do not mix

turbulence
: fluid flow in which layers mix together via eddies and swirls

viscosity
: the friction in a fluid, defined in terms of the friction between layers

Poiseuille's law for resistance
: the resistance to laminar flow of an incompressible fluid in a tube: $R = 8\eta l/\pi r^4$

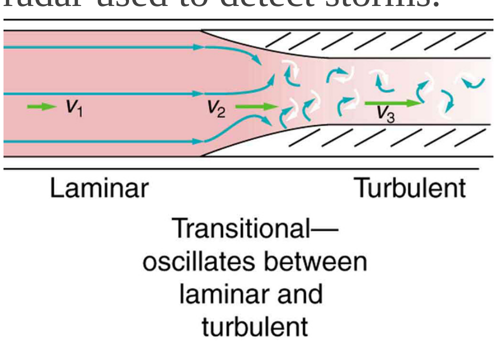
Poiseuille's law
: the rate of laminar flow of an incompressible fluid in a tube: $Q = (P_2 - P_1)\pi r^4/8\eta l$

The Onset of Turbulence

- Calculate Reynolds number.
- Use the Reynolds number for a system to determine whether it is laminar or turbulent.

Sometimes we can predict if flow will be laminar or turbulent. We know that flow in a very smooth tube or around a smooth, streamlined object will be laminar at low velocity. We also know that at high velocity, even flow in a smooth tube or around a smooth object will experience turbulence. In between, it is more difficult to predict. In fact, at intermediate velocities, flow may oscillate back and forth indefinitely between laminar and turbulent.

An occlusion, or narrowing, of an artery, such as shown in [link], is likely to cause turbulence because of the irregularity of the blockage, as well as the complexity of blood as a fluid. Turbulence in the circulatory system is noisy and can sometimes be detected with a stethoscope, such as when measuring diastolic pressure in the upper arm's partially collapsed brachial artery. These turbulent sounds, at the onset of blood flow when the cuff pressure becomes sufficiently small, are called *Korotkoff sounds*. Aneurysms, or ballooning of arteries, create significant turbulence and can sometimes be detected with a stethoscope. Heart murmurs, consistent with their name, are sounds produced by turbulent flow around damaged and insufficiently closed heart valves. Ultrasound can also be used to detect turbulence as a medical indicator in a process analogous to Doppler-shift radar used to detect storms.



Flow is laminar in the large part of this blood

vessel and turbulent in the part narrowed by plaque, where velocity is high. In the transition region, the flow can oscillate chaotically between laminar and turbulent flow.

An indicator called the **Reynolds number** N_{R} can reveal whether flow is laminar or turbulent. For flow in a tube of uniform diameter, the Reynolds number is defined as

Equation:

$$N_{\mathrm{R}} = \frac{2\rho \mathrm{vr}}{\eta}(\text{flow in tube}),$$

where ρ is the fluid density, v its speed, η its viscosity, and r the tube radius. The Reynolds number is a unitless quantity. Experiments have revealed that N_{R} is related to the onset of turbulence. For N_{R} below about 2000, flow is laminar. For N_{R} above about 3000, flow is turbulent. For values of N_{R} between about 2000 and 3000, flow is unstable—that is, it can be laminar, but small obstructions and surface roughness can make it turbulent, and it may oscillate randomly between being laminar and turbulent. The blood flow through most of the body is a quiet, laminar flow. The exception is in the aorta, where the speed of the blood flow rises above a critical value of 35 m/s and becomes turbulent.

Example:

Is This Flow Laminar or Turbulent?

Calculate the Reynolds number for flow in the needle considered in Example 12.8 to verify the assumption that the flow is laminar. Assume

that the density of the saline solution is $1025\ \text{kg/m}^3$.
Strategy
We have all of the information needed, except the fluid speed v, which can be calculated from $v = Q/A = 1.70\ \text{m/s}$ (verification of this is in this chapter’s Problems and Exercises).
Solution
Entering the known values into $N_\text{R} = \frac{2\rho\text{vr}}{\eta}$ gives
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll} N_\text{R} & = & \frac{2\rho\text{vr}}{\eta} \\ & = & \frac{2(1025\ \text{kg/m}^3)(1.70\ \text{m/s})(0.150\times10^{-3}\ \text{m})}{1.00\times10^{-3}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{s/m}^2} \\ & = & 523. \end{array}$$

Discussion
Since N_R is well below 2000, the flow should indeed be laminar.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Inhalation
Under the conditions of normal activity, an adult inhales about 1 L of air during each inhalation. With the aid of a watch, determine the time for one of your own inhalations by timing several breaths and dividing the total length by the number of breaths. Calculate the average flow rate Q of air traveling through the trachea during each inhalation.

The topic of chaos has become quite popular over the last few decades. A system is defined to be *chaotic* when its behavior is so sensitive to some factor that it is extremely difficult to predict. The field of *chaos* is the study of chaotic behavior. A good example of chaotic behavior is the flow of a fluid with a Reynolds number between 2000 and 3000. Whether or not the flow is turbulent is difficult, but not impossible, to predict—the difficulty lies in the extremely sensitive dependence on factors like roughness and

obstructions on the nature of the flow. A tiny variation in one factor has an exaggerated (or nonlinear) effect on the flow. Phenomena as disparate as turbulence, the orbit of Pluto, and the onset of irregular heartbeats are chaotic and can be analyzed with similar techniques.

Section Summary

- The Reynolds number N_{R} can reveal whether flow is laminar or turbulent. It is
  Equation:

$$N_{\mathrm{R}} = \frac{2\rho \mathrm{vr}}{\eta}.$$

- For N_{R} below about 2000, flow is laminar. For N_{R} above about 3000, flow is turbulent. For values of N_{R} between 2000 and 3000, it may be either or both.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

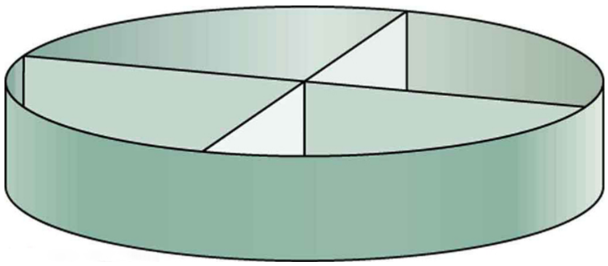
Problem:

Doppler ultrasound can be used to measure the speed of blood in the body. If there is a partial constriction of an artery, where would you expect blood speed to be greatest, at or nearby the constriction? What are the two distinct causes of higher resistance in the constriction?

Exercise:

Problem:

Sink drains often have a device such as that shown in [link] to help speed the flow of water. How does this work?



You will find devices such as this in many drains. They significantly increase flow rate.

Exercise:

Problem:

Some ceiling fans have decorative wicker reeds on their blades. Discuss whether these fans are as quiet and efficient as those with smooth blades.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that the flow of oil is laminar (barely) for an oil gusher that shoots crude oil 25.0 m into the air through a pipe with a 0.100-m diameter. The vertical pipe is 50 m long. Take the density of the oil to be 900 $\mathrm{kg/m^3}$ and its viscosity to be $1.00\ (\mathrm{N/m^2}) \cdot \mathrm{s}$ (or $1.00\ \mathrm{Pa} \cdot \mathrm{s}$).

Solution:

$N_{\mathrm{R}} = 1.99 \times 10^2 < 2000$

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the Reynolds number N_{R} is unitless by substituting units for all the quantities in its definition and cancelling.

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the Reynolds numbers for the flow of water through (a) a nozzle with a radius of 0.250 cm and (b) a garden hose with a radius of 0.900 cm, when the nozzle is attached to the hose. The flow rate through hose and nozzle is 0.500 L/s. Can the flow in either possibly be laminar?

Solution:

(a) nozzle: 1.27×10^5 , not laminar

(b) hose: 3.51×10^4, not laminar.

Exercise:

Problem:

A fire hose has an inside diameter of 6.40 cm. Suppose such a hose carries a flow of 40.0 L/s starting at a gauge pressure of $1.62 \times 10^6 \text{ N/m}^2$. The hose goes 10.0 m up a ladder to a nozzle having an inside diameter of 3.00 cm. Calculate the Reynolds numbers for flow in the fire hose and nozzle to show that the flow in each must be turbulent.

Exercise:

Problem:

Concrete is pumped from a cement mixer to the place it is being laid, instead of being carried in wheelbarrows. The flow rate is 200.0 L/min through a 50.0-m-long, 8.00-cm-diameter hose, and the pressure at the pump is $8.00 \times 10^6 \ \mathrm{N/m^2}$. Verify that the flow of concrete is laminar taking concrete's viscosity to be $48.0 \ (\mathrm{N/m^2}) \cdot \mathrm{s}$, and given its density is $2300 \ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$.

Solution:

2.54 << 2000, laminar.

Exercise:

Problem:

At what flow rate might turbulence begin to develop in a water main with a 0.200-m diameter? Assume a $20^\mathrm{o} \ \mathrm{C}$ temperature.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the greatest average speed of blood flow at $37^\mathrm{o} \ \mathrm{C}$ in an artery of radius 2.00 mm if the flow is to remain laminar? What is the corresponding flow rate? Take the density of blood to be $1025 \ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$.

Solution:

1.02 m/s

$1.28 \times 10^{-2} \ \mathrm{L/s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

In Take-Home Experiment: Inhalation, we measured the average flow rate Q of air traveling through the trachea during each inhalation. Now calculate the average air speed in meters per second through your trachea during each inhalation. The radius of the trachea in adult humans is approximately 10^{-2} m. From the data above, calculate the Reynolds number for the air flow in the trachea during inhalation. Do you expect the air flow to be laminar or turbulent?

Exercise:

Problem:

Gasoline is piped underground from refineries to major users. The flow rate is $3.00\times10^{-2}\text{ m}^3/\text{s}$ (about 500 gal/min), the viscosity of gasoline is $1.00\times10^{-3}\ (\text{N/m}^2)\cdot\text{s}$, and its density is 680 kg/m^3. (a) What minimum diameter must the pipe have if the Reynolds number is to be less than 2000? (b) What pressure difference must be maintained along each kilometer of the pipe to maintain this flow rate?

Solution:

(a)$\geq 13.0\text{ m}$

(b) $2.68\times10^{-6}\text{ N/m}^2$

Exercise:

Problem:

Assuming that blood is an ideal fluid, calculate the critical flow rate at which turbulence is a certainty in the aorta. Take the diameter of the aorta to be 2.50 cm. (Turbulence will actually occur at lower average flow rates, because blood is not an ideal fluid. Furthermore, since blood flow pulses, turbulence may occur during only the high-velocity part of each heartbeat.)

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

A fairly large garden hose has an internal radius of 0.600 cm and a length of 23.0 m. The nozzleless horizontal hose is attached to a faucet, and it delivers 50.0 L/s. (a) What water pressure is supplied by the faucet? (b) What is unreasonable about this pressure? (c) What is unreasonable about the premise? (d) What is the Reynolds number for the given flow? (Take the viscosity of water as $1.005 \times 10^{-3}\ \left(\mathrm{N/m^2}\right) \cdot$ s.)

Solution:

(a) 23.7 atm or $344\ \mathrm{lb/in^2}$

(b) The pressure is much too high.

(c) The assumed flow rate is very high for a garden hose.

(d) 5.27×10^6 > > 3000, turbulent, contrary to the assumption of laminar flow when using this equation.

Glossary

Reynolds number
: a dimensionless parameter that can reveal whether a particular flow is laminar or turbulent

Motion of an Object in a Viscous Fluid

- Calculate the Reynolds number for an object moving through a fluid.
- Explain whether the Reynolds number indicates laminar or turbulent flow.
- Describe the conditions under which an object has a terminal speed.

A moving object in a viscous fluid is equivalent to a stationary object in a flowing fluid stream. (For example, when you ride a bicycle at 10 m/s in still air, you feel the air in your face exactly as if you were stationary in a 10-m/s wind.) Flow of the stationary fluid around a moving object may be laminar, turbulent, or a combination of the two. Just as with flow in tubes, it is possible to predict when a moving object creates turbulence. We use another form of the Reynolds number $N\prime_{\text{R}}$, defined for an object moving in a fluid to be

Equation:

$$N\prime_{\text{R}} = \frac{\rho \text{vL}}{\eta} \text{(object in fluid)},$$

where L is a characteristic length of the object (a sphere's diameter, for example), ρ the fluid density, η its viscosity, and v the object's speed in the fluid. If $N\prime_{\text{R}}$ is less than about 1, flow around the object can be laminar, particularly if the object has a smooth shape. The transition to turbulent flow occurs for $N\prime_{\text{R}}$ between 1 and about 10, depending on surface roughness and so on. Depending on the surface, there can be a *turbulent wake* behind the object with some laminar flow over its surface. For an $N\prime_{\text{R}}$ between 10 and 10^6, the flow may be either laminar or turbulent and may oscillate between the two. For $N\prime_{\text{R}}$ greater than about 10^6, the flow is entirely turbulent, even at the surface of the object. (See [link].) Laminar flow occurs mostly when the objects in the fluid are small, such as raindrops, pollen, and blood cells in plasma.

Example:
Does a Ball Have a Turbulent Wake?

Calculate the Reynolds number $N\prime_{\mathrm{R}}$ for a ball with a 7.40-cm diameter thrown at 40.0 m/s.

Strategy

We can use $N\prime_{\mathrm{R}} = \frac{\rho \mathrm{vL}}{\eta}$ to calculate $N\prime_{\mathrm{R}}$, since all values in it are either given or can be found in tables of density and viscosity.

Solution

Substituting values into the equation for $N\prime_{\mathrm{R}}$ yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} N\prime_R &= \frac{\rho \mathrm{vL}}{\eta} = \frac{(1.29\ \mathrm{kg/m^3})(40.0\ \mathrm{m/s})(0.0740\ \mathrm{m})}{1.81 \times 10^{-5}\ 1.00\ \mathrm{Pa \cdot s}} \\ &= 2.11 \times 10^5. \end{aligned}$$

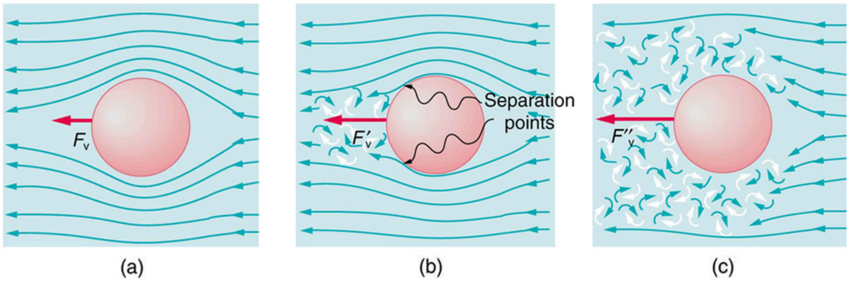
Discussion

This value is sufficiently high to imply a turbulent wake. Most large objects, such as airplanes and sailboats, create significant turbulence as they move. As noted before, the Bernoulli principle gives only qualitatively-correct results in such situations.

One of the consequences of viscosity is a resistance force called **viscous drag** F_{V} that is exerted on a moving object. This force typically depends on the object's speed (in contrast with simple friction). Experiments have shown that for laminar flow ($N\prime_{\mathrm{R}}$ less than about one) viscous drag is proportional to speed, whereas for $N\prime_{\mathrm{R}}$ between about 10 and 10^6, viscous drag is proportional to speed squared. (This relationship is a strong dependence and is pertinent to bicycle racing, where even a small headwind causes significantly increased drag on the racer. Cyclists take turns being the leader in the pack for this reason.) For $N\prime_{\mathrm{R}}$ greater than 10^6, drag increases dramatically and behaves with greater complexity. For laminar flow around a sphere, F_{V} is proportional to fluid viscosity η, the object's characteristic size L, and its speed v. All of which makes sense—the more viscous the fluid and the larger the object, the more drag we expect. Recall Stoke's law $F_{\mathrm{S}} = 6\pi r\eta v$. For the special case of a small sphere of radius R moving slowly in a fluid of viscosity η, the drag force F_{S} is given by

Equation:

$$F_{\mathrm{S}} = 6\pi R\eta v.$$



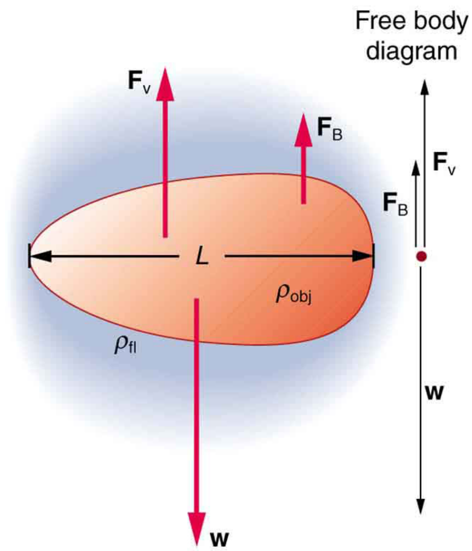
(a) Motion of this sphere to the right is equivalent to fluid flow to the left. Here the flow is laminar with $N\prime_{\mathrm{R}}$ less than 1. There is a force, called viscous drag F_{V}, to the left on the ball due to the fluid's viscosity. (b) At a higher speed, the flow becomes partially turbulent, creating a wake starting where the flow lines separate from the surface. Pressure in the wake is less than in front of the sphere, because fluid speed is less, creating a net force to the left $F\prime_{\mathrm{V}}$ that is significantly greater than for laminar flow. Here $N\prime_{\mathrm{R}}$ is greater than 10. (c) At much higher speeds, where $N\prime_{\mathrm{R}}$ is greater than 10^6, flow becomes turbulent everywhere on the surface and behind the sphere. Drag increases dramatically.

An interesting consequence of the increase in F_{V} with speed is that an object falling through a fluid will not continue to accelerate indefinitely (as it would if we neglect air resistance, for example). Instead, viscous drag increases, slowing acceleration, until a critical speed, called the **terminal speed**, is reached and the acceleration of the object becomes zero. Once this happens, the object continues to fall at constant speed (the terminal speed). This is the case for particles of sand falling in the ocean, cells falling in a centrifuge, and sky divers falling through the air. [link] shows some of the factors that affect terminal speed. There is a viscous drag on the object that

depends on the viscosity of the fluid and the size of the object. But there is also a buoyant force that depends on the density of the object relative to the fluid. Terminal speed will be greatest for low-viscosity fluids and objects with high densities and small sizes. Thus a skydiver falls more slowly with outspread limbs than when they are in a pike position—head first with hands at their side and legs together.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Don’t Lose Your Marbles
By measuring the terminal speed of a slowly moving sphere in a viscous fluid, one can find the viscosity of that fluid (at that temperature). It can be difficult to find small ball bearings around the house, but a small marble will do. Gather two or three fluids (syrup, motor oil, honey, olive oil, etc.) and a thick, tall clear glass or vase. Drop the marble into the center of the fluid and time its fall (after letting it drop a little to reach its terminal speed). Compare your values for the terminal speed and see if they are inversely proportional to the viscosities as listed in [link]. Does it make a difference if the marble is dropped near the side of the glass?

Knowledge of terminal speed is useful for estimating sedimentation rates of small particles. We know from watching mud settle out of dirty water that sedimentation is usually a slow process. Centrifuges are used to speed sedimentation by creating accelerated frames in which gravitational acceleration is replaced by centripetal acceleration, which can be much greater, increasing the terminal speed.



There are three forces acting on an object falling through a viscous fluid: its weight w, the viscous drag F_{V}, and the buoyant force $\mathbf{F}_{\mathrm{B}}$.

Section Summary

- When an object moves in a fluid, there is a different form of the Reynolds number $N\prime_{\mathrm{R}} = \frac{\rho \mathrm{vL}}{\eta}(\text{object in fluid})$, which indicates whether flow is laminar or turbulent.
- For $N\prime_{\mathrm{R}}$ less than about one, flow is laminar.
- For $N\prime_{\mathrm{R}}$ greater than 10^6, flow is entirely turbulent.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What direction will a helium balloon move inside a car that is slowing down—toward the front or back? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Will identical raindrops fall more rapidly in 5^o C air or 25^o C air, neglecting any differences in air density? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

If you took two marbles of different sizes, what would you expect to observe about the relative magnitudes of their terminal velocities?

Glossary

viscous drag
: a resistance force exerted on a moving object, with a nontrivial dependence on velocity

terminal speed
: the speed at which the viscous drag of an object falling in a viscous fluid is equal to the other forces acting on the object (such as gravity), so that the acceleration of the object is zero

Molecular Transport Phenomena: Diffusion, Osmosis, and Related Processes

- Define diffusion, osmosis, dialysis, and active transport.
- Calculate diffusion rates.

Diffusion

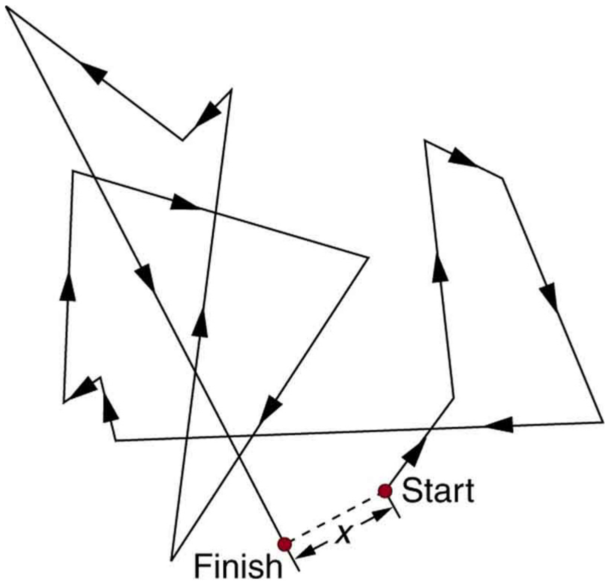
There is something fishy about the ice cube from your freezer—how did it pick up those food odors? How does soaking a sprained ankle in Epsom salt reduce swelling? The answer to these questions are related to atomic and molecular transport phenomena—another mode of fluid motion. Atoms and molecules are in constant motion at any temperature. In fluids they move about randomly even in the absence of macroscopic flow. This motion is called a random walk and is illustrated in [link]. **Diffusion** is the movement of substances due to random thermal molecular motion. Fluids, like fish fumes or odors entering ice cubes, can even diffuse through solids.

Diffusion is a slow process over macroscopic distances. The densities of common materials are great enough that molecules cannot travel very far before having a collision that can scatter them in any direction, including straight backward. It can be shown that the average distance x_{rms} that a molecule travels is proportional to the square root of time:

Equation:

$$x_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{2\text{Dt}},$$

where x_{rms} stands for the **root-mean-square distance** and is the statistical average for the process. The quantity D is the diffusion constant for the particular molecule in a specific medium. [link] lists representative values of D for various substances, in units of m^2/s.



The random thermal motion of a molecule in a fluid in time t. This type of motion is called a random walk.

Diffusing molecule	**Medium**	***D*** **(m^2/s)**
Hydrogen (H_2)	Air	6.4×10^{-5}
Oxygen (O_2)	Air	1.8×10^{-5}
Oxygen (O_2)	Water	1.0×10^{-9}
Glucose $(C_6H_{12}O_6)$	Water	6.7×10^{-10}
Hemoglobin	Water	6.9×10^{-11}

Diffusing molecule	Medium	*D* (m^2/s)
DNA	Water	1.3×10^{-12}

Diffusion Constants for Various Molecules[footnote]
At 20°C and 1 atm

Note that D gets progressively smaller for more massive molecules. This decrease is because the average molecular speed at a given temperature is inversely proportional to molecular mass. Thus the more massive molecules diffuse more slowly. Another interesting point is that D for oxygen in air is much greater than D for oxygen in water. In water, an oxygen molecule makes many more collisions in its random walk and is slowed considerably. In water, an oxygen molecule moves only about 40 μm in 1 s. (Each molecule actually collides about 10^{10} times per second!). Finally, note that diffusion constants increase with temperature, because average molecular speed increases with temperature. This is because the average kinetic energy of molecules, $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$, is proportional to absolute temperature.

Example:
Calculating Diffusion: How Long Does Glucose Diffusion Take?
Calculate the average time it takes a glucose molecule to move 1.0 cm in water.
Strategy
We can use $x_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{2Dt}$, the expression for the average distance moved in time t, and solve it for t. All other quantities are known.
Solution
Solving for t and substituting known values yields
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} t &= \frac{x_{\text{rms}}^2}{2D} = \frac{(0.010\ \text{m})^2}{2(6.7\times10^{-10}\ \text{m}^2/\text{s})} \\ &= 7.5 \times 10^4\ \text{s} = 21\ \text{h}. \end{aligned}$$

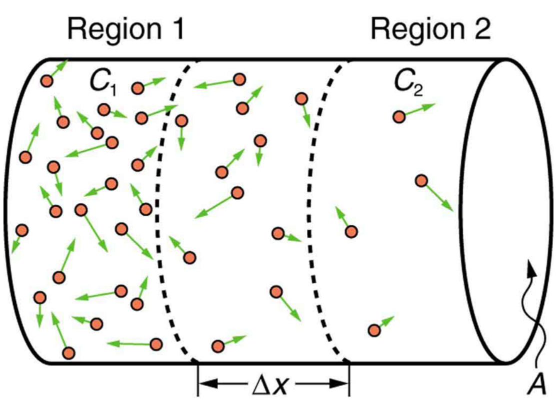
Discussion

This is a remarkably long time for glucose to move a mere centimeter! For this reason, we stir sugar into water rather than waiting for it to diffuse.

Because diffusion is typically very slow, its most important effects occur over small distances. For example, the cornea of the eye gets most of its oxygen by diffusion through the thin tear layer covering it.

The Rate and Direction of Diffusion

If you very carefully place a drop of food coloring in a still glass of water, it will slowly diffuse into the colorless surroundings until its concentration is the same everywhere. This type of diffusion is called free diffusion, because there are no barriers inhibiting it. Let us examine its direction and rate. Molecular motion is random in direction, and so simple chance dictates that more molecules will move out of a region of high concentration than into it. The net rate of diffusion is higher initially than after the process is partially completed. (See [link].)



Diffusion proceeds from a region of higher concentration to a lower one. The net rate of movement is proportional to the difference in concentration.

The net rate of diffusion is proportional to the concentration difference. Many more molecules will leave a region of high concentration than will enter it from a region of low concentration. In fact, if the concentrations were the same, there would be *no* net movement. The net rate of diffusion is also proportional to the diffusion constant D, which is determined experimentally. The farther a molecule can diffuse in a given time, the more likely it is to leave the region of high concentration. Many of the factors that affect the rate are hidden in the diffusion constant D. For example, temperature and cohesive and adhesive forces all affect values of D.

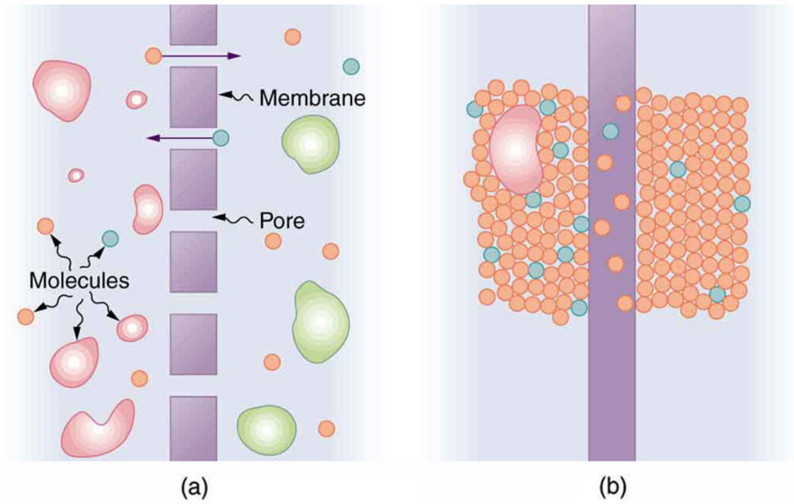
Diffusion is the dominant mechanism by which the exchange of nutrients and waste products occur between the blood and tissue, and between air and blood in the lungs. In the evolutionary process, as organisms became larger, they needed quicker methods of transportation than net diffusion, because of the larger distances involved in the transport, leading to the development of circulatory systems. Less sophisticated, single-celled organisms still rely totally on diffusion for the removal of waste products and the uptake of nutrients.

Osmosis and Dialysis—Diffusion across Membranes

Some of the most interesting examples of diffusion occur through barriers that affect the rates of diffusion. For example, when you soak a swollen ankle in Epsom salt, water diffuses through your skin. Many substances regularly move through cell membranes; oxygen moves in, carbon dioxide moves out, nutrients go in, and wastes go out, for example. Because membranes are thin structures (typically 6.5×10^{-9} to 10×10^{-9} m across) diffusion rates through them can be high. Diffusion through membranes is an important method of transport.

Membranes are generally selectively permeable, or **semipermeable**. (See [link].) One type of semipermeable membrane has small pores that allow only small molecules to pass through. In other types of membranes, the molecules may actually dissolve in the membrane or react with molecules

in the membrane while moving across. Membrane function, in fact, is the subject of much current research, involving not only physiology but also chemistry and physics.

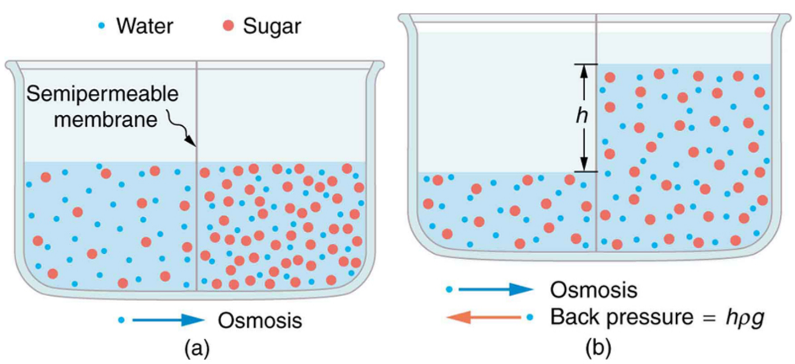


(a) A semipermeable membrane with small pores that allow only small molecules to pass through. (b) Certain molecules dissolve in this membrane and diffuse across it.

Osmosis is the transport of water through a semipermeable membrane from a region of high concentration to a region of low concentration. Osmosis is driven by the imbalance in water concentration. For example, water is more concentrated in your body than in Epsom salt. When you soak a swollen ankle in Epsom salt, the water moves out of your body into the lower-concentration region in the salt. Similarly, **dialysis** is the transport of any other molecule through a semipermeable membrane due to its concentration difference. Both osmosis and dialysis are used by the kidneys to cleanse the blood.

Osmosis can create a substantial pressure. Consider what happens if osmosis continues for some time, as illustrated in [link]. Water moves by osmosis from the left into the region on the right, where it is less

concentrated, causing the solution on the right to rise. This movement will continue until the pressure ρgh created by the extra height of fluid on the right is large enough to stop further osmosis. This pressure is called a *back pressure*. The back pressure ρgh that stops osmosis is also called the **relative osmotic pressure** if neither solution is pure water, and it is called the **osmotic pressure** if one solution is pure water. Osmotic pressure can be large, depending on the size of the concentration difference. For example, if pure water and sea water are separated by a semipermeable membrane that passes no salt, osmotic pressure will be 25.9 atm. This value means that water will diffuse through the membrane until the salt water surface rises 268 m above the pure-water surface! One example of pressure created by osmosis is turgor in plants (many wilt when too dry). Turgor describes the condition of a plant in which the fluid in a cell exerts a pressure against the cell wall. This pressure gives the plant support. Dialysis can similarly cause substantial pressures.



(a) Two sugar-water solutions of different concentrations, separated by a semipermeable membrane that passes water but not sugar. Osmosis will be to the right, since water is less concentrated there. (b) The fluid level rises until the back pressure ρgh equals the relative osmotic pressure; then, the net transfer of water is zero.

Reverse osmosis and **reverse dialysis** (also called filtration) are processes that occur when back pressure is sufficient to reverse the normal direction of substances through membranes. Back pressure can be created naturally as on the right side of [link]. (A piston can also create this pressure.) Reverse osmosis can be used to desalinate water by simply forcing it through a membrane that will not pass salt. Similarly, reverse dialysis can be used to filter out any substance that a given membrane will not pass.

One further example of the movement of substances through membranes deserves mention. We sometimes find that substances pass in the direction opposite to what we expect. Cypress tree roots, for example, extract pure water from salt water, although osmosis would move it in the opposite direction. This is not reverse osmosis, because there is no back pressure to cause it. What is happening is called **active transport**, a process in which a living membrane expends energy to move substances across it. Many living membranes move water and other substances by active transport. The kidneys, for example, not only use osmosis and dialysis—they also employ significant active transport to move substances into and out of blood. In fact, it is estimated that at least 25% of the body's energy is expended on active transport of substances at the cellular level. The study of active transport carries us into the realms of microbiology, biophysics, and biochemistry and it is a fascinating application of the laws of nature to living structures.

Section Summary

- Diffusion is the movement of substances due to random thermal molecular motion.
- The average distance x_{rms} a molecule travels by diffusion in a given amount of time is given by
  Equation:

  $$x_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{2D\text{t}},$$

  where D is the diffusion constant, representative values of which are found in [link].

- Osmosis is the transport of water through a semipermeable membrane from a region of high concentration to a region of low concentration.
- Dialysis is the transport of any other molecule through a semipermeable membrane due to its concentration difference.
- Both processes can be reversed by back pressure.
- Active transport is a process in which a living membrane expends energy to move substances across it.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why would you expect the rate of diffusion to increase with temperature? Can you give an example, such as the fact that you can dissolve sugar more rapidly in hot water?

Exercise:

Problem: How are osmosis and dialysis similar? How do they differ?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

You can smell perfume very shortly after opening the bottle. To show that it is not reaching your nose by diffusion, calculate the average distance a perfume molecule moves in one second in air, given its diffusion constant D to be $1.00 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}$.

Solution:

$1.41 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}$

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the ratio of the average distances that oxygen will diffuse in a given time in air and water? Why is this distance less in water (equivalently, why is D less in water)?

Exercise:

Problem:

Oxygen reaches the veinless cornea of the eye by diffusing through its tear layer, which is 0.500-mm thick. How long does it take the average oxygen molecule to do this?

Solution:

1.3×10^2 s

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the average time required for an oxygen molecule to diffuse through a 0.200-mm-thick tear layer on the cornea. (b) How much time is required to diffuse 0.500 cm^3 of oxygen to the cornea if its surface area is 1.00 cm^2?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose hydrogen and oxygen are diffusing through air. A small amount of each is released simultaneously. How much time passes before the hydrogen is 1.00 s ahead of the oxygen? Such differences in arrival times are used as an analytical tool in gas chromatography.

Solution:

0.391 s

Glossary

diffusion
: the movement of substances due to random thermal molecular motion

semipermeable
: a type of membrane that allows only certain small molecules to pass through

osmosis
: the transport of water through a semipermeable membrane from a region of high concentration to one of low concentration

dialysis
: the transport of any molecule other than water through a semipermeable membrane from a region of high concentration to one of low concentration

relative osmotic pressure
: the back pressure which stops the osmotic process if neither solution is pure water

osmotic pressure
: the back pressure which stops the osmotic process if one solution is pure water

reverse osmosis
: the process that occurs when back pressure is sufficient to reverse the normal direction of osmosis through membranes

reverse dialysis
: the process that occurs when back pressure is sufficient to reverse the normal direction of dialysis through membranes

active transport
: the process in which a living membrane expends energy to move substances across

Introduction to Oscillatory Motion and Waves class="introduction"

There are at least four types of waves in this picture—only the water waves are evident. There are also sound waves, light waves, and waves on the guitar strings. (credit: John Norton)

What do an ocean buoy, a child in a swing, the cone inside a speaker, a guitar, atoms in a crystal, the motion of chest cavities, and the beating of hearts all have in common? They all **oscillate**—-that is, they move back and forth between two points. Many systems oscillate, and they have certain characteristics in common. All oscillations involve force and energy. You push a child in a swing to get the motion started. The energy of atoms vibrating in a crystal can be increased with heat. You put energy into a guitar string when you pluck it.

Some oscillations create **waves**. A guitar creates sound waves. You can make water waves in a swimming pool by slapping the water with your hand. You can no doubt think of other types of waves. Some, such as water waves, are visible. Some, such as sound waves, are not. But *every wave is a disturbance that moves from its source and carries energy*. Other examples of waves include earthquakes and visible light. Even subatomic particles, such as electrons, can behave like waves.

By studying oscillatory motion and waves, we shall find that a small number of underlying principles describe all of them and that wave phenomena are more common than you have ever imagined. We begin by studying the type of force that underlies the simplest oscillations and waves. We will then expand our exploration of oscillatory motion and waves to

include concepts such as simple harmonic motion, uniform circular motion, and damped harmonic motion. Finally, we will explore what happens when two or more waves share the same space, in the phenomena known as superposition and interference.

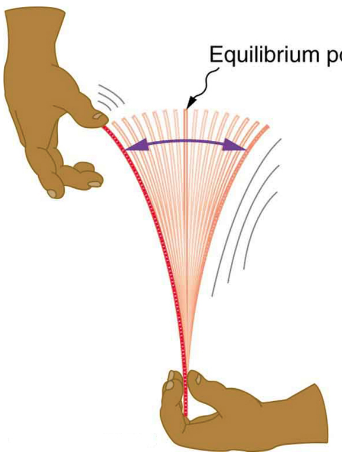
Glossary

oscillate
: moving back and forth regularly between two points

wave
: a disturbance that moves from its source and carries energy

Hooke's Law: Stress and Strain Revisited

- Explain Newton's third law of motion with respect to stress and deformation.
- Describe the restoration of force and displacement.
- Calculate the energy in Hooke's Law of deformation, and the stored energy in a spring.



When displaced from its vertical equilibrium position, this plastic ruler oscillates back and forth because of the restoring force opposing displacement. When the ruler is on the left, there is a force to the right, and vice versa.

Newton's first law implies that an object oscillating back and forth is experiencing forces. Without force, the object would move in a straight line

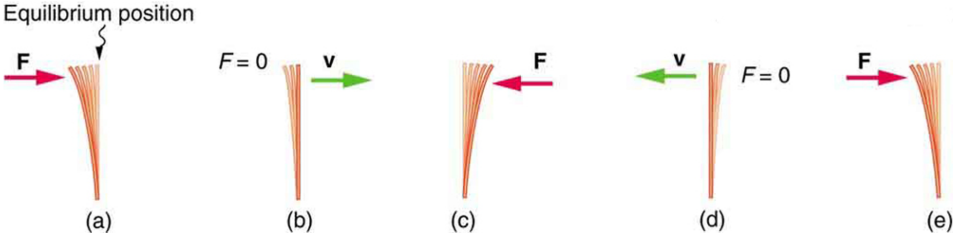
at a constant speed rather than oscillate. Consider, for example, plucking a plastic ruler to the left as shown in [link]. The deformation of the ruler creates a force in the opposite direction, known as a **restoring force**. Once released, the restoring force causes the ruler to move back toward its stable equilibrium position, where the net force on it is zero. However, by the time the ruler gets there, it gains momentum and continues to move to the right, producing the opposite deformation. It is then forced to the left, back through equilibrium, and the process is repeated until dissipative forces dampen the motion. These forces remove mechanical energy from the system, gradually reducing the motion until the ruler comes to rest.

The simplest oscillations occur when the restoring force is directly proportional to displacement. When stress and strain were covered in Newton's Third Law of Motion, the name was given to this relationship between force and displacement was Hooke's law:

Equation:

$$F=-\text{kx}.$$

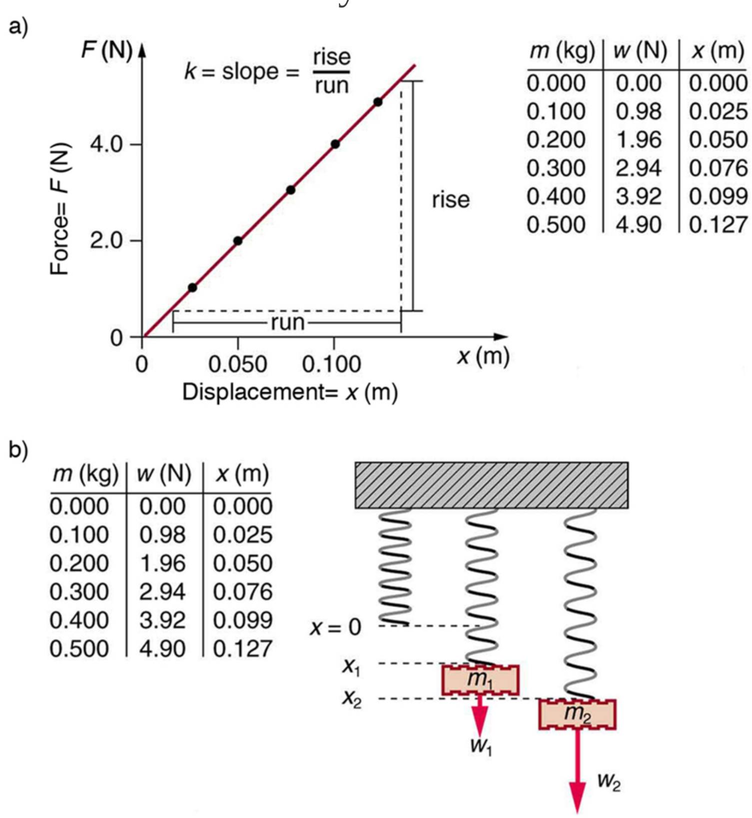
Here, F is the restoring force, x is the displacement from equilibrium or **deformation**, and k is a constant related to the difficulty in deforming the system. The minus sign indicates the restoring force is in the direction opposite to the displacement.



(a) The plastic ruler has been released, and the restoring force is returning the ruler to its equilibrium position. (b) The net force is zero at the equilibrium position, but the ruler has momentum and continues to move to the right. (c) The restoring force is in the opposite direction. It stops the ruler and moves it back toward equilibrium again. (d) Now the ruler has momentum to the left. (e) In the absence of damping

(caused by frictional forces), the ruler reaches its original position. From there, the motion will repeat itself.

The **force constant** k is related to the rigidity (or stiffness) of a system—the larger the force constant, the greater the restoring force, and the stiffer the system. The units of k are newtons per meter (N/m). For example, k is directly related to Young's modulus when we stretch a string. [link] shows a graph of the absolute value of the restoring force versus the displacement for a system that can be described by Hooke's law—a simple spring in this case. The slope of the graph equals the force constant k in newtons per meter. A common physics laboratory exercise is to measure restoring forces created by springs, determine if they follow Hooke's law, and calculate their force constants if they do.



(a) A graph of absolute value of the restoring force versus displacement is

displayed. The fact that the graph is a straight line means that the system obeys Hooke’s law. The slope of the graph is the force constant k. (b) The data in the graph were generated by measuring the displacement of a spring from equilibrium while supporting various weights. The restoring force equals the weight supported, if the mass is stationary.

Example:
How Stiff Are Car Springs?

The mass of a car increases due to the introduction of a passenger. This affects the displacement of

the car on its suspension system. (credit: exfordy on Flickr)

What is the force constant for the suspension system of a car that settles 1.20 cm when an 80.0-kg person gets in?

Strategy

Consider the car to be in its equilibrium position $x = 0$ before the person gets in. The car then settles down 1.20 cm, which means it is displaced to a position $x = -1.20 \times 10^{-2}$ m. At that point, the springs supply a restoring force F equal to the person's weight $w = \text{mg} = (80.0\ \text{kg})\left(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2\right) = 784\ \text{N}$. We take this force to be F in Hooke's law. Knowing F and x, we can then solve the force constant k.

Solution

1. Solve Hooke's law, $F = -\text{kx}$, for k:
   Equation:
   $$k = -\frac{F}{x}.$$
   Substitute known values and solve k:
   Equation:
   $$\begin{aligned} k &= -\frac{784\ \text{N}}{-1.20 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m}} \\ &= 6.53 \times 10^{4}\ \text{N/m}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

Note that F and x have opposite signs because they are in opposite directions—the restoring force is up, and the displacement is down. Also, note that the car would oscillate up and down when the person got in if it

were not for damping (due to frictional forces) provided by shock absorbers. Bouncing cars are a sure sign of bad shock absorbers.

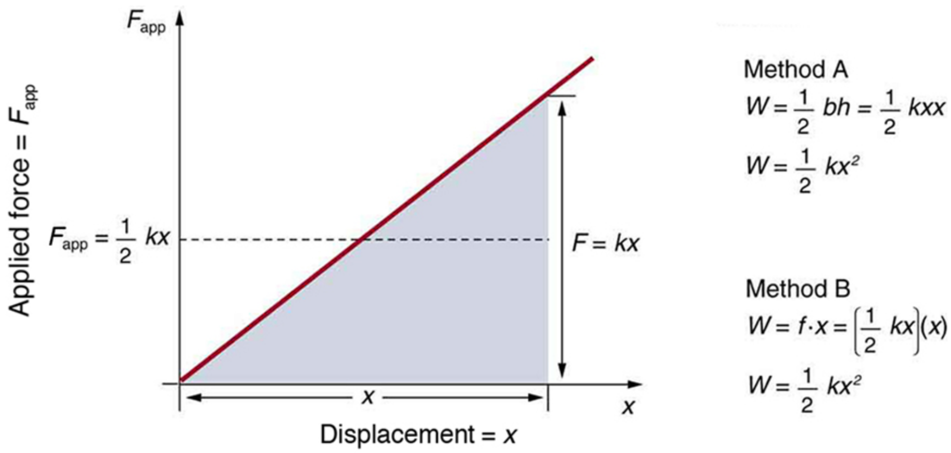
Energy in Hooke's Law of Deformation

In order to produce a deformation, work must be done. That is, a force must be exerted through a distance, whether you pluck a guitar string or compress a car spring. If the only result is deformation, and no work goes into thermal, sound, or kinetic energy, then all the work is initially stored in the deformed object as some form of potential energy. The potential energy stored in a spring is $\mathrm{PE_{el}} = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kx}^2$. Here, we generalize the idea to elastic potential energy for a deformation of any system that can be described by Hooke's law. Hence,
Equation:

$$\mathrm{PE_{el}} = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kx}^2,$$

where $\mathrm{PE_{el}}$ is the **elastic potential energy** stored in any deformed system that obeys Hooke's law and has a displacement x from equilibrium and a force constant k.

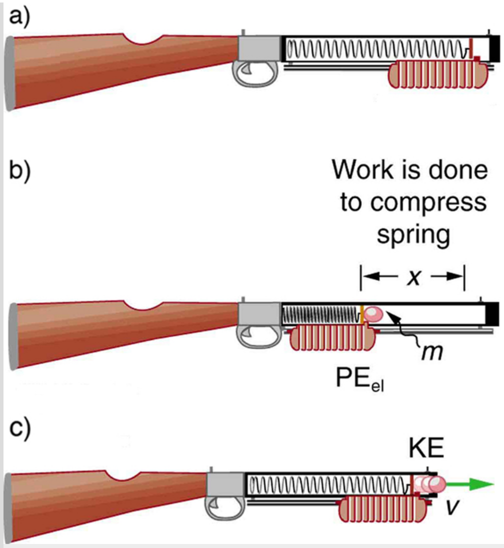
It is possible to find the work done in deforming a system in order to find the energy stored. This work is performed by an applied force F_{app}. The applied force is exactly opposite to the restoring force (action-reaction), and so $F_{\text{app}} = \mathrm{kx}$. [link] shows a graph of the applied force versus deformation x for a system that can be described by Hooke's law. Work done on the system is force multiplied by distance, which equals the area under the curve or $(1/2)\mathrm{kx}^2$(Method A in the figure). Another way to determine the work is to note that the force increases linearly from 0 to kx, so that the average force is $(1/2)\ \mathrm{kx}$, the distance moved is x, and thus $W = F_{\text{app}}d = [(1/2)\mathrm{kx}](x) = (1/2)\mathrm{kx}^2$ (Method B in the figure).



A graph of applied force versus distance for the deformation of a system that can be described by Hooke's law is displayed. The work done on the system equals the area under the graph or the area of the triangle, which is half its base multiplied by its height, or $W = (1/2)\mathrm{kx}^2$.

Example:
Calculating Stored Energy: A Tranquilizer Gun Spring

We can use a toy gun's spring mechanism to ask and answer two simple questions: (a) How much energy is stored in the spring of a tranquilizer gun that has a force constant of 50.0 N/m and is compressed 0.150 m? (b) If you neglect friction and the mass of the spring, at what speed will a 2.00-g projectile be ejected from the gun?



(a) In this image of the gun, the spring is uncompressed before being cocked. (b) The spring has been compressed a distance x, and the projectile is in place. (c) When released, the spring converts elastic potential energy PE_{el} into kinetic energy.

Strategy for a

(a): The energy stored in the spring can be found directly from elastic potential energy equation, because k and x are given.

Solution for a

Entering the given values for k and x yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{PE_{el}} &= \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kx}^2 = \frac{1}{2}(50.0\ \mathrm{N/m})(0.150\ \mathrm{m})^2 = 0.563\ \mathrm{N \cdot m} \\ &= 0.563\ \mathrm{J} \end{aligned}$$

Strategy for b

Because there is no friction, the potential energy is converted entirely into kinetic energy. The expression for kinetic energy can be solved for the projectile's speed.
Solution for b

1. Identify known quantities:
   Equation:

   $$\mathrm{KE_f} = \mathrm{PE_{el}} \text{ or } 1/2mv^2 = (1/2)kx^2 = \mathrm{PE_{el}} = 0.563\ \mathrm{J}$$

2. Solve for v:
   Equation:

   $$v = \left[\frac{2\mathrm{PE_{el}}}{m}\right]^{1/2} = \left[\frac{2(0.563\ \mathrm{J})}{0.002\ \mathrm{kg}}\right]^{1/2} = 23.7(\mathrm{J/kg})^{1/2}$$

3. Convert units: $23.7\ \mathrm{m/s}$

Discussion
(a) and (b): This projectile speed is impressive for a tranquilizer gun (more than 80 km/h). The numbers in this problem seem reasonable. The force needed to compress the spring is small enough for an adult to manage, and the energy imparted to the dart is small enough to limit the damage it might do. Yet, the speed of the dart is great enough for it to travel an acceptable distance.

Exercise:
Check your Understanding

Problem:

Envision holding the end of a ruler with one hand and deforming it with the other. When you let go, you can see the oscillations of the ruler. In what way could you modify this simple experiment to increase the rigidity of the system?

Solution:
Answer

You could hold the ruler at its midpoint so that the part of the ruler that oscillates is half as long as in the original experiment.

Exercise:
Check your Understanding

Problem:

If you apply a deforming force on an object and let it come to equilibrium, what happened to the work you did on the system?

Solution:
Answer

It was stored in the object as potential energy.

Section Summary

- An oscillation is a back and forth motion of an object between two points of deformation.
- An oscillation may create a wave, which is a disturbance that propagates from where it was created.
- The simplest type of oscillations and waves are related to systems that can be described by Hooke's law:
  Equation:
  $$F = -\mathrm{kx},$$
  where F is the restoring force, x is the displacement from equilibrium or deformation, and k is the force constant of the system.
- Elastic potential energy $\mathrm{PE}_{\mathrm{el}}$ stored in the deformation of a system that can be described by Hooke's law is given by
  Equation:

$$\text{PE}_{\text{el}} = (1/2)kx^2.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Describe a system in which elastic potential energy is stored.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Fish are hung on a spring scale to determine their mass (most fishermen feel no obligation to truthfully report the mass).

(a) What is the force constant of the spring in such a scale if it the spring stretches 8.00 cm for a 10.0 kg load?

(b) What is the mass of a fish that stretches the spring 5.50 cm?

(c) How far apart are the half-kilogram marks on the scale?

Solution:

(a) $1.23 \times 10^3 \text{ N/m}$

(b) 6.88 kg

(c) 4.00 mm

Exercise:

Problem:

It is weigh-in time for the local under-85-kg rugby team. The bathroom scale used to assess eligibility can be described by Hooke's law and is depressed 0.75 cm by its maximum load of 120 kg. (a) What is the spring's effective spring constant? (b) A player stands on the scales and depresses it by 0.48 cm. Is he eligible to play on this under-85 kg team?

Exercise:

Problem:

One type of BB gun uses a spring-driven plunger to blow the BB from its barrel. (a) Calculate the force constant of its plunger's spring if you must compress it 0.150 m to drive the 0.0500-kg plunger to a top speed of 20.0 m/s. (b) What force must be exerted to compress the spring?

Solution:

(a) 889 N/m

(b) 133 N

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The springs of a pickup truck act like a single spring with a force constant of $1.30 \times 10^5 \text{ N/m}$. By how much will the truck be depressed by its maximum load of 1000 kg?

(b) If the pickup truck has four identical springs, what is the force constant of each?

Exercise:

Problem:

When an 80.0-kg man stands on a pogo stick, the spring is compressed 0.120 m.

(a) What is the force constant of the spring? (b) Will the spring be compressed more when he hops down the road?

Solution:

(a) $6.53 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{N/m}$

(b) Yes

Exercise:

Problem:

A spring has a length of 0.200 m when a 0.300-kg mass hangs from it, and a length of 0.750 m when a 1.95-kg mass hangs from it. (a) What is the force constant of the spring? (b) What is the unloaded length of the spring?

Glossary

deformation
: displacement from equilibrium

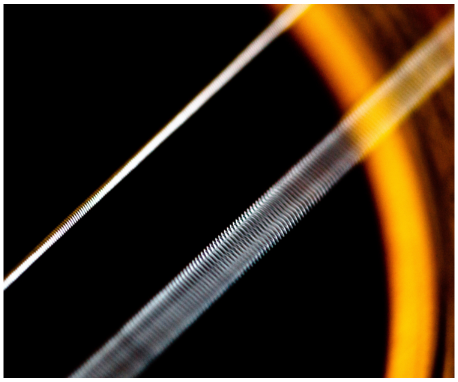
elastic potential energy
: potential energy stored as a result of deformation of an elastic object, such as the stretching of a spring

force constant
: a constant related to the rigidity of a system: the larger the force constant, the more rigid the system; the force constant is represented by *k*

restoring force
: force acting in opposition to the force caused by a deformation

Period and Frequency in Oscillations

- Observe the vibrations of a guitar string.
- Determine the frequency of oscillations.



The strings on this guitar vibrate at regular time intervals. (credit: JAR)

When you pluck a guitar string, the resulting sound has a steady tone and lasts a long time. Each successive vibration of the string takes the same time as the previous one. We define **periodic motion** to be a motion that repeats itself at regular time intervals, such as exhibited by the guitar string or by an object on a spring moving up and down. The time to complete one oscillation remains constant and is called the **period** T. Its units are usually seconds, but may be any convenient unit of time. The word period refers to the time for some event whether repetitive or not; but we shall be primarily interested in periodic motion, which is by definition repetitive. A concept closely related to period is the frequency of an event. For example, if you get a paycheck twice a month, the frequency of payment is two per month and the period between checks is half a month. **Frequency** f is defined to be the number of events per unit time. For periodic motion, frequency is the number of oscillations per unit time. The relationship between frequency and period is

Equation:

$$f = \frac{1}{T}.$$

The SI unit for frequency is the *cycle per second*, which is defined to be a *hertz* (Hz):

Equation:

$$1\text{ Hz} = 1\frac{\text{cycle}}{\text{s}}\text{ or }1\text{ Hz} = \frac{1}{\text{s}}$$

A cycle is one complete oscillation. Note that a vibration can be a single or multiple event, whereas oscillations are usually repetitive for a significant number of cycles.

Example:

Determine the Frequency of Two Oscillations: Medical Ultrasound and the Period of Middle C

We can use the formulas presented in this module to determine both the frequency based on known oscillations and the oscillation based on a known frequency. Let's try one example of each. (a) A medical imaging device produces ultrasound by oscillating with a period of 0.400 µs. What is the frequency of this oscillation? (b) The frequency of middle C on a typical musical instrument is 264 Hz. What is the time for one complete oscillation?

Strategy

Both questions (a) and (b) can be answered using the relationship between period and frequency. In question (a), the period T is given and we are asked to find frequency f. In question (b), the frequency f is given and we are asked to find the period T.

Solution a

1. Substitute 0.400 µs for T in $f = \frac{1}{T}$:
   Equation:

$$f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{1}{0.400 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{s}}.$$

Solve to find
Equation:

$$f = 2.50 \times 10^{6}\ \text{Hz}.$$

Discussion a
The frequency of sound found in (a) is much higher than the highest frequency that humans can hear and, therefore, is called ultrasound. Appropriate oscillations at this frequency generate ultrasound used for noninvasive medical diagnoses, such as observations of a fetus in the womb.
Solution b

1. Identify the known values:

   The time for one complete oscillation is the period T:
   Equation:

   $$f = \frac{1}{T}.$$

2. Solve for T:
   Equation:

   $$T = \frac{1}{f}.$$

3. Substitute the given value for the frequency into the resulting expression:
   Equation:

   $$T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{264\ \text{Hz}} = \frac{1}{264\ \text{cycles/s}} = 3.79 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{s} = 3.79\ \text{ms}.$$

Discussion
The period found in (b) is the time per cycle, but this value is often quoted as simply the time in convenient units (ms or milliseconds in this case).

Exercise:
Check your Understanding

Problem:

Identify an event in your life (such as receiving a paycheck) that occurs regularly. Identify both the period and frequency of this event.

Solution:

I visit my parents for dinner every other Sunday. The frequency of my visits is 26 per calendar year. The period is two weeks.

Section Summary

- Periodic motion is a repetitious oscillation.
- The time for one oscillation is the period T.
- The number of oscillations per unit time is the frequency f.
- These quantities are related by
  Equation:

$$f = \frac{1}{T}.$$

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: What is the period of 60.0 Hz electrical power?

Solution:

16.7 ms

Exercise:

Problem:

If your heart rate is 150 beats per minute during strenuous exercise, what is the time per beat in units of seconds?

Solution:

0.400 s/beats

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the frequency of a tuning fork that takes 2.50×10^{-3} s to complete one oscillation.

Solution:

400 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

A stroboscope is set to flash every 8.00×10^{-5} s. What is the frequency of the flashes?

Solution:

12,500 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

A tire has a tread pattern with a crevice every 2.00 cm. Each crevice makes a single vibration as the tire moves. What is the frequency of these vibrations if the car moves at 30.0 m/s?

Solution:

1.50 kHz

Exercise:

Problem: **Engineering Application**

Each piston of an engine makes a sharp sound every other revolution of the engine. (a) How fast is a race car going if its eight-cylinder engine emits a sound of frequency 750 Hz, given that the engine makes 2000 revolutions per kilometer? (b) At how many revolutions per minute is the engine rotating?

Solution:

(a) 93.8 m/s

(b) $11.3 \times 10^3\ \text{rev/min}$

Glossary

period
: time it takes to complete one oscillation

periodic motion
: motion that repeats itself at regular time intervals

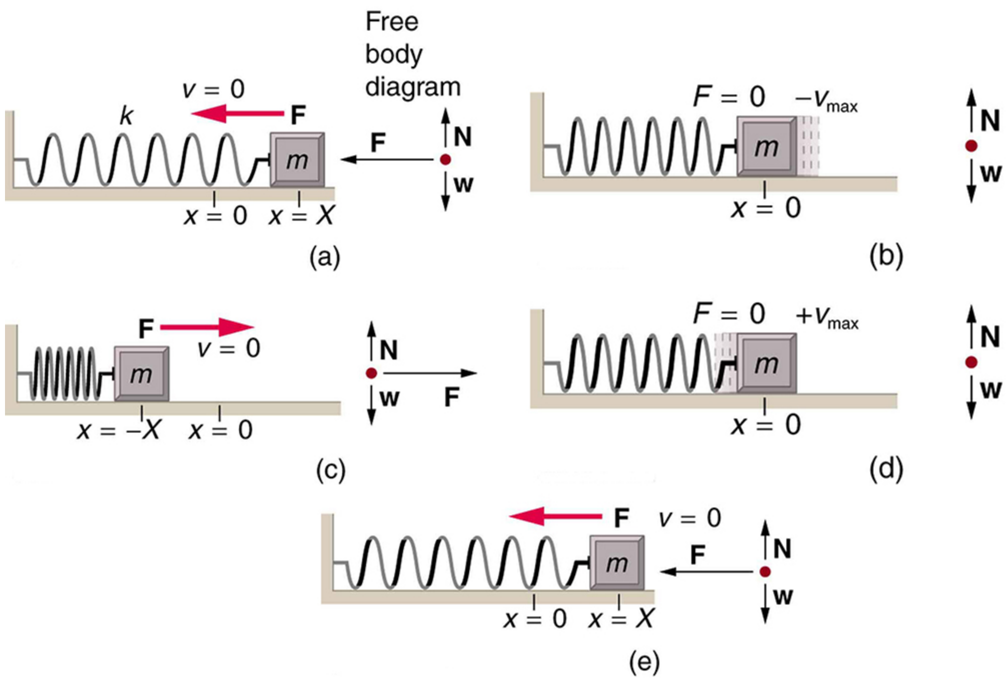
frequency
: number of events per unit of time

Simple Harmonic Motion: A Special Periodic Motion

- Describe a simple harmonic oscillator.
- Explain the link between simple harmonic motion and waves.

The oscillations of a system in which the net force can be described by Hooke’s law are of special importance, because they are very common. They are also the simplest oscillatory systems. **Simple Harmonic Motion** (SHM) is the name given to oscillatory motion for a system where the net force can be described by Hooke’s law, and such a system is called a **simple harmonic oscillator**. If the net force can be described by Hooke’s law and there is no *damping* (by friction or other non-conservative forces), then a simple harmonic oscillator will oscillate with equal displacement on either side of the equilibrium position, as shown for an object on a spring in [link]. The maximum displacement from equilibrium is called the **amplitude** X. The units for amplitude and displacement are the same, but depend on the type of oscillation. For the object on the spring, the units of amplitude and displacement are meters; whereas for sound oscillations, they have units of pressure (and other types of oscillations have yet other units). Because amplitude is the maximum displacement, it is related to the energy in the oscillation.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: SHM and the Marble
Find a bowl or basin that is shaped like a hemisphere on the inside. Place a marble inside the bowl and tilt the bowl periodically so the marble rolls from the bottom of the bowl to equally high points on the sides of the bowl. Get a feel for the force required to maintain this periodic motion. What is the restoring force and what role does the force you apply play in the simple harmonic motion (SHM) of the marble?



An object attached to a spring sliding on a frictionless surface is an uncomplicated simple harmonic oscillator. When displaced from equilibrium, the object performs simple harmonic motion that has an amplitude X and a period T. The object's maximum speed occurs as it passes through equilibrium. The stiffer the spring is, the smaller the period T. The greater the mass of the object is, the greater the period T.

What is so significant about simple harmonic motion? One special thing is that the period T and frequency f of a simple harmonic oscillator are independent of amplitude. The string of a guitar, for example, will oscillate with the same frequency whether plucked gently or hard. Because the period is constant, a simple harmonic oscillator can be used as a clock.

Two important factors do affect the period of a simple harmonic oscillator. The period is related to how stiff the system is. A very stiff object has a large force constant k, which causes the system to have a smaller period. For example, you can adjust a diving board's stiffness—the stiffer it is, the

faster it vibrates, and the shorter its period. Period also depends on the mass of the oscillating system. The more massive the system is, the longer the period. For example, a heavy person on a diving board bounces up and down more slowly than a light one.

In fact, the mass m and the force constant k are the *only* factors that affect the period and frequency of simple harmonic motion.

Note:
Period of Simple Harmonic Oscillator
The *period of a simple harmonic oscillator* is given by
Equation:

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$$

and, because $f = 1/T$, the *frequency of a simple harmonic oscillator* is
Equation:

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}.$$

Note that neither T nor f has any dependence on amplitude.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Mass and Ruler Oscillations
Find two identical wooden or plastic rulers. Tape one end of each ruler firmly to the edge of a table so that the length of each ruler that protrudes from the table is the same. On the free end of one ruler tape a heavy object such as a few large coins. Pluck the ends of the rulers at the same time and observe which one undergoes more cycles in a time period, and measure the period of oscillation of each of the rulers.

Example:
Calculate the Frequency and Period of Oscillations: Bad Shock Absorbers in a Car

If the shock absorbers in a car go bad, then the car will oscillate at the least provocation, such as when going over bumps in the road and after stopping (See [link]). Calculate the frequency and period of these oscillations for such a car if the car's mass (including its load) is 900 kg and the force constant (k) of the suspension system is $6.53 \times 10^4 \text{ N/m}$.

Strategy

The frequency of the car's oscillations will be that of a simple harmonic oscillator as given in the equation $f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$. The mass and the force constant are both given.

Solution

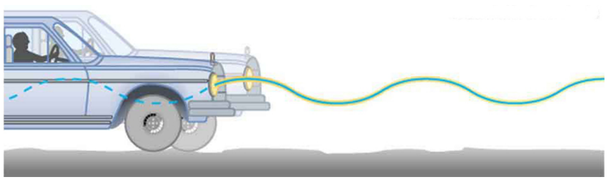
1. Enter the known values of *k* and *m*:
   Equation:
$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{6.53 \times 10^4 \text{ N/m}}{900 \text{ kg}}}.$$
2. Calculate the frequency:
   Equation:
$$\frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{72.6/\text{s}^{-2}} = 1.3656/\text{s}^{-1} \approx 1.36/\text{s}^{-1} = 1.36 \text{ Hz}.$$
3. You could use $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$ to calculate the period, but it is simpler to use the relationship $T = 1/f$ and substitute the value just found for f:
   Equation:
$$T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{1.356 \text{ Hz}} = 0.738 \text{ s}.$$

Discussion

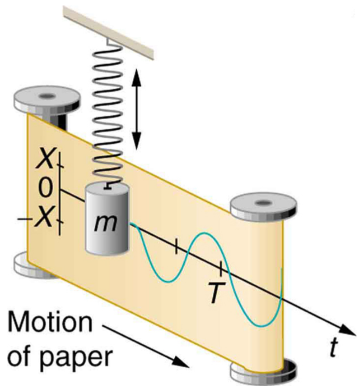
The values of T and f both seem about right for a bouncing car. You can observe these oscillations if you push down hard on the end of a car and let go.

The Link between Simple Harmonic Motion and Waves

If a time-exposure photograph of the bouncing car were taken as it drove by, the headlight would make a wavelike streak, as shown in [link]. Similarly, [link] shows an object bouncing on a spring as it leaves a wavelike "trace of its position on a moving strip of paper. Both waves are sine functions. All simple harmonic motion is intimately related to sine and cosine waves.



The bouncing car makes a wavelike motion. If the restoring force in the suspension system can be described only by Hooke’s law, then the wave is a sine function. (The wave is the trace produced by the headlight as the car moves to the right.)



The vertical position of an object bouncing on a spring is recorded on a strip of moving paper, leaving a sine wave.

The displacement as a function of time *t* in any simple harmonic motion—that is, one in which the net restoring force can be described by Hooke's law, is given by
Equation:

$$x(t) = X\cos\frac{2\pi t}{T},$$

where X is amplitude. At $t = 0$, the initial position is $x_0 = X$, and the displacement oscillates back and forth with a period T. (When $t = T$, we get $x = X$ again because cos $2\pi = 1$.). Furthermore, from this expression for x, the velocity v as a function of time is given by:
Equation:

$$v(t) = -v_{\text{max}}\sin\left(\frac{2\pi t}{T}\right),$$

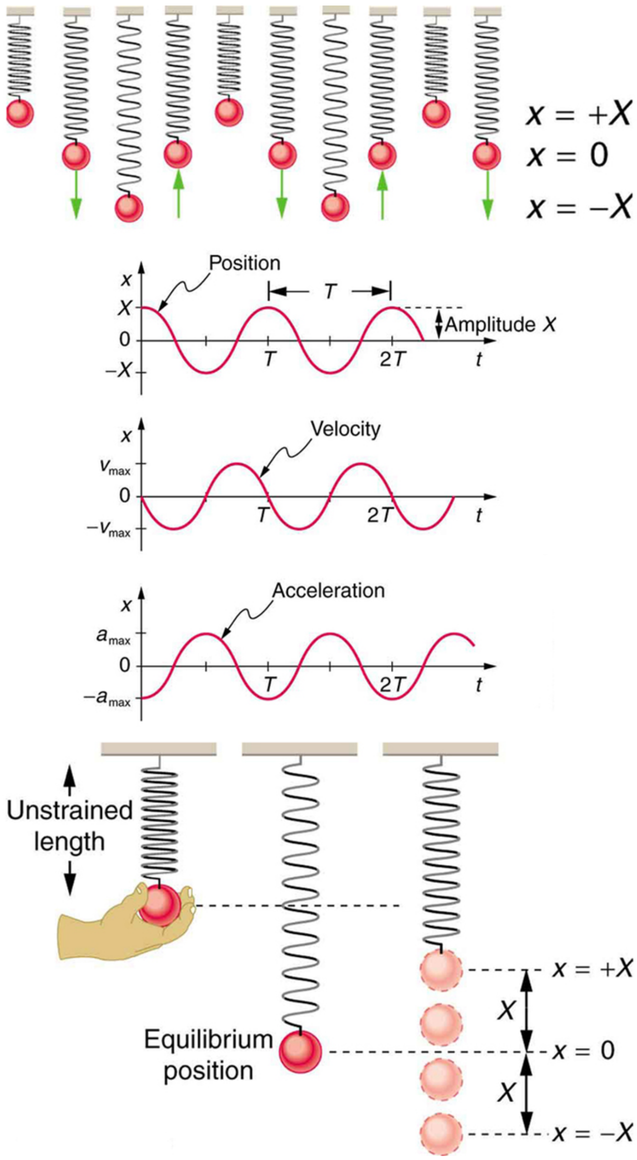
where $v_{\max} = 2\pi X/T = X\sqrt{k/m}$. The object has zero velocity at maximum displacement—for example, $v = 0$ when $t = 0$, and at that time $x = X$. The minus sign in the first equation for $v(t)$ gives the correct direction for the velocity. Just after the start of the motion, for instance, the velocity is negative because the system is moving back toward the equilibrium point. Finally, we can get an expression for acceleration using Newton's second law. [Then we have $x(t)$, $v(t)$, t, and $a(t)$, the quantities needed for kinematics and a description of simple harmonic motion.] According to Newton's second law, the acceleration is $a = F/m = \mathrm{kx}/m$. So, $a(t)$ is also a cosine function:

Equation:

$$a(t) = -\frac{\mathrm{kX}}{m}\cos\frac{2\pi t}{T}.$$

Hence, $a(t)$ is directly proportional to and in the opposite direction to $x(t)$.

[link] shows the simple harmonic motion of an object on a spring and presents graphs of $x(t)$,$v(t\ )$, and $a(t)$ versus time.



Graphs of $x(t)$, $v(t)$, and $a(t)$ versus t for the motion of an object on a spring. The net force on the object can be described by Hooke's law, and so the object undergoes simple harmonic motion. Note that the initial position has the vertical displacement at its maximum value X; v is initially zero and then negative as the object moves down; and the initial acceleration

is negative, back toward the equilibrium position and becomes zero at that point.

The most important point here is that these equations are mathematically straightforward and are valid for all simple harmonic motion. They are very useful in visualizing waves associated with simple harmonic motion, including visualizing how waves add with one another.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Suppose you pluck a banjo string. You hear a single note that starts out loud and slowly quiets over time. Describe what happens to the sound waves in terms of period, frequency and amplitude as the sound decreases in volume.

Solution:

Frequency and period remain essentially unchanged. Only amplitude decreases as volume decreases.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

A babysitter is pushing a child on a swing. At the point where the swing reaches x, where would the corresponding point on a wave of this motion be located?

Solution:

x is the maximum deformation, which corresponds to the amplitude of the wave. The point on the wave would either be at the very top or the very bottom of the curve.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Masses and Springs
A realistic mass and spring laboratory. Hang masses from springs and adjust the spring stiffness and damping. You can even slow time. Transport the lab to different planets. A chart shows the kinetic, potential, and thermal energy for each spring.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/mass-spring-lab/mass-spring-lab_en.html

Section Summary

- Simple harmonic motion is oscillatory motion for a system that can be described only by Hooke’s law. Such a system is also called a simple harmonic oscillator.
- Maximum displacement is the amplitude X. The period T and frequency f of a simple harmonic oscillator are given by

  $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$ and $f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$, where m is the mass of the system.
- Displacement in simple harmonic motion as a function of time is given by $x(t) = X \cos \frac{2\pi t}{T}$.
- The velocity is given by $v(t) = -v_{\text{max}}\sin\frac{2\pi t}{T}$, where $v_{\text{max}} = \sqrt{k/m}X$.
- The acceleration is found to be $a(t) = -\frac{kX}{m} \cos \frac{2\pi t}{T}$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What conditions must be met to produce simple harmonic motion?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) If frequency is not constant for some oscillation, can the oscillation be simple harmonic motion?

(b) Can you think of any examples of harmonic motion where the frequency may depend on the amplitude?

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example of a simple harmonic oscillator, specifically noting how its frequency is independent of amplitude.

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why you expect an object made of a stiff material to vibrate at a higher frequency than a similar object made of a spongy material.

Exercise:

Problem:

As you pass a freight truck with a trailer on a highway, you notice that its trailer is bouncing up and down slowly. Is it more likely that the trailer is heavily loaded or nearly empty? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Some people modify cars to be much closer to the ground than when manufactured. Should they install stiffer springs? Explain your answer.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A type of cuckoo clock keeps time by having a mass bouncing on a spring, usually something cute like a cherub in a chair. What force constant is needed to produce a period of 0.500 s for a 0.0150-kg mass?

Solution:

2.37 N/m

Exercise:

Problem:

If the spring constant of a simple harmonic oscillator is doubled, by what factor will the mass of the system need to change in order for the frequency of the motion to remain the same?

Exercise:

Problem:

A 0.500-kg mass suspended from a spring oscillates with a period of 1.50 s. How much mass must be added to the object to change the period to 2.00 s?

Solution:

0.389 kg

Exercise:

Problem:

By how much leeway (both percentage and mass) would you have in the selection of the mass of the object in the previous problem if you did not wish the new period to be greater than 2.01 s or less than 1.99 s?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you attach the object with mass m to a vertical spring originally at rest, and let it bounce up and down. You release the object from rest at the spring's original rest length. (a) Show that the spring exerts an upward force of 2.00 mg on the object at its lowest point. (b) If the spring has a force constant of 10.0 N/m and a 0.25-kg-mass object is set in motion as described, find the amplitude of the oscillations. (c) Find the maximum velocity.

Exercise:

Problem:

A diver on a diving board is undergoing simple harmonic motion. Her mass is 55.0 kg and the period of her motion is 0.800 s. The next diver is a male whose period of simple harmonic oscillation is 1.05 s. What is his mass if the mass of the board is negligible?

Solution:

94.7 kg

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a diving board with no one on it bounces up and down in a simple harmonic motion with a frequency of 4.00 Hz. The board has an effective mass of 10.0 kg. What is the frequency of the simple harmonic motion of a 75.0-kg diver on the board?

Exercise:

Problem:

This child’s toy relies on springs to keep infants entertained. (credit: By Humboldthead, Flickr)

The device pictured in [link] entertains infants while keeping them from wandering. The child bounces in a harness suspended from a door frame by a spring constant.

(a) If the spring stretches 0.250 m while supporting an 8.0-kg child, what is its spring constant?

(b) What is the time for one complete bounce of this child? (c) What is the child’s maximum velocity if the amplitude of her bounce is 0.200 m?

Exercise:

Problem:

A 90.0-kg skydiver hanging from a parachute bounces up and down with a period of 1.50 s. What is the new period of oscillation when a second skydiver, whose mass is 60.0 kg, hangs from the legs of the first, as seen in [link].

The oscillations of one skydiver are about to be affected by a second skydiver. (credit: U.S. Army, www.army.mil)

Solution:

1.94 s

Glossary

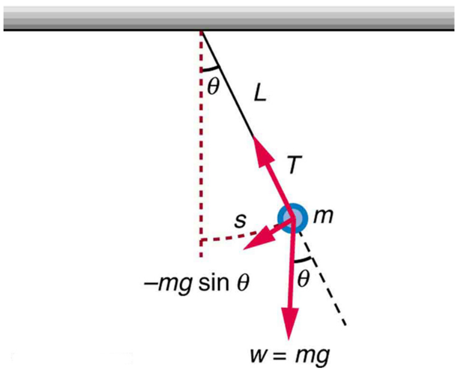
amplitude
: the maximum displacement from the equilibrium position of an object oscillating around the equilibrium position

simple harmonic motion
: the oscillatory motion in a system where the net force can be described by Hooke’s law

simple harmonic oscillator
: a device that implements Hooke’s law, such as a mass that is attached to a spring, with the other end of the spring being connected to a rigid support such as a wall

The Simple Pendulum

- Measure acceleration due to gravity.



A simple pendulum has a small-diameter bob and a string that has a very small mass but is strong enough not to stretch appreciably. The linear displacement from equilibrium is s, the length of the arc. Also shown are the forces on the bob, which result in a net force of $-\text{mg}\ \text{sin}\theta$ toward the equilibrium position—that is, a restoring force.

Pendulums are in common usage. Some have crucial uses, such as in clocks; some are for fun, such as a child’s swing; and some are just there, such as the sinker on a fishing line. For small displacements, a pendulum is a simple harmonic oscillator. A **simple pendulum** is defined to have an

object that has a small mass, also known as the pendulum bob, which is suspended from a light wire or string, such as shown in [link]. Exploring the simple pendulum a bit further, we can discover the conditions under which it performs simple harmonic motion, and we can derive an interesting expression for its period.

We begin by defining the displacement to be the arc length s. We see from [link] that the net force on the bob is tangent to the arc and equals $-\text{mg}\ \sin\ \theta$. (The weight mg has components $\text{mg}\ \cos\ \theta$ along the string and $\text{mg}\ \sin\ \theta$ tangent to the arc.) Tension in the string exactly cancels the component $\text{mg}\ \cos\ \theta$ parallel to the string. This leaves a *net* restoring force back toward the equilibrium position at $\theta = 0$.

Now, if we can show that the restoring force is directly proportional to the displacement, then we have a simple harmonic oscillator. In trying to determine if we have a simple harmonic oscillator, we should note that for small angles (less than about 15º), $\sin\ \theta \approx \theta$ ($\sin\ \theta$ and θ differ by about 1% or less at smaller angles). Thus, for angles less than about 15º, the restoring force F is

Equation:

$$F \approx -\text{mg}\theta.$$

The displacement s is directly proportional to θ. When θ is expressed in radians, the arc length in a circle is related to its radius (L in this instance) by:

Equation:

$$s = L\theta,$$

so that

Equation:

$$\theta = \frac{s}{L}.$$

For small angles, then, the expression for the restoring force is:
Equation:

$$F \approx -\frac{\mathrm{mg}}{L}s$$

This expression is of the form:
Equation:

$$F = -\mathrm{kx},$$

where the force constant is given by $k = mg/L$ and the displacement is given by $x = s$. For angles less than about $15º$, the restoring force is directly proportional to the displacement, and the simple pendulum is a simple harmonic oscillator.

Using this equation, we can find the period of a pendulum for amplitudes less than about $15º$. For the simple pendulum:
Equation:

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{\mathrm{mg}/L}}.$$

Thus,
Equation:

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$$

for the period of a simple pendulum. This result is interesting because of its simplicity. The only things that affect the period of a simple pendulum are its length and the acceleration due to gravity. The period is completely independent of other factors, such as mass. As with simple harmonic oscillators, the period T for a pendulum is nearly independent of amplitude,

especially if θ is less than about 15º. Even simple pendulum clocks can be finely adjusted and accurate.

Note the dependence of T on g. If the length of a pendulum is precisely known, it can actually be used to measure the acceleration due to gravity. Consider the following example.

Example:
Measuring Acceleration due to Gravity: The Period of a Pendulum
What is the acceleration due to gravity in a region where a simple pendulum having a length 75.000 cm has a period of 1.7357 s?
Strategy
We are asked to find g given the period T and the length L of a pendulum. We can solve $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$ for g, assuming only that the angle of deflection is less than $15º$.
Solution

1. Square $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$ and solve for g:
   Equation:
   $$g = 4\pi^2 \frac{L}{T^2}.$$
2. Substitute known values into the new equation:
   Equation:
   $$g = 4\pi^2 \frac{0.75000\ \text{m}}{(1.7357\ \text{s})^2}.$$
3. Calculate to find g:
   Equation:
   $$g = 9.8281\ \text{m/s}^2.$$

Discussion

This method for determining g can be very accurate. This is why length and period are given to five digits in this example. For the precision of the approximation $\sin\theta \approx \theta$ to be better than the precision of the pendulum length and period, the maximum displacement angle should be kept below about 0.5^{o}.

Note:

Making Career Connections

Knowing g can be important in geological exploration; for example, a map of g over large geographical regions aids the study of plate tectonics and helps in the search for oil fields and large mineral deposits.

Note:

Take Home Experiment: Determining g

Use a simple pendulum to determine the acceleration due to gravity g in your own locale. Cut a piece of a string or dental floss so that it is about 1 m long. Attach a small object of high density to the end of the string (for example, a metal nut or a car key). Starting at an angle of less than 10^{o}, allow the pendulum to swing and measure the pendulum's period for 10 oscillations using a stopwatch. Calculate g. How accurate is this measurement? How might it be improved?

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

An engineer builds two simple pendula. Both are suspended from small wires secured to the ceiling of a room. Each pendulum hovers 2 cm above the floor. Pendulum 1 has a bob with a mass of 10 kg. Pendulum 2 has a bob with a mass of 100 kg. Describe how the motion of the pendula will differ if the bobs are both displaced by 12°.

Solution:

The movement of the pendula will not differ at all because the mass of the bob has no effect on the motion of a simple pendulum. The pendula are only affected by the period (which is related to the pendulum's length) and by the acceleration due to gravity.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Pendulum Lab
Play with one or two pendulums and discover how the period of a simple pendulum depends on the length of the string, the mass of the pendulum bob, and the amplitude of the swing. It's easy to measure the period using the photogate timer. You can vary friction and the strength of gravity. Use the pendulum to find the value of g on planet X. Notice the anharmonic behavior at large amplitude.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/pendulum-lab/pendulum-lab_en.html

Section Summary

- A mass m suspended by a wire of length L is a simple pendulum and undergoes simple harmonic motion for amplitudes less than about 15°.

  The period of a simple pendulum is
  Equation:

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}},$$

where L is the length of the string and g is the acceleration due to gravity.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Pendulum clocks are made to run at the correct rate by adjusting the pendulum's length. Suppose you move from one city to another where the acceleration due to gravity is slightly greater, taking your pendulum clock with you, will you have to lengthen or shorten the pendulum to keep the correct time, other factors remaining constant? Explain your answer.

Problems & Exercises

As usual, the acceleration due to gravity in these problems is taken to be $g = 9.80\ \text{m/s}^2$, unless otherwise specified.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the length of a pendulum that has a period of 0.500 s?

Solution:

6.21 cm

Exercise:

Problem:

Some people think a pendulum with a period of 1.00 s can be driven with “mental energy” or psycho kinetically, because its period is the same as an average heartbeat. True or not, what is the length of such a pendulum?

Exercise:

Problem: What is the period of a 1.00-m-long pendulum?

Solution:

2.01 s

Exercise:

Problem:

How long does it take a child on a swing to complete one swing if her center of gravity is 4.00 m below the pivot?

Exercise:

Problem:

The pendulum on a cuckoo clock is 5.00 cm long. What is its frequency?

Solution:

2.23 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

Two parakeets sit on a swing with their combined center of mass 10.0 cm below the pivot. At what frequency do they swing?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A pendulum that has a period of 3.00000 s and that is located where the acceleration due to gravity is 9.79 m/s^2 is moved to a location where it the acceleration due to gravity is 9.82 m/s^2. What is its new period? (b) Explain why so many digits are needed in the value for the period, based on the relation between the period and the acceleration due to gravity.

Solution:

(a) 2.99541 s

(b) Since the period is related to the square root of the acceleration of gravity, when the acceleration changes by 1% the period changes by $(0.01)^2 = 0.01\%$ so it is necessary to have at least 4 digits after the decimal to see the changes.

Exercise:

Problem:

A pendulum with a period of 2.00000 s in one location $\left(g = 9.80 \text{ m/s}^2\right)$ is moved to a new location where the period is now 1.99796 s. What is the acceleration due to gravity at its new location?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the effect on the period of a pendulum if you double its length?

(b) What is the effect on the period of a pendulum if you decrease its length by 5.00%?

Solution:

(a) Period increases by a factor of 1.41 ($\sqrt{2}$)

(b) Period decreases to 97.5% of old period

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the ratio of the new/old periods of a pendulum if the pendulum were transported from Earth to the Moon, where the acceleration due to gravity is 1.63 m/s^2.

Exercise:

Problem:

At what rate will a pendulum clock run on the Moon, where the acceleration due to gravity is 1.63 m/s^2, if it keeps time accurately on Earth? That is, find the time (in hours) it takes the clock's hour hand to make one revolution on the Moon.

Solution:

Slow by a factor of 2.45

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose the length of a clock's pendulum is changed by 1.000%, exactly at noon one day. What time will it read 24.00 hours later, assuming it the pendulum has kept perfect time before the change? Note that there are two answers, and perform the calculation to four-digit precision.

Exercise:

Problem:

If a pendulum-driven clock gains 5.00 s/day, what fractional change in pendulum length must be made for it to keep perfect time?

Solution:

length must increase by 0.0116%.

Glossary

simple pendulum
: an object with a small mass suspended from a light wire or string

Energy and the Simple Harmonic Oscillator

- Determine the maximum speed of an oscillating system.

To study the energy of a simple harmonic oscillator, we first consider all the forms of energy it can have We know from Hooke’s Law: Stress and Strain Revisited that the energy stored in the deformation of a simple harmonic oscillator is a form of potential energy given by:

Equation:

$$\mathrm{PE_{el}} = \frac{1}{2}kx^2.$$

Because a simple harmonic oscillator has no dissipative forces, the other important form of energy is kinetic energy KE. Conservation of energy for these two forms is:

Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE_{el}} = \mathrm{constant}$$

or

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{mv}^2 + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kx}^2 = \mathrm{constant}.$$

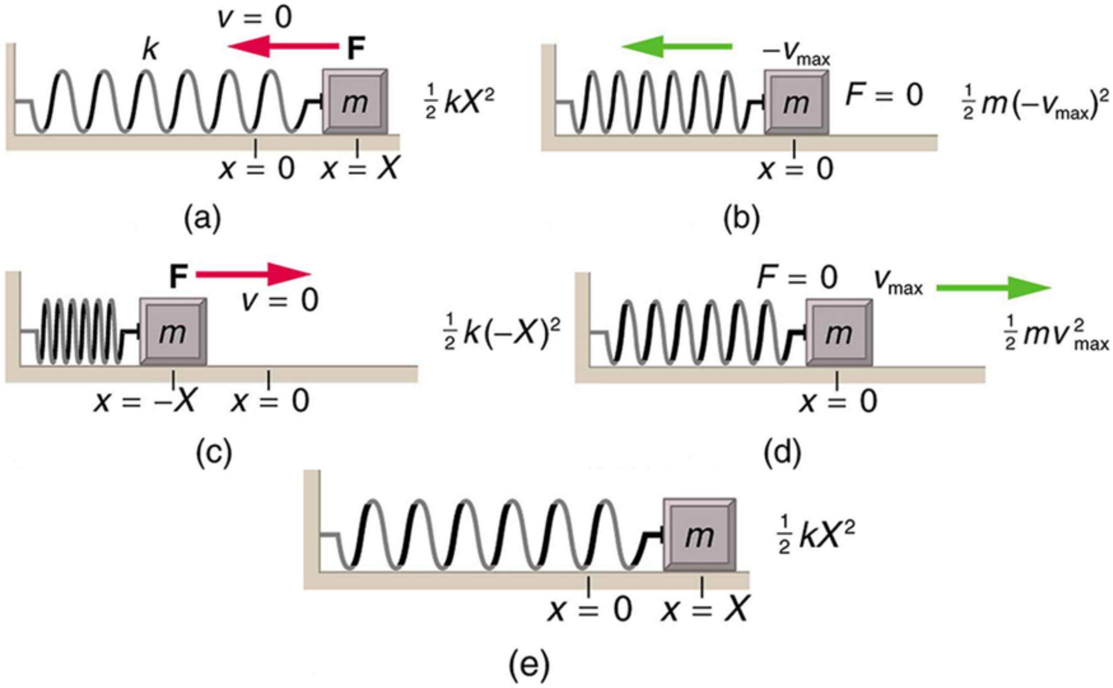
This statement of conservation of energy is valid for *all* simple harmonic oscillators, including ones where the gravitational force plays a role

Namely, for a simple pendulum we replace the velocity with $v = L\omega$, the spring constant with $k = \mathrm{mg}/L$, and the displacement term with $x = L\theta$. Thus

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{mL}^2\omega^2 + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{mgL}\theta^2 = \mathrm{constant}.$$

In the case of undamped simple harmonic motion, the energy oscillates back and forth between kinetic and potential, going completely from one to the other as the system oscillates. So for the simple example of an object on a frictionless surface attached to a spring, as shown again in [link], the motion starts with all of the energy stored in the spring. As the object starts to move, the elastic potential energy is converted to kinetic energy, becoming entirely kinetic energy at the equilibrium position. It is then converted back into elastic potential energy by the spring, the velocity becomes zero when the kinetic energy is completely converted, and so on. This concept provides extra insight here and in later applications of simple harmonic motion, such as alternating current circuits.



The transformation of energy in simple harmonic motion is illustrated for an object attached to a spring on a frictionless surface.

The conservation of energy principle can be used to derive an expression for velocity v. If we start our simple harmonic motion with zero velocity and maximum displacement ($x = X$), then the total energy is

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kX}^2.$$

This total energy is constant and is shifted back and forth between kinetic energy and potential energy, at most times being shared by each. The conservation of energy for this system in equation form is thus:

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{mv}^2+\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kx}^2=\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kX}^2.$$

Solving this equation for v yields:

Equation:

$$v=\pm\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}(X^2-x^2)}.$$

Manipulating this expression algebraically gives:

Equation:

$$v=\pm\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}X\sqrt{1-\frac{x^2}{X^2}}$$

and so

Equation:

$$v=\pm v_{\mathrm{max}}\sqrt{1-\frac{x^2}{X^2}},$$

where

Equation:

$$v_{\max} = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}X.$$

From this expression, we see that the velocity is a maximum ($v_{\max}$) at $x = 0$, as stated earlier in $v(t) = -v_{\max}\ \sin\ \frac{2\pi t}{T}$. Notice that the maximum velocity depends on three factors. Maximum velocity is directly proportional to amplitude. As you might guess, the greater the maximum displacement the greater the maximum velocity. Maximum velocity is also greater for stiffer systems, because they exert greater force for the same displacement. This observation is seen in the expression for $v_{\max}$; it is proportional to the square root of the force constant k. Finally, the maximum velocity is smaller for objects that have larger masses, because the maximum velocity is inversely proportional to the square root of m. For a given force, objects that have large masses accelerate more slowly.

A similar calculation for the simple pendulum produces a similar result, namely:
Equation:

$$\omega_{\max} = \sqrt{\frac{g}{L}}\theta_{\max}.$$

Example:
Determine the Maximum Speed of an Oscillating System: A Bumpy Road
Suppose that a car is 900 kg and has a suspension system that has a force constant $k = 6.53 \times 10^4\ \text{N/m}$. The car hits a bump and bounces with an amplitude of 0.100 m. What is its maximum vertical velocity if you assume no damping occurs?
Strategy
We can use the expression for $v_{\max}$ given in $v_{\max} = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}X$ to determine the maximum vertical velocity. The variables m and k are given in the

problem statement, and the maximum displacement X is 0.100 m.
Solution

1. Identify known.
2. Substitute known values into $v_{\text{max}} = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}X$:

   Equation:

$$v_{\text{max}} = \sqrt{\frac{6.53 \times 10^4 \text{ N/m}}{900 \text{ kg}}}(0.100 \text{ m}).$$

3. Calculate to find v_{max}= 0.852 m/s.

Discussion
This answer seems reasonable for a bouncing car. There are other ways to use conservation of energy to find v_{max}. We could use it directly, as was done in the example featured in [Hooke's Law: Stress and Strain Revisited](). The small vertical displacement y of an oscillating simple pendulum, starting from its equilibrium position, is given as
Equation:

$$y(t) = a \sin \omega t,$$

where a is the amplitude, ω is the angular velocity and t is the time taken. Substituting $\omega = \frac{2\pi}{T}$, we have
Equation:

$$y(t) = a \sin\left(\frac{2\pi t}{T}\right).$$

Thus, the displacement of pendulum is a function of time as shown above. Also the velocity of the pendulum is given by
Equation:

$$v(t) = \frac{2a\pi}{T} \cos\left(\frac{2\pi t}{T}\right),$$

so the motion of the pendulum is a function of time.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Why does it hurt more if your hand is snapped with a ruler than with a loose spring, even if the displacement of each system is equal?

Solution:

The ruler is a stiffer system, which carries greater force for the same amount of displacement. The ruler snaps your hand with greater force, which hurts more.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

You are observing a simple harmonic oscillator. Identify one way you could decrease the maximum velocity of the system.

Solution:

You could increase the mass of the object that is oscillating.

Section Summary

- Energy in the simple harmonic oscillator is shared between elastic potential energy and kinetic energy, with the total being constant:
  Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{mv}^2 + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{kx}^2 = \mathrm{constant}.$$

- Maximum velocity depends on three factors: it is directly proportional to amplitude, it is greater for stiffer systems, and it is smaller for objects that have larger masses:
  Equation:

$$v_{\text{max}} = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}X.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain in terms of energy how dissipative forces such as friction reduce the amplitude of a harmonic oscillator. Also explain how a driving mechanism can compensate. (A pendulum clock is such a system.)

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The length of nylon rope from which a mountain climber is suspended has a force constant of $1.40 \times 10^4 \text{ N/m}$.

(a) What is the frequency at which he bounces, given his mass plus and the mass of his equipment are 90.0 kg?

(b) How much would this rope stretch to break the climber's fall if he free-falls 2.00 m before the rope runs out of slack? Hint: Use conservation of energy.

(c) Repeat both parts of this problem in the situation where twice this length of nylon rope is used.

Solution:

(a) 1.99 Hz

(b) 50.2 cm

(c) 1.41 Hz, 0.710 m

Exercise:

Problem: **Engineering Application**

Near the top of the Citigroup Center building in New York City, there is an object with mass of 4.00×10^5 kg on springs that have adjustable force constants. Its function is to dampen wind-driven oscillations of the building by oscillating at the same frequency as the building is being driven—the driving force is transferred to the object, which oscillates instead of the entire building. (a) What effective force constant should the springs have to make the object oscillate with a period of 2.00 s? (b) What energy is stored in the springs for a 2.00-m displacement from equilibrium?

Solution:

(a) $3.95 \times 10^6 \text{ N/m}$

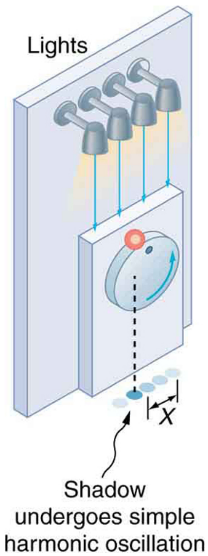
(b) $7.90 \times 10^6 \text{ J}$

Uniform Circular Motion and Simple Harmonic Motion

- Compare simple harmonic motion with uniform circular motion.

The horses on this merry-go-round exhibit uniform circular motion. (credit: Wonderlane, Flickr)

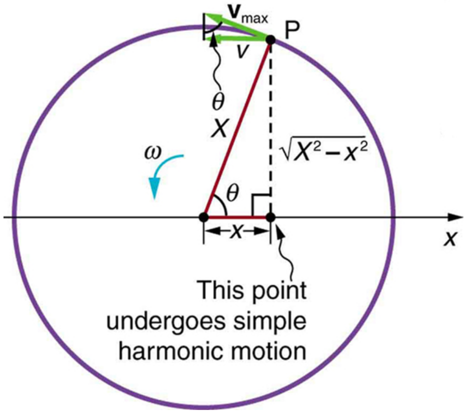
There is an easy way to produce simple harmonic motion by using uniform circular motion. [link] shows one way of using this method. A ball is attached to a uniformly rotating vertical turntable, and its shadow is projected on the floor as shown. The shadow undergoes simple harmonic motion. Hooke's law usually describes uniform circular motions (ω constant) rather than systems that have large visible displacements. So observing the projection of uniform circular motion, as in [link], is often easier than observing a precise large-scale simple harmonic oscillator. If studied in sufficient depth, simple harmonic motion produced in this manner can give considerable insight into many aspects of oscillations and waves and is very useful mathematically. In our brief treatment, we shall indicate some of the major features of this relationship and how they might be useful.



The shadow of a ball rotating at constant angular velocity ω on a turntable goes back and forth in precise simple harmonic motion.

[link] shows the basic relationship between uniform circular motion and simple harmonic motion. The point P travels around the circle at constant angular velocity ω. The point P is analogous to an object on the merry-go-

round. The projection of the position of P onto a fixed axis undergoes simple harmonic motion and is analogous to the shadow of the object. At the time shown in the figure, the projection has position x and moves to the left with velocity v. The velocity of the point P around the circle equals v_{max}.The projection of v_{max} on the x-axis is the velocity v of the simple harmonic motion along the x-axis.



A point P moving on a circular path with a constant angular velocity ω is undergoing uniform circular motion. Its projection on the x-axis undergoes simple harmonic motion. Also shown is the velocity of this point around the circle, v_{max}, and its projection, which is v. Note that these velocities form a similar triangle to the displacement triangle.

To see that the projection undergoes simple harmonic motion, note that its position x is given by

Equation:

$$x = X \cos \theta,$$

where $\theta = \omega t$, ω is the constant angular velocity, and X is the radius of the circular path. Thus,

Equation:

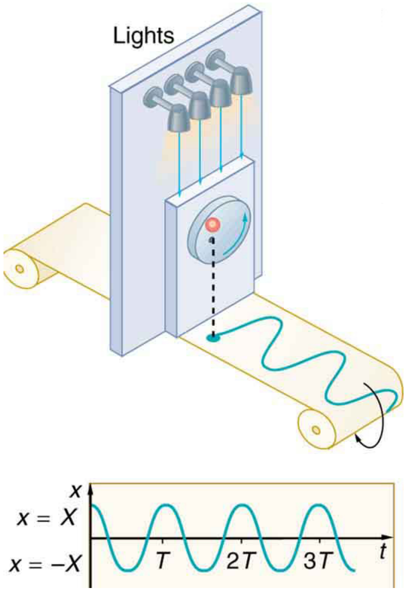
$$x = X \cos \omega t.$$

The angular velocity ω is in radians per unit time; in this case 2π radians is the time for one revolution T. That is, $\omega = 2\pi/T$. Substituting this expression for ω, we see that the position x is given by:

Equation:

$$x(t) = \cos\left(\frac{2\pi t}{T}\right).$$

This expression is the same one we had for the position of a simple harmonic oscillator in Simple Harmonic Motion: A Special Periodic Motion. If we make a graph of position versus time as in [link], we see again the wavelike character (typical of simple harmonic motion) of the projection of uniform circular motion onto the x-axis.



The position of the projection of uniform circular motion performs simple harmonic motion, as this wavelike graph of x versus t indicates.

Now let us use [link] to do some further analysis of uniform circular motion as it relates to simple harmonic motion. The triangle formed by the velocities in the figure and the triangle formed by the displacements (X, x, and $\sqrt{X^2 - x^2}$) are similar right triangles. Taking ratios of similar sides, we see that

Equation:

$$\frac{v}{v_{\text{max}}} = \frac{\sqrt{X^2 - x^2}}{X} = \sqrt{1 - \frac{x^2}{X^2}}.$$

We can solve this equation for the speed v or
Equation:

$$v = v_{\text{max}}\sqrt{1 - \frac{x^2}{X^2}}.$$

This expression for the speed of a simple harmonic oscillator is exactly the same as the equation obtained from conservation of energy considerations in Energy and the Simple Harmonic Oscillator.You can begin to see that it is possible to get all of the characteristics of simple harmonic motion from an analysis of the projection of uniform circular motion.

Finally, let us consider the period T of the motion of the projection. This period is the time it takes the point P to complete one revolution. That time is the circumference of the circle $2\pi X$ divided by the velocity around the circle, v_{max}. Thus, the period T is
Equation:

$$T = \frac{2\pi\text{X}}{v_{\text{max}}}.$$

We know from conservation of energy considerations that
Equation:

$$v_{\text{max}} = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}X.$$

Solving this equation for X/v_{max} gives
Equation:

$$\frac{X}{v_{\text{max}}} = \sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}.$$

Substituting this expression into the equation for T yields

Equation:

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}.$$

Thus, the period of the motion is the same as for a simple harmonic oscillator. We have determined the period for any simple harmonic oscillator using the relationship between uniform circular motion and simple harmonic motion.

Some modules occasionally refer to the connection between uniform circular motion and simple harmonic motion. Moreover, if you carry your study of physics and its applications to greater depths, you will find this relationship useful. It can, for example, help to analyze how waves add when they are superimposed.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Identify an object that undergoes uniform circular motion. Describe how you could trace the simple harmonic motion of this object as a wave.

Solution:

A record player undergoes uniform circular motion. You could attach dowel rod to one point on the outside edge of the turntable and attach a pen to the other end of the dowel. As the record player turns, the pen will move. You can drag a long piece of paper under the pen, capturing its motion as a wave.

Section Summary

A projection of uniform circular motion undergoes simple harmonic oscillation.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a)What is the maximum velocity of an 85.0-kg person bouncing on a bathroom scale having a force constant of $1.50 \times 10^6 \text{ N/m}$, if the amplitude of the bounce is 0.200 cm? (b)What is the maximum energy stored in the spring?

Solution:

a). 0.266 m/s

b). 3.00 J

Exercise:

Problem:

A novelty clock has a 0.0100-kg mass object bouncing on a spring that has a force constant of 1.25 N/m. What is the maximum velocity of the object if the object bounces 3.00 cm above and below its equilibrium position? (b) How many joules of kinetic energy does the object have at its maximum velocity?

Exercise:

Problem:

At what positions is the speed of a simple harmonic oscillator half its maximum? That is, what values of x/X give $v = \pm v_{\text{max}}/2$, where X is the amplitude of the motion?

Solution:

$\pm \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

Exercise:

Problem:

A ladybug sits 12.0 cm from the center of a Beatles music album spinning at 33.33 rpm. What is the maximum velocity of its shadow on the wall behind the turntable, if illuminated parallel to the record by the parallel rays of the setting Sun?

Damped Harmonic Motion

- Compare and discuss underdamped and overdamped oscillating systems.
- Explain critically damped system.

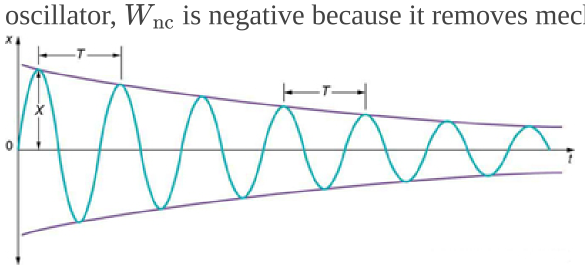
In order to counteract dampening forces, this mom needs to keep pushing the swing. (credit: Erik A. Johnson, Flickr)

A guitar string stops oscillating a few seconds after being plucked. To keep a child happy on a swing, you must keep pushing. Although we can often make friction and other non-conservative forces negligibly small, completely undamped motion is rare. In fact, we may even want to damp oscillations, such as with car shock absorbers.

For a system that has a small amount of damping, the period and frequency are nearly the same as for simple harmonic motion, but the amplitude gradually decreases as shown in [link]. This occurs because the non-conservative damping force removes energy from the system, usually in the form of thermal energy. In general, energy removal by non-conservative forces is described as
Equation:

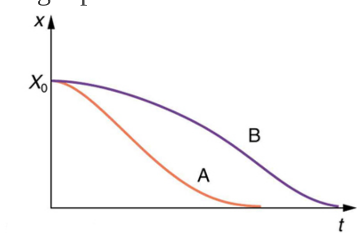
$$W_{\text{nc}} = \Delta(\text{KE} + \text{PE}),$$

where W_{nc} is work done by a non-conservative force (here the damping force). For a damped harmonic oscillator, W_{nc} is negative because it removes mechanical energy (KE + PE) from the system.



In this graph of displacement versus time for a harmonic oscillator with a small amount of damping, the amplitude slowly decreases, but the period and frequency are nearly the same as if the system were completely undamped.

If you gradually *increase* the amount of damping in a system, the period and frequency begin to be affected, because damping opposes and hence slows the back and forth motion. (The net force is smaller in both directions.) If there is very large damping, the system does not even oscillate—it slowly moves toward equilibrium. [link] shows the displacement of a harmonic oscillator for different amounts of damping. When we want to damp out oscillations, such as in the suspension of a car, we may want the system to return to equilibrium as quickly as possible **Critical damping** is defined as the condition in which the damping of an oscillator results in it returning as quickly as possible to its equilibrium position The critically damped system may overshoot the equilibrium position, but if it does, it will do so only once. Critical damping is represented by Curve A in [link]. With less-than critical damping, the system will return to equilibrium faster but will overshoot and cross over one or more times. Such a system is **underdamped**; its displacement is represented by the curve in [link]. Curve B in [link] represents an **overdamped** system. As with critical damping, it too may overshoot the equilibrium position, but will reach equilibrium over a longer period of time.

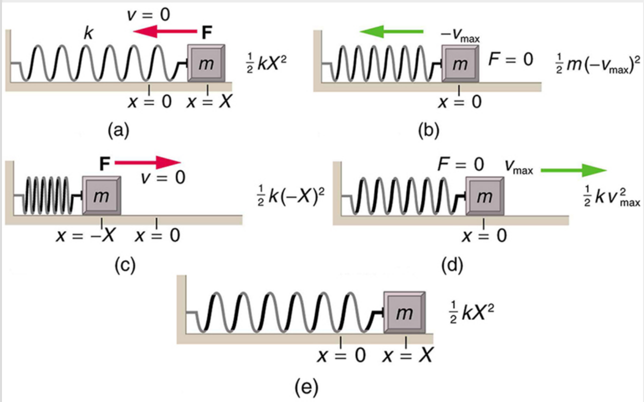


Displacement versus time for a critically damped harmonic oscillator (A) and an overdamped harmonic oscillator (B). The critically damped oscillator returns to equilibrium at $X = 0$ in the smallest time possible without overshooting.

Critical damping is often desired, because such a system returns to equilibrium rapidly and remains at equilibrium as well. In addition, a constant force applied to a critically damped system moves the system to a new equilibrium position in the shortest time possible without overshooting or oscillating about the new position. For example, when you stand on bathroom scales that have a needle gauge, the needle moves to its equilibrium position without oscillating. It would be quite inconvenient if the needle oscillated about the new equilibrium position for a long time before settling. Damping forces can vary greatly in character. Friction, for example, is sometimes independent of velocity (as assumed in most places in this text). But many damping forces depend on velocity—sometimes in complex ways, sometimes simply being proportional to velocity.

Example:
Damping an Oscillatory Motion: Friction on an Object Connected to a Spring
Damping oscillatory motion is important in many systems, and the ability to control the damping is even more so. This is generally attained using non-conservative forces such as the friction between surfaces, and viscosity for objects moving through fluids. The following example considers friction. Suppose a

0.200-kg object is connected to a spring as shown in [link], but there is simple friction between the object and the surface, and the coefficient of friction μ_k is equal to 0.0800. (a) What is the frictional force between the surfaces? (b) What total distance does the object travel if it is released 0.100 m from equilibrium, starting at $v = 0$? The force constant of the spring is $k = 50.0\ \mathrm{N/m}$.



The transformation of energy in simple harmonic motion is illustrated for an object attached to a spring on a frictionless surface.

Strategy
This problem requires you to integrate your knowledge of various concepts regarding waves, oscillations, and damping. To solve an integrated concept problem, you must first identify the physical principles involved. Part (a) is about the frictional force. This is a topic involving the application of Newton's Laws. Part (b) requires an understanding of work and conservation of energy, as well as some understanding of horizontal oscillatory systems.
Now that we have identified the principles we must apply in order to solve the problems, we need to identify the knowns and unknowns for each part of the question, as well as the quantity that is constant in Part (a) and Part (b) of the question.
Solution a

1. Choose the proper equation: Friction is $f = \mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}$.
2. Identify the known values.
3. Enter the known values into the equation:
   Equation:

$$f = (0.0800)(0.200\ \mathrm{kg})(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2}).$$

4. Calculate and convert units: $f = 0.157\ \mathrm{N}$.

Discussion a
The force here is small because the system and the coefficients are small.
Solution b
Identify the known:

- The system involves elastic potential energy as the spring compresses and expands, friction that is related to the work done, and the kinetic energy as the body speeds up and slows down.
- Energy is not conserved as the mass oscillates because friction is a non-conservative force.
- The motion is horizontal, so gravitational potential energy does not need to be considered.

- Because the motion starts from rest, the energy in the system is initially $\mathrm{PE}_{\mathrm{el,i}} = (1/2)\mathrm{kX}^2$. This energy is removed by work done by friction $W_{\mathrm{nc}} = -\mathrm{fd}$, where d is the total distance traveled and $f = \mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}$ is the force of friction. When the system stops moving, the friction force will balance the force exerted by the spring, so $\mathrm{PE}_{\mathrm{e1,f}} = (1/2)kx^2$ where x is the final position and is given by
  Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\mathrm{el}} &= f \\ \mathrm{kx} &= \mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}. \\ x &= \frac{\mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}}{k} \end{aligned}$$

1. By equating the work done to the energy removed, solve for the distance d .
2. The work done by the non-conservative forces equals the initial, stored elastic potential energy. Identify the correct equation to use:
   Equation:

$$\mathrm{W}_{\mathrm{nc}} = \Delta(\mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE}) = \mathrm{PE}_{\mathrm{el,f}} - \mathrm{PE}_{\mathrm{el,i}} = \frac{1}{2}k\left(\left(\frac{\mu_{\mathrm{k}}mg}{k}\right)^2 - X^2\right).$$

3. Recall that $W_{\mathrm{nc}} = -\mathrm{fd}$.
4. Enter the friction as $f = \mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}$ into $W_{\mathrm{nc}} = -\mathrm{fd}$, thus
   Equation:

$$W_{\mathrm{nc}} = -\mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mgd}.$$

5. Combine these two equations to find
   Equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}k\left(\left(\frac{\mu_k mg}{k}\right)^2 - X^2\right) = -\mu_{\mathrm{k}}mgd.$$

6. Solve the equation for d :
   Equation:

$$d = \frac{\mathrm{k}}{2\mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}}\left(X^2 - \left(\frac{\mu_{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{mg}}{k}\right)^2\right).$$

7. Enter the known values into the resulting equation:
   Equation:

$$d = \frac{50.0\ \mathrm{N/m}}{2(0.0800)(0.200\ \mathrm{kg})\left(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2}\right)} \quad (0.100\ \mathrm{m})^2 - \quad \frac{(0.0800)(0.200\ \mathrm{kg})\left(9.80\ \mathrm{m/s^2}\right)}{50.0\ \mathrm{N/m}} \quad ^2 \quad .$$

8. Calculate d and convert units:
   Equation:

$$d = 1.59\ \mathrm{m}.$$

Discussion b

This is the total distance traveled back and forth across $x=0$, which is the undamped equilibrium position. The number of oscillations about the equilibrium position will be more than $d/X=(1.59\text{ m})/(0.100\text{ m})=15.9$ because the amplitude of the oscillations is decreasing with time. At the end of the motion, this system will not return to $x=0$ for this type of damping force, because static friction will exceed the restoring force. This system is underdamped. In contrast, an overdamped system with a simple constant damping force would not cross the equilibrium position $x=0$ a single time. For example, if this system had a damping force 20 times greater, it would only move 0.0484 m toward the equilibrium position from its original 0.100-m position.

This worked example illustrates how to apply problem-solving strategies to situations that integrate the different concepts you have learned. The first step is to identify the physical principles involved in the problem. The second step is to solve for the unknowns using familiar problem-solving strategies. These are found throughout the text, and many worked examples show how to use them for single topics. In this integrated concepts example, you can see how to apply them across several topics. You will find these techniques useful in applications of physics outside a physics course, such as in your profession, in other science disciplines, and in everyday life.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem: Why are completely undamped harmonic oscillators so rare?

Solution:

Friction often comes into play whenever an object is moving. Friction causes damping in a harmonic oscillator.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem: Describe the difference between overdamping, underdamping, and critical damping.

Solution:

An overdamped system moves slowly toward equilibrium. An underdamped system moves quickly to equilibrium, but will oscillate about the equilibrium point as it does so. A critically damped system moves as quickly as possible toward equilibrium without oscillating about the equilibrium.

Section Summary

- Damped harmonic oscillators have non-conservative forces that dissipate their energy.
- Critical damping returns the system to equilibrium as fast as possible without overshooting.
- An underdamped system will oscillate through the equilibrium position.
- An overdamped system moves more slowly toward equilibrium than one that is critically damped.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example of a damped harmonic oscillator. (They are more common than undamped or simple harmonic oscillators.)

Exercise:

Problem: How would a car bounce after a bump under each of these conditions?

- overdamping
- underdamping
- critical damping

Exercise:

Problem:

Most harmonic oscillators are damped and, if undriven, eventually come to a stop. How is this observation related to the second law of thermodynamics?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The amplitude of a lightly damped oscillator decreases by 3.0% during each cycle. What percentage of the mechanical energy of the oscillator is lost in each cycle?

Glossary

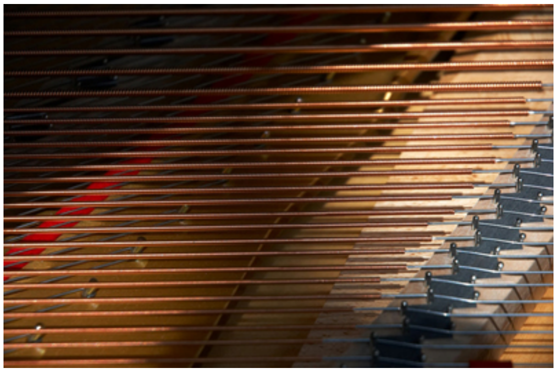
critical damping
: the condition in which the damping of an oscillator causes it to return as quickly as possible to its equilibrium position without oscillating back and forth about this position

over damping
: the condition in which damping of an oscillator causes it to return to equilibrium without oscillating; oscillator moves more slowly toward equilibrium than in the critically damped system

under damping
: the condition in which damping of an oscillator causes it to return to equilibrium with the amplitude gradually decreasing to zero; system returns to equilibrium faster but overshoots and crosses the equilibrium position one or more times

Forced Oscillations and Resonance

- Observe resonance of a paddle ball on a string.
- Observe amplitude of a damped harmonic oscillator.

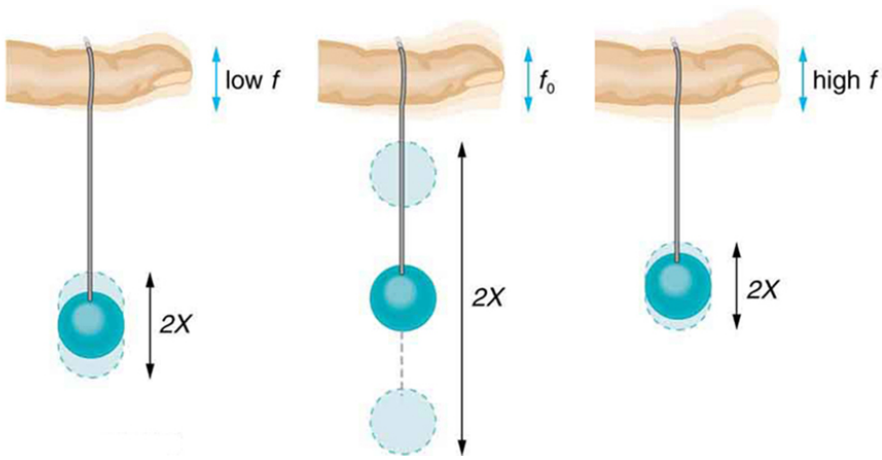


You can cause the strings in a piano to vibrate simply by producing sound waves from your voice. (credit: Matt Billings, Flickr)

Sit in front of a piano sometime and sing a loud brief note at it with the dampers off its strings. It will sing the same note back at you—the strings, having the same frequencies as your voice, are resonating in response to the forces from the sound waves that you sent to them. Your voice and a piano's strings is a good example of the fact that objects—in this case, piano strings—can be forced to oscillate but oscillate best at their natural frequency. In this section, we shall briefly explore applying a *periodic driving force* acting on a simple harmonic oscillator. The driving force puts energy into the system at a certain frequency, not necessarily the same as the natural frequency of the system. The **natural frequency** is the frequency at which a system would oscillate if there were no driving and no damping force.

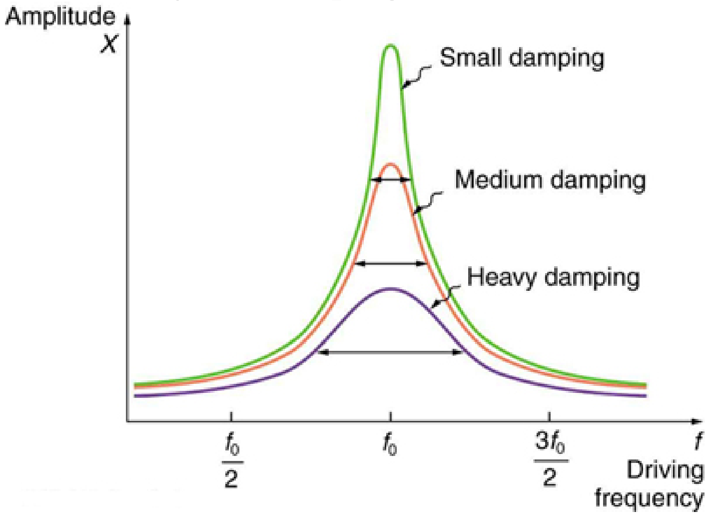
Most of us have played with toys involving an object supported on an elastic band, something like the paddle ball suspended from a finger in [link]. Imagine the finger in the figure is your finger. At first you hold your

finger steady, and the ball bounces up and down with a small amount of damping. If you move your finger up and down slowly, the ball will follow along without bouncing much on its own. As you increase the frequency at which you move your finger up and down, the ball will respond by oscillating with increasing amplitude. When you drive the ball at its natural frequency, the ball's oscillations increase in amplitude with each oscillation for as long as you drive it. The phenomenon of driving a system with a frequency equal to its natural frequency is called **resonance**. A system being driven at its natural frequency is said to **resonate**. As the driving frequency gets progressively higher than the resonant or natural frequency, the amplitude of the oscillations becomes smaller, until the oscillations nearly disappear and your finger simply moves up and down with little effect on the ball.



The paddle ball on its rubber band moves in response to the finger supporting it. If the finger moves with the natural frequency f_0 of the ball on the rubber band, then a resonance is achieved, and the amplitude of the ball's oscillations increases dramatically. At higher and lower driving frequencies, energy is transferred to the ball less efficiently, and it responds with lower-amplitude oscillations.

[link] shows a graph of the amplitude of a damped harmonic oscillator as a function of the frequency of the periodic force driving it. There are three curves on the graph, each representing a different amount of damping. All three curves peak at the point where the frequency of the driving force equals the natural frequency of the harmonic oscillator. The highest peak, or greatest response, is for the least amount of damping, because less energy is removed by the damping force.



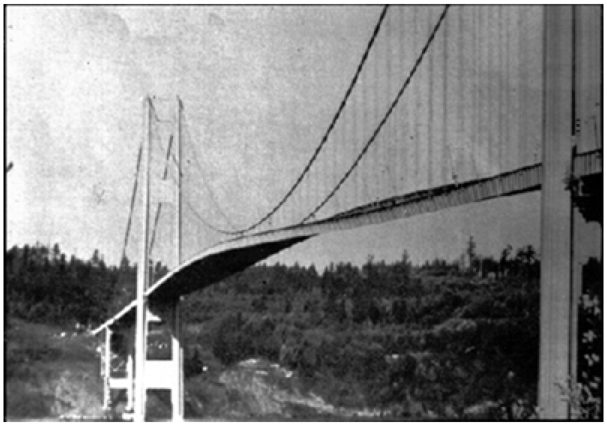
Amplitude of a harmonic oscillator as a function of the frequency of the driving force. The curves represent the same oscillator with the same natural frequency but with different amounts of damping. Resonance occurs when the driving frequency equals the natural frequency, and the greatest response is for the least amount of damping. The narrowest response is also for the least damping.

It is interesting that the widths of the resonance curves shown in [link] depend on damping: the less the damping, the narrower the resonance. The message is that if you want a driven oscillator to resonate at a very specific frequency, you need as little damping as possible. Little damping is the case

for piano strings and many other musical instruments. Conversely, if you want small-amplitude oscillations, such as in a car's suspension system, then you want heavy damping. Heavy damping reduces the amplitude, but the tradeoff is that the system responds at more frequencies.

These features of driven harmonic oscillators apply to a huge variety of systems. When you tune a radio, for example, you are adjusting its resonant frequency so that it only oscillates to the desired station's broadcast (driving) frequency. The more selective the radio is in discriminating between stations, the smaller its damping. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is a widely used medical diagnostic tool in which atomic nuclei (mostly hydrogen nuclei) are made to resonate by incoming radio waves (on the order of 100 MHz). A child on a swing is driven by a parent at the swing's natural frequency to achieve maximum amplitude. In all of these cases, the efficiency of energy transfer from the driving force into the oscillator is best at resonance. Speed bumps and gravel roads prove that even a car's suspension system is not immune to resonance. In spite of finely engineered shock absorbers, which ordinarily convert mechanical energy to thermal energy almost as fast as it comes in, speed bumps still cause a large-amplitude oscillation. On gravel roads that are corrugated, you may have noticed that if you travel at the "wrong" speed, the bumps are very noticeable whereas at other speeds you may hardly feel the bumps at all. [link] shows a photograph of a famous example (the Tacoma Narrows Bridge) of the destructive effects of a driven harmonic oscillation. The Millennium Bridge in London was closed for a short period of time for the same reason while inspections were carried out.

In our bodies, the chest cavity is a clear example of a system at resonance. The diaphragm and chest wall drive the oscillations of the chest cavity which result in the lungs inflating and deflating. The system is critically damped and the muscular diaphragm oscillates at the resonant value for the system, making it highly efficient.



In 1940, the Tacoma Narrows Bridge in Washington state collapsed. Heavy cross winds drove the bridge into oscillations at its resonant frequency. Damping decreased when support cables broke loose and started to slip over the towers, allowing increasingly greater amplitudes until the structure failed (credit: PRI's *Studio 360*, via Flickr)

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

A famous magic trick involves a performer singing a note toward a crystal glass until the glass shatters. Explain why the trick works in terms of resonance and natural frequency.

Solution:

The performer must be singing a note that corresponds to the natural frequency of the glass. As the sound wave is directed at the glass, the glass responds by resonating at the same frequency as the sound wave.

With enough energy introduced into the system, the glass begins to vibrate and eventually shatters.

Section Summary

- A system's natural frequency is the frequency at which the system will oscillate if not affected by driving or damping forces.
- A periodic force driving a harmonic oscillator at its natural frequency produces resonance. The system is said to resonate.
- The less damping a system has, the higher the amplitude of the forced oscillations near resonance. The more damping a system has, the broader response it has to varying driving frequencies.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why are soldiers in general ordered to "route step" (walk out of step) across a bridge?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

How much energy must the shock absorbers of a 1200-kg car dissipate in order to damp a bounce that initially has a velocity of 0.800 m/s at the equilibrium position? Assume the car returns to its original vertical position.

Solution:

384 J

Exercise:

Problem:

If a car has a suspension system with a force constant of $5.00 \times 10^4 \text{ N/m}$, how much energy must the car's shocks remove to dampen an oscillation starting with a maximum displacement of 0.0750 m?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How much will a spring that has a force constant of 40.0 N/m be stretched by an object with a mass of 0.500 kg when hung motionless from the spring? (b) Calculate the decrease in gravitational potential energy of the 0.500-kg object when it descends this distance. (c) Part of this gravitational energy goes into the spring. Calculate the energy stored in the spring by this stretch, and compare it with the gravitational potential energy. Explain where the rest of the energy might go.

Solution:

(a). 0.123 m

(b). −0.600 J

(c). 0.300 J. The rest of the energy may go into heat caused by friction and other damping forces.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a 0.750-kg object on a horizontal surface connected to a spring that has a force constant of 150 N/m. There is simple friction between the object and surface with a static coefficient of friction $\mu_{\mathrm{s}} = 0.100$. (a) How far can the spring be stretched without moving the mass? (b) If the object is set into oscillation with an amplitude twice the distance found in part (a), and the kinetic coefficient of friction is $\mu_{\mathrm{k}} = 0.0850$, what total distance does it travel before stopping? Assume it starts at the maximum amplitude.

Exercise:

Problem:

Engineering Application: A suspension bridge oscillates with an effective force constant of $1.00 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{N/m}$. (a) How much energy is needed to make it oscillate with an amplitude of 0.100 m? (b) If soldiers march across the bridge with a cadence equal to the bridge's natural frequency and impart 1.00×10^{4} J of energy each second, how long does it take for the bridge's oscillations to go from 0.100 m to 0.500 m amplitude?

Solution:

(a) 5.00×10^{5} J

(b) 1.20×10^{3} s

Glossary

natural frequency
: the frequency at which a system would oscillate if there were no driving and no damping forces

resonance

the phenomenon of driving a system with a frequency equal to the system's natural frequency

resonate
: a system being driven at its natural frequency

Waves

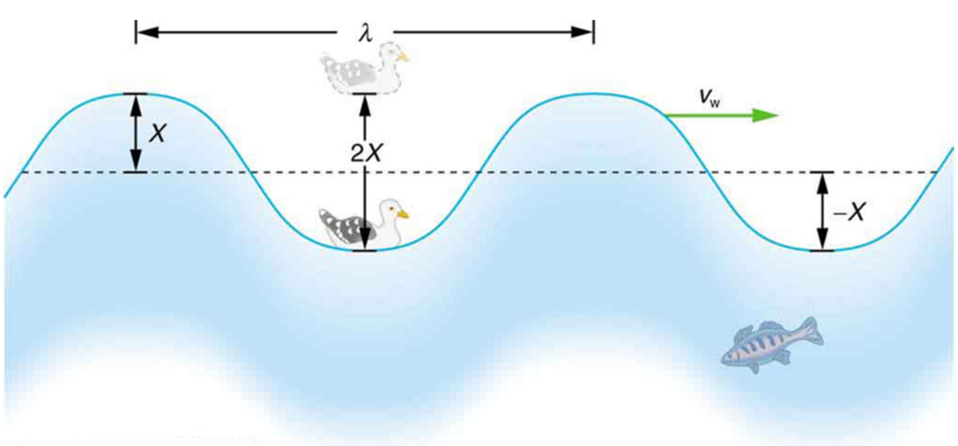
- State the characteristics of a wave.
- Calculate the velocity of wave propagation.

Waves in the ocean behave similarly to all other types of waves. (credit: Steve Jurveston, Flickr)

What do we mean when we say something is a wave? The most intuitive and easiest wave to imagine is the familiar water wave. More precisely, a **wave** is a disturbance that propagates, or moves from the place it was created. For water waves, the disturbance is in the surface of the water, perhaps created by a rock thrown into a pond or by a swimmer splashing the surface repeatedly. For sound waves, the disturbance is a change in air pressure, perhaps created by the oscillating cone inside a speaker. For earthquakes, there are several types of disturbances, including disturbance of Earth’s surface and pressure disturbances under the surface. Even radio waves are most easily understood using an analogy with water waves. Visualizing water waves is useful because there is more to it than just a mental image. Water waves exhibit characteristics common to all waves, such as amplitude, period, frequency and energy. All wave characteristics can be described by a small set of underlying principles.

A wave is a disturbance that propagates, or moves from the place it was created. The simplest waves repeat themselves for several cycles and are associated with simple harmonic motion. Let us start by considering the simplified water wave in [link]. The wave is an up and down disturbance of the water surface. It causes a sea gull to move up and down in simple harmonic motion as the wave crests and troughs (peaks and valleys) pass under the bird. The time for one complete up and down motion is the wave's period T. The wave's frequency is $f = 1/T$, as usual. The wave itself moves to the right in the figure. This movement of the wave is actually the disturbance moving to the right, not the water itself (or the bird would move to the right). We define **wave velocity** v_w to be the speed at which the disturbance moves. Wave velocity is sometimes also called the *propagation velocity or propagation speed*, because the disturbance propagates from one location to another.

Note:
Misconception Alert
Many people think that water waves push water from one direction to another. In fact, the particles of water tend to stay in one location, save for moving up and down due to the energy in the wave. The energy moves forward through the water, but the water stays in one place. If you feel yourself pushed in an ocean, what you feel is the energy of the wave, not a rush of water.



An idealized ocean wave passes under a sea gull that bobs up and down in simple harmonic motion. The wave has a wavelength λ, which is the distance between adjacent identical parts of the wave. The up and down disturbance of the surface propagates parallel to the surface at a speed v_{w}.

The water wave in the figure also has a length associated with it, called its **wavelength** λ, the distance between adjacent identical parts of a wave. (λ is the distance parallel to the direction of propagation.) The speed of propagation v_{w} is the distance the wave travels in a given time, which is one wavelength in the time of one period. In equation form, that is

Equation:

$$v_{\text{w}} = \frac{\lambda}{T}$$

or

Equation:

$$v_{\text{w}} = f\lambda.$$

This fundamental relationship holds for all types of waves. For water waves, v_{w} is the speed of a surface wave; for sound, v_{w} is the speed of sound; and for visible light, v_{w} is the speed of light, for example.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment: Waves in a Bowl

Fill a large bowl or basin with water and wait for the water to settle so there are no ripples. Gently drop a cork into the middle of the bowl. Estimate the wavelength and period of oscillation of the water wave that propagates away from the cork. Remove the cork from the bowl and wait

for the water to settle again. Gently drop the cork at a height that is different from the first drop. Does the wavelength depend upon how high above the water the cork is dropped?

Example:
Calculate the Velocity of Wave Propagation: Gull in the Ocean
Calculate the wave velocity of the ocean wave in [link] if the distance between wave crests is 10.0 m and the time for a sea gull to bob up and down is 5.00 s.
Strategy
We are asked to find v_{w}. The given information tells us that $\lambda = 10.0\text{ m}$ and $T = 5.00\text{ s}$. Therefore, we can use $v_{\text{w}} = \frac{\lambda}{T}$ to find the wave velocity.
Solution

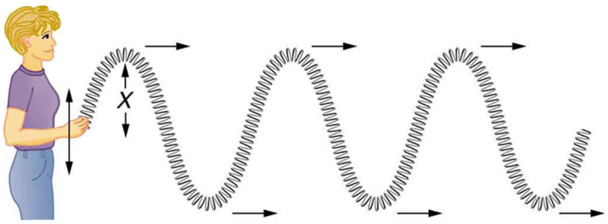
1. Enter the known values into $v_{\text{w}} = \frac{\lambda}{T}$:
   Equation:
   $$v_{\text{w}} = \frac{10.0\text{ m}}{5.00\text{ s}}.$$
2. Solve for v_{w} to find v_{w}= 2.00 m/s.

Discussion
This slow speed seems reasonable for an ocean wave. Note that the wave moves to the right in the figure at this speed, not the varying speed at which the sea gull moves up and down.

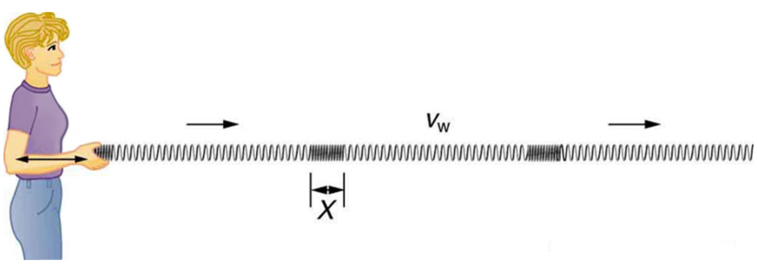
Transverse and Longitudinal Waves

A simple wave consists of a periodic disturbance that propagates from one place to another. The wave in [link] propagates in the horizontal direction while the surface is disturbed in the vertical direction. Such a wave is called a **transverse wave** or shear wave; in such a wave, the disturbance is perpendicular to the direction of propagation. In contrast, in a **longitudinal**

wave or compressional wave, the disturbance is parallel to the direction of propagation. [link] shows an example of a longitudinal wave. The size of the disturbance is its amplitude X and is completely independent of the speed of propagation v_{w}.



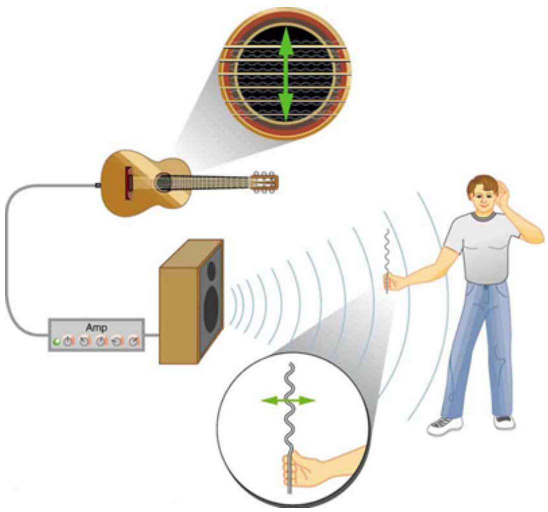
In this example of a transverse wave, the wave propagates horizontally, and the disturbance in the cord is in the vertical direction.



In this example of a longitudinal wave, the wave propagates horizontally, and the disturbance in the cord is also in the horizontal direction.

Waves may be transverse, longitudinal, or *a combination of the two*. (Water waves are actually a combination of transverse and longitudinal. The simplified water wave illustrated in [link] shows no longitudinal motion of the bird.) The waves on the strings of musical instruments are transverse—so are electromagnetic waves, such as visible light.

Sound waves in air and water are longitudinal. Their disturbances are periodic variations in pressure that are transmitted in fluids. Fluids do not have appreciable shear strength, and thus the sound waves in them must be longitudinal or compressional. Sound in solids can be both longitudinal and transverse.



The wave on a guitar string is transverse. The sound wave rattles a sheet of paper in a direction that shows the sound wave is longitudinal.

Earthquake waves under Earth's surface also have both longitudinal and transverse components (called compressional or P-waves and shear or S-waves, respectively). These components have important individual characteristics—they propagate at different speeds, for example.

Earthquakes also have surface waves that are similar to surface waves on water.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Why is it important to differentiate between longitudinal and transverse waves?

Solution:

In the different types of waves, energy can propagate in a different direction relative to the motion of the wave. This is important to understand how different types of waves affect the materials around them.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Wave on a String

Watch a string vibrate in slow motion. Wiggle the end of the string and make waves, or adjust the frequency and amplitude of an oscillator. Adjust the damping and tension. The end can be fixed, loose, or open.

https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/wave-on-a-string/latest/wave-on-a-string_en.html

Section Summary

- A wave is a disturbance that moves from the point of creation with a wave velocity v_{w}.
- A wave has a wavelength λ, which is the distance between adjacent identical parts of the wave.
- Wave velocity and wavelength are related to the wave's frequency and period by $v_{\text{w}} = \frac{\lambda}{T}$ or $v_{\text{w}} = f\lambda$.

- A transverse wave has a disturbance perpendicular to its direction of propagation, whereas a longitudinal wave has a disturbance parallel to its direction of propagation.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Give one example of a transverse wave and another of a longitudinal wave, being careful to note the relative directions of the disturbance and wave propagation in each.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the difference between propagation speed and the frequency of a wave? Does one or both affect wavelength? If so, how?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Storms in the South Pacific can create waves that travel all the way to the California coast, which are 12,000 km away. How long does it take them if they travel at 15.0 m/s?

Solution:
Equation:

$$t = 9.26\ \text{d}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Waves on a swimming pool propagate at 0.750 m/s. You splash the water at one end of the pool and observe the wave go to the opposite end, reflect, and return in 30.0 s. How far away is the other end of the pool?

Exercise:

Problem:

Wind gusts create ripples on the ocean that have a wavelength of 5.00 cm and propagate at 2.00 m/s. What is their frequency?

Solution:
Equation:

$$f = 40.0\ \text{Hz}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

How many times a minute does a boat bob up and down on ocean waves that have a wavelength of 40.0 m and a propagation speed of 5.00 m/s?

Exercise:

Problem:

Scouts at a camp shake the rope bridge they have just crossed and observe the wave crests to be 8.00 m apart. If they shake it the bridge twice per second, what is the propagation speed of the waves?

Solution:
Equation:

$$v_{\text{w}} = 16.0\ \text{m/s}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the wavelength of the waves you create in a swimming pool if you splash your hand at a rate of 2.00 Hz and the waves propagate at 0.800 m/s?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the wavelength of an earthquake that shakes you with a frequency of 10.0 Hz and gets to another city 84.0 km away in 12.0 s?

Solution:
Equation:

$$\lambda = 700 \text{ m}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Radio waves transmitted through space at $3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ by the Voyager spacecraft have a wavelength of 0.120 m. What is their frequency?

Exercise:

Problem:

Your ear is capable of differentiating sounds that arrive at the ear just 1.00 ms apart. What is the minimum distance between two speakers that produce sounds that arrive at noticeably different times on a day when the speed of sound is 340 m/s?

Solution:
Equation:

$$d = 34.0 \text{ cm}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Seismographs measure the arrival times of earthquakes with a precision of 0.100 s. To get the distance to the epicenter of the quake, they compare the arrival times of S- and P-waves, which travel at different speeds. [link]) If S- and P-waves travel at 4.00 and 7.20 km/s, respectively, in the region considered, how precisely can the distance to the source of the earthquake be determined? (b) Seismic waves from underground detonations of nuclear bombs can be used to locate the test site and detect violations of test bans. Discuss whether your answer to (a) implies a serious limit to such detection. (Note also that the uncertainty is greater if there is an uncertainty in the propagation speeds of the S- and P-waves.)

A seismograph as described in above problem.(credit: Oleg Alexandrov)

Glossary

longitudinal wave

a wave in which the disturbance is parallel to the direction of propagation

transverse wave
: a wave in which the disturbance is perpendicular to the direction of propagation

wave velocity
: the speed at which the disturbance moves. Also called the propagation velocity or propagation speed

wavelength
: the distance between adjacent identical parts of a wave

Superposition and Interference

- Explain standing waves.
- Describe the mathematical representation of overtones and beat frequency.

These waves result from the superposition of several waves from different sources, producing a complex pattern. (credit: waterborough, Wikimedia Commons)

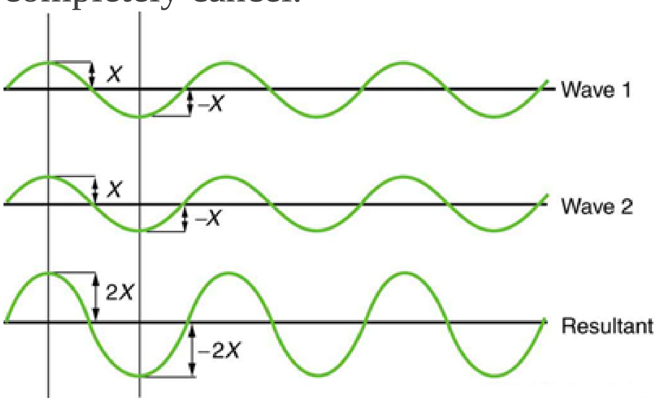
Most waves do not look very simple. They look more like the waves in [link] than like the simple water wave considered in Waves. (Simple waves may be created by a simple harmonic oscillation, and thus have a sinusoidal shape). Complex waves are more interesting, even beautiful, but they look formidable. Most waves appear complex because they result from several simple waves adding together. Luckily, the rules for adding waves are quite simple.

When two or more waves arrive at the same point, they superimpose themselves on one another. More specifically, the disturbances of waves are superimposed when they come together—a phenomenon called **superposition**. Each disturbance corresponds to a force, and forces add. If the disturbances are along the same line, then the resulting wave is a simple

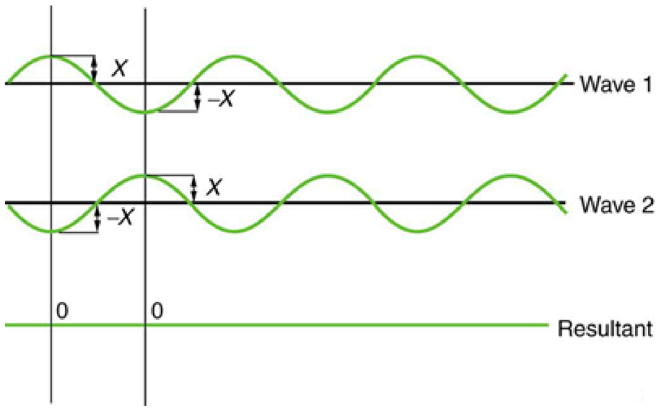
addition of the disturbances of the individual waves—that is, their amplitudes add. [link] and [link] illustrate superposition in two special cases, both of which produce simple results.

[link] shows two identical waves that arrive at the same point exactly in phase. The crests of the two waves are precisely aligned, as are the troughs. This superposition produces pure **constructive interference**. Because the disturbances add, pure constructive interference produces a wave that has twice the amplitude of the individual waves, but has the same wavelength.

[link] shows two identical waves that arrive exactly out of phase—that is, precisely aligned crest to trough—producing pure **destructive interference**. Because the disturbances are in the opposite direction for this superposition, the resulting amplitude is zero for pure destructive interference—the waves completely cancel.



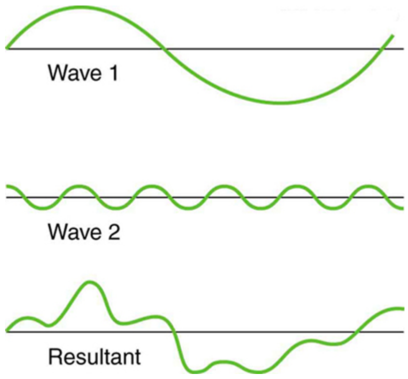
Pure constructive interference of two identical waves produces one with twice the amplitude, but the same wavelength.



Pure destructive interference of two identical waves produces zero amplitude, or complete cancellation.

While pure constructive and pure destructive interference do occur, they require precisely aligned identical waves. The superposition of most waves produces a combination of constructive and destructive interference and can vary from place to place and time to time. Sound from a stereo, for example, can be loud in one spot and quiet in another. Varying loudness means the sound waves add partially constructively and partially destructively at different locations. A stereo has at least two speakers creating sound waves, and waves can reflect from walls. All these waves superimpose. An example of sounds that vary over time from constructive to destructive is found in the combined whine of airplane jets heard by a stationary passenger. The combined sound can fluctuate up and down in volume as the sound from the two engines varies in time from constructive to destructive. These examples are of waves that are similar.

An example of the superposition of two dissimilar waves is shown in [link]. Here again, the disturbances add and subtract, producing a more complicated looking wave.

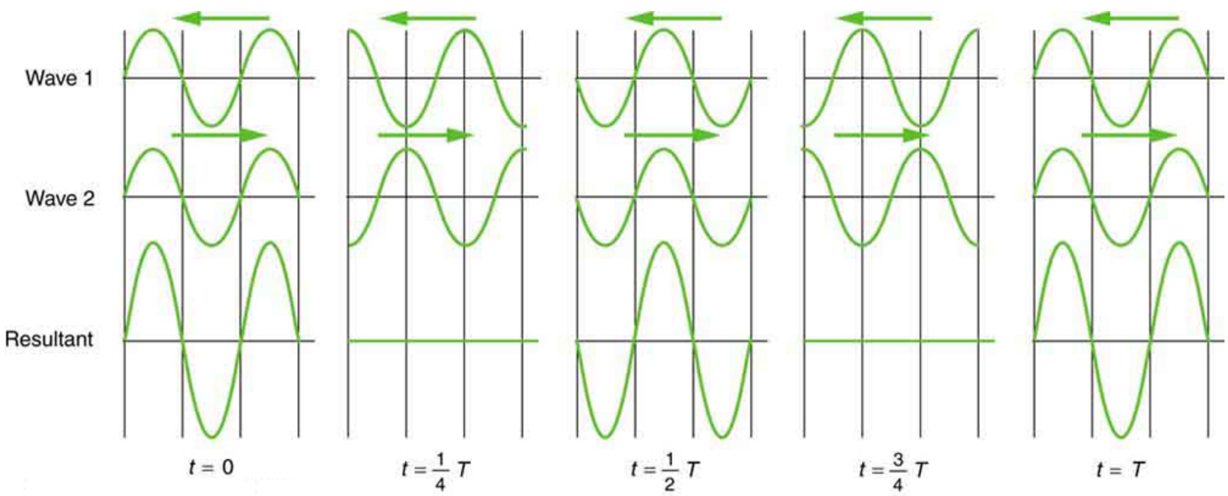


Superposition of non-identical waves exhibits both constructive and destructive interference.

Standing Waves

Sometimes waves do not seem to move; rather, they just vibrate in place. Unmoving waves can be seen on the surface of a glass of milk in a refrigerator, for example. Vibrations from the refrigerator motor create waves on the milk that oscillate up and down but do not seem to move across the surface. These waves are formed by the superposition of two or more moving waves, such as illustrated in [link] for two identical waves moving in opposite directions. The waves move through each other with their disturbances adding as they go by. If the two waves have the same amplitude and wavelength, then they alternate between constructive and destructive interference. The resultant looks like a wave standing in place and, thus, is called a **standing wave**. Waves on the glass of milk are one example of standing waves. There are other standing waves, such as on guitar strings and in organ pipes. With the glass of milk, the two waves that produce standing waves may come from reflections from the side of the glass.

A closer look at earthquakes provides evidence for conditions appropriate for resonance, standing waves, and constructive and destructive interference. A building may be vibrated for several seconds with a driving frequency matching that of the natural frequency of vibration of the building—producing a resonance resulting in one building collapsing while neighboring buildings do not. Often buildings of a certain height are devastated while other taller buildings remain intact. The building height matches the condition for setting up a standing wave for that particular height. As the earthquake waves travel along the surface of Earth and reflect off denser rocks, constructive interference occurs at certain points. Often areas closer to the epicenter are not damaged while areas farther away are damaged.

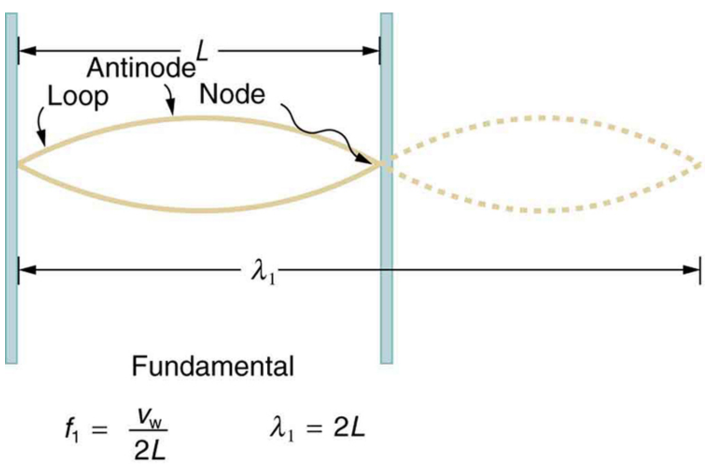


Standing wave created by the superposition of two identical waves moving in opposite directions. The oscillations are at fixed locations in space and result from alternately constructive and destructive interference.

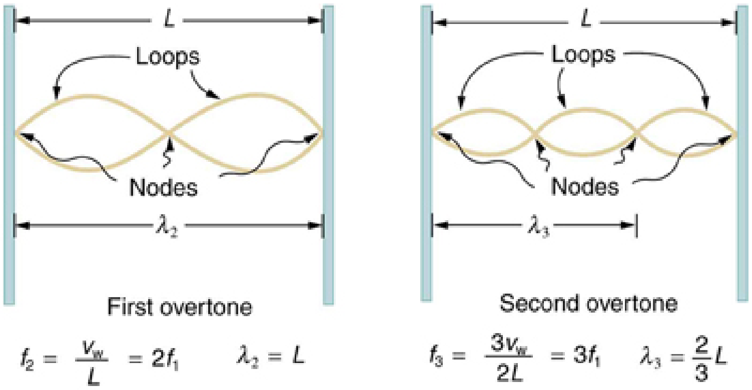
Standing waves are also found on the strings of musical instruments and are due to reflections of waves from the ends of the string. [link] and [link] show three standing waves that can be created on a string that is fixed at both ends. **Nodes** are the points where the string does not move; more

generally, nodes are where the wave disturbance is zero in a standing wave. The fixed ends of strings must be nodes, too, because the string cannot move there. The word **antinode** is used to denote the location of maximum amplitude in standing waves. Standing waves on strings have a frequency that is related to the propagation speed v_w of the disturbance on the string. The wavelength λ is determined by the distance between the points where the string is fixed in place.

The lowest frequency, called the **fundamental frequency**, is thus for the longest wavelength, which is seen to be $\lambda_1 = 2L$. Therefore, the fundamental frequency is $f_1 = v_w/\lambda_1 = v_w/2L$. In this case, the **overtones** or harmonics are multiples of the fundamental frequency. As seen in [link], the first harmonic can easily be calculated since $\lambda_2 = L$. Thus, $f_2 = v_w/\lambda_2 = v_w/2L = 2f_1$. Similarly, $f_3 = 3f_1$, and so on. All of these frequencies can be changed by adjusting the tension in the string. The greater the tension, the greater v_w is and the higher the frequencies. This observation is familiar to anyone who has ever observed a string instrument being tuned. We will see in later chapters that standing waves are crucial to many resonance phenomena, such as in sounding boxes on string instruments.



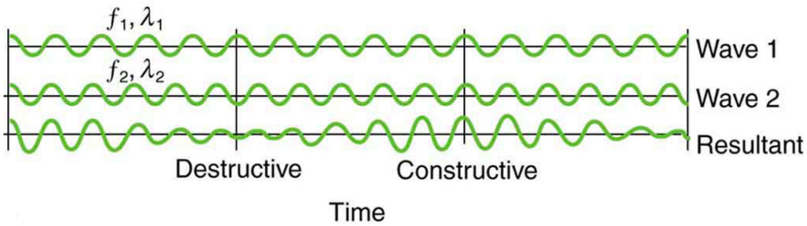
The figure shows a string oscillating at its fundamental frequency.



First and second harmonic frequencies are shown.

Beats

Striking two adjacent keys on a piano produces a warbling combination usually considered to be unpleasant. The superposition of two waves of similar but not identical frequencies is the culprit. Another example is often noticeable in jet aircraft, particularly the two-engine variety, while taxiing. The combined sound of the engines goes up and down in loudness. This varying loudness happens because the sound waves have similar but not identical frequencies. The discordant warbling of the piano and the fluctuating loudness of the jet engine noise are both due to alternately constructive and destructive interference as the two waves go in and out of phase. [link] illustrates this graphically.



Beats are produced by the superposition of two waves of slightly different frequencies but identical amplitudes. The waves alternate in time between constructive interference and destructive interference, giving the resulting wave a time-varying amplitude.

The wave resulting from the superposition of two similar-frequency waves has a frequency that is the average of the two. This wave fluctuates in amplitude, or *beats*, with a frequency called the **beat frequency**. We can determine the beat frequency by adding two waves together mathematically. Note that a wave can be represented at one point in space as

Equation:

$$x = X\cos\left(\frac{2\pi\, t}{T}\right) = X\cos(2\pi\ \mathrm{ft}),$$

where $f = 1/T$ is the frequency of the wave. Adding two waves that have different frequencies but identical amplitudes produces a resultant

Equation:

$$x = x_1 + x_2.$$

More specifically,

Equation:

$$x = X\cos(2\pi\ f_1 t) + X\cos(2\pi\ f_2 t).$$

Using a trigonometric identity, it can be shown that
Equation:

$$x = 2X \cos(\pi f_{\text{B}} t)\cos(2\pi f_{\text{ave}} t),$$

where
Equation:

$$f_{\text{B}} = \mid f_1 - f_2 \mid$$

is the beat frequency, and f_{ave} is the average of f_1 and f_2. These results mean that the resultant wave has twice the amplitude and the average frequency of the two superimposed waves, but it also fluctuates in overall amplitude at the beat frequency f_{B}. The first cosine term in the expression effectively causes the amplitude to go up and down. The second cosine term is the wave with frequency f_{ave}. This result is valid for all types of waves. However, if it is a sound wave, providing the two frequencies are similar, then what we hear is an average frequency that gets louder and softer (or warbles) at the beat frequency.

Note:
Making Career Connections
Piano tuners use beats routinely in their work. When comparing a note with a tuning fork, they listen for beats and adjust the string until the beats go away (to zero frequency). For example, if the tuning fork has a 256 Hz frequency and two beats per second are heard, then the other frequency is either 254 or 258 Hz. Most keys hit multiple strings, and these strings are actually adjusted until they have nearly the same frequency and give a slow beat for richness. Twelve-string guitars and mandolins are also tuned using beats.

While beats may sometimes be annoying in audible sounds, we will find that beats have many applications. Observing beats is a very useful way to compare similar frequencies. There are applications of beats as apparently disparate as in ultrasonic imaging and radar speed traps.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Imagine you are holding one end of a jump rope, and your friend holds the other. If your friend holds her end still, you can move your end up and down, creating a transverse wave. If your friend then begins to move her end up and down, generating a wave in the opposite direction, what resultant wave forms would you expect to see in the jump rope?

Solution:

The rope would alternate between having waves with amplitudes two times the original amplitude and reaching equilibrium with no amplitude at all. The wavelengths will result in both constructive and destructive interference

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem: Define nodes and antinodes.

Solution:

Nodes are areas of wave interference where there is no motion. Antinodes are areas of wave interference where the motion is at its maximum point.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

You hook up a stereo system. When you test the system, you notice that in one corner of the room, the sounds seem dull. In another area, the sounds seem excessively loud. Describe how the sound moving about the room could result in these effects.

Solution:

With multiple speakers putting out sounds into the room, and these sounds bouncing off walls, there is bound to be some wave interference. In the dull areas, the interference is probably mostly destructive. In the louder areas, the interference is probably mostly constructive.

> **Note:**
> PhET Explorations: Wave Interference
> Make waves with a dripping faucet, audio speaker, or laser! Add a second source or a pair of slits to create an interference pattern.
> https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/wave-interference/latest/wave-interference_en.html

Section Summary

- Superposition is the combination of two waves at the same location.
- Constructive interference occurs when two identical waves are superimposed in phase.
- Destructive interference occurs when two identical waves are superimposed exactly out of phase.
- A standing wave is one in which two waves superimpose to produce a wave that varies in amplitude but does not propagate.
- Nodes are points of no motion in standing waves.
- An antinode is the location of maximum amplitude of a standing wave.

- Waves on a string are resonant standing waves with a fundamental frequency and can occur at higher multiples of the fundamental, called overtones or harmonics.
- Beats occur when waves of similar frequencies f_1 and f_2 are superimposed. The resulting amplitude oscillates with a beat frequency given by
  Equation:

$$f_B = \mid f_1 - f_2 \mid.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Speakers in stereo systems have two color-coded terminals to indicate how to hook up the wires. If the wires are reversed, the speaker moves in a direction opposite that of a properly connected speaker. Explain why it is important to have both speakers connected the same way.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A car has two horns, one emitting a frequency of 199 Hz and the other emitting a frequency of 203 Hz. What beat frequency do they produce?

Solution:

$f = 4\text{ Hz}$

Exercise:

Problem:

The middle-C hammer of a piano hits two strings, producing beats of 1.50 Hz. One of the strings is tuned to 260.00 Hz. What frequencies could the other string have?

Exercise:

Problem:

Two tuning forks having frequencies of 460 and 464 Hz are struck simultaneously. What average frequency will you hear, and what will the beat frequency be?

Solution:

462 Hz,

4 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

Twin jet engines on an airplane are producing an average sound frequency of 4100 Hz with a beat frequency of 0.500 Hz. What are their individual frequencies?

Exercise:

Problem:

A wave traveling on a Slinky® that is stretched to 4 m takes 2.4 s to travel the length of the Slinky and back again. (a) What is the speed of the wave? (b) Using the same Slinky stretched to the same length, a standing wave is created which consists of three antinodes and four nodes. At what frequency must the Slinky be oscillating?

Solution:

(a) 3.33 m/s

(b) 1.25 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

Three adjacent keys on a piano (F, F-sharp, and G) are struck simultaneously, producing frequencies of 349, 370, and 392 Hz. What beat frequencies are produced by this discordant combination?

Glossary

antinode
: the location of maximum amplitude in standing waves

beat frequency
: the frequency of the amplitude fluctuations of a wave

constructive interference
: when two waves arrive at the same point exactly in phase; that is, the crests of the two waves are precisely aligned, as are the troughs

destructive interference
: when two identical waves arrive at the same point exactly out of phase; that is, precisely aligned crest to trough

fundamental frequency
: the lowest frequency of a periodic waveform

nodes
: the points where the string does not move; more generally, nodes are where the wave disturbance is zero in a standing wave

overtones
: multiples of the fundamental frequency of a sound

superposition

the phenomenon that occurs when two or more waves arrive at the same point

Energy in Waves: Intensity

- Calculate the intensity and the power of rays and waves.

The destructive effect of an earthquake is palpable evidence of the energy carried in these waves. The Richter scale rating of earthquakes is related to both their amplitude and the energy they carry. (credit: Petty Officer 2nd Class Candice Villarreal, U.S. Navy)

All waves carry energy. The energy of some waves can be directly observed. Earthquakes can shake whole cities to the ground, performing the work of thousands of wrecking balls.

Loud sounds pulverize nerve cells in the inner ear, causing permanent hearing loss. Ultrasound is used for deep-heat treatment of muscle strains. A laser beam can burn away a malignancy. Water waves chew up beaches.

The amount of energy in a wave is related to its amplitude. Large-amplitude earthquakes produce large ground displacements. Loud sounds have higher pressure amplitudes and come from larger-amplitude source vibrations than

soft sounds. Large ocean breakers churn up the shore more than small ones. More quantitatively, a wave is a displacement that is resisted by a restoring force. The larger the displacement x, the larger the force $F = \mathrm{kx}$ needed to create it. Because work W is related to force multiplied by distance (Fx) and energy is put into the wave by the work done to create it, the energy in a wave is related to amplitude. In fact, a wave's energy is directly proportional to its amplitude squared because

Equation:

$$W \propto \mathrm{Fx} = \mathrm{kx}^2.$$

The energy effects of a wave depend on time as well as amplitude. For example, the longer deep-heat ultrasound is applied, the more energy it transfers. Waves can also be concentrated or spread out. Sunlight, for example, can be focused to burn wood. Earthquakes spread out, so they do less damage the farther they get from the source. In both cases, changing the area the waves cover has important effects. All these pertinent factors are included in the definition of **intensity** I as power per unit area:

Equation:

$$I = \frac{P}{A}$$

where P is the power carried by the wave through area A. The definition of intensity is valid for any energy in transit, including that carried by waves. The SI unit for intensity is watts per square meter ($\mathrm{W/m^2}$). For example, infrared and visible energy from the Sun impinge on Earth at an intensity of $1300\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$ just above the atmosphere. There are other intensity-related units in use, too. The most common is the decibel. For example, a 90 decibel sound level corresponds to an intensity of $10^{-3}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$. (This quantity is not much power per unit area considering that 90 decibels is a relatively high sound level. Decibels will be discussed in some detail in a later chapter.

Example:
Calculating intensity and power: How much energy is in a ray of sunlight?
The average intensity of sunlight on Earth's surface is about 700 W/m^2.
(a) Calculate the amount of energy that falls on a solar collector having an area of 0.500 m^2 in 4.00 h.
(b) What intensity would such sunlight have if concentrated by a magnifying glass onto an area 200 times smaller than its own?
Strategy a
Because power is energy per unit time or $P = \frac{E}{t}$, the definition of intensity can be written as $I = \frac{P}{A} = \frac{E/t}{A}$, and this equation can be solved for E with the given information.
Solution a

1. Begin with the equation that states the definition of intensity:
   Equation:

$$I = \frac{P}{A}.$$

2. Replace P with its equivalent E/t:
   Equation:

$$I = \frac{E/t}{A}.$$

3. Solve for E:
   Equation:

$$E = \text{IAt}.$$

4. Substitute known values into the equation:
   Equation:

$$E = \left(700 \text{ W/m}^2\right)\left(0.500 \text{ m}^2\right)\left[(4.00 \text{ h})(3600 \text{ s/h})\right].$$

5. Calculate to find E and convert units:

Equation:

$$5.04 \times 10^{6}\ \text{J},$$

Discussion a
The energy falling on the solar collector in 4 h in part is enough to be useful—for example, for heating a significant amount of water.
Strategy b
Taking a ratio of new intensity to old intensity and using primes for the new quantities, we will find that it depends on the ratio of the areas. All other quantities will cancel.
Solution b

1. Take the ratio of intensities, which yields:
   Equation:

   $$\frac{I\prime}{I} = \frac{P\prime/A\prime}{P/A} = \frac{A}{A\prime}\left(\text{The powers cancel because } P\prime = P\right).$$

2. Identify the knowns:
   Equation:

   $$A = 200A\prime,$$

   Equation:

   $$\frac{I\prime}{I} = 200.$$

3. Substitute known quantities:
   Equation:

   $$I\prime = 200I = 200\left(700\ \text{W/m}^{2}\right).$$

4. Calculate to find $I\prime$:
   Equation:

$$I\prime = 1.40 \times 10^{5}\ \text{W/m}^{2}.$$

Discussion b
Decreasing the area increases the intensity considerably. The intensity of the concentrated sunlight could even start a fire.

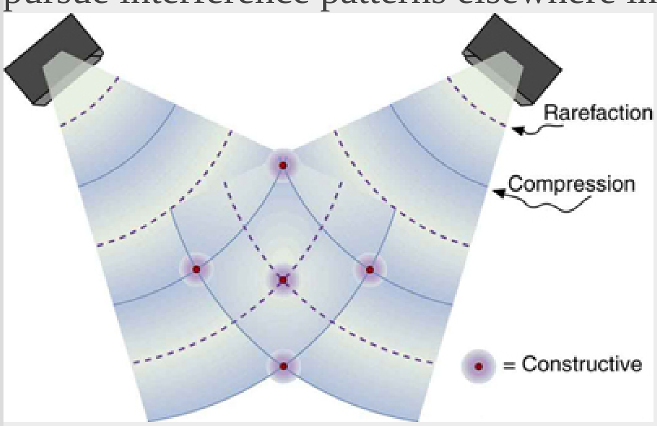
Example:
Determine the combined intensity of two waves: Perfect constructive interference
If two identical waves, each having an intensity of $1.00\ \text{W/m}^{2}$, interfere perfectly constructively, what is the intensity of the resulting wave?
Strategy
We know from Superposition and Interference that when two identical waves, which have equal amplitudes X, interfere perfectly constructively, the resulting wave has an amplitude of $2X$. Because a wave's intensity is proportional to amplitude squared, the intensity of the resulting wave is four times as great as in the individual waves.
Solution

1. Recall that intensity is proportional to amplitude squared.
2. Calculate the new amplitude:
   Equation:
   $$I\prime \propto (X\prime)^{2} = (2X)^{2} = 4X^{2}.$$
3. Recall that the intensity of the old amplitude was:
   Equation:
   $$I \propto X^{2}.$$
4. Take the ratio of new intensity to the old intensity. This gives:
   Equation:
   $$\frac{I\prime}{I} = 4.$$

5. Calculate to find $I\prime$:
   Equation:

$$I\prime = 4I = 4.00\ \text{W/m}^2.$$

Discussion
The intensity goes up by a factor of 4 when the amplitude doubles. This answer is a little disquieting. The two individual waves each have intensities of $1.00\ \text{W/m}^2$, yet their sum has an intensity of $4.00\ \text{W/m}^2$, which may appear to violate conservation of energy. This violation, of course, cannot happen. What does happen is intriguing. The area over which the intensity is $4.00\ \text{W/m}^2$ is much less than the area covered by the two waves before they interfered. There are other areas where the intensity is zero. The addition of waves is not as simple as our first look in Superposition and Interference suggested. We actually get a pattern of both constructive interference and destructive interference whenever two waves are added. For example, if we have two stereo speakers putting out $1.00\ \text{W/m}^2$ each, there will be places in the room where the intensity is $4.00\ \text{W/m}^2$, other places where the intensity is zero, and others in between. [link] shows what this interference might look like. We will pursue interference patterns elsewhere in this text.



These stereo speakers produce both constructive interference and destructive interference in the room, a property common to the

superposition of all types of waves. The shading is proportional to intensity.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Which measurement of a wave is most important when determining the wave's intensity?

Solution:

Amplitude, because a wave's energy is directly proportional to its amplitude squared.

Section Summary

Intensity is defined to be the power per unit area:

$I = \frac{P}{A}$ and has units of $\mathrm{W/m^2}$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Two identical waves undergo pure constructive interference. Is the resultant intensity twice that of the individual waves? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

Circular water waves decrease in amplitude as they move away from where a rock is dropped. Explain why.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: **Medical Application**

Ultrasound of intensity $1.50 \times 10^2 \ \mathrm{W/m^2}$ is produced by the rectangular head of a medical imaging device measuring 3.00 by 5.00 cm. What is its power output?

Solution:

0.225 W

Exercise:

Problem:

The low-frequency speaker of a stereo set has a surface area of $0.05 \ \mathrm{m}^2$ and produces 1W of acoustical power. What is the intensity at the speaker? If the speaker projects sound uniformly in all directions, at what distance from the speaker is the intensity $0.1 \ \mathrm{W/m^2}$?

Exercise:

Problem:

To increase intensity of a wave by a factor of 50, by what factor should the amplitude be increased?

Solution:

7.07

Exercise:

Problem: **Engineering Application**

A device called an insolation meter is used to measure the intensity of sunlight has an area of 100 cm^2 and registers 6.50 W. What is the intensity in $\mathrm{W/m^2}$?

Exercise:

Problem: **Astronomy Application**

Energy from the Sun arrives at the top of the Earth's atmosphere with an intensity of $1.30\ \mathrm{kW/m^2}$. How long does it take for $1.8 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{J}$ to arrive on an area of $1.00\ \mathrm{m^2}$?

Solution:

16.0 d

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a device that extracts energy from ocean breakers in direct proportion to their intensity. If the device produces 10.0 kW of power on a day when the breakers are 1.20 m high, how much will it produce when they are 0.600 m high?

Solution:

2.50 kW

Exercise:

Problem: **Engineering Application**

(a) A photovoltaic array of (solar cells) is 10.0% efficient in gathering solar energy and converting it to electricity. If the average intensity of

sunlight on one day is $700\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$, what area should your array have to gather energy at the rate of 100 W? (b) What is the maximum cost of the array if it must pay for itself in two years of operation averaging 10.0 hours per day? Assume that it earns money at the rate of 9.00 ¢ per kilowatt-hour.

Exercise:

Problem:

A microphone receiving a pure sound tone feeds an oscilloscope, producing a wave on its screen. If the sound intensity is originally $2.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$, but is turned up until the amplitude increases by 30.0%, what is the new intensity?

Solution:

$3.38 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$

Exercise:

Problem: **Medical Application**

(a) What is the intensity in $\mathrm{W/m^2}$ of a laser beam used to burn away cancerous tissue that, when 90.0% absorbed, puts 500 J of energy into a circular spot 2.00 mm in diameter in 4.00 s? (b) Discuss how this intensity compares to the average intensity of sunlight (about $700\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$) and the implications that would have if the laser beam entered your eye. Note how your answer depends on the time duration of the exposure.

Glossary

intensity
: power per unit area

Introduction to the Physics of Hearing class="introduction"

This tree fell some time ago. When it fell, atoms in the air were disturbed. Physicists would call this disturbance sound whether someone was around to hear it or not. (credit: B.A. Bowen Photography)

If a tree falls in the forest and no one is there to hear it, does it make a sound? The answer to this old philosophical question depends on how you define sound. If sound only exists when someone is around to perceive it, then there was no sound. However, if we define sound in terms of physics; that is, a disturbance of the atoms in matter transmitted from its origin outward (in other words, a wave), then there *was* a sound, even if nobody was around to hear it.

Such a wave is the physical phenomenon we call *sound*. Its perception is hearing. Both the physical phenomenon and its perception are interesting and will be considered in this text. We shall explore both sound and hearing; they are related, but are not the same thing. We will also explore the many practical uses of sound waves, such as in medical imaging.
https://www.youtube.com/embed/9YgcdK0qY8w

Sound

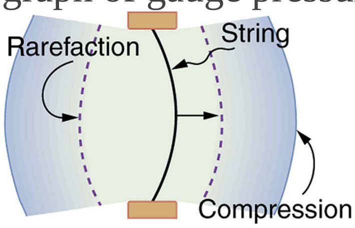
- Define sound and hearing.
- Describe sound as a longitudinal wave.

This glass has been shattered by a high-intensity sound wave of the same frequency as the resonant frequency of the glass. While the sound is not visible, the effects of the sound prove its existence. (credit: ||read||, Flickr)

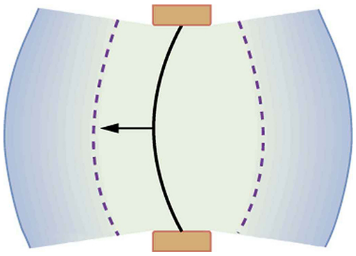
Sound can be used as a familiar illustration of waves. Because hearing is one of our most important senses, it is interesting to see how the physical properties of sound correspond to our perceptions of it. **Hearing** is the perception of sound, just as vision is the perception of visible light. But sound has important applications beyond hearing. Ultrasound, for example, is not heard but can be employed to form medical images and is also used in treatment.

The physical phenomenon of **sound** is defined to be a disturbance of matter that is transmitted from its source outward. Sound is a wave. On the atomic scale, it is a disturbance of atoms that is far more ordered than their thermal motions. In many instances, sound is a periodic wave, and the atoms undergo simple harmonic motion. In this text, we shall explore such periodic sound waves.

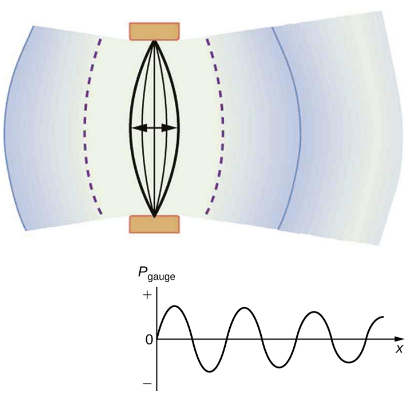
A vibrating string produces a sound wave as illustrated in [link], [link], and [link]. As the string oscillates back and forth, it transfers energy to the air, mostly as thermal energy created by turbulence. But a small part of the string's energy goes into compressing and expanding the surrounding air, creating slightly higher and lower local pressures. These compressions (high pressure regions) and rarefactions (low pressure regions) move out as longitudinal pressure waves having the same frequency as the string—they are the disturbance that is a sound wave. (Sound waves in air and most fluids are longitudinal, because fluids have almost no shear strength. In solids, sound waves can be both transverse and longitudinal.) [link] shows a graph of gauge pressure versus distance from the vibrating string.



A vibrating string moving to the right compresses the air in front of it and expands the air behind it.



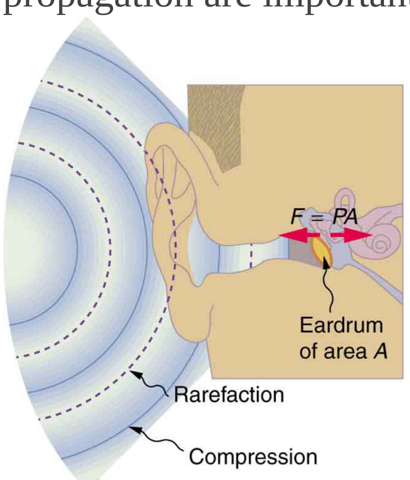
As the string moves to the left, it creates another compression and rarefaction as the ones on the right move away from the string.



After many vibrations, there are a series of compressions and rarefactions moving out from the string as a sound wave. The graph shows gauge pressure versus

distance from the source. Pressures vary only slightly from atmospheric for ordinary sounds.

The amplitude of a sound wave decreases with distance from its source, because the energy of the wave is spread over a larger and larger area. But it is also absorbed by objects, such as the eardrum in [link], and converted to thermal energy by the viscosity of air. In addition, during each compression a little heat transfers to the air and during each rarefaction even less heat transfers from the air, so that the heat transfer reduces the organized disturbance into random thermal motions. (These processes can be viewed as a manifestation of the second law of thermodynamics presented in Introduction to the Second Law of Thermodynamics: Heat Engines and Their Efficiency.) Whether the heat transfer from compression to rarefaction is significant depends on how far apart they are—that is, it depends on wavelength. Wavelength, frequency, amplitude, and speed of propagation are important for sound, as they are for all waves.



Sound wave compressions and rarefactions travel up the ear canal and

force the eardrum to vibrate. There is a net force on the eardrum, since the sound wave pressures differ from the atmospheric pressure found behind the eardrum. A complicated mechanism converts the vibrations to nerve impulses, which are perceived by the person.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Wave Interference
WMake waves with a dripping faucet, audio speaker, or laser! Add a second source or a pair of slits to create an interference pattern.
https://archive.cnx.org/specials/2fe7ad15-b00e-4402-b068-ff503985a18f/wave-interference/

Section Summary

- Sound is a disturbance of matter that is transmitted from its source outward.
- Sound is one type of wave.

- Hearing is the perception of sound.

Glossary

sound
: a disturbance of matter that is transmitted from its source outward

hearing
: the perception of sound

Speed of Sound, Frequency, and Wavelength

- Define pitch.
- Describe the relationship between the speed of sound, its frequency, and its wavelength.
- Describe the effects on the speed of sound as it travels through various media.
- Describe the effects of temperature on the speed of sound.

When a firework explodes, the light energy is perceived before the sound energy. Sound travels more slowly than light does. (credit: Dominic Alves, Flickr)

Sound, like all waves, travels at a certain speed and has the properties of frequency and wavelength. You can observe direct evidence of the speed of sound while watching a fireworks display. The flash of an explosion is seen well before its sound is heard, implying both that sound travels at a finite speed and that it is much slower than light. You can also directly sense the frequency of a sound. Perception of frequency is called **pitch**. The wavelength of sound is not directly sensed, but indirect evidence is found in the correlation of the size of musical instruments with their pitch. Small

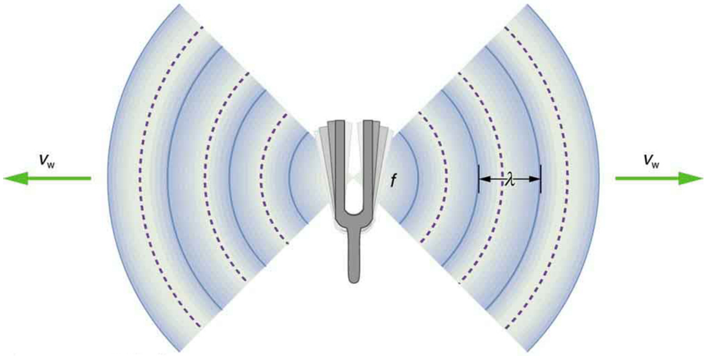
instruments, such as a piccolo, typically make high-pitch sounds, while large instruments, such as a tuba, typically make low-pitch sounds. High pitch means small wavelength, and the size of a musical instrument is directly related to the wavelengths of sound it produces. So a small instrument creates short-wavelength sounds. Similar arguments hold that a large instrument creates long-wavelength sounds.

The relationship of the speed of sound, its frequency, and wavelength is the same as for all waves:

Equation:

$$v_{\mathrm{w}} = f\lambda,$$

where v_{w} is the speed of sound, f is its frequency, and λ is its wavelength. The wavelength of a sound is the distance between adjacent identical parts of a wave—for example, between adjacent compressions as illustrated in [link]. The frequency is the same as that of the source and is the number of waves that pass a point per unit time.



A sound wave emanates from a source vibrating at a frequency f, propagates at v_{w}, and has a wavelength λ.

[link] makes it apparent that the speed of sound varies greatly in different media. The speed of sound in a medium is determined by a combination of the medium's rigidity (or compressibility in gases) and its density. The

more rigid (or less compressible) the medium, the faster the speed of sound. This observation is analogous to the fact that the frequency of a simple harmonic motion is directly proportional to the stiffness of the oscillating object. The greater the density of a medium, the slower the speed of sound. This observation is analogous to the fact that the frequency of a simple harmonic motion is inversely proportional to the mass of the oscillating object. The speed of sound in air is low, because air is compressible. Because liquids and solids are relatively rigid and very difficult to compress, the speed of sound in such media is generally greater than in gases.

Medium	**v_w(m/s)**
Gases at $0°C$	
Air	331
Carbon dioxide	259
Oxygen	316
Helium	965
Hydrogen	1290
Liquids at $20°C$	
Ethanol	1160
Mercury	1450
Water, fresh	1480

Medium	v_w**(m/s)**
Sea water	1540
Human tissue	1540
Solids (longitudinal or bulk)	
Vulcanized rubber	54
Polyethylene	920
Marble	3810
Glass, Pyrex	5640
Lead	1960
Aluminum	5120
Steel	5960

Speed of Sound in Various Media

Earthquakes, essentially sound waves in Earth's crust, are an interesting example of how the speed of sound depends on the rigidity of the medium. Earthquakes have both longitudinal and transverse components, and these travel at different speeds. The bulk modulus of granite is greater than its shear modulus. For that reason, the speed of longitudinal or pressure waves (P-waves) in earthquakes in granite is significantly higher than the speed of transverse or shear waves (S-waves). Both components of earthquakes travel slower in less rigid material, such as sediments. P-waves have speeds of 4 to 7 km/s, and S-waves correspondingly range in speed from 2 to 5 km/s, both being faster in more rigid material. The P-wave gets progressively farther ahead of the S-wave as they travel through Earth's crust. The time between the P- and S-waves is routinely used to determine the distance to their source, the epicenter of the earthquake.

The speed of sound is affected by temperature in a given medium. For air at sea level, the speed of sound is given by

Equation:

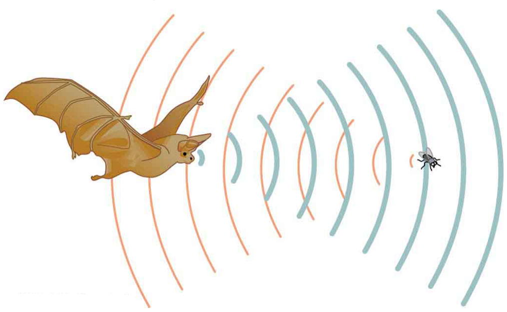
$$v_{\text{w}} = (331\ \text{m/s})\sqrt{\frac{T}{273\ \text{K}}},$$

where the temperature (denoted as T) is in units of kelvin. The speed of sound in gases is related to the average speed of particles in the gas, v_{rms}, and that

Equation:

$$v_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{\frac{3\,kT}{m}},$$

where k is the Boltzmann constant ($1.38 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{J/K}$) and m is the mass of each (identical) particle in the gas. So, it is reasonable that the speed of sound in air and other gases should depend on the square root of temperature. While not negligible, this is not a strong dependence. At 0°C, the speed of sound is 331 m/s, whereas at 20.0°C it is 343 m/s, less than a 4% increase. [link] shows a use of the speed of sound by a bat to sense distances. Echoes are also used in medical imaging.



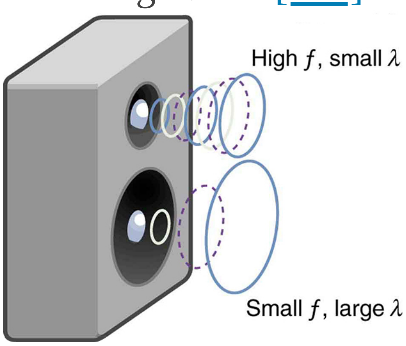
A bat uses sound echoes to find its way about and to catch prey. The time for the echo to return is directly proportional to the distance.

One of the more important properties of sound is that its speed is nearly independent of frequency. This independence is certainly true in open air for sounds in the audible range of 20 to 20,000 Hz. If this independence were not true, you would certainly notice it for music played by a marching band in a football stadium, for example. Suppose that high-frequency sounds traveled faster—then the farther you were from the band, the more the sound from the low-pitch instruments would lag that from the high-pitch ones. But the music from all instruments arrives in cadence independent of distance, and so all frequencies must travel at nearly the same speed. Recall that

Equation:

$$v_{\mathrm{w}} = f\lambda.$$

In a given medium under fixed conditions, v_{w} is constant, so that there is a relationship between f and λ; the higher the frequency, the smaller the wavelength. See [link] and consider the following example.



Because they travel at the same speed in a given medium, low-frequency sounds must have a greater wavelength than high-frequency sounds.

Here, the lower-frequency sounds are emitted by the large speaker, called a woofer, while the higher-frequency sounds are emitted by the small speaker, called a tweeter.

Example:
Calculating Wavelengths: What Are the Wavelengths of Audible Sounds?

Calculate the wavelengths of sounds at the extremes of the audible range, 20 and 20,000 Hz, in $30.0°C$ air. (Assume that the frequency values are accurate to two significant figures.)

Strategy

To find wavelength from frequency, we can use $v_{\mathrm{w}} = f\lambda$.

Solution

1. Identify knowns. The value for v_{w}, is given by
   Equation:
   $$v_{\mathrm{w}} = (331\ \mathrm{m/s})\sqrt{\frac{T}{273\ \mathrm{K}}}.$$
2. Convert the temperature into kelvin and then enter the temperature into the equation
   Equation:
   $$v_{\mathrm{w}} = (331\ \mathrm{m/s})\sqrt{\frac{303\ \mathrm{K}}{273\ \mathrm{K}}} = 348.7\ \mathrm{m/s}.$$

3. Solve the relationship between speed and wavelength for λ:
   Equation:

$$\lambda = \frac{v_{\mathrm{w}}}{f}.$$

4. Enter the speed and the minimum frequency to give the maximum wavelength:
   Equation:

$$\lambda_{\mathrm{max}} = \frac{348.7 \text{ m/s}}{20 \text{ Hz}} = 17 \text{ m}.$$

5. Enter the speed and the maximum frequency to give the minimum wavelength:
   Equation:

$$\lambda_{\mathrm{min}} = \frac{348.7 \text{ m/s}}{20{,}000 \text{ Hz}} = 0.017 \text{ m} = 1.7 \text{ cm}.$$

Discussion
Because the product of f multiplied by λ equals a constant, the smaller f is, the larger λ must be, and vice versa.

The speed of sound can change when sound travels from one medium to another. However, the frequency usually remains the same because it is like a driven oscillation and has the frequency of the original source. If v_{w} changes and f remains the same, then the wavelength λ must change. That is, because $v_{\mathrm{w}} = f\lambda$, the higher the speed of a sound, the greater its wavelength for a given frequency.

Note:
Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation—Voice as a Sound Wave

Suspend a sheet of paper so that the top edge of the paper is fixed and the bottom edge is free to move. You could tape the top edge of the paper to the edge of a table. Gently blow near the edge of the bottom of the sheet and note how the sheet moves. Speak softly and then louder such that the sounds hit the edge of the bottom of the paper, and note how the sheet moves. Explain the effects.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Imagine you observe two fireworks explode. You hear the explosion of one as soon as you see it. However, you see the other firework for several milliseconds before you hear the explosion. Explain why this is so.

Solution:

Sound and light both travel at definite speeds. The speed of sound is slower than the speed of light. The first firework is probably very close by, so the speed difference is not noticeable. The second firework is farther away, so the light arrives at your eyes noticeably sooner than the sound wave arrives at your ears.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

You observe two musical instruments that you cannot identify. One plays high-pitch sounds and the other plays low-pitch sounds. How could you determine which is which without hearing either of them play?

Solution:

Compare their sizes. High-pitch instruments are generally smaller than low-pitch instruments because they generate a smaller wavelength.

Section Summary

The relationship of the speed of sound v_{w}, its frequency f, and its wavelength λ is given by

Equation:

$$v_{\text{w}} = f\lambda,$$

which is the same relationship given for all waves.

In air, the speed of sound is related to air temperature T by

Equation:

$$v_{\text{w}} = (331\text{ m/s})\sqrt{\frac{T}{273\text{ K}}}.$$

v_{w} is the same for all frequencies and wavelengths.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How do sound vibrations of atoms differ from thermal motion?

Exercise:

Problem:

When sound passes from one medium to another where its propagation speed is different, does its frequency or wavelength change? Explain your answer briefly.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

When poked by a spear, an operatic soprano lets out a 1200-Hz shriek. What is its wavelength if the speed of sound is 345 m/s?

Solution:

0.288 m

Exercise:

Problem:

What frequency sound has a 0.10-m wavelength when the speed of sound is 340 m/s?

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the speed of sound on a day when a 1500 Hz frequency has a wavelength of 0.221 m.

Solution:

332 m/s

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the speed of sound in a medium where a 100-kHz frequency produces a 5.96-cm wavelength? (b) Which substance in [link] is this likely to be?

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the speed of sound in 20.0°C air is 343 m/s, as claimed in the text.

Solution:
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} v_{\text{w}} &= (331\ \text{m/s})\sqrt{\frac{T}{273\ \text{K}}} = (331\ \text{m/s})\sqrt{\frac{293\ \text{K}}{273\ \text{K}}} \\ &= 343\ \text{m/s} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Air temperature in the Sahara Desert can reach 56.0°C (about 134°F). What is the speed of sound in air at that temperature?

Exercise:

Problem:

Dolphins make sounds in air and water. What is the ratio of the wavelength of a sound in air to its wavelength in seawater? Assume air temperature is 20.0°C.

Solution:

0.223

Exercise:

Problem:

A sonar echo returns to a submarine 1.20 s after being emitted. What is the distance to the object creating the echo? (Assume that the submarine is in the ocean, not in fresh water.)

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) If a submarine's sonar can measure echo times with a precision of 0.0100 s, what is the smallest difference in distances it can detect? (Assume that the submarine is in the ocean, not in fresh water.)

(b) Discuss the limits this time resolution imposes on the ability of the sonar system to detect the size and shape of the object creating the echo.

Solution:

(a) 7.70 m

(b) This means that sonar is good for spotting and locating large objects, but it isn't able to resolve smaller objects, or detect the detailed shapes of objects. Objects like ships or large pieces of airplanes can be found by sonar, while smaller pieces must be found by other means.

Exercise:

Problem:

A physicist at a fireworks display times the lag between seeing an explosion and hearing its sound, and finds it to be 0.400 s. (a) How far away is the explosion if air temperature is $24.0^{\circ}C$ and if you neglect the time taken for light to reach the physicist? (b) Calculate the distance to the explosion taking the speed of light into account. Note that this distance is negligibly greater.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a bat uses sound echoes to locate its insect prey, 3.00 m away. (See [link].) (a) Calculate the echo times for temperatures of 5.00°C and 35.0°C. (b) What percent uncertainty does this cause for the bat in locating the insect? (c) Discuss the significance of this uncertainty and whether it could cause difficulties for the bat. (In practice, the bat continues to use sound as it closes in, eliminating most of any difficulties imposed by this and other effects, such as motion of the prey.)

Solution:

(a) 18.0 ms, 17.1 ms

(b) 5.00%

(c) This uncertainty could definitely cause difficulties for the bat, if it didn’t continue to use sound as it closed in on its prey. A 5% uncertainty could be the difference between catching the prey around the neck or around the chest, which means that it could miss grabbing its prey.

Glossary

pitch
: the perception of the frequency of a sound

Sound Intensity and Sound Level

- Define intensity, sound intensity, and sound pressure level.
- Calculate sound intensity levels in decibels (dB).

Noise on crowded roadways like this one in Delhi makes it hard to hear others unless they shout. (credit: Lingaraj G J, Flickr)

In a quiet forest, you can sometimes hear a single leaf fall to the ground. After settling into bed, you may hear your blood pulsing through your ears. But when a passing motorist has his stereo turned up, you cannot even hear what the person next to you in your car is saying. We are all very familiar with the loudness of sounds and aware that they are related to how energetically the source is vibrating. In cartoons depicting a screaming person (or an animal making a loud noise), the cartoonist often shows an open mouth with a vibrating uvula, the hanging tissue at the back of the mouth, to suggest a loud sound coming from the throat [link]. High noise exposure is hazardous to hearing, and it is common for musicians to have hearing losses that are sufficiently severe that they interfere with the musicians' abilities to perform. The relevant physical quantity is sound intensity, a concept that is valid for all sounds whether or not they are in the audible range.

Intensity is defined to be the power per unit area carried by a wave. Power is the rate at which energy is transferred by the wave. In equation form, **intensity** I is

Equation:

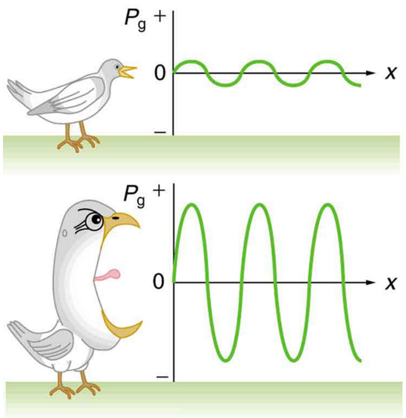
$$I = \frac{P}{A},$$

where P is the power through an area A. The SI unit for I is W/m^2. The intensity of a sound wave is related to its amplitude squared by the following relationship:

Equation:

$$I = \frac{(\Delta p)^2}{2\rho v_{\text{w}}}.$$

Here Δp is the pressure variation or pressure amplitude (half the difference between the maximum and minimum pressure in the sound wave) in units of pascals (Pa) or N/m^2. (We are using a lower case p for pressure to distinguish it from power, denoted by P above.) The energy (as kinetic energy $\frac{mv^2}{2}$) of an oscillating element of air due to a traveling sound wave is proportional to its amplitude squared. In this equation, ρ is the density of the material in which the sound wave travels, in units of kg/m^3, and v_{w} is the speed of sound in the medium, in units of m/s. The pressure variation is proportional to the amplitude of the oscillation, and so I varies as $(\Delta p)^2$ ([link]). This relationship is consistent with the fact that the sound wave is produced by some vibration; the greater its pressure amplitude, the more the air is compressed in the sound it creates.



Graphs of the gauge pressures in two sound waves of different intensities. The more intense sound is produced by a source that has larger-amplitude oscillations and has greater pressure maxima and minima. Because pressures are higher in the greater-intensity sound, it can exert larger forces on the objects it encounters.

Sound intensity levels are quoted in decibels (dB) much more often than sound intensities in watts per meter squared. Decibels are the unit of choice in the scientific literature as well as in the popular media. The reasons for this choice of units are related to how we perceive sounds. How our ears perceive sound can be more accurately described by the logarithm of the

intensity rather than directly to the intensity. The **sound intensity level** β in decibels of a sound having an intensity I in watts per meter squared is defined to be

Equation:

$$\beta \text{ (dB)} = 10 \log_{10}\left(\frac{I}{I_0}\right),$$

where $I_0 = 10^{-12} \text{ W/m}^2$ is a reference intensity. In particular, I_0 is the lowest or threshold intensity of sound a person with normal hearing can perceive at a frequency of 1000 Hz. Sound intensity level is not the same as intensity. Because β is defined in terms of a ratio, it is a unitless quantity telling you the *level* of the sound relative to a fixed standard (10^{-12} W/m^2, in this case). The units of decibels (dB) are used to indicate this ratio is multiplied by 10 in its definition. The bel, upon which the decibel is based, is named for Alexander Graham Bell, the inventor of the telephone.

Sound intensity level β (dB)	Intensity $I(\text{W/m}^2)$	Example/effect
0	1×10^{-12}	Threshold of hearing at 1000 Hz
10	1×10^{-11}	Rustle of leaves
20	1×10^{-10}	Whisper at 1 m distance
30	1×10^{-9}	Quiet home

Sound intensity level β (dB)	**Intensity $I(\mathrm{W/m^2})$**	**Example/effect**
40	1×10^{-8}	Average home
50	1×10^{-7}	Average office, soft music
60	1×10^{-6}	Normal conversation
70	1×10^{-5}	Noisy office, busy traffic
80	1×10^{-4}	Loud radio, classroom lecture
90	1×10^{-3}	Inside a heavy truck; damage from prolonged exposure[footnote] Several government agencies and health-related professional associations recommend that 85 dB not be exceeded for 8-hour daily exposures in the absence of hearing protection.
100	1×10^{-2}	Noisy factory, siren at 30 m; damage from 8 h per day exposure
110	1×10^{-1}	Damage from 30 min per day exposure
120	1	Loud rock concert, pneumatic chipper at 2 m; threshold of pain
140	1×10^{2}	Jet airplane at 30 m; severe pain, damage in seconds
160	1×10^{4}	Bursting of eardrums

Sound Intensity Levels and Intensities

Sound Intensity Levels and Intensities

The decibel level of a sound having the threshold intensity of $10^{-12}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$ is $\beta = 0\ \mathrm{dB}$, because $\log_{10}1 = 0$. That is, the threshold of hearing is 0 decibels. [link] gives levels in decibels and intensities in watts per meter squared for some familiar sounds.

One of the more striking things about the intensities in [link] is that the intensity in watts per meter squared is quite small for most sounds. The ear is sensitive to as little as a trillionth of a watt per meter squared—even more impressive when you realize that the area of the eardrum is only about $1\ \mathrm{cm}^2$, so that only 10^{-16} W falls on it at the threshold of hearing! Air molecules in a sound wave of this intensity vibrate over a distance of less than one molecular diameter, and the gauge pressures involved are less than 10^{-9} atm.

Another impressive feature of the sounds in [link] is their numerical range. Sound intensity varies by a factor of 10^{12} from threshold to a sound that causes damage in seconds. You are unaware of this tremendous range in sound intensity because how your ears respond can be described approximately as the logarithm of intensity. Thus, sound intensity levels in decibels fit your experience better than intensities in watts per meter squared. The decibel scale is also easier to relate to because most people are more accustomed to dealing with numbers such as 0, 53, or 120 than numbers such as 1.00×10^{-11}.

One more observation readily verified by examining [link] or using $I = \frac{(\Delta p)^2}{2\rho v_{\mathrm{w}}}$ is that each factor of 10 in intensity corresponds to 10 dB. For example, a 90 dB sound compared with a 60 dB sound is 30 dB greater, or three factors of 10 (that is, 10^3 times) as intense. Another example is that if one sound is 10^7 as intense as another, it is 70 dB higher. See [link].

I_2/I_1	$\beta_2 - \beta_1$
2.0	3.0 dB
5.0	7.0 dB
10.0	10.0 dB

Ratios of Intensities and Corresponding Differences in Sound Intensity Levels

Example:
Calculating Sound Intensity Levels: Sound Waves
Calculate the sound intensity level in decibels for a sound wave traveling in air at 0ºC and having a pressure amplitude of 0.656 Pa.

Strategy
We are given Δp, so we can calculate I using the equation $I = (\Delta p)^2/(2pv_{\text{w}})^2$. Using I, we can calculate β straight from its definition in $\beta\ (\text{dB}) = 10\ \log_{10}(I/I_0)$.

Solution
(1) Identify knowns:
Sound travels at 331 m/s in air at 0ºC.
Air has a density of $1.29\ \text{kg/m}^3$ at atmospheric pressure and 0ºC.
(2) Enter these values and the pressure amplitude into $I = (\Delta p)^2/\ (2\rho v_{\text{w}})$:
Equation:

$$I = \frac{(\Delta p)^2}{2\rho v_{\text{w}}} = \frac{(0.656\ \text{Pa})^2}{2\left(1.29\ \text{kg/m}^3\right)(331\ \text{m/s})} = 5.04 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{W/m}^2.$$

(3) Enter the value for I and the known value for I_0 into $\beta\ (\text{dB}) = 10\ \log_{10}(I/I_0)$. Calculate to find the sound intensity level in decibels:
Equation:

$$10\ \log_{10}\left(5.04\times10^{8}\right)=10\ \left(8.70\right)\ \text{dB}=87\ \text{dB}.$$

Discussion
This 87 dB sound has an intensity five times as great as an 80 dB sound. So a factor of five in intensity corresponds to a difference of 7 dB in sound intensity level. This value is true for any intensities differing by a factor of five.

Example:
Change Intensity Levels of a Sound: What Happens to the Decibel Level?
Show that if one sound is twice as intense as another, it has a sound level about 3 dB higher.
Strategy
You are given that the ratio of two intensities is 2 to 1, and are then asked to find the difference in their sound levels in decibels. You can solve this problem using of the properties of logarithms.
Solution
(1) Identify knowns:
The ratio of the two intensities is 2 to 1, or:
Equation:

$$\frac{I_2}{I_1}=2.00.$$

We wish to show that the difference in sound levels is about 3 dB. That is, we want to show:
Equation:

$$\beta_2-\beta_1=3\ \text{dB}.$$

Note that:
Equation:

$$\log_{10}b-\log_{10}a=\log_{10}\left(\frac{b}{a}\right).$$

(2) Use the definition of β to get:
Equation:

$$\beta_2 - \beta_1 = 10\ \log_{10}\left(\frac{I_2}{I_1}\right) = 10\ \log_{10} 2.00 = 10\ (0.301)\ \text{dB}.$$

Thus,
Equation:

$$\beta_2 - \beta_1 = 3.01\ \text{dB}.$$

Discussion
This means that the two sound intensity levels differ by 3.01 dB, or about 3 dB, as advertised. Note that because only the ratio I_2/I_1 is given (and not the actual intensities), this result is true for any intensities that differ by a factor of two. For example, a 56.0 dB sound is twice as intense as a 53.0 dB sound, a 97.0 dB sound is half as intense as a 100 dB sound, and so on.

It should be noted at this point that there is another decibel scale in use, called the **sound pressure level**, based on the ratio of the pressure amplitude to a reference pressure. This scale is used particularly in applications where sound travels in water. It is beyond the scope of most introductory texts to treat this scale because it is not commonly used for sounds in air, but it is important to note that very different decibel levels may be encountered when sound pressure levels are quoted. For example, ocean noise pollution produced by ships may be as great as 200 dB expressed in the sound pressure level, where the more familiar sound intensity level we use here would be something under 140 dB for the same sound.

Note:
Take-Home Investigation: Feeling Sound

Find a CD player and a CD that has rock music. Place the player on a light table, insert the CD into the player, and start playing the CD. Place your hand gently on the table next to the speakers. Increase the volume and note the level when the table just begins to vibrate as the rock music plays. Increase the reading on the volume control until it doubles. What has happened to the vibrations?

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Describe how amplitude is related to the loudness of a sound.

Solution:

Amplitude is directly proportional to the experience of loudness. As amplitude increases, loudness increases.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Identify common sounds at the levels of 10 dB, 50 dB, and 100 dB.

Solution:

10 dB: Running fingers through your hair.

50 dB: Inside a quiet home with no television or radio.

100 dB: Take-off of a jet plane.

Section Summary

- Intensity is the same for a sound wave as was defined for all waves; it is
  Equation:

  $$I = \frac{P}{A},$$

  where P is the power crossing area A. The SI unit for I is watts per meter squared. The intensity of a sound wave is also related to the pressure amplitude Δp
  Equation:

  $$I = \frac{(\Delta p)^2}{2\rho v_{\text{w}}},$$

  where ρ is the density of the medium in which the sound wave travels and v_{w} is the speed of sound in the medium.

- Sound intensity level in units of decibels (dB) is
  Equation:

  $$\beta\,(\text{dB}) = 10\,\log_{10}\left(\frac{I}{I_0}\right),$$

  where $I_0 = 10^{-12}\ \text{W/m}^2$ is the threshold intensity of hearing.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Six members of a synchronized swim team wear earplugs to protect themselves against water pressure at depths, but they can still hear the music and perform the combinations in the water perfectly. One day, they were asked to leave the pool so the dive team could practice a few dives, and they tried to practice on a mat, but seemed to have a lot more difficulty. Why might this be?

Exercise:

Problem:

A community is concerned about a plan to bring train service to their downtown from the town's outskirts. The current sound intensity level, even though the rail yard is blocks away, is 70 dB downtown. The mayor assures the public that there will be a difference of only 30 dB in sound in the downtown area. Should the townspeople be concerned? Why?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the intensity in watts per meter squared of 85.0-dB sound?

Solution:
Equation:

$$3.16 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

The warning tag on a lawn mower states that it produces noise at a level of 91.0 dB. What is this in watts per meter squared?

Exercise:

Problem:

A sound wave traveling in 20^{o}C air has a pressure amplitude of 0.5 Pa. What is the intensity of the wave?

Solution:
Equation:

$$3.04\times 10^{–4}\ \text{W}/\text{m}^{2}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

What intensity level does the sound in the preceding problem correspond to?

Exercise:

Problem:

What sound intensity level in dB is produced by earphones that create an intensity of $4.00\times 10^{-2}\ \text{W}/\text{m}^{2}$?

Solution:

106 dB

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that an intensity of $10^{–12}\ \text{W}/\text{m}^{2}$ is the same as $10^{–16}\ \text{W}/\text{cm}^{2}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the decibel level of a sound that is twice as intense as a 90.0-dB sound? (b) What is the decibel level of a sound that is one-fifth as intense as a 90.0-dB sound?

Solution:

(a) 93 dB

(b) 83 dB

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the intensity of a sound that has a level 7.00 dB lower than a $4.00 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$ sound? (b) What is the intensity of a sound that is 3.00 dB higher than a $4.00 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$ sound?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How much more intense is a sound that has a level 17.0 dB higher than another? (b) If one sound has a level 23.0 dB less than another, what is the ratio of their intensities?

Solution:

(a) 50.1

(b) 5.01×10^{-3} or $\frac{1}{200}$

Exercise:

Problem:

People with good hearing can perceive sounds as low in level as –8.00 dB at a frequency of 3000 Hz. What is the intensity of this sound in watts per meter squared?

Exercise:

Problem:

If a large housefly 3.0 m away from you makes a noise of 40.0 dB, what is the noise level of 1000 flies at that distance, assuming interference has a negligible effect?

Solution:

70.0 dB

Exercise:

Problem:

Ten cars in a circle at a boom box competition produce a 120-dB sound intensity level at the center of the circle. What is the average sound intensity level produced there by each stereo, assuming interference effects can be neglected?

Exercise:

Problem:

The amplitude of a sound wave is measured in terms of its maximum gauge pressure. By what factor does the amplitude of a sound wave increase if the sound intensity level goes up by 40.0 dB?

Solution:

100

Exercise:

Problem:

If a sound intensity level of 0 dB at 1000 Hz corresponds to a maximum gauge pressure (sound amplitude) of 10^{-9} atm, what is the maximum gauge pressure in a 60-dB sound? What is the maximum gauge pressure in a 120-dB sound?

Exercise:

Problem:

An 8-hour exposure to a sound intensity level of 90.0 dB may cause hearing damage. What energy in joules falls on a 0.800-cm-diameter eardrum so exposed?

Solution:

Equation:

$$1.45 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{J}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Ear trumpets were never very common, but they did aid people with hearing losses by gathering sound over a large area and concentrating it on the smaller area of the eardrum. What decibel increase does an ear trumpet produce if its sound gathering area is $900\ \text{cm}^2$ and the area of the eardrum is $0.500\ \text{cm}^2$, but the trumpet only has an efficiency of 5.00% in transmitting the sound to the eardrum? (b) Comment on the usefulness of the decibel increase found in part (a).

Exercise:

Problem:

Sound is more effectively transmitted into a stethoscope by direct contact than through the air, and it is further intensified by being concentrated on the smaller area of the eardrum. It is reasonable to assume that sound is transmitted into a stethoscope 100 times as effectively compared with transmission though the air. What, then, is the gain in decibels produced by a stethoscope that has a sound gathering area of 15.0 cm^2, and concentrates the sound onto two eardrums with a total area of 0.900 cm^2 with an efficiency of 40.0%?

Solution:

28.2 dB

Exercise:

Problem:

Loudspeakers can produce intense sounds with surprisingly small energy input in spite of their low efficiencies. Calculate the power input needed to produce a 90.0-dB sound intensity level for a 12.0-cm-diameter speaker that has an efficiency of 1.00%. (This value is the sound intensity level right at the speaker.)

Glossary

intensity
: the power per unit area carried by a wave

sound intensity level
: a unitless quantity telling you the level of the sound relative to a fixed standard

sound pressure level
: the ratio of the pressure amplitude to a reference pressure

Doppler Effect and Sonic Booms

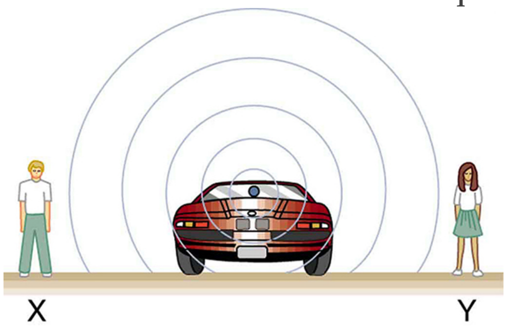
- Define Doppler effect, Doppler shift, and sonic boom.
- Calculate the frequency of a sound heard by someone observing Doppler shift.
- Describe the sounds produced by objects moving faster than the speed of sound.

The characteristic sound of a motorcycle buzzing by is an example of the **Doppler effect**. The high-pitch scream shifts dramatically to a lower-pitch roar as the motorcycle passes by a stationary observer. The closer the motorcycle brushes by, the more abrupt the shift. The faster the motorcycle moves, the greater the shift. We also hear this characteristic shift in frequency for passing race cars, airplanes, and trains. It is so familiar that it is used to imply motion and children often mimic it in play.

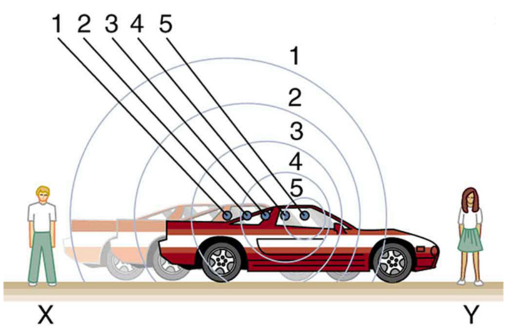
The Doppler effect is an alteration in the observed frequency of a sound due to motion of either the source or the observer. Although less familiar, this effect is easily noticed for a stationary source and moving observer. For example, if you ride a train past a stationary warning bell, you will hear the bell's frequency shift from high to low as you pass by. The actual change in frequency due to relative motion of source and observer is called a **Doppler shift**. The Doppler effect and Doppler shift are named for the Austrian physicist and mathematician Christian Johann Doppler (1803–1853), who did experiments with both moving sources and moving observers. Doppler, for example, had musicians play on a moving open train car and also play standing next to the train tracks as a train passed by. Their music was observed both on and off the train, and changes in frequency were measured.

What causes the Doppler shift? [link], [link], and [link] compare sound waves emitted by stationary and moving sources in a stationary air mass. Each disturbance spreads out spherically from the point where the sound was emitted. If the source is stationary, then all of the spheres representing the air compressions in the sound wave centered on the same point, and the stationary observers on either side see the same wavelength and frequency as emitted by the source, as in [link]. If the source is moving, as in [link], then the situation is different. Each compression of the air moves out in a

sphere from the point where it was emitted, but the point of emission moves. This moving emission point causes the air compressions to be closer together on one side and farther apart on the other. Thus, the wavelength is shorter in the direction the source is moving (on the right in [link]), and longer in the opposite direction (on the left in [link]). Finally, if the observers move, as in [link], the frequency at which they receive the compressions changes. The observer moving toward the source receives them at a higher frequency, and the person moving away from the source receives them at a lower frequency.

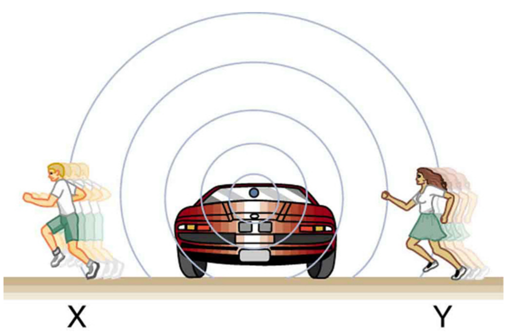


Sounds emitted by a source spread out in spherical waves. Because the source, observers, and air are stationary, the wavelength and frequency are the same in all directions and to all observers.



Sounds emitted by a

source moving to the right spread out from the points at which they were emitted. The wavelength is reduced and, consequently, the frequency is increased in the direction of motion, so that the observer on the right hears a higher-pitch sound. The opposite is true for the observer on the left, where the wavelength is increased and the frequency is reduced.



The same effect is produced when the observers move relative to the source. Motion toward the source increases frequency as the observer on the right passes through more wave crests than she would if stationary. Motion away from the

source decreases frequency as the observer on the left passes through fewer wave crests than he would if stationary.

We know that wavelength and frequency are related by $v_w = f\lambda$, where v_w is the fixed speed of sound. The sound moves in a medium and has the same speed v_w in that medium whether the source is moving or not. Thus f multiplied by λ is a constant. Because the observer on the right in [link] receives a shorter wavelength, the frequency she receives must be higher. Similarly, the observer on the left receives a longer wavelength, and hence he hears a lower frequency. The same thing happens in [link]. A higher frequency is received by the observer moving toward the source, and a lower frequency is received by an observer moving away from the source. In general, then, relative motion of source and observer toward one another increases the received frequency. Relative motion apart decreases frequency. The greater the relative speed is, the greater the effect.

Note:
The Doppler Effect
The Doppler effect occurs not only for sound but for any wave when there is relative motion between the observer and the source. There are Doppler shifts in the frequency of sound, light, and water waves, for example. Doppler shifts can be used to determine velocity, such as when ultrasound is reflected from blood in a medical diagnostic. The recession of galaxies is determined by the shift in the frequencies of light received from them and has implied much about the origins of the universe. Modern physics has been profoundly affected by observations of Doppler shifts.

For a stationary observer and a moving source, the frequency f_{obs} received by the observer can be shown to be

Equation:

$$f_{\text{obs}} = f_{\text{s}}\left(\frac{v_{\text{w}}}{v_{\text{w}} \pm v_{\text{s}}}\right),$$

where f_{s} is the frequency of the source, v_{s} is the speed of the source along a line joining the source and observer, and v_{w} is the speed of sound. The minus sign is used for motion toward the observer and the plus sign for motion away from the observer, producing the appropriate shifts up and down in frequency. Note that the greater the speed of the source, the greater the effect. Similarly, for a stationary source and moving observer, the frequency received by the observer f_{obs} is given by

Equation:

$$f_{\text{obs}} = f_{\text{s}}\left(\frac{v_{\text{w}} \pm v_{\text{obs}}}{v_{\text{w}}}\right),$$

where v_{obs} is the speed of the observer along a line joining the source and observer. Here the plus sign is for motion toward the source, and the minus is for motion away from the source.

Example:

Calculate Doppler Shift: A Train Horn

Suppose a train that has a 150-Hz horn is moving at 35.0 m/s in still air on a day when the speed of sound is 340 m/s.

(a) What frequencies are observed by a stationary person at the side of the tracks as the train approaches and after it passes?

(b) What frequency is observed by the train’s engineer traveling on the train?

Strategy

To find the observed frequency in (a), $f_{\text{obs}} = f_{\text{s}}\left(\frac{v_{\text{w}}}{v_{\text{w}} \pm v_{\text{s}}}\right)$, must be used because the source is moving. The minus sign is used for the approaching

train, and the plus sign for the receding train. In (b), there are two Doppler shifts—one for a moving source and the other for a moving observer.

Solution for (a)

(1) Enter known values into $f_{\text{obs}} = f_{\text{s}}\left(\frac{v_{\text{w}}}{v_{\text{w}} - v_{\text{s}}}\right)$.

Equation:

$$f_{\text{obs}} = f_{\text{s}}\left(\frac{v_{\text{w}}}{v_{\text{w}} - v_{\text{s}}}\right) = (150\text{ Hz})\left(\frac{340\text{ m/s}}{340\text{ m/s} - 35.0\text{ m/s}}\right)$$

(2) Calculate the frequency observed by a stationary person as the train approaches.

Equation:

$$f_{\text{obs}} = (150\text{ Hz})(1.11) = 167\text{ Hz}$$

(3) Use the same equation with the plus sign to find the frequency heard by a stationary person as the train recedes.

Equation:

$$f_{\text{obs}} = f_{\text{s}}\left(\frac{v_{\text{w}}}{v_{\text{w}} + v_{\text{s}}}\right) = (150\text{ Hz})\left(\frac{340\text{ m/s}}{340\text{ m/s} + 35.0\text{ m/s}}\right)$$

(4) Calculate the second frequency.

Equation:

$$f_{\text{obs}} = (150\text{ Hz})(0.907) = 136\text{ Hz}$$

Discussion on (a)

The numbers calculated are valid when the train is far enough away that the motion is nearly along the line joining train and observer. In both cases, the shift is significant and easily noticed. Note that the shift is 17.0 Hz for motion toward and 14.0 Hz for motion away. The shifts are not symmetric.

Solution for (b)

(1) Identify knowns:

- It seems reasonable that the engineer would receive the same frequency as emitted by the horn, because the relative velocity

between them is zero.
- Relative to the medium (air), the speeds are $v_s = v_{obs} = 35.0\ \text{m/s}$.
- The first Doppler shift is for the moving observer; the second is for the moving source.

(2) Use the following equation:
Equation:

$$f_{obs} = \left[f_s\left(\frac{v_w \pm v_{obs}}{v_w}\right)\right]\left(\frac{v_w}{v_w \pm v_s}\right).$$

The quantity in the square brackets is the Doppler-shifted frequency due to a moving observer. The factor on the right is the effect of the moving source.
(3) Because the train engineer is moving in the direction toward the horn, we must use the plus sign for v_{obs}; however, because the horn is also moving in the direction away from the engineer, we also use the plus sign for v_s. But the train is carrying both the engineer and the horn at the same velocity, so $v_s = v_{obs}$. As a result, everything but f_s cancels, yielding
Equation:

$$f_{obs} = f_s.$$

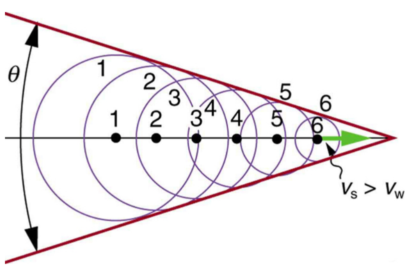
Discussion for (b)
We may expect that there is no change in frequency when source and observer move together because it fits your experience. For example, there is no Doppler shift in the frequency of conversations between driver and passenger on a motorcycle. People talking when a wind moves the air between them also observe no Doppler shift in their conversation. The crucial point is that source and observer are not moving relative to each other.

Sonic Booms to Bow Wakes

What happens to the sound produced by a moving source, such as a jet airplane, that approaches or even exceeds the speed of sound? The answer

to this question applies not only to sound but to all other waves as well.

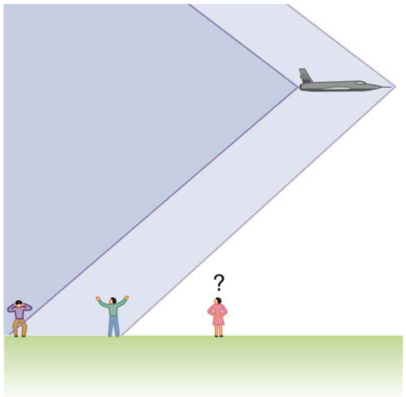
Suppose a jet airplane is coming nearly straight at you, emitting a sound of frequency f_s. The greater the plane's speed v_s, the greater the Doppler shift and the greater the value observed for f_{obs}. Now, as v_s approaches the speed of sound, f_{obs} approaches infinity, because the denominator in $f_{obs} = f_s\left(\frac{v_w}{v_w \pm v_s}\right)$ approaches zero. At the speed of sound, this result means that in front of the source, each successive wave is superimposed on the previous one because the source moves forward at the speed of sound. The observer gets them all at the same instant, and so the frequency is infinite. (Before airplanes exceeded the speed of sound, some people argued it would be impossible because such constructive superposition would produce pressures great enough to destroy the airplane.) If the source exceeds the speed of sound, no sound is received by the observer until the source has passed, so that the sounds from the approaching source are mixed with those from it when receding. This mixing appears messy, but something interesting happens—a sonic boom is created. (See [link].)



Sound waves from a source that moves faster than the speed of sound spread spherically from the point where they are emitted, but the source moves ahead of each.

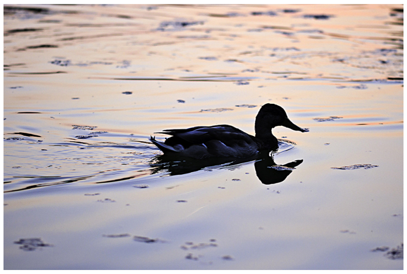
Constructive interference along the lines shown (actually a cone in three dimensions) creates a shock wave called a sonic boom. The faster the speed of the source, the smaller the angle θ.

There is constructive interference along the lines shown (a cone in three dimensions) from similar sound waves arriving there simultaneously. This superposition forms a disturbance called a **sonic boom**, a constructive interference of sound created by an object moving faster than sound. Inside the cone, the interference is mostly destructive, and so the sound intensity there is much less than on the shock wave. An aircraft creates two sonic booms, one from its nose and one from its tail. (See [link].) During television coverage of space shuttle landings, two distinct booms could often be heard. These were separated by exactly the time it would take the shuttle to pass by a point. Observers on the ground often do not see the aircraft creating the sonic boom, because it has passed by before the shock wave reaches them, as seen in [link]. If the aircraft flies close by at low altitude, pressures in the sonic boom can be destructive and break windows as well as rattle nerves. Because of how destructive sonic booms can be, supersonic flights are banned over populated areas of the United States.

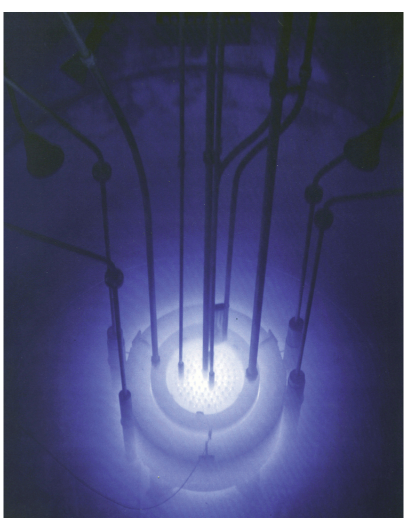


Two sonic booms, created by the nose and tail of an aircraft, are observed on the ground after the plane has passed by.

Sonic booms are one example of a broader phenomenon called bow wakes. A **bow wake**, such as the one in [link], is created when the wave source moves faster than the wave propagation speed. Water waves spread out in circles from the point where created, and the bow wake is the familiar V-shaped wake trailing the source. A more exotic bow wake is created when a subatomic particle travels through a medium faster than the speed of light travels in that medium. (In a vacuum, the maximum speed of light will be $c = 3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{m/s}$; in the medium of water, the speed of light is closer to $0.75c$. If the particle creates light in its passage, that light spreads on a cone with an angle indicative of the speed of the particle, as illustrated in [link]. Such a bow wake is called Cerenkov radiation and is commonly observed in particle physics.



Bow wake created by a duck. Constructive interference produces the rather structured wake, while there is relatively little wave action inside the wake, where interference is mostly destructive. (credit: Horia Varlan, Flickr)



The blue glow in this research reactor pool is Cerenkov radiation caused by subatomic particles traveling faster than the speed of light in water. (credit: U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission)

Doppler shifts and sonic booms are interesting sound phenomena that occur in all types of waves. They can be of considerable use. For example, the Doppler shift in ultrasound can be used to measure blood velocity, while police use the Doppler shift in radar (a microwave) to measure car velocities. In meteorology, the Doppler shift is used to track the motion of storm clouds; such “Doppler Radar” can give velocity and direction and rain or snow potential of imposing weather fronts. In astronomy, we can examine the light emitted from distant galaxies and determine their speed relative to ours. As galaxies move away from us, their light is shifted to a lower frequency, and so to a longer wavelength—the so-called red shift. Such information from galaxies far, far away has allowed us to estimate the age of the universe (from the Big Bang) as about 14 billion years.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Why did scientist Christian Doppler observe musicians both on a moving train and also from a stationary point not on the train?

Solution:

Doppler needed to compare the perception of sound when the observer is stationary and the sound source moves, as well as when the sound

source and the observer are both in motion.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Describe a situation in your life when you might rely on the Doppler shift to help you either while driving a car or walking near traffic.

Solution:

If I am driving and I hear Doppler shift in an ambulance siren, I would be able to tell when it was getting closer and also if it has passed by. This would help me to know whether I needed to pull over and let the ambulance through.

Section Summary

- The Doppler effect is an alteration in the observed frequency of a sound due to motion of either the source or the observer.
- The actual change in frequency is called the Doppler shift.
- A sonic boom is constructive interference of sound created by an object moving faster than sound.
- A sonic boom is a type of bow wake created when any wave source moves faster than the wave propagation speed.
- For a stationary observer and a moving source, the observed frequency f_{obs} is:
  Equation:
  $$f_{\text{obs}} = f_{\text{s}}\left(\frac{v_{\text{w}}}{v_{\text{w}} \pm v_{\text{s}}}\right),$$
  where f_{s} is the frequency of the source, v_{s} is the speed of the source, and v_{w} is the speed of sound. The minus sign is used for motion toward the observer and the plus sign for motion away.
- For a stationary source and moving observer, the observed frequency is:

Equation:

$$f_{\text{obs}} = f_{\text{s}}\left(\frac{v_{\text{w}} \pm v_{\text{obs}}}{v_{\text{w}}}\right),$$

where v_{obs} is the speed of the observer.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem: Is the Doppler shift real or just a sensory illusion?

Exercise:

Problem:

Due to efficiency considerations related to its bow wake, the supersonic transport aircraft must maintain a cruising speed that is a constant ratio to the speed of sound (a constant Mach number). If the aircraft flies from warm air into colder air, should it increase or decrease its speed? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

When you hear a sonic boom, you often cannot see the plane that made it. Why is that?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What frequency is received by a person watching an oncoming ambulance moving at 110 km/h and emitting a steady 800-Hz sound from its siren? The speed of sound on this day is 345 m/s. (b) What frequency does she receive after the ambulance has passed?

Solution:

(a) 878 Hz

(b) 735 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) At an air show a jet flies directly toward the stands at a speed of 1200 km/h, emitting a frequency of 3500 Hz, on a day when the speed of sound is 342 m/s. What frequency is received by the observers? (b) What frequency do they receive as the plane flies directly away from them?

Exercise:

Problem:

What frequency is received by a mouse just before being dispatched by a hawk flying at it at 25.0 m/s and emitting a screech of frequency 3500 Hz? Take the speed of sound to be 331 m/s.

Solution:
Equation:

$$3.79 \times 10^3 \text{ Hz}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

A spectator at a parade receives an 888-Hz tone from an oncoming trumpeter who is playing an 880-Hz note. At what speed is the musician approaching if the speed of sound is 338 m/s?

Exercise:

Problem:

A commuter train blows its 200-Hz horn as it approaches a crossing. The speed of sound is 335 m/s. (a) An observer waiting at the crossing receives a frequency of 208 Hz. What is the speed of the train? (b) What frequency does the observer receive as the train moves away?

Solution:

(a) 12.9 m/s

(b) 193 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

Can you perceive the shift in frequency produced when you pull a tuning fork toward you at 10.0 m/s on a day when the speed of sound is 344 m/s? To answer this question, calculate the factor by which the frequency shifts and see if it is greater than 0.300%.

Exercise:

Problem:

Two eagles fly directly toward one another, the first at 15.0 m/s and the second at 20.0 m/s. Both screech, the first one emitting a frequency of 3200 Hz and the second one emitting a frequency of 3800 Hz. What frequencies do they receive if the speed of sound is 330 m/s?

Solution:

First eagle hears 4.23×10^3 Hz

Second eagle hears 3.56×10^3 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the minimum speed at which a source must travel toward you for you to be able to hear that its frequency is Doppler shifted? That is, what speed produces a shift of 0.300% on a day when the speed of sound is 331 m/s?

Glossary

Doppler effect
: an alteration in the observed frequency of a sound due to motion of either the source or the observer

Doppler shift
: the actual change in frequency due to relative motion of source and observer

sonic boom
: a constructive interference of sound created by an object moving faster than sound

bow wake
: V-shaped disturbance created when the wave source moves faster than the wave propagation speed

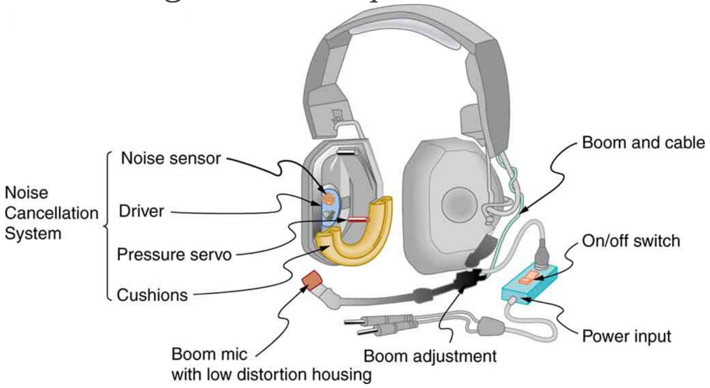
Sound Interference and Resonance: Standing Waves in Air Columns

- Define antinode, node, fundamental, overtones, and harmonics.
- Identify instances of sound interference in everyday situations.
- Describe how sound interference occurring inside open and closed tubes changes the characteristics of the sound, and how this applies to sounds produced by musical instruments.
- Calculate the length of a tube using sound wave measurements.

Some types of headphones use the phenomena of constructive and destructive interference to cancel out outside noises. (credit: JVC America, Flickr)

Interference is the hallmark of waves, all of which exhibit constructive and destructive interference exactly analogous to that seen for water waves. In fact, one way to prove something "is a wave" is to observe interference effects. So, sound being a wave, we expect it to exhibit interference; we have already mentioned a few such effects, such as the beats from two similar notes played simultaneously.

[link] shows a clever use of sound interference to cancel noise. Larger-scale applications of active noise reduction by destructive interference are contemplated for entire passenger compartments in commercial aircraft. To obtain destructive interference, a fast electronic analysis is performed, and a second sound is introduced with its maxima and minima exactly reversed from the incoming noise. Sound waves in fluids are pressure waves and consistent with Pascal's principle; pressures from two different sources add and subtract like simple numbers; that is, positive and negative gauge pressures add to a much smaller pressure, producing a lower-intensity sound. Although completely destructive interference is possible only under the simplest conditions, it is possible to reduce noise levels by 30 dB or more using this technique.



Headphones designed to cancel noise with destructive interference create a sound wave exactly opposite to the incoming sound. These headphones can be more effective than the simple passive attenuation used in most ear protection. Such headphones were

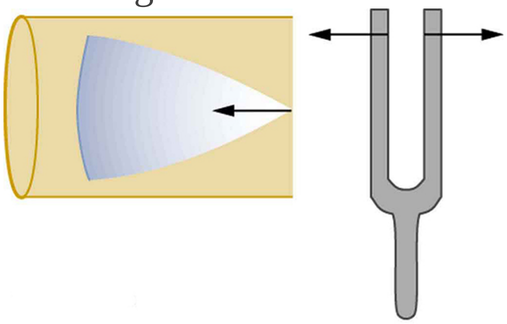
used on the record-setting, around the world nonstop flight of the Voyager aircraft to protect the pilots' hearing from engine noise.

Where else can we observe sound interference? All sound resonances, such as in musical instruments, are due to constructive and destructive interference. Only the resonant frequencies interfere constructively to form standing waves, while others interfere destructively and are absent. From the toot made by blowing over a bottle, to the characteristic flavor of a violin's sounding box, to the recognizability of a great singer's voice, resonance and standing waves play a vital role.

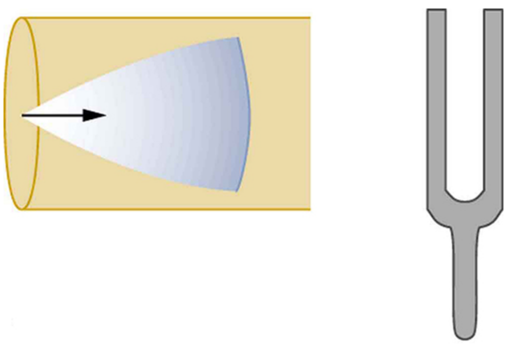
Note:
Interference
Interference is such a fundamental aspect of waves that observing interference is proof that something is a wave. The wave nature of light was established by experiments showing interference. Similarly, when electrons scattered from crystals exhibited interference, their wave nature was confirmed to be exactly as predicted by symmetry with certain wave characteristics of light.

Suppose we hold a tuning fork near the end of a tube that is closed at the other end, as shown in [link], [link], [link], and [link]. If the tuning fork has just the right frequency, the air column in the tube resonates loudly, but at most frequencies it vibrates very little. This observation just means that the air column has only certain natural frequencies. The figures show how a resonance at the lowest of these natural frequencies is formed. A disturbance travels down the tube at the speed of sound and bounces off the closed end. If the tube is just the right length, the reflected sound arrives back at the tuning fork exactly half a cycle later, and it interferes

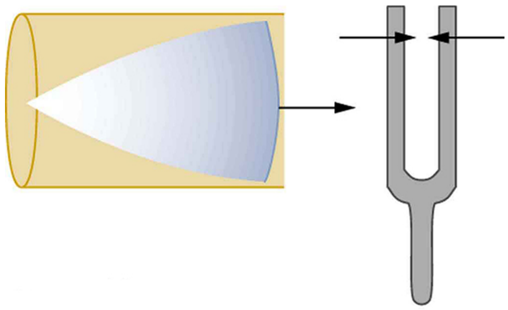
constructively with the continuing sound produced by the tuning fork. The incoming and reflected sounds form a standing wave in the tube as shown.



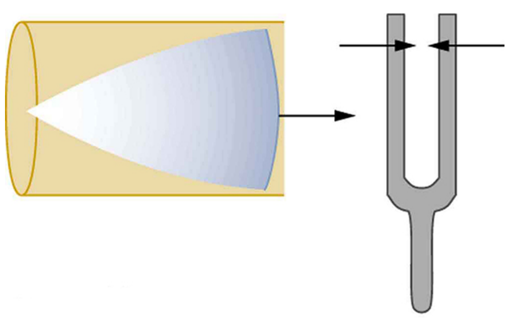
Resonance of air in a tube closed at one end, caused by a tuning fork. A disturbance moves down the tube.



Resonance of air in a tube closed at one end, caused by a tuning fork. The disturbance reflects from the closed end of the tube.



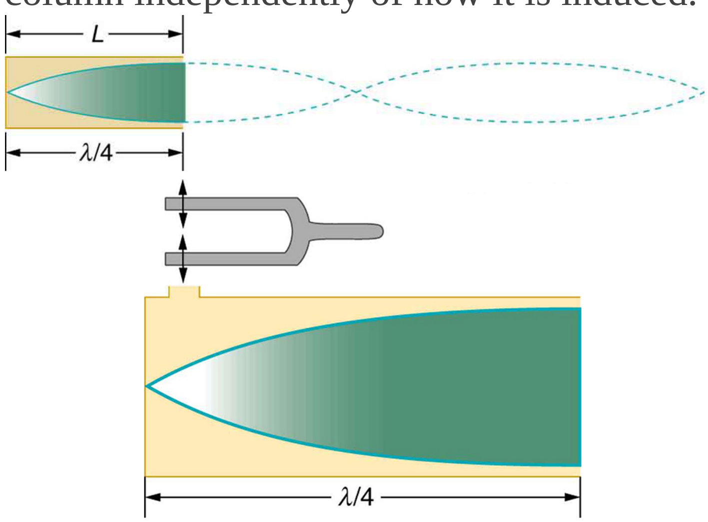
Resonance of air in a tube closed at one end, caused by a tuning fork. If the length of the tube L is just right, the disturbance gets back to the tuning fork half a cycle later and interferes constructively with the continuing sound from the tuning fork. This interference forms a standing wave, and the air column resonates.



Resonance of air in a tube closed at one end, caused by a tuning fork. A graph of air displacement along the length of the tube shows none at the closed

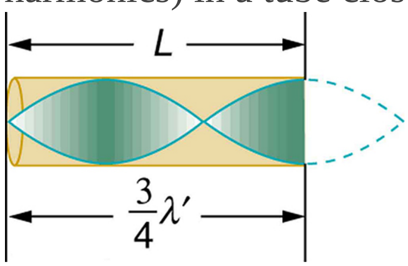
end, where the motion is constrained, and a maximum at the open end. This standing wave has one-fourth of its wavelength in the tube, so that $\lambda = 4L$.

The standing wave formed in the tube has its maximum air displacement (an **antinode**) at the open end, where motion is unconstrained, and no displacement (a **node**) at the closed end, where air movement is halted. The distance from a node to an antinode is one-fourth of a wavelength, and this equals the length of the tube; thus, $\lambda = 4L$. This same resonance can be produced by a vibration introduced at or near the closed end of the tube, as shown in [link]. It is best to consider this a natural vibration of the air column independently of how it is induced.

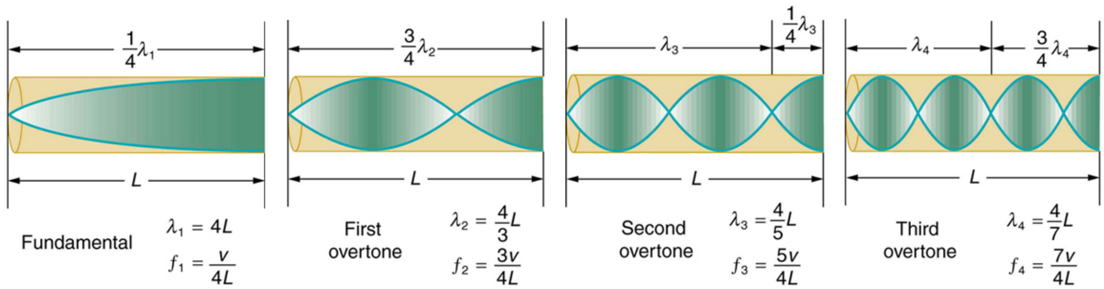


The same standing wave is created in the tube by a vibration introduced near its closed end.

Given that maximum air displacements are possible at the open end and none at the closed end, there are other, shorter wavelengths that can resonate in the tube, such as the one shown in [link]. Here the standing wave has three-fourths of its wavelength in the tube, or $L = (3/4)\lambda\prime$, so that $\lambda\prime = 4L/3$. Continuing this process reveals a whole series of shorter-wavelength and higher-frequency sounds that resonate in the tube. We use specific terms for the resonances in any system. The lowest resonant frequency is called the **fundamental**, while all higher resonant frequencies are called **overtones**. All resonant frequencies are integral multiples of the fundamental, and they are collectively called **harmonics**. The fundamental is the first harmonic, the first overtone is the second harmonic, and so on. [link] shows the fundamental and the first three overtones (the first four harmonics) in a tube closed at one end.

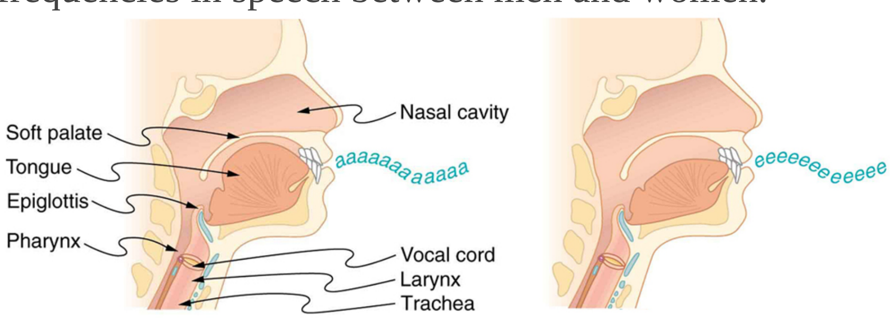


Another resonance for a tube closed at one end. This has maximum air displacements at the open end, and none at the closed end. The wavelength is shorter, with three-fourths $\lambda\prime$ equaling the length of the tube, so that $\lambda\prime = 4L/3$. This higher-frequency vibration is the first overtone.



The fundamental and three lowest overtones for a tube closed at one end. All have maximum air displacements at the open end and none at the closed end.

The fundamental and overtones can be present simultaneously in a variety of combinations. For example, middle C on a trumpet has a sound distinctively different from middle C on a clarinet, both instruments being modified versions of a tube closed at one end. The fundamental frequency is the same (and usually the most intense), but the overtones and their mix of intensities are different and subject to shading by the musician. This mix is what gives various musical instruments (and human voices) their distinctive characteristics, whether they have air columns, strings, sounding boxes, or drumheads. In fact, much of our speech is determined by shaping the cavity formed by the throat and mouth and positioning the tongue to adjust the fundamental and combination of overtones. Simple resonant cavities can be made to resonate with the sound of the vowels, for example. (See [link].) In boys, at puberty, the larynx grows and the shape of the resonant cavity changes giving rise to the difference in predominant frequencies in speech between men and women.



The throat and mouth form an air column closed at one end that resonates in response to vibrations in the voice box. The spectrum of overtones and their intensities vary with mouth shaping and tongue position to form different sounds. The voice box can be replaced with a mechanical vibrator, and understandable speech is still possible. Variations in basic shapes make different voices recognizable.

Now let us look for a pattern in the resonant frequencies for a simple tube that is closed at one end. The fundamental has $\lambda = 4L$, and frequency is related to wavelength and the speed of sound as given by:

Equation:

$$v_{\mathrm{w}} = f\lambda.$$

Solving for f in this equation gives

Equation:

$$f = \frac{v_{\mathrm{w}}}{\lambda} = \frac{v_{\mathrm{w}}}{4L},$$

where v_{w} is the speed of sound in air. Similarly, the first overtone has $\lambda\prime = 4L/3$ (see [link]), so that

Equation:

$$f\prime = 3\frac{v_{\mathrm{w}}}{4L} = 3f.$$

Because $f\prime = 3f$, we call the first overtone the third harmonic. Continuing this process, we see a pattern that can be generalized in a single expression. The resonant frequencies of a tube closed at one end are

Equation:

$$f_n = n\frac{v_w}{4L}, n = 1,3,5,$$

where f_1 is the fundamental, f_3 is the first overtone, and so on. It is interesting that the resonant frequencies depend on the speed of sound and, hence, on temperature. This dependence poses a noticeable problem for organs in old unheated cathedrals, and it is also the reason why musicians commonly bring their wind instruments to room temperature before playing them.

Example:
Find the Length of a Tube with a 128 Hz Fundamental
(a) What length should a tube closed at one end have on a day when the air temperature, is $22.0^{\circ}C$, if its fundamental frequency is to be 128 Hz (C below middle C)?
(b) What is the frequency of its fourth overtone?
Strategy
The length L can be found from the relationship in $f_n = n\frac{v_w}{4L}$, but we will first need to find the speed of sound v_w.
Solution for (a)
(1) Identify knowns:

- the fundamental frequency is 128 Hz
- the air temperature is $22.0^{\circ}C$

(2) Use $f_n = n\frac{v_w}{4L}$ to find the fundamental frequency ($n = 1$).
Equation:

$$f_1 = \frac{v_w}{4L}$$

(3) Solve this equation for length.
Equation:

$$L = \frac{v_w}{4f_1}$$

(4) Find the speed of sound using $v_{\mathrm{w}} = (331\ \mathrm{m/s})\sqrt{\frac{T}{273\ \mathrm{K}}}$.
Equation:

$$v_{\mathrm{w}} = (331\ \mathrm{m/s})\sqrt{\frac{295\ \mathrm{K}}{273\ \mathrm{K}}} = 344\ \mathrm{m/s}$$

(5) Enter the values of the speed of sound and frequency into the expression for L.
Equation:

$$L = \frac{v_{\mathrm{w}}}{4f_1} = \frac{344\ \mathrm{m/s}}{4(128\ \mathrm{Hz})} = 0.672\ \mathrm{m}$$

Discussion on (a)
Many wind instruments are modified tubes that have finger holes, valves, and other devices for changing the length of the resonating air column and hence, the frequency of the note played. Horns producing very low frequencies, such as tubas, require tubes so long that they are coiled into loops.
Solution for (b)
(1) Identify knowns:

- the first overtone has $n = 3$
- the second overtone has $n = 5$
- the third overtone has $n = 7$
- the fourth overtone has $n = 9$

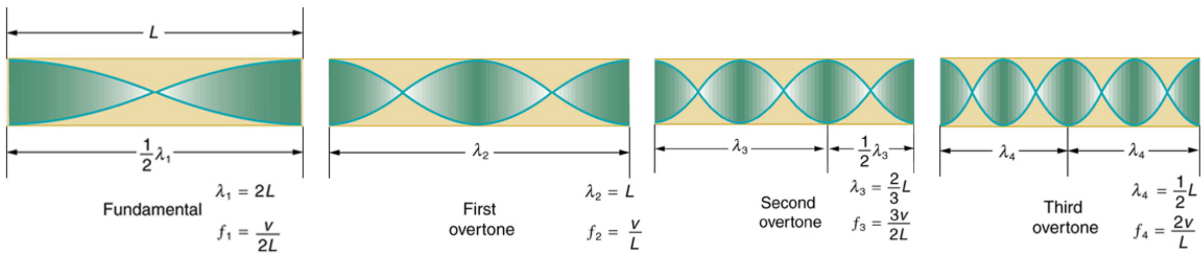
(2) Enter the value for the fourth overtone into $f_n = n\frac{v_{\mathrm{w}}}{4L}$.
Equation:

$$f_9 = 9\frac{v_{\mathrm{w}}}{4L} = 9f_1 = 1.15\ \mathrm{kHz}$$

Discussion on (b)
Whether this overtone occurs in a simple tube or a musical instrument depends on how it is stimulated to vibrate and the details of its shape. The

trombone, for example, does not produce its fundamental frequency and only makes overtones.

Another type of tube is one that is *open* at both ends. Examples are some organ pipes, flutes, and oboes. The resonances of tubes open at both ends can be analyzed in a very similar fashion to those for tubes closed at one end. The air columns in tubes open at both ends have maximum air displacements at both ends, as illustrated in [link]. Standing waves form as shown.



The resonant frequencies of a tube open at both ends are shown, including the fundamental and the first three overtones. In all cases the maximum air displacements occur at both ends of the tube, giving it different natural frequencies than a tube closed at one end.

Based on the fact that a tube open at both ends has maximum air displacements at both ends, and using [link] as a guide, we can see that the resonant frequencies of a tube open at both ends are:

Equation:

$$f_n = n\frac{v_{\text{w}}}{2L},\ n = 1, 2, 3...,$$

where f_1 is the fundamental, f_2 is the first overtone, f_3 is the second overtone, and so on. Note that a tube open at both ends has a fundamental frequency twice what it would have if closed at one end. It also has a different spectrum of overtones than a tube closed at one end. So if you had

two tubes with the same fundamental frequency but one was open at both ends and the other was closed at one end, they would sound different when played because they have different overtones. Middle C, for example, would sound richer played on an open tube, because it has even multiples of the fundamental as well as odd. A closed tube has only odd multiples.

Note:
Real-World Applications: Resonance in Everyday Systems
Resonance occurs in many different systems, including strings, air columns, and atoms. Resonance is the driven or forced oscillation of a system at its natural frequency. At resonance, energy is transferred rapidly to the oscillating system, and the amplitude of its oscillations grows until the system can no longer be described by Hooke's law. An example of this is the distorted sound intentionally produced in certain types of rock music.

Wind instruments use resonance in air columns to amplify tones made by lips or vibrating reeds. Other instruments also use air resonance in clever ways to amplify sound. [link] shows a violin and a guitar, both of which have sounding boxes but with different shapes, resulting in different overtone structures. The vibrating string creates a sound that resonates in the sounding box, greatly amplifying the sound and creating overtones that give the instrument its characteristic flavor. The more complex the shape of the sounding box, the greater its ability to resonate over a wide range of frequencies. The marimba, like the one shown in [link] uses pots or gourds below the wooden slats to amplify their tones. The resonance of the pot can be adjusted by adding water.

String instruments such as violins and guitars use resonance in their sounding boxes to amplify and enrich the sound created by their vibrating strings. The bridge and supports couple the string vibrations to the sounding boxes and air within. (credits: guitar, Feliciano Guimares, Fotopedia; violin, Steve Snodgrass, Flickr)

Resonance has been used in musical instruments since prehistoric times. This marimba uses gourds as resonance chambers to amplify its sound. (credit: APC Events, Flickr)

We have emphasized sound applications in our discussions of resonance and standing waves, but these ideas apply to any system that has wave characteristics. Vibrating strings, for example, are actually resonating and have fundamentals and overtones similar to those for air columns. More subtle are the resonances in atoms due to the wave character of their electrons. Their orbitals can be viewed as standing waves, which have a fundamental (ground state) and overtones (excited states). It is fascinating that wave characteristics apply to such a wide range of physical systems.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Describe how noise-canceling headphones differ from standard headphones used to block outside sounds.

Solution:

Regular headphones only block sound waves with a physical barrier. Noise-canceling headphones use destructive interference to reduce the loudness of outside sounds.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

How is it possible to use a standing wave's node and antinode to determine the length of a closed-end tube?

Solution:

When the tube resonates at its natural frequency, the wave's node is located at the closed end of the tube, and the antinode is located at the open end. The length of the tube is equal to one-fourth of the wavelength of this wave. Thus, if we know the wavelength of the wave, we can determine the length of the tube.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Sound
This simulation lets you see sound waves. Adjust the frequency or volume and you can see and hear how the wave changes. Move the listener around and hear what she hears.
https://archive.cnx.org/specials/c4d3b96e-41f3-11e5-ab7b-47e22dffc18e/sound/#sim-single-source

Section Summary

- Sound interference and resonance have the same properties as defined for all waves.
- In air columns, the lowest-frequency resonance is called the fundamental, whereas all higher resonant frequencies are called overtones. Collectively, they are called harmonics.

- The resonant frequencies of a tube closed at one end are:
  Equation:

  $$f_n = n\frac{v_\mathrm{w}}{4L}, n = 1, 3, 5...,$$

  f_1 is the fundamental and L is the length of the tube.
- The resonant frequencies of a tube open at both ends are:
  Equation:

  $$f_n = n\frac{v_\mathrm{w}}{2L}, n = 1, 2, 3...$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How does an unamplified guitar produce sounds so much more intense than those of a plucked string held taut by a simple stick?

Exercise:

Problem:

You are given two wind instruments of identical length. One is open at both ends, whereas the other is closed at one end. Which is able to produce the lowest frequency?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the difference between an overtone and a harmonic? Are all harmonics overtones? Are all overtones harmonics?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A “showy” custom-built car has two brass horns that are supposed to produce the same frequency but actually emit 263.8 and 264.5 Hz. What beat frequency is produced?

Solution:

0.7 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

What beat frequencies will be present: (a) If the musical notes A and C are played together (frequencies of 220 and 264 Hz)? (b) If D and F are played together (frequencies of 297 and 352 Hz)? (c) If all four are played together?

Exercise:

Problem:

What beat frequencies result if a piano hammer hits three strings that emit frequencies of 127.8, 128.1, and 128.3 Hz?

Solution:

0.3 Hz, 0.2 Hz, 0.5 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

A piano tuner hears a beat every 2.00 s when listening to a 264.0-Hz tuning fork and a single piano string. What are the two possible frequencies of the string?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the fundamental frequency of a 0.672-m-long tube, open at both ends, on a day when the speed of sound is 344 m/s? (b) What is the frequency of its second harmonic?

Solution:

(a) 256 Hz

(b) 512 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

If a wind instrument, such as a tuba, has a fundamental frequency of 32.0 Hz, what are its first three overtones? It is closed at one end. (The overtones of a real tuba are more complex than this example, because it is a tapered tube.)

Exercise:

Problem:

What are the first three overtones of a bassoon that has a fundamental frequency of 90.0 Hz? It is open at both ends. (The overtones of a real bassoon are more complex than this example, because its double reed makes it act more like a tube closed at one end.)

Solution:

180 Hz, 270 Hz, 360 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

How long must a flute be in order to have a fundamental frequency of 262 Hz (this frequency corresponds to middle C on the evenly tempered chromatic scale) on a day when air temperature is 20.0°C? It is open at both ends.

Exercise:

Problem:

What length should an oboe have to produce a fundamental frequency of 110 Hz on a day when the speed of sound is 343 m/s? It is open at both ends.

Solution:

1.56 m

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the length of a tube that has a fundamental frequency of 176 Hz and a first overtone of 352 Hz if the speed of sound is 343 m/s?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the length of an organ pipe closed at one end that produces a fundamental frequency of 256 Hz when air temperature is 18.0°C. (b) What is its fundamental frequency at 25.0°C?

Solution:

(a) 0.334 m

(b) 259 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

By what fraction will the frequencies produced by a wind instrument change when air temperature goes from 10.0°C to 30.0°C? That is, find the ratio of the frequencies at those temperatures.

Exercise:

Problem:

The ear canal resonates like a tube closed at one end. (See [link].) If ear canals range in length from 1.80 to 2.60 cm in an average population, what is the range of fundamental resonant frequencies? Take air temperature to be 37.0°C, which is the same as body temperature. How does this result correlate with the intensity versus frequency graph ([link] of the human ear?

Solution:

3.39 to 4.90 kHz

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the first overtone in an ear canal, which resonates like a 2.40-cm-long tube closed at one end, by taking air temperature to be 37.0°C. Is the ear particularly sensitive to such a frequency? (The resonances of the ear canal are complicated by its nonuniform shape, which we shall ignore.)

Exercise:

Problem:

A crude approximation of voice production is to consider the breathing passages and mouth to be a resonating tube closed at one end. (See [link].) (a) What is the fundamental frequency if the tube is 0.240-m long, by taking air temperature to be 37.0°C? (b) What would this frequency become if the person replaced the air with helium? Assume the same temperature dependence for helium as for air.

Solution:

(a) 367 Hz

(b) 1.07 kHz

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Students in a physics lab are asked to find the length of an air column in a tube closed at one end that has a fundamental frequency of 256 Hz. They hold the tube vertically and fill it with water to the top, then lower the water while a 256-Hz tuning fork is rung and listen for the first resonance. What is the air temperature if the resonance occurs for a length of 0.336 m? (b) At what length will they observe the second resonance (first overtone)?

Exercise:

Problem:

What frequencies will a 1.80-m-long tube produce in the audible range at $20.0^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ if: (a) The tube is closed at one end? (b) It is open at both ends?

Solution:

(a) $f_n = n(47.6\text{ Hz}),\ n = 1, 3, 5,..., 419$

(b) $f_n = n(95.3\text{ Hz}),\ n = 1, 2, 3,..., 210$

Glossary

antinode
: point of maximum displacement

node

point of zero displacement

fundamental
the lowest-frequency resonance

overtones
all resonant frequencies higher than the fundamental

harmonics
the term used to refer collectively to the fundamental and its overtones

Hearing

- Define hearing, pitch, loudness, timbre, note, tone, phon, ultrasound, and infrasound.
- Compare loudness to frequency and intensity of a sound.
- Identify structures of the inner ear and explain how they relate to sound perception.

Hearing allows this vocalist, his band, and his fans to enjoy music. (credit: West Point Public Affairs, Flickr)

The human ear has a tremendous range and sensitivity. It can give us a wealth of simple information—such as pitch, loudness, and direction. And from its input we can detect musical quality and nuances of voiced emotion. How is our hearing related to the physical qualities of sound, and how does the hearing mechanism work?

Hearing is the perception of sound. (Perception is commonly defined to be awareness through the senses, a typically circular definition of higher-level processes in living organisms.) Normal human hearing encompasses frequencies from 20 to 20,000 Hz, an impressive range. Sounds below 20 Hz are called **infrasound**, whereas those above 20,000 Hz are **ultrasound**. Neither is perceived by the ear, although infrasound can sometimes be felt as vibrations. When we do hear low-frequency vibrations, such as the

sounds of a diving board, we hear the individual vibrations only because there are higher-frequency sounds in each. Other animals have hearing ranges different from that of humans. Dogs can hear sounds as high as 30,000 Hz, whereas bats and dolphins can hear up to 100,000-Hz sounds. You may have noticed that dogs respond to the sound of a dog whistle which produces sound out of the range of human hearing. Elephants are known to respond to frequencies below 20 Hz.

The perception of frequency is called **pitch**. Most of us have excellent relative pitch, which means that we can tell whether one sound has a different frequency from another. Typically, we can discriminate between two sounds if their frequencies differ by 0.3% or more. For example, 500.0 and 501.5 Hz are noticeably different. Pitch perception is directly related to frequency and is not greatly affected by other physical quantities such as intensity. Musical **notes** are particular sounds that can be produced by most instruments and in Western music have particular names. Combinations of notes constitute music. Some people can identify musical notes, such as A-sharp, C, or E-flat, just by listening to them. This uncommon ability is called perfect pitch.

The ear is remarkably sensitive to low-intensity sounds. The lowest audible intensity or threshold is about $10^{-12}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$ or 0 dB. Sounds as much as 10^{12} more intense can be briefly tolerated. Very few measuring devices are capable of observations over a range of a trillion. The perception of intensity is called **loudness**. At a given frequency, it is possible to discern differences of about 1 dB, and a change of 3 dB is easily noticed. But loudness is not related to intensity alone. Frequency has a major effect on how loud a sound seems. The ear has its maximum sensitivity to frequencies in the range of 2000 to 5000 Hz, so that sounds in this range are perceived as being louder than, say, those at 500 or 10,000 Hz, even when they all have the same intensity. Sounds near the high- and low-frequency extremes of the hearing range seem even less loud, because the ear is even less sensitive at those frequencies. [link] gives the dependence of certain human hearing perceptions on physical quantities.

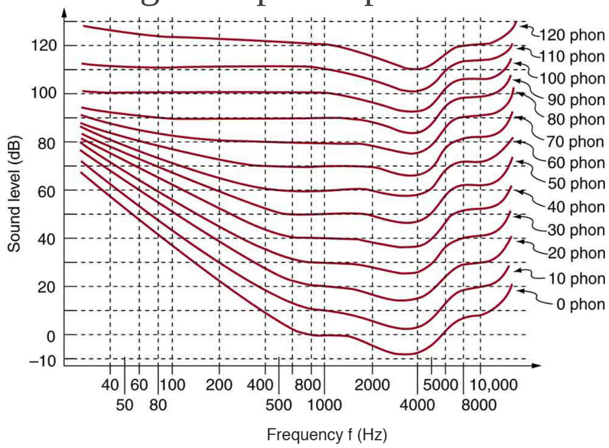
Perception	Physical quantity
Pitch	Frequency
Loudness	Intensity and Frequency
Timbre	Number and relative intensity of multiple frequencies. Subtle craftsmanship leads to non-linear effects and more detail.
Note	Basic unit of music with specific names, combined to generate tunes
Tone	Number and relative intensity of multiple frequencies.

Sound Perceptions

When a violin plays middle C, there is no mistaking it for a piano playing the same note. The reason is that each instrument produces a distinctive set of frequencies and intensities. We call our perception of these combinations of frequencies and intensities **tone** quality, or more commonly the **timbre** of the sound. It is more difficult to correlate timbre perception to physical quantities than it is for loudness or pitch perception. Timbre is more subjective. Terms such as dull, brilliant, warm, cold, pure, and rich are employed to describe the timbre of a sound. So the consideration of timbre takes us into the realm of perceptual psychology, where higher-level processes in the brain are dominant. This is true for other perceptions of sound, such as music and noise. We shall not delve further into them; rather, we will concentrate on the question of loudness perception.

A unit called a **phon** is used to express loudness numerically. Phons differ from decibels because the phon is a unit of loudness perception, whereas the decibel is a unit of physical intensity. [link] shows the relationship of loudness to intensity (or intensity level) and frequency for persons with normal hearing. The curved lines are equal-loudness curves. Each curve is

labeled with its loudness in phons. Any sound along a given curve will be perceived as equally loud by the average person. The curves were determined by having large numbers of people compare the loudness of sounds at different frequencies and sound intensity levels. At a frequency of 1000 Hz, phons are taken to be numerically equal to decibels. The following example helps illustrate how to use the graph:



The relationship of loudness in phons to intensity level (in decibels) and intensity (in watts per meter squared) for persons with normal hearing. The curved lines are equal-loudness curves—all sounds on a given curve are perceived as equally loud. Phons and decibels are defined to be the same at 1000 Hz.

Example:
Measuring Loudness: Loudness Versus Intensity Level and Frequency
(a) What is the loudness in phons of a 100-Hz sound that has an intensity level of 80 dB? (b) What is the intensity level in decibels of a 4000-Hz

sound having a loudness of 70 phons? (c) At what intensity level will an 8000-Hz sound have the same loudness as a 200-Hz sound at 60 dB?

Strategy for (a)

The graph in [link] should be referenced in order to solve this example. To find the loudness of a given sound, you must know its frequency and intensity level and locate that point on the square grid, then interpolate between loudness curves to get the loudness in phons.

Solution for (a)

(1) Identify knowns:

- The square grid of the graph relating phons and decibels is a plot of intensity level versus frequency—both physical quantities.
- 100 Hz at 80 dB lies halfway between the curves marked 70 and 80 phons.

(2) Find the loudness: 75 phons.

Strategy for (b)

The graph in [link] should be referenced in order to solve this example. To find the intensity level of a sound, you must have its frequency and loudness. Once that point is located, the intensity level can be determined from the vertical axis.

Solution for (b)

(1) Identify knowns:

- Values are given to be 4000 Hz at 70 phons.

(2) Follow the 70-phon curve until it reaches 4000 Hz. At that point, it is below the 70 dB line at about 67 dB.

(3) Find the intensity level:

67 dB

Strategy for (c)

The graph in [link] should be referenced in order to solve this example.

Solution for (c)

(1) Locate the point for a 200 Hz and 60 dB sound.

(2) Find the loudness: This point lies just slightly above the 50-phon curve, and so its loudness is 51 phons.

(3) Look for the 51-phon level is at 8000 Hz: 63 dB.

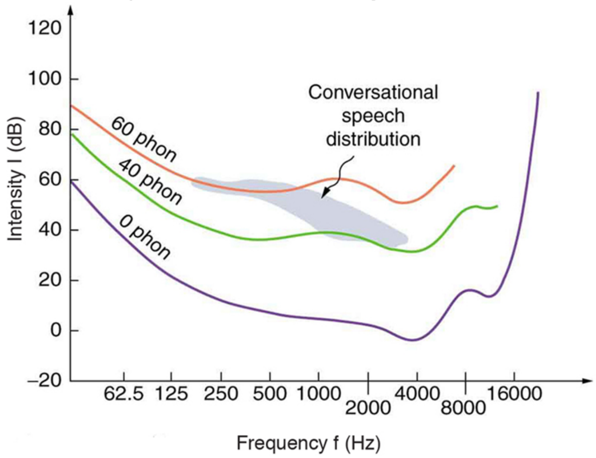
Discussion

These answers, like all information extracted from [link], have uncertainties of several phons or several decibels, partly due to difficulties in interpolation, but mostly related to uncertainties in the equal-loudness curves.

Further examination of the graph in [link] reveals some interesting facts about human hearing. First, sounds below the 0-phon curve are not perceived by most people. So, for example, a 60 Hz sound at 40 dB is inaudible. The 0-phon curve represents the threshold of normal hearing. We can hear some sounds at intensity levels below 0 dB. For example, a 3-dB, 5000-Hz sound is audible, because it lies above the 0-phon curve. The loudness curves all have dips in them between about 2000 and 5000 Hz. These dips mean the ear is most sensitive to frequencies in that range. For example, a 15-dB sound at 4000 Hz has a loudness of 20 phons, the same as a 20-dB sound at 1000 Hz. The curves rise at both extremes of the frequency range, indicating that a greater-intensity level sound is needed at those frequencies to be perceived to be as loud as at middle frequencies. For example, a sound at 10,000 Hz must have an intensity level of 30 dB to seem as loud as a 20 dB sound at 1000 Hz. Sounds above 120 phons are painful as well as damaging.

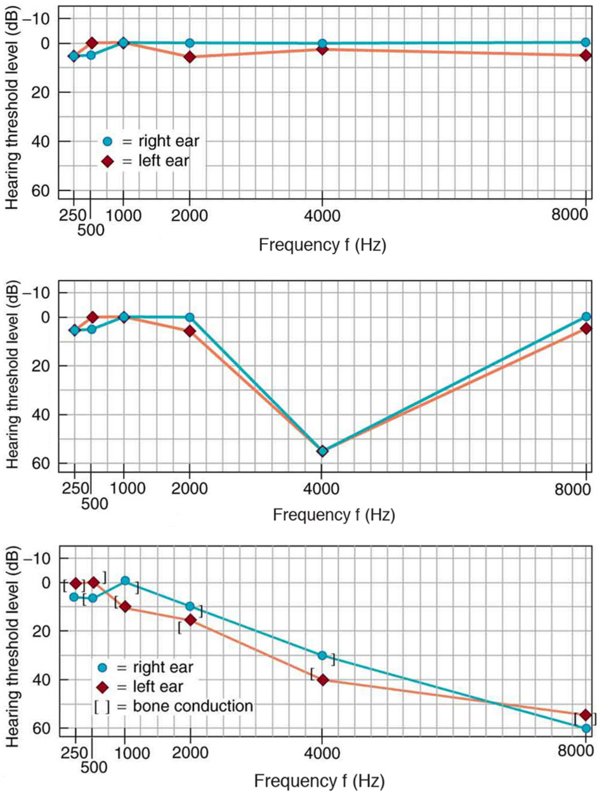
We do not often utilize our full range of hearing. This is particularly true for frequencies above 8000 Hz, which are rare in the environment and are unnecessary for understanding conversation or appreciating music. In fact, people who have lost the ability to hear such high frequencies are usually unaware of their loss until tested. The shaded region in [link] is the frequency and intensity region where most conversational sounds fall. The curved lines indicate what effect hearing losses of 40 and 60 phons will have. A 40-phon hearing loss at all frequencies still allows a person to understand conversation, although it will seem very quiet. A person with a 60-phon loss at all frequencies will hear only the lowest frequencies and will not be able to understand speech unless it is much louder than normal. Even so, speech may seem indistinct, because higher frequencies are not as well perceived. The conversational speech region also has a gender component, in that female voices are usually characterized by higher

frequencies. So the person with a 60-phon hearing impediment might have difficulty understanding the normal conversation of a woman.



The shaded region represents frequencies and intensity levels found in normal conversational speech. The 0-phon line represents the normal hearing threshold, while those at 40 and 60 represent thresholds for people with 40- and 60-phon hearing losses, respectively.

Hearing tests are performed over a range of frequencies, usually from 250 to 8000 Hz, and can be displayed graphically in an audiogram like that in [link]. The hearing threshold is measured in dB *relative to the normal threshold*, so that normal hearing registers as 0 dB at all frequencies. Hearing loss caused by noise typically shows a dip near the 4000 Hz frequency, irrespective of the frequency that caused the loss and often affects both ears. The most common form of hearing loss comes with age and is called *presbycusis*—literally elder ear. Such loss is increasingly severe at higher frequencies, and interferes with music appreciation and speech recognition.

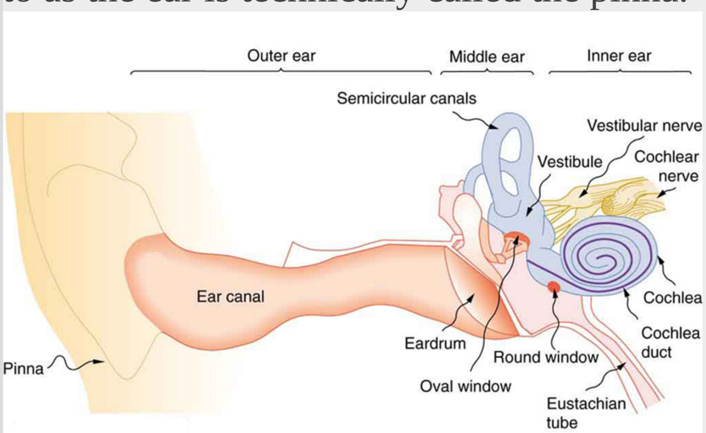


Audiograms showing the threshold in intensity level versus frequency for three different individuals. Intensity level is measured relative to the normal threshold. The top left graph is that of a person with normal hearing. The graph to its right has a dip at 4000 Hz and is that of a child who suffered hearing loss due to a cap gun. The third graph is typical of presbycusis, the progressive loss of higher frequency hearing with age. Tests performed by bone conduction (brackets) can distinguish nerve damage from middle ear damage.

Note:

The Hearing Mechanism

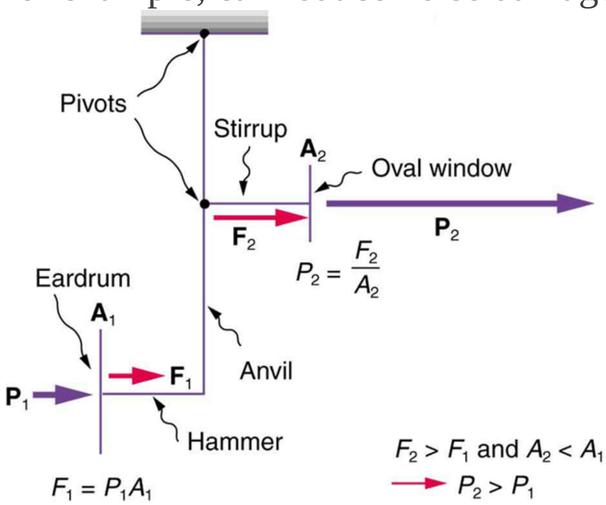
The hearing mechanism involves some interesting physics. The sound wave that impinges upon our ear is a pressure wave. The ear is a transducer that converts sound waves into electrical nerve impulses in a manner much more sophisticated than, but analogous to, a microphone. [link] shows the gross anatomy of the ear with its division into three parts: the outer ear or ear canal; the middle ear, which runs from the eardrum to the cochlea; and the inner ear, which is the cochlea itself. The body part normally referred to as the ear is technically called the pinna.



The illustration shows the gross anatomy of the human ear.

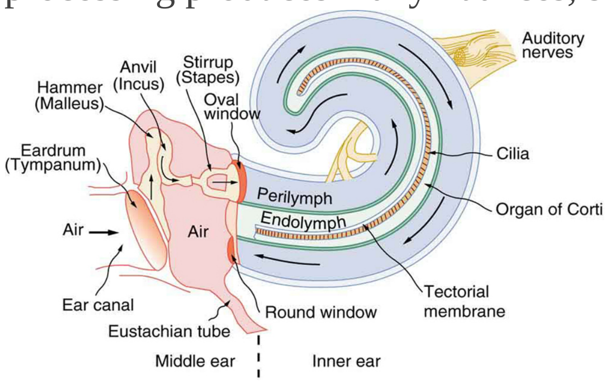
The outer ear, or ear canal, carries sound to the recessed protected eardrum. The air column in the ear canal resonates and is partially responsible for the sensitivity of the ear to sounds in the 2000 to 5000 Hz range. The middle ear converts sound into mechanical vibrations and applies these vibrations to the cochlea. The lever system of the middle ear takes the force exerted on the eardrum by sound pressure variations, amplifies it and transmits it to the

inner ear via the oval window, creating pressure waves in the cochlea approximately 40 times greater than those impinging on the eardrum. (See [link].) Two muscles in the middle ear (not shown) protect the inner ear from very intense sounds. They react to intense sound in a few milliseconds and reduce the force transmitted to the cochlea. This protective reaction can also be triggered by your own voice, so that humming while shooting a gun, for example, can reduce noise damage.



This schematic shows the middle ear's system for converting sound pressure into force, increasing that force through a lever system, and applying the increased force to a small area of the cochlea, thereby creating a pressure about 40 times that in the original sound wave. A protective muscle reaction to intense sounds greatly reduces the mechanical advantage of the lever system.

[link] shows the middle and inner ear in greater detail. Pressure waves moving through the cochlea cause the tectorial membrane to vibrate, rubbing cilia (called hair cells), which stimulate nerves that send electrical signals to the brain. The membrane resonates at different positions for different frequencies, with high frequencies stimulating nerves at the near end and low frequencies at the far end. The complete operation of the cochlea is still not understood, but several mechanisms for sending information to the brain are known to be involved. For sounds below about 1000 Hz, the nerves send signals at the same frequency as the sound. For frequencies greater than about 1000 Hz, the nerves signal frequency by position. There is a structure to the cilia, and there are connections between nerve cells that perform signal processing before information is sent to the brain. Intensity information is partly indicated by the number of nerve signals and by volleys of signals. The brain processes the cochlear nerve signals to provide additional information such as source direction (based on time and intensity comparisons of sounds from both ears). Higher-level processing produces many nuances, such as music appreciation.



The inner ear, or cochlea, is a coiled tube about 3 mm in diameter and 3 cm in length if uncoiled. When the oval window is forced inward, as shown, a pressure wave travels through the perilymph in the direction of the arrows, stimulating nerves at the base of cilia in the organ of Corti.

Hearing losses can occur because of problems in the middle or inner ear. Conductive losses in the middle ear can be partially overcome by sending sound vibrations to the cochlea through the skull. Hearing aids for this purpose usually press against the bone behind the ear, rather than simply amplifying the sound sent into the ear canal as many hearing aids do. Damage to the nerves in the cochlea is not repairable, but amplification can partially compensate. There is a risk that amplification will produce further damage. Another common failure in the cochlea is damage or loss of the cilia but with nerves remaining functional. Cochlear implants that stimulate the nerves directly are now available and widely accepted. Over 100,000 implants are in use, in about equal numbers of adults and children.

The cochlear implant was pioneered in Melbourne, Australia, by Graeme Clark in the 1970s for his deaf father. The implant consists of three external components and two internal components. The external components are a microphone for picking up sound and converting it into an electrical signal, a speech processor to select certain frequencies and a transmitter to transfer the signal to the internal components through electromagnetic induction. The internal components consist of a receiver/transmitter secured in the bone beneath the skin, which converts the signals into electric impulses and sends them through an internal cable to the cochlea and an array of about 24 electrodes wound through the cochlea. These electrodes in turn send the impulses directly into the brain. The electrodes basically emulate the cilia.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Are ultrasound and infrasound imperceptible to all hearing organisms? Explain your answer.

Solution:

No, the range of perceptible sound is based in the range of human hearing. Many other organisms perceive either infrasound or ultrasound.

Section Summary

- The range of audible frequencies is 20 to 20,000 Hz.
- Those sounds above 20,000 Hz are ultrasound, whereas those below 20 Hz are infrasound.
- The perception of frequency is pitch.
- The perception of intensity is loudness.
- Loudness has units of phons.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why can a hearing test show that your threshold of hearing is 0 dB at 250 Hz, when [link] implies that no one can hear such a frequency at less than 20 dB?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The factor of 10^{-12} in the range of intensities to which the ear can respond, from threshold to that causing damage after brief exposure, is truly remarkable. If you could measure distances over the same range with a single instrument and the smallest distance you could measure was 1 mm, what would the largest be?

Solution:
Equation:

$$1 \times 10^{6}\ \text{km}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

The frequencies to which the ear responds vary by a factor of 10^3. Suppose the speedometer on your car measured speeds differing by the same factor of 10^3, and the greatest speed it reads is 90.0 mi/h. What would be the slowest nonzero speed it could read?

Exercise:

Problem:

What are the closest frequencies to 500 Hz that an average person can clearly distinguish as being different in frequency from 500 Hz? The sounds are not present simultaneously.

Solution:

498.5 or 501.5 Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

Can the average person tell that a 2002-Hz sound has a different frequency than a 1999-Hz sound without playing them simultaneously?

Exercise:

Problem:

If your radio is producing an average sound intensity level of 85 dB, what is the next lowest sound intensity level that is clearly less intense?

Solution:

82 dB

Exercise:

Problem:

Can you tell that your roommate turned up the sound on the TV if its average sound intensity level goes from 70 to 73 dB?

Exercise:

Problem:

Based on the graph in [link], what is the threshold of hearing in decibels for frequencies of 60, 400, 1000, 4000, and 15,000 Hz? Note that many AC electrical appliances produce 60 Hz, music is commonly 400 Hz, a reference frequency is 1000 Hz, your maximum sensitivity is near 4000 Hz, and many older TVs produce a 15,750 Hz whine.

Solution:

approximately 48, 9, 0, –7, and 20 dB, respectively

Exercise:

Problem:

What sound intensity levels must sounds of frequencies 60, 3000, and 8000 Hz have in order to have the same loudness as a 40-dB sound of frequency 1000 Hz (that is, to have a loudness of 40 phons)?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the approximate sound intensity level in decibels of a 600-Hz tone if it has a loudness of 20 phons? If it has a loudness of 70 phons?

Solution:

(a) 23 dB

(b) 70 dB

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What are the loudnesses in phons of sounds having frequencies of 200, 1000, 5000, and 10,000 Hz, if they are all at the same 60.0-dB sound intensity level? (b) If they are all at 110 dB? (c) If they are all at 20.0 dB?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a person has a 50-dB hearing loss at all frequencies. By how many factors of 10 will low-intensity sounds need to be amplified to seem normal to this person? Note that smaller amplification is appropriate for more intense sounds to avoid further hearing damage.

Solution:

Five factors of 10

Exercise:

Problem:

If a woman needs an amplification of 5.0×10^{12} times the threshold intensity to enable her to hear at all frequencies, what is her overall hearing loss in dB? Note that smaller amplification is appropriate for more intense sounds to avoid further damage to her hearing from levels above 90 dB.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the intensity in watts per meter squared of a just barely audible 200-Hz sound? (b) What is the intensity in watts per meter squared of a barely audible 4000-Hz sound?

Solution:

(a) $2 \times 10^{-10}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$

(b) $2 \times 10^{-13}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the intensity in watts per meter squared of a 60.0-Hz sound having a loudness of 60 phons. (b) Find the intensity in watts per meter squared of a 10,000-Hz sound having a loudness of 60 phons.

Exercise:

Problem:

A person has a hearing threshold 10 dB above normal at 100 Hz and 50 dB above normal at 4000 Hz. How much more intense must a 100-Hz tone be than a 4000-Hz tone if they are both barely audible to this person?

Solution:

2.5

Exercise:

Problem:

A child has a hearing loss of 60 dB near 5000 Hz, due to noise exposure, and normal hearing elsewhere. How much more intense is a 5000-Hz tone than a 400-Hz tone if they are both barely audible to the child?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the ratio of intensities of two sounds of identical frequency if the first is just barely discernible as louder to a person than the second?

Solution:

1.26

Glossary

loudness
: the perception of sound intensity

timbre
: number and relative intensity of multiple sound frequencies

note
: basic unit of music with specific names, combined to generate tunes

tone
: number and relative intensity of multiple sound frequencies

phon
: the numerical unit of loudness

ultrasound
: sounds above 20,000 Hz

infrasound
: sounds below 20 Hz

Ultrasound

- Define acoustic impedance and intensity reflection coefficient.
- Describe medical and other uses of ultrasound technology.
- Calculate acoustic impedance using density values and the speed of ultrasound.
- Calculate the velocity of a moving object using Doppler-shifted ultrasound.

Ultrasound is used in medicine to painlessly and noninvasively monitor patient health and diagnose a wide range of disorders. (credit: abbybatchelder, Flickr)

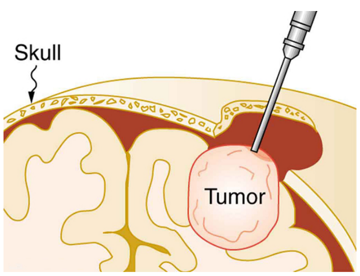
Any sound with a frequency above 20,000 Hz (or 20 kHz)—that is, above the highest audible frequency—is defined to be ultrasound. In practice, it is possible to create ultrasound frequencies up to more than a gigahertz. (Higher frequencies are difficult to create; furthermore, they propagate poorly because they are very strongly absorbed.) Ultrasound has a tremendous number of applications, which range from burglar alarms to use in cleaning delicate objects to the guidance systems of bats. We begin our discussion of ultrasound with some of its applications in medicine, in which it is used extensively both for diagnosis and for therapy.

Note:
Characteristics of Ultrasound
The characteristics of ultrasound, such as frequency and intensity, are wave properties common to all types of waves. Ultrasound also has a wavelength that limits the fineness of detail it can detect. This characteristic is true of all waves. We can never observe details significantly smaller than the wavelength of our probe; for example,

we will never see individual atoms with visible light, because the atoms are so small compared with the wavelength of light.

Ultrasound in Medical Therapy

Ultrasound, like any wave, carries energy that can be absorbed by the medium carrying it, producing effects that vary with intensity. When focused to intensities of 10^3 to $10^5\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$, ultrasound can be used to shatter gallstones or pulverize cancerous tissue in surgical procedures. (See [link].) Intensities this great can damage individual cells, variously causing their protoplasm to stream inside them, altering their permeability, or rupturing their walls through *cavitation*. Cavitation is the creation of vapor cavities in a fluid—the longitudinal vibrations in ultrasound alternatively compress and expand the medium, and at sufficient amplitudes the expansion separates molecules. Most cavitation damage is done when the cavities collapse, producing even greater shock pressures.



The tip of this small probe oscillates at 23 kHz with such a large amplitude that it pulverizes tissue on contact. The debris is then aspirated. The speed of the tip may exceed the speed of sound in tissue, thus creating shock waves and cavitation, rather than a smooth

simple harmonic
oscillator–type
wave.

Most of the energy carried by high-intensity ultrasound in tissue is converted to thermal energy. In fact, intensities of 10^3 to $10^4\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$ are commonly used for deep-heat treatments called ultrasound diathermy. Frequencies of 0.8 to 1 MHz are typical. In both athletics and physical therapy, ultrasound diathermy is most often applied to injured or overworked muscles to relieve pain and improve flexibility. Skill is needed by the therapist to avoid “bone burns” and other tissue damage caused by overheating and cavitation, sometimes made worse by reflection and focusing of the ultrasound by joint and bone tissue.

In some instances, you may encounter a different decibel scale, called the sound *pressure* level, when ultrasound travels in water or in human and other biological tissues. We shall not use the scale here, but it is notable that numbers for sound pressure levels range 60 to 70 dB higher than you would quote for β, the sound intensity level used in this text. Should you encounter a sound pressure level of 220 decibels, then, it is not an astronomically high intensity, but equivalent to about 155 dB—high enough to destroy tissue, but not as unreasonably high as it might seem at first.

Ultrasound in Medical Diagnostics

When used for imaging, ultrasonic waves are emitted from a transducer, a crystal exhibiting the piezoelectric effect (the expansion and contraction of a substance when a voltage is applied across it, causing a vibration of the crystal). These high-frequency vibrations are transmitted into any tissue in contact with the transducer. Similarly, if a pressure is applied to the crystal (in the form of a wave reflected off tissue layers), a voltage is produced which can be recorded. The crystal therefore acts as both a transmitter and a receiver of sound. Ultrasound is also partially absorbed by tissue on its path, both on its journey away from the transducer and on its return journey. From the time between when the original signal is sent and when the reflections from various boundaries between media are received, (as well as a measure of the intensity loss of the signal), the nature and position of each boundary between tissues and organs may be deduced.

Reflections at boundaries between two different media occur because of differences in a characteristic known as the **acoustic impedance** Z of each substance. Impedance is defined as

Equation:

$$Z = \rho v,$$

where ρ is the density of the medium (in kg/m^3) and v is the speed of sound through the medium (in m/s). The units for Z are therefore $kg/(m^2 \cdot s)$.

[link] shows the density and speed of sound through various media (including various soft tissues) and the associated acoustic impedances. Note that the acoustic impedances for soft tissue do not vary much but that there is a big difference between the acoustic impedance of soft tissue and air and also between soft tissue and bone.

Medium	**Density (kg/m^3)**	**Speed of Ultrasound (m/s)**	**Acoustic Impedance** $\left(kg/\left(m^2 \cdot s\right)\right)$
Air	1.3	330	429
Water	1000	1500	1.5×10^6
Blood	1060	1570	1.66×10^6
Fat	925	1450	1.34×10^6
Muscle (average)	1075	1590	1.70×10^6
Bone (varies)	1400–1900	4080	5.7×10^6 to 7.8×10^6
Barium titanate (transducer material)	5600	5500	30.8×10^6

The Ultrasound Properties of Various Media, Including Soft Tissue Found in the Body

At the boundary between media of different acoustic impedances, some of the wave energy is reflected and some is transmitted. The greater the *difference* in acoustic impedance between the two media, the greater the reflection and the smaller the transmission.

The **intensity reflection coefficient** a is defined as the ratio of the intensity of the reflected wave relative to the incident (transmitted) wave. This statement can be written mathematically as
Equation:

$$a = \frac{(Z_2 - Z_1)^2}{(Z_1 + Z_2)^2},$$

where Z_1 and Z_2 are the acoustic impedances of the two media making up the boundary. A reflection coefficient of zero (corresponding to total transmission and no reflection) occurs when the acoustic impedances of the two media are the same. An impedance "match" (no reflection) provides an efficient coupling of sound energy from one medium to another. The image formed in an ultrasound is made by tracking reflections (as shown in [link]) and mapping the intensity of the reflected sound waves in a two-dimensional plane.

Example:
Calculate Acoustic Impedance and Intensity Reflection Coefficient: Ultrasound and Fat Tissue
(a) Using the values for density and the speed of ultrasound given in [link], show that the acoustic impedance of fat tissue is indeed $1.34 \times 10^6 \text{ kg/(m}^2\text{·s)}$.
(b) Calculate the intensity reflection coefficient of ultrasound when going from fat to muscle tissue.
Strategy for (a)
The acoustic impedance can be calculated using $Z = \rho v$ and the values for ρ and v found in [link].
Solution for (a)
(1) Substitute known values from [link] into $Z = \rho v$.
Equation:

$$Z = \rho v = \left(925 \text{ kg/m}^3\right)(1450 \text{ m/s})$$

(2) Calculate to find the acoustic impedance of fat tissue.
Equation:

$$1.34\times10^{6}\ \text{kg/(m}^{2}\text{·s)}$$

This value is the same as the value given for the acoustic impedance of fat tissue.

Strategy for (b)

The intensity reflection coefficient for any boundary between two media is given by $a=\frac{(Z_2-Z_1)^2}{(Z_1+Z_2)^2}$, and the acoustic impedance of muscle is given in [link].

Solution for (b)

Substitute known values into $a=\frac{(Z_2-Z_1)^2}{(Z_1+Z_2)^2}$ to find the intensity reflection coefficient:

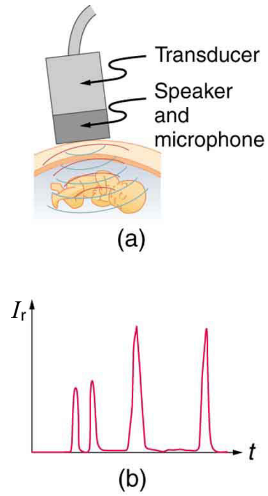
Equation:

$$a=\frac{(Z_2-Z_1)^2}{(Z_1+Z_2)^2}=\frac{\left(1.34\times10^{6}\ \text{kg/(m}^{2}\cdot\text{s)}-1.70\times10^{6}\ \text{kg/(m}^{2}\cdot\text{s)}\right)^2}{\left(1.70\times10^{6}\ \text{kg/(m}^{2}\cdot\text{s)}+1.34\times10^{6}\ \text{kg/(m}^{2}\cdot\text{s)}\right)^2}=0.014$$

Discussion

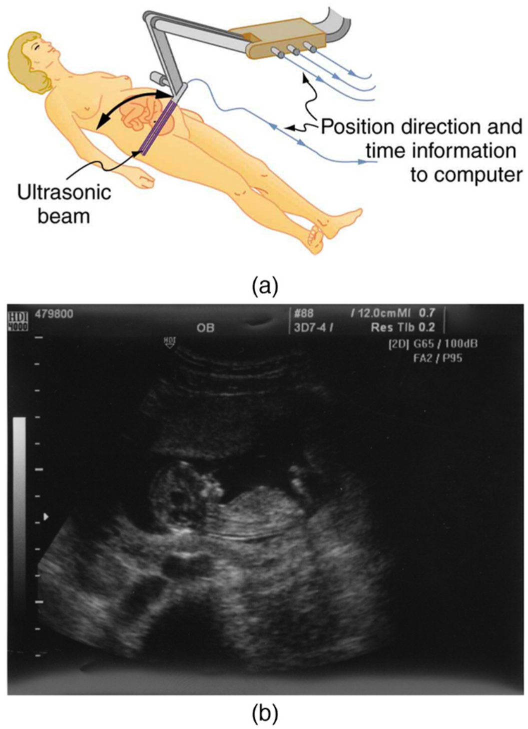
This result means that only 1.4% of the incident intensity is reflected, with the remaining being transmitted.

The applications of ultrasound in medical diagnostics have produced untold benefits with no known risks. Diagnostic intensities are too low (about $10^{-2}\ \text{W/m}^{2}$) to cause thermal damage. More significantly, ultrasound has been in use for several decades and detailed follow-up studies do not show evidence of ill effects, quite unlike the case for x-rays.



(a) An ultrasound speaker doubles as a microphone. Brief bleeps are broadcast, and echoes are recorded from various depths. (b) Graph of echo intensity versus time. The time for echoes to return is directly proportional to the distance of the reflector, yielding this information noninvasively.

The most common ultrasound applications produce an image like that shown in [link]. The speaker-microphone broadcasts a directional beam, sweeping the beam across the area of interest. This is accomplished by having multiple ultrasound sources in the probe’s head, which are phased to interfere constructively in a given, adjustable direction. Echoes are measured as a function of position as well as depth. A computer constructs an image that reveals the shape and density of internal structures.



(a) An ultrasonic image is produced by sweeping the ultrasonic beam across the area of interest, in this case the woman’s abdomen. Data are recorded and analyzed in a computer, providing a two-dimensional image. (b) Ultrasound image of 12-week-old fetus. (credit: Margaret W. Carruthers, Flickr)

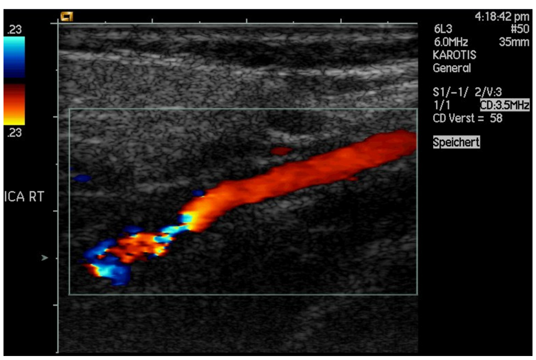
How much detail can ultrasound reveal? The image in [link] is typical of low-cost systems, but that in [link] shows the remarkable detail possible with more advanced systems, including 3D imaging. Ultrasound today is commonly used in prenatal care. Such imaging can be used to see if the fetus is developing at a normal rate, and help in the determination of serious problems early in the pregnancy. Ultrasound is also in wide use to image the chambers of the heart and the flow of blood within the beating heart, using the Doppler effect (echocardiology).

Whenever a wave is used as a probe, it is very difficult to detect details smaller than its wavelength λ. Indeed, current technology cannot do quite this well. Abdominal scans may use a 7-MHz frequency, and the speed of sound in tissue is about 1540 m/s —so the wavelength limit to detail would be $\lambda = \frac{v_{\text{w}}}{f} = \frac{1540\text{ m/s}}{7\times10^{6}\text{ Hz}} = 0.22\text{ mm}$. In practice, 1-mm detail is attainable, which is sufficient for many purposes. Higher-frequency ultrasound would allow greater detail, but it does not penetrate as well as lower frequencies do. The accepted rule of thumb is that you can effectively scan to a depth of about 500λ into tissue. For 7 MHz, this penetration limit is $500 \times 0.22\text{ mm}$, which is 0.11 m. Higher frequencies may be employed in smaller organs, such as the eye, but are not practical for looking deep into the body.

A 3D ultrasound image of a fetus. As well as for the detection of any abnormalities, such scans have also been shown to be useful for strengthening the emotional bonding between parents and their unborn child. (credit: Jennie Cu, Wikimedia Commons)

In addition to shape information, ultrasonic scans can produce density information superior to that found in X-rays, because the intensity of a reflected sound is related to changes in density. Sound is most strongly reflected at places where density changes are greatest.

Another major use of ultrasound in medical diagnostics is to detect motion and determine velocity through the Doppler shift of an echo, known as **Doppler-shifted ultrasound**. This technique is used to monitor fetal heartbeat, measure blood velocity, and detect occlusions in blood vessels, for example. (See [link].) The magnitude of the Doppler shift in an echo is directly proportional to the velocity of whatever reflects the sound. Because an echo is involved, there is actually a double shift. The first occurs because the reflector (say a fetal heart) is a moving observer and receives a Doppler-shifted frequency. The reflector then acts as a moving source, producing a second Doppler shift.



This Doppler-shifted ultrasonic image of a partially occluded artery uses color to indicate velocity. The highest velocities are in red, while the lowest are blue. The blood must move faster through the constriction to carry the same flow. (credit: Arning C, Grzyska U, Wikimedia Commons)

A clever technique is used to measure the Doppler shift in an echo. The frequency of the echoed sound is superimposed on the broadcast frequency, producing beats. The beat frequency is $F_{\text{B}} = \mid f_1 - f_2 \mid$, and so it is directly proportional to the Doppler shift $(f_1 - f_2)$ and hence, the reflector's velocity. The advantage in this technique is that the Doppler shift is small (because the reflector's velocity is small), so that great accuracy would be needed to measure the shift directly. But measuring the beat frequency is easy, and it is not affected if the broadcast frequency varies somewhat. Furthermore, the beat frequency is in the audible range and can be amplified for audio feedback to the medical observer.

Note:

Uses for Doppler-Shifted Radar

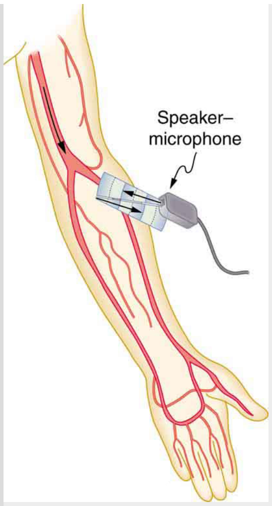
Doppler-shifted radar echoes are used to measure wind velocities in storms as well as aircraft and automobile speeds. The principle is the same as for Doppler-shifted ultrasound. There is evidence that bats and dolphins may also sense the velocity of an object (such as prey) reflecting their ultrasound signals by observing its Doppler shift.

Example:

Calculate Velocity of Blood: Doppler-Shifted Ultrasound

Ultrasound that has a frequency of 2.50 MHz is sent toward blood in an artery that is moving toward the source at 20.0 cm/s, as illustrated in [link]. Use the speed of sound in human tissue as 1540 m/s. (Assume that the frequency of 2.50 MHz is accurate to seven significant figures.)

a. What frequency does the blood receive?
b. What frequency returns to the source?
c. What beat frequency is produced if the source and returning frequencies are mixed?



Ultrasound is partly reflected by blood cells and plasma back toward the speaker-microphone. Because the cells are moving, two Doppler shifts are produced—one for blood as a moving observer, and the other for the reflected sound coming from a moving source. The magnitude of the shift is directly proportional to blood velocity.

Strategy

The first two questions can be answered using $f_{\text{obs}} = f_{\text{s}}\left(\frac{v_{\text{w}}}{v_{\text{w}} \pm v_{\text{s}}}\right)$ and $f_{\text{obs}} = f_{\text{s}}\left(\frac{v_{\text{w}} \pm v_{\text{obs}}}{v_{\text{w}}}\right)$ for the Doppler shift. The last question asks for beat frequency, which is the difference between the original and returning frequencies.

Solution for (a)

(1) Identify knowns:

- The blood is a moving observer, and so the frequency it receives is given by
  Equation:

$$f_{\text{obs}} = f_{\text{s}}\left(\frac{v_{\text{w}} \pm v_{\text{obs}}}{v_{\text{w}}}\right).$$

- v_{b} is the blood velocity (v_{obs} here) and the plus sign is chosen because the motion is toward the source.

(2) Enter the given values into the equation.

Equation:

$$f_{\text{obs}} = (2{,}500{,}000\ \text{Hz})\left(\frac{1540\ \text{m/s} + 0.2\ \text{m/s}}{1540\ \text{m/s}}\right)$$

(3) Calculate to find the frequency: 2,500,325 Hz.

Solution for (b)

(1) Identify knowns:

- The blood acts as a moving source.
- The microphone acts as a stationary observer.
- The frequency leaving the blood is 2,500,325 Hz, but it is shifted upward as given by
  Equation:

$$f_{\text{obs}} = f_{\text{s}}\left(\frac{v_{\text{w}}}{v_{\text{w}} - v_{\text{b}}}\right).$$

  f_{obs} is the frequency received by the speaker-microphone.
- The source velocity is v_{b}.
- The minus sign is used because the motion is toward the observer.

The minus sign is used because the motion is toward the observer.
(2) Enter the given values into the equation:
Equation:

$$f_{\text{obs}} = (2{,}500{,}325\ \text{Hz})\left(\frac{1540\ \text{m/s}}{1540\ \text{m/s} - 0.200\ \text{m/s}}\right)$$

(3) Calculate to find the frequency returning to the source: 2,500,649 Hz.
Solution for (c)
(1) Identify knowns:

- The beat frequency is simply the absolute value of the difference between f_{s} and f_{obs}, as stated in:
  Equation:

  $$f_{\text{B}} = \mid f_{\text{obs}} - f_{\text{s}} \mid.$$

(2) Substitute known values:
Equation:

$$\mid 2{,}500{,}649\ \text{Hz} - 2{,}500{,}000\ \text{Hz} \mid$$

(3) Calculate to find the beat frequency: 649 Hz.
Discussion
The Doppler shifts are quite small compared with the original frequency of 2.50 MHz. It is far easier to measure the beat frequency than it is to measure the echo frequency with an accuracy great enough to see shifts of a few hundred hertz out of a couple of megahertz. Furthermore, variations in the source frequency do not greatly affect the beat frequency, because both f_{s} and f_{obs}would increase or decrease. Those changes subtract out in $f_{\text{B}} = \mid f_{\text{obs}} - f_{\text{s}} \mid$.

Note:
Industrial and Other Applications of Ultrasound
Industrial, retail, and research applications of ultrasound are common. A few are discussed here. Ultrasonic cleaners have many uses. Jewelry, machined parts, and other objects that have odd shapes and crevices are immersed in a cleaning fluid that is agitated with ultrasound typically about 40 kHz in frequency. The intensity is great enough to cause cavitation, which is responsible for most of the cleansing action. Because cavitation-produced shock pressures are large and well transmitted in a fluid,

they reach into small crevices where even a low-surface-tension cleaning fluid might not penetrate.

Sonar is a familiar application of ultrasound. Sonar typically employs ultrasonic frequencies in the range from 30.0 to 100 kHz. Bats, dolphins, submarines, and even some birds use ultrasonic sonar. Echoes are analyzed to give distance and size information both for guidance and finding prey. In most sonar applications, the sound reflects quite well because the objects of interest have significantly different density than the medium in which they travel. When the Doppler shift is observed, velocity information can also be obtained. Submarine sonar can be used to obtain such information, and there is evidence that some bats also sense velocity from their echoes.

Similarly, there are a range of relatively inexpensive devices that measure distance by timing ultrasonic echoes. Many cameras, for example, use such information to focus automatically. Some doors open when their ultrasonic ranging devices detect a nearby object, and certain home security lights turn on when their ultrasonic rangers observe motion. Ultrasonic “measuring tapes” also exist to measure such things as room dimensions. Sinks in public restrooms are sometimes automated with ultrasound devices to turn faucets on and off when people wash their hands. These devices reduce the spread of germs and can conserve water.

Ultrasound is used for nondestructive testing in industry and by the military. Because ultrasound reflects well from any large change in density, it can reveal cracks and voids in solids, such as aircraft wings, that are too small to be seen with x-rays. For similar reasons, ultrasound is also good for measuring the thickness of coatings, particularly where there are several layers involved.

Basic research in solid state physics employs ultrasound. Its attenuation is related to a number of physical characteristics, making it a useful probe. Among these characteristics are structural changes such as those found in liquid crystals, the transition of a material to a superconducting phase, as well as density and other properties.

These examples of the uses of ultrasound are meant to whet the appetites of the curious, as well as to illustrate the underlying physics of ultrasound. There are many more applications, as you can easily discover for yourself.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Why is it possible to use ultrasound both to observe a fetus in the womb and also to destroy cancerous tumors in the body?

Solution:

Ultrasound can be used medically at different intensities. Lower intensities do not cause damage and are used for medical imaging. Higher intensities can pulverize and destroy targeted substances in the body, such as tumors.

Section Summary

- The acoustic impedance is defined as:
  Equation:
  $$Z = \rho v,$$
  ρ is the density of a medium through which the sound travels and v is the speed of sound through that medium.
- The intensity reflection coefficient a, a measure of the ratio of the intensity of the wave reflected off a boundary between two media relative to the intensity of the incident wave, is given by
  Equation:
  $$a = \frac{(Z_2 - Z_1)^2}{(Z_1 + Z_2)^2}.$$
- The intensity reflection coefficient is a unitless quantity.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

If audible sound follows a rule of thumb similar to that for ultrasound, in terms of its absorption, would you expect the high or low frequencies from your neighbor’s stereo to penetrate into your house? How does this expectation compare with your experience?

Exercise:

Problem:

Elephants and whales are known to use infrasound to communicate over very large distances. What are the advantages of infrasound for long distance communication?

Exercise:

Problem:

It is more difficult to obtain a high-resolution ultrasound image in the abdominal region of someone who is overweight than for someone who has a slight build. Explain why this statement is accurate.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you read that 210-dB ultrasound is being used to pulverize cancerous tumors. You calculate the intensity in watts per centimeter squared and find it is unreasonably high ($10^5\ \mathrm{W/cm^2}$). What is a possible explanation?

Problems & Exercises

Unless otherwise indicated, for problems in this section, assume that the speed of sound through human tissues is 1540 m/s.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the sound intensity level in decibels of ultrasound of intensity $10^5\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$, used to pulverize tissue during surgery?

Solution:

170 dB

Exercise:

Problem:

Is 155-dB ultrasound in the range of intensities used for deep heating? Calculate the intensity of this ultrasound and compare this intensity with values quoted in the text.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the sound intensity level in decibels of $2.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$ ultrasound used in medical diagnostics.

Solution:

103 dB

Exercise:

Problem:

The time delay between transmission and the arrival of the reflected wave of a signal using ultrasound traveling through a piece of fat tissue was 0.13 ms. At what depth did this reflection occur?

Exercise:

Problem:

In the clinical use of ultrasound, transducers are always coupled to the skin by a thin layer of gel or oil, replacing the air that would otherwise exist between the transducer and the skin. (a) Using the values of acoustic impedance given in [link] calculate the intensity reflection coefficient between transducer material and air. (b) Calculate the intensity reflection coefficient between transducer material and gel (assuming for this problem that its acoustic impedance is identical to that of water). (c) Based on the results of your calculations, explain why the gel is used.

Solution:

(a) 1.00

(b) 0.823

(c) Gel is used to facilitate the transmission of the ultrasound between the transducer and the patient's body.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the minimum frequency of ultrasound that will allow you to see details as small as 0.250 mm in human tissue. (b) What is the effective depth to which this sound is effective as a diagnostic probe?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the size of the smallest detail observable in human tissue with 20.0-MHz ultrasound. (b) Is its effective penetration depth great enough to examine the entire eye (about 3.00 cm is needed)? (c) What is the wavelength of such ultrasound in $0^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ air?

Solution:

(a) $77.0\ \mu\mathrm{m}$

(b) Effective penetration depth = 3.85 cm, which is enough to examine the eye.

(c) $16.6\ \mu\mathrm{m}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Echo times are measured by diagnostic ultrasound scanners to determine distances to reflecting surfaces in a patient. What is the difference in echo times for tissues that are 3.50 and 3.60 cm beneath the surface? (This difference is the minimum resolving time for the scanner to see details as small as 0.100 cm, or 1.00 mm. Discrimination of smaller time differences is needed to see smaller details.) (b) Discuss whether the period T of this ultrasound must be smaller than the minimum time resolution. If so, what is the minimum frequency of the ultrasound and is that out of the normal range for diagnostic ultrasound?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How far apart are two layers of tissue that produce echoes having round-trip times (used to measure distances) that differ by $0.750\ \mu\mathrm{s}$? (b) What minimum frequency must the ultrasound have to see detail this small?

Solution:

(a) $5.78 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{m}$

(b) $2.67 \times 10^{6}\ \mathrm{Hz}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A bat uses ultrasound to find its way among trees. If this bat can detect echoes 1.00 ms apart, what minimum distance between objects can it detect? (b) Could this distance explain the difficulty that bats have finding an open door when they accidentally get into a house?

Exercise:

Problem:

A dolphin is able to tell in the dark that the ultrasound echoes received from two sharks come from two different objects only if the sharks are separated by 3.50 m, one being that much farther away than the other. (a) If the ultrasound has a frequency of 100 kHz, show this ability is not limited by its wavelength. (b) If this ability is due to the dolphin's ability to detect the arrival times of echoes, what is the minimum time difference the dolphin can perceive?

Solution:

(a) $v_{\mathrm{w}} = 1540\ \mathrm{m/s} = f\lambda \Rightarrow \lambda = \frac{1540\ \mathrm{m/s}}{100\times10^{3}\ \mathrm{Hz}} = 0.0154\ \mathrm{m} < 3.50\ \mathrm{m}$. Because the wavelength is much shorter than the distance in question, the wavelength is not the limiting factor.

(b) 4.55 ms

Exercise:

Problem:

A diagnostic ultrasound echo is reflected from moving blood and returns with a frequency 500 Hz higher than its original 2.00 MHz. What is the velocity of the blood? (Assume that the frequency of 2.00 MHz is accurate to seven significant figures and 500 Hz is accurate to three significant figures.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Ultrasound reflected from an oncoming bloodstream that is moving at 30.0 cm/s is mixed with the original frequency of 2.50 MHz to produce beats. What is the beat frequency? (Assume that the frequency of 2.50 MHz is accurate to seven significant figures.)

Solution:

974 Hz

(Note: extra digits were retained in order to show the difference.)

Glossary

acoustic impedance
: property of medium that makes the propagation of sound waves more difficult

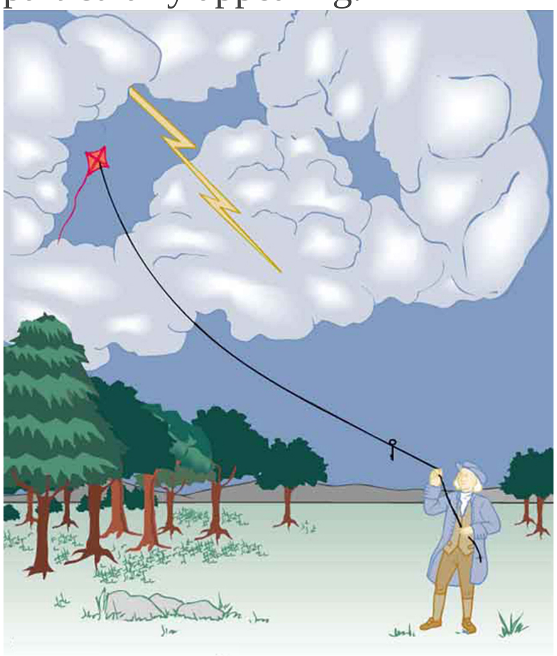
intensity reflection coefficient
: a measure of the ratio of the intensity of the wave reflected off a boundary between two media relative to the intensity of the incident wave

Doppler-shifted ultrasound
: a medical technique to detect motion and determine velocity through the Doppler shift of an echo

Introduction to Electric Charge and Electric Field class="introduction"

Static electricity from this plastic slide causes the child’s hair to stand on end. The sliding motion stripped electrons away from the child’s body, leaving an excess of positive charges, which repel each other along each strand of hair. (credit: Ken Bosma/Wikimedia Commons)

The image of American politician and scientist Benjamin Franklin (1706–1790) flying a kite in a thunderstorm is familiar to every schoolchild. (See [link].) In this experiment, Franklin demonstrated a connection between lightning and **static electricity**. Sparks were drawn from a key hung on a kite string during an electrical storm. These sparks were like those produced by static electricity, such as the spark that jumps from your finger to a metal doorknob after you walk across a wool carpet. What Franklin demonstrated in his dangerous experiment was a connection between phenomena on two different scales: one the grand power of an electrical storm, the other an effect of more human proportions. Connections like this one reveal the underlying unity of the laws of nature, an aspect we humans find particularly appealing.



When Benjamin Franklin demonstrated that lightning was related to static electricity, he made a connection that is now part of the evidence that all directly experienced forces except the gravitational force are manifestations of the electromagnetic force.

Much has been written about Franklin. His experiments were only part of the life of a man who was a scientist, inventor, revolutionary, statesman, and writer. Franklin’s experiments were not performed in isolation, nor were they the only ones to reveal connections.

For example, the Italian scientist Luigi Galvani (1737–1798) performed a series of experiments in which static electricity was used to stimulate contractions of leg muscles of dead frogs, an effect already known in humans subjected to static discharges. But Galvani also found that if he joined two metal wires (say copper and zinc) end to end and touched the other ends to muscles, he produced the same effect in frogs as static discharge. Alessandro Volta (1745–1827), partly inspired by Galvani’s work, experimented with various combinations of metals and developed the battery.

During the same era, other scientists made progress in discovering fundamental connections. The periodic table was developed as the systematic properties of the elements were discovered. This influenced the development and refinement of the concept of atoms as the basis of matter. Such submicroscopic descriptions of matter also help explain a great deal more.

Atomic and molecular interactions, such as the forces of friction, cohesion, and adhesion, are now known to be manifestations of the **electromagnetic force**. Static electricity is just one aspect of the electromagnetic force, which also includes moving electricity and magnetism.

All the macroscopic forces that we experience directly, such as the sensations of touch and the tension in a rope, are due to the electromagnetic force, one of the four fundamental forces in nature. The gravitational force, another fundamental force, is actually sensed through the electromagnetic interaction of molecules, such as between those in our feet and those on the top of a bathroom scale. (The other two fundamental forces, the strong nuclear force and the weak nuclear force, cannot be sensed on the human scale.)

This chapter begins the study of electromagnetic phenomena at a fundamental level. The next several chapters will cover static electricity, moving electricity, and magnetism—collectively known as electromagnetism. In this chapter, we begin with the study of electric phenomena due to charges that are at least temporarily stationary, called electrostatics, or static electricity.

Glossary

static electricity
: a buildup of electric charge on the surface of an object

electromagnetic force
: one of the four fundamental forces of nature; the electromagnetic force consists of static electricity, moving electricity and magnetism

Static Electricity and Charge: Conservation of Charge

- Define electric charge, and describe how the two types of charge interact.
- Describe three common situations that generate static electricity.
- State the law of conservation of charge.

Borneo amber was mined in Sabah, Malaysia, from shale-sandstone-mudstone veins. When a piece of amber is rubbed with a piece of silk, the amber gains more electrons, giving it a net negative charge. At the same time, the silk, having lost electrons, becomes positively charged. (credit: Sebakoamber, Wikimedia Commons)

What makes plastic wrap cling? Static electricity. Not only are applications of static electricity common these days, its existence has been known since ancient times. The first record of its effects dates to ancient Greeks who noted more than 500 years B.C. that polishing amber temporarily enabled it

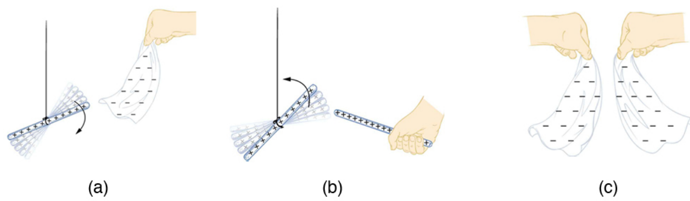
to attract bits of straw (see [link]). The very word *electric* derives from the Greek word for amber (*electron*).

Many of the characteristics of static electricity can be explored by rubbing things together. Rubbing creates the spark you get from walking across a wool carpet, for example. Static cling generated in a clothes dryer and the attraction of straw to recently polished amber also result from rubbing. Similarly, lightning results from air movements under certain weather conditions. You can also rub a balloon on your hair, and the static electricity created can then make the balloon cling to a wall. We also have to be cautious of static electricity, especially in dry climates. When we pump gasoline, we are warned to discharge ourselves (after sliding across the seat) on a metal surface before grabbing the gas nozzle. Attendants in hospital operating rooms must wear booties with aluminum foil on the bottoms to avoid creating sparks which may ignite the oxygen being used.

Some of the most basic characteristics of static electricity include:

- The effects of static electricity are explained by a physical quantity not previously introduced, called electric charge.
- There are only two types of charge, one called positive and the other called negative.
- Like charges repel, whereas unlike charges attract.
- The force between charges decreases with distance.

How do we know there are two types of **electric charge**? When various materials are rubbed together in controlled ways, certain combinations of materials always produce one type of charge on one material and the opposite type on the other. By convention, we call one type of charge "positive", and the other type "negative." For example, when glass is rubbed with silk, the glass becomes positively charged and the silk negatively charged. Since the glass and silk have opposite charges, they attract one another like clothes that have rubbed together in a dryer. Two glass rods rubbed with silk in this manner will repel one another, since each rod has positive charge on it. Similarly, two silk cloths so rubbed will repel, since both cloths have negative charge. [link] shows how these simple materials can be used to explore the nature of the force between charges.



A glass rod becomes positively charged when rubbed with silk, while the silk becomes negatively charged. (a) The glass rod is attracted to the silk because their charges are opposite. (b) Two similarly charged glass rods repel. (c) Two similarly charged silk cloths repel.

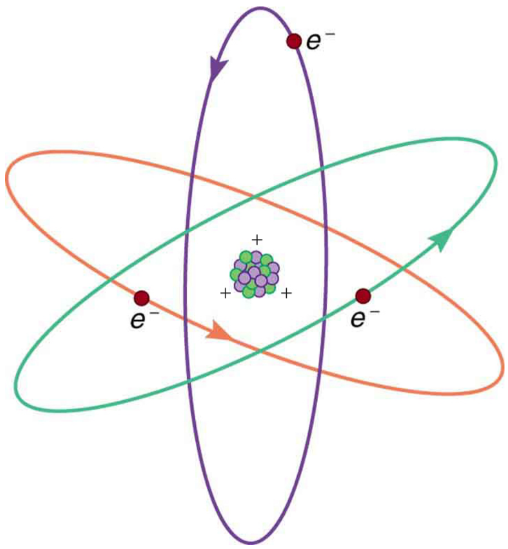
More sophisticated questions arise. Where do these charges come from? Can you create or destroy charge? Is there a smallest unit of charge? Exactly how does the force depend on the amount of charge and the distance between charges? Such questions obviously occurred to Benjamin Franklin and other early researchers, and they interest us even today.

Charge Carried by Electrons and Protons

Franklin wrote in his letters and books that he could see the effects of electric charge but did not understand what caused the phenomenon. Today we have the advantage of knowing that normal matter is made of atoms, and that atoms contain positive and negative charges, usually in equal amounts.

[link] shows a simple model of an atom with negative **electrons** orbiting its positive nucleus. The nucleus is positive due to the presence of positively charged **protons**. Nearly all charge in nature is due to electrons and protons, which are two of the three building blocks of most matter. (The third is the neutron, which is neutral, carrying no charge.) Other charge-carrying particles are observed in cosmic rays and nuclear decay, and are created in

particle accelerators. All but the electron and proton survive only a short time and are quite rare by comparison.



This simplified (and not to scale) view of an atom is called the planetary model of the atom. Negative electrons orbit a much heavier positive nucleus, as the planets orbit the much heavier sun. There the similarity ends, because forces in the atom are electromagnetic, whereas those in the planetary system are gravitational. Normal macroscopic amounts of matter contain immense numbers of atoms and molecules and, hence, even greater numbers of individual

negative and positive charges.

The charges of electrons and protons are identical in magnitude but opposite in sign. Furthermore, all charged objects in nature are integral multiples of this basic quantity of charge, meaning that all charges are made of combinations of a basic unit of charge. Usually, charges are formed by combinations of electrons and protons. The magnitude of this basic charge is

Equation:

$$\mid q_e \mid = 1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C}.$$

The symbol q is commonly used for charge and the subscript e indicates the charge of a single electron (or proton).

The SI unit of charge is the coulomb (C). The number of protons needed to make a charge of 1.00 C is

Equation:

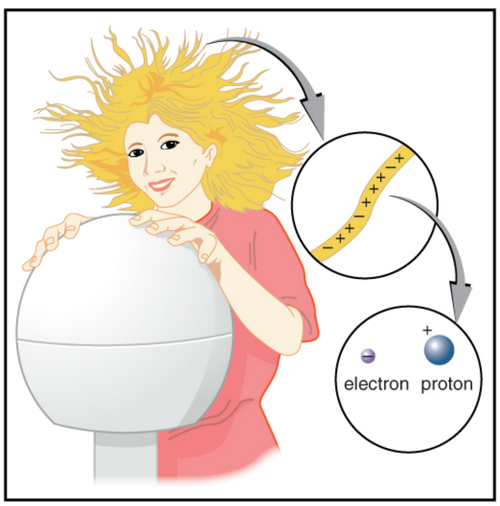
$$1.00\ \text{C} \times \frac{1\ \text{proton}}{1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C}} = 6.25 \times 10^{18}\ \text{protons}.$$

Similarly, 6.25×10^{18} electrons have a combined charge of −1.00 coulomb. Just as there is a smallest bit of an element (an atom), there is a smallest bit of charge. There is no directly observed charge smaller than $\mid q_e \mid$ (see Things Great and Small: The Submicroscopic Origin of Charge), and all observed charges are integral multiples of $\mid q_e \mid$.

Note:
Things Great and Small: The Submicroscopic Origin of Charge

With the exception of exotic, short-lived particles, all charge in nature is carried by electrons and protons. Electrons carry the charge we have named negative. Protons carry an equal-magnitude charge that we call positive. (See [link].) Electron and proton charges are considered fundamental building blocks, since all other charges are integral multiples of those carried by electrons and protons. Electrons and protons are also two of the three fundamental building blocks of ordinary matter. The neutron is the third and has zero total charge.

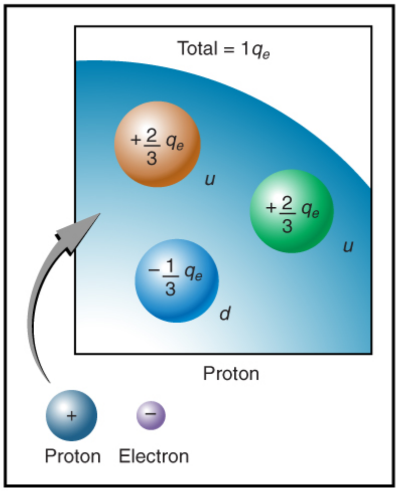
[link] shows a person touching a Van de Graaff generator and receiving excess positive charge. The expanded view of a hair shows the existence of both types of charges but an excess of positive. The repulsion of these positive like charges causes the strands of hair to repel other strands of hair and to stand up. The further blowup shows an artist's conception of an electron and a proton perhaps found in an atom in a strand of hair.



When this person touches a Van de Graaff generator, she receives an excess of positive charge, causing her hair to stand on end. The charges in

one hair are shown. An artist's conception of an electron and a proton illustrate the particles carrying the negative and positive charges. We cannot really see these particles with visible light because they are so small (the electron seems to be an infinitesimal point), but we know a great deal about their measurable properties, such as the charges they carry.

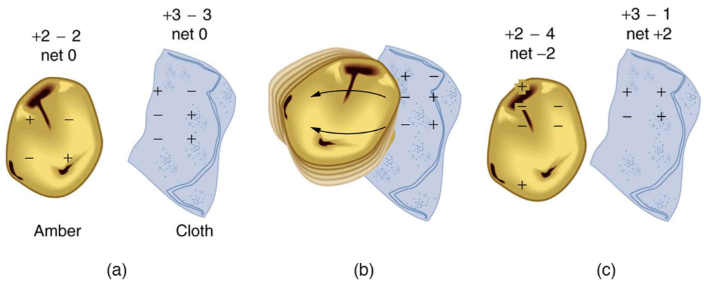
The electron seems to have no substructure; in contrast, when the substructure of protons is explored by scattering extremely energetic electrons from them, it appears that there are point-like particles inside the proton. These sub-particles, named quarks, have never been directly observed, but they are believed to carry fractional charges as seen in [link]. Charges on electrons and protons and all other directly observable particles are unitary, but these quark substructures carry charges of either $-\frac{1}{3}$ or $+\frac{2}{3}$. There are continuing attempts to observe fractional charge directly and to learn of the properties of quarks, which are perhaps the ultimate substructure of matter.



Artist's conception of fractional quark charges inside a proton. A group of three quark charges add up to the single positive charge on the proton: $-\frac{1}{3}q_e + \frac{2}{3}q_e + \frac{2}{3}q_e = +1q_e$.

Separation of Charge in Atoms

Charges in atoms and molecules can be separated—for example, by rubbing materials together. Some atoms and molecules have a greater affinity for electrons than others and will become negatively charged by close contact in rubbing, leaving the other material positively charged. (See [link].) Positive charge can similarly be induced by rubbing. Methods other than rubbing can also separate charges. Batteries, for example, use combinations of substances that interact in such a way as to separate charges. Chemical interactions may transfer negative charge from one substance to the other, making one battery terminal negative and leaving the first one positive.



When materials are rubbed together, charges can be separated, particularly if one material has a greater affinity for electrons than another. (a) Both the amber and cloth are originally neutral, with equal positive and negative charges. Only a tiny fraction of the charges are involved, and only a few of them are shown here. (b) When rubbed together, some negative charge is transferred to the amber, leaving the cloth with a net positive charge. (c) When separated, the amber and cloth now have net charges, but the absolute value of the net positive and negative charges will be equal.

No charge is actually created or destroyed when charges are separated as we have been discussing. Rather, existing charges are moved about. In fact, in all situations the total amount of charge is always constant. This universally obeyed law of nature is called the **law of conservation of charge**.

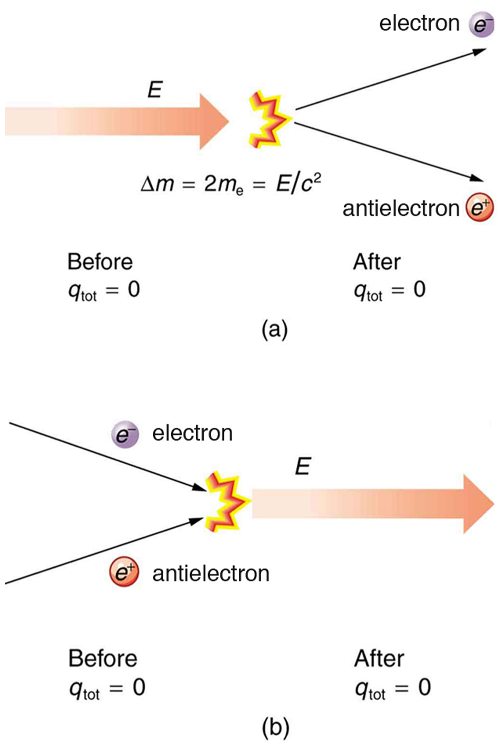
Note:
Law of Conservation of Charge
Total charge is constant in any process.

In more exotic situations, such as in particle accelerators, mass, Δm, can be created from energy in the amount $\Delta m = \frac{E}{c^2}$. Sometimes, the created mass is charged, such as when an electron is created. Whenever a charged particle is created, another having an opposite charge is always created along with it, so that the total charge created is zero. Usually, the two particles are “matter-antimatter” counterparts. For example, an antielectron would usually be created at the same time as an electron. The antielectron has a positive charge (it is called a positron), and so the total charge created is zero. (See [link].) All particles have antimatter counterparts with opposite signs. When matter and antimatter counterparts are brought together, they completely annihilate one another. By annihilate, we mean that the mass of the two particles is converted to energy E, again obeying the relationship $\Delta m = \frac{E}{c^2}$. Since the two particles have equal and opposite charge, the total charge is zero before and after the annihilation; thus, total charge is conserved.

Note:

Making Connections: Conservation Laws

Only a limited number of physical quantities are universally conserved. Charge is one—energy, momentum, and angular momentum are others. Because they are conserved, these physical quantities are used to explain more phenomena and form more connections than other, less basic quantities. We find that conserved quantities give us great insight into the rules followed by nature and hints to the organization of nature. Discoveries of conservation laws have led to further discoveries, such as the weak nuclear force and the quark substructure of protons and other particles.



(a) When enough energy is present, it can be converted into matter. Here the matter created is an electron–antielectron pair. (m_e is the electron's mass.) The total charge before and after this event is zero. (b) When matter and antimatter collide, they annihilate each other; the total charge is conserved at zero before and after the annihilation.

The law of conservation of charge is absolute—it has never been observed to be violated. Charge, then, is a special physical quantity, joining a very

short list of other quantities in nature that are always conserved. Other conserved quantities include energy, momentum, and angular momentum.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Balloons and Static Electricity
Why does a balloon stick to your sweater? Rub a balloon on a sweater, then let go of the balloon and it flies over and sticks to the sweater. View the charges in the sweater, balloons, and the wall.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/balloons-and-static-electricity/latest/balloons-and-static-electricity_en.html

Section Summary

- There are only two types of charge, which we call positive and negative.
- Like charges repel, unlike charges attract, and the force between charges decreases with the square of the distance.
- The vast majority of positive charge in nature is carried by protons, while the vast majority of negative charge is carried by electrons.
- The electric charge of one electron is equal in magnitude and opposite in sign to the charge of one proton.
- An ion is an atom or molecule that has nonzero total charge due to having unequal numbers of electrons and protons.
- The SI unit for charge is the coulomb (C), with protons and electrons having charges of opposite sign but equal magnitude; the magnitude of this basic charge $\mid q_e \mid$ is
  Equation:
  $$\mid q_e \mid = 1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C}.$$
- Whenever charge is created or destroyed, equal amounts of positive and negative are involved.
- Most often, existing charges are separated from neutral objects to obtain some net charge.

- Both positive and negative charges exist in neutral objects and can be separated by rubbing one object with another. For macroscopic objects, negatively charged means an excess of electrons and positively charged means a depletion of electrons.
- The law of conservation of charge ensures that whenever a charge is created, an equal charge of the opposite sign is created at the same time.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

There are very large numbers of charged particles in most objects. Why, then, don't most objects exhibit static electricity?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why do most objects tend to contain nearly equal numbers of positive and negative charges?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Common static electricity involves charges ranging from nanocoulombs to microcoulombs. (a) How many electrons are needed to form a charge of -2.00 nC (b) How many electrons must be removed from a neutral object to leave a net charge of $0.500\ \mu\text{C}$?

Solution:

(a) 1.25×10^{10}

(b) 3.13×10^{12}

Exercise:

Problem:

If 1.80×10^{20} electrons move through a pocket calculator during a full day's operation, how many coulombs of charge moved through it?

Exercise:

Problem:

To start a car engine, the car battery moves 3.75×10^{21} electrons through the starter motor. How many coulombs of charge were moved?

Solution:

-600 C

Exercise:

Problem:

A certain lightning bolt moves 40.0 C of charge. How many fundamental units of charge $|q_e|$ is this?

Glossary

electric charge
: a physical property of an object that causes it to be attracted toward or repelled from another charged object; each charged object generates and is influenced by a force called an electromagnetic force

law of conservation of charge
: states that whenever a charge is created, an equal amount of charge with the opposite sign is created simultaneously

electron

a particle orbiting the nucleus of an atom and carrying the smallest unit of negative charge

proton

a particle in the nucleus of an atom and carrying a positive charge equal in magnitude and opposite in sign to the amount of negative charge carried by an electron

Conductors and Insulators

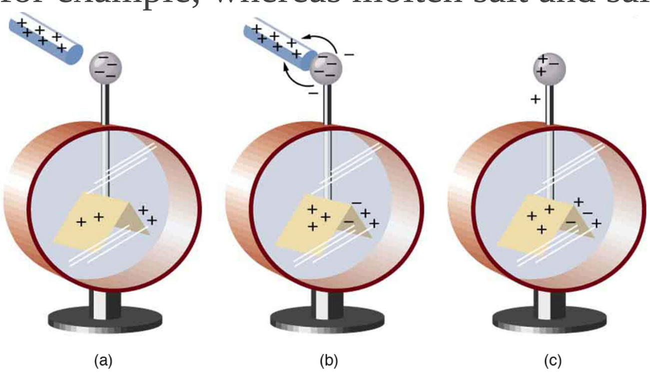
- Define conductor and insulator, explain the difference, and give examples of each.
- Describe three methods for charging an object.
- Explain what happens to an electric force as you move farther from the source.
- Define polarization.

This power adapter uses metal wires and connectors to conduct electricity from the wall socket to a laptop computer. The conducting wires allow electrons to move freely through the cables, which are shielded by rubber and plastic. These materials act as insulators that don’t allow electric charge to escape outward. (credit: Evan-Amos, Wikimedia Commons)

Some substances, such as metals and salty water, allow charges to move through them with relative ease. Some of the electrons in metals and similar conductors are not bound to individual atoms or sites in the material. These **free electrons** can move through the material much as air moves through loose sand. Any substance that has free electrons and allows charge to move

relatively freely through it is called a **conductor**. The moving electrons may collide with fixed atoms and molecules, losing some energy, but they can move in a conductor. Superconductors allow the movement of charge without any loss of energy. Salty water and other similar conducting materials contain free ions that can move through them. An ion is an atom or molecule having a positive or negative (nonzero) total charge. In other words, the total number of electrons is not equal to the total number of protons.

Other substances, such as glass, do not allow charges to move through them. These are called **insulators**. Electrons and ions in insulators are bound in the structure and cannot move easily—as much as 10^{23} times more slowly than in conductors. Pure water and dry table salt are insulators, for example, whereas molten salt and salty water are conductors.



An electroscope is a favorite instrument in physics demonstrations and student laboratories. It is typically made with gold foil leaves hung from a (conducting) metal stem and is insulated from the room air in a glass-walled container. (a) A positively charged glass rod is brought near the tip of the electroscope, attracting electrons to the top and leaving a net positive charge on the leaves. Like charges in the light flexible gold leaves

repel, separating them. (b) When the rod is touched against the ball, electrons are attracted and transferred, reducing the net charge on the glass rod but leaving the electroscope positively charged. (c) The excess charges are evenly distributed in the stem and leaves of the electroscope once the glass rod is removed.

Charging by Contact

[link] shows an electroscope being charged by touching it with a positively charged glass rod. Because the glass rod is an insulator, it must actually touch the electroscope to transfer charge to or from it. (Note that the extra positive charges reside on the surface of the glass rod as a result of rubbing it with silk before starting the experiment.) Since only electrons move in metals, we see that they are attracted to the top of the electroscope. There, some are transferred to the positive rod by touch, leaving the electroscope with a net positive charge.

Electrostatic repulsion in the leaves of the charged electroscope separates them. The electrostatic force has a horizontal component that results in the leaves moving apart as well as a vertical component that is balanced by the gravitational force. Similarly, the electroscope can be negatively charged by contact with a negatively charged object.

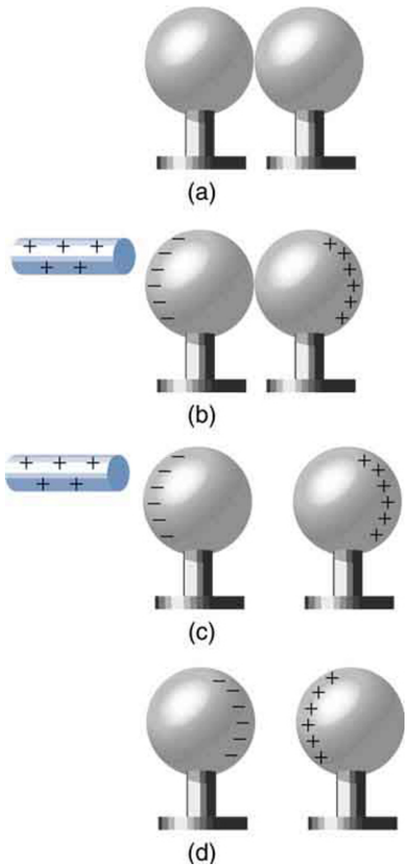
Charging by Induction

It is not necessary to transfer excess charge directly to an object in order to charge it. [link] shows a method of **induction** wherein a charge is created in a nearby object, without direct contact. Here we see two neutral metal spheres in contact with one another but insulated from the rest of the world.

A positively charged rod is brought near one of them, attracting negative charge to that side, leaving the other sphere positively charged.

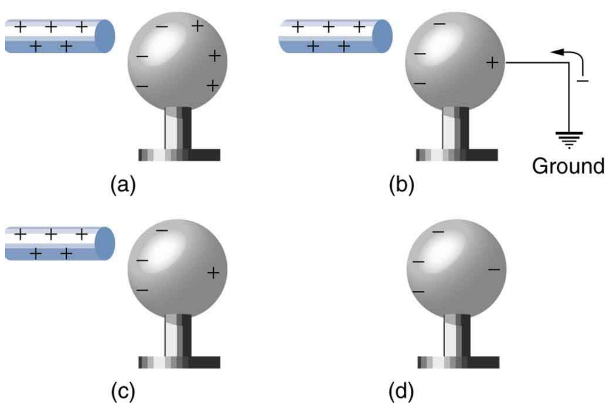
This is an example of induced **polarization** of neutral objects. Polarization is the separation of charges in an object that remains neutral. If the spheres are now separated (before the rod is pulled away), each sphere will have a net charge. Note that the object closest to the charged rod receives an opposite charge when charged by induction. Note also that no charge is removed from the charged rod, so that this process can be repeated without depleting the supply of excess charge.

Another method of charging by induction is shown in [link]. The neutral metal sphere is polarized when a charged rod is brought near it. The sphere is then grounded, meaning that a conducting wire is run from the sphere to the ground. Since the earth is large and most ground is a good conductor, it can supply or accept excess charge easily. In this case, electrons are attracted to the sphere through a wire called the ground wire, because it supplies a conducting path to the ground. The ground connection is broken before the charged rod is removed, leaving the sphere with an excess charge opposite to that of the rod. Again, an opposite charge is achieved when charging by induction and the charged rod loses none of its excess charge.



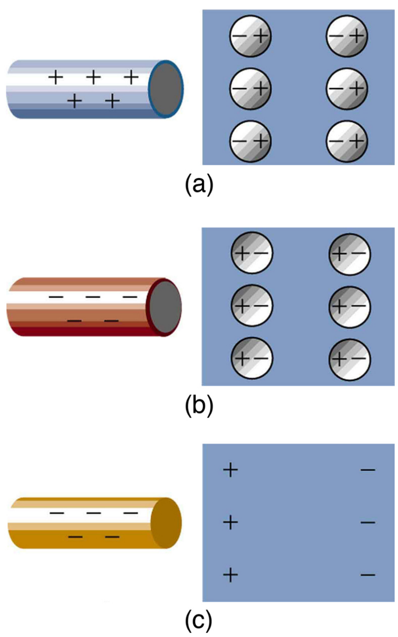
Charging by induction. (a) Two uncharged or neutral metal spheres are in contact with each other but insulated from the rest of the world. (b) A positively charged glass rod is brought near the sphere on the left, attracting negative charge and leaving the other sphere positively charged. (c) The

spheres are separated before the rod is removed, thus separating negative and positive charge. (d) The spheres retain net charges after the inducing rod is removed—without ever having been touched by a charged object.



Charging by induction, using a ground connection. (a) A positively charged rod is brought near a neutral metal sphere, polarizing it. (b) The sphere is grounded, allowing electrons to be attracted from the earth's ample supply. (c) The ground connection is broken. (d) The positive rod is

removed, leaving the sphere with an induced negative charge.



Both positive and negative objects attract a neutral object by polarizing its molecules. (a) A positive object brought near a neutral insulator polarizes its molecules. There is a slight shift in the distribution of the electrons orbiting the molecule, with

unlike charges being brought nearer and like charges moved away. Since the electrostatic force decreases with distance, there is a net attraction. (b) A negative object produces the opposite polarization, but again attracts the neutral object. (c) The same effect occurs for a conductor; since the unlike charges are closer, there is a net attraction.

Neutral objects can be attracted to any charged object. The pieces of straw attracted to polished amber are neutral, for example. If you run a plastic comb through your hair, the charged comb can pick up neutral pieces of paper. [link] shows how the polarization of atoms and molecules in neutral objects results in their attraction to a charged object.

When a charged rod is brought near a neutral substance, an insulator in this case, the distribution of charge in atoms and molecules is shifted slightly. Opposite charge is attracted nearer the external charged rod, while like charge is repelled. Since the electrostatic force decreases with distance, the repulsion of like charges is weaker than the attraction of unlike charges, and so there is a net attraction. Thus a positively charged glass rod attracts neutral pieces of paper, as will a negatively charged rubber rod. Some

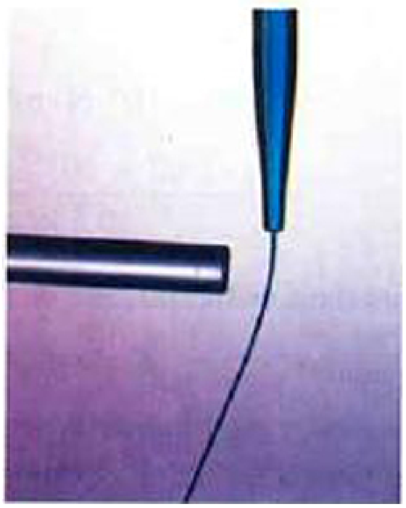
molecules, like water, are polar molecules. Polar molecules have a natural or inherent separation of charge, although they are neutral overall. Polar molecules are particularly affected by other charged objects and show greater polarization effects than molecules with naturally uniform charge distributions.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Can you explain the attraction of water to the charged rod in the figure below?



Solution:

Answer

Water molecules are polarized, giving them slightly positive and slightly negative sides. This makes water even more susceptible to a charged rod's attraction. As the water flows downward, due to the force of gravity, the charged conductor exerts a net attraction to the opposite charges in the stream of water, pulling it closer.

Note:

PhET Explorations: John Travoltage

Make sparks fly with John Travoltage. Wiggle Johnnie's foot and he picks up charges from the carpet. Bring his hand close to the door knob and get rid of the excess charge.

https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/john-travoltage/latest/john-travoltage_en.html

Section Summary

- Polarization is the separation of positive and negative charges in a neutral object.
- A conductor is a substance that allows charge to flow freely through its atomic structure.
- An insulator holds charge within its atomic structure.
- Objects with like charges repel each other, while those with unlike charges attract each other.
- A conducting object is said to be grounded if it is connected to the Earth through a conductor. Grounding allows transfer of charge to and from the earth’s large reservoir.
- Objects can be charged by contact with another charged object and obtain the same sign charge.
- If an object is temporarily grounded, it can be charged by induction, and obtains the opposite sign charge.
- Polarized objects have their positive and negative charges concentrated in different areas, giving them a non-symmetrical charge.
- Polar molecules have an inherent separation of charge.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

An eccentric inventor attempts to levitate by first placing a large negative charge on himself and then putting a large positive charge on the ceiling of his workshop. Instead, while attempting to place a large negative charge on himself, his clothes fly off. Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

If you have charged an electroscope by contact with a positively charged object, describe how you could use it to determine the charge of other objects. Specifically, what would the leaves of the electroscope do if other charged objects were brought near its knob?

Exercise:

Problem:

When a glass rod is rubbed with silk, it becomes positive and the silk becomes negative—yet both attract dust. Does the dust have a third type of charge that is attracted to both positive and negative? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why does a car always attract dust right after it is polished? (Note that car wax and car tires are insulators.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Describe how a positively charged object can be used to give another object a negative charge. What is the name of this process?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is grounding? What effect does it have on a charged conductor? On a charged insulator?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a speck of dust in an electrostatic precipitator has 1.0000×10^{12} protons in it and has a net charge of –5.00 nC (a very large charge for a small speck). How many electrons does it have?

Solution:

1.03×10^{12}

Exercise:

Problem:

An amoeba has 1.00×10^{16} protons and a net charge of 0.300 pC. (a) How many fewer electrons are there than protons? (b) If you paired them up, what fraction of the protons would have no electrons?

Exercise:

Problem:

A 50.0 g ball of copper has a net charge of $2.00\ \mu\text{C}$. What fraction of the copper's electrons has been removed? (Each copper atom has 29 protons, and copper has an atomic mass of 63.5.)

Solution:

9.09×10^{-13}

Exercise:

Problem:

What net charge would you place on a 100 g piece of sulfur if you put an extra electron on 1 in 10^{12} of its atoms? (Sulfur has an atomic mass of 32.1.)

Exercise:

Problem:

How many coulombs of positive charge are there in 4.00 kg of plutonium, given its atomic mass is 244 and that each plutonium atom has 94 protons?

Solution:

1.48×10^8 C

Glossary

free electron
: an electron that is free to move away from its atomic orbit

conductor
: a material that allows electrons to move separately from their atomic orbits

insulator
: a material that holds electrons securely within their atomic orbits

grounded
: when a conductor is connected to the Earth, allowing charge to freely flow to and from Earth's unlimited reservoir

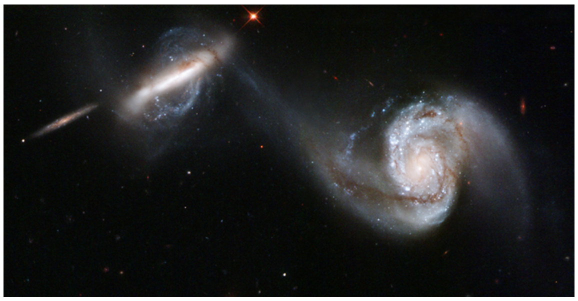
induction
: the process by which an electrically charged object brought near a neutral object creates a charge in that object

polarization
: slight shifting of positive and negative charges to opposite sides of an atom or molecule

electrostatic repulsion
: the phenomenon of two objects with like charges repelling each other

Coulomb’s Law

- State Coulomb’s law in terms of how the electrostatic force changes with the distance between two objects.
- Calculate the electrostatic force between two charged point forces, such as electrons or protons.
- Compare the electrostatic force to the gravitational attraction for a proton and an electron; for a human and the Earth.



This NASA image of Arp 87 shows the result of a strong gravitational attraction between two galaxies. In contrast, at the subatomic level, the electrostatic attraction between two objects, such as an electron and a proton, is far greater than their mutual attraction due to gravity. (credit: NASA/HST)

Through the work of scientists in the late 18th century, the main features of the **electrostatic force**—the existence of two types of charge, the observation that like charges repel, unlike charges attract, and the decrease of force with distance—were eventually refined, and expressed as a mathematical formula. The mathematical formula for the electrostatic force is called **Coulomb’s law** after the French physicist Charles Coulomb (1736–1806), who performed experiments and first proposed a formula to calculate it.

Note:
Coulomb’s Law
Equation:

$$F = k\frac{|q_1 q_2|}{r^2}.$$

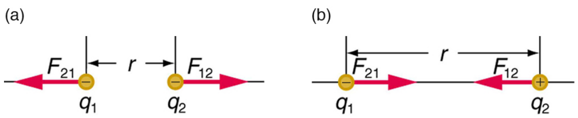
Coulomb’s law calculates the magnitude of the force F between two point charges, q_1 and q_2, separated by a distance r. In SI units, the constant k is equal to

Equation:

$$k = 8.988 \times 10^9 \frac{\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2}{\text{C}^2} \approx 8.99 \times 10^9 \frac{\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2}{\text{C}^2}.$$

The electrostatic force is a vector quantity and is expressed in units of newtons. The force is understood to be along the line joining the two charges. (See [link].)

Although the formula for Coulomb’s law is simple, it was no mean task to prove it. The experiments Coulomb did, with the primitive equipment then available, were difficult. Modern experiments have verified Coulomb’s law to great precision. For example, it has been shown that the force is inversely proportional to distance between two objects squared $\left(F \propto 1/r^2\right)$ to an accuracy of 1 part in 10^{16}. No exceptions have ever been found, even at the small distances within the atom.



The magnitude of the electrostatic force F between point charges q_1 and q_2 separated by a distance r is given by Coulomb’s law. Note that Newton’s third law (every force exerted creates an equal and opposite force) applies as usual—the force on q_1 is equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the force it exerts on q_2. (a) Like charges. (b) Unlike charges.

Example:

How Strong is the Coulomb Force Relative to the Gravitational Force?

Compare the electrostatic force between an electron and proton separated by 0.530×10^{-10} m with the gravitational force between them. This distance is their average separation in a hydrogen atom.

Strategy

To compare the two forces, we first compute the electrostatic force using Coulomb’s law, $F = k\frac{|q_1 q_2|}{r^2}$. We then calculate the gravitational force using Newton’s universal law of

gravitation. Finally, we take a ratio to see how the forces compare in magnitude.

Solution

Entering the given and known information about the charges and separation of the electron and proton into the expression of Coulomb's law yields

Equation:

$$F = k\frac{|q_1 q_2|}{r^2}$$

Equation:

$$= \left(8.99 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/C^2}\right) \times \frac{(1.60\times10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C})(1.60\times10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C})}{(0.530\times10^{-10}\ \mathrm{m})^2}$$

Thus the Coulomb force is

Equation:

$$F = 8.19 \times 10^{-8}\ \mathrm{N}.$$

The charges are opposite in sign, so this is an attractive force. This is a very large force for an electron—it would cause an acceleration of $8.99 \times 10^{22}\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$(verification is left as an end-of-section problem).The gravitational force is given by Newton's law of gravitation as:

Equation:

$$F_G = G\frac{mM}{r^2},$$

where $G = 6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/kg^2}$. Here m and M represent the electron and proton masses, which can be found in the appendices. Entering values for the knowns yields

Equation:

$$F_G = (6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/kg^2}) \times \frac{(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \mathrm{kg})(1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ \mathrm{kg})}{(0.530 \times 10^{-10}\ \mathrm{m})^2} = 3.61 \times 10^{-47}\ \mathrm{N}$$

This is also an attractive force, although it is traditionally shown as positive since gravitational force is always attractive. The ratio of the magnitude of the electrostatic force to gravitational force in this case is, thus,

Equation:

$$\frac{F}{F_G} = 2.27 \times 10^{39}.$$

Discussion

This is a remarkably large ratio! Note that this will be the ratio of electrostatic force to gravitational force for an electron and a proton at any distance (taking the ratio before entering numerical values shows that the distance cancels). This ratio gives some indication

of just how much larger the Coulomb force is than the gravitational force between two of the most common particles in nature.

As the example implies, gravitational force is completely negligible on a small scale, where the interactions of individual charged particles are important. On a large scale, such as between the Earth and a person, the reverse is true. Most objects are nearly electrically neutral, and so attractive and repulsive **Coulomb forces** nearly cancel. Gravitational force on a large scale dominates interactions between large objects because it is always attractive, while Coulomb forces tend to cancel.

Section Summary

- Frenchman Charles Coulomb was the first to publish the mathematical equation that describes the electrostatic force between two objects.
- Coulomb's law gives the magnitude of the force between point charges. It is
  Equation:

  $$F = k\frac{|q_1 q_2|}{r^2},$$

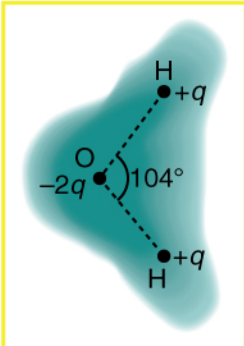
  where q_1 and q_2 are two point charges separated by a distance r, and $k \approx 8.99 \times 10^9 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$
- This Coulomb force is extremely basic, since most charges are due to point-like particles. It is responsible for all electrostatic effects and underlies most macroscopic forces.
- The Coulomb force is extraordinarily strong compared with the gravitational force, another basic force—but unlike gravitational force it can cancel, since it can be either attractive or repulsive.
- The electrostatic force between two subatomic particles is far greater than the gravitational force between the same two particles.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows the charge distribution in a water molecule, which is called a polar molecule because it has an inherent separation of charge. Given water's polar character, explain what effect humidity has on removing excess charge from objects.



Schematic representation of the outer electron cloud of a neutral water molecule. The electrons spend more time near the oxygen than the hydrogens, giving a permanent charge separation as shown. Water is thus a *polar molecule*. It is more easily affected by electrostatic forces than molecules with uniform charge distributions.

Exercise:

Problem:

Using [link], explain, in terms of Coulomb's law, why a polar molecule (such as in [link]) is attracted by both positive and negative charges.

Exercise:

Problem:

Given the polar character of water molecules, explain how ions in the air form nucleation centers for rain droplets.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the repulsive force between two pith balls that are 8.00 cm apart and have equal charges of – 30.0 nC?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How strong is the attractive force between a glass rod with a $0.700\ \mu\text{C}$ charge and a silk cloth with a $-0.600\ \mu\text{C}$ charge, which are 12.0 cm apart, using the approximation that they act like point charges? (b) Discuss how the answer to this problem might be affected if the charges are distributed over some area and do not act like point charges.

Solution:

(a) 0.263 N

(b) If the charges are distributed over some area, there will be a concentration of charge along the side closest to the oppositely charged object. This effect will increase the net force.

Exercise:

Problem:

Two point charges exert a 5.00 N force on each other. What will the force become if the distance between them is increased by a factor of three?

Exercise:

Problem:

Two point charges are brought closer together, increasing the force between them by a factor of 25. By what factor was their separation decreased?

Solution:

The separation decreased by a factor of 5.

Exercise:

Problem:

How far apart must two point charges of 75.0 nC (typical of static electricity) be to have a force of 1.00 N between them?

Exercise:

Problem:

If two equal charges each of 1 C each are separated in air by a distance of 1 km, what is the magnitude of the force acting between them? You will see that even at a distance as large as 1 km, the repulsive force is substantial because 1 C is a very significant amount of charge.

Exercise:

Problem:

A test charge of $+2\ \mu\text{C}$ is placed halfway between a charge of $+6\ \mu\text{C}$ and another of $+4\ \mu\text{C}$ separated by 10 cm. (a) What is the magnitude of the force on the test charge? (b) What is the direction of this force (away from or toward the $+6\ \mu\text{C}$ charge)?

Exercise:

Problem:

Bare free charges do not remain stationary when close together. To illustrate this, calculate the acceleration of two isolated protons separated by 2.00 nm (a typical distance between gas atoms). Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for electrostatics.

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned} F &= k\frac{|q_1q_2|}{r^2} = ma \Rightarrow a = \frac{kq^2}{mr^2} \\ &= \frac{\left(9.00\times10^9\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{C}^2\right)\left(1.60\times10^{-19}\ \text{m}\right)^2}{\left(1.67\times10^{-27}\ \text{kg}\right)\left(2.00\times10^{-9}\ \text{m}\right)^2} \\ &= 3.45\times10^{16}\ \text{m/s}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) By what factor must you change the distance between two point charges to change the force between them by a factor of 10? (b) Explain how the distance can either increase or decrease by this factor and still cause a factor of 10 change in the force.

Solution:

(a) 3.2

(b) If the distance increases by 3.2, then the force will decrease by a factor of 10 ; if the distance decreases by 3.2, then the force will increase by a factor of 10. Either way, the force changes by a factor of 10.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a total charge q_{tot} that you can split in any manner. Once split, the separation distance is fixed. How do you split the charge to achieve the greatest force?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Common transparent tape becomes charged when pulled from a dispenser. If one piece is placed above another, the repulsive force can be great enough to support the top piece's weight. Assuming equal point charges (only an approximation), calculate the magnitude of the charge if electrostatic force is great enough to support the weight of a 10.0 mg piece of tape held 1.00 cm above another. (b) Discuss whether the magnitude of this charge is consistent with what is typical of static electricity.

Solution:

(a) 1.04×10^{-9} C

(b) This charge is approximately 1 nC, which is consistent with the magnitude of charge typical for static electricity

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the ratio of the electrostatic to gravitational force between two electrons. (b) What is this ratio for two protons? (c) Why is the ratio different for electrons and protons?

Exercise:

Problem:

At what distance is the electrostatic force between two protons equal to the weight of one proton?

Exercise:

Problem:

A certain five cent coin contains 5.00 g of nickel. What fraction of the nickel atoms' electrons, removed and placed 1.00 m above it, would support the weight of this coin? The atomic mass of nickel is 58.7, and each nickel atom contains 28 electrons and 28 protons.

Solution:

1.02×10^{-11}

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Two point charges totaling $8.00\ \mu\text{C}$ exert a repulsive force of 0.150 N on one another when separated by 0.500 m. What is the charge on each? (b) What is the charge on each if the force is attractive?

Exercise:

Problem:

Point charges of $5.00\ \mu\text{C}$ and $-3.00\ \mu\text{C}$ are placed 0.250 m apart. (a) Where can a third charge be placed so that the net force on it is zero? (b) What if both charges are positive?

Solution:

a. 0.859 m beyond negative charge on line connecting two charges
b. 0.109 m from lesser charge on line connecting two charges

Exercise:

Problem:

Two point charges q_1 and q_2 are $3.00\ \text{m}$ apart, and their total charge is $20\ \mu\text{C}$. (a) If the force of repulsion between them is 0.075N, what are magnitudes of the two charges? (b) If one charge attracts the other with a force of 0.525N, what are the magnitudes of the two charges? Note that you may need to solve a quadratic equation to reach your answer.

Glossary

Coulomb's law
: the mathematical equation calculating the electrostatic force vector between two charged particles

Coulomb force
: another term for the electrostatic force

electrostatic force

the amount and direction of attraction or repulsion between two charged bodies

Electric Field: Concept of a Field Revisited

- Describe a force field and calculate the strength of an electric field due to a point charge.
- Calculate the force exerted on a test charge by an electric field.
- Explain the relationship between electrical force (F) on a test charge and electrical field strength (E).

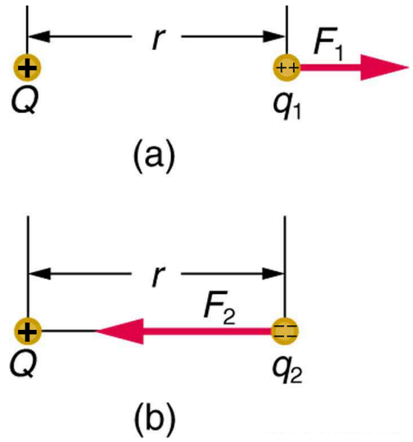
Contact forces, such as between a baseball and a bat, are explained on the small scale by the interaction of the charges in atoms and molecules in close proximity. They interact through forces that include the **Coulomb force**. Action at a distance is a force between objects that are not close enough for their atoms to "touch." That is, they are separated by more than a few atomic diameters.

For example, a charged rubber comb attracts neutral bits of paper from a distance via the Coulomb force. It is very useful to think of an object being surrounded in space by a **force field**. The force field carries the force to another object (called a test object) some distance away.

Concept of a Field

A field is a way of conceptualizing and mapping the force that surrounds any object and acts on another object at a distance without apparent physical connection. For example, the gravitational field surrounding the earth (and all other masses) represents the gravitational force that would be experienced if another mass were placed at a given point within the field.

In the same way, the Coulomb force field surrounding any charge extends throughout space. Using Coulomb's law, $F=k|q_1q_2|/r^2$, its magnitude is given by the equation $F=k|\ qQ\ |/r^2$, for a **point charge** (a particle having a charge Q) acting on a **test charge** q at a distance r (see [link]). Both the magnitude and direction of the Coulomb force field depend on Q and the test charge q.



The Coulomb force field due to a positive charge Q is shown acting on two different charges. Both charges are the same distance from Q. (a) Since q_1 is positive, the force F_1 acting on it is repulsive. (b) The charge q_2 is negative and greater in magnitude than q_1, and so the force F_2 acting on it is attractive and stronger than F_1. The Coulomb force field is thus not unique at any point in space, because it depends on the test charges q_1 and q_2

as well as the
charge Q.

To simplify things, we would prefer to have a field that depends only on Q and not on the test charge q. The electric field is defined in such a manner that it represents only the charge creating it and is unique at every point in space. Specifically, the electric field E is defined to be the ratio of the Coulomb force to the test charge:

Equation:

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{\mathbf{F}}{q},$$

where $\mathbf{F}$ is the electrostatic force (or Coulomb force) exerted on a positive test charge q. It is understood that $\mathbf{E}$ is in the same direction as $\mathbf{F}$. It is also assumed that q is so small that it does not alter the charge distribution creating the electric field. The units of electric field are newtons per coulomb (N/C). If the electric field is known, then the electrostatic force on any charge q is simply obtained by multiplying charge times electric field, or $\mathbf{F} = q\mathbf{E}$. Consider the electric field due to a point charge Q. According to Coulomb's law, the force it exerts on a test charge q is $F = k|\, qQ \,|/r^2$. Thus the magnitude of the electric field, E, for a point charge is

Equation:

$$E = \left|\frac{F}{q}\right| = k\left|\frac{\mathrm{qQ}}{qr^2}\right| = k\frac{|Q|}{r^2}.$$

Since the test charge cancels, we see that

Equation:

$$E = k\frac{|Q|}{r^2}.$$

The electric field is thus seen to depend only on the charge Q and the distance r; it is completely independent of the test charge q.

Example:
Calculating the Electric Field of a Point Charge
Calculate the strength and direction of the electric field E due to a point charge of 2.00 nC (nano-Coulombs) at a distance of 5.00 mm from the charge.
Strategy
We can find the electric field created by a point charge by using the equation $E = \mathrm{kQ}/r^2$.
Solution
Here $Q = 2.00 \times 10^{-9}$ C and $r = 5.00 \times 10^{-3}$ m. Entering those values into the above equation gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= k\frac{Q}{r^2} \\ &= (8.99 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/C^2}) \times \frac{(2.00 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{C})}{(5.00 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m})^2} \\ &= 7.19 \times 10^5\ \mathrm{N/C.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
This **electric field strength** is the same at any point 5.00 mm away from the charge Q that creates the field. It is positive, meaning that it has a direction pointing away from the charge Q.

Example:
Calculating the Force Exerted on a Point Charge by an Electric Field
What force does the electric field found in the previous example exert on a point charge of –0.250 μC?
Strategy
Since we know the electric field strength and the charge in the field, the force on that charge can be calculated using the definition of electric field

$\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{F}/q$ rearranged to $\mathbf{F} = q\mathbf{E}$.
Solution
The magnitude of the force on a charge $q = -0.250\ \mu\text{C}$ exerted by a field of strength $E = 7.20 \times 10^5$ N/C is thus,
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} F &= -qE \\ &= (0.250 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{C})(7.20 \times 10^5\ \text{N/C}) \\ &= 0.180\ \text{N}. \end{aligned}$$

Because q is negative, the force is directed opposite to the direction of the field.
Discussion
The force is attractive, as expected for unlike charges. (The field was created by a positive charge and here acts on a negative charge.) The charges in this example are typical of common static electricity, and the modest attractive force obtained is similar to forces experienced in static cling and similar situations.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Electric Field of Dreams
Play ball! Add charges to the Field of Dreams and see how they react to the electric field. Turn on a background electric field and adjust the direction and magnitude.
https://archive.cnx.org/specials/ca9a78b4-06a7-11e6-b638-3bb71d1f0b42/electric-field-of-dreams/#sim-electric-field-of-dreams

Section Summary

- The electrostatic force field surrounding a charged object extends out into space in all directions.
- The electrostatic force exerted by a point charge on a test charge at a distance r depends on the charge of both charges, as well as the

distance between the two.

- The electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is defined to be
  Equation:

  $$\mathbf{E} = \frac{\mathbf{F}}{q,}$$

  where $\mathbf{F}$ is the Coulomb or electrostatic force exerted on a small positive test charge q. $\mathbf{E}$ has units of N/C.
- The magnitude of the electric field $\mathbf{E}$ created by a point charge Q is
  Equation:

  $$\mathbf{E} = k\frac{|Q|}{r^2}.$$

  where r is the distance from Q. The electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is a vector and fields due to multiple charges add like vectors.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why must the test charge q in the definition of the electric field be vanishingly small?

Exercise:

Problem:

Are the direction and magnitude of the Coulomb force unique at a given point in space? What about the electric field?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the magnitude and direction of an electric field that exerts a 2.00×10^{-5} N upward force on a –$1.75\ \mu$C charge?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the magnitude and direction of the force exerted on a $3.50\ \mu$C charge by a 250 N/C electric field that points due east?

Solution:

8.75×10^{-4} N

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the magnitude of the electric field 2.00 m from a point charge of 5.00 mC (such as found on the terminal of a Van de Graaff).

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What magnitude point charge creates a 10,000 N/C electric field at a distance of 0.250 m? (b) How large is the field at 10.0 m?

Solution:

(a) 6.94×10^{-8} C

(b) $6.25\ \mathrm{N/C}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the initial (from rest) acceleration of a proton in a $5.00 \times 10^6 \text{ N/C}$ electric field (such as created by a research Van de Graaff). Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for electrostatics.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the magnitude and direction of an electric field that exerts a $4.80 \times 10^{-17} \text{ N}$ westward force on an electron. (b) What magnitude and direction force does this field exert on a proton?

Solution:

(a) 300 N/C (east)

(b) $4.80 \times 10^{-17} \text{ N (east)}$

Glossary

field
: a map of the amount and direction of a force acting on other objects, extending out into space

point charge
: A charged particle, designated Q, generating an electric field

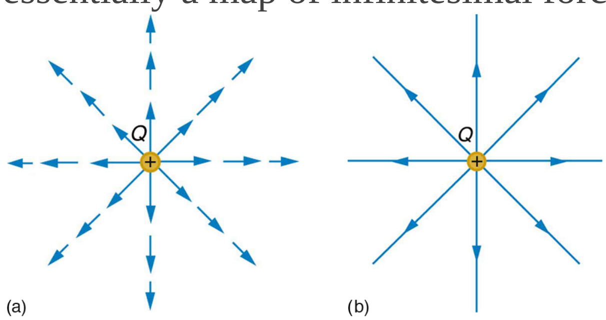
test charge
: A particle (designated q) with either a positive or negative charge set down within an electric field generated by a point charge

Electric Field Lines: Multiple Charges

- Calculate the total force (magnitude and direction) exerted on a test charge from more than one charge
- Describe an electric field diagram of a positive point charge; of a negative point charge with twice the magnitude of positive charge
- Draw the electric field lines between two points of the same charge; between two points of opposite charge.

Drawings using lines to represent **electric fields** around charged objects are very useful in visualizing field strength and direction. Since the electric field has both magnitude and direction, it is a vector. Like all **vectors**, the electric field can be represented by an arrow that has length proportional to its magnitude and that points in the correct direction. (We have used arrows extensively to represent force vectors, for example.)

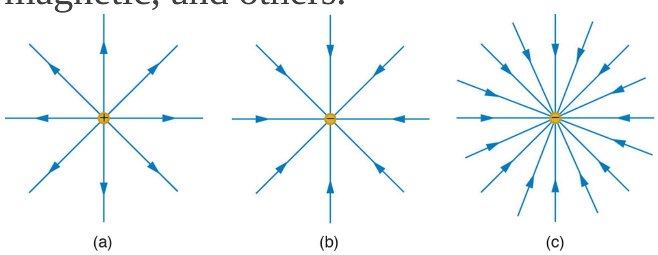
[link] shows two pictorial representations of the same electric field created by a positive point charge Q. [link] (b) shows the standard representation using continuous lines. [link] (a) shows numerous individual arrows with each arrow representing the force on a test charge q. Field lines are essentially a map of infinitesimal force vectors.



Two equivalent representations of the electric field due to a positive charge Q. (a) Arrows representing the electric field's magnitude and direction. (b) In the standard representation, the arrows are replaced by continuous field lines having the same direction at any point

as the electric field. The closeness of the lines is directly related to the strength of the electric field. A test charge placed anywhere will feel a force in the direction of the field line; this force will have a strength proportional to the density of the lines (being greater near the charge, for example).

Note that the electric field is defined for a positive test charge q, so that the field lines point away from a positive charge and toward a negative charge. (See [link].) The electric field strength is exactly proportional to the number of field lines per unit area, since the magnitude of the electric field for a point charge is $E = k|Q|/r^2$ and area is proportional to r^2. This pictorial representation, in which field lines represent the direction and their closeness (that is, their areal density or the number of lines crossing a unit area) represents strength, is used for all fields: electrostatic, gravitational, magnetic, and others.

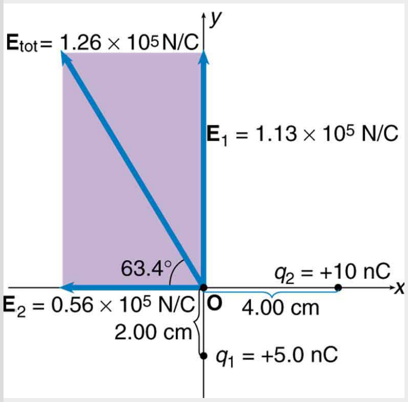


The electric field surrounding three different point charges. (a) A positive charge. (b) A negative charge of equal magnitude. (c) A larger negative charge.

In many situations, there are multiple charges. The total electric field created by multiple charges is the vector sum of the individual fields created by each charge. The following example shows how to add electric field vectors.

Example:
Adding Electric Fields

Find the magnitude and direction of the total electric field due to the two point charges, q_1 and q_2, at the origin of the coordinate system as shown in [link].



The electric fields $\mathbf{E}_1$ and $\mathbf{E}_2$ at the origin O add to $\mathbf{E}_{\text{tot}}$.

Strategy

Since the electric field is a vector (having magnitude and direction), we add electric fields with the same vector techniques used for other types of vectors. We first must find the electric field due to each charge at the point of interest, which is the origin of the coordinate system (O) in this instance. We pretend that there is a positive test charge, q, at point O, which allows us to determine the direction of the fields $\mathbf{E}_1$ and $\mathbf{E}_2$. Once those fields are found, the total field can be determined using **vector addition**.

Solution

The electric field strength at the origin due to q_1 is labeled E_1 and is calculated:

Equation:

$$E_1 = k\frac{q_1}{r_1^2} = \left(8.99 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/C^2}\right)\frac{\left(5.00 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{C}\right)}{\left(2.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m}\right)^2}$$

$$E_1 = 1.124 \times 10^5\ \mathrm{N/C}.$$

Similarly, E_2 is

Equation:

$$E_2 = k\frac{q_2}{r_2^2} = \left(8.99 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/C^2}\right)\frac{\left(10.0 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{C}\right)}{\left(4.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m}\right)^2}$$

$$E_2 = 0.5619 \times 10^5\ \mathrm{N/C}.$$

Four digits have been retained in this solution to illustrate that E_1 is exactly twice the magnitude of E_2. Now arrows are drawn to represent the magnitudes and directions of $\mathbf{E}_1$ and $\mathbf{E}_2$. (See [link].) The direction of the electric field is that of the force on a positive charge so both arrows point directly away from the positive charges that create them. The arrow for $\mathbf{E}_1$ is exactly twice the length of that for $\mathbf{E}_2$. The arrows form a right triangle in this case and can be added using the Pythagorean theorem. The magnitude of the total field E_{tot} is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{tot}} &= (E_1^2 + E_2^2)^{1/2} \\ &= \left\{(1.124 \times 10^5\ \mathrm{N/C})^2 + (0.5619 \times 10^5\ \mathrm{N/C})^2\right\}^{1/2} \\ &= 1.26 \times 10^5\ \mathrm{N/C}. \end{aligned}$$

The direction is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\theta &= \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{E_1}{E_2}\right)\\ &= \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{1.124\times10^5\ \text{N/C}}{0.5619\times10^5\ \text{N/C}}\right)\\ &= 63.4^{\text{o}},\end{aligned}$$

or 63.4^{o} above the *x*-axis.

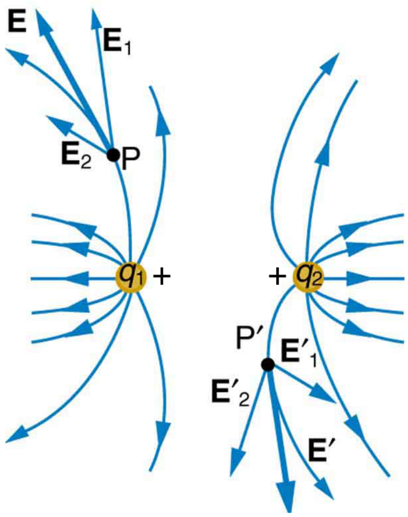
Discussion

In cases where the electric field vectors to be added are not perpendicular, vector components or graphical techniques can be used. The total electric field found in this example is the total electric field at only one point in space. To find the total electric field due to these two charges over an entire region, the same technique must be repeated for each point in the region. This impossibly lengthy task (there are an infinite number of points in space) can be avoided by calculating the total field at representative points and using some of the unifying features noted next.

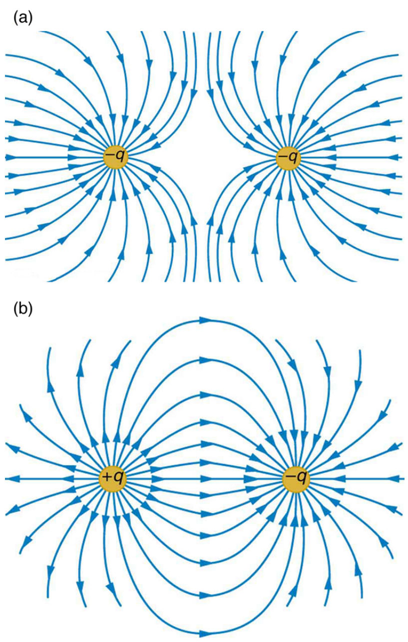
[link] shows how the electric field from two point charges can be drawn by finding the total field at representative points and drawing electric field lines consistent with those points. While the electric fields from multiple charges are more complex than those of single charges, some simple features are easily noticed.

For example, the field is weaker between like charges, as shown by the lines being farther apart in that region. (This is because the fields from each charge exert opposing forces on any charge placed between them.) (See [link] and [link](a).) Furthermore, at a great distance from two like charges, the field becomes identical to the field from a single, larger charge.

[link](b) shows the electric field of two unlike charges. The field is stronger between the charges. In that region, the fields from each charge are in the same direction, and so their strengths add. The field of two unlike charges is weak at large distances, because the fields of the individual charges are in opposite directions and so their strengths subtract. At very large distances, the field of two unlike charges looks like that of a smaller single charge.



Two positive point charges q_1 and q_2 produce the resultant electric field shown. The field is calculated at representative points and then smooth field lines drawn following the rules outlined in the text.



(a) Two negative charges produce the fields shown. It is very similar to the field produced by two positive charges, except that the directions are reversed. The field is clearly weaker between the charges. The individual forces on a test charge in that region are in opposite directions. (b) Two opposite charges produce the field shown, which is stronger in the region between the charges.

We use electric field lines to visualize and analyze electric fields (the lines are a pictorial tool, not a physical entity in themselves). The properties of electric field lines for any charge distribution can be summarized as follows:

1. Field lines must begin on positive charges and terminate on negative charges, or at infinity in the hypothetical case of isolated charges.
2. The number of field lines leaving a positive charge or entering a negative charge is proportional to the magnitude of the charge.
3. The strength of the field is proportional to the closeness of the field lines—more precisely, it is proportional to the number of lines per unit area perpendicular to the lines.
4. The direction of the electric field is tangent to the field line at any point in space.
5. Field lines can never cross.

The last property means that the field is unique at any point. The field line represents the direction of the field; so if they crossed, the field would have two directions at that location (an impossibility if the field is unique).

Note:
PhET Explorations: Charges and Fields
Move point charges around on the playing field and then view the electric field, voltages, equipotential lines, and more. It's colorful, it's dynamic, it's free.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/charges-and-fields/latest/charges-and-fields_en.html

Section Summary

- Drawings of electric field lines are useful visual tools. The properties of electric field lines for any charge distribution are that:
- Field lines must begin on positive charges and terminate on negative charges, or at infinity in the hypothetical case of isolated charges.
- The number of field lines leaving a positive charge or entering a negative charge is proportional to the magnitude of the charge.
- The strength of the field is proportional to the closeness of the field lines—more precisely, it is proportional to the number of lines per unit area perpendicular to the lines.
- The direction of the electric field is tangent to the field line at any point in space.
- Field lines can never cross.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

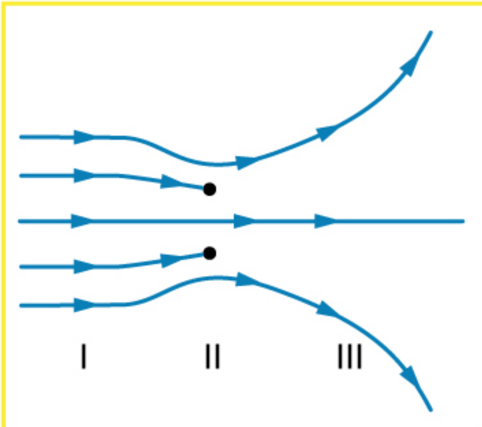
Problem:

Compare and contrast the Coulomb force field and the electric field. To do this, make a list of five properties for the Coulomb force field analogous to the five properties listed for electric field lines. Compare each item in your list of Coulomb force field properties with those of the electric field—are they the same or different? (For example, electric field lines cannot cross. Is the same true for Coulomb field lines?)

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows an electric field extending over three regions, labeled I, II, and III. Answer the following questions. (a) Are there any isolated charges? If so, in what region and what are their signs? (b) Where is the field strongest? (c) Where is it weakest? (d) Where is the field the most uniform?



Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Sketch the electric field lines near a point charge $+q$. (b) Do the same for a point charge $-3.00q$.

Exercise:

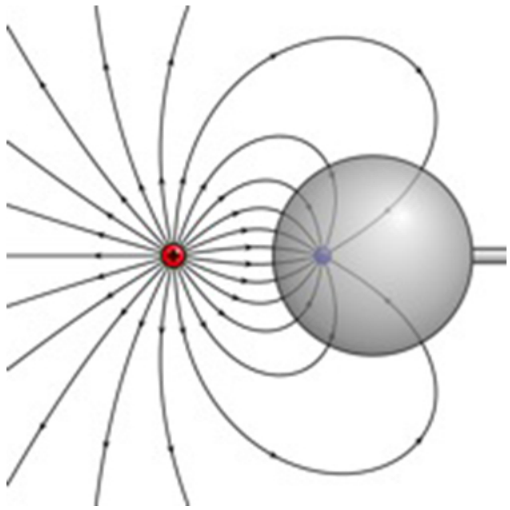
Problem:

Sketch the electric field lines a long distance from the charge distributions shown in [link] (a) and (b)

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows the electric field lines near two charges q_1 and q_2. What is the ratio of their magnitudes? (b) Sketch the electric field lines a long distance from the charges shown in the figure.



The electric field near two charges.

Exercise:

Problem:

Sketch the electric field lines in the vicinity of two opposite charges, where the negative charge is three times greater in magnitude than the positive. (See [link] for a similar situation).

Glossary

electric field
: a three-dimensional map of the electric force extended out into space from a point charge

electric field lines
: a series of lines drawn from a point charge representing the magnitude and direction of force exerted by that charge

vector
: a quantity with both magnitude and direction

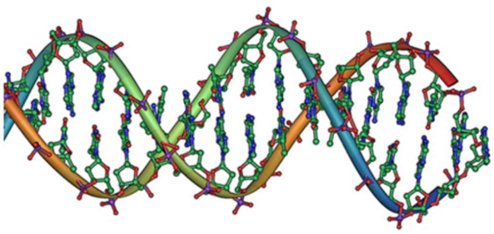
vector addition

mathematical combination of two or more vectors, including their magnitudes, directions, and positions

Electric Forces in Biology

- Describe how a water molecule is polar.
- Explain electrostatic screening by a water molecule within a living cell.

Classical electrostatics has an important role to play in modern molecular biology. Large molecules such as proteins, nucleic acids, and so on—so important to life—are usually electrically charged. DNA itself is highly charged; it is the electrostatic force that not only holds the molecule together but gives the molecule structure and strength. [link] is a schematic of the DNA double helix.



DNA is a highly charged molecule. The DNA double helix shows the two coiled strands each containing a row of nitrogenous bases, which “code” the genetic information needed by a living organism. The strands are connected by bonds between pairs of bases. While pairing combinations between certain bases are fixed (C-G and A-T), the sequence of nucleotides in the strand varies. (credit: Jerome Walker)

The four nucleotide bases are given the symbols A (adenine), C (cytosine), G (guanine), and T (thymine). The order of the four bases varies in each strand, but the pairing between bases is always the same. C and G are always paired and A and T are always paired, which helps to preserve the order of bases in cell division (mitosis) so as to pass on the correct genetic information. Since the Coulomb force drops with distance ($F \propto 1/r^2$), the distances between the base pairs must be small enough that the electrostatic force is sufficient to hold them together.

DNA is a highly charged molecule, with about $2q_{\text{e}}$ (fundamental charge) per 0.3×10^{-9} m. The distance separating the two strands that make up the DNA structure is about 1 nm, while the distance separating the individual atoms within each base is about 0.3 nm.

One might wonder why electrostatic forces do not play a larger role in biology than they do if we have so many charged molecules. The reason is that the electrostatic force is “diluted” due to **screening** between molecules. This is due to the presence of other charges in the cell.

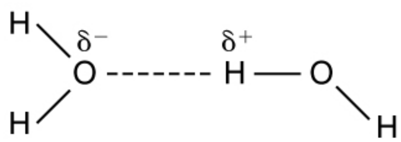
Polarity of Water Molecules

The best example of this charge screening is the water molecule, represented as H_2O. Water is a strongly **polar molecule**. Its 10 electrons (8 from the oxygen atom and 2 from the two hydrogen atoms) tend to remain closer to the oxygen nucleus than the hydrogen nuclei. This creates two centers of equal and opposite charges—what is called a **dipole**, as illustrated in [link]. The magnitude of the dipole is called the dipole moment.

These two centers of charge will terminate some of the electric field lines coming from a free charge, as on a DNA molecule. This results in a reduction in the strength of the **Coulomb interaction**. One might say that screening makes the Coulomb force a short range force rather than long range.

Other ions of importance in biology that can reduce or screen Coulomb interactions are Na^+, and K^+, and Cl^-. These ions are located both inside and outside of living cells. The movement of these ions through cell membranes is crucial to the motion of nerve impulses through nerve axons.

Recent studies of electrostatics in biology seem to show that electric fields in cells can be extended over larger distances, in spite of screening, by “microtubules” within the cell. These microtubules are hollow tubes composed of proteins that guide the movement of chromosomes when cells divide, the motion of other organisms within the cell, and provide mechanisms for motion of some cells (as motors).



This schematic shows water (H_2O) as a polar molecule. Unequal sharing of electrons between the oxygen (O) and hydrogen (H) atoms leads to a net separation of positive and negative charge—forming a dipole. The symbols δ^- and δ^+ indicate that the oxygen side of the H_2O molecule tends to be more negative, while the hydrogen ends tend

to be more positive. This leads to an attraction of opposite charges between molecules.

Section Summary

- Many molecules in living organisms, such as DNA, carry a charge.
- An uneven distribution of the positive and negative charges within a polar molecule produces a dipole.
- The effect of a Coulomb field generated by a charged object may be reduced or blocked by other nearby charged objects.
- Biological systems contain water, and because water molecules are polar, they have a strong effect on other molecules in living systems.

Conceptual Question

Exercise:

Problem:

A cell membrane is a thin layer enveloping a cell. The thickness of the membrane is much less than the size of the cell. In a static situation the membrane has a charge distribution of -2.5×10^{-6}C/m ^{2} on its inner surface and $+2.5 \times 10^{-6}$ C/m^2 on its outer surface. Draw a diagram of the cell and the surrounding cell membrane. Include on this diagram the charge distribution and the corresponding electric field. Is there any electric field inside the cell? Is there any electric field outside the cell?

Glossary

dipole

a molecule’s lack of symmetrical charge distribution, causing one side to be more positive and another to be more negative

polar molecule

a molecule with an asymmetrical distribution of positive and negative charge

screening

the dilution or blocking of an electrostatic force on a charged object by the presence of other charges nearby

Coulomb interaction

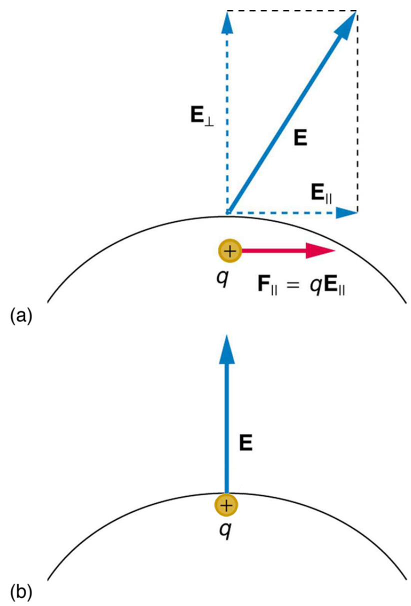
the interaction between two charged particles generated by the Coulomb forces they exert on one another

Conductors and Electric Fields in Static Equilibrium

- List the three properties of a conductor in electrostatic equilibrium.
- Explain the effect of an electric field on free charges in a conductor.
- Explain why no electric field may exist inside a conductor.
- Describe the electric field surrounding Earth.
- Explain what happens to an electric field applied to an irregular conductor.
- Describe how a lightning rod works.
- Explain how a metal car may protect passengers inside from the dangerous electric fields caused by a downed line touching the car.

Conductors contain **free charges** that move easily. When excess charge is placed on a conductor or the conductor is put into a static electric field, charges in the conductor quickly respond to reach a steady state called **electrostatic equilibrium**.

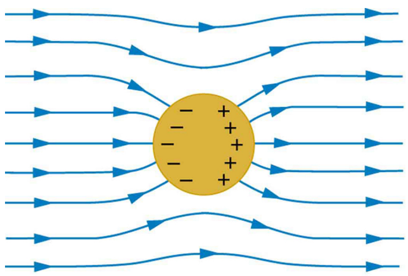
[link] shows the effect of an electric field on free charges in a conductor. The free charges move until the field is perpendicular to the conductor’s surface. There can be no component of the field parallel to the surface in electrostatic equilibrium, since, if there were, it would produce further movement of charge. A positive free charge is shown, but free charges can be either positive or negative and are, in fact, negative in metals. The motion of a positive charge is equivalent to the motion of a negative charge in the opposite direction.



When an electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is applied to a conductor, free charges inside the conductor move until the field is perpendicular to the surface. (a) The electric field is a vector quantity, with both parallel and perpendicular components. The parallel component ($\mathbf{E}_{||}$) exerts a force ($\mathbf{F}_{||}$) on the free charge q, which moves the charge until $\mathbf{F}_{||} = 0$. (b) The resulting field is perpendicular to the surface. The free charge has

been brought to the conductor’s surface, leaving electrostatic forces in equilibrium.

A conductor placed in an **electric field** will be **polarized**. [link] shows the result of placing a neutral conductor in an originally uniform electric field. The field becomes stronger near the conductor but entirely disappears inside it.

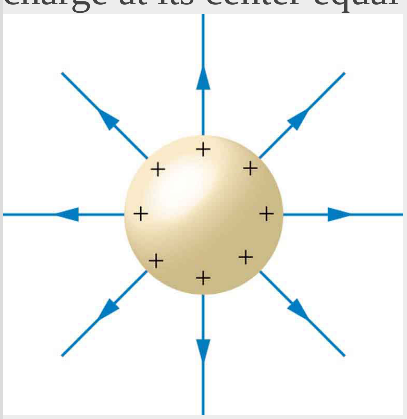


This illustration shows a spherical conductor in static equilibrium with an originally uniform electric field. Free charges move within the conductor, polarizing it, until the electric field lines are perpendicular to the surface. The field lines end on excess negative charge on one section of the surface and begin

again on excess positive charge on the opposite side. No electric field exists inside the conductor, since free charges in the conductor would continue moving in response to any field until it was neutralized.

Note:
Misconception Alert: Electric Field inside a Conductor

Excess charges placed on a spherical conductor repel and move until they are evenly distributed, as shown in [link]. Excess charge is forced to the surface until the field inside the conductor is zero. Outside the conductor, the field is exactly the same as if the conductor were replaced by a point charge at its center equal to the excess charge.



The mutual repulsion of excess positive charges on

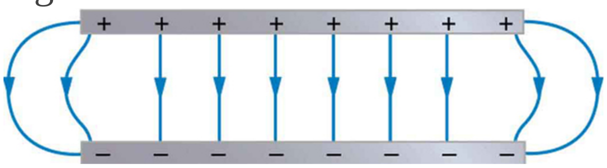
a spherical conductor distributes them uniformly on its surface. The resulting electric field is perpendicular to the surface and zero inside. Outside the conductor, the field is identical to that of a point charge at the center equal to the excess charge.

Note:
Properties of a Conductor in Electrostatic Equilibrium

1. The electric field is zero inside a conductor.
2. Just outside a conductor, the electric field lines are perpendicular to its surface, ending or beginning on charges on the surface.
3. Any excess charge resides entirely on the surface or surfaces of a conductor.

The properties of a conductor are consistent with the situations already discussed and can be used to analyze any conductor in electrostatic equilibrium. This can lead to some interesting new insights, such as described below.

How can a very uniform electric field be created? Consider a system of two metal plates with opposite charges on them, as shown in [link]. The properties of conductors in electrostatic equilibrium indicate that the electric field between the plates will be uniform in strength and direction. Except near the edges, the excess charges distribute themselves uniformly, producing field lines that are uniformly spaced (hence uniform in strength) and perpendicular to the surfaces (hence uniform in direction, since the plates are flat). The edge effects are less important when the plates are close together.



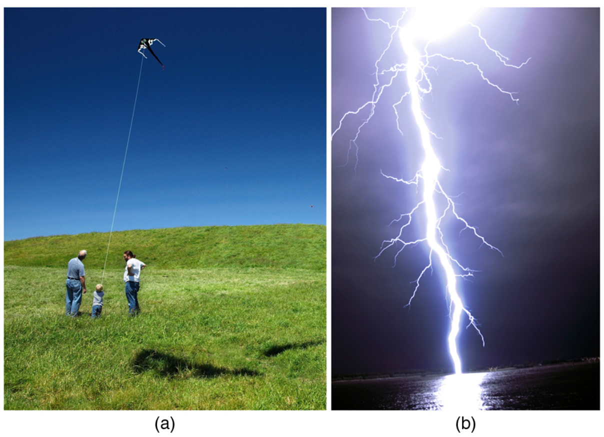
Two metal plates with equal, but opposite, excess charges. The field between them is uniform in strength and direction except near the edges. One use of such a field is to produce uniform acceleration of charges between the plates, such as in the electron gun of a TV tube.

Earth’s Electric Field

A near uniform electric field of approximately 150 N/C, directed downward, surrounds Earth, with the magnitude increasing slightly as we get closer to the surface. What causes the electric field? At around 100 km above the surface of Earth we have a layer of charged particles, called the **ionosphere**. The ionosphere is responsible for a range of phenomena including the electric field surrounding Earth. In fair weather the ionosphere is positive and the Earth largely negative, maintaining the electric field ([link](a)).

In storm conditions clouds form and localized electric fields can be larger and reversed in direction ([link](b)). The exact charge distributions depend on the local conditions, and variations of [link](b) are possible.

If the electric field is sufficiently large, the insulating properties of the surrounding material break down and it becomes conducting. For air this occurs at around 3×10^6 N/C. Air ionizes ions and electrons recombine, and we get discharge in the form of lightning sparks and corona discharge.



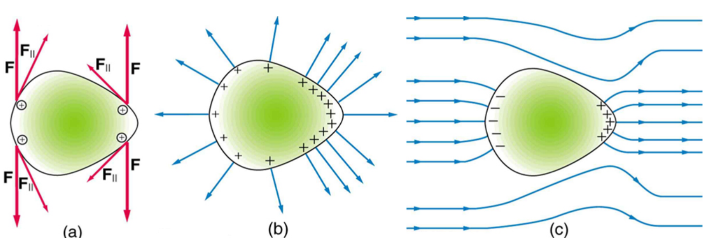
Earth’s electric field. (a) Fair weather field. Earth and the ionosphere (a layer of charged particles) are both conductors. They produce a uniform electric field of about 150 N/C. (credit: D. H. Parks) (b) Storm fields. In the presence of storm clouds, the local electric fields can be larger. At very high fields, the insulating properties of the air break down and lightning can occur. (credit: Jan-Joost Verhoef)

Electric Fields on Uneven Surfaces

So far we have considered excess charges on a smooth, symmetrical conductor surface. What happens if a conductor has sharp corners or is pointed? Excess charges on a nonuniform conductor become concentrated at the sharpest points. Additionally, excess charge may move on or off the conductor at the sharpest points.

To see how and why this happens, consider the charged conductor in [link]. The electrostatic repulsion of like charges is most effective in moving them apart on the flattest surface, and so they become least concentrated there. This is because the forces between identical pairs of charges at either end of the conductor are identical, but the components of the forces parallel to the surfaces are different. The component parallel to the surface is greatest on the flattest surface and, hence, more effective in moving the charge.

The same effect is produced on a conductor by an externally applied electric field, as seen in [link] (c). Since the field lines must be perpendicular to the surface, more of them are concentrated on the most curved parts.



Excess charge on a nonuniform conductor becomes most concentrated at the location of greatest curvature. (a) The forces between identical pairs of charges at either end of the conductor are identical, but the components of the forces parallel to the surface are different. It is $\mathbf{F}_{||}$ that moves the charges apart once they

have reached the surface. (b) $\mathbf{F}_{||}$ is smallest at the more pointed end, the charges are left closer together, producing the electric field shown. (c) An uncharged conductor in an originally uniform electric field is polarized, with the most concentrated charge at its most pointed end.

Applications of Conductors

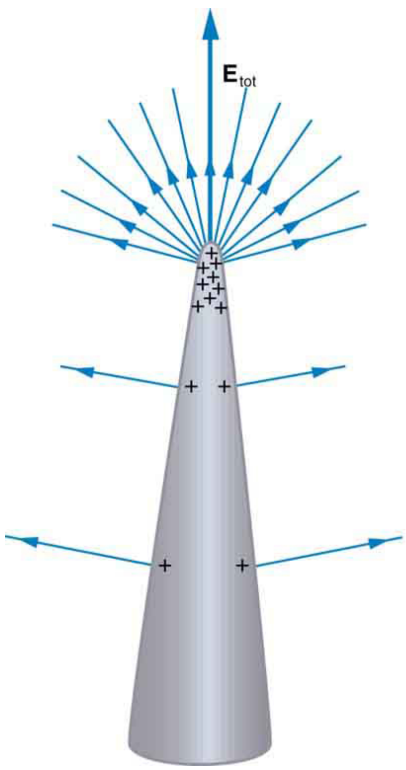
On a very sharply curved surface, such as shown in [link], the charges are so concentrated at the point that the resulting electric field can be great enough to remove them from the surface. This can be useful.

Lightning rods work best when they are most pointed. The large charges created in storm clouds induce an opposite charge on a building that can result in a lightning bolt hitting the building. The induced charge is bled away continually by a lightning rod, preventing the more dramatic lightning strike.

Of course, we sometimes wish to prevent the transfer of charge rather than to facilitate it. In that case, the conductor should be very smooth and have as large a radius of curvature as possible. (See [link].) Smooth surfaces are used on high-voltage transmission lines, for example, to avoid leakage of charge into the air.

Another device that makes use of some of these principles is a **Faraday cage**. This is a metal shield that encloses a volume. All electrical charges will reside on the outside surface of this shield, and there will be no electrical field inside. A Faraday cage is used to prohibit stray electrical fields in the environment from interfering with sensitive measurements, such as the electrical signals inside a nerve cell.

During electrical storms if you are driving a car, it is best to stay inside the car as its metal body acts as a Faraday cage with zero electrical field inside. If in the vicinity of a lightning strike, its effect is felt on the outside of the car and the inside is unaffected, provided you remain totally inside. This is also true if an active (“hot”) electrical wire was broken (in a storm or an accident) and fell on your car.



A very pointed conductor has a large charge concentration at the point. The electric field is very strong at the point and can exert a force large enough to transfer charge on or off the conductor.

Lightning rods are used to prevent the buildup of large excess charges on structures and, thus, are pointed.

(a) A lightning rod is pointed to facilitate the transfer of charge. (credit: Romaine, Wikimedia Commons) (b) This Van de Graaff generator has a smooth surface with a large radius of curvature to prevent the transfer of charge and allow a large voltage to be generated. The mutual repulsion of like charges is evident in the person’s hair while touching the metal sphere. (credit: Jon ‘ShakataGaNai’ Davis/Wikimedia Commons).

Section Summary

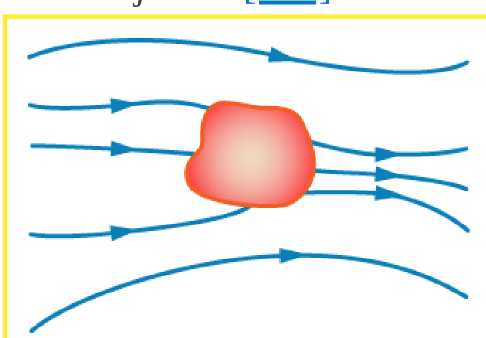
- A conductor allows free charges to move about within it.
- The electrical forces around a conductor will cause free charges to move around inside the conductor until static equilibrium is reached.
- Any excess charge will collect along the surface of a conductor.
- Conductors with sharp corners or points will collect more charge at those points.
- A lightning rod is a conductor with sharply pointed ends that collect excess charge on the building caused by an electrical storm and allow it to dissipate back into the air.
- Electrical storms result when the electrical field of Earth’s surface in certain locations becomes more strongly charged, due to changes in the insulating effect of the air.
- A Faraday cage acts like a shield around an object, preventing electric charge from penetrating inside.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Is the object in [link] a conductor or an insulator? Justify your answer.



Exercise:

Problem:

If the electric field lines in the figure above were perpendicular to the object, would it necessarily be a conductor? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

The discussion of the electric field between two parallel conducting plates, in this module states that edge effects are less important if the plates are close together. What does close mean? That is, is the actual plate separation crucial, or is the ratio of plate separation to plate area crucial?

Exercise:

Problem:

Would the self-created electric field at the end of a pointed conductor, such as a lightning rod, remove positive or negative charge from the conductor? Would the same sign charge be removed from a neutral pointed conductor by the application of a similar externally created electric field? (The answers to both questions have implications for charge transfer utilizing points.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Why is a golfer with a metal club over her shoulder vulnerable to lightning in an open fairway? Would she be any safer under a tree?

Exercise:

Problem:

Can the belt of a Van de Graaff accelerator be a conductor? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Are you relatively safe from lightning inside an automobile? Give two reasons.

Exercise:

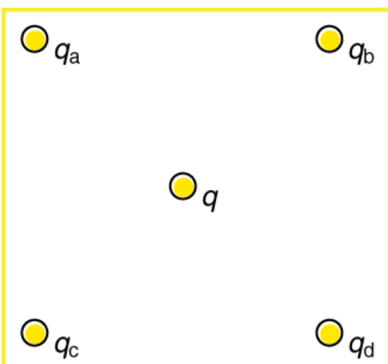
Problem:

Discuss pros and cons of a lightning rod being grounded versus simply being attached to a building.

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the symmetry of the arrangement, show that the net Coulomb force on the charge *q* at the center of the square below ([link]) is zero if the charges on the four corners are exactly equal.



Four point charges q_a, q_b, q_c, and q_d lie on the corners of a square and q is located at its center.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Using the symmetry of the arrangement, show that the electric field at the center of the square in [link] is zero if the charges on the four corners are exactly equal. (b) Show that this is also true for any combination of charges in which $q_a = q_d$ and $q_b = q_c$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the direction of the total Coulomb force on q in [link] if q is negative, $q_a = q_c$ and both are negative, and $q_b = q_c$ and both are positive? (b) What is the direction of the electric field at the center of the square in this situation?

Exercise:

Problem:

Considering [link], suppose that $q_a = q_d$ and $q_b = q_c$. First show that q is in static equilibrium. (You may neglect the gravitational force.) Then discuss whether the equilibrium is stable or unstable, noting that this may depend on the signs of the charges and the direction of displacement of q from the center of the square.

Exercise:

Problem:

If $q_a = 0$ in [link], under what conditions will there be no net Coulomb force on q?

Exercise:

Problem:

In regions of low humidity, one develops a special “grip” when opening car doors, or touching metal door knobs. This involves placing as much of the hand on the device as possible, not just the ends of one’s fingers. Discuss the induced charge and explain why this is done.

Exercise:

Problem:

Tollbooth stations on roadways and bridges usually have a piece of wire stuck in the pavement before them that will touch a car as it approaches. Why is this done?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a woman carries an excess charge. To maintain her charged status can she be standing on ground wearing just any pair of shoes? How would you discharge her? What are the consequences if she simply walks away?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Sketch the electric field lines in the vicinity of the conductor in [link] given the field was originally uniform and parallel to the object's long axis. Is the resulting field small near the long side of the object?

Exercise:

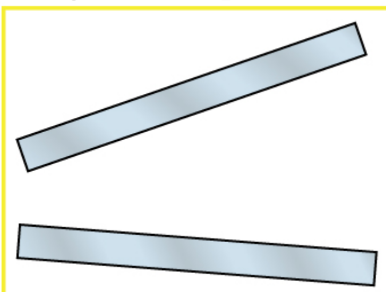
Problem:

Sketch the electric field lines in the vicinity of the conductor in [link] given the field was originally uniform and parallel to the object's long axis. Is the resulting field small near the long side of the object?

Exercise:

Problem:

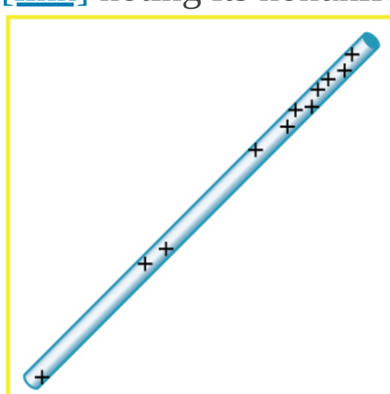
Sketch the electric field between the two conducting plates shown in [link], given the top plate is positive and an equal amount of negative charge is on the bottom plate. Be certain to indicate the distribution of charge on the plates.



Exercise:

Problem:

Sketch the electric field lines in the vicinity of the charged insulator in [link] noting its nonuniform charge distribution.



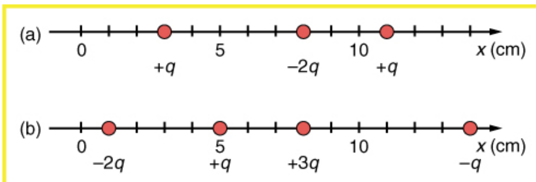
A charged
insulating rod such
as might be used in

a classroom demonstration.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the force on the charge located at $x = 8.00 \text{ cm}$ in [link](a) given that $q = 1.00\ \mu\text{C}$?



(a) Point charges located at 3.00, 8.00, and 11.0 cm along the *x*-axis. (b) Point charges located at 1.00, 5.00, 8.00, and 14.0 cm along the *x*-axis.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the total electric field at $x = 1.00 \text{ cm}$ in [link](b) given that $q = 5.00 \text{ nC}$. (b) Find the total electric field at $x = 11.00 \text{ cm}$ in [link](b). (c) If the charges are allowed to move and eventually be brought to rest by friction, what will the final charge configuration be? (That is, will there be a single charge, double charge, etc., and what will its value(s) be?)

Solution:

(a) $E_{x=1.00 \text{ cm}} = -\infty$

(b) $2.12 \times 10^5\ \mathrm{N/C}$

(c) one charge of $+q$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the electric field at $x = 5.00\ \mathrm{cm}$ in [link](a), given that $q = 1.00\ \mu\mathrm{C}$. (b) At what position between 3.00 and 8.00 cm is the total electric field the same as that for –$2q$ alone? (c) Can the electric field be zero anywhere between 0.00 and 8.00 cm? (d) At very large positive or negative values of *x*, the electric field approaches zero in both (a) and (b). In which does it most rapidly approach zero and why? (e) At what position to the right of 11.0 cm is the total electric field zero, other than at infinity? (Hint: A graphing calculator can yield considerable insight in this problem.)

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the total Coulomb force on a charge of 2.00 nC located at $x = 4.00\ \mathrm{cm}$ in [link] (b), given that $q = 1.00\ \mu\mathrm{C}$. (b) Find the *x*-position at which the electric field is zero in [link] (b).

Solution:

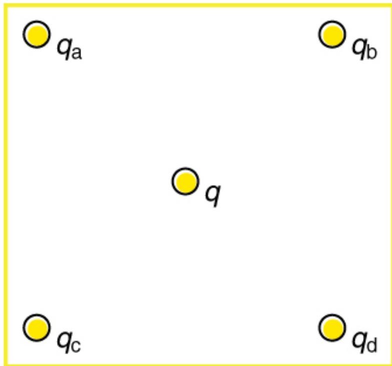
(a) 0.252 N to the left

(b) $x = 6.07\ \mathrm{cm}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the symmetry of the arrangement, determine the direction of the force on q in the figure below, given that $q_a = q_b$=$+7.50\ \mu\mathrm{C}$ and $q_c = q_d = -7.50\ \mu\mathrm{C}$. (b) Calculate the magnitude of the force on the charge q, given that the square is 10.0 cm on a side and $q = 2.00\ \mu\mathrm{C}$.



Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Using the symmetry of the arrangement, determine the direction of the electric field at the center of the square in [link], given that $q_a = q_b = -1.00\ \mu\text{C}$ and $q_c = q_d$=$+1.00\ \mu\text{C}$. (b) Calculate the magnitude of the electric field at the location of q, given that the square is 5.00 cm on a side.

Solution:

(a)The electric field at the center of the square will be straight up, since q_a and q_b are positive and q_c and q_d are negative and all have the same magnitude.

(b) $2.04 \times 10^7\ \text{N/C}\ (\text{upward})$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the electric field at the location of q_a in [link] given that $q_b = q_c = q_d$=$+2.00\ \text{nC}$, $q = -1.00\ \text{nC}$, and the square is 20.0 cm on a side.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the total Coulomb force on the charge q in [link], given that $q=1.00\ \mu C$, $q_a=2.00\ \mu C$, $q_b=-3.00\ \mu C$, $q_c=-4.00\ \mu C$, and q_d=$+1.00\ \mu C$. The square is 50.0 cm on a side.

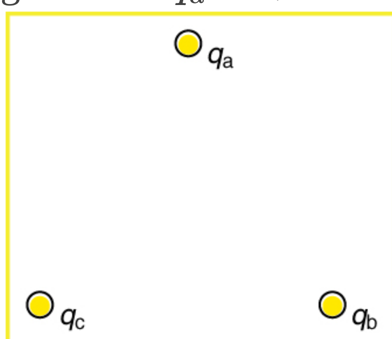
Solution:

$0.102\ N$, in the $-y$ direction

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the electric field at the location of q_a in [link], given that $q_{\mathrm{b}}=+10.00\ \mu C$ and $q_{\mathrm{c}}=-5.00\ \mu C$. (b) What is the force on q_a, given that $q_{\mathrm{a}}=+1.50\ \mathrm{nC}$?



Point charges located at the corners of an equilateral triangle 25.0 cm on a side.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the electric field at the center of the triangular configuration of charges in [link], given that q_a=$+2.50\text{ nC}$, $q_b = -8.00\text{ nC}$, and q_c=$+1.50\text{ nC}$. (b) Is there any combination of charges, other than $q_a = q_b = q_c$, that will produce a zero strength electric field at the center of the triangular configuration?

Solution:

(a) $\vec{E} = 4.36 \times 10^3\text{ N/C},\ 35.0$º, below the horizontal.

(b) No

Glossary

conductor
: an object with properties that allow charges to move about freely within it

free charge
: an electrical charge (either positive or negative) which can move about separately from its base molecule

electrostatic equilibrium
: an electrostatically balanced state in which all free electrical charges have stopped moving about

polarized
: a state in which the positive and negative charges within an object have collected in separate locations

ionosphere
: a layer of charged particles located around 100 km above the surface of Earth, which is responsible for a range of phenomena including the electric field surrounding Earth

Faraday cage

a metal shield which prevents electric charge from penetrating its surface

Applications of Electrostatics

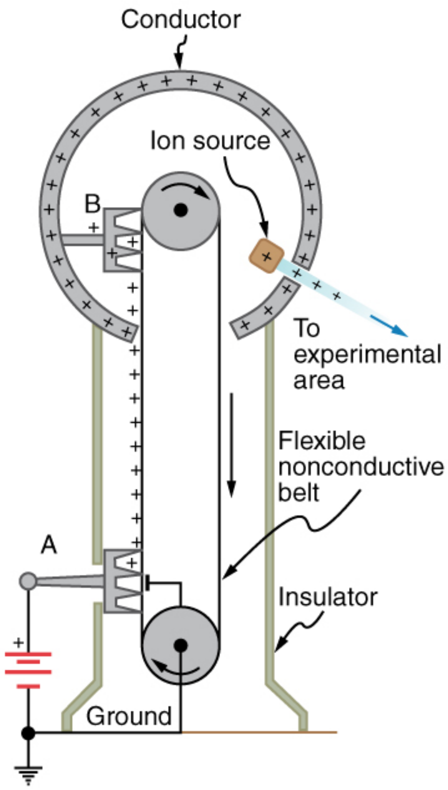
- Name several real-world applications of the study of electrostatics.

The study of **electrostatics** has proven useful in many areas. This module covers just a few of the many applications of electrostatics.

The Van de Graaff Generator

Van de Graaff generators (or Van de Graaffs) are not only spectacular devices used to demonstrate high voltage due to static electricity—they are also used for serious research. The first was built by Robert Van de Graaff in 1931 (based on original suggestions by Lord Kelvin) for use in nuclear physics research. [link] shows a schematic of a large research version. Van de Graaffs utilize both smooth and pointed surfaces, and conductors and insulators to generate large static charges and, hence, large voltages.

A very large excess charge can be deposited on the sphere, because it moves quickly to the outer surface. Practical limits arise because the large electric fields polarize and eventually ionize surrounding materials, creating free charges that neutralize excess charge or allow it to escape. Nevertheless, voltages of 15 million volts are well within practical limits.



Schematic of Van de Graaff generator. A battery (A) supplies excess positive charge to a pointed conductor, the points of which spray the charge onto a moving insulating belt near the bottom. The pointed conductor (B) on top in the large sphere picks up the charge. (The induced electric field at the points is so large that it removes the charge from the belt.) This can be done because the charge does not

remain inside the conducting sphere but moves to its outside surface. An ion source inside the sphere produces positive ions, which are accelerated away from the positive sphere to high velocities.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Electrostatics and Humidity
Rub a comb through your hair and use it to lift pieces of paper. It may help to tear the pieces of paper rather than cut them neatly. Repeat the exercise in your bathroom after you have had a long shower and the air in the bathroom is moist. Is it easier to get electrostatic effects in dry or moist air? Why would torn paper be more attractive to the comb than cut paper? Explain your observations.

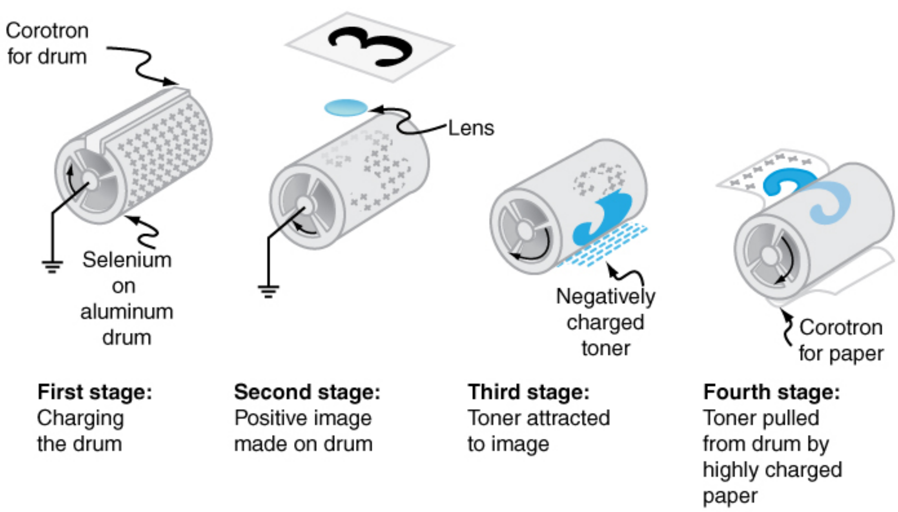
Xerography

Most copy machines use an electrostatic process called **xerography**—a word coined from the Greek words *xeros* for dry and *graphos* for writing. The heart of the process is shown in simplified form in [link].

A selenium-coated aluminum drum is sprayed with positive charge from points on a device called a corotron. Selenium is a substance with an interesting property—it is a **photoconductor**. That is, selenium is an insulator when in the dark and a conductor when exposed to light.

In the first stage of the xerography process, the conducting aluminum drum is **grounded** so that a negative charge is induced under the thin layer of uniformly positively charged selenium. In the second stage, the surface of the drum is exposed to the image of whatever is to be copied. Where the image is light, the selenium becomes conducting, and the positive charge is neutralized. In dark areas, the positive charge remains, and so the image has been transferred to the drum.

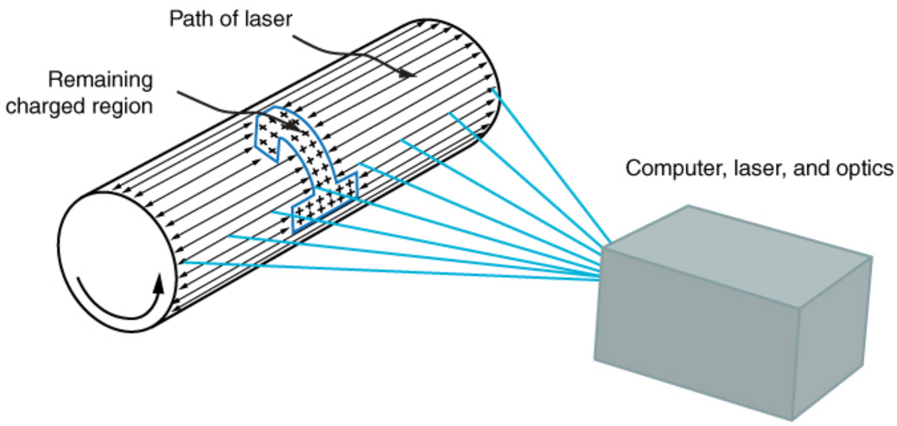
The third stage takes a dry black powder, called toner, and sprays it with a negative charge so that it will be attracted to the positive regions of the drum. Next, a blank piece of paper is given a greater positive charge than on the drum so that it will pull the toner from the drum. Finally, the paper and electrostatically held toner are passed through heated pressure rollers, which melt and permanently adhere the toner within the fibers of the paper.



Xerography is a dry copying process based on electrostatics. The major steps in the process are the charging of the photoconducting drum, transfer of an image creating a positive charge duplicate, attraction of toner to the charged parts of the drum, and transfer of toner to the paper. Not shown are heat treatment of the paper and cleansing of the drum for the next copy.

Laser Printers

Laser printers use the xerographic process to make high-quality images on paper, employing a laser to produce an image on the photoconducting drum as shown in [link]. In its most common application, the laser printer receives output from a computer, and it can achieve high-quality output because of the precision with which laser light can be controlled. Many laser printers do significant information processing, such as making sophisticated letters or fonts, and may contain a computer more powerful than the one giving them the raw data to be printed.

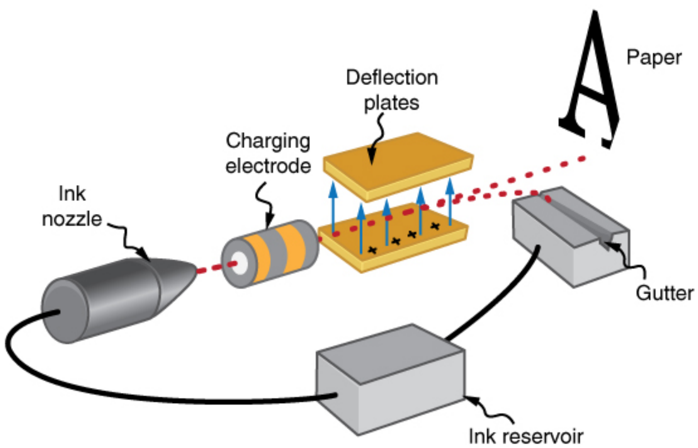


In a laser printer, a laser beam is scanned across a photoconducting drum, leaving a positive charge image. The other steps for charging the drum and transferring the image to paper are the same as in xerography. Laser light can be very precisely controlled, enabling laser printers to produce high-quality images.

Ink Jet Printers and Electrostatic Painting

The **ink jet printer**, commonly used to print computer-generated text and graphics, also employs electrostatics. A nozzle makes a fine spray of tiny ink droplets, which are then given an electrostatic charge. (See [link].)

Once charged, the droplets can be directed, using pairs of charged plates, with great precision to form letters and images on paper. Ink jet printers can produce color images by using a black jet and three other jets with primary colors, usually cyan, magenta, and yellow, much as a color television produces color. (This is more difficult with xerography, requiring multiple drums and toners.)



The nozzle of an ink-jet printer produces small ink droplets, which are sprayed with electrostatic charge. Various computer-driven devices are then used to direct the droplets to the correct positions on a page.

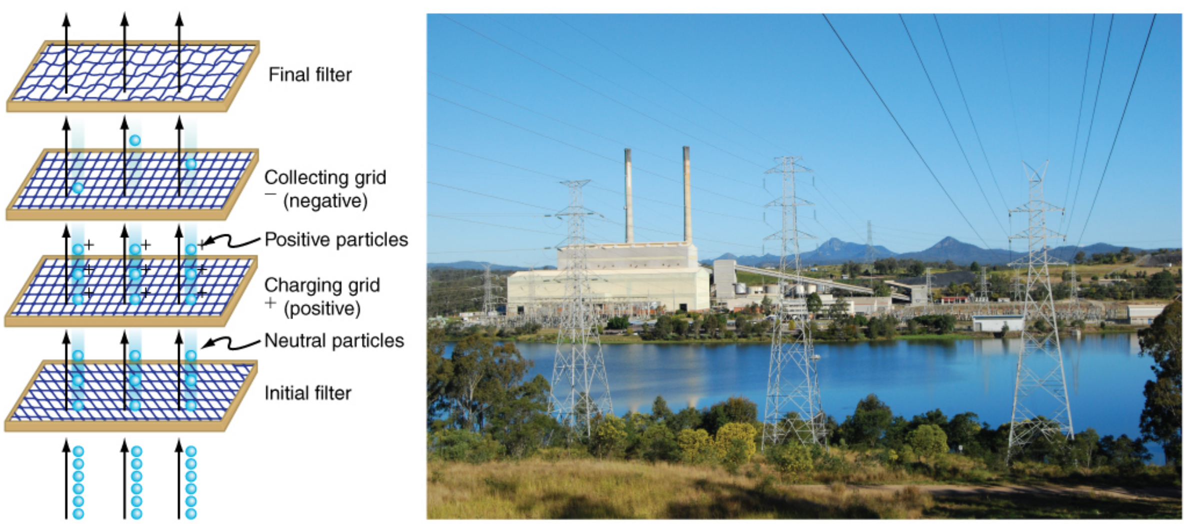
Electrostatic painting employs electrostatic charge to spray paint onto odd-shaped surfaces. Mutual repulsion of like charges causes the paint to fly away from its source. Surface tension forms drops, which are then attracted by unlike charges to the surface to be painted. Electrostatic painting can reach those hard-to-get at places, applying an even coat in a controlled

manner. If the object is a conductor, the electric field is perpendicular to the surface, tending to bring the drops in perpendicularly. Corners and points on conductors will receive extra paint. Felt can similarly be applied.

Smoke Precipitators and Electrostatic Air Cleaning

Another important application of electrostatics is found in air cleaners, both large and small. The electrostatic part of the process places excess (usually positive) charge on smoke, dust, pollen, and other particles in the air and then passes the air through an oppositely charged grid that attracts and retains the charged particles. (See [link].)

Large **electrostatic precipitators** are used industrially to remove over 99% of the particles from stack gas emissions associated with the burning of coal and oil. Home precipitators, often in conjunction with the home heating and air conditioning system, are very effective in removing polluting particles, irritants, and allergens.



(a) (b)

(a) Schematic of an electrostatic precipitator. Air is passed through grids of opposite charge. The first grid charges airborne particles, while the second attracts and collects them. (b) The dramatic effect of

electrostatic precipitators is seen by the absence of smoke from this power plant. (credit: Cmdalgleish, Wikimedia Commons)

Note:
Problem-Solving Strategies for Electrostatics

1. Examine the situation to determine if static electricity is involved. This may concern separated stationary charges, the forces among them, and the electric fields they create.
2. Identify the system of interest. This includes noting the number, locations, and types of charges involved.
3. Identify exactly what needs to be determined in the problem (identify the unknowns). A written list is useful. Determine whether the Coulomb force is to be considered directly—if so, it may be useful to draw a free-body diagram, using electric field lines.
4. Make a list of what is given or can be inferred from the problem as stated (identify the knowns). It is important to distinguish the Coulomb force F from the electric field E, for example.
5. Solve the appropriate equation for the quantity to be determined (the unknown) or draw the field lines as requested.
6. Examine the answer to see if it is reasonable: Does it make sense? Are units correct and the numbers involved reasonable?

Integrated Concepts

The Integrated Concepts exercises for this module involve concepts such as electric charges, electric fields, and several other topics. Physics is most interesting when applied to general situations involving more than a narrow set of physical principles. The electric field exerts force on charges, for example, and hence the relevance of Dynamics: Force and Newton’s Laws of Motion. The following topics are involved in some or all of the problems labeled “Integrated Concepts”:

- Kinematics
- Two-Dimensional Kinematics
- Dynamics: Force and Newton’s Laws of Motion
- Uniform Circular Motion and Gravitation
- Statics and Torque
- Fluid Statics

The following worked example illustrates how this strategy is applied to an Integrated Concept problem:

Example:
Acceleration of a Charged Drop of Gasoline
If steps are not taken to ground a gasoline pump, static electricity can be placed on gasoline when filling your car’s tank. Suppose a tiny drop of gasoline has a mass of 4.00×10^{-15} kg and is given a positive charge of 3.20×10^{-19} C. (a) Find the weight of the drop. (b) Calculate the electric force on the drop if there is an upward electric field of strength $3.00 \times 10^{5}\ \text{N/C}$ due to other static electricity in the vicinity. (c) Calculate the drop’s acceleration.
Strategy
To solve an integrated concept problem, we must first identify the physical principles involved and identify the chapters in which they are found. Part (a) of this example asks for weight. This is a topic of dynamics and is defined in Dynamics: Force and Newton’s Laws of Motion. Part (b) deals with electric force on a charge, a topic of Electric Charge and Electric Field. Part (c) asks for acceleration, knowing forces and mass. These are part of Newton’s laws, also found in Dynamics: Force and Newton’s Laws of Motion.
The following solutions to each part of the example illustrate how the specific problem-solving strategies are applied. These involve identifying knowns and unknowns, checking to see if the answer is reasonable, and so on.
Solution for (a)
Weight is mass times the acceleration due to gravity, as first expressed in
Equation:

$$w = \text{mg}.$$

Entering the given mass and the average acceleration due to gravity yields

Equation:

$$w = (4.00 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2) = 3.92 \times 10^{-14}\ \text{N}.$$

Discussion for (a)

This is a small weight, consistent with the small mass of the drop.

Solution for (b)

The force an electric field exerts on a charge is given by rearranging the following equation:

Equation:

$$F = \text{qE}.$$

Here we are given the charge (3.20×10^{-19} C is twice the fundamental unit of charge) and the electric field strength, and so the electric force is found to be

Equation:

$$F = (3.20 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C})(3.00 \times 10^{5}\ \text{N/C}) = 9.60 \times 10^{-14}\ \text{N}.$$

Discussion for (b)

While this is a small force, it is greater than the weight of the drop.

Solution for (c)

The acceleration can be found using Newton's second law, provided we can identify all of the external forces acting on the drop. We assume only the drop's weight and the electric force are significant. Since the drop has a positive charge and the electric field is given to be upward, the electric force is upward. We thus have a one-dimensional (vertical direction) problem, and we can state Newton's second law as

Equation:

$$a = \frac{F_{\text{net}}}{m}.$$

where $F_{\text{net}} = F - w$. Entering this and the known values into the expression for Newton’s second law yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} a &= \frac{F-w}{m} \\ &= \frac{9.60\times10^{-14}\ \text{N}-3.92\times10^{-14}\ \text{N}}{4.00\times10^{-15}\ \text{kg}} \\ &= 14.2\ \text{m/s}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (c)

This is an upward acceleration great enough to carry the drop to places where you might not wish to have gasoline.

This worked example illustrates how to apply problem-solving strategies to situations that include topics in different chapters. The first step is to identify the physical principles involved in the problem. The second step is to solve for the unknown using familiar problem-solving strategies. These are found throughout the text, and many worked examples show how to use them for single topics. In this integrated concepts example, you can see how to apply them across several topics. You will find these techniques useful in applications of physics outside a physics course, such as in your profession, in other science disciplines, and in everyday life. The following problems will build your skills in the broad application of physical principles.

Note:

Unreasonable Results

The Unreasonable Results exercises for this module have results that are unreasonable because some premise is unreasonable or because certain of the premises are inconsistent with one another. Physical principles applied correctly then produce unreasonable results. The purpose of these problems is to give practice in assessing whether nature is being accurately described, and if it is not to trace the source of difficulty.

Note:
Problem-Solving Strategy
To determine if an answer is reasonable, and to determine the cause if it is not, do the following.

1. Solve the problem using strategies as outlined above. Use the format followed in the worked examples in the text to solve the problem as usual.
2. Check to see if the answer is reasonable. Is it too large or too small, or does it have the wrong sign, improper units, and so on?
3. If the answer is unreasonable, look for what specifically could cause the identified difficulty. Usually, the manner in which the answer is unreasonable is an indication of the difficulty. For example, an extremely large Coulomb force could be due to the assumption of an excessively large separated charge.

Section Summary

- Electrostatics is the study of electric fields in static equilibrium.
- In addition to research using equipment such as a Van de Graaff generator, many practical applications of electrostatics exist, including photocopiers, laser printers, ink-jet printers and electrostatic air filters.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the electric field 5.00 m from the center of the terminal of a Van de Graaff with a 3.00 mC charge, noting that the field is equivalent to that of a point charge at the center of the terminal? (b) At this distance, what force does the field exert on a $2.00\ \mu\text{C}$ charge on the Van de Graaff's belt?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the direction and magnitude of an electric field that supports the weight of a free electron near the surface of Earth? (b) Discuss what the small value for this field implies regarding the relative strength of the gravitational and electrostatic forces.

Solution:

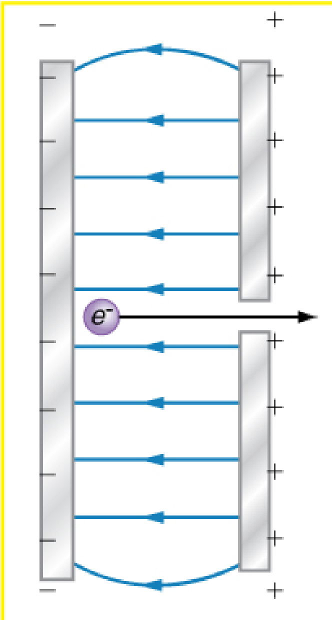
(a) $5.58 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N/C}$

(b)the coulomb force is extraordinarily stronger than gravity

Exercise:

Problem:

A simple and common technique for accelerating electrons is shown in [link], where there is a uniform electric field between two plates. Electrons are released, usually from a hot filament, near the negative plate, and there is a small hole in the positive plate that allows the electrons to continue moving. (a) Calculate the acceleration of the electron if the field strength is $2.50 \times 10^{4}\ \text{N/C}$. (b) Explain why the electron will not be pulled back to the positive plate once it moves through the hole.



Parallel conducting plates with opposite charges on them create a relatively uniform electric field used to accelerate electrons to the right. Those that go through the hole can be used to make a TV or computer screen glow or to produce X-rays.

Exercise:

Problem:

Earth has a net charge that produces an electric field of approximately 150 N/C downward at its surface. (a) What is the magnitude and sign of the excess charge, noting the electric field of a conducting sphere is equivalent to a point charge at its center? (b) What acceleration will the field produce on a free electron near Earth's surface? (c) What mass object with a single extra electron will have its weight supported by this field?

Solution:

(a) $-6.76 \times 10^5 \text{ C}$

(b) $2.63 \times 10^{13} \text{ m/s}^2 \text{ (upward)}$

(c) $2.45 \times 10^{-18} \text{ kg}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Point charges of $25.0\ \mu\text{C}$ and $45.0\ \mu\text{C}$ are placed 0.500 m apart. (a) At what point along the line between them is the electric field zero? (b) What is the electric field halfway between them?

Exercise:

Problem:

What can you say about two charges q_1 and q_2, if the electric field one-fourth of the way from q_1 to q_2 is zero?

Solution:

The charge q_2 is 9 times greater than q_1.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

Calculate the angular velocity ω of an electron orbiting a proton in the hydrogen atom, given the radius of the orbit is 0.530×10^{-10} m. You may assume that the proton is stationary and the centripetal force is supplied by Coulomb attraction.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

An electron has an initial velocity of $5.00 \times 10^6 \text{ m/s}$ in a uniform $2.00 \times 10^5 \text{ N/C}$ strength electric field. The field accelerates the electron in the direction opposite to its initial velocity. (a) What is the direction of the electric field? (b) How far does the electron travel before coming to rest? (c) How long does it take the electron to come to rest? (d) What is the electron’s velocity when it returns to its starting point?

Exercise:

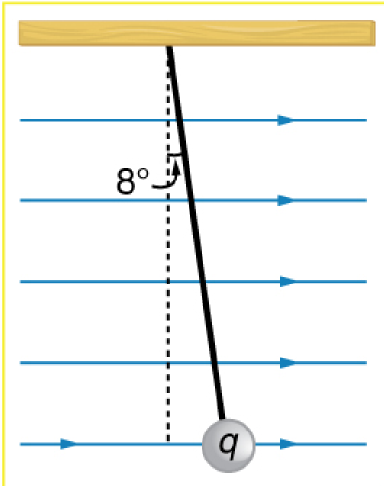
Problem: Integrated Concepts

The practical limit to an electric field in air is about $3.00 \times 10^6 \text{ N/C}$. Above this strength, sparking takes place because air begins to ionize and charges flow, reducing the field. (a) Calculate the distance a free proton must travel in this field to reach 3.00% of the speed of light, starting from rest. (b) Is this practical in air, or must it occur in a vacuum?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A 5.00 g charged insulating ball hangs on a 30.0 cm long string in a uniform horizontal electric field as shown in [link]. Given the charge on the ball is 1.00 μC, find the strength of the field.

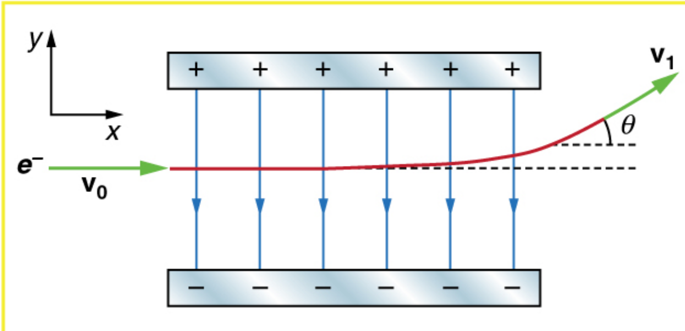


A horizontal electric field causes the charged ball to hang at an angle of 8.00º.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

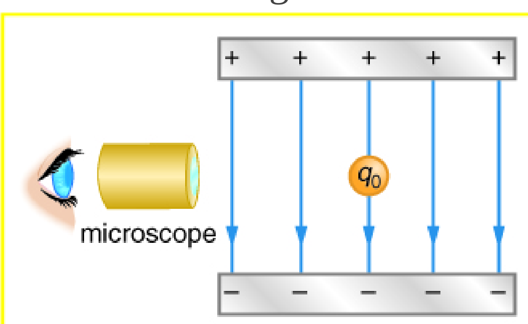
[link] shows an electron passing between two charged metal plates that create an 100 N/C vertical electric field perpendicular to the electron’s original horizontal velocity. (These can be used to change the electron’s direction, such as in an oscilloscope.) The initial speed of the electron is $3.00 \times 10^6 \text{ m/s}$, and the horizontal distance it travels in the uniform field is 4.00 cm. (a) What is its vertical deflection? (b) What is the vertical component of its final velocity? (c) At what angle does it exit? Neglect any edge effects.



Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

The classic Millikan oil drop experiment was the first to obtain an accurate measurement of the charge on an electron. In it, oil drops were suspended against the gravitational force by a vertical electric field. (See [link].) Given the oil drop to be $1.00\ \mu\text{m}$ in radius and have a density of $920\ \text{kg/m}^3$: (a) Find the weight of the drop. (b) If the drop has a single excess electron, find the electric field strength needed to balance its weight.



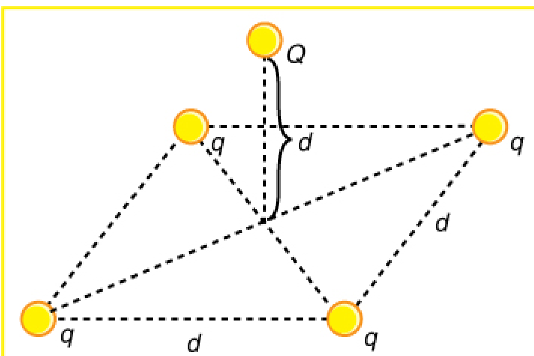
In the Millikan oil drop experiment, small drops can be suspended in an electric field by the force exerted on a single excess electron. Classically, this experiment was used to determine the electron charge q_e by

measuring the electric field
and mass of the drop.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) In [link], four equal charges q lie on the corners of a square. A fifth charge Q is on a mass m directly above the center of the square, at a height equal to the length d of one side of the square. Determine the magnitude of q in terms of Q, m, and d, if the Coulomb force is to equal the weight of m. (b) Is this equilibrium stable or unstable? Discuss.



Four equal charges on the corners of a horizontal square support the weight of a fifth charge located directly above the center of the square.

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

(a) Calculate the electric field strength near a 10.0 cm diameter conducting sphere that has 1.00 C of excess charge on it. (b) What is

unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) Two 0.500 g raindrops in a thunderhead are 1.00 cm apart when they each acquire 1.00 mC charges. Find their acceleration. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which premise or assumption is responsible?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A wrecking yard inventor wants to pick up cars by charging a 0.400 m diameter ball and inducing an equal and opposite charge on the car. If a car has a 1000 kg mass and the ball is to be able to lift it from a distance of 1.00 m: (a) What minimum charge must be used? (b) What is the electric field near the surface of the ball? (c) Why are these results unreasonable? (d) Which premise or assumption is responsible?

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider two insulating balls with evenly distributed equal and opposite charges on their surfaces, held with a certain distance between the centers of the balls. Construct a problem in which you calculate the electric field (magnitude and direction) due to the balls at various points along a line running through the centers of the balls and extending to infinity on either side. Choose interesting points and comment on the meaning of the field at those points. For example, at what points might the field be just that due to one ball and where does the field become negligibly small? Among the things to be considered are the magnitudes of the charges and the distance between the centers of the balls. Your instructor may wish for you to consider the electric

field off axis or for a more complex array of charges, such as those in a water molecule.

Exercise:

Problem: **Construct Your Own Problem**

Consider identical spherical conducting space ships in deep space where gravitational fields from other bodies are negligible compared to the gravitational attraction between the ships. Construct a problem in which you place identical excess charges on the space ships to exactly counter their gravitational attraction. Calculate the amount of excess charge needed. Examine whether that charge depends on the distance between the centers of the ships, the masses of the ships, or any other factors. Discuss whether this would be an easy, difficult, or even impossible thing to do in practice.

Glossary

Van de Graaff generator
: a machine that produces a large amount of excess charge, used for experiments with high voltage

electrostatics
: the study of electric forces that are static or slow-moving

photoconductor
: a substance that is an insulator until it is exposed to light, when it becomes a conductor

xerography
: a dry copying process based on electrostatics

grounded
: connected to the ground with a conductor, so that charge flows freely to and from the Earth to the grounded object

laser printer
: uses a laser to create a photoconductive image on a drum, which attracts dry ink particles that are then rolled onto a sheet of paper to print a high-quality copy of the image

ink-jet printer
: small ink droplets sprayed with an electric charge are controlled by electrostatic plates to create images on paper

electrostatic precipitators
: filters that apply charges to particles in the air, then attract those charges to a filter, removing them from the airstream

Introduction to Electric Potential and Electric Energy
class="introduction"

Automated external defibrillator unit (AED) (credit: U.S. Defense Department photo/Tech. Sgt. Suzanne M. Day)

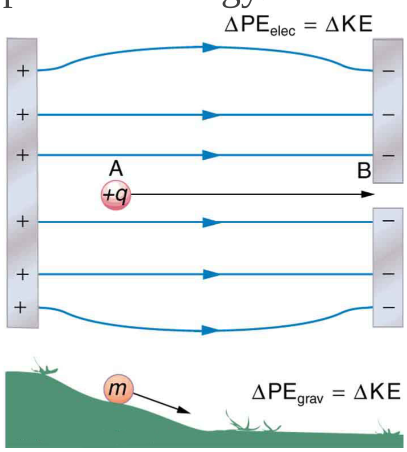
In Electric Charge and Electric Field, we just scratched the surface (or at least rubbed it) of electrical phenomena. Two of the most familiar aspects of

electricity are its energy and *voltage*. We know, for example, that great amounts of electrical energy can be stored in batteries, are transmitted cross-country through power lines, and may jump from clouds to explode the sap of trees. In a similar manner, at molecular levels, *ions* cross cell membranes and transfer information. We also know about voltages associated with electricity. Batteries are typically a few volts, the outlets in your home produce 120 volts, and power lines can be as high as hundreds of thousands of volts. But energy and voltage are not the same thing. A motorcycle battery, for example, is small and would not be very successful in replacing the much larger car battery, yet each has the same voltage. In this chapter, we shall examine the relationship between voltage and electrical energy and begin to explore some of the many applications of electricity.

Electric Potential Energy: Potential Difference

- Define electric potential and electric potential energy.
- Describe the relationship between potential difference and electrical potential energy.
- Explain electron volt and its usage in submicroscopic process.
- Determine electric potential energy given potential difference and amount of charge.

When a free positive charge *q* is accelerated by an electric field, such as shown in [link], it is given kinetic energy. The process is analogous to an object being accelerated by a gravitational field. It is as if the charge is going down an electrical hill where its electric potential energy is converted to kinetic energy. Let us explore the work done on a charge *q* by the electric field in this process, so that we may develop a definition of electric potential energy.



A charge accelerated by an electric field is analogous to a mass going down a hill. In both cases potential energy is converted to another form. Work is done by a force, but since this force

is conservative, we
can write
$W = -\Delta\text{PE}.$

The electrostatic or Coulomb force is conservative, which means that the work done on q is independent of the path taken. This is exactly analogous to the gravitational force in the absence of dissipative forces such as friction. When a force is conservative, it is possible to define a potential energy associated with the force, and it is usually easier to deal with the potential energy (because it depends only on position) than to calculate the work directly.

We use the letters PE to denote electric potential energy, which has units of joules (J). The change in potential energy, ΔPE, is crucial, since the work done by a conservative force is the negative of the change in potential energy; that is, $W = -\Delta\text{PE}$. For example, work W done to accelerate a positive charge from rest is positive and results from a loss in PE, or a negative ΔPE. There must be a minus sign in front of ΔPE to make W positive. PE can be found at any point by taking one point as a reference and calculating the work needed to move a charge to the other point.

Note:
Potential Energy
$W = -\Delta\text{PE}$. For example, work W done to accelerate a positive charge from rest is positive and results from a loss in PE, or a negative ΔPE. There must be a minus sign in front of ΔPE to make W positive. PE can be found at any point by taking one point as a reference and calculating the work needed to move a charge to the other point.

Gravitational potential energy and electric potential energy are quite analogous. Potential energy accounts for work done by a conservative force and gives added insight regarding energy and energy transformation

without the necessity of dealing with the force directly. It is much more common, for example, to use the concept of voltage (related to electric potential energy) than to deal with the Coulomb force directly.

Calculating the work directly is generally difficult, since $W = \text{Fd} \cos \theta$ and the direction and magnitude of F can be complex for multiple charges, for odd-shaped objects, and along arbitrary paths. But we do know that, since $F = \text{qE}$, the work, and hence ΔPE, is proportional to the test charge q. To have a physical quantity that is independent of test charge, we define **electric potential** V (or simply potential, since electric is understood) to be the potential energy per unit charge:

Equation:

$$V = \frac{\text{PE}}{q}.$$

Note:

Electric Potential

This is the electric potential energy per unit charge.

Equation:

$$V = \frac{\text{PE}}{q}$$

Since PE is proportional to q , the dependence on q cancels. Thus V does not depend on q. The change in potential energy ΔPE is crucial, and so we are concerned with the difference in potential or potential difference ΔV between two points, where

Equation:

$$\Delta V = V_{\text{B}} - V_{\text{A}} = \frac{\Delta\text{PE}}{q}.$$

The **potential difference** between points A and B, $V_B - V_A$, is thus defined to be the change in potential energy of a charge q moved from A to B, divided by the charge. Units of potential difference are joules per coulomb, given the name volt (V) after Alessandro Volta.

Equation:

$$1\text{ V} = 1\ \frac{\text{J}}{\text{C}}$$

Note:

Potential Difference

The potential difference between points A and B, $V_B - V_A$, is defined to be the change in potential energy of a charge q moved from A to B, divided by the charge. Units of potential difference are joules per coulomb, given the name volt (V) after Alessandro Volta.

Equation:

$$1\text{ V} = 1\ \frac{\text{J}}{\text{C}}$$

The familiar term **voltage** is the common name for potential difference. Keep in mind that whenever a voltage is quoted, it is understood to be the potential difference between two points. For example, every battery has two terminals, and its voltage is the potential difference between them. More fundamentally, the point you choose to be zero volts is arbitrary. This is analogous to the fact that gravitational potential energy has an arbitrary zero, such as sea level or perhaps a lecture hall floor.

In summary, the relationship between potential difference (or voltage) and electrical potential energy is given by

Equation:

$$\Delta V = \frac{\Delta \mathrm{PE}}{q} \text{ and } \Delta \mathrm{PE} = q\Delta V.$$

Note:
Potential Difference and Electrical Potential Energy
The relationship between potential difference (or voltage) and electrical potential energy is given by
Equation:

$$\Delta V = \frac{\Delta \mathrm{PE}}{q} \text{ and } \Delta \mathrm{PE} = q\Delta V.$$

The second equation is equivalent to the first.

Voltage is not the same as energy. Voltage is the energy per unit charge. Thus a motorcycle battery and a car battery can both have the same voltage (more precisely, the same potential difference between battery terminals), yet one stores much more energy than the other since $\Delta \mathrm{PE} = q\Delta V$. The car battery can move more charge than the motorcycle battery, although both are 12 V batteries.

Example:
Calculating Energy
Suppose you have a 12.0 V motorcycle battery that can move 5000 C of charge, and a 12.0 V car battery that can move 60,000 C of charge. How much energy does each deliver? (Assume that the numerical value of each charge is accurate to three significant figures.)
Strategy
To say we have a 12.0 V battery means that its terminals have a 12.0 V potential difference. When such a battery moves charge, it puts the charge

through a potential difference of 12.0 V, and the charge is given a change in potential energy equal to $\Delta\text{PE} = q\Delta V$.
So to find the energy output, we multiply the charge moved by the potential difference.
Solution
For the motorcycle battery, $q = 5000\text{ C}$ and $\Delta V = 12.0\text{ V}$. The total energy delivered by the motorcycle battery is
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll}\Delta\text{PE}_{\text{cycle}} & = & (5000\text{ C})(12.0\text{ V})\\ & = & (5000\text{ C})(12.0\text{ J/C})\\ & = & 6.00\times10^{4}\text{ J.}\end{array}$$

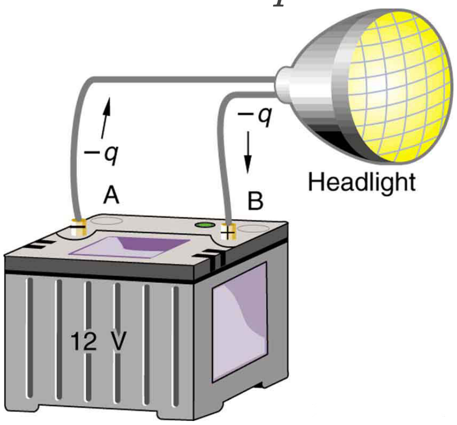
Similarly, for the car battery, $q = 60{,}000\text{ C}$ and
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll}\Delta\text{PE}_{\text{car}} & = & (60{,}000\text{ C})(12.0\text{ V})\\ & = & 7.20\times10^{5}\text{ J.}\end{array}$$

Discussion
While voltage and energy are related, they are not the same thing. The voltages of the batteries are identical, but the energy supplied by each is quite different. Note also that as a battery is discharged, some of its energy is used internally and its terminal voltage drops, such as when headlights dim because of a low car battery. The energy supplied by the battery is still calculated as in this example, but not all of the energy is available for external use.

Note that the energies calculated in the previous example are absolute values. The change in potential energy for the battery is negative, since it loses energy. These batteries, like many electrical systems, actually move negative charge—electrons in particular. The batteries repel electrons from their negative terminals (A) through whatever circuitry is involved and attract them to their positive terminals (B) as shown in [link]. The change in potential is $\Delta V = V_{\text{B}} - V_{\text{A}} = +12\text{ V}$ and the charge q is negative, so that

$\Delta\text{PE} = q\Delta V$ is negative, meaning the potential energy of the battery has decreased when q has moved from A to B.



A battery moves negative charge from its negative terminal through a headlight to its positive terminal. Appropriate combinations of chemicals in the battery separate charges so that the negative terminal has an excess of negative charge, which is repelled by it and attracted to the excess positive charge on the other terminal. In terms of potential, the positive terminal is at a higher voltage than the negative. Inside the battery, both positive and negative charges move.

Example:
How Many Electrons Move through a Headlight Each Second?
When a 12.0 V car battery runs a single 30.0 W headlight, how many electrons pass through it each second?

Strategy

To find the number of electrons, we must first find the charge that moved in 1.00 s. The charge moved is related to voltage and energy through the equation $\Delta \mathrm{PE} = q\Delta V$. A 30.0 W lamp uses 30.0 joules per second. Since the battery loses energy, we have $\Delta \mathrm{PE} = –30.0\ \mathrm{J}$ and, since the electrons are going from the negative terminal to the positive, we see that $\Delta V = +12.0\ \mathrm{V}$.

Solution

To find the charge q moved, we solve the equation $\Delta \mathrm{PE} = q\Delta V$:

Equation:

$$q = \frac{\Delta \mathrm{PE}}{\Delta V}.$$

Entering the values for $\Delta \mathrm{PE}$ and ΔV, we get

Equation:

$$q = \frac{–30.0\ \mathrm{J}}{+12.0\ \mathrm{V}} = \frac{–30.0\ \mathrm{J}}{+12.0\ \mathrm{J/C}} = –2.50\ \mathrm{C}.$$

The number of electrons n_e is the total charge divided by the charge per electron. That is,

Equation:

$$n_e = \frac{–2.50\ \mathrm{C}}{–1.60\times10^{–19}\ \mathrm{C/e^–}} = 1.56\times10^{19}\ \text{electrons}.$$

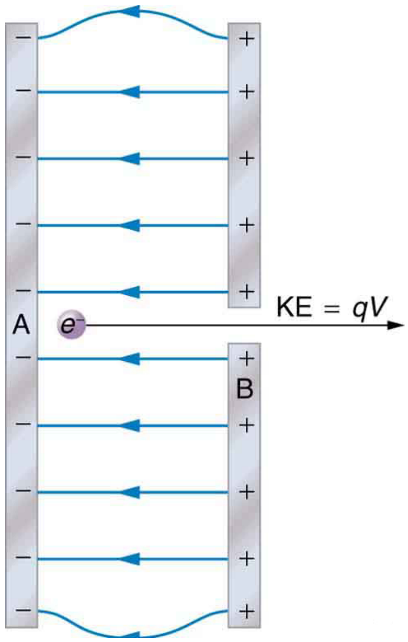
Discussion

This is a very large number. It is no wonder that we do not ordinarily observe individual electrons with so many being present in ordinary

systems. In fact, electricity had been in use for many decades before it was determined that the moving charges in many circumstances were negative. Positive charge moving in the opposite direction of negative charge often produces identical effects; this makes it difficult to determine which is moving or whether both are moving.

The Electron Volt

The energy per electron is very small in macroscopic situations like that in the previous example—a tiny fraction of a joule. But on a submicroscopic scale, such energy per particle (electron, proton, or ion) can be of great importance. For example, even a tiny fraction of a joule can be great enough for these particles to destroy organic molecules and harm living tissue. The particle may do its damage by direct collision, or it may create harmful x rays, which can also inflict damage. It is useful to have an energy unit related to submicroscopic effects. [link] shows a situation related to the definition of such an energy unit. An electron is accelerated between two charged metal plates as it might be in an old-model television tube or oscilloscope. The electron is given kinetic energy that is later converted to another form—light in the television tube, for example. (Note that downhill for the electron is uphill for a positive charge.) Since energy is related to voltage by $\Delta \mathrm{PE} = q\Delta V$, we can think of the joule as a coulomb-volt.



A typical electron gun accelerates electrons using a potential difference between two metal plates. The energy of the electron in electron volts is numerically the same as the voltage between the plates. For example, a 5000 V potential difference produces 5000 eV electrons.

On the submicroscopic scale, it is more convenient to define an energy unit called the **electron volt** (eV), which is the energy given to a fundamental charge accelerated through a potential difference of 1 V. In equation form,

Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
1 \text{ eV} &= \left(1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ C}\right)(1 \text{ V}) = \left(1.60{\times}10^{-19} \text{ C}\right)(1 \text{ J/C}) \\
&= 1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J.}
\end{aligned}
$$

Note:
Electron Volt
On the submicroscopic scale, it is more convenient to define an energy unit called the electron volt (eV), which is the energy given to a fundamental charge accelerated through a potential difference of 1 V. In equation form,
Equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
1 \text{ eV} &= \left(1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ C}\right)(1 \text{ V}) = \left(1.60{\times}10^{-19} \text{ C}\right)(1 \text{ J/C}) \\
&= 1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J.}
\end{aligned}
$$

An electron accelerated through a potential difference of 1 V is given an energy of 1 eV. It follows that an electron accelerated through 50 V is given 50 eV. A potential difference of 100,000 V (100 kV) will give an electron an energy of 100,000 eV (100 keV), and so on. Similarly, an ion with a double positive charge accelerated through 100 V will be given 200 eV of energy. These simple relationships between accelerating voltage and particle charges make the electron volt a simple and convenient energy unit in such circumstances.

Note:
Connections: Energy Units
The electron volt (eV) is the most common energy unit for submicroscopic processes. This will be particularly noticeable in the chapters on modern physics. Energy is so important to so many subjects that there is a tendency to define a special energy unit for each major topic. There are, for example,

calories for food energy, kilowatt-hours for electrical energy, and therms for natural gas energy.

The electron volt is commonly employed in submicroscopic processes—chemical valence energies and molecular and nuclear binding energies are among the quantities often expressed in electron volts. For example, about 5 eV of energy is required to break up certain organic molecules. If a proton is accelerated from rest through a potential difference of 30 kV, it is given an energy of 30 keV (30,000 eV) and it can break up as many as 6000 of these molecules ($30{,}000 \text{ eV} \div 5 \text{ eV per molecule} = 6000 \text{ molecules}$). Nuclear decay energies are on the order of 1 MeV (1,000,000 eV) per event and can, thus, produce significant biological damage.

Conservation of Energy

The total energy of a system is conserved if there is no net addition (or subtraction) of work or heat transfer. For conservative forces, such as the electrostatic force, conservation of energy states that mechanical energy is a constant.

Mechanical energy is the sum of the kinetic energy and potential energy of a system; that is, $\text{KE} + \text{PE} = \text{constant}$. A loss of PE of a charged particle becomes an increase in its KE. Here PE is the electric potential energy. Conservation of energy is stated in equation form as
Equation:

$$\text{KE} + \text{PE} = \text{constant}$$

or
Equation:

$$\text{KE}_{\text{i}} + \text{PE}_{\text{i}} = \text{KE}_{\text{f}} + \text{PE}_{\text{f}},$$

where i and f stand for initial and final conditions. As we have found many times before, considering energy can give us insights and facilitate problem solving.

Example:
Electrical Potential Energy Converted to Kinetic Energy
Calculate the final speed of a free electron accelerated from rest through a potential difference of 100 V. (Assume that this numerical value is accurate to three significant figures.)
Strategy
We have a system with only conservative forces. Assuming the electron is accelerated in a vacuum, and neglecting the gravitational force (we will check on this assumption later), all of the electrical potential energy is converted into kinetic energy. We can identify the initial and final forms of energy to be $\mathrm{KE_i} = 0$, $\mathrm{KE_f} = ½\, mv^2$, $\mathrm{PE_i} = qV$, and $\mathrm{PE_f} = 0$.
Solution
Conservation of energy states that
Equation:

$$\mathrm{KE_i} + \mathrm{PE_i} = \mathrm{KE_f} + \mathrm{PE_f}.$$

Entering the forms identified above, we obtain
Equation:

$$qV = \frac{mv^2}{2}.$$

We solve this for v:
Equation:

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{2\mathrm{qV}}{m}}.$$

Entering values for q, V, and m gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \sqrt{\frac{2\left(-1.60\times10^{-19}\text{ C}\right)\left(-100\text{ J/C}\right)}{9.11\times10^{-31}\text{ kg}}} \\ &= 5.93\times10^{6}\text{ m/s.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

Note that both the charge and the initial voltage are negative, as in [link]. From the discussions in Electric Charge and Electric Field, we know that electrostatic forces on small particles are generally very large compared with the gravitational force. The large final speed confirms that the gravitational force is indeed negligible here. The large speed also indicates how easy it is to accelerate electrons with small voltages because of their very small mass. Voltages much higher than the 100 V in this problem are typically used in electron guns. Those higher voltages produce electron speeds so great that relativistic effects must be taken into account. That is why a low voltage is considered (accurately) in this example.

Section Summary

- Electric potential is potential energy per unit charge.
- The potential difference between points A and B, $V_{\text{B}}-V_{\text{A}}$, defined to be the change in potential energy of a charge q moved from A to B, is equal to the change in potential energy divided by the charge, Potential difference is commonly called voltage, represented by the symbol ΔV.
  Equation:

$$\Delta V=\frac{\Delta\text{PE}}{q}\text{ and }\Delta\text{PE}=q\Delta V.$$

- An electron volt is the energy given to a fundamental charge accelerated through a potential difference of 1 V. In equation form,
  Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} 1\text{ eV} &= \left(1.60\times10^{-19}\text{ C}\right)\left(1\text{ V}\right)=\left(1.60\times10^{-19}\text{ C}\right)\left(1\text{ J/C}\right) \\ &= 1.60\times10^{-19}\text{ J.} \end{aligned}$$

- Mechanical energy is the sum of the kinetic energy and potential energy of a system, that is, $\mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE}$. This sum is a constant.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Voltage is the common word for potential difference. Which term is more descriptive, voltage or potential difference?

Exercise:

Problem:

If the voltage between two points is zero, can a test charge be moved between them with zero net work being done? Can this necessarily be done without exerting a force? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the relationship between voltage and energy? More precisely, what is the relationship between potential difference and electric potential energy?

Exercise:

Problem: Voltages are always measured between two points. Why?

Exercise:

Problem:

How are units of volts and electron volts related? How do they differ?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the ratio of speeds of an electron and a negative hydrogen ion (one having an extra electron) accelerated through the same voltage, assuming non-relativistic final speeds. Take the mass of the hydrogen ion to be 1.67×10^{-27} kg.

Solution:

42.8

Exercise:

Problem:

An evacuated tube uses an accelerating voltage of 40 kV to accelerate electrons to hit a copper plate and produce x rays. Non-relativistically, what would be the maximum speed of these electrons?

Exercise:

Problem:

A bare helium nucleus has two positive charges and a mass of 6.64×10^{-27} kg. (a) Calculate its kinetic energy in joules at 2.00% of the speed of light. (b) What is this in electron volts? (c) What voltage would be needed to obtain this energy?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Singly charged gas ions are accelerated from rest through a voltage of 13.0 V. At what temperature will the average kinetic energy of gas molecules be the same as that given these ions?

Solution:

1.00×10^{5} K

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

The temperature near the center of the Sun is thought to be 15 million degrees Celsius $\left(1.5\times10^{7}\ ^{\mathrm{o}}\mathrm{C}\right)$. Through what voltage must a singly charged ion be accelerated to have the same energy as the average kinetic energy of ions at this temperature?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) What is the average power output of a heart defibrillator that dissipates 400 J of energy in 10.0 ms? (b) Considering the high-power output, why doesn't the defibrillator produce serious burns?

Solution:

(a) $4\times10^{4}\ \mathrm{W}$

(b) A defibrillator does not cause serious burns because the skin conducts electricity well at high voltages, like those used in defibrillators. The gel used aids in the transfer of energy to the body, and the skin doesn't absorb the energy, but rather lets it pass through to the heart.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A lightning bolt strikes a tree, moving 20.0 C of charge through a potential difference of $1.00\times10^{2}\ \mathrm{MV}$. (a) What energy was dissipated? (b) What mass of water could be raised from $15^{\mathrm{o}}\mathrm{C}$ to the boiling point and then boiled by this energy? (c) Discuss the damage that could be caused to the tree by the expansion of the boiling steam.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A 12.0 V battery-operated bottle warmer heats 50.0 g of glass, 2.50×10^2 g of baby formula, and 2.00×10^2 g of aluminum from $20.0^\circ C$ to $90.0^\circ C$. (a) How much charge is moved by the battery? (b) How many electrons per second flow if it takes 5.00 min to warm the formula? (Hint: Assume that the specific heat of baby formula is about the same as the specific heat of water.)

Solution:

(a) $7.40 \times 10^3 \text{ C}$

(b) 1.54×10^{20} electrons per second

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A battery-operated car utilizes a 12.0 V system. Find the charge the batteries must be able to move in order to accelerate the 750 kg car from rest to 25.0 m/s, make it climb a 2.00×10^2 m high hill, and then cause it to travel at a constant 25.0 m/s by exerting a 5.00×10^2 N force for an hour.

Solution:

$3.89 \times 10^6 \text{ C}$

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Fusion probability is greatly enhanced when appropriate nuclei are brought close together, but mutual Coulomb repulsion must be overcome. This can be done using the kinetic energy of high-temperature gas ions or by accelerating the nuclei toward one another.

(a) Calculate the potential energy of two singly charged nuclei separated by 1.00×10^{-12} m by finding the voltage of one at that distance and multiplying by the charge of the other. (b) At what temperature will atoms of a gas have an average kinetic energy equal to this needed electrical potential energy?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) Find the voltage near a 10.0 cm diameter metal sphere that has 8.00 C of excess positive charge on it. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Solution:

(a) 1.44×10^{12} V

(b) This voltage is very high. A 10.0 cm diameter sphere could never maintain this voltage; it would discharge.

(c) An 8.00 C charge is more charge than can reasonably be accumulated on a sphere of that size.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a battery used to supply energy to a cellular phone. Construct a problem in which you determine the energy that must be supplied by the battery, and then calculate the amount of charge it must be able to move in order to supply this energy. Among the things to be considered are the energy needs and battery voltage. You may need to look ahead to interpret manufacturer's battery ratings in ampere-hours as energy in joules.

Glossary

electric potential

potential energy per unit charge

potential difference (or voltage)

change in potential energy of a charge moved from one point to another, divided by the charge; units of potential difference are joules per coulomb, known as volt

electron volt

the energy given to a fundamental charge accelerated through a potential difference of one volt

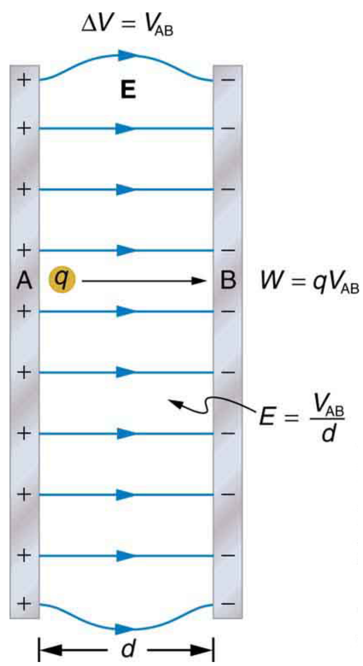
mechanical energy

sum of the kinetic energy and potential energy of a system; this sum is a constant

Electric Potential in a Uniform Electric Field

- Describe the relationship between voltage and electric field.
- Derive an expression for the electric potential and electric field.
- Calculate electric field strength given distance and voltage.

In the previous section, we explored the relationship between voltage and energy. In this section, we will explore the relationship between voltage and electric field. For example, a uniform electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is produced by placing a potential difference (or voltage) ΔV across two parallel metal plates, labeled A and B. (See [link].) Examining this will tell us what voltage is needed to produce a certain electric field strength; it will also reveal a more fundamental relationship between electric potential and electric field. From a physicist's point of view, either ΔV or $\mathbf{E}$ can be used to describe any charge distribution. ΔV is most closely tied to energy, whereas $\mathbf{E}$ is most closely related to force. ΔV is a **scalar** quantity and has no direction, while $\mathbf{E}$ is a **vector** quantity, having both magnitude and direction. (Note that the magnitude of the electric field strength, a scalar quantity, is represented by E below.) The relationship between ΔV and $\mathbf{E}$ is revealed by calculating the work done by the force in moving a charge from point A to point B. But, as noted in Electric Potential Energy: Potential Difference, this is complex for arbitrary charge distributions, requiring calculus. We therefore look at a uniform electric field as an interesting special case.



The relationship between V and E for parallel conducting plates is $E = V/d$. (Note that $\Delta V = V_{\mathrm{AB}}$ in magnitude. For a charge that is moved from plate A at higher potential to plate B at lower potential, a minus sign needs to be included as follows: $-\Delta\ V = V_{\mathrm{A}} - V_{\mathrm{B}} = V_{\mathrm{AB}}$. See the text for details.)

The work done by the electric field in [link] to move a positive charge q from A, the positive plate, higher potential, to B, the negative plate, lower potential, is

Equation:

$$W = -\Delta\text{PE} = -q\Delta V.$$

The potential difference between points A and B is
Equation:

$$-\Delta\ V = -(V_{\text{B}} - V_{\text{A}}) = V_{\text{A}} - V_{\text{B}} = V_{\text{AB}}.$$

Entering this into the expression for work yields
Equation:

$$W = qV_{\text{AB}}.$$

Work is $W = Fd\cos\theta$; here $\cos\theta = 1$, since the path is parallel to the field, and so $W = Fd$. Since $F = qE$, we see that $W = qEd$. Substituting this expression for work into the previous equation gives
Equation:

$$qEd = qV_{\text{AB}}.$$

The charge cancels, and so the voltage between points A and B is seen to be
Equation:

$$\left.\begin{array}{r} V_{\text{AB}} = Ed \\ E = \frac{V_{\text{AB}}}{d} \end{array}\right\}(\text{uniform } E\text{ - field only}),$$

where d is the distance from A to B, or the distance between the plates in [link]. Note that the above equation implies the units for electric field are volts per meter. We already know the units for electric field are newtons per coulomb; thus the following relation among units is valid:
Equation:

$$1\ \text{N/C} = 1\ \text{V/m}.$$

Note:
Voltage between Points A and B
Equation:

$$\left.\begin{array}{c} V_{\mathrm{AB}} = Ed \\ E = \frac{V_{\mathrm{AB}}}{d} \end{array}\right\} (\text{uniform } E \text{ - field only}),$$

where d is the distance from A to B, or the distance between the plates.

Example:
What Is the Highest Voltage Possible between Two Plates?
Dry air will support a maximum electric field strength of about $3.0 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{V/m}$. Above that value, the field creates enough ionization in the air to make the air a conductor. This allows a discharge or spark that reduces the field. What, then, is the maximum voltage between two parallel conducting plates separated by 2.5 cm of dry air?
Strategy
We are given the maximum electric field E between the plates and the distance d between them. The equation $V_{\mathrm{AB}} = Ed$ can thus be used to calculate the maximum voltage.
Solution
The potential difference or voltage between the plates is
Equation:

$$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{AB}} = Ed.$$

Entering the given values for E and d gives
Equation:

$$V_{\mathrm{AB}} = (3.0 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{V/m})(0.025\ \mathrm{m}) = 7.5 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{V}$$

or
Equation:

$$V_{\mathrm{AB}} = 75\ \mathrm{kV}.$$

(The answer is quoted to only two digits, since the maximum field strength is approximate.)

Discussion

One of the implications of this result is that it takes about 75 kV to make a spark jump across a 2.5 cm (1 in.) gap, or 150 kV for a 5 cm spark. This limits the voltages that can exist between conductors, perhaps on a power transmission line. A smaller voltage will cause a spark if there are points on the surface, since points create greater fields than smooth surfaces. Humid air breaks down at a lower field strength, meaning that a smaller voltage will make a spark jump through humid air. The largest voltages can be built up, say with static electricity, on dry days.

A spark chamber is used to trace the paths of high-energy particles. Ionization created by the particles as they pass through the gas between the plates allows a spark to jump. The sparks are

perpendicular to the plates, following electric field lines between them. The potential difference between adjacent plates is not high enough to cause sparks without the ionization produced by particles from accelerator experiments (or cosmic rays). (credit: Daderot, Wikimedia Commons)

Example:
Field and Force inside an Electron Gun

(a) An electron gun has parallel plates separated by 4.00 cm and gives electrons 25.0 keV of energy. What is the electric field strength between the plates? (b) What force would this field exert on a piece of plastic with a $0.500\ \mu\text{C}$ charge that gets between the plates?

Strategy

Since the voltage and plate separation are given, the electric field strength can be calculated directly from the expression $E = \frac{V_{\text{AB}}}{d}$. Once the electric field strength is known, the force on a charge is found using $\mathbf{F} = q\ \mathbf{E}$. Since the electric field is in only one direction, we can write this equation in terms of the magnitudes, $F = q\ E$.

Solution for (a)

The expression for the magnitude of the electric field between two uniform metal plates is

Equation:

$$E = \frac{V_{\text{AB}}}{d}.$$

Since the electron is a single charge and is given 25.0 keV of energy, the potential difference must be 25.0 kV. Entering this value for V_{AB} and the plate separation of 0.0400 m, we obtain

Equation:

$$E = \frac{25.0 \text{ kV}}{0.0400 \text{ m}} = 6.25 \times 10^5 \text{ V/m}.$$

Solution for (b)

The magnitude of the force on a charge in an electric field is obtained from the equation

Equation:

$$F = qE.$$

Substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$F = (0.500 \times 10^{-6} \text{ C})(6.25 \times 10^5 \text{ V/m}) = 0.313 \text{ N}.$$

Discussion

Note that the units are newtons, since $1 \text{ V/m} = 1 \text{ N/C}$. The force on the charge is the same no matter where the charge is located between the plates. This is because the electric field is uniform between the plates.

In more general situations, regardless of whether the electric field is uniform, it points in the direction of decreasing potential, because the force on a positive charge is in the direction of $\mathbf{E}$ and also in the direction of lower potential V. Furthermore, the magnitude of $\mathbf{E}$ equals the rate of decrease of V with distance. The faster V decreases over distance, the

greater the electric field. In equation form, the general relationship between voltage and electric field is

Equation:

$$E = -\frac{\Delta V}{\Delta s},$$

where Δs is the distance over which the change in potential, ΔV, takes place. The minus sign tells us that $\mathbf{E}$ points in the direction of decreasing potential. The electric field is said to be the *gradient* (as in grade or slope) of the electric potential.

Note:

Relationship between Voltage and Electric Field

In equation form, the general relationship between voltage and electric field is

Equation:

$$E = -\frac{\Delta V}{\Delta s},$$

where Δs is the distance over which the change in potential, ΔV, takes place. The minus sign tells us that $\mathbf{E}$ points in the direction of decreasing potential. The electric field is said to be the *gradient* (as in grade or slope) of the electric potential.

For continually changing potentials, ΔV and Δs become infinitesimals and differential calculus must be employed to determine the electric field.

Section Summary

- The voltage between points A and B is

  Equation:

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} V_{\mathrm{AB}} = Ed \\ E = \frac{V_{\mathrm{AB}}}{d} \end{array}\right\} (\text{uniform } E \text{ - field only}),$$

where d is the distance from A to B, or the distance between the plates.

- In equation form, the general relationship between voltage and electric field is
  Equation:

$$E = -\frac{\Delta V}{\Delta s},$$

where Δs is the distance over which the change in potential, ΔV, takes place. The minus sign tells us that $\mathbf{E}$ points in the direction of decreasing potential.) The electric field is said to be the *gradient* (as in grade or slope) of the electric potential.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Discuss how potential difference and electric field strength are related. Give an example.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the strength of the electric field in a region where the electric potential is constant?

Exercise:

Problem:

Will a negative charge, initially at rest, move toward higher or lower potential? Explain why.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that units of V/m and N/C for electric field strength are indeed equivalent.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the strength of the electric field between two parallel conducting plates separated by 1.00 cm and having a potential difference (voltage) between them of 1.50×10^4 V?

Exercise:

Problem:

The electric field strength between two parallel conducting plates separated by 4.00 cm is $7.50 \times 10^4\ \text{V/m}$. (a) What is the potential difference between the plates? (b) The plate with the lowest potential is taken to be at zero volts. What is the potential 1.00 cm from that plate (and 3.00 cm from the other)?

Solution:

(a) $3.00\ \text{kV}$

(b) $750\ \text{V}$

Exercise:

Problem:

How far apart are two conducting plates that have an electric field strength of $4.50 \times 10^3\ \text{V/m}$ between them, if their potential difference is 15.0 kV?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Will the electric field strength between two parallel conducting plates exceed the breakdown strength for air ($3.0 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{V/m}$) if the plates are separated by 2.00 mm and a potential difference of $5.0 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{V}$ is applied? (b) How close together can the plates be with this applied voltage?

Solution:

(a) No. The electric field strength between the plates is $2.5 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{V/m}$, which is lower than the breakdown strength for air ($3.0 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{V/m}$).

(b) 1.7 mm

Exercise:

Problem:

The voltage across a membrane forming a cell wall is 80.0 mV and the membrane is 9.00 nm thick. What is the electric field strength? (The value is surprisingly large, but correct. Membranes are discussed in Capacitors and Dielectrics and Nerve Conduction—Electrocardiograms.) You may assume a uniform electric field.

Exercise:

Problem:

Membrane walls of living cells have surprisingly large electric fields across them due to separation of ions. (Membranes are discussed in some detail in Nerve Conduction—Electrocardiograms.) What is the voltage across an 8.00 nm–thick membrane if the electric field strength across it is 5.50 MV/m? You may assume a uniform electric field.

Solution:

44.0 mV

Exercise:

Problem:

Two parallel conducting plates are separated by 10.0 cm, and one of them is taken to be at zero volts. (a) What is the electric field strength between them, if the potential 8.00 cm from the zero volt plate (and 2.00 cm from the other) is 450 V? (b) What is the voltage between the plates?

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the maximum potential difference between two parallel conducting plates separated by 0.500 cm of air, given the maximum sustainable electric field strength in air to be $3.0 \times 10^6 \text{ V/m}$.

Solution:

15 kV

Exercise:

Problem:

A doubly charged ion is accelerated to an energy of 32.0 keV by the electric field between two parallel conducting plates separated by 2.00 cm. What is the electric field strength between the plates?

Exercise:

Problem:

An electron is to be accelerated in a uniform electric field having a strength of $2.00 \times 10^6 \text{ V/m}$. (a) What energy in keV is given to the electron if it is accelerated through 0.400 m? (b) Over what distance would it have to be accelerated to increase its energy by 50.0 GeV?

Solution:

(a) 800 KeV

(b) 25.0 km

Glossary

scalar
: physical quantity with magnitude but no direction

vector
: physical quantity with both magnitude and direction

Electrical Potential Due to a Point Charge

- Explain point charges and express the equation for electric potential of a point charge.
- Distinguish between electric potential and electric field.
- Determine the electric potential of a point charge given charge and distance.

Point charges, such as electrons, are among the fundamental building blocks of matter. Furthermore, spherical charge distributions (like on a metal sphere) create external electric fields exactly like a point charge. The electric potential due to a point charge is, thus, a case we need to consider. Using calculus to find the work needed to move a test charge q from a large distance away to a distance of r from a point charge Q, and noting the connection between work and potential $(W = -q\Delta V)$, it can be shown that the *electric potential V of a point charge* is
Equation:

$$V = \frac{kQ}{r} \text{ (Point Charge)},$$

where *k* is a constant equal to $9.0 \times 10^9 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$.

Note:
Electric Potential V of a Point Charge
The electric potential V of a point charge is given by
Equation:

$$V = \frac{kQ}{r} \text{ (Point Charge)}.$$

The potential at infinity is chosen to be zero. Thus V for a point charge decreases with distance, whereas $\mathbf{E}$ for a point charge decreases with distance squared:

Equation:

$$E = \frac{F}{q} = \frac{kQ}{r^2}.$$

Recall that the electric potential V is a scalar and has no direction, whereas the electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is a vector. To find the voltage due to a combination of point charges, you add the individual voltages as numbers. To find the total electric field, you must add the individual fields as *vectors*, taking magnitude and direction into account. This is consistent with the fact that V is closely associated with energy, a scalar, whereas $\mathbf{E}$ is closely associated with force, a vector.

Example:

What Voltage Is Produced by a Small Charge on a Metal Sphere?

Charges in static electricity are typically in the nanocoulomb (nC) to microcoulomb $(\mathrm{\mu C})$ range. What is the voltage 5.00 cm away from the center of a 1-cm diameter metal sphere that has a $-3.00\ \mathrm{nC}$ static charge?

Strategy

As we have discussed in Electric Charge and Electric Field, charge on a metal sphere spreads out uniformly and produces a field like that of a point charge located at its center. Thus we can find the voltage using the equation $V = \mathrm{kQ}/r$.

Solution

Entering known values into the expression for the potential of a point charge, we obtain

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} V & = & k\frac{Q}{r} \\ & = & \left(8.99 \times 10^{9}\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2\right)\left(\frac{-3.00\times10^{-9}\ \text{C}}{5.00\times10^{-2}\ \text{m}}\right) \\ & = & -539\ \text{V}. \end{array}$$

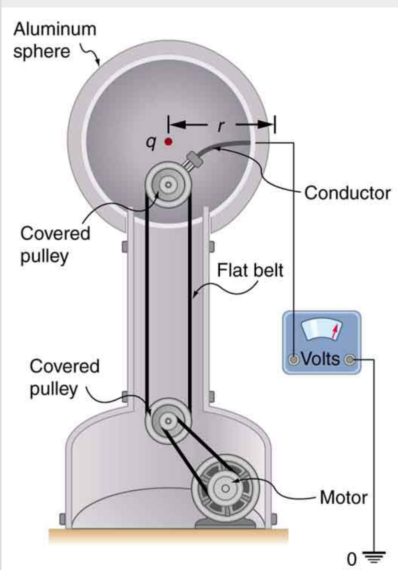
Discussion

The negative value for voltage means a positive charge would be attracted from a larger distance, since the potential is lower (more negative) than at larger distances. Conversely, a negative charge would be repelled, as expected.

Example:

What Is the Excess Charge on a Van de Graaff Generator

A demonstration Van de Graaff generator has a 25.0 cm diameter metal sphere that produces a voltage of 100 kV near its surface. (See [link].) What excess charge resides on the sphere? (Assume that each numerical value here is shown with three significant figures.)



The voltage of this demonstration Van de Graaff generator is measured

between the charged sphere and ground. Earth’s potential is taken to be zero as a reference. The potential of the charged conducting sphere is the same as that of an equal point charge at its center.

Strategy

The potential on the surface will be the same as that of a point charge at the center of the sphere, 12.5 cm away. (The radius of the sphere is 12.5 cm.) We can thus determine the excess charge using the equation

Equation:

$$V = \frac{\text{kQ}}{r}.$$

Solution

Solving for Q and entering known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \frac{\text{rV}}{k} \\ &= \frac{(0.125\text{ m})\left(100\times 10^{3}\text{ V}\right)}{8.99\times 10^{9}\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}^{2}/\text{C}^{2}} \\ &= 1.39\times 10^{-6}\text{ C} = 1.39\ \mu\text{C}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

This is a relatively small charge, but it produces a rather large voltage. We have another indication here that it is difficult to store isolated charges.

The voltages in both of these examples could be measured with a meter that compares the measured potential with ground potential. Ground potential is often taken to be zero (instead of taking the potential at infinity to be zero). It is the potential difference between two points that is of importance, and very often there is a tacit assumption that some reference point, such as Earth or a very distant point, is at zero potential. As noted in Electric Potential Energy: Potential Difference, this is analogous to taking sea level as $h = 0$ when considering gravitational potential energy, $\mathrm{PE}_{\mathrm{g}} = \mathrm{mgh}$.

Section Summary

- Electric potential of a point charge is $V = \mathrm{kQ}/r$.
- Electric potential is a scalar, and electric field is a vector. Addition of voltages as numbers gives the voltage due to a combination of point charges, whereas addition of individual fields as vectors gives the total electric field.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

In what region of space is the potential due to a uniformly charged sphere the same as that of a point charge? In what region does it differ from that of a point charge?

Exercise:

Problem:

Can the potential of a non-uniformly charged sphere be the same as that of a point charge? Explain.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A 0.500 cm diameter plastic sphere, used in a static electricity demonstration, has a uniformly distributed 40.0 pC charge on its surface. What is the potential near its surface?

Solution:

144 V

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the potential 0.530×10^{-10} m from a proton (the average distance between the proton and electron in a hydrogen atom)?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A sphere has a surface uniformly charged with 1.00 C. At what distance from its center is the potential 5.00 MV? (b) What does your answer imply about the practical aspect of isolating such a large charge?

Solution:

(a) 1.80 km

(b) A charge of 1 C is a very large amount of charge; a sphere of radius 1.80 km is not practical.

Exercise:

Problem:

How far from a $1.00\ \mu\text{C}$ point charge will the potential be 100 V? At what distance will it be 2.00×10^{2} V?

Exercise:

Problem:

What are the sign and magnitude of a point charge that produces a potential of -2.00 V at a distance of 1.00 mm?

Solution:

$-2.22 \times 10^{-13}\text{ C}$

Exercise:

Problem:

If the potential due to a point charge is $5.00 \times 10^{2}\text{ V}$ at a distance of 15.0 m, what are the sign and magnitude of the charge?

Exercise:

Problem:

In nuclear fission, a nucleus splits roughly in half. (a) What is the potential $2.00 \times 10^{-14}\text{ m}$ from a fragment that has 46 protons in it? (b) What is the potential energy in MeV of a similarly charged fragment at this distance?

Solution:

(a) $3.31 \times 10^{6}\text{ V}$

(b) 152 MeV

Exercise:

Problem:

A research Van de Graaff generator has a 2.00-m-diameter metal sphere with a charge of 5.00 mC on it. (a) What is the potential near its surface? (b) At what distance from its center is the potential 1.00 MV? (c) An oxygen atom with three missing electrons is released near the Van de Graaff generator. What is its energy in MeV at this distance?

Exercise:

Problem:

An electrostatic paint sprayer has a 0.200-m-diameter metal sphere at a potential of 25.0 kV that repels paint droplets onto a grounded object. (a) What charge is on the sphere? (b) What charge must a 0.100-mg drop of paint have to arrive at the object with a speed of 10.0 m/s?

Solution:

(a) 2.78×10^{-7} C

(b) 2.00×10^{-10} C

Exercise:

Problem:

In one of the classic nuclear physics experiments at the beginning of the 20th century, an alpha particle was accelerated toward a gold nucleus, and its path was substantially deflected by the Coulomb interaction. If the energy of the doubly charged alpha nucleus was 5.00 MeV, how close to the gold nucleus (79 protons) could it come before being deflected?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the potential between two points situated 10 cm and 20 cm from a $3.0\ \mu\text{C}$ point charge? (b) To what location should the point at 20 cm be moved to increase this potential difference by a factor of two?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) What is the final speed of an electron accelerated from rest through a voltage of 25.0 MV by a negatively charged Van de Graaff terminal?

(b) What is unreasonable about this result?

(c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Solution:

(a) $2.96 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{m/s}$

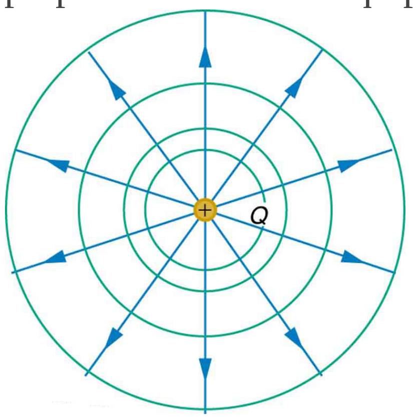
(b) This velocity is far too great. It is faster than the speed of light.

(c) The assumption that the speed of the electron is far less than that of light and that the problem does not require a relativistic treatment produces an answer greater than the speed of light.

Equipotential Lines

- Explain equipotential lines and equipotential surfaces.
- Describe the action of grounding an electrical appliance.
- Compare electric field and equipotential lines.

We can represent electric potentials (voltages) pictorially, just as we drew pictures to illustrate electric fields. Of course, the two are related. Consider [link], which shows an isolated positive point charge and its electric field lines. Electric field lines radiate out from a positive charge and terminate on negative charges. While we use blue arrows to represent the magnitude and direction of the electric field, we use green lines to represent places where the electric potential is constant. These are called **equipotential lines** in two dimensions, or *equipotential surfaces* in three dimensions. The term *equipotential* is also used as a noun, referring to an equipotential line or surface. The potential for a point charge is the same anywhere on an imaginary sphere of radius r surrounding the charge. This is true since the potential for a point charge is given by $V = \mathrm{k}Q/r$ and, thus, has the same value at any point that is a given distance r from the charge. An equipotential sphere is a circle in the two-dimensional view of [link]. Since the electric field lines point radially away from the charge, they are perpendicular to the equipotential lines.



An isolated point charge Q with its electric field lines in blue and equipotential lines

in green. The potential is the same along each equipotential line, meaning that no work is required to move a charge anywhere along one of those lines. Work is needed to move a charge from one equipotential line to another. Equipotential lines are perpendicular to electric field lines in every case.

It is important to note that *equipotential lines are always perpendicular to electric field lines*. No work is required to move a charge along an equipotential, since $\Delta V = 0$. Thus the work is

Equation:

$$W = -\Delta \text{ PE} = -q\Delta V = 0.$$

Work is zero if force is perpendicular to motion. Force is in the same direction as $\mathbf{E}$, so that motion along an equipotential must be perpendicular to $\mathbf{E}$. More precisely, work is related to the electric field by

Equation:

$$W = Fd \cos \theta = qEd \cos \theta = 0.$$

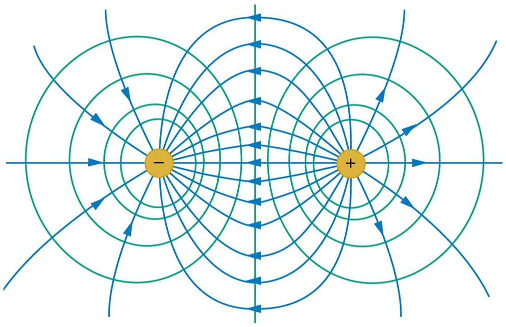
Note that in the above equation, E and F symbolize the magnitudes of the electric field strength and force, respectively. Neither q nor $\mathbf{E}$ nor d is zero, and so $\cos\theta$ must be 0, meaning θ must be 90°. In other words, motion along an equipotential is perpendicular to $\mathbf{E}$.

One of the rules for static electric fields and conductors is that the electric field must be perpendicular to the surface of any conductor. This implies that a *conductor is an equipotential surface in static situations*. There can be no voltage difference across the surface of a conductor, or charges will flow. One of the uses of this fact is that a conductor can be fixed at zero volts by connecting it to the earth with a good conductor—a process called **grounding**. Grounding can be a useful safety tool. For example, grounding the metal case of an electrical appliance ensures that it is at zero volts relative to the earth.

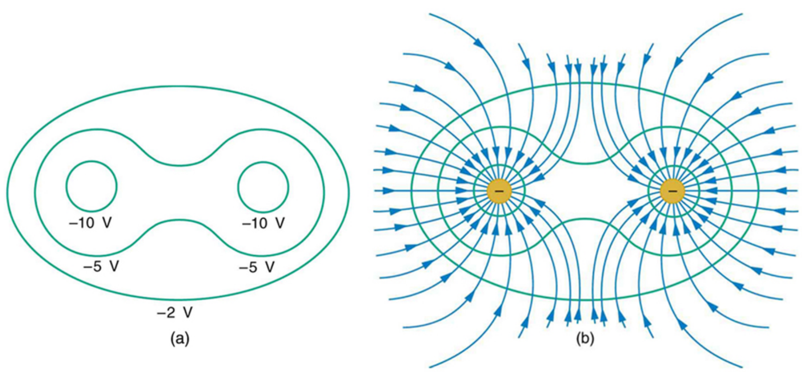
Note:
Grounding
A conductor can be fixed at zero volts by connecting it to the earth with a good conductor—a process called grounding.

Because a conductor is an equipotential, it can replace any equipotential surface. For example, in [link] a charged spherical conductor can replace the point charge, and the electric field and potential surfaces outside of it will be unchanged, confirming the contention that a spherical charge distribution is equivalent to a point charge at its center.

[link] shows the electric field and equipotential lines for two equal and opposite charges. Given the electric field lines, the equipotential lines can be drawn simply by making them perpendicular to the electric field lines. Conversely, given the equipotential lines, as in [link](a), the electric field lines can be drawn by making them perpendicular to the equipotentials, as in [link](b).



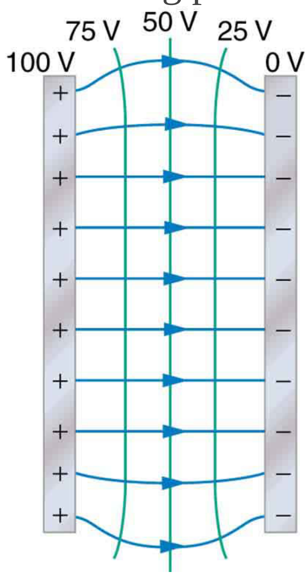
The electric field lines and equipotential lines for two equal but opposite charges. The equipotential lines can be drawn by making them perpendicular to the electric field lines, if those are known. Note that the potential is greatest (most positive) near the positive charge and least (most negative) near the negative charge.



(a) These equipotential lines might be measured with a voltmeter in a laboratory experiment. (b) The corresponding electric field lines are found by drawing them

perpendicular to the equipotentials. Note that these fields are consistent with two equal negative charges.

One of the most important cases is that of the familiar parallel conducting plates shown in [link]. Between the plates, the equipotentials are evenly spaced and parallel. The same field could be maintained by placing conducting plates at the equipotential lines at the potentials shown.



The electric field and equipotential lines between two metal plates.

An important application of electric fields and equipotential lines involves the heart. The heart relies on electrical signals to maintain its rhythm. The movement of electrical signals causes the chambers of the heart to contract and relax. When a person has a heart attack, the movement of these electrical signals may be disturbed. An artificial pacemaker and a

defibrillator can be used to initiate the rhythm of electrical signals. The equipotential lines around the heart, the thoracic region, and the axis of the heart are useful ways of monitoring the structure and functions of the heart. An electrocardiogram (ECG) measures the small electric signals being generated during the activity of the heart. More about the relationship between electric fields and the heart is discussed in Energy Stored in Capacitors.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Charges and Fields
Move point charges around on the playing field and then view the electric field, voltages, equipotential lines, and more. It's colorful, it's dynamic, it's free.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/charges-and-fields/latest/charges-and-fields_en.html

Section Summary

- An equipotential line is a line along which the electric potential is constant.
- An equipotential surface is a three-dimensional version of equipotential lines.
- Equipotential lines are always perpendicular to electric field lines.
- The process by which a conductor can be fixed at zero volts by connecting it to the earth with a good conductor is called grounding.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What is an equipotential line? What is an equipotential surface?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain in your own words why equipotential lines and surfaces must be perpendicular to electric field lines.

Exercise:

Problem: Can different equipotential lines cross? Explain.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

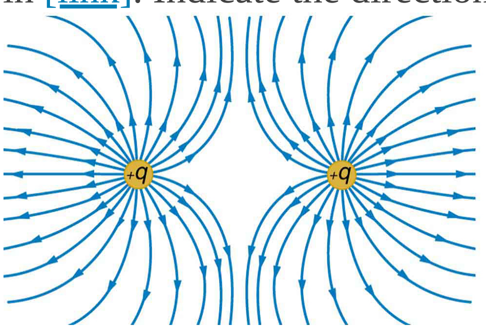
Problem:

(a) Sketch the equipotential lines near a point charge $+ q$. Indicate the direction of increasing potential. (b) Do the same for a point charge $-3\ q$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Sketch the equipotential lines for the two equal positive charges shown in [link]. Indicate the direction of increasing potential.



The electric field near two equal positive charges is directed away from each of the charges.

Exercise:

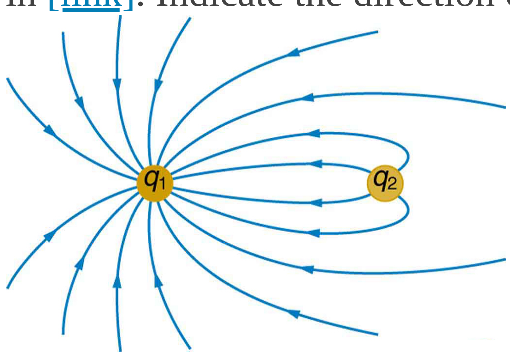
Problem:

[link] shows the electric field lines near two charges q_1 and q_2, the first having a magnitude four times that of the second. Sketch the equipotential lines for these two charges, and indicate the direction of increasing potential.

Exercise:

Problem:

Sketch the equipotential lines a long distance from the charges shown in [link]. Indicate the direction of increasing potential.



The electric field near two charges.

Exercise:

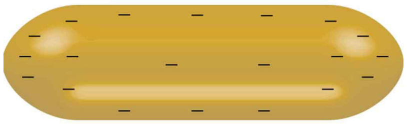
Problem:

Sketch the equipotential lines in the vicinity of two opposite charges, where the negative charge is three times as great in magnitude as the positive. See [link] for a similar situation. Indicate the direction of increasing potential.

Exercise:

Problem:

Sketch the equipotential lines in the vicinity of the negatively charged conductor in [link]. How will these equipotentials look a long distance from the object?

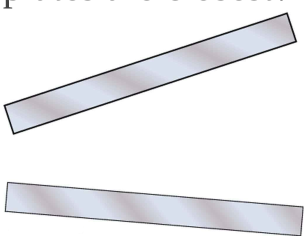


A negatively charged conductor.

Exercise:

Problem:

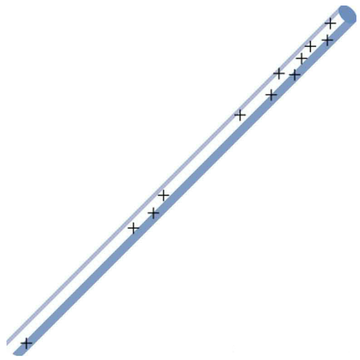
Sketch the equipotential lines surrounding the two conducting plates shown in [link], given the top plate is positive and the bottom plate has an equal amount of negative charge. Be certain to indicate the distribution of charge on the plates. Is the field strongest where the plates are closest? Why should it be?



Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Sketch the electric field lines in the vicinity of the charged insulator in [link]. Note its non-uniform charge distribution. (b) Sketch equipotential lines surrounding the insulator. Indicate the direction of increasing potential.



A charged insulating rod such as might be used in a classroom demonstration.

Exercise:

Problem:

The naturally occurring charge on the ground on a fine day out in the open country is $-1.00\ \text{nC/m}^2$. (a) What is the electric field relative to ground at a height of 3.00 m? (b) Calculate the electric potential at this height. (c) Sketch electric field and equipotential lines for this scenario.

Exercise:

Problem:

The lesser electric ray (*Narcine bancroftii*) maintains an incredible charge on its head and a charge equal in magnitude but opposite in sign on its tail ([link]). (a) Sketch the equipotential lines surrounding the ray. (b) Sketch the equipotentials when the ray is near a ship with a conducting surface. (c) How could this charge distribution be of use to the ray?

Lesser electric ray (*Narcine bancroftii*) (credit: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, NOAA's Fisheries Collection).

Glossary

equipotential line
: a line along which the electric potential is constant

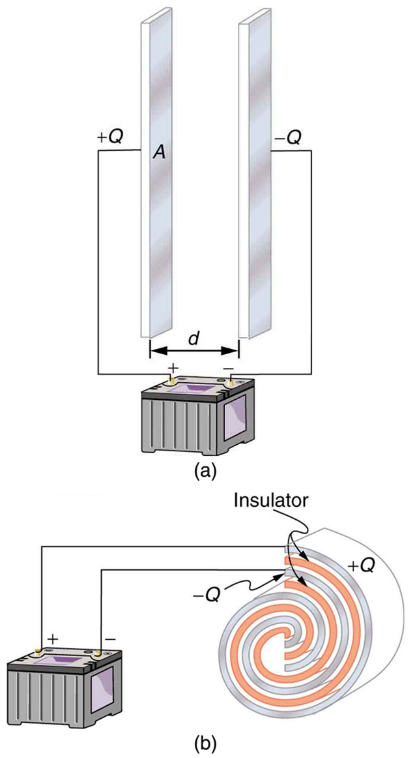
grounding
: fixing a conductor at zero volts by connecting it to the earth or ground

Capacitors and Dielectrics

- Describe the action of a capacitor and define capacitance.
- Explain parallel plate capacitors and their capacitances.
- Discuss the process of increasing the capacitance of a dielectric.
- Determine capacitance given charge and voltage.

A **capacitor** is a device used to store electric charge. Capacitors have applications ranging from filtering static out of radio reception to energy storage in heart defibrillators. Typically, commercial capacitors have two conducting parts close to one another, but not touching, such as those in [link]. (Most of the time an insulator is used between the two plates to provide separation—see the discussion on dielectrics below.) When battery terminals are connected to an initially uncharged capacitor, equal amounts of positive and negative charge, $+Q$ and $-Q$, are separated into its two plates. The capacitor remains neutral overall, but we refer to it as storing a charge Q in this circumstance.

Note:
Capacitor
A capacitor is a device used to store electric charge.

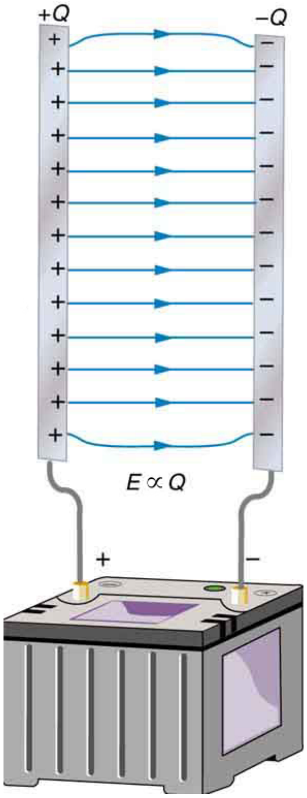


Both capacitors shown here were initially uncharged before being connected to a battery. They now have separated charges of $+Q$ and $-Q$ on their two halves. (a) A parallel plate capacitor. (b) A rolled capacitor with an insulating material between its two conducting sheets.

The amount of charge Q a *capacitor* can store depends on two major factors—the voltage applied and the capacitor’s physical characteristics, such as its size.

Note:
The Amount of Charge Q a Capacitor Can Store
The amount of charge Q a *capacitor* can store depends on two major factors—the voltage applied and the capacitor’s physical characteristics, such as its size.

A system composed of two identical, parallel conducting plates separated by a distance, as in [link], is called a **parallel plate capacitor**. It is easy to see the relationship between the voltage and the stored charge for a parallel plate capacitor, as shown in [link]. Each electric field line starts on an individual positive charge and ends on a negative one, so that there will be more field lines if there is more charge. (Drawing a single field line per charge is a convenience, only. We can draw many field lines for each charge, but the total number is proportional to the number of charges.) The electric field strength is, thus, directly proportional to Q.



Electric field lines in this parallel plate capacitor, as always, start on positive charges and end on negative charges. Since the electric field strength is proportional to the density of field lines, it is also proportional to the amount

of charge on
the capacitor.

The field is proportional to the charge:

Equation:

$$E \propto Q,$$

where the symbol $\propto$ means “proportional to.” From the discussion in Electric Potential in a Uniform Electric Field, we know that the voltage across parallel plates is $V = \text{Ed}$. Thus,

Equation:

$$V \propto E.$$

It follows, then, that $V \propto Q$, and conversely,

Equation:

$$Q \propto V.$$

This is true in general: The greater the voltage applied to any capacitor, the greater the charge stored in it.

Different capacitors will store different amounts of charge for the same applied voltage, depending on their physical characteristics. We define their **capacitance** C to be such that the charge Q stored in a capacitor is proportional to C. The charge stored in a capacitor is given by

Equation:

$$Q = \text{CV}.$$

This equation expresses the two major factors affecting the amount of charge stored. Those factors are the physical characteristics of the capacitor,

C, and the voltage, V. Rearranging the equation, we see that *capacitance* C *is the amount of charge stored per volt*, or
Equation:

$$C = \frac{Q}{V}.$$

Note:
Capacitance
Capacitance C is the amount of charge stored per volt, or
Equation:

$$C = \frac{Q}{V}.$$

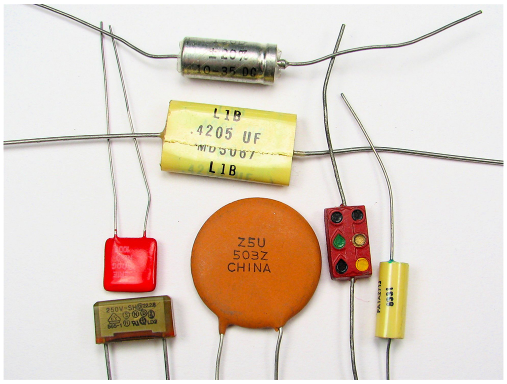
The unit of capacitance is the farad (F), named for Michael Faraday (1791–1867), an English scientist who contributed to the fields of electromagnetism and electrochemistry. Since capacitance is charge per unit voltage, we see that a farad is a coulomb per volt, or
Equation:

$$1\ \text{F} = \frac{1\ \text{C}}{1\ \text{V}}.$$

A 1-farad capacitor would be able to store 1 coulomb (a very large amount of charge) with the application of only 1 volt. One farad is, thus, a very large capacitance. Typical capacitors range from fractions of a picofarad $\left(1\ \text{pF} = 10^{-12}\ \text{F}\right)$ to millifarads $\left(1\ \text{mF} = 10^{-3}\ \text{F}\right)$.

[link] shows some common capacitors. Capacitors are primarily made of ceramic, glass, or plastic, depending upon purpose and size. Insulating

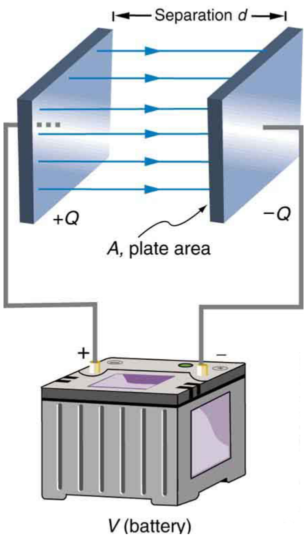
materials, called dielectrics, are commonly used in their construction, as discussed below.



Some typical capacitors. Size and value of capacitance are not necessarily related. (credit: Windell Oskay)

Parallel Plate Capacitor

The parallel plate capacitor shown in [link] has two identical conducting plates, each having a surface area A, separated by a distance d (with no material between the plates). When a voltage V is applied to the capacitor, it stores a charge Q, as shown. We can see how its capacitance depends on A and d by considering the characteristics of the Coulomb force. We know that like charges repel, unlike charges attract, and the force between charges decreases with distance. So it seems quite reasonable that the bigger the plates are, the more charge they can store—because the charges can spread out more. Thus C should be greater for larger A. Similarly, the closer the plates are together, the greater the attraction of the opposite charges on them. So C should be greater for smaller d.



Parallel plate capacitor with plates separated by a distance d. Each plate has an area A.

It can be shown that for a parallel plate capacitor there are only two factors (A and d) that affect its capacitance C. The capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor in equation form is given by

Equation:

$$C = \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d}.$$

Note:
Capacitance of a Parallel Plate Capacitor
Equation:

$$C = \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d}$$

A is the area of one plate in square meters, and d is the distance between the plates in meters. The constant ε_0 is the permittivity of free space; its numerical value in SI units is $\varepsilon_0 = 8.85 \times 10^{-12}\ \mathrm{F/m}$. The units of F/m are equivalent to $\mathrm{C^2/N \cdot m^2}$. The small numerical value of ε_0 is related to the large size of the farad. A parallel plate capacitor must have a large area to have a capacitance approaching a farad. (Note that the above equation is valid when the parallel plates are separated by air or free space. When another material is placed between the plates, the equation is modified, as discussed below.)

Example:
Capacitance and Charge Stored in a Parallel Plate Capacitor
(a) What is the capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor with metal plates, each of area $1.00\ \mathrm{m}^2$, separated by 1.00 mm? (b) What charge is stored in this capacitor if a voltage of 3.00×10^3 V is applied to it?
Strategy
Finding the capacitance C is a straightforward application of the equation $C = \varepsilon_0 A/d$. Once C is found, the charge stored can be found using the equation $Q = \mathrm{CV}$.
Solution for (a)
Entering the given values into the equation for the capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor yields
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} C &= \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d} = \left(8.85 \times 10^{-12} \frac{\mathrm{F}}{\mathrm{m}}\right) \frac{1.00\ \mathrm{m}^2}{1.00 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m}} \\ &= 8.85 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{F} = 8.85\ \mathrm{nF}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (a)

This small value for the capacitance indicates how difficult it is to make a device with a large capacitance. Special techniques help, such as using very large area thin foils placed close together.

Solution for (b)

The charge stored in any capacitor is given by the equation $Q = \text{CV}$. Entering the known values into this equation gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= CV = \left(8.85 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{F}\right)\left(3.00{\times}10^{3}\ \text{V}\right) \\ &= 26.6\ \mu\text{C}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (b)

This charge is only slightly greater than those found in typical static electricity. Since air breaks down at about $3.00 \times 10^{6}\ \text{V/m}$, more charge cannot be stored on this capacitor by increasing the voltage.

Another interesting biological example dealing with electric potential is found in the cell’s plasma membrane. The membrane sets a cell off from its surroundings and also allows ions to selectively pass in and out of the cell. There is a potential difference across the membrane of about $–70\ \text{mV}$. This is due to the mainly negatively charged ions in the cell and the predominance of positively charged sodium (Na^{+}) ions outside. Things change when a nerve cell is stimulated. Na^{+} ions are allowed to pass through the membrane into the cell, producing a positive membrane potential—the nerve signal. The cell membrane is about 7 to 10 nm thick. An approximate value of the electric field across it is given by

Equation:

$$E = \frac{V}{d} = \frac{–70 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{V}}{8 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}} = –9 \times 10^{6}\ \text{V/m}.$$

This electric field is enough to cause a breakdown in air.

Dielectric

The previous example highlights the difficulty of storing a large amount of charge in capacitors. If d is made smaller to produce a larger capacitance, then the maximum voltage must be reduced proportionally to avoid breakdown (since $E = V/d$). An important solution to this difficulty is to put an insulating material, called a **dielectric**, between the plates of a capacitor and allow d to be as small as possible. Not only does the smaller d make the capacitance greater, but many insulators can withstand greater electric fields than air before breaking down.

There is another benefit to using a dielectric in a capacitor. Depending on the material used, the capacitance is greater than that given by the equation $C = \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d}$ by a factor κ, called the *dielectric constant*. A parallel plate capacitor with a dielectric between its plates has a capacitance given by

Equation:

$$C = \kappa\varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d} \text{ (parallel plate capacitor with dielectric).}$$

Values of the dielectric constant κ for various materials are given in [link]. Note that κ for vacuum is exactly 1, and so the above equation is valid in that case, too. If a dielectric is used, perhaps by placing Teflon between the plates of the capacitor in [link], then the capacitance is greater by the factor κ, which for Teflon is 2.1.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Building a Capacitor
How large a capacitor can you make using a chewing gum wrapper? The plates will be the aluminum foil, and the separation (dielectric) in between will be the paper.

Material	Dielectric constant κ	Dielectric strength (V/m)
Vacuum	1.00000	—
Air	1.00059	3×10^6
Bakelite	4.9	24×10^6
Fused quartz	3.78	8×10^6
Neoprene rubber	6.7	12×10^6
Nylon	3.4	14×10^6
Paper	3.7	16×10^6
Polystyrene	2.56	24×10^6
Pyrex glass	5.6	14×10^6
Silicon oil	2.5	15×10^6
Strontium titanate	233	8×10^6
Teflon	2.1	60×10^6
Water	80	—

Dielectric Constants and Dielectric Strengths for Various Materials at 20ºC

Note also that the dielectric constant for air is very close to 1, so that air-filled capacitors act much like those with vacuum between their plates *except* that the air can become conductive if the electric field strength

becomes too great. (Recall that $E = V/d$ for a parallel plate capacitor.) Also shown in [link] are maximum electric field strengths in V/m, called **dielectric strengths**, for several materials. These are the fields above which the material begins to break down and conduct. The dielectric strength imposes a limit on the voltage that can be applied for a given plate separation. For instance, in [link], the separation is 1.00 mm, and so the voltage limit for air is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= E \cdot d \\ &= (3 \times 10^{6}\ \text{V/m})(1.00 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}) \\ &= 3000\ \text{V}. \end{aligned}$$

However, the limit for a 1.00 mm separation filled with Teflon is 60,000 V, since the dielectric strength of Teflon is 60×10^{6} V/m. So the same capacitor filled with Teflon has a greater capacitance and can be subjected to a much greater voltage. Using the capacitance we calculated in the above example for the air-filled parallel plate capacitor, we find that the Teflon-filled capacitor can store a maximum charge of

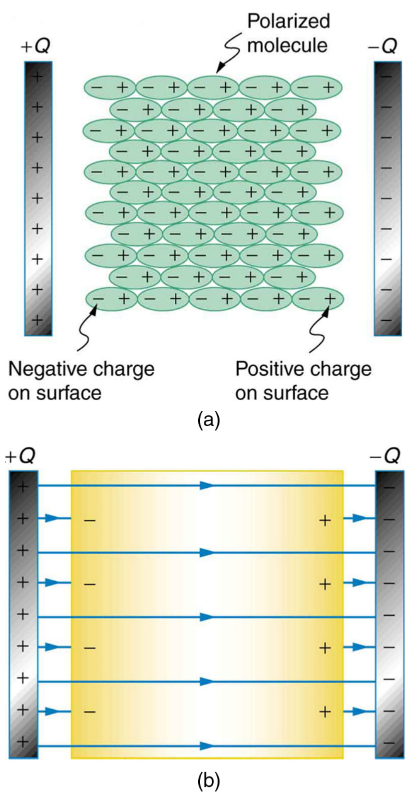
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= CV \\ &= \kappa C_{\text{air}} V \\ &= (2.1)(8.85\ \text{nF})(6.0 \times 10^{4}\ \text{V}) \\ &= 1.1\ \text{mC}. \end{aligned}$$

This is 42 times the charge of the same air-filled capacitor.

Note:
Dielectric Strength
The maximum electric field strength above which an insulating material begins to break down and conduct is called its dielectric strength.

Microscopically, how does a dielectric increase capacitance? Polarization of the insulator is responsible. The more easily it is polarized, the greater its dielectric constant κ. Water, for example, is a **polar molecule** because one end of the molecule has a slight positive charge and the other end has a slight negative charge. The polarity of water causes it to have a relatively large dielectric constant of 80. The effect of polarization can be best explained in terms of the characteristics of the Coulomb force. [link] shows the separation of charge schematically in the molecules of a dielectric material placed between the charged plates of a capacitor. The Coulomb force between the closest ends of the molecules and the charge on the plates is attractive and very strong, since they are very close together. This attracts more charge onto the plates than if the space were empty and the opposite charges were a distance d away.



(a) The molecules in the insulating material between

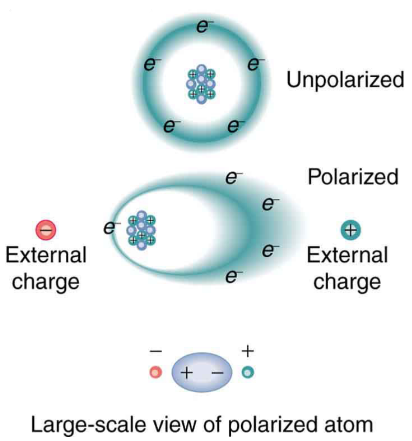
the plates of a capacitor are polarized by the charged plates. This produces a layer of opposite charge on the surface of the dielectric that attracts more charge onto the plate, increasing its capacitance. (b) The dielectric reduces the electric field strength inside the capacitor, resulting in a smaller voltage between the plates for the same charge. The capacitor stores the same charge for a smaller voltage, implying that it has a larger capacitance because of the dielectric.

Another way to understand how a dielectric increases capacitance is to consider its effect on the electric field inside the capacitor. [link](b) shows the electric field lines with a dielectric in place. Since the field lines end on charges in the dielectric, there are fewer of them going from one side of the capacitor to the other. So the electric field strength is less than if there were

a vacuum between the plates, even though the same charge is on the plates. The voltage between the plates is $V = \mathrm{Ed}$, so it too is reduced by the dielectric. Thus there is a smaller voltage V for the same charge Q; since $C = Q/V$, the capacitance C is greater.

The dielectric constant is generally defined to be $\kappa = E_0/E$, or the ratio of the electric field in a vacuum to that in the dielectric material, and is intimately related to the polarizability of the material.

Note:
Things Great and Small
The Submicroscopic Origin of Polarization
Polarization is a separation of charge within an atom or molecule. As has been noted, the planetary model of the atom pictures it as having a positive nucleus orbited by negative electrons, analogous to the planets orbiting the Sun. Although this model is not completely accurate, it is very helpful in explaining a vast range of phenomena and will be refined elsewhere, such as in Atomic Physics. The submicroscopic origin of polarization can be modeled as shown in [link].



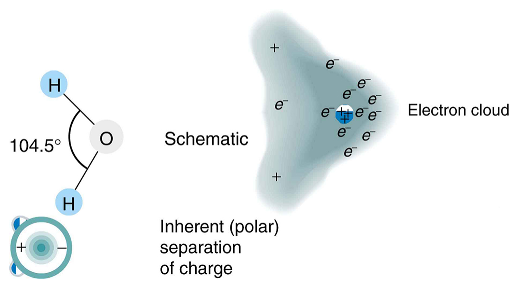
Artist’s conception of a polarized atom. The orbits of

electrons around the nucleus are shifted slightly by the external charges (shown exaggerated). The resulting separation of charge within the atom means that it is polarized. Note that the unlike charge is now closer to the external charges, causing the polarization.

We will find in Atomic Physics that the orbits of electrons are more properly viewed as electron clouds with the density of the cloud related to the probability of finding an electron in that location (as opposed to the definite locations and paths of planets in their orbits around the Sun). This cloud is shifted by the Coulomb force so that the atom on average has a separation of charge. Although the atom remains neutral, it can now be the source of a Coulomb force, since a charge brought near the atom will be closer to one type of charge than the other.

Some molecules, such as those of water, have an inherent separation of charge and are thus called polar molecules. [link] illustrates the separation of charge in a water molecule, which has two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom (H_2O). The water molecule is not symmetric—the hydrogen atoms are repelled to one side, giving the molecule a boomerang shape. The electrons in a water molecule are more concentrated around the more highly charged oxygen nucleus than around the hydrogen nuclei. This makes the oxygen end of the molecule slightly negative and leaves the hydrogen ends slightly positive. The inherent separation of charge in polar molecules

makes it easier to align them with external fields and charges. Polar molecules therefore exhibit greater polarization effects and have greater dielectric constants. Those who study chemistry will find that the polar nature of water has many effects. For example, water molecules gather ions much more effectively because they have an electric field and a separation of charge to attract charges of both signs. Also, as brought out in the previous chapter, polar water provides a shield or screening of the electric fields in the highly charged molecules of interest in biological systems.



Artist's conception of a water molecule. There is an inherent separation of charge, and so water is a polar molecule. Electrons in the molecule are attracted to the oxygen nucleus and leave an excess of positive charge near the two hydrogen nuclei. (Note that the schematic on the right is a rough illustration of the distribution of electrons in the water molecule. It does not show the actual numbers of protons and electrons involved in the structure.)

Note:
PhET Explorations: Capacitor Lab
Explore how a capacitor works! Change the size of the plates and add a dielectric to see the effect on capacitance. Change the voltage and see charges built up on the plates. Observe the electric field in the capacitor. Measure the voltage and the electric field. Click to open media in new browser.

Section Summary

- A capacitor is a device used to store charge.
- The amount of charge Q a capacitor can store depends on two major factors—the voltage applied and the capacitor's physical characteristics, such as its size.
- The capacitance C is the amount of charge stored per volt, or
  Equation:
  $$C = \frac{Q}{V}.$$
- The capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor is $C = \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d}$, when the plates are separated by air or free space. ε_0 is called the permittivity of free space.
- A parallel plate capacitor with a dielectric between its plates has a capacitance given by
  Equation:
  $$C = \kappa\varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d},$$
  where κ is the dielectric constant of the material.

- The maximum electric field strength above which an insulating material begins to break down and conduct is called dielectric strength.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Does the capacitance of a device depend on the applied voltage? What about the charge stored in it?

Exercise:

Problem:

Use the characteristics of the Coulomb force to explain why capacitance should be proportional to the plate area of a capacitor. Similarly, explain why capacitance should be inversely proportional to the separation between plates.

Exercise:

Problem:

Give the reason why a dielectric material increases capacitance compared with what it would be with air between the plates of a capacitor. What is the independent reason that a dielectric material also allows a greater voltage to be applied to a capacitor? (The dielectric thus increases C and permits a greater V.)

Exercise:

Problem:

How does the polar character of water molecules help to explain water's relatively large dielectric constant? ([link])

Exercise:

Problem:

Sparks will occur between the plates of an air-filled capacitor at lower voltage when the air is humid than when dry. Explain why, considering the polar character of water molecules.

Exercise:

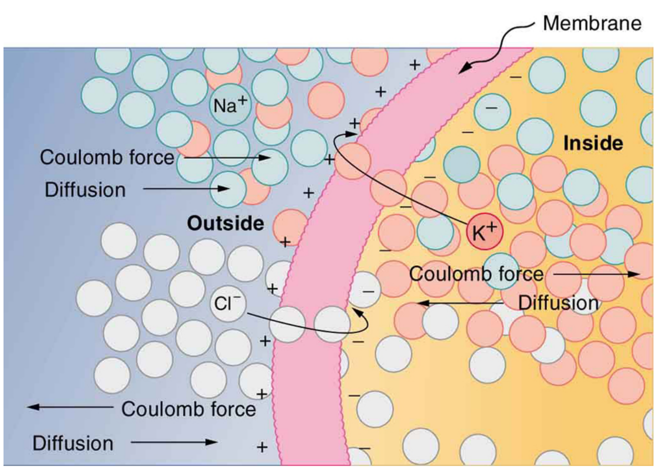
Problem:

Water has a large dielectric constant, but it is rarely used in capacitors. Explain why.

Exercise:

Problem:

Membranes in living cells, including those in humans, are characterized by a separation of charge across the membrane. Effectively, the membranes are thus charged capacitors with important functions related to the potential difference across the membrane. Is energy required to separate these charges in living membranes and, if so, is its source the metabolization of food energy or some other source?



The semipermeable membrane of a

cell has different concentrations of ions inside and out. Diffusion moves the K^+ (potassium) and Cl^- (chloride) ions in the directions shown, until the Coulomb force halts further transfer. This results in a layer of positive charge on the outside, a layer of negative charge on the inside, and thus a voltage across the cell membrane. The membrane is normally impermeable to Na^+ (sodium ions).

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What charge is stored in a 180 μF capacitor when 120 V is applied to it?

Solution:

$21.6\ mC$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the charge stored when 5.50 V is applied to an 8.00 pF capacitor.

Exercise:

Problem: What charge is stored in the capacitor in [link]?

Solution:

$80.0\ \text{mC}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the voltage applied to a $2.00\ \mu\text{F}$ capacitor when it holds $3.10\ \mu\text{C}$ of charge.

Exercise:

Problem:

What voltage must be applied to an 8.00 nF capacitor to store 0.160 mC of charge?

Solution:

20.0 kV

Exercise:

Problem:

What capacitance is needed to store $3.00\ \mu\text{C}$ of charge at a voltage of 120 V?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the capacitance of a large Van de Graaff generator's terminal, given that it stores 8.00 mC of charge at a voltage of 12.0 MV?

Solution:

$667\ \text{pF}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor having plates of area $5.00\ \text{m}^2$ that are separated by 0.100 mm of Teflon.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a)What is the capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor having plates of area $1.50\ \text{m}^2$ that are separated by 0.0200 mm of neoprene rubber? (b) What charge does it hold when 9.00 V is applied to it?

Solution:

(a) $4.4\ \mu\text{F}$

(b) $4.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{C}$

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

A prankster applies 450 V to an $80.0\ \mu\text{F}$ capacitor and then tosses it to an unsuspecting victim. The victim's finger is burned by the discharge of the capacitor through 0.200 g of flesh. What is the temperature increase of the flesh? Is it reasonable to assume no phase change?

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

(a) A certain parallel plate capacitor has plates of area $4.00\ \text{m}^2$, separated by 0.0100 mm of nylon, and stores 0.170 C of charge. What is the applied voltage? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) 14.2 kV

(b) The voltage is unreasonably large, more than 100 times the breakdown voltage of nylon.

(c) The assumed charge is unreasonably large and cannot be stored in a capacitor of these dimensions.

Glossary

capacitor
: a device that stores electric charge

capacitance
: amount of charge stored per unit volt

dielectric
: an insulating material

dielectric strength
: the maximum electric field above which an insulating material begins to break down and conduct

parallel plate capacitor
: two identical conducting plates separated by a distance

polar molecule
: a molecule with inherent separation of charge

Capacitors in Series and Parallel

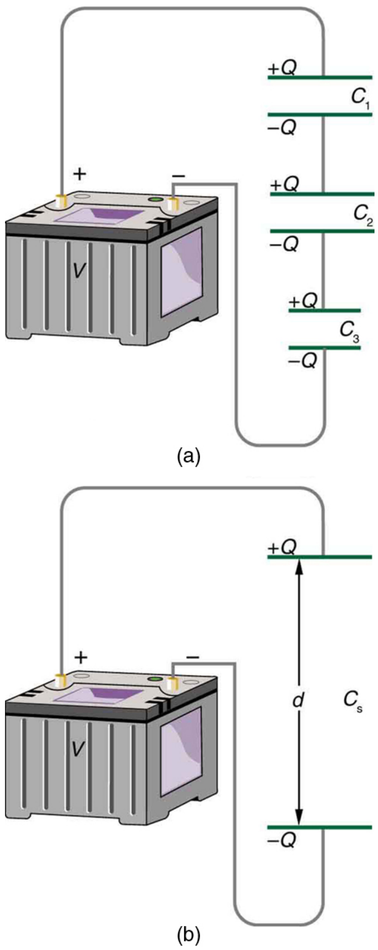
- Derive expressions for total capacitance in series and in parallel.
- Identify series and parallel parts in the combination of connection of capacitors.
- Calculate the effective capacitance in series and parallel given individual capacitances.

Several capacitors may be connected together in a variety of applications. Multiple connections of capacitors act like a single equivalent capacitor. The total capacitance of this equivalent single capacitor depends both on the individual capacitors and how they are connected. There are two simple and common types of connections, called *series* and *parallel*, for which we can easily calculate the total capacitance. Certain more complicated connections can also be related to combinations of series and parallel.

Capacitance in Series

[link](a) shows a series connection of three capacitors with a voltage applied. As for any capacitor, the capacitance of the combination is related to charge and voltage by $C = \frac{Q}{V}$.

Note in [link] that opposite charges of magnitude Q flow to either side of the originally uncharged combination of capacitors when the voltage V is applied. Conservation of charge requires that equal-magnitude charges be created on the plates of the individual capacitors, since charge is only being separated in these originally neutral devices. The end result is that the combination resembles a single capacitor with an effective plate separation greater than that of the individual capacitors alone. (See [link](b).) Larger plate separation means smaller capacitance. It is a general feature of series connections of capacitors that the total capacitance is less than any of the individual capacitances.



(a) Capacitors connected in series. The magnitude of the charge on each plate is Q. (b) An equivalent capacitor has a larger plate separation d. Series connections produce a total capacitance that is less than that of

any of the individual capacitors.

We can find an expression for the total capacitance by considering the voltage across the individual capacitors shown in [link]. Solving $C = \frac{Q}{V}$ for V gives $V = \frac{Q}{C}$. The voltages across the individual capacitors are thus $V_1 = \frac{Q}{C_1}$, $V_2 = \frac{Q}{C_2}$, and $V_3 = \frac{Q}{C_3}$. The total voltage is the sum of the individual voltages:

Equation:

$$V = V_1 + V_2 + V_3.$$

Now, calling the total capacitance C_S for series capacitance, consider that

Equation:

$$V = \frac{Q}{C_\text{S}} = V_1 + V_2 + V_3.$$

Entering the expressions for V_1, V_2, and V_3, we get

Equation:

$$\frac{Q}{C_\text{S}} = \frac{Q}{C_1} + \frac{Q}{C_2} + \frac{Q}{C_3}.$$

Canceling the Qs, we obtain the equation for the total capacitance in series C_S to be

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{C_\text{S}} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3} + ...,$$

where “...” indicates that the expression is valid for any number of capacitors connected in series. An expression of this form always results in a total capacitance C_{S} that is less than any of the individual capacitances C_1, C_2, ..., as the next example illustrates.

Note:
Total Capacitance in Series, C_{s}
Total capacitance in series: $\frac{1}{C_{\text{S}}} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3} + ...$

Example:
What Is the Series Capacitance?
Find the total capacitance for three capacitors connected in series, given their individual capacitances are 1.000, 5.000, and 8.000 μF.
Strategy
With the given information, the total capacitance can be found using the equation for capacitance in series.
Solution
Entering the given capacitances into the expression for $\frac{1}{C_{\text{S}}}$ gives $\frac{1}{C_S} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3}$.
Equation:

$$\frac{1}{C_{\text{S}}} = \frac{1}{1.000\ \mu\text{F}} + \frac{1}{5.000\ \mu\text{F}} + \frac{1}{8.000\ \mu\text{F}} = \frac{1.325}{\mu\text{F}}$$

Inverting to find C_{S} yields $C_{\text{S}} = \frac{\mu\text{F}}{1.325} = 0.755\ \mu\text{F}$.
Discussion
The total series capacitance C_{s} is less than the smallest individual capacitance, as promised. In series connections of capacitors, the sum is less than the parts. In fact, it is less than any individual. Note that it is sometimes possible, and more convenient, to solve an equation like the above by finding the least common denominator, which in this case (showing only whole-number calculations) is 40. Thus,

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{C_{\mathrm{S}}} = \frac{40}{40\ \mu\mathrm{F}} + \frac{8}{40\ \mu\mathrm{F}} + \frac{5}{40\ \mu\mathrm{F}} = \frac{53}{40\ \mu\mathrm{F}},$$

so that

Equation:

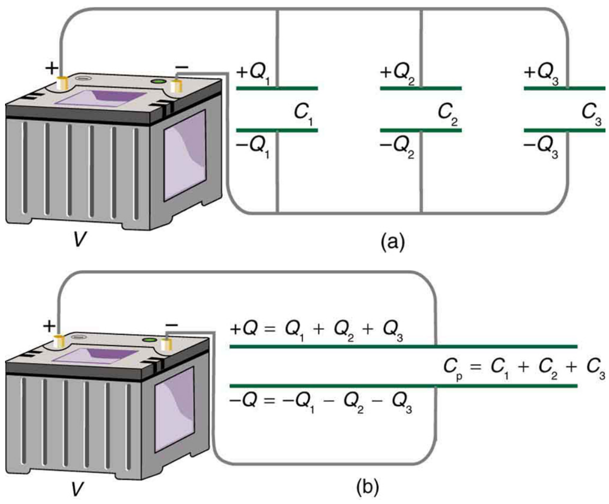
$$C_{\mathrm{S}} = \frac{40\ \mu\mathrm{F}}{53} = 0.755\ \mu\mathrm{F}.$$

Capacitors in Parallel

[link](a) shows a parallel connection of three capacitors with a voltage applied. Here the total capacitance is easier to find than in the series case. To find the equivalent total capacitance C_{p}, we first note that the voltage across each capacitor is V, the same as that of the source, since they are connected directly to it through a conductor. (Conductors are equipotentials, and so the voltage across the capacitors is the same as that across the voltage source.) Thus the capacitors have the same charges on them as they would have if connected individually to the voltage source. The total charge Q is the sum of the individual charges:

Equation:

$$Q = Q_1 + Q_2 + Q_3.$$



(a) Capacitors in parallel. Each is connected directly to the voltage source just as if it were all alone, and so the total capacitance in parallel is just the sum of the individual capacitances. (b) The equivalent capacitor has a larger plate area and can therefore hold more charge than the individual capacitors.

Using the relationship $Q = \text{CV}$, we see that the total charge is $Q = C_{\text{p}}V$, and the individual charges are $Q_1 = C_1V$, $Q_2 = C_2V$, and $Q_3 = C_3V$. Entering these into the previous equation gives

Equation:

$$C_{\text{p}}V = C_1V + C_2V + C_3V.$$

Canceling V from the equation, we obtain the equation for the total capacitance in parallel C_{p}:

Equation:

$$C_{\mathrm{p}} = C_1 + C_2 + C_3 + \ldots.$$

Total capacitance in parallel is simply the sum of the individual capacitances. (Again the "..." indicates the expression is valid for any number of capacitors connected in parallel.) So, for example, if the capacitors in the example above were connected in parallel, their capacitance would be

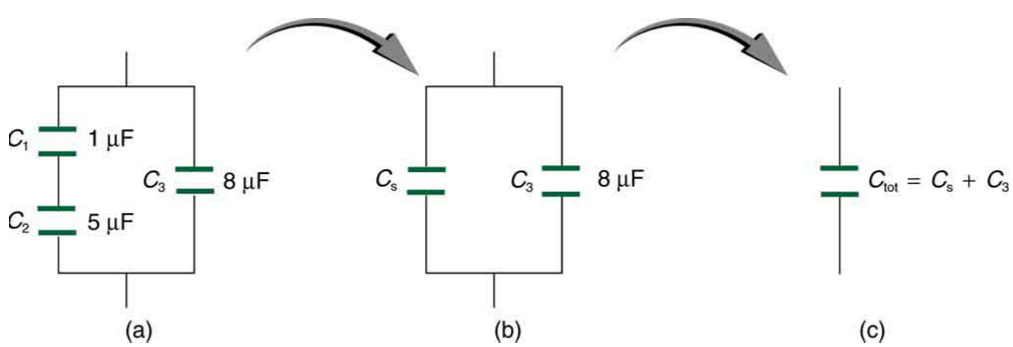
Equation:

$$C_{\mathrm{p}} = 1.000\ \mu\mathrm{F} + 5.000\ \mu\mathrm{F} + 8.000\ \mu\mathrm{F} = 14.000\ \mu\mathrm{F}.$$

The equivalent capacitor for a parallel connection has an effectively larger plate area and, thus, a larger capacitance, as illustrated in [link](b).

Note:
Total Capacitance in Parallel, C_{p}
Total capacitance in parallel $C_{\mathrm{p}} = C_1 + C_2 + C_3 + \ldots$

More complicated connections of capacitors can sometimes be combinations of series and parallel. (See [link].) To find the total capacitance of such combinations, we identify series and parallel parts, compute their capacitances, and then find the total.



(a) This circuit contains both series and parallel connections of capacitors. See [link] for the calculation of the overall capacitance of the circuit. (b) C_1 and C_2 are in series; their equivalent capacitance C_S is less than either of them. (c) Note that C_S is in parallel with C_3. The total capacitance is, thus, the sum of C_S and C_3.

Example:
A Mixture of Series and Parallel Capacitance
Find the total capacitance of the combination of capacitors shown in [link]. Assume the capacitances in [link] are known to three decimal places ($C_1 = 1.000\ \mu F$, $C_2 = 5.000\ \mu F$, and $C_3 = 8.000\ \mu F$), and round your answer to three decimal places.
Strategy
To find the total capacitance, we first identify which capacitors are in series and which are in parallel. Capacitors C_1 and C_2 are in series. Their combination, labeled C_S in the figure, is in parallel with C_3.
Solution
Since C_1 and C_2 are in series, their total capacitance is given by $\frac{1}{C_S} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3}$. Entering their values into the equation gives
Equation:

$$\frac{1}{C_S} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} = \frac{1}{1.000\ \mu F} + \frac{1}{5.000\ \mu F} = \frac{1.200}{\mu F}.$$

Inverting gives
Equation:

$$C_S = 0.833\ \mu F.$$

This equivalent series capacitance is in parallel with the third capacitor; thus, the total is the sum
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} C_{\text{tot}} & = & C_{\text{S}} + C_{\text{S}} \\ & = & 0.833\ \mu\text{F} + 8.000\ \mu\text{F} \\ & = & 8.833\ \mu\text{F}. \end{array}$$

Discussion

This technique of analyzing the combinations of capacitors piece by piece until a total is obtained can be applied to larger combinations of capacitors.

Section Summary

- Total capacitance in series $\frac{1}{C_{\text{S}}} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3} + \ldots$
- Total capacitance in parallel $C_{\text{p}} = C_1 + C_2 + C_3 + \ldots$
- If a circuit contains a combination of capacitors in series and parallel, identify series and parallel parts, compute their capacitances, and then find the total.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

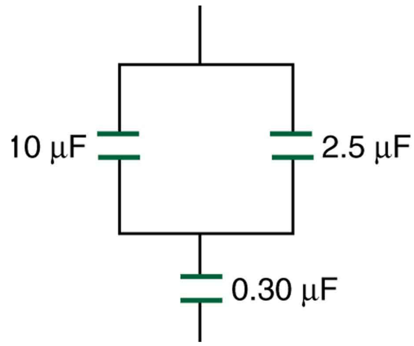
If you wish to store a large amount of energy in a capacitor bank, would you connect capacitors in series or parallel? Explain.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the total capacitance of the combination of capacitors in [link].



A combination of series and parallel connections of capacitors.

Solution:

$0.293 \mu F$

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you want a capacitor bank with a total capacitance of 0.750 F and you possess numerous 1.50 mF capacitors. What is the smallest number you could hook together to achieve your goal, and how would you connect them?

Exercise:

Problem:

What total capacitances can you make by connecting a $5.00 \mu F$ and an $8.00 \mu F$ capacitor together?

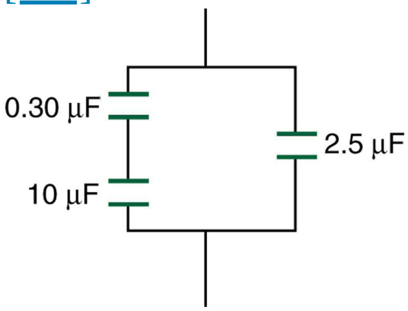
Solution:

$3.08 \mu F$ in series combination, $13.0 \mu F$ in parallel combination

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the total capacitance of the combination of capacitors shown in [link].



A combination of series and parallel connections of capacitors.

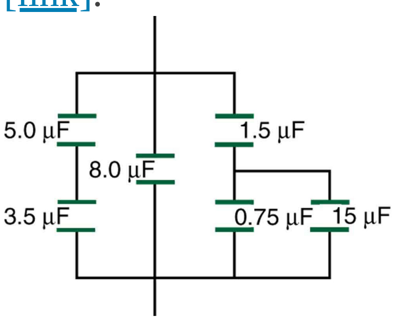
Solution:

$2.79\ \mu F$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the total capacitance of the combination of capacitors shown in [link].



A combination of series and parallel

connections of capacitors.

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

(a) An 8.00 µF capacitor is connected in parallel to another capacitor, producing a total capacitance of 5.00 µF. What is the capacitance of the second capacitor? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) –3.00 µF

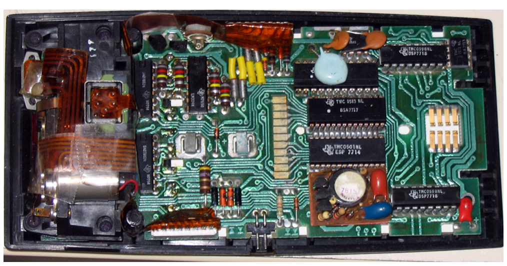
(b) You cannot have a negative value of capacitance.

(c) The assumption that the capacitors were hooked up in parallel, rather than in series, was incorrect. A parallel connection always produces a greater capacitance, while here a smaller capacitance was assumed. This could happen only if the capacitors are connected in series.

Energy Stored in Capacitors

- List some uses of capacitors.
- Express in equation form the energy stored in a capacitor.
- Explain the function of a defibrillator.

Most of us have seen dramatizations in which medical personnel use a **defibrillator** to pass an electric current through a patient’s heart to get it to beat normally. (Review [link].) Often realistic in detail, the person applying the shock directs another person to “make it 400 joules this time.” The energy delivered by the defibrillator is stored in a capacitor and can be adjusted to fit the situation. SI units of joules are often employed. Less dramatic is the use of capacitors in microelectronics, such as certain handheld calculators, to supply energy when batteries are charged. (See [link].) Capacitors are also used to supply energy for flash lamps on cameras.



Energy stored in the large capacitor is used to preserve the memory of an electronic calculator when its batteries are charged. (credit: Kucharek, Wikimedia Commons)

Energy stored in a capacitor is electrical potential energy, and it is thus related to the charge Q and voltage V on the capacitor. We must be careful when applying the equation for electrical potential energy $\Delta \mathrm{PE} = q\Delta V$ to a capacitor. Remember that $\Delta \mathrm{PE}$ is the potential energy of a charge q going through a voltage ΔV. But the capacitor starts with zero voltage and gradually comes up to its full voltage as it is charged. The first charge placed on a capacitor experiences a change in voltage $\Delta V = 0$, since the capacitor has zero voltage when uncharged. The final charge placed on a capacitor experiences $\Delta V = V$, since the capacitor now has its full voltage V on it. The average voltage on the capacitor during the charging process is $V/2$, and so the average voltage experienced by the full charge q is $V/2$. Thus the energy stored in a capacitor, E_{cap}, is

Equation:

$$E_{\text{cap}} = \frac{QV}{2},$$

where Q is the charge on a capacitor with a voltage V applied. (Note that the energy is not QV, but QV/2.) Charge and voltage are related to the capacitance C of a capacitor by $Q = \mathrm{CV}$, and so the expression for E_{cap} can be algebraically manipulated into three equivalent expressions:

Equation:

$$E_{\text{cap}} = \frac{QV}{2} = \frac{CV^2}{2} = \frac{Q^2}{2C},$$

where Q is the charge and V the voltage on a capacitor C. The energy is in joules for a charge in coulombs, voltage in volts, and capacitance in farads.

Note:

Energy Stored in Capacitors

The energy stored in a capacitor can be expressed in three ways:

Equation:

$$E_{\text{cap}} = \frac{QV}{2} = \frac{CV^2}{2} = \frac{Q^2}{2C},$$

where Q is the charge, V is the voltage, and C is the capacitance of the capacitor. The energy is in joules for a charge in coulombs, voltage in volts, and capacitance in farads.

In a defibrillator, the delivery of a large charge in a short burst to a set of paddles across a person’s chest can be a lifesaver. The person’s heart attack might have arisen from the onset of fast, irregular beating of the heart—cardiac or ventricular fibrillation. The application of a large shock of electrical energy can terminate the arrhythmia and allow the body’s pacemaker to resume normal patterns. Today it is common for ambulances to carry a defibrillator, which also uses an electrocardiogram to analyze the patient’s heartbeat pattern. Automated external defibrillators (AED) are found in many public places ([link]). These are designed to be used by lay persons. The device automatically diagnoses the patient’s heart condition and then applies the shock with appropriate energy and waveform. CPR is recommended in many cases before use of an AED.

Automated external defibrillators are found in many public places. These portable units provide verbal instructions for use in the important first few minutes for a person suffering a cardiac attack. (credit: Owain Davies, Wikimedia Commons)

Example:

Capacitance in a Heart Defibrillator

A heart defibrillator delivers 4.00×10^2 J of energy by discharging a capacitor initially at 1.00×10^4 V. What is its capacitance?

Strategy

We are given E_{cap} and V, and we are asked to find the capacitance C. Of the three expressions in the equation for E_{cap}, the most convenient relationship is

Equation:

$$E_{\text{cap}} = \frac{CV^2}{2}.$$

Solution

Solving this expression for C and entering the given values yields

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} C &= \frac{2E_{\text{cap}}}{V^2} = \frac{2(4.00 \times 10^2 \text{ J})}{(1.00 \times 10^4 \text{ V})^2} = 8.00 \times 10^{-6} \text{ F} \\ &= 8.00\ \mu\text{F}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
This is a fairly large, but manageable, capacitance at 1.00×10^4 V.

Section Summary

- Capacitors are used in a variety of devices, including defibrillators, microelectronics such as calculators, and flash lamps, to supply energy.
- The energy stored in a capacitor can be expressed in three ways:
  Equation:

$$E_{\text{cap}} = \frac{\text{QV}}{2} = \frac{CV^2}{2} = \frac{Q^2}{2C},$$

  where Q is the charge, V is the voltage, and C is the capacitance of the capacitor. The energy is in joules when the charge is in coulombs, voltage is in volts, and capacitance is in farads.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How does the energy contained in a charged capacitor change when a dielectric is inserted, assuming the capacitor is isolated and its charge is constant? Does this imply that work was done?

Exercise:

Problem:

What happens to the energy stored in a capacitor connected to a battery when a dielectric is inserted? Was work done in the process?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the energy stored in the $10.0\ \mu\text{F}$ capacitor of a heart defibrillator charged to $9.00 \times 10^3\ \text{V}$? (b) Find the amount of stored charge.

Solution:

(a) $405\ \text{J}$

(b) $90.0\ \text{mC}$

Exercise:

Problem:

In open heart surgery, a much smaller amount of energy will defibrillate the heart. (a) What voltage is applied to the $8.00\ \mu\text{F}$ capacitor of a heart defibrillator that stores 40.0 J of energy? (b) Find the amount of stored charge.

Solution:

(a) 3.16 kV

(b) 25.3 mC

Exercise:

Problem:

A $165\ \mu\text{F}$ capacitor is used in conjunction with a motor. How much energy is stored in it when 119 V is applied?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have a 9.00 V battery, a $2.00\ \mu\text{F}$ capacitor, and a $7.40\ \mu\text{F}$ capacitor. (a) Find the charge and energy stored if the capacitors are connected to the battery in series. (b) Do the same for a parallel connection.

Solution:

(a) 1.42×10^{-5} C, 6.38×10^{-5} J

(b) 8.46×10^{-5} C, 3.81×10^{-4} J

Exercise:

Problem:

A nervous physicist worries that the two metal shelves of his wood frame bookcase might obtain a high voltage if charged by static electricity, perhaps produced by friction. (a) What is the capacitance of the empty shelves if they have area $1.00 \times 10^{2}\ \text{m}^{2}$ and are 0.200 m apart? (b) What is the voltage between them if opposite charges of magnitude 2.00 nC are placed on them? (c) To show that this voltage poses a small hazard, calculate the energy stored.

Solution:

(a) 4.43×10^{-12} F

(b) 452 V

(c) 4.52×10^{-7} J

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that for a given dielectric material the maximum energy a parallel plate capacitor can store is directly proportional to the volume of dielectric ($\text{Volume} = A \cdot d$). Note that the applied voltage is limited by the dielectric strength.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a heart defibrillator similar to that discussed in [link]. Construct a problem in which you examine the charge stored in the capacitor of a defibrillator as a function of stored energy. Among the things to be considered are the applied voltage and whether it should vary with energy to be delivered, the range of energies involved, and the capacitance of the defibrillator. You may also wish to consider the much smaller energy needed for defibrillation during open-heart surgery as a variation on this problem.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) On a particular day, it takes 9.60×10^3 J of electric energy to start a truck's engine. Calculate the capacitance of a capacitor that could store that amount of energy at 12.0 V. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Solution:

(a) 133 F

(b) Such a capacitor would be too large to carry with a truck. The size of the capacitor would be enormous.

(c) It is unreasonable to assume that a capacitor can store the amount of energy needed.

Glossary

defibrillator
: a machine used to provide an electrical shock to a heart attack victim's heart in order to restore the heart's normal rhythmic pattern

Introduction to Electric Current, Resistance, and Ohm's Law class="introduction"

Electric energy in massive quantities is transmitted from this hydroelectric facility, the Srisailam power station located along the Krishna River in India, by the movement of charge—that is, by electric current. (credit: Chintohere, Wikimedia Commons)

The flicker of numbers on a handheld calculator, nerve impulses carrying signals of vision to the brain, an ultrasound device sending a signal to a computer screen, the brain sending a message for a baby to twitch its toes, an electric train pulling its load over a mountain pass, a hydroelectric plant sending energy to metropolitan and rural users—these and many other examples of electricity involve *electric current, the movement of charge*. Humankind has indeed harnessed electricity, the basis of technology, to improve our quality of life. Whereas the previous two chapters concentrated on static electricity and the fundamental force underlying its behavior, the next few chapters will be devoted to electric and magnetic phenomena involving current. In addition to exploring applications of electricity, we shall gain new insights into nature—in particular, the fact that all magnetism results from electric current.

Current

- Define electric current, ampere, and drift velocity
- Describe the direction of charge flow in conventional current.
- Use drift velocity to calculate current and vice versa.

Electric Current

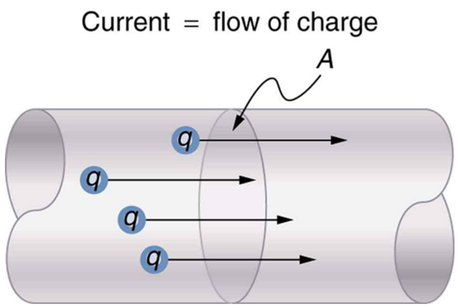
Electric current is defined to be the rate at which charge flows. A large current, such as that used to start a truck engine, moves a large amount of charge in a small time, whereas a small current, such as that used to operate a hand-held calculator, moves a small amount of charge over a long period of time. In equation form, **electric current** I is defined to be
Equation:

$$I=\frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t},$$

where ΔQ is the amount of charge passing through a given area in time Δt. (As in previous chapters, initial time is often taken to be zero, in which case $\Delta t=t$.) (See [link].) The SI unit for current is the **ampere** (A), named for the French physicist André-Marie Ampère (1775–1836). Since $I=\Delta Q/\Delta t$, we see that an ampere is one coulomb per second:
Equation:

$$1\text{ A}=1\text{ C/s}$$

Not only are fuses and circuit breakers rated in amperes (or amps), so are many electrical appliances.



The rate of flow of charge is current. An ampere is the flow of one coulomb through an area in one second.

Example:
Calculating Currents: Current in a Truck Battery and a Handheld Calculator

(a) What is the current involved when a truck battery sets in motion 720 C of charge in 4.00 s while starting an engine? (b) How long does it take 1.00 C of charge to flow through a handheld calculator if a 0.300-mA current is flowing?

Strategy

We can use the definition of current in the equation $I = \Delta Q / \Delta t$ to find the current in part (a), since charge and time are given. In part (b), we rearrange the definition of current and use the given values of charge and current to find the time required.

Solution for (a)

Entering the given values for charge and time into the definition of current gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t} = \frac{720\text{ C}}{4.00\text{ s}} = 180\text{ C/s} \\ &= 180\text{ A}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (a)

This large value for current illustrates the fact that a large charge is moved in a small amount of time. The currents in these “starter motors” are fairly large because large frictional forces need to be overcome when setting something in motion.

Solution for (b)

Solving the relationship $I = \Delta Q / \Delta t$ for time Δt, and entering the known values for charge and current gives

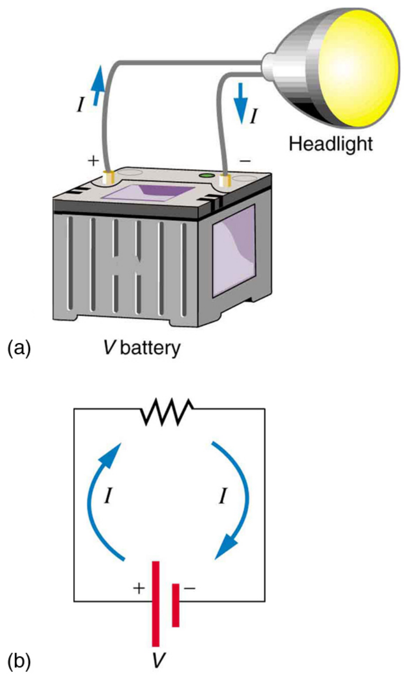
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta t &= \frac{\Delta Q}{I} = \frac{1.00\text{ C}}{0.300 \times 10^{-3}\text{ C/s}} \\ &= 3.33 \times 10^{3}\text{ s.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (b)

This time is slightly less than an hour. The small current used by the hand-held calculator takes a much longer time to move a smaller charge than the large current of the truck starter. So why can we operate our calculators only seconds after turning them on? It’s because calculators require very little energy. Such small current and energy demands allow handheld calculators to operate from solar cells or to get many hours of use out of small batteries. Remember, calculators do not have moving parts in the same way that a truck engine has with cylinders and pistons, so the technology requires smaller currents.

[link] shows a simple circuit and the standard schematic representation of a battery, conducting path, and load (a resistor). Schematics are very useful in visualizing the main features of a circuit. A single schematic can represent a wide variety of situations. The schematic in [link] (b), for example, can represent anything from a truck battery connected to a headlight lighting the street in front of the truck to a small battery connected to a penlight lighting a keyhole in a door. Such schematics are useful because the analysis is the same for a wide variety of situations. We need to understand a few schematics to apply the concepts and analysis to many more situations.



(a) A simple electric circuit. A closed path for current to flow through is supplied by conducting wires connecting a load to the terminals of a battery. (b) In this schematic, the battery is represented by the two parallel red lines, conducting wires are shown as straight lines, and the zigzag represents the load. The schematic represents a wide

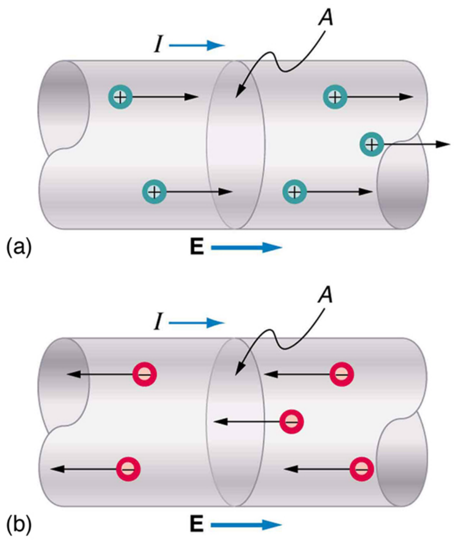
variety of similar circuits.

Note that the direction of current flow in [link] is from positive to negative. *The direction of conventional current is the direction that positive charge would flow*. Depending on the situation, positive charges, negative charges, or both may move. In metal wires, for example, current is carried by electrons—that is, negative charges move. In ionic solutions, such as salt water, both positive and negative charges move. This is also true in nerve cells. A Van de Graaff generator used for nuclear research can produce a current of pure positive charges, such as protons. [link] illustrates the movement of charged particles that compose a current. The fact that conventional current is taken to be in the direction that positive charge would flow can be traced back to American politician and scientist Benjamin Franklin in the 1700s. He named the type of charge associated with electrons negative, long before they were known to carry current in so many situations. Franklin, in fact, was totally unaware of the small-scale structure of electricity.

It is important to realize that there is an electric field in conductors responsible for producing the current, as illustrated in [link]. Unlike static electricity, where a conductor in equilibrium cannot have an electric field in it, conductors carrying a current have an electric field and are not in static equilibrium. An electric field is needed to supply energy to move the charges.

Note:
Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation—Electric Current Illustration
Find a straw and little peas that can move freely in the straw. Place the straw flat on a table and fill the straw with peas. When you pop one pea in at one end, a different pea should pop out the other end. This demonstration is an analogy for an electric current. Identify what compares

to the electrons and what compares to the supply of energy. What other analogies can you find for an electric current?
Note that the flow of peas is based on the peas physically bumping into each other; electrons flow due to mutually repulsive electrostatic forces.



Current I is the rate at which charge moves through an area A, such as the cross-section of a wire. Conventional current is defined to move in the direction of the electric field. (a) Positive charges move in the direction of the electric field and the same direction as conventional current. (b) Negative charges move in the direction opposite to the electric field. Conventional

current is in the direction opposite to the movement of negative charge. The flow of electrons is sometimes referred to as electronic flow.

Example:

Calculating the Number of Electrons that Move through a Calculator

If the 0.300-mA current through the calculator mentioned in the [link] example is carried by electrons, how many electrons per second pass through it?

Strategy

The current calculated in the previous example was defined for the flow of positive charge. For electrons, the magnitude is the same, but the sign is opposite, $I_{\text{electrons}} = -0.300 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{C/s}$ .Since each electron (e^{-}) has a charge of –1.60 $\times$ 10^{-19} C, we can convert the current in coulombs per second to electrons per second.

Solution

Starting with the definition of current, we have

Equation:

$$I_{\text{electrons}} = \frac{\Delta Q_{\text{electrons}}}{\Delta t} = \frac{-0.300 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{C}}{\text{s}}.$$

We divide this by the charge per electron, so that

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{e^{-}}{\text{s}} &= \frac{-0.300 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{C}}{\text{s}} \times \frac{1\ e^{-}}{-1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C}} \\ &= 1.88 \times 10^{15}\ \frac{e^{-}}{\text{s}}. \end{aligned}$$

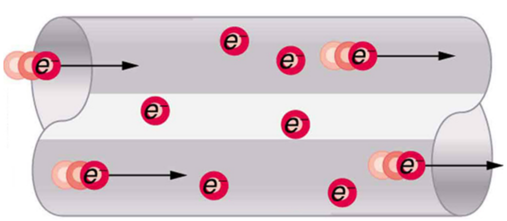
Discussion

There are so many charged particles moving, even in small currents, that individual charges are not noticed, just as individual water molecules are not noticed in water flow. Even more amazing is that they do not always keep moving forward like soldiers in a parade. Rather they are like a crowd of people with movement in different directions but a general trend to move forward. There are lots of collisions with atoms in the metal wire and, of course, with other electrons.

Drift Velocity

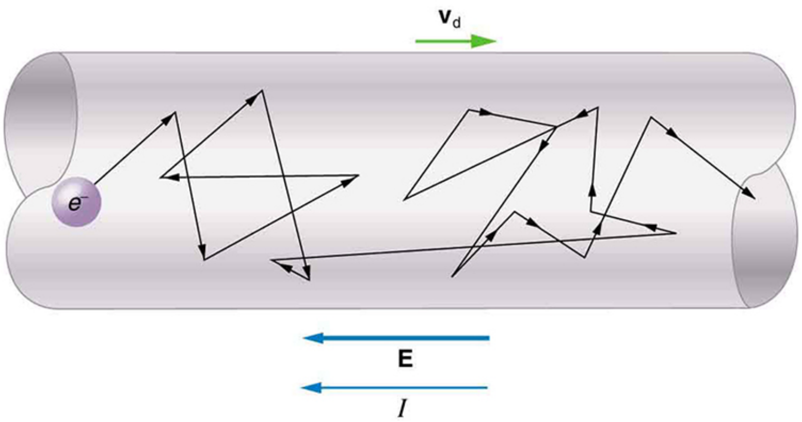
Electrical signals are known to move very rapidly. Telephone conversations carried by currents in wires cover large distances without noticeable delays. Lights come on as soon as a switch is flicked. Most electrical signals carried by currents travel at speeds on the order of $10^8\ \text{m/s}$, a significant fraction of the speed of light. Interestingly, the individual charges that make up the current move *much* more slowly on average, typically drifting at speeds on the order of $10^{-4}\ \text{m/s}$. How do we reconcile these two speeds, and what does it tell us about standard conductors?

The high speed of electrical signals results from the fact that the force between charges acts rapidly at a distance. Thus, when a free charge is forced into a wire, as in [link], the incoming charge pushes other charges ahead of it, which in turn push on charges farther down the line. The density of charge in a system cannot easily be increased, and so the signal is passed on rapidly. The resulting electrical shock wave moves through the system at nearly the speed of light. To be precise, this rapidly moving signal or shock wave is a rapidly propagating change in electric field.



When charged particles are forced into this volume of a conductor, an equal number are quickly forced to leave. The repulsion between like charges makes it difficult to increase the number of charges in a volume. Thus, as one charge enters, another leaves almost immediately, carrying the signal rapidly forward.

Good conductors have large numbers of free charges in them. In metals, the free charges are free electrons. [link] shows how free electrons move through an ordinary conductor. The distance that an individual electron can move between collisions with atoms or other electrons is quite small. The electron paths thus appear nearly random, like the motion of atoms in a gas. But there is an electric field in the conductor that causes the electrons to drift in the direction shown (opposite to the field, since they are negative). The **drift velocity** v_{d} is the average velocity of the free charges. Drift velocity is quite small, since there are so many free charges. If we have an estimate of the density of free electrons in a conductor, we can calculate the drift velocity for a given current. The larger the density, the lower the velocity required for a given current.



Free electrons moving in a conductor make many collisions with other electrons and atoms. The path of one electron is shown. The average velocity of the free charges is called the drift velocity, v_{d}, and it is in the direction opposite to the electric field for electrons. The collisions normally transfer energy to the conductor, requiring a constant supply of energy to maintain a steady current.

Note:
Conduction of Electricity and Heat
Good electrical conductors are often good heat conductors, too. This is because large numbers of free electrons can carry electrical current and can transport thermal energy.

The free-electron collisions transfer energy to the atoms of the conductor. The electric field does work in moving the electrons through a distance, but that work does not increase the kinetic energy (nor speed, therefore) of the electrons. The work is transferred to the conductor’s atoms, possibly

increasing temperature. Thus a continuous power input is required to keep a current flowing. An exception, of course, is found in superconductors, for reasons we shall explore in a later chapter. Superconductors can have a steady current without a continual supply of energy—a great energy savings. In contrast, the supply of energy can be useful, such as in a lightbulb filament. The supply of energy is necessary to increase the temperature of the tungsten filament, so that the filament glows.

> **Note:**
> Making Connections: Take-Home Investigation—Filament Observations
> Find a lightbulb with a filament. Look carefully at the filament and describe its structure. To what points is the filament connected?

We can obtain an expression for the relationship between current and drift velocity by considering the number of free charges in a segment of wire, as illustrated in [link]. *The number of free charges per unit volume* is given the symbol n and depends on the material. The shaded segment has a volume Ax, so that the number of free charges in it is nAx. The charge ΔQ in this segment is thus qnAx, where q is the amount of charge on each carrier. (Recall that for electrons, q is $-1.60\times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C}$.) Current is charge moved per unit time; thus, if all the original charges move out of this segment in time Δt, the current is

Equation:

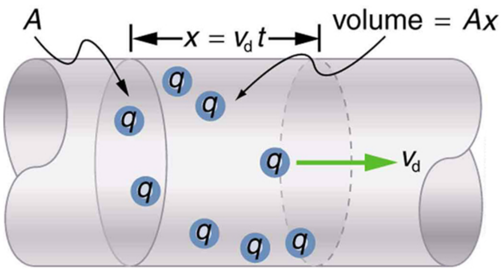
$$I=\frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t}=\frac{\mathrm{qnAx}}{\Delta t}.$$

Note that $x/\Delta t$ is the magnitude of the drift velocity, v_{d}, since the charges move an average distance x in a time Δt. Rearranging terms gives

Equation:

$$I=\mathrm{nqAv}_{\mathrm{d}},$$

where I is the current through a wire of cross-sectional area A made of a material with a free charge density n. The carriers of the current each have charge q and move with a drift velocity of magnitude v_{d}.



All the charges in the shaded volume of this wire move out in a time t, having a drift velocity of magnitude $v_{\mathrm{d}} = x/t$. See text for further discussion.

Note that simple drift velocity is not the entire story. The speed of an electron is much greater than its drift velocity. In addition, not all of the electrons in a conductor can move freely, and those that do might move somewhat faster or slower than the drift velocity. So what do we mean by free electrons? Atoms in a metallic conductor are packed in the form of a lattice structure. Some electrons are far enough away from the atomic nuclei that they do not experience the attraction of the nuclei as much as the inner electrons do. These are the free electrons. They are not bound to a single atom but can instead move freely among the atoms in a “sea” of electrons. These free electrons respond by accelerating when an electric field is applied. Of course as they move they collide with the atoms in the lattice and other electrons, generating thermal energy, and the conductor gets warmer. In an insulator, the organization of the atoms and the structure do not allow for such free electrons.

Example:
Calculating Drift Velocity in a Common Wire
Calculate the drift velocity of electrons in a 12-gauge copper wire (which has a diameter of 2.053 mm) carrying a 20.0-A current, given that there is one free electron per copper atom. (Household wiring often contains 12-gauge copper wire, and the maximum current allowed in such wire is usually 20 A.) The density of copper is $8.80 \times 10^3 \text{ kg/m}^3$.
Strategy
We can calculate the drift velocity using the equation $I = nqAv_\text{d}$. The current $I = 20.0 \text{ A}$ is given, and $q = -1.60 \times 10^{-19}\text{C}$ is the charge of an electron. We can calculate the area of a cross-section of the wire using the formula $A = \pi r^2$, where r is one-half the given diameter, 2.053 mm. We are given the density of copper, $8.80 \times 10^3 \text{ kg/m}^3$, and the periodic table shows that the atomic mass of copper is 63.54 g/mol. We can use these two quantities along with Avogadro's number, $6.02 \times 10^{23} \text{ atoms/mol}$, to determine n, the number of free electrons per cubic meter.
Solution
First, calculate the density of free electrons in copper. There is one free electron per copper atom. Therefore, is the same as the number of copper atoms per m^3. We can now find n as follows:
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} n &= \frac{1\ e^-}{\text{atom}} \times \frac{6.02\times10^{23} \text{ atoms}}{\text{mol}} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol}}{63.54 \text{ g}} \times \frac{1000 \text{ g}}{\text{kg}} \times \frac{8.80\times10^3 \text{ kg}}{1 \text{ m}^3} \\ &= 8.342 \times 10^{28}\ e^-/\text{m}^3. \end{aligned}$$

The cross-sectional area of the wire is
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \pi r^2 \\ &= \pi \left(\frac{2.053\times10^{-3} \text{ m}}{2}\right)^2 \\ &= 3.310 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Rearranging $I = nqAv_\text{d}$ to isolate drift velocity gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} v_{\mathrm{d}} &= \frac{I}{nqA} \\ &= \frac{20.0\ \mathrm{A}}{(8.342\times10^{28}/\mathrm{m}^3)(-1.60\times10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C})(3.310\times10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m}^2)} \\ &= -4.53\times10^{-4}\ \mathrm{m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

The minus sign indicates that the negative charges are moving in the direction opposite to conventional current. The small value for drift velocity (on the order of 10^{-4} m/s) confirms that the signal moves on the order of 10^{12} times faster (about 10^{8} m/s) than the charges that carry it.

Section Summary

- Electric current I is the rate at which charge flows, given by **Equation:**

$$I = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t},$$

  where ΔQ is the amount of charge passing through an area in time Δt.
- The direction of conventional current is taken as the direction in which positive charge moves.
- The SI unit for current is the ampere (A), where $1\ \mathrm{A} = 1\ \mathrm{C/s}$.
- Current is the flow of free charges, such as electrons and ions.
- Drift velocity v_{d} is the average speed at which these charges move.
- Current I is proportional to drift velocity v_{d}, as expressed in the relationship $I = \mathrm{nqAv_d}$. Here, I is the current through a wire of cross-sectional area A. The wire's material has a free-charge density n, and each carrier has charge q and a drift velocity v_{d}.
- Electrical signals travel at speeds about 10^{12} times greater than the drift velocity of free electrons.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Can a wire carry a current and still be neutral—that is, have a total charge of zero? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Car batteries are rated in ampere-hours ($\text{A} \cdot \text{h}$). To what physical quantity do ampere-hours correspond (voltage, charge, . . .), and what relationship do ampere-hours have to energy content?

Exercise:

Problem:

If two different wires having identical cross-sectional areas carry the same current, will the drift velocity be higher or lower in the better conductor? Explain in terms of the equation $v_{\text{d}} = \frac{I}{\text{nqA}}$, by considering how the density of charge carriers n relates to whether or not a material is a good conductor.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why are two conducting paths from a voltage source to an electrical device needed to operate the device?

Exercise:

Problem:

In cars, one battery terminal is connected to the metal body. How does this allow a single wire to supply current to electrical devices rather than two wires?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why isn’t a bird sitting on a high-voltage power line electrocuted? Contrast this with the situation in which a large bird hits two wires simultaneously with its wings.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the current in milliamperes produced by the solar cells of a pocket calculator through which 4.00 C of charge passes in 4.00 h?

Solution:

0.278 mA

Exercise:

Problem:

A total of 600 C of charge passes through a flashlight in 0.500 h. What is the average current?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the current when a typical static charge of $0.250\ \mu\text{C}$ moves from your finger to a metal doorknob in $1.00\ \mu\text{s}$?

Solution:

0.250 A

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the current when 2.00 nC jumps between your comb and hair over a 0.500 - μs time interval.

Exercise:

Problem:

A large lightning bolt had a 20,000-A current and moved 30.0 C of charge. What was its duration?

Solution:

1.50ms

Exercise:

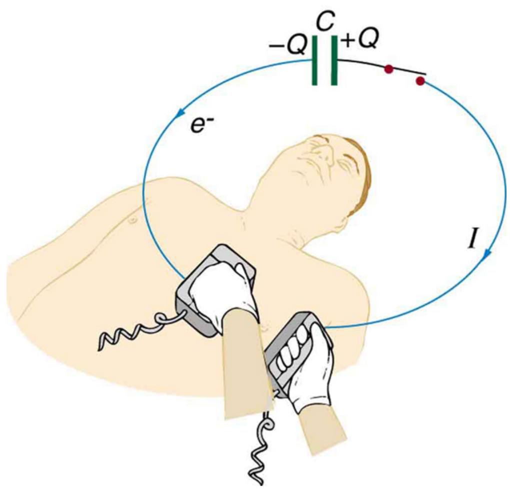
Problem:

The 200-A current through a spark plug moves 0.300 mC of charge. How long does the spark last?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A defibrillator sends a 6.00-A current through the chest of a patient by applying a 10,000-V potential as in the figure below. What is the resistance of the path? (b) The defibrillator paddles make contact with the patient through a conducting gel that greatly reduces the path resistance. Discuss the difficulties that would ensue if a larger voltage were used to produce the same current through the patient, but with the path having perhaps 50 times the resistance. (Hint: The current must be about the same, so a higher voltage would imply greater power. Use this equation for power: $P = I^2R$.)



The capacitor in a defibrillation unit drives a current through the heart of a patient.

Solution:

(a) $1.67 \mathrm{k}\Omega$

(b) If a 50 times larger resistance existed, keeping the current about the same, the power would be increased by a factor of about 50 (based on the equation $P = I^2R$), causing much more energy to be transferred to the skin, which could cause serious burns. The gel used reduces the resistance, and therefore reduces the power transferred to the skin.

Exercise:

Problem:

During open-heart surgery, a defibrillator can be used to bring a patient out of cardiac arrest. The resistance of the path is $500\ \Omega$ and a 10.0-mA current is needed. What voltage should be applied?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A defibrillator passes 12.0 A of current through the torso of a person for 0.0100 s. How much charge moves? (b) How many electrons pass through the wires connected to the patient? (See figure two problems earlier.)

Solution:

(a) 0.120 C

(b) $7.50 \times 10^{17} \text{electrons}$

Exercise:

Problem:

A clock battery wears out after moving 10,000 C of charge through the clock at a rate of 0.500 mA. (a) How long did the clock run? (b) How many electrons per second flowed?

Exercise:

Problem:

The batteries of a submerged non-nuclear submarine supply 1000 A at full speed ahead. How long does it take to move Avogadro's number (6.02×10^{23}) of electrons at this rate?

Solution:

96.3 s

Exercise:

Problem:

Electron guns are used in X-ray tubes. The electrons are accelerated through a relatively large voltage and directed onto a metal target, producing X-rays. (a) How many electrons per second strike the target if the current is 0.500 mA? (b) What charge strikes the target in 0.750 s?

Exercise:

Problem:

A large cyclotron directs a beam of He^{++} nuclei onto a target with a beam current of 0.250 mA. (a) How many He^{++} nuclei per second is this? (b) How long does it take for 1.00 C to strike the target? (c) How long before 1.00 mol of He^{++} nuclei strike the target?

Solution:

(a) $7.81 \times 10^{14}\ \mathrm{He}^{++}\ \mathrm{nuclei/s}$

(b) $4.00 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{s}$

(c) $7.71 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat the above example on [link], but for a wire made of silver and given there is one free electron per silver atom.

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the results of the above example on [link], find the drift velocity in a copper wire of twice the diameter and carrying 20.0 A.

Solution:

$-1.13\times10^{-4}\text{m/s}$

Exercise:

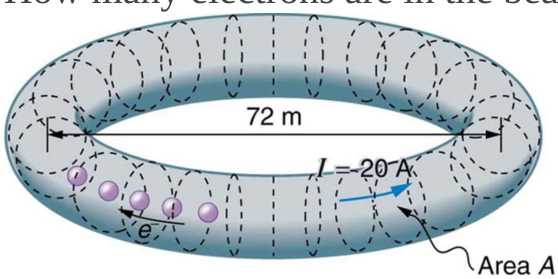
Problem:

A 14-gauge copper wire has a diameter of 1.628 mm. What magnitude current flows when the drift velocity is 1.00 mm/s? (See above example on [link] for useful information.)

Exercise:

Problem:

SPEAR, a storage ring about 72.0 m in diameter at the Stanford Linear Accelerator (closed in 2009), has a 20.0-A circulating beam of electrons that are moving at nearly the speed of light. (See [link].) How many electrons are in the beam?



Electrons circulating in the storage ring called SPEAR constitute a 20.0-A current. Because they travel close to the speed of light, each electron completes many orbits in each second.

Solution:

$9.42\times10^{13}\text{electrons}$

Glossary

electric current
: the rate at which charge flows, $I = \Delta Q/\Delta t$

ampere
: (amp) the SI unit for current; 1 A = 1 C/s

drift velocity
: the average velocity at which free charges flow in response to an electric field

Ohm’s Law: Resistance and Simple Circuits

- Explain the origin of Ohm’s law.
- Calculate voltages, currents, or resistances with Ohm’s law.
- Explain what an ohmic material is.
- Describe a simple circuit.

What drives current? We can think of various devices—such as batteries, generators, wall outlets, and so on—which are necessary to maintain a current. All such devices create a potential difference and are loosely referred to as voltage sources. When a voltage source is connected to a conductor, it applies a potential difference V that creates an electric field. The electric field in turn exerts force on charges, causing current.

Ohm’s Law

The current that flows through most substances is directly proportional to the voltage V applied to it. The German physicist Georg Simon Ohm (1787–1854) was the first to demonstrate experimentally that the current in a metal wire is *directly proportional to the voltage applied*:
Equation:

$$I \propto V.$$

This important relationship is known as **Ohm’s law**. It can be viewed as a cause-and-effect relationship, with voltage the cause and current the effect. This is an empirical law like that for friction—an experimentally observed phenomenon. Such a linear relationship doesn’t always occur.

Resistance and Simple Circuits

If voltage drives current, what impedes it? The electric property that impedes current (crudely similar to friction and air resistance) is called **resistance** R. Collisions of moving charges with atoms and molecules in a substance transfer energy to the substance and limit current. Resistance is defined as inversely proportional to current, or

Equation:

$$I \propto \frac{1}{R}.$$

Thus, for example, current is cut in half if resistance doubles. Combining the relationships of current to voltage and current to resistance gives

Equation:

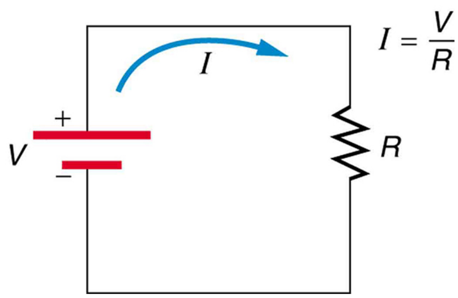
$$I = \frac{V}{R}.$$

This relationship is also called Ohm's law. Ohm's law in this form really defines resistance for certain materials. Ohm's law (like Hooke's law) is not universally valid. The many substances for which Ohm's law holds are called **ohmic**. These include good conductors like copper and aluminum, and some poor conductors under certain circumstances. Ohmic materials have a resistance R that is independent of voltage V and current I. An object that has simple resistance is called a *resistor*, even if its resistance is small. The unit for resistance is an **ohm** and is given the symbol Ω (upper case Greek omega). Rearranging $I = \mathrm{V/R}$ gives $R = \mathrm{V/I}$, and so the units of resistance are 1 ohm = 1 volt per ampere:

Equation:

$$1\ \Omega = 1\frac{V}{A}.$$

[link] shows the schematic for a simple circuit. A **simple circuit** has a single voltage source and a single resistor. The wires connecting the voltage source to the resistor can be assumed to have negligible resistance, or their resistance can be included in R.



A simple electric circuit in which a closed path for current to flow is supplied by conductors (usually metal wires) connecting a load to the terminals of a battery, represented by the red parallel lines. The zigzag symbol represents the single resistor and includes any resistance in the connections to the voltage source.

Example:
Calculating Resistance: An Automobile Headlight
What is the resistance of an automobile headlight through which 2.50 A flows when 12.0 V is applied to it?
Strategy
We can rearrange Ohm’s law as stated by $I = \mathrm{V/R}$ and use it to find the resistance.
Solution
Rearranging $I = \mathrm{V/R}$ and substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$R = \frac{V}{I} = \frac{12.0\text{ V}}{2.50\text{ A}} = 4.80\ \Omega.$$

Discussion
This is a relatively small resistance, but it is larger than the cold resistance of the headlight. As we shall see in Resistance and Resistivity, resistance usually increases with temperature, and so the bulb has a lower resistance when it is first switched on and will draw considerably more current during its brief warm-up period.

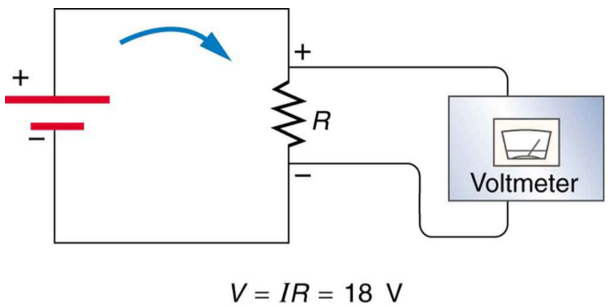
Resistances range over many orders of magnitude. Some ceramic insulators, such as those used to support power lines, have resistances of $10^{12}\ \Omega$ or more. A dry person may have a hand-to-foot resistance of $10^{5}\ \Omega$, whereas the resistance of the human heart is about $10^{3}\ \Omega$. A meter-long piece of large-diameter copper wire may have a resistance of $10^{-5}\ \Omega$, and superconductors have no resistance at all (they are non-ohmic). Resistance is related to the shape of an object and the material of which it is composed, as will be seen in Resistance and Resistivity.

Additional insight is gained by solving $I = \text{V/R}$ for V, yielding
Equation:

$$V = \text{IR}.$$

This expression for V can be interpreted as the *voltage drop across a resistor produced by the flow of current* I. The phrase IR *drop* is often used for this voltage. For instance, the headlight in [link] has an IR drop of 12.0 V. If voltage is measured at various points in a circuit, it will be seen to increase at the voltage source and decrease at the resistor. Voltage is similar to fluid pressure. The voltage source is like a pump, creating a pressure difference, causing current—the flow of charge. The resistor is like a pipe that reduces pressure and limits flow because of its resistance. Conservation of energy has important consequences here. The voltage source supplies

energy (causing an electric field and a current), and the resistor converts it to another form (such as thermal energy). In a simple circuit (one with a single simple resistor), the voltage supplied by the source equals the voltage drop across the resistor, since $\text{PE} = q\Delta V$, and the same q flows through each. Thus the energy supplied by the voltage source and the energy converted by the resistor are equal. (See [link].)



The voltage drop across a resistor in a simple circuit equals the voltage output of the battery.

Note:
Making Connections: Conservation of Energy
In a simple electrical circuit, the sole resistor converts energy supplied by the source into another form. Conservation of energy is evidenced here by the fact that all of the energy supplied by the source is converted to another form by the resistor alone. We will find that conservation of energy has other important applications in circuits and is a powerful tool in circuit analysis.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Ohm's Law
See how the equation form of Ohm's law relates to a simple circuit. Adjust the voltage and resistance, and see the current change according to Ohm's law. The sizes of the symbols in the equation change to match the circuit diagram.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/ohms-law/latest/ohms-law_en.html

Section Summary

- A simple circuit *is* one in which there is a single voltage source and a single resistance.
- One statement of Ohm’s law gives the relationship between current I, voltage V, and resistance R in a simple circuit to be $I=\frac{V}{R}$.
- Resistance has units of ohms (Ω), related to volts and amperes by $1\ \Omega = 1\ \text{V/A}$.
- There is a voltage or IR drop across a resistor, caused by the current flowing through it, given by $V=\text{IR}$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

The IR drop across a resistor means that there is a change in potential or voltage across the resistor. Is there any change in current as it passes through a resistor? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

How is the IR drop in a resistor similar to the pressure drop in a fluid flowing through a pipe?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What current flows through the bulb of a 3.00-V flashlight when its hot resistance is $3.60\ \Omega$?

Solution:

0.833 A

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the effective resistance of a pocket calculator that has a 1.35-V battery and through which 0.200 mA flows.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the effective resistance of a car's starter motor when 150 A flows through it as the car battery applies 11.0 V to the motor?

Solution:

$7.33\times10^{-2}\ \Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

How many volts are supplied to operate an indicator light on a DVD player that has a resistance of $140\ \Omega$, given that 25.0 mA passes through it?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the voltage drop in an extension cord having a $0.0600\text{-}\Omega$ resistance and through which 5.00 A is flowing. (b) A cheaper cord utilizes thinner wire and has a resistance of $0.300\ \Omega$. What is the voltage drop in it when 5.00 A flows? (c) Why is the voltage to whatever appliance is being used reduced by this amount? What is the effect on the appliance?

Solution:

(a) 0.300 V

(b) 1.50 V

(c) The voltage supplied to whatever appliance is being used is reduced because the total voltage drop from the wall to the final output of the appliance is fixed. Thus, if the voltage drop across the extension cord is large, the voltage drop across the appliance is significantly decreased, so the power output by the appliance can be significantly decreased, reducing the ability of the appliance to work properly.

Exercise:

Problem:

A power transmission line is hung from metal towers with glass insulators having a resistance of $1.00\times10^{9}\ \Omega$. What current flows through the insulator if the voltage is 200 kV? (Some high-voltage lines are DC.)

Glossary

Ohm’s law
: an empirical relation stating that the current I is proportional to the potential difference V, $\propto V$; it is often written as $I = V/R$, where R is the resistance

resistance
: the electric property that impedes current; for ohmic materials, it is the ratio of voltage to current, $R = V/I$

ohm
: the unit of resistance, given by $1\Omega = 1\ V/A$

ohmic
: a type of a material for which Ohm's law is valid

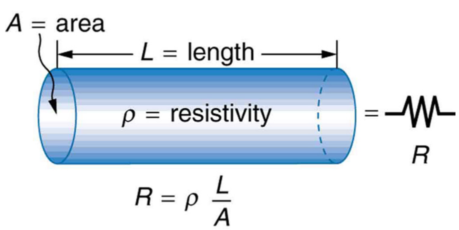
simple circuit
: a circuit with a single voltage source and a single resistor

Resistance and Resistivity

- Explain the concept of resistivity.
- Use resistivity to calculate the resistance of specified configurations of material.
- Use the thermal coefficient of resistivity to calculate the change of resistance with temperature.

Material and Shape Dependence of Resistance

The resistance of an object depends on its shape and the material of which it is composed. The cylindrical resistor in [link] is easy to analyze, and, by so doing, we can gain insight into the resistance of more complicated shapes. As you might expect, the cylinder's electric resistance R is directly proportional to its length L, similar to the resistance of a pipe to fluid flow. The longer the cylinder, the more collisions charges will make with its atoms. The greater the diameter of the cylinder, the more current it can carry (again similar to the flow of fluid through a pipe). In fact, R is inversely proportional to the cylinder's cross-sectional area A.



A uniform cylinder of length L and cross-sectional area A. Its resistance to the flow of current is similar to the resistance posed by a pipe to fluid flow. The longer the cylinder, the greater its

resistance. The larger its cross-sectional area A, the smaller its resistance.

For a given shape, the resistance depends on the material of which the object is composed. Different materials offer different resistance to the flow of charge. We define the **resistivity** ρ of a substance so that the **resistance** R of an object is directly proportional to ρ. Resistivity ρ is an *intrinsic* property of a material, independent of its shape or size. The resistance R of a uniform cylinder of length L, of cross-sectional area A, and made of a material with resistivity ρ, is

Equation:

$$R = \frac{\rho L}{A}.$$

[link] gives representative values of ρ. The materials listed in the table are separated into categories of conductors, semiconductors, and insulators, based on broad groupings of resistivities. Conductors have the smallest resistivities, and insulators have the largest; semiconductors have intermediate resistivities. Conductors have varying but large free charge densities, whereas most charges in insulators are bound to atoms and are not free to move. Semiconductors are intermediate, having far fewer free charges than conductors, but having properties that make the number of free charges depend strongly on the type and amount of impurities in the semiconductor. These unique properties of semiconductors are put to use in modern electronics, as will be explored in later chapters.

Material	**Resistivity ρ ($\Omega \cdot \mathrm{m}$)**
Conductors	
Silver	1.59×10^{-8}
Copper	1.72×10^{-8}
Gold	2.44×10^{-8}
Aluminum	2.65×10^{-8}
Tungsten	5.6×10^{-8}
Iron	9.71×10^{-8}
Platinum	10.6×10^{-8}
Steel	20×10^{-8}
Lead	22×10^{-8}

Material	Resistivity ρ ($\Omega \cdot \mathrm{m}$)
Manganin (Cu, Mn, Ni alloy)	44×10^{-8}
Constantan (Cu, Ni alloy)	49×10^{-8}
Mercury	96×10^{-8}
Nichrome (Ni, Fe, Cr alloy)	100×10^{-8}
Semiconductors[footnote] Values depend strongly on amounts and types of impurities	
Carbon (pure)	3.5×10^{-5}
Carbon	$(3.5 - 60) \times 10^{-5}$
Germanium (pure)	600×10^{-3}
Germanium	$(1 - 600) \times 10^{-3}$

Material	**Resistivity ρ ($\Omega \cdot \mathrm{m}$)**
Silicon (pure)	2300
Silicon	$0.1–2300$
Insulators	
Amber	5×10^{14}
Glass	$10^9 - 10^{14}$
Lucite	$>10^{13}$
Mica	$10^{11} - 10^{15}$
Quartz (fused)	75×10^{16}
Rubber (hard)	$10^{13} - 10^{16}$
Sulfur	10^{15}

Material	Resistivity ρ ($\Omega \cdot \mathrm{m}$)
Teflon	$>10^{13}$
Wood	$10^{8}-10^{11}$

Resistivities ρ of Various materials at $20^{\mathrm{o}}\mathrm{C}$

Example:
Calculating Resistor Diameter: A Headlight Filament
A car headlight filament is made of tungsten and has a cold resistance of $0.350\ \Omega$. If the filament is a cylinder 4.00 cm long (it may be coiled to save space), what is its diameter?
Strategy
We can rearrange the equation $R=\frac{\rho L}{A}$ to find the cross-sectional area A of the filament from the given information. Then its diameter can be found by assuming it has a circular cross-section.
Solution
The cross-sectional area, found by rearranging the expression for the resistance of a cylinder given in $R=\frac{\rho L}{A}$, is
Equation:

$$A=\frac{\rho L}{R}.$$

Substituting the given values, and taking ρ from [link], yields
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \frac{(5.6\times10^{-8}\ \Omega\cdot\mathrm{m})(4.00\times10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m})}{0.350\ \Omega} \\ &= 6.40\times10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m}^2. \end{aligned}$$

The area of a circle is related to its diameter D by
Equation:

$$A = \frac{\pi D^2}{4}.$$

Solving for the diameter D, and substituting the value found for A, gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} D &= 2\left(\frac{A}{p}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} = 2\left(\frac{6.40\times10^{-9}\ \text{m}^2}{3.14}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &= 9.0\times10^{-5}\ \text{m}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
The diameter is just under a tenth of a millimeter. It is quoted to only two digits, because ρ is known to only two digits.

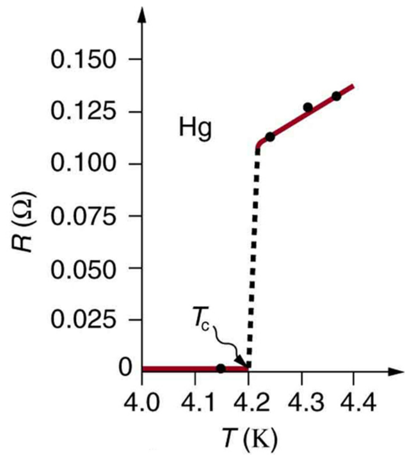
Temperature Variation of Resistance

The resistivity of all materials depends on temperature. Some even become superconductors (zero resistivity) at very low temperatures. (See [link].) Conversely, the resistivity of conductors increases with increasing temperature. Since the atoms vibrate more rapidly and over larger distances at higher temperatures, the electrons moving through a metal make more collisions, effectively making the resistivity higher. Over relatively small temperature changes (about 100ºC or less), resistivity ρ varies with temperature change ΔT as expressed in the following equation
Equation:

$$\rho = \rho_0(1 + \alpha\Delta T),$$

where ρ_0 is the original resistivity and α is the **temperature coefficient of resistivity**. (See the values of α in [link] below.) For larger temperature changes, α may vary or a nonlinear equation may be needed to find ρ. Note

that α is positive for metals, meaning their resistivity increases with temperature. Some alloys have been developed specifically to have a small temperature dependence. Manganin (which is made of copper, manganese and nickel), for example, has α close to zero (to three digits on the scale in [link]), and so its resistivity varies only slightly with temperature. This is useful for making a temperature-independent resistance standard, for example.



The resistance of a sample of mercury is zero at very low temperatures—it is a superconductor up to about 4.2 K. Above that critical temperature, its resistance makes a sudden jump and then increases nearly linearly with temperature.

Material	**Coefficient α(1/°C)[footnote] Values at 20°C.**
Conductors	
Silver	3.8×10^{-3}
Copper	3.9×10^{-3}
Gold	3.4×10^{-3}
Aluminum	3.9×10^{-3}
Tungsten	4.5×10^{-3}
Iron	5.0×10^{-3}
Platinum	3.93×10^{-3}
Lead	3.9×10^{-3}
Manganin (Cu, Mn, Ni alloy)	0.000×10^{-3}

Material	Coefficient α(1/°C)[footnote] Values at 20°C.
Constantan (Cu, Ni alloy)	0.002×10^{-3}
Mercury	0.89×10^{-3}
Nichrome (Ni, Fe, Cr alloy)	0.4×10^{-3}
Semiconductors	
Carbon (pure)	-0.5×10^{-3}
Germanium (pure)	-50×10^{-3}
Silicon (pure)	-70×10^{-3}

Tempature Coefficients of Resistivity α

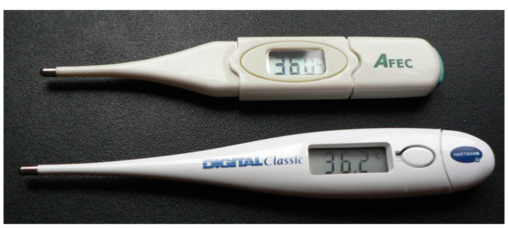
Note also that α is negative for the semiconductors listed in [link], meaning that their resistivity decreases with increasing temperature. They become better conductors at higher temperature, because increased thermal agitation increases the number of free charges available to carry current. This property of decreasing ρ with temperature is also related to the type and amount of impurities present in the semiconductors.

The resistance of an object also depends on temperature, since R_0 is directly proportional to ρ. For a cylinder we know $R = \rho L/A$, and so, if L and A do not change greatly with temperature, R will have the same temperature dependence as ρ. (Examination of the coefficients of linear expansion shows them to be about two orders of magnitude less than typical temperature coefficients of resistivity, and so the effect of temperature on L and A is about two orders of magnitude less than on ρ.) Thus,

Equation:

$$R = R_0(1 + \alpha \Delta T)$$

is the temperature dependence of the resistance of an object, where R_0 is the original resistance and R is the resistance after a temperature change ΔT. Numerous thermometers are based on the effect of temperature on resistance. (See [link].) One of the most common is the thermistor, a semiconductor crystal with a strong temperature dependence, the resistance of which is measured to obtain its temperature. The device is small, so that it quickly comes into thermal equilibrium with the part of a person it touches.



These familiar thermometers are based on the automated measurement of a thermistor's temperature-dependent resistance. (credit: Biol, Wikimedia Commons)

Example:

Calculating Resistance: Hot-Filament Resistance

Although caution must be used in applying $\rho = \rho_0(1 + \alpha\Delta T)$ and $R = R_0(1 + \alpha\Delta T)$ for temperature changes greater than 100ºC, for tungsten the equations work reasonably well for very large temperature changes. What, then, is the resistance of the tungsten filament in the previous example if its temperature is increased from room temperature (20ºC) to a typical operating temperature of 2850ºC?

Strategy

This is a straightforward application of $R = R_0(1 + \alpha\Delta T)$, since the original resistance of the filament was given to be $R_0 = 0.350\ \Omega$, and the temperature change is $\Delta T = 2830^\circ\text{C}$.

Solution

The hot resistance R is obtained by entering known values into the above equation:

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} R &= R_0(1 + \alpha\Delta T) \\ &= (0.350\ \Omega)[1 + (4.5\times10^{-3}/^\circ\text{C})(2830^\circ\text{C})] \\ &= 4.8\ \Omega. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

This value is consistent with the headlight resistance example in Ohm’s Law: Resistance and Simple Circuits.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Resistance in a Wire

Learn about the physics of resistance in a wire. Change its resistivity, length, and area to see how they affect the wire's resistance. The sizes of the symbols in the equation change along with the diagram of a wire.

https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/resistance-in-a-wire/latest/resistance-

in-a-wire_en.html

Section Summary

- The resistance R of a cylinder of length L and cross-sectional area A is $R = \frac{\rho L}{A}$, where ρ is the resistivity of the material.
- Values of ρ in [link] show that materials fall into three groups—*conductors, semiconductors, and insulators*.
- Temperature affects resistivity; for relatively small temperature changes ΔT, resistivity is $\rho = \rho_0(1 + \alpha \Delta T)$, where ρ_0 is the original resistivity and α is the temperature coefficient of resistivity.
- [link] gives values for α, the temperature coefficient of resistivity.
- The resistance R of an object also varies with temperature: $R = R_0(1 + \alpha \Delta T)$, where R_0 is the original resistance, and R is the resistance after the temperature change.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

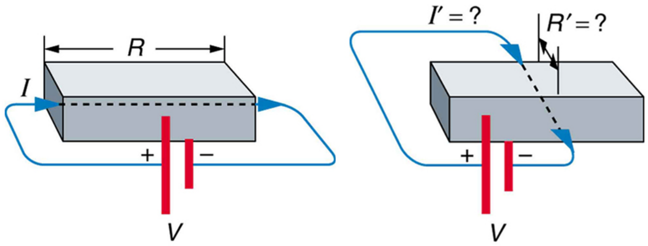
Problem:

In which of the three semiconducting materials listed in [link] do impurities supply free charges? (Hint: Examine the range of resistivity for each and determine whether the pure semiconductor has the higher or lower conductivity.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Does the resistance of an object depend on the path current takes through it? Consider, for example, a rectangular bar—is its resistance the same along its length as across its width? (See [link].)



Does current taking two different paths through the same object encounter different resistance?

Exercise:

Problem:

If aluminum and copper wires of the same length have the same resistance, which has the larger diameter? Why?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why $R = R_0(1 + \alpha \Delta T)$ for the temperature variation of the resistance R of an object is not as accurate as $\rho = \rho_0(1 + \alpha \Delta T)$, which gives the temperature variation of resistivity ρ.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the resistance of a 20.0-m-long piece of 12-gauge copper wire having a 2.053-mm diameter?

Solution:

0.104 Ω

Exercise:

Problem:

The diameter of 0-gauge copper wire is 8.252 mm. Find the resistance of a 1.00-km length of such wire used for power transmission.

Exercise:

Problem:

If the 0.100-mm diameter tungsten filament in a light bulb is to have a resistance of $0.200\ \Omega$ at $20.0^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$, how long should it be?

Solution:

$2.8\times10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the ratio of the diameter of aluminum to copper wire, if they have the same resistance per unit length (as they might in household wiring).

Exercise:

Problem:

What current flows through a 2.54-cm-diameter rod of pure silicon that is 20.0 cm long, when $1.00\times10^{3}\ \mathrm{V}$ is applied to it? (Such a rod may be used to make nuclear-particle detectors, for example.)

Solution:

$1.10\times10^{-3}\ \mathrm{A}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) To what temperature must you raise a copper wire, originally at $20.0^{\circ}C$, to double its resistance, neglecting any changes in dimensions? (b) Does this happen in household wiring under ordinary circumstances?

Exercise:

Problem:

A resistor made of Nichrome wire is used in an application where its resistance cannot change more than 1.00% from its value at $20.0^{\circ}C$. Over what temperature range can it be used?

Solution:

$-5^{\circ}C$ to $45^{\circ}C$

Exercise:

Problem:

Of what material is a resistor made if its resistance is 40.0% greater at $100^{\circ}C$ than at $20.0^{\circ}C$?

Exercise:

Problem:

An electronic device designed to operate at any temperature in the range from $-10.0^{\circ}C$ to $55.0^{\circ}C$ contains pure carbon resistors. By what factor does their resistance increase over this range?

Solution:

1.03

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Of what material is a wire made, if it is 25.0 m long with a 0.100 mm diameter and has a resistance of $77.7\ \Omega$ at $20.0^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$? (b) What is its resistance at $150^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$?

Exercise:

Problem:

Assuming a constant temperature coefficient of resistivity, what is the maximum percent decrease in the resistance of a constantan wire starting at $20.0^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$?

Solution:

0.06%

Exercise:

Problem:

A wire is drawn through a die, stretching it to four times its original length. By what factor does its resistance increase?

Exercise:

Problem:

A copper wire has a resistance of $0.500\ \Omega$ at $20.0^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$, and an iron wire has a resistance of $0.525\ \Omega$ at the same temperature. At what temperature are their resistances equal?

Solution:

$-17^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Digital medical thermometers determine temperature by measuring the resistance of a semiconductor device called a thermistor (which has $\alpha = -0.0600/ºC$) when it is at the same temperature as the patient. What is a patient's temperature if the thermistor's resistance at that temperature is 82.0% of its value at $37.0ºC$ (normal body temperature)? (b) The negative value for α may not be maintained for very low temperatures. Discuss why and whether this is the case here. (Hint: Resistance can't become negative.)

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) Redo [link] taking into account the thermal expansion of the tungsten filament. You may assume a thermal expansion coefficient of $12 \times 10^{-6}/ºC$. (b) By what percentage does your answer differ from that in the example?

Solution:

(a) $4.7\ \Omega$ (total)

(b) 3.0% decrease

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) To what temperature must you raise a resistor made of constantan to double its resistance, assuming a constant temperature coefficient of resistivity? (b) To cut it in half? (c) What is unreasonable about these results? (d) Which assumptions are unreasonable, or which premises are inconsistent?

Glossary

resistivity
: an intrinsic property of a material, independent of its shape or size, directly proportional to the resistance, denoted by ρ

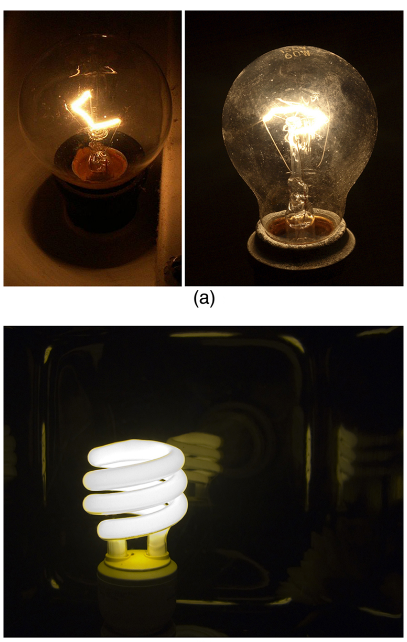
temperature coefficient of resistivity
: an empirical quantity, denoted by α, which describes the change in resistance or resistivity of a material with temperature

Electric Power and Energy

- Calculate the power dissipated by a resistor and power supplied by a power supply.
- Calculate the cost of electricity under various circumstances.

Power in Electric Circuits

Power is associated by many people with electricity. Knowing that power is the rate of energy use or energy conversion, what is the expression for **electric power**? Power transmission lines might come to mind. We also think of lightbulbs in terms of their power ratings in watts. Let us compare a 25-W bulb with a 60-W bulb. (See [link](a).) Since both operate on the same voltage, the 60-W bulb must draw more current to have a greater power rating. Thus the 60-W bulb's resistance must be lower than that of a 25-W bulb. If we increase voltage, we also increase power. For example, when a 25-W bulb that is designed to operate on 120 V is connected to 240 V, it briefly glows very brightly and then burns out. Precisely how are voltage, current, and resistance related to electric power?



(a)

(b)

(a) Which of these lightbulbs, the 25-W bulb (upper left) or the 60-W bulb (upper right), has the higher resistance? Which draws more current? Which uses the most energy? Can you tell from the color that the 25-W filament is cooler? Is the brighter bulb a different color and if so why? (credits: Dickbauch, Wikimedia Commons; Greg Westfall, Flickr) (b) This compact fluorescent light (CFL) puts out the same intensity of light as the 60-W bulb, but at 1/4 to 1/10 the input power. (credit: dbgg1979, Flickr)

Electric energy depends on both the voltage involved and the charge moved. This is expressed most simply as $\mathrm{PE} = \mathrm{qV}$, where q is the charge moved and V is the voltage (or more precisely, the potential difference the

charge moves through). Power is the rate at which energy is moved, and so electric power is
Equation:

$$P = \frac{\text{PE}}{t} = \frac{\text{qV}}{t}.$$

Recognizing that current is $I = q/t$ (note that $\Delta t = t$ here), the expression for power becomes
Equation:

$$P = \text{IV}.$$

Electric power (P) is simply the product of current times voltage. Power has familiar units of watts. Since the SI unit for potential energy (PE) is the joule, power has units of joules per second, or watts. Thus, $1\ \text{A} \cdot \text{V} = 1\ \text{W}$. For example, cars often have one or more auxiliary power outlets with which you can charge a cell phone or other electronic devices. These outlets may be rated at 20 A, so that the circuit can deliver a maximum power $P = \text{IV} = (20\ \text{A})(12\ \text{V}) = 240\ \text{W}$. In some applications, electric power may be expressed as volt-amperes or even kilovolt-amperes ($1\ \text{kA} \cdot \text{V} = 1\ \text{kW}$).

To see the relationship of power to resistance, we combine Ohm's law with $P = \text{IV}$. Substituting $I = \text{V}/\text{R}$ gives $P = (V/R)V = V^2/R$. Similarly, substituting $V = \text{IR}$ gives $P = I(\text{IR}) = I^2R$. Three expressions for electric power are listed together here for convenience:
Equation:

$$P = \text{IV}$$

Equation:

$$P = \frac{V^2}{R}$$

Equation:

$$P = I^2 R.$$

Note that the first equation is always valid, whereas the other two can be used only for resistors. In a simple circuit, with one voltage source and a single resistor, the power supplied by the voltage source and that dissipated by the resistor are identical. (In more complicated circuits, P can be the power dissipated by a single device and not the total power in the circuit.)

Different insights can be gained from the three different expressions for electric power. For example, $P = V^2/R$ implies that the lower the resistance connected to a given voltage source, the greater the power delivered. Furthermore, since voltage is squared in $P = V^2/R$, the effect of applying a higher voltage is perhaps greater than expected. Thus, when the voltage is doubled to a 25-W bulb, its power nearly quadruples to about 100 W, burning it out. If the bulb's resistance remained constant, its power would be exactly 100 W, but at the higher temperature its resistance is higher, too.

Example:
Calculating Power Dissipation and Current: Hot and Cold Power
(a) Consider the examples given in Ohm's Law: Resistance and Simple Circuits and Resistance and Resistivity. Then find the power dissipated by the car headlight in these examples, both when it is hot and when it is cold.
(b) What current does it draw when cold?
Strategy for (a)
For the hot headlight, we know voltage and current, so we can use $P = \text{IV}$ to find the power. For the cold headlight, we know the voltage and resistance, so we can use $P = V^2/R$ to find the power.
Solution for (a)
Entering the known values of current and voltage for the hot headlight, we obtain
Equation:

$$P = \text{IV} = (2.50\ \text{A})(12.0\ \text{V}) = 30.0\ \text{W}.$$

The cold resistance was $0.350\ \Omega$, and so the power it uses when first switched on is

Equation:

$$P = \frac{V^2}{R} = \frac{(12.0\ \text{V})^2}{0.350\ \Omega} = 411\ \text{W}.$$

Discussion for (a)

The 30 W dissipated by the hot headlight is typical. But the 411 W when cold is surprisingly higher. The initial power quickly decreases as the bulb's temperature increases and its resistance increases.

Strategy and Solution for (b)

The current when the bulb is cold can be found several different ways. We rearrange one of the power equations, $P = I^2 R$, and enter known values, obtaining

Equation:

$$I = \sqrt{\frac{P}{R}} = \sqrt{\frac{411\ \text{W}}{0.350\ \Omega}} = 34.3\ \text{A}.$$

Discussion for (b)

The cold current is remarkably higher than the steady-state value of 2.50 A, but the current will quickly decline to that value as the bulb's temperature increases. Most fuses and circuit breakers (used to limit the current in a circuit) are designed to tolerate very high currents briefly as a device comes on. In some cases, such as with electric motors, the current remains high for several seconds, necessitating special "slow blow" fuses.

The Cost of Electricity

The more electric appliances you use and the longer they are left on, the higher your electric bill. This familiar fact is based on the relationship between energy and power. You pay for the energy used. Since $P = E/t$, we see that

Equation:

$$E = \mathrm{Pt}$$

is the energy used by a device using power P for a time interval t. For example, the more lightbulbs burning, the greater P used; the longer they are on, the greater t is. The energy unit on electric bills is the kilowatt-hour $(\mathrm{kW \cdot h})$, consistent with the relationship $E = \mathrm{Pt}$. It is easy to estimate the cost of operating electric appliances if you have some idea of their power consumption rate in watts or kilowatts, the time they are on in hours, and the cost per kilowatt-hour for your electric utility. Kilowatt-hours, like all other specialized energy units such as food calories, can be converted to joules. You can prove to yourself that $1\ \mathrm{kW \cdot h} = 3.6 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{J}$.

The electrical energy (E) used can be reduced either by reducing the time of use or by reducing the power consumption of that appliance or fixture. This will not only reduce the cost, but it will also result in a reduced impact on the environment. Improvements to lighting are some of the fastest ways to reduce the electrical energy used in a home or business. About 20% of a home's use of energy goes to lighting, while the number for commercial establishments is closer to 40%. Fluorescent lights are about four times more efficient than incandescent lights—this is true for both the long tubes and the compact fluorescent lights (CFL). (See [link](b).) Thus, a 60-W incandescent bulb can be replaced by a 15-W CFL, which has the same brightness and color. CFLs have a bent tube inside a globe or a spiral-shaped tube, all connected to a standard screw-in base that fits standard incandescent light sockets. (Original problems with color, flicker, shape, and high initial investment for CFLs have been addressed in recent years.) The heat transfer from these CFLs is less, and they last up to 10 times longer. The significance of an investment in such bulbs is addressed in the next example. New white LED lights (which are clusters of small LED bulbs) are even more efficient (twice that of CFLs) and last 5 times longer than CFLs. However, their cost is still high.

Note:
Making Connections: Energy, Power, and Time

The relationship $E = \text{Pt}$ is one that you will find useful in many different contexts. The energy your body uses in exercise is related to the power level and duration of your activity, for example. The amount of heating by a power source is related to the power level and time it is applied. Even the radiation dose of an X-ray image is related to the power and time of exposure.

Example:

Calculating the Cost Effectiveness of Compact Fluorescent Lights (CFL)

If the cost of electricity in your area is 12 cents per kWh, what is the total cost (capital plus operation) of using a 60-W incandescent bulb for 1000 hours (the lifetime of that bulb) if the bulb cost 25 cents? (b) If we replace this bulb with a compact fluorescent light that provides the same light output, but at one-quarter the wattage, and which costs \$1.50 but lasts 10 times longer (10,000 hours), what will that total cost be?

Strategy

To find the operating cost, we first find the energy used in kilowatt-hours and then multiply by the cost per kilowatt-hour.

Solution for (a)

The energy used in kilowatt-hours is found by entering the power and time into the expression for energy:

Equation:

$$E = \text{Pt} = (60\text{ W})(1000\text{ h}) = 60{,}000\text{ W}\cdot\text{h}.$$

In kilowatt-hours, this is

Equation:

$$E = 60.0\text{ kW}\cdot\text{h}.$$

Now the electricity cost is

Equation:

$$\text{cost} = (60.0\text{ kW}\cdot\text{h})(\$0.12/\text{kW}\cdot\text{h}) = \$7.20.$$

The total cost will be $7.20 for 1000 hours (about one-half year at 5 hours per day).

Solution for (b)

Since the CFL uses only 15 W and not 60 W, the electricity cost will be $7.20/4 = $1.80. The CFL will last 10 times longer than the incandescent, so that the investment cost will be 1/10 of the bulb cost for that time period of use, or 0.1($1.50) = $0.15. Therefore, the total cost will be $1.95 for 1000 hours.

Discussion

Therefore, it is much cheaper to use the CFLs, even though the initial investment is higher. The increased cost of labor that a business must include for replacing the incandescent bulbs more often has not been figured in here.

Note:

Making Connections: Take-Home Experiment—Electrical Energy Use Inventory

1) Make a list of the power ratings on a range of appliances in your home or room. Explain why something like a toaster has a higher rating than a digital clock. Estimate the energy consumed by these appliances in an average day (by estimating their time of use). Some appliances might only state the operating current. If the household voltage is 120 V, then use $P = \text{IV}$. 2) Check out the total wattage used in the rest rooms of your school's floor or building. (You might need to assume the long fluorescent lights in use are rated at 32 W.) Suppose that the building was closed all weekend and that these lights were left on from 6 p.m. Friday until 8 a.m. Monday. What would this oversight cost? How about for an entire year of weekends?

Section Summary

- Electric power P is the rate (in watts) that energy is supplied by a source or dissipated by a device.

- Three expressions for electrical power are
  Equation:

  $$P = \text{IV},$$

  Equation:

  $$P = \frac{V^2}{R},$$

  and
  Equation:

  $$P = I^2 R.$$

- The energy used by a device with a power P over a time t is $E = \text{Pt}$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why do incandescent lightbulbs grow dim late in their lives, particularly just before their filaments break?

Exercise:

Problem:

The power dissipated in a resistor is given by $P = V^2/R$, which means power decreases if resistance increases. Yet this power is also given by $P = I^2R$, which means power increases if resistance increases. Explain why there is no contradiction here.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the power of a 1.00×10^{2} MV lightning bolt having a current of 2.00×10^{4} A?

Solution:

2.00×10^{12} W

Exercise:

Problem:

What power is supplied to the starter motor of a large truck that draws 250 A of current from a 24.0-V battery hookup?

Exercise:

Problem:

A charge of 4.00 C of charge passes through a pocket calculator's solar cells in 4.00 h. What is the power output, given the calculator's voltage output is 3.00 V? (See [link].)

The strip of solar cells just above the keys of this calculator convert

light to electricity to supply its energy needs. (credit: Evan-Amos, Wikimedia Commons)

Exercise:

Problem:

How many watts does a flashlight that has 6.00×10^2 C pass through it in 0.500 h use if its voltage is 3.00 V?

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the power dissipated in each of these extension cords: (a) an extension cord having a $0.0600 \text{ - } \Omega$ resistance and through which 5.00 A is flowing; (b) a cheaper cord utilizing thinner wire and with a resistance of $0.300\ \Omega$.

Solution:

(a) 1.50 W

(b) 7.50 W

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that the units of a volt-ampere are watts, as implied by the equation $P = \text{IV}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the units $1\ \text{V}^2/\Omega = 1\text{W}$, as implied by the equation $P = V^2/R$.

Solution:

$$\frac{V^2}{\Omega} = \frac{V^2}{\text{V/A}} = \text{AV} = \left(\frac{C}{s}\right)\left(\frac{J}{C}\right) = \frac{J}{s} = 1\ \text{W}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the units $1\ \text{A}^2 \cdot \Omega = 1\ \text{W}$, as implied by the equation $P = I^2 R$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify the energy unit equivalence that $1\ \text{kW} \cdot \text{h} = 3.60 \times 10^6\ \text{J}$.

Solution:

$$1\ \text{kW} \cdot \text{h} = \left(\frac{1 \times 10^3\ \text{J}}{1\ \text{s}}\right)(1\ \text{h})\left(\frac{3600\ \text{s}}{1\ \text{h}}\right) = 3.60 \times 10^6\ \text{J}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Electrons in an X-ray tube are accelerated through $1.00 \times 10^2\ \text{kV}$ and directed toward a target to produce X-rays. Calculate the power of the electron beam in this tube if it has a current of 15.0 mA.

Exercise:

Problem:

An electric water heater consumes 5.00 kW for 2.00 h per day. What is the cost of running it for one year if electricity costs $12.0\ \text{cents/kW} \cdot \text{h}$? See [link].

On-demand electric hot water heater. Heat is supplied to water only when needed. (credit: aviddavid, Flickr)

Solution:

$438/y

Exercise:

Problem:

With a 1200-W toaster, how much electrical energy is needed to make a slice of toast (cooking time = 1 minute)? At $9.0\ \text{cents/kW} \cdot \text{h}$, how much does this cost?

Exercise:

Problem:

What would be the maximum cost of a CFL such that the total cost (investment plus operating) would be the same for both CFL and incandescent 60-W bulbs? Assume the cost of the incandescent bulb is 25 cents and that electricity costs 10 cents/kWh. Calculate the cost for 1000 hours, as in the cost effectiveness of CFL example.

Solution:

$6.25

Exercise:

Problem:

Some makes of older cars have 6.00-V electrical systems. (a) What is the hot resistance of a 30.0-W headlight in such a car? (b) What current flows through it?

Exercise:

Problem:

Alkaline batteries have the advantage of putting out constant voltage until very nearly the end of their life. How long will an alkaline battery rated at $1.00 \text{ A} \cdot \text{h}$ and 1.58 V keep a 1.00-W flashlight bulb burning?

Solution:

1.58 h

Exercise:

Problem:

A cauterizer, used to stop bleeding in surgery, puts out 2.00 mA at 15.0 kV. (a) What is its power output? (b) What is the resistance of the path?

Exercise:

Problem:

The average television is said to be on 6 hours per day. Estimate the yearly cost of electricity to operate 100 million TVs, assuming their power consumption averages 150 W and the cost of electricity averages $12.0 \text{ cents/kW} \cdot \text{h}$.

Solution:

$3.94 billion/year

Exercise:

Problem:

An old lightbulb draws only 50.0 W, rather than its original 60.0 W, due to evaporative thinning of its filament. By what factor is its diameter reduced, assuming uniform thinning along its length? Neglect any effects caused by temperature differences.

Exercise:

Problem:

00-gauge copper wire has a diameter of 9.266 mm. Calculate the power loss in a kilometer of such wire when it carries $1.00 \times 10^2 \text{ A}$.

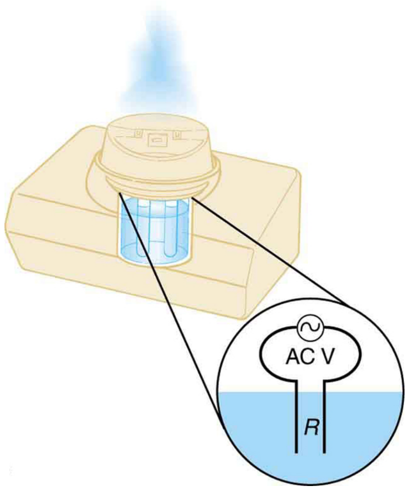
Solution:

25.5 W

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Cold vaporizers pass a current through water, evaporating it with only a small increase in temperature. One such home device is rated at 3.50 A and utilizes 120 V AC with 95.0% efficiency. (a) What is the vaporization rate in grams per minute? (b) How much water must you put into the vaporizer for 8.00 h of overnight operation? (See [link].)



This cold vaporizer passes current directly through water, vaporizing it directly with relatively little temperature increase.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) What energy is dissipated by a lightning bolt having a 20,000-A current, a voltage of 1.00×10^2 MV, and a length of 1.00 ms? (b) What mass of tree sap could be raised from $18.0^{\circ}C$ to its boiling point and then evaporated by this energy, assuming sap has the same thermal characteristics as water?

Solution:

(a) 2.00×10^9 J

(b) 769 kg

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

What current must be produced by a 12.0-V battery-operated bottle warmer in order to heat 75.0 g of glass, 250 g of baby formula, and 3.00×10^2 g of aluminum from 20.0°C to 90.0°C in 5.00 min?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

How much time is needed for a surgical cauterizer to raise the temperature of 1.00 g of tissue from 37.0°C to 100°C and then boil away 0.500 g of water, if it puts out 2.00 mA at 15.0 kV? Ignore heat transfer to the surroundings.

Solution:

45.0 s

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

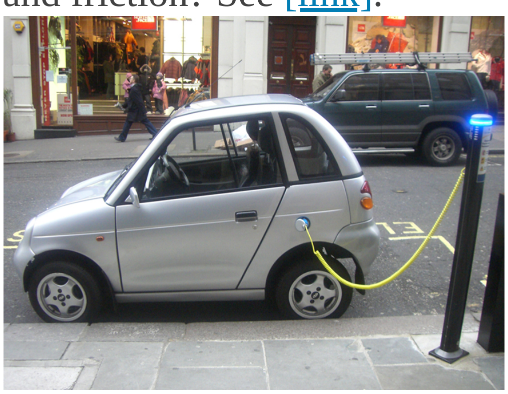
Hydroelectric generators (see [link]) at Hoover Dam produce a maximum current of $8.00 \times 10^3\ \text{A}$ at 250 kV. (a) What is the power output? (b) The water that powers the generators enters and leaves the system at low speed (thus its kinetic energy does not change) but loses 160 m in altitude. How many cubic meters per second are needed, assuming 85.0% efficiency?

Hydroelectric generators
at the Hoover dam.
(credit: Jon Sullivan)

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) Assuming 95.0% efficiency for the conversion of electrical power by the motor, what current must the 12.0-V batteries of a 750-kg electric car be able to supply: (a) To accelerate from rest to 25.0 m/s in 1.00 min? (b) To climb a $2.00 \times 10^2\text{-m}$-high hill in 2.00 min at a constant 25.0-m/s speed while exerting 5.00×10^2 N of force to overcome air resistance and friction? (c) To travel at a constant 25.0-m/s speed, exerting a 5.00×10^2 N force to overcome air resistance and friction? See [link].



This REVAi, an electric

car, gets recharged on a street in London. (credit: Frank Hebbert)

Solution:

(a) 343 A

(b) 2.17×10^{3} A

(c) 1.10×10^{3} A

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A light-rail commuter train draws 630 A of 650-V DC electricity when accelerating. (a) What is its power consumption rate in kilowatts? (b) How long does it take to reach 20.0 m/s starting from rest if its loaded mass is 5.30×10^{4} kg, assuming 95.0% efficiency and constant power? (c) Find its average acceleration. (d) Discuss how the acceleration you found for the light-rail train compares to what might be typical for an automobile.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) An aluminum power transmission line has a resistance of $0.0580\ \Omega/\text{km}$. What is its mass per kilometer? (b) What is the mass per kilometer of a copper line having the same resistance? A lower resistance would shorten the heating time. Discuss the practical limits to speeding the heating by lowering the resistance.

Solution:

(a) 1.23×10^3 kg

(b) 2.64×10^3 kg

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) An immersion heater utilizing 120 V can raise the temperature of a 1.00×10^2-g aluminum cup containing 350 g of water from 20.0°C to 95.0°C in 2.00 min. Find its resistance, assuming it is constant during the process. (b) A lower resistance would shorten the heating time. Discuss the practical limits to speeding the heating by lowering the resistance.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) What is the cost of heating a hot tub containing 1500 kg of water from 10.0°C to 40.0°C, assuming 75.0% efficiency to account for heat transfer to the surroundings? The cost of electricity is $9\ \text{cents/kW} \cdot \text{h}$. (b) What current was used by the 220-V AC electric heater, if this took 4.00 h?

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

(a) What current is needed to transmit $1.00 \times 10^2\ \text{MW}$ of power at 480 V? (b) What power is dissipated by the transmission lines if they have a 1.00 - Ω resistance? (c) What is unreasonable about this result? (d) Which assumptions are unreasonable, or which premises are inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) $2.08 \times 10^5\ \text{A}$

(b) 4.33×10^{4} MW

(c) The transmission lines dissipate more power than they are supposed to transmit.

(d) A voltage of 480 V is unreasonably low for a transmission voltage. Long-distance transmission lines are kept at much higher voltages (often hundreds of kilovolts) to reduce power losses.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) What current is needed to transmit 1.00×10^{2} MW of power at 10.0 kV? (b) Find the resistance of 1.00 km of wire that would cause a 0.0100% power loss. (c) What is the diameter of a 1.00-km-long copper wire having this resistance? (d) What is unreasonable about these results? (e) Which assumptions are unreasonable, or which premises are inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider an electric immersion heater used to heat a cup of water to make tea. Construct a problem in which you calculate the needed resistance of the heater so that it increases the temperature of the water and cup in a reasonable amount of time. Also calculate the cost of the electrical energy used in your process. Among the things to be considered are the voltage used, the masses and heat capacities involved, heat losses, and the time over which the heating takes place. Your instructor may wish for you to consider a thermal safety switch (perhaps bimetallic) that will halt the process before damaging temperatures are reached in the immersion unit.

Glossary

electric power

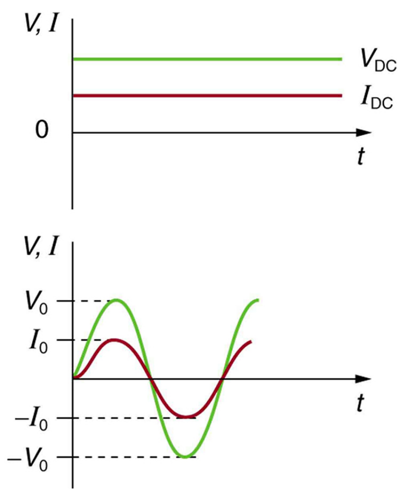
the rate at which electrical energy is supplied by a source or dissipated by a device; it is the product of current times voltage

Alternating Current versus Direct Current

- Explain the differences and similarities between AC and DC current.
- Calculate rms voltage, current, and average power.
- Explain why AC current is used for power transmission.

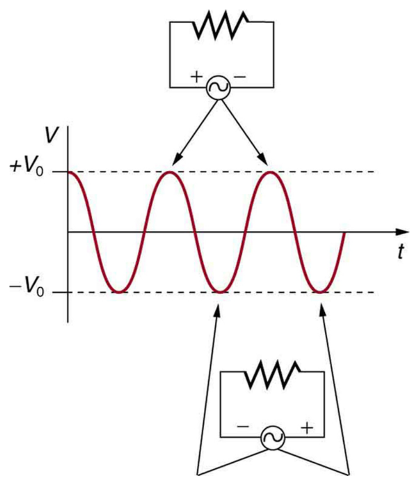
Alternating Current

Most of the examples dealt with so far, and particularly those utilizing batteries, have constant voltage sources. Once the current is established, it is thus also a constant. **Direct current** (DC) is the flow of electric charge in only one direction. It is the steady state of a constant-voltage circuit. Most well-known applications, however, use a time-varying voltage source. **Alternating current** (AC) is the flow of electric charge that periodically reverses direction. If the source varies periodically, particularly sinusoidally, the circuit is known as an alternating current circuit. Examples include the commercial and residential power that serves so many of our needs. [link] shows graphs of voltage and current versus time for typical DC and AC power. The AC voltages and frequencies commonly used in homes and businesses vary around the world.



(a) DC voltage and current are constant in time, once the

current is established. (b) A graph of voltage and current versus time for 60-Hz AC power. The voltage and current are sinusoidal and are in phase for a simple resistance circuit. The frequencies and peak voltages of AC sources differ greatly.



The potential difference V between the terminals of an AC voltage source fluctuates as

shown. The mathematical expression for V is given by $V = V_0 \sin 2\pi \text{ft}$.

[link] shows a schematic of a simple circuit with an AC voltage source. The voltage between the terminals fluctuates as shown, with the **AC voltage** given by

Equation:

$$V = V_0 \sin 2\pi \text{ft},$$

where V is the voltage at time t, V_0 is the peak voltage, and f is the frequency in hertz. For this simple resistance circuit, $I = \text{V}/\text{R}$, and so the **AC current** is

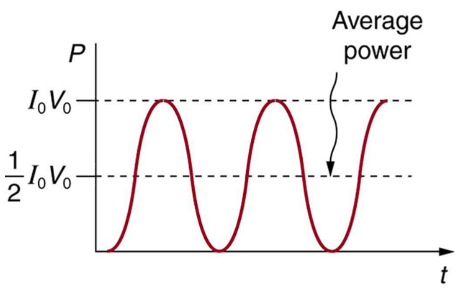
Equation:

$$I = I_0 \sin 2\pi \text{ft},$$

where I is the current at time t, and $I_0 = V_0/\text{R}$ is the peak current. For this example, the voltage and current are said to be in phase, as seen in [link](b).

Current in the resistor alternates back and forth just like the driving voltage, since $I = \text{V}/\text{R}$. If the resistor is a fluorescent light bulb, for example, it brightens and dims 120 times per second as the current repeatedly goes through zero. A 120-Hz flicker is too rapid for your eyes to detect, but if you wave your hand back and forth between your face and a fluorescent light, you will see a stroboscopic effect evidencing AC. The fact that the light output fluctuates means that the power is fluctuating. The power supplied is $P = \text{IV}$. Using the expressions for I and V above, we see that the time dependence of power is $P = I_0 V_0 \sin^2 2\pi \text{ft}$, as shown in [link].

Note:
Making Connections: Take-Home Experiment—AC/DC Lights
Wave your hand back and forth between your face and a fluorescent light bulb. Do you observe the same thing with the headlights on your car? Explain what you observe. *Warning: Do not look directly at very bright light.*



AC power as a function of time. Since the voltage and current are in phase here, their product is non-negative and fluctuates between zero and I_0V_0. Average power is $(1/2)I_0V_0$.

We are most often concerned with average power rather than its fluctuations—that 60-W light bulb in your desk lamp has an average power consumption of 60 W, for example. As illustrated in [link], the average power P_{ave} is

Equation:

$$P_{\text{ave}} = \frac{1}{2}I_0V_0.$$

This is evident from the graph, since the areas above and below the $(1/2)I_0V_0$ line are equal, but it can also be proven using trigonometric identities. Similarly, we define an average or **rms current** I_{rms} and average or **rms voltage** V_{rms} to be, respectively,

Equation:

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{I_0}{\sqrt{2}}$$

and

Equation:

$$V_{\text{rms}} = \frac{V_0}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

where rms stands for root mean square, a particular kind of average. In general, to obtain a root mean square, the particular quantity is squared, its mean (or average) is found, and the square root is taken. This is useful for AC, since the average value is zero. Now,

Equation:

$$P_{\text{ave}} = I_{\text{rms}}V_{\text{rms}},$$

which gives

Equation:

$$P_{\text{ave}} = \frac{I_0}{\sqrt{2}} \cdot \frac{V_0}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{2}I_0V_0,$$

as stated above. It is standard practice to quote I_{rms}, V_{rms}, and P_{ave} rather than the peak values. For example, most household electricity is 120 V AC, which means that V_{rms} is 120 V. The common 10-A circuit breaker will interrupt a sustained I_{rms} greater than 10 A. Your 1.0-kW microwave oven

consumes $P_{\text{ave}} = 1.0 \text{ kW}$, and so on. You can think of these rms and average values as the equivalent DC values for a simple resistive circuit.

To summarize, when dealing with AC, Ohm's law and the equations for power are completely analogous to those for DC, but rms and average values are used for AC. Thus, for AC, Ohm's law is written
Equation:

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{V_{\text{rms}}}{R}.$$

The various expressions for AC power P_{ave} are
Equation:

$$P_{\text{ave}} = I_{\text{rms}}V_{\text{rms}},$$

Equation:

$$P_{\text{ave}} = \frac{V_{\text{rms}}^2}{R},$$

and
Equation:

$$P_{\text{ave}} = I_{\text{rms}}^2 R.$$

Example:
Peak Voltage and Power for AC
(a) What is the value of the peak voltage for 120-V AC power? (b) What is the peak power consumption rate of a 60.0-W AC light bulb?
Strategy
We are told that V_{rms} is 120 V and P_{ave} is 60.0 W. We can use $V_{\text{rms}} = \frac{V_0}{\sqrt{2}}$ to find the peak voltage, and we can manipulate the definition of power to

find the peak power from the given average power.
Solution for (a)
Solving the equation $V_{\text{rms}} = \frac{V_0}{\sqrt{2}}$ for the peak voltage V_0 and substituting the known value for V_{rms} gives
Equation:

$$V_0 = \sqrt{2} V_{\text{rms}} = 1.414(120 \text{ V}) = 170 \text{ V}.$$

Discussion for (a)
This means that the AC voltage swings from 170 V to –170 V and back 60 times every second. An equivalent DC voltage is a constant 120 V.
Solution for (b)
Peak power is peak current times peak voltage. Thus,
Equation:

$$P_0 = I_0 V_0 = 2\left(\frac{1}{2} I_0 V_0\right) = 2P_{\text{ave}}.$$

We know the average power is 60.0 W, and so
Equation:

$$P_0 = 2(60.0 \text{ W}) = 120 \text{ W}.$$

Discussion
So the power swings from zero to 120 W one hundred twenty times per second (twice each cycle), and the power averages 60 W.

Why Use AC for Power Distribution?

Most large power-distribution systems are AC. Moreover, the power is transmitted at much higher voltages than the 120-V AC (240 V in most parts of the world) we use in homes and on the job. Economies of scale make it cheaper to build a few very large electric power-generation plants than to build numerous small ones. This necessitates sending power long distances, and it is obviously important that energy losses en route be

minimized. High voltages can be transmitted with much smaller power losses than low voltages, as we shall see. (See [link].) For safety reasons, the voltage at the user is reduced to familiar values. The crucial factor is that it is much easier to increase and decrease AC voltages than DC, so AC is used in most large power distribution systems.

Power is distributed over large distances at high voltage to reduce power loss in the transmission lines. The voltages generated at the power plant are stepped up by passive devices called transformers (see Transformers) to 330,000 volts (or more in some places worldwide). At the point of use, the transformers reduce the voltage transmitted for safe residential and commercial use. (Credit: GeorgHH, Wikimedia Commons)

Example:

Power Losses Are Less for High-Voltage Transmission

(a) What current is needed to transmit 100 MW of power at 200 kV? (b) What is the power dissipated by the transmission lines if they have a resistance of 1.00 Ω? (c) What percentage of the power is lost in the transmission lines?

Strategy

We are given $P_{\text{ave}} = 100\text{ MW}$, $V_{\text{rms}} = 200\text{ kV}$, and the resistance of the lines is $R = 1.00\ \Omega$. Using these givens, we can find the current flowing (from $P = \text{IV}$) and then the power dissipated in the lines ($P = I^2R$), and we take the ratio to the total power transmitted.

Solution

To find the current, we rearrange the relationship $P_{\text{ave}} = I_{\text{rms}}V_{\text{rms}}$ and substitute known values. This gives

Equation:

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{P_{\text{ave}}}{V_{\text{rms}}} = \frac{100 \times 10^6\text{ W}}{200 \times 10^3\text{ V}} = 500\text{ A}.$$

Solution

Knowing the current and given the resistance of the lines, the power dissipated in them is found from $P_{\text{ave}} = I_{\text{rms}}^2R$. Substituting the known values gives

Equation:

$$P_{\text{ave}} = I_{\text{rms}}^2R = (500\text{ A})^2(1.00\ \Omega) = 250\text{ kW}.$$

Solution

The percent loss is the ratio of this lost power to the total or input power, multiplied by 100:

Equation:

$$\%\ \text{loss} = \frac{250\ \text{kW}}{100\ \text{MW}} \times 100 = 0.250\ \%.$$

Discussion

One-fourth of a percent is an acceptable loss. Note that if 100 MW of power had been transmitted at 25 kV, then a current of 4000 A would have been needed. This would result in a power loss in the lines of 16.0 MW, or 16.0% rather than 0.250%. The lower the voltage, the more current is needed, and the greater the power loss in the fixed-resistance transmission lines. Of course, lower-resistance lines can be built, but this requires larger and more expensive wires. If superconducting lines could be economically produced, there would be no loss in the transmission lines at all. But, as we shall see in a later chapter, there is a limit to current in superconductors, too. In short, high voltages are more economical for transmitting power, and AC voltage is much easier to raise and lower, so that AC is used in most large-scale power distribution systems.

It is widely recognized that high voltages pose greater hazards than low voltages. But, in fact, some high voltages, such as those associated with common static electricity, can be harmless. So it is not voltage alone that determines a hazard. It is not so widely recognized that AC shocks are often more harmful than similar DC shocks. Thomas Edison thought that AC shocks were more harmful and set up a DC power-distribution system in New York City in the late 1800s. There were bitter fights, in particular between Edison and George Westinghouse and Nikola Tesla, who were advocating the use of AC in early power-distribution systems. AC has prevailed largely due to transformers and lower power losses with high-voltage transmission.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Generator

Generate electricity with a bar magnet! Discover the physics behind the phenomena by exploring magnets and how you can use them to make a bulb light.

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/1e9b7292-ae74-11e5-a9dc-c7c8521ba8e6/generator/#sim-generator

Section Summary

- Direct current (DC) is the flow of electric current in only one direction. It refers to systems where the source voltage is constant.
- The voltage source of an alternating current (AC) system puts out $V = V_0 \sin 2\pi \mathrm{ft}$, where V is the voltage at time t, V_0 is the peak voltage, and f is the frequency in hertz.
- In a simple circuit, $I = \mathrm{V}/\mathrm{R}$ and AC current is $I = I_0 \sin 2\pi \mathrm{ft}$, where I is the current at time t, and $I_0 = V_0/\mathrm{R}$ is the peak current.
- The average AC power is $P_{\text{ave}} = \frac{1}{2} I_0 V_0$.
- Average (rms) current I_{rms} and average (rms) voltage V_{rms} are $I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{I_0}{\sqrt{2}}$ and $V_{\text{rms}} = \frac{V_0}{\sqrt{2}}$, where rms stands for root mean square.
- Thus, $P_{\text{ave}} = I_{\text{rms}} V_{\text{rms}}$.
- Ohm's law for AC is $I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{V_{\text{rms}}}{R}$.
- Expressions for the average power of an AC circuit are $P_{\text{ave}} = I_{\text{rms}} V_{\text{rms}}$, $P_{\text{ave}} = \frac{V_{\text{rms}}^{2}}{R}$, and $P_{\text{ave}} = I_{\text{rms}}^{2} R$, analogous to the expressions for DC circuits.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Give an example of a use of AC power other than in the household. Similarly, give an example of a use of DC power other than that supplied by batteries.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why do voltage, current, and power go through zero 120 times per second for 60-Hz AC electricity?

Exercise:

Problem:

You are riding in a train, gazing into the distance through its window. As close objects streak by, you notice that the nearby fluorescent lights make *dashed* streaks. Explain.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the hot resistance of a 25-W light bulb that runs on 120-V AC? (b) If the bulb's operating temperature is 2700°C, what is its resistance at 2600°C?

Exercise:

Problem:

Certain heavy industrial equipment uses AC power that has a peak voltage of 679 V. What is the rms voltage?

Solution:

480 V

Exercise:

Problem:

A certain circuit breaker trips when the rms current is 15.0 A. What is the corresponding peak current?

Exercise:

Problem:

Military aircraft use 400-Hz AC power, because it is possible to design lighter-weight equipment at this higher frequency. What is the time for one complete cycle of this power?

Solution:

2.50 ms

Exercise:

Problem:

A North American tourist takes his 25.0-W, 120-V AC razor to Europe, finds a special adapter, and plugs it into 240 V AC. Assuming constant resistance, what power does the razor consume as it is ruined?

Exercise:

Problem:

In this problem, you will verify statements made at the end of the power losses for [link]. (a) What current is needed to transmit 100 MW of power at a voltage of 25.0 kV? (b) Find the power loss in a $1.00 - \Omega$ transmission line. (c) What percent loss does this represent?

Solution:

(a) 4.00 kA

(b) 16.0 MW

(c) 16.0%

Exercise:

Problem:

A small office-building air conditioner operates on 408-V AC and consumes 50.0 kW. (a) What is its effective resistance? (b) What is the cost of running the air conditioner during a hot summer month when it is on 8.00 h per day for 30 days and electricity costs $9.00 \text{ cents/kW} \cdot \text{h}$?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the peak power consumption of a 120-V AC microwave oven that draws 10.0 A?

Solution:

2.40 kW

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the peak current through a 500-W room heater that operates on 120-V AC power?

Exercise:

Problem:

Two different electrical devices have the same power consumption, but one is meant to be operated on 120-V AC and the other on 240-V AC. (a) What is the ratio of their resistances? (b) What is the ratio of their currents? (c) Assuming its resistance is unaffected, by what factor will the power increase if a 120-V AC device is connected to 240-V AC?

Solution:

(a) 4.0

(b) 0.50

(c) 4.0

Exercise:

Problem:

Nichrome wire is used in some radiative heaters. (a) Find the resistance needed if the average power output is to be 1.00 kW utilizing 120-V AC. (b) What length of Nichrome wire, having a cross-sectional area of 5.00mm^2, is needed if the operating temperature is 500^{o} C? (c) What power will it draw when first switched on?

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the time after $t = 0$ when the instantaneous voltage of 60-Hz AC first reaches the following values: (a) $V_0/2$ (b) V_0 (c) 0.

Solution:

(a) 1.39 ms

(b) 4.17 ms

(c) 8.33 ms

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) At what two times in the first period following $t = 0$ does the instantaneous voltage in 60-Hz AC equal V_{rms}? (b) $-V_{\text{rms}}$?

Glossary

direct current
: (DC) the flow of electric charge in only one direction

alternating current
: (AC) the flow of electric charge that periodically reverses direction

AC voltage

voltage that fluctuates sinusoidally with time, expressed as $V = V_0 \sin 2\pi ft$, where V is the voltage at time t, V_0 is the peak voltage, and f is the frequency in hertz

AC current

current that fluctuates sinusoidally with time, expressed as $I = I_0 \sin 2\pi ft$, where I is the current at time t, I_0 is the peak current, and f is the frequency in hertz

rms current

the root mean square of the current, $I_{\text{rms}} = I_0/\sqrt{2}$, where I_0 is the peak current, in an AC system

rms voltage

the root mean square of the voltage, $V_{\text{rms}} = V_0/\sqrt{2}$, where V_0 is the peak voltage, in an AC system

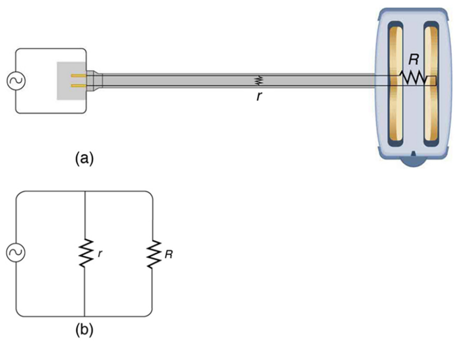
Electric Hazards and the Human Body

- Define thermal hazard, shock hazard, and short circuit.
- Explain what effects various levels of current have on the human body.

There are two known hazards of electricity—thermal and shock. A **thermal hazard** is one where excessive electric power causes undesired thermal effects, such as starting a fire in the wall of a house. A **shock hazard** occurs when electric current passes through a person. Shocks range in severity from painful, but otherwise harmless, to heart-stopping lethality. This section considers these hazards and the various factors affecting them in a quantitative manner. Electrical Safety: Systems and Devices will consider systems and devices for preventing electrical hazards.

Thermal Hazards

Electric power causes undesired heating effects whenever electric energy is converted to thermal energy at a rate faster than it can be safely dissipated. A classic example of this is the **short circuit**, a low-resistance path between terminals of a voltage source. An example of a short circuit is shown in [link]. Insulation on wires leading to an appliance has worn through, allowing the two wires to come into contact. Such an undesired contact with a high voltage is called a *short*. Since the resistance of the short, r, is very small, the power dissipated in the short, $P = V^2/r$, is very large. For example, if V is 120 V and r is $0.100\ \Omega$, then the power is 144 kW, *much* greater than that used by a typical household appliance. Thermal energy delivered at this rate will very quickly raise the temperature of surrounding materials, melting or perhaps igniting them.

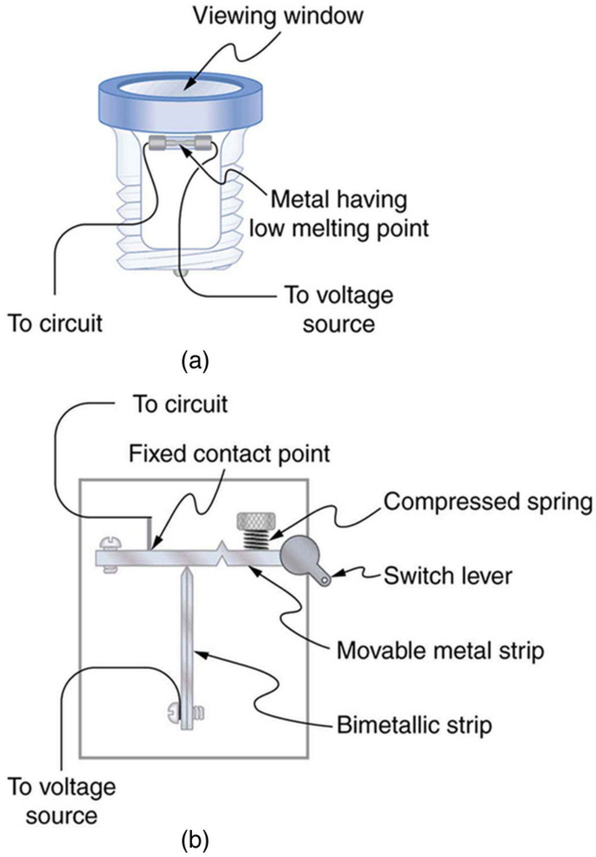


A short circuit is an undesired low-resistance path across a voltage source. (a) Worn insulation on the wires of a toaster allow them to come into contact with a low resistance r. Since $P = V^2/r$, thermal power is created so rapidly that the cord melts or burns. (b) A schematic of the short circuit.

One particularly insidious aspect of a short circuit is that its resistance may actually be decreased due to the increase in temperature. This can happen if the short creates ionization. These charged atoms and molecules are free to move and, thus, lower the resistance r. Since $P = V^2/r$, the power dissipated in the short rises, possibly causing more ionization, more power, and so on. High voltages, such as the 480-V AC used in some industrial applications, lend themselves to this hazard, because higher voltages create higher initial power production in a short.

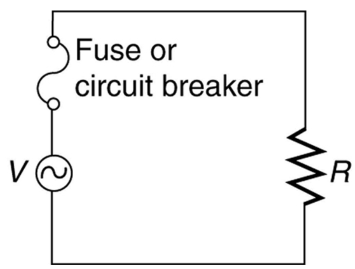
Another serious, but less dramatic, thermal hazard occurs when wires supplying power to a user are overloaded with too great a current. As

discussed in the previous section, the power dissipated in the supply wires is $P = I^2 R_{\text{w}}$, where R_{w} is the resistance of the wires and I the current flowing through them. If either I or R_{w} is too large, the wires overheat. For example, a worn appliance cord (with some of its braided wires broken) may have $R_{\text{w}} = 2.00\ \Omega$ rather than the $0.100\ \Omega$ it should be. If 10.0 A of current passes through the cord, then $P = I^2 R_{\text{w}} = 200\ \text{W}$ is dissipated in the cord—much more than is safe. Similarly, if a wire with a $0.100\text{-}\Omega$ resistance is meant to carry a few amps, but is instead carrying 100 A, it will severely overheat. The power dissipated in the wire will in that case be $P = 1000\ \text{W}$. Fuses and circuit breakers are used to limit excessive currents. (See [link] and [link].) Each device opens the circuit automatically when a sustained current exceeds safe limits.



(a) A fuse has a metal strip with a low melting point that, when overheated by an excessive

current, permanently breaks the connection of a circuit to a voltage source. (b) A circuit breaker is an automatic but restorable electric switch. The one shown here has a bimetallic strip that bends to the right and into the notch if overheated. The spring then forces the metal strip downward, breaking the electrical connection at the points.



Schematic of a circuit with a fuse or circuit breaker in it. Fuses and circuit breakers act like automatic switches that open when sustained current exceeds desired limits.

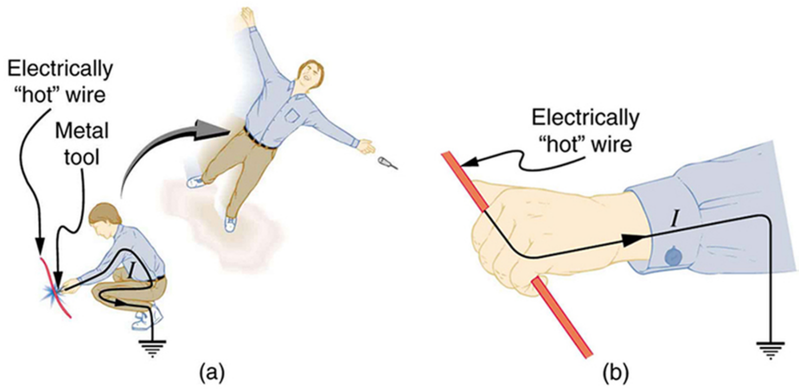
Fuses and circuit breakers for typical household voltages and currents are relatively simple to produce, but those for large voltages and currents experience special problems. For example, when a circuit breaker tries to interrupt the flow of high-voltage electricity, a spark can jump across its points that ionizes the air in the gap and allows the current to continue flowing. Large circuit breakers found in power-distribution systems employ insulating gas and even use jets of gas to blow out such sparks. Here AC is safer than DC, since AC current goes through zero 120 times per second, giving a quick opportunity to extinguish these arcs.

Shock Hazards

Electrical currents through people produce tremendously varied effects. An electrical current can be used to block back pain. The possibility of using electrical current to stimulate muscle action in paralyzed limbs, perhaps allowing paraplegics to walk, is under study. TV dramatizations in which electrical shocks are used to bring a heart attack victim out of ventricular fibrillation (a massively irregular, often fatal, beating of the heart) are more than common. Yet most electrical shock fatalities occur because a current put the heart into fibrillation. A pacemaker uses electrical shocks to stimulate the heart to beat properly. Some fatal shocks do not produce burns, but warts can be safely burned off with electric current (though freezing using liquid nitrogen is now more common). Of course, there are consistent explanations for these disparate effects. The major factors upon which the effects of electrical shock depend are

1. The amount of current I
2. The path taken by the current
3. The duration of the shock
4. The frequency f of the current ($f=0$ for DC)

[link] gives the effects of electrical shocks as a function of current for a typical accidental shock. The effects are for a shock that passes through the trunk of the body, has a duration of 1 s, and is caused by 60-Hz power.



An electric current can cause muscular contractions with varying effects. (a) The victim is "thrown" backward by involuntary muscle contractions that extend the legs and torso. (b) The victim can't let go of the wire that is stimulating all the muscles in the hand. Those that close the fingers are stronger than those that open them.

Current (mA)	**Effect**
1	Threshold of sensation
5	Maximum harmless current
10–20	Onset of sustained muscular contraction; cannot let go for duration of shock; contraction of chest muscles may stop breathing during shock

Current (mA)	Effect
50	Onset of pain
100–300+	Ventricular fibrillation possible; often fatal
300	Onset of burns depending on concentration of current
6000 (6 A)	Onset of sustained ventricular contraction and respiratory paralysis; both cease when shock ends; heartbeat may return to normal; used to defibrillate the heart

Effects of Electrical Shock as a Function of Current[footnote]
For an average male shocked through trunk of body for 1 s by 60-Hz AC. Values for females are 60–80% of those listed.

Our bodies are relatively good conductors due to the water in our bodies. Given that larger currents will flow through sections with lower resistance (to be further discussed in the next chapter), electric currents preferentially flow through paths in the human body that have a minimum resistance in a direct path to earth. The earth is a natural electron sink. Wearing insulating shoes, a requirement in many professions, prohibits a pathway for electrons by providing a large resistance in that path. Whenever working with high-power tools (drills), or in risky situations, ensure that you do not provide a pathway for current flow (especially through the heart).

Very small currents pass harmlessly and unfelt through the body. This happens to you regularly without your knowledge. The threshold of sensation is only 1 mA and, although unpleasant, shocks are apparently harmless for currents less than 5 mA. A great number of safety rules take the 5-mA value for the maximum allowed shock. At 10 to 20 mA and above, the current can stimulate sustained muscular contractions much as regular nerve impulses do. People sometimes say they were knocked across the room by a shock, but what really happened was that certain muscles

contracted, propelling them in a manner not of their own choosing. (See [link](a).) More frightening, and potentially more dangerous, is the “can’t let go” effect illustrated in [link](b). The muscles that close the fingers are stronger than those that open them, so the hand closes involuntarily on the wire shocking it. This can prolong the shock indefinitely. It can also be a danger to a person trying to rescue the victim, because the rescuer’s hand may close about the victim’s wrist. Usually the best way to help the victim is to give the fist a hard knock/blow/jar with an insulator or to throw an insulator at the fist. Modern electric fences, used in animal enclosures, are now pulsed on and off to allow people who touch them to get free, rendering them less lethal than in the past.

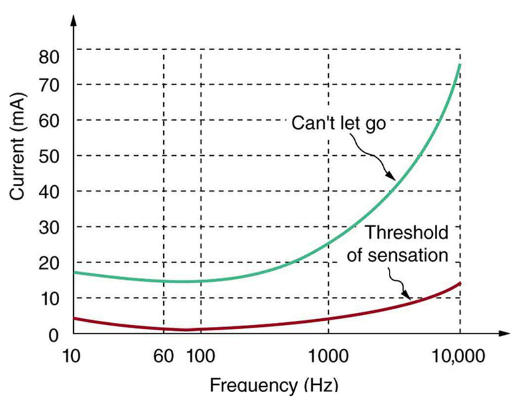
Greater currents may affect the heart. Its electrical patterns can be disrupted, so that it beats irregularly and ineffectively in a condition called “ventricular fibrillation.” This condition often lingers after the shock and is fatal due to a lack of blood circulation. The threshold for ventricular fibrillation is between 100 and 300 mA. At about 300 mA and above, the shock can cause burns, depending on the concentration of current—the more concentrated, the greater the likelihood of burns.

Very large currents cause the heart and diaphragm to contract for the duration of the shock. Both the heart and breathing stop. Interestingly, both often return to normal following the shock. The electrical patterns on the heart are completely erased in a manner that the heart can start afresh with normal beating, as opposed to the permanent disruption caused by smaller currents that can put the heart into ventricular fibrillation. The latter is something like scribbling on a blackboard, whereas the former completely erases it. TV dramatizations of electric shock used to bring a heart attack victim out of ventricular fibrillation also show large paddles. These are used to spread out current passed through the victim to reduce the likelihood of burns.

Current is the major factor determining shock severity (given that other conditions such as path, duration, and frequency are fixed, such as in the table and preceding discussion). A larger voltage is more hazardous, but since $I=\mathrm{V/R}$, the severity of the shock depends on the combination of voltage and resistance. For example, a person with dry skin has a resistance

of about $200\ \text{k}\Omega$. If he comes into contact with 120-V AC, a current $I=(120\ \text{V})/(200\ \text{k}\Omega)=0.6\ \text{mA}$ passes harmlessly through him. The same person soaking wet may have a resistance of $10.0\ \text{k}\Omega$ and the same 120 V will produce a current of 12 mA—above the “can’t let go” threshold and potentially dangerous.

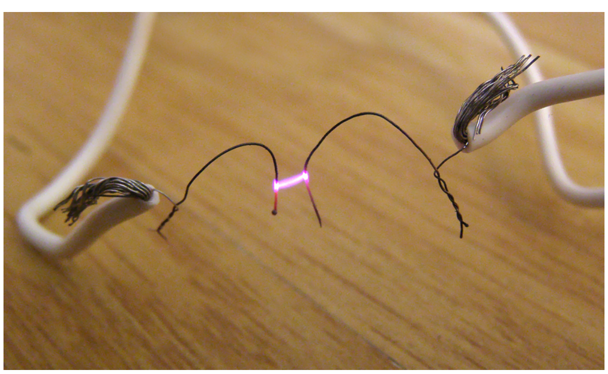
Most of the body’s resistance is in its dry skin. When wet, salts go into ion form, lowering the resistance significantly. The interior of the body has a much lower resistance than dry skin because of all the ionic solutions and fluids it contains. If skin resistance is bypassed, such as by an intravenous infusion, a catheter, or exposed pacemaker leads, a person is rendered **microshock sensitive**. In this condition, currents about 1/1000 those listed in [link] produce similar effects. During open-heart surgery, currents as small as $20\ \mu\text{A}$ can be used to still the heart. Stringent electrical safety requirements in hospitals, particularly in surgery and intensive care, are related to the doubly disadvantaged microshock-sensitive patient. The break in the skin has reduced his resistance, and so the same voltage causes a greater current, and a much smaller current has a greater effect.



Graph of average values for the threshold of sensation and the “can’t let go” current as a function of frequency. The lower the value, the

more sensitive the body is at that frequency.

Factors other than current that affect the severity of a shock are its path, duration, and AC frequency. Path has obvious consequences. For example, the heart is unaffected by an electric shock through the brain, such as may be used to treat manic depression. And it is a general truth that the longer the duration of a shock, the greater its effects. [link] presents a graph that illustrates the effects of frequency on a shock. The curves show the minimum current for two different effects, as a function of frequency. The lower the current needed, the more sensitive the body is at that frequency. Ironically, the body is most sensitive to frequencies near the 50- or 60-Hz frequencies in common use. The body is slightly less sensitive for DC ($f = 0$), mildly confirming Edison's claims that AC presents a greater hazard. At higher and higher frequencies, the body becomes progressively less sensitive to any effects that involve nerves. This is related to the maximum rates at which nerves can fire or be stimulated. At very high frequencies, electrical current travels only on the surface of a person. Thus a wart can be burned off with very high frequency current without causing the heart to stop. (Do not try this at home with 60-Hz AC!) Some of the spectacular demonstrations of electricity, in which high-voltage arcs are passed through the air and over people's bodies, employ high frequencies and low currents. (See [link].) Electrical safety devices and techniques are discussed in detail in Electrical Safety: Systems and Devices.



Is this electric arc dangerous?

The answer depends on the AC frequency and the power involved. (credit: Khimich Alex, Wikimedia Commons)

Section Summary

- The two types of electric hazards are thermal (excessive power) and shock (current through a person).
- Shock severity is determined by current, path, duration, and AC frequency.
- [link] lists shock hazards as a function of current.
- [link] graphs the threshold current for two hazards as a function of frequency.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Using an ohmmeter, a student measures the resistance between various points on his body. He finds that the resistance between two points on the same finger is about the same as the resistance between two points on opposite hands—both are several hundred thousand ohms. Furthermore, the resistance decreases when more skin is brought into contact with the probes of the ohmmeter. Finally, there is a dramatic drop in resistance (to a few thousand ohms) when the skin is wet. Explain these observations and their implications regarding skin and internal resistance of the human body.

Exercise:

Problem: What are the two major hazards of electricity?

Exercise:

Problem: Why isn't a short circuit a shock hazard?

Exercise:

Problem:

What determines the severity of a shock? Can you say that a certain voltage is hazardous without further information?

Exercise:

Problem:

An electrified needle is used to burn off warts, with the circuit being completed by having the patient sit on a large butt plate. Why is this plate large?

Exercise:

Problem:

Some surgery is performed with high-voltage electricity passing from a metal scalpel through the tissue being cut. Considering the nature of electric fields at the surface of conductors, why would you expect most of the current to flow from the sharp edge of the scalpel? Do you think high- or low-frequency AC is used?

Exercise:

Problem:

Some devices often used in bathrooms, such as hairdryers, often have safety messages saying "Do not use when the bathtub or basin is full of water." Why is this so?

Exercise:

Problem:

We are often advised to not flick electric switches with wet hands, dry your hand first. We are also advised to never throw water on an electric fire. Why is this so?

Exercise:

Problem:

Before working on a power transmission line, linemen will touch the line with the back of the hand as a final check that the voltage is zero. Why the back of the hand?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why is the resistance of wet skin so much smaller than dry, and why do blood and other bodily fluids have low resistances?

Exercise:

Problem:

Could a person on intravenous infusion (an IV) be microshock sensitive?

Exercise:

Problem:

In view of the small currents that cause shock hazards and the larger currents that circuit breakers and fuses interrupt, how do they play a role in preventing shock hazards?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) How much power is dissipated in a short circuit of 240-V AC through a resistance of $0.250\ \Omega$? (b) What current flows?

Solution:

(a) 230 kW

(b) 960 A

Exercise:

Problem:

What voltage is involved in a 1.44-kW short circuit through a $0.100 \text{ - } \Omega$ resistance?

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the current through a person and identify the likely effect on her if she touches a 120-V AC source: (a) if she is standing on a rubber mat and offers a total resistance of $300 \text{ k}\Omega$; (b) if she is standing barefoot on wet grass and has a resistance of only $4000 \text{ k}\Omega$.

Solution:

(a) 0.400 mA, no effect

(b) 26.7 mA, muscular contraction for duration of the shock (can't let go)

Exercise:

Problem:

While taking a bath, a person touches the metal case of a radio. The path through the person to the drainpipe and ground has a resistance of $4000 \text{ } \Omega$. What is the smallest voltage on the case of the radio that could cause ventricular fibrillation?

Exercise:

Problem:

Foolishly trying to fish a burning piece of bread from a toaster with a metal butter knife, a man comes into contact with 120-V AC. He does not even feel it since, luckily, he is wearing rubber-soled shoes. What is the minimum resistance of the path the current follows through the person?

Solution:

$1.20 \times 10^5\ \Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) During surgery, a current as small as $20.0\ \mu\text{A}$ applied directly to the heart may cause ventricular fibrillation. If the resistance of the exposed heart is $300\ \Omega$, what is the smallest voltage that poses this danger? (b) Does your answer imply that special electrical safety precautions are needed?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the resistance of a 220-V AC short circuit that generates a peak power of 96.8 kW? (b) What would the average power be if the voltage was 120 V AC?

Solution:

(a) 1.00 Ω

(b) 14.4 kW

Exercise:

Problem:

A heart defibrillator passes 10.0 A through a patient's torso for 5.00 ms in an attempt to restore normal beating. (a) How much charge passed? (b) What voltage was applied if 500 J of energy was dissipated? (c) What was the path's resistance? (d) Find the temperature increase caused in the 8.00 kg of affected tissue.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A short circuit in a 120-V appliance cord has a $0.500\text{-}\Omega$ resistance. Calculate the temperature rise of the 2.00 g of surrounding materials, assuming their specific heat capacity is $0.200 \text{ cal/g} \cdot^{\circ} \text{C}$ and that it takes 0.0500 s for a circuit breaker to interrupt the current. Is this likely to be damaging?

Solution:

Temperature increases 860° C. It is very likely to be damaging.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a person working in an environment where electric currents might pass through her body. Construct a problem in which you calculate the resistance of insulation needed to protect the person from harm. Among the things to be considered are the voltage to which the person might be exposed, likely body resistance (dry, wet, …), and acceptable currents (safe but sensed, safe and unfelt, …).

Glossary

thermal hazard
: a hazard in which electric current causes undesired thermal effects

shock hazard
: when electric current passes through a person

short circuit
: also known as a “short,” a low-resistance path between terminals of a voltage source

microshock sensitive
: a condition in which a person’s skin resistance is bypassed, possibly by a medical procedure, rendering the person vulnerable to electrical shock at currents about 1/1000 the normally required level

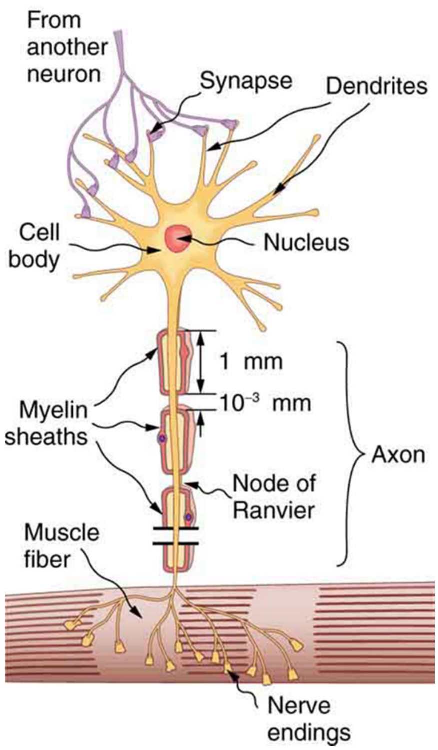
Nerve Conduction–Electrocardiograms

- Explain the process by which electric signals are transmitted along a neuron.
- Explain the effects myelin sheaths have on signal propagation.
- Explain what the features of an ECG signal indicate.

Nerve Conduction

Electric currents in the vastly complex system of billions of nerves in our body allow us to sense the world, control parts of our body, and think. These are representative of the three major functions of nerves. First, nerves carry messages from our sensory organs and others to the central nervous system, consisting of the brain and spinal cord. Second, nerves carry messages from the central nervous system to muscles and other organs. Third, nerves transmit and process signals within the central nervous system. The sheer number of nerve cells and the incredibly greater number of connections between them makes this system the subtle wonder that it is. **Nerve conduction** is a general term for electrical signals carried by nerve cells. It is one aspect of **bioelectricity**, or electrical effects in and created by biological systems.

Nerve cells, properly called *neurons*, look different from other cells—they have tendrils, some of them many centimeters long, connecting them with other cells. (See [link].) Signals arrive at the cell body across *synapses* or through *dendrites*, stimulating the neuron to generate its own signal, sent along its long *axon* to other nerve or muscle cells. Signals may arrive from many other locations and be transmitted to yet others, conditioning the synapses by use, giving the system its complexity and its ability to learn.

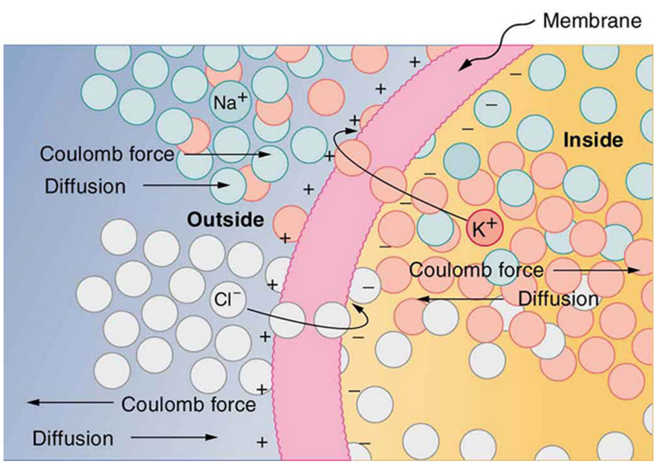


A neuron with its dendrites and long axon. Signals in the form of electric currents reach the cell body through dendrites and across synapses, stimulating the neuron to generate its own signal sent down the axon. The number of interconnections can be far greater than shown here.

The method by which these electric currents are generated and transmitted is more complex than the simple movement of free charges in a conductor,

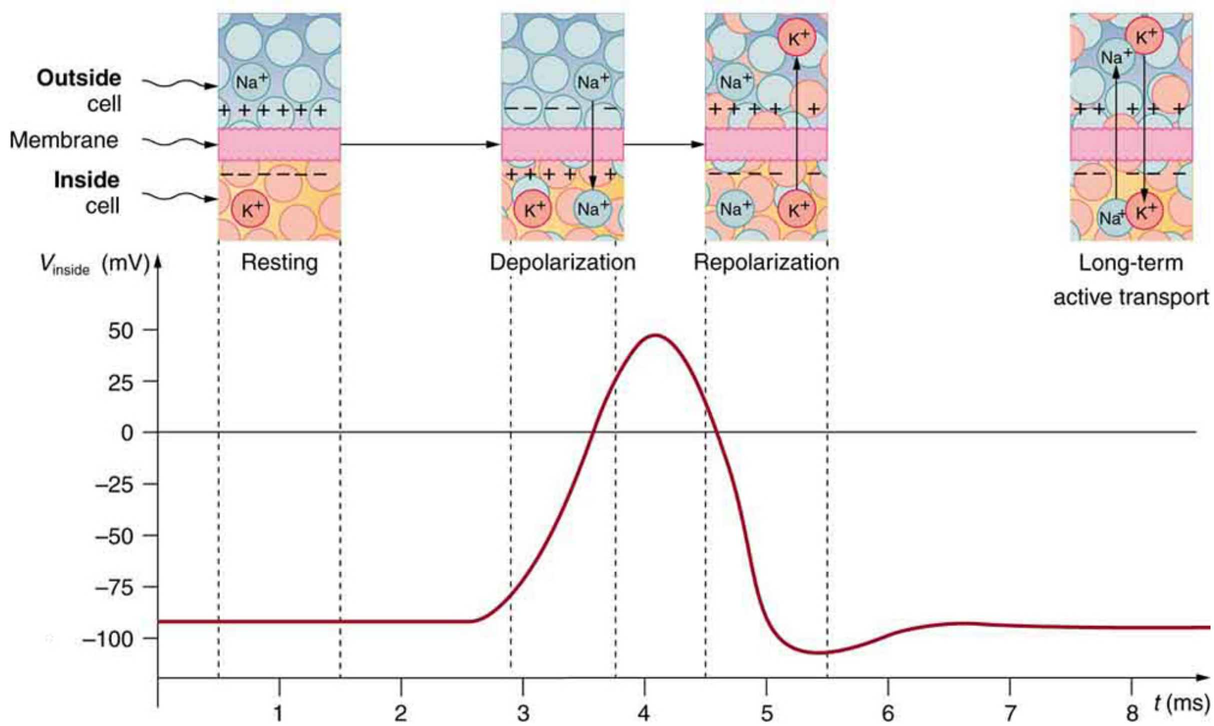
but it can be understood with principles already discussed in this text. The most important of these are the Coulomb force and diffusion.

[link] illustrates how a voltage (potential difference) is created across the cell membrane of a neuron in its resting state. This thin membrane separates electrically neutral fluids having differing concentrations of ions, the most important varieties being Na^+, K^+, and Cl^- (these are sodium, potassium, and chlorine ions with single plus or minus charges as indicated). As discussed in Molecular Transport Phenomena: Diffusion, Osmosis, and Related Processes, free ions will diffuse from a region of high concentration to one of low concentration. But the cell membrane is **semipermeable**, meaning that some ions may cross it while others cannot. In its resting state, the cell membrane is permeable to K^+ and Cl^-, and impermeable to Na^+. Diffusion of K^+ and Cl^- thus creates the layers of positive and negative charge on the outside and inside of the membrane. The Coulomb force prevents the ions from diffusing across in their entirety. Once the charge layer has built up, the repulsion of like charges prevents more from moving across, and the attraction of unlike charges prevents more from leaving either side. The result is two layers of charge right on the membrane, with diffusion being balanced by the Coulomb force. A tiny fraction of the charges move across and the fluids remain neutral (other ions are present), while a separation of charge and a voltage have been created across the membrane.



The semipermeable membrane of a

cell has different concentrations of ions inside and out. Diffusion moves the K^+ and Cl^- ions in the direction shown, until the Coulomb force halts further transfer. This results in a layer of positive charge on the outside, a layer of negative charge on the inside, and thus a voltage across the cell membrane. The membrane is normally impermeable to Na^+.



An action potential is the pulse of voltage inside a nerve cell graphed here. It is caused by movements of ions across the cell membrane as shown. Depolarization occurs when a stimulus makes the membrane permeable to Na^+ ions. Repolarization follows as the membrane

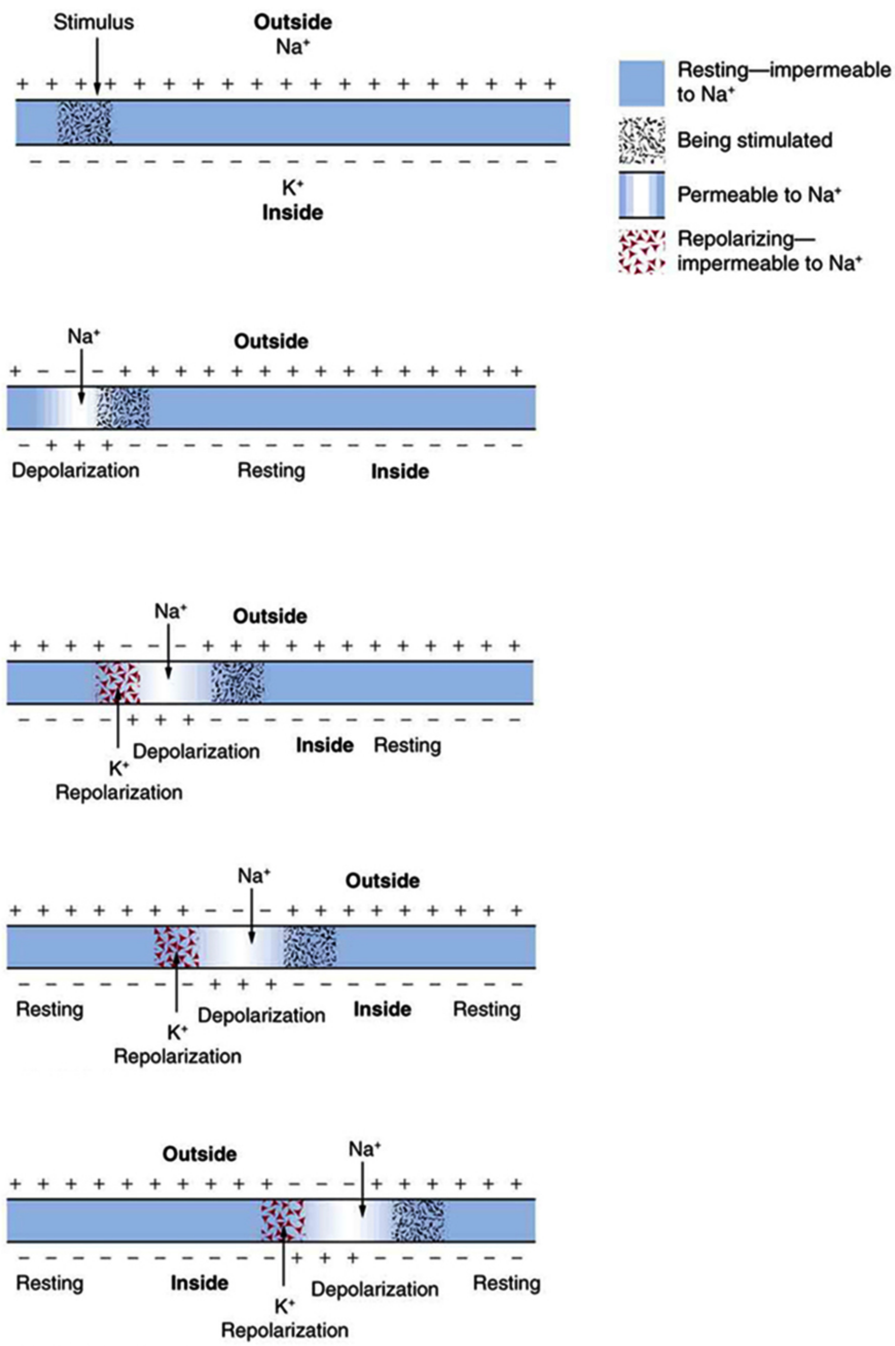
again becomes impermeable to Na^+, and K^+ moves from high to low concentration. In the long term, active transport slowly maintains the concentration differences, but the cell may fire hundreds of times in rapid succession without seriously depleting them.

The separation of charge creates a potential difference of 70 to 90 mV across the cell membrane. While this is a small voltage, the resulting electric field ($E = V/d$) across the only 8-nm-thick membrane is immense (on the order of 11 MV/m!) and has fundamental effects on its structure and permeability. Now, if the exterior of a neuron is taken to be at 0 V, then the interior has a *resting potential* of about –90 mV. Such voltages are created across the membranes of almost all types of animal cells but are largest in nerve and muscle cells. In fact, fully 25% of the energy used by cells goes toward creating and maintaining these potentials.

Electric currents along the cell membrane are created by any stimulus that changes the membrane's permeability. The membrane thus temporarily becomes permeable to Na^+, which then rushes in, driven both by diffusion and the Coulomb force. This inrush of Na^+ first neutralizes the inside membrane, or *depolarizes* it, and then makes it slightly positive. The depolarization causes the membrane to again become impermeable to Na^+, and the movement of K^+ quickly returns the cell to its resting potential, or *repolarizes* it. This sequence of events results in a voltage pulse, called the *action potential*. (See [link].) Only small fractions of the ions move, so that the cell can fire many hundreds of times without depleting the excess concentrations of Na^+ and K^+. Eventually, the cell must replenish these ions to maintain the concentration differences that create bioelectricity. This sodium-potassium pump is an example of *active transport*, wherein cell energy is used to move ions across membranes against diffusion gradients and the Coulomb force.

The action potential is a voltage pulse at one location on a cell membrane. How does it get transmitted along the cell membrane, and in particular down an axon, as a nerve impulse? The answer is that the changing voltage and electric fields affect the permeability of the adjacent cell membrane, so

that the same process takes place there. The adjacent membrane depolarizes, affecting the membrane further down, and so on, as illustrated in [link]. Thus the action potential stimulated at one location triggers a *nerve impulse* that moves slowly (about 1 m/s) along the cell membrane.



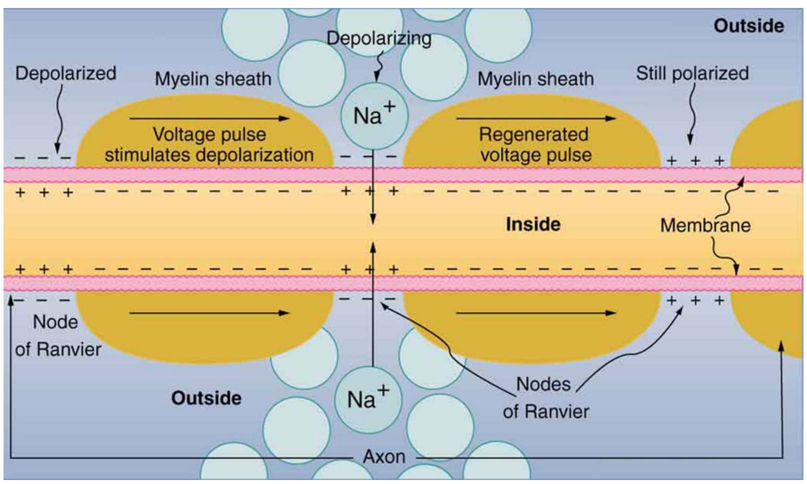
A nerve impulse is the propagation of an action potential along a cell membrane. A stimulus causes an action potential at one location, which changes the permeability of the adjacent membrane, causing an action potential there. This in turn affects the membrane further down, so that the action potential moves slowly (in electrical terms) along the cell membrane. Although the impulse is due to Na^+ and K^+ going across the membrane, it is equivalent to a wave of charge moving along the outside and inside of the membrane.

Some axons, like that in [link], are sheathed with *myelin*, consisting of fat-containing cells. [link] shows an enlarged view of an axon having myelin sheaths characteristically separated by unmyelinated gaps (called nodes of Ranvier). This arrangement gives the axon a number of interesting properties. Since myelin is an insulator, it prevents signals from jumping between adjacent nerves (cross talk). Additionally, the myelinated regions transmit electrical signals at a very high speed, as an ordinary conductor or resistor would. There is no action potential in the myelinated regions, so that no cell energy is used in them. There is an IR signal loss in the myelin, but the signal is regenerated in the gaps, where the voltage pulse triggers the action potential at full voltage. So a myelinated axon transmits a nerve impulse faster, with less energy consumption, and is better protected from cross talk than an unmyelinated one. Not all axons are myelinated, so that cross talk and slow signal transmission are a characteristic of the normal operation of these axons, another variable in the nervous system.

The degeneration or destruction of the myelin sheaths that surround the nerve fibers impairs signal transmission and can lead to numerous neurological effects. One of the most prominent of these diseases comes from the body’s own immune system attacking the myelin in the central nervous system—multiple sclerosis. MS symptoms include fatigue, vision problems, weakness of arms and legs, loss of balance, and tingling or

numbness in one’s extremities (neuropathy). It is more apt to strike younger adults, especially females. Causes might come from infection, environmental or geographic affects, or genetics. At the moment there is no known cure for MS.

Most animal cells can fire or create their own action potential. Muscle cells contract when they fire and are often induced to do so by a nerve impulse. In fact, nerve and muscle cells are physiologically similar, and there are even hybrid cells, such as in the heart, that have characteristics of both nerves and muscles. Some animals, like the infamous electric eel (see [link]), use muscles ganged so that their voltages add in order to create a shock great enough to stun prey.

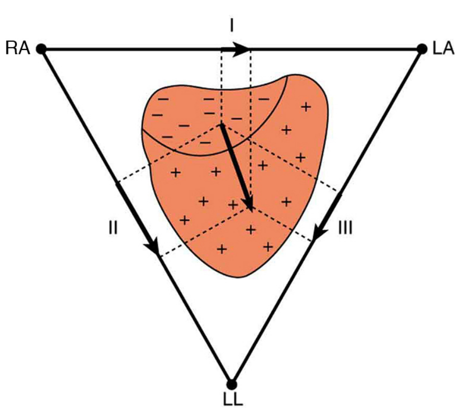


Propagation of a nerve impulse down a myelinated axon, from left to right. The signal travels very fast and without energy input in the myelinated regions, but it loses voltage. It is regenerated in the gaps. The signal moves faster than in unmyelinated axons and is insulated from signals in other nerves, limiting cross talk.

An electric eel flexes its muscles to create a voltage that stuns prey. (credit: chrisbb, Flickr)

Electrocardiograms

Just as nerve impulses are transmitted by depolarization and repolarization of adjacent membrane, the depolarization that causes muscle contraction can also stimulate adjacent muscle cells to depolarize (fire) and contract. Thus, a depolarization wave can be sent across the heart, coordinating its rhythmic contractions and enabling it to perform its vital function of propelling blood through the circulatory system. [link] is a simplified graphic of a depolarization wave spreading across the heart from the *sinoarterial (SA) node*, the heart's natural pacemaker.

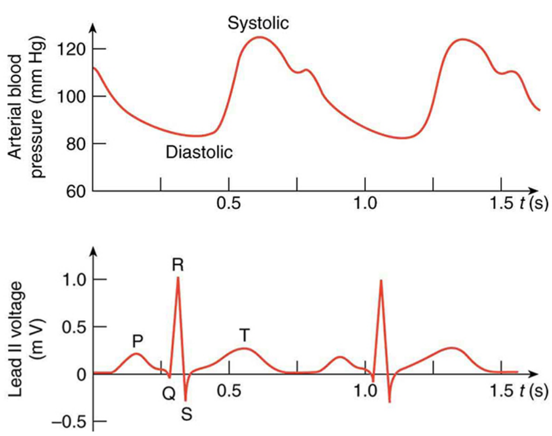


The outer surface of the heart changes from positive to negative during depolarization. This wave of depolarization is spreading from the top of the heart and is represented by a vector pointing in the direction of the wave. This vector is a voltage (potential difference) vector. Three electrodes, labeled RA, LA, and LL, are placed on the patient. Each pair (called leads I, II, and III) measures a component of the depolarization vector and is graphed in an ECG.

An **electrocardiogram (ECG)** is a record of the voltages created by the wave of depolarization and subsequent repolarization in the heart. Voltages between pairs of electrodes placed on the chest are vector components of the voltage wave on the heart. Standard ECGs have 12 or more electrodes, but only three are shown in [link] for clarity. Decades ago, three-electrode ECGs were performed by placing electrodes on the left and right arms and the left leg. The voltage between the right arm and the left leg is called the *lead II potential* and is the most often graphed. We shall examine the lead II potential as an indicator of heart-muscle function and see that it is coordinated with arterial blood pressure as well.

Heart function and its four-chamber action are explored in Viscosity and Laminar Flow; Poiseuille's Law. Basically, the right and left atria receive blood from the body and lungs, respectively, and pump the blood into the ventricles. The right and left ventricles, in turn, pump blood through the lungs and the rest of the body, respectively. Depolarization of the heart muscle causes it to contract. After contraction it is repolarized to ready it for the next beat. The ECG measures components of depolarization and repolarization of the heart muscle and can yield significant information on the functioning and malfunctioning of the heart.

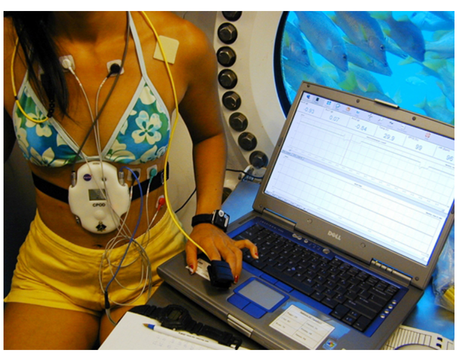
[link] shows an ECG of the lead II potential and a graph of the corresponding arterial blood pressure. The major features are labeled P, Q, R, S, and T. The *P wave* is generated by the depolarization and contraction of the atria as they pump blood into the ventricles. The *QRS complex* is created by the depolarization of the ventricles as they pump blood to the lungs and body. Since the shape of the heart and the path of the depolarization wave are not simple, the QRS complex has this typical shape and time span. The lead II QRS signal also masks the repolarization of the atria, which occur at the same time. Finally, the *T wave* is generated by the repolarization of the ventricles and is followed by the next P wave in the next heartbeat. Arterial blood pressure varies with each part of the heartbeat, with systolic (maximum) pressure occurring closely after the QRS complex, which signals contraction of the ventricles.



A lead II ECG with

corresponding arterial blood pressure. The QRS complex is created by the depolarization and contraction of the ventricles and is followed shortly by the maximum or systolic blood pressure. See text for further description.

Taken together, the 12 leads of a state-of-the-art ECG can yield a wealth of information about the heart. For example, regions of damaged heart tissue, called infarcts, reflect electrical waves and are apparent in one or more lead potentials. Subtle changes due to slight or gradual damage to the heart are most readily detected by comparing a recent ECG to an older one. This is particularly the case since individual heart shape, size, and orientation can cause variations in ECGs from one individual to another. ECG technology has advanced to the point where a portable ECG monitor with a liquid crystal instant display and a printer can be carried to patients' homes or used in emergency vehicles. See [link].



This NASA scientist and NEEMO 5 aquanaut’s heart rate and other vital signs

are being recorded by a portable device while living in an underwater habitat. (credit: NASA, Life Sciences Data Archive at Johnson Space Center, Houston, Texas)

Note:
PhET Explorations: Neuron
Stimulate a neuron and monitor what happens. Pause, rewind, and move forward in time in order to observe the ions as they move across the neuron membrane.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/neuron/latest/neuron_en.html

Section Summary

- Electric potentials in neurons and other cells are created by ionic concentration differences across semipermeable membranes.
- Stimuli change the permeability and create action potentials that propagate along neurons.
- Myelin sheaths speed this process and reduce the needed energy input.
- This process in the heart can be measured with an electrocardiogram (ECG).

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Note that in [link], both the concentration gradient and the Coulomb force tend to move Na^+ ions into the cell. What prevents this?

Exercise:

Problem:

Define depolarization, repolarization, and the action potential.

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain the properties of myelinated nerves in terms of the insulating properties of myelin.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Use the ECG in [link] to determine the heart rate in beats per minute assuming a constant time between beats.

Solution:

80 beats/minute

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) Referring to [link], find the time systolic pressure lags behind the middle of the QRS complex. (b) Discuss the reasons for the time lag.

Glossary

nerve conduction
: the transport of electrical signals by nerve cells

bioelectricity
: electrical effects in and created by biological systems

semipermeable
: property of a membrane that allows only certain types of ions to cross it

electrocardiogram (ECG)
: usually abbreviated ECG, a record of voltages created by depolarization and repolarization, especially in the heart

Introduction to Circuits and DC Instruments class="introduction"

Electric circuits in a computer allow large amounts of data to be quickly and accurately analyzed.. (credit: Airman 1st Class Mike Meares, United States Air Force)

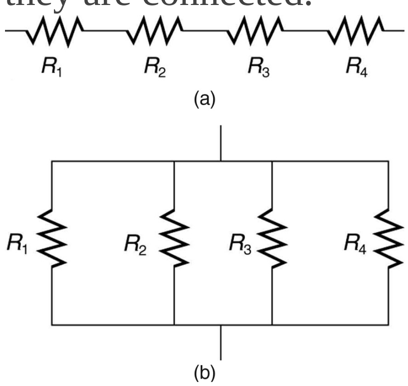
Electric circuits are commonplace. Some are simple, such as those in flashlights. Others, such as those used in supercomputers, are extremely complex.

This collection of modules takes the topic of electric circuits a step beyond simple circuits. When the circuit is purely resistive, everything in this module applies to both DC and AC. Matters become more complex when capacitance is involved. We do consider what happens when capacitors are connected to DC voltage sources, but the interaction of capacitors and other nonresistive devices with AC is left for a later chapter. Finally, a number of important DC instruments, such as meters that measure voltage and current, are covered in this chapter.

Resistors in Series and Parallel

- Draw a circuit with resistors in parallel and in series.
- Calculate the voltage drop of a current across a resistor using Ohm's law.
- Contrast the way total resistance is calculated for resistors in series and in parallel.
- Explain why total resistance of a parallel circuit is less than the smallest resistance of any of the resistors in that circuit.
- Calculate total resistance of a circuit that contains a mixture of resistors connected in series and in parallel.

Most circuits have more than one component, called a **resistor** that limits the flow of charge in the circuit. A measure of this limit on charge flow is called **resistance**. The simplest combinations of resistors are the series and parallel connections illustrated in [link]. The total resistance of a combination of resistors depends on both their individual values and how they are connected.

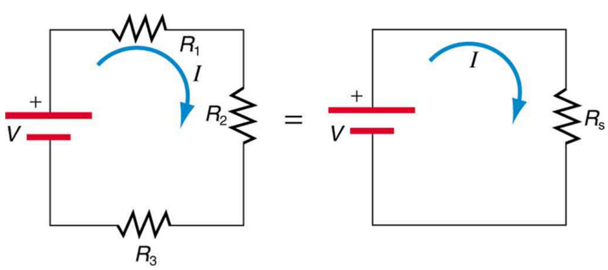


(a) A series connection of resistors. (b) A parallel connection of resistors.

Resistors in Series

When are resistors in **series**? Resistors are in series whenever the flow of charge, called the **current**, must flow through devices sequentially. For example, if current flows through a person holding a screwdriver and into the Earth, then R_1 in [link](a) could be the resistance of the screwdriver's shaft, R_2 the resistance of its handle, R_3 the person's body resistance, and R_4 the resistance of her shoes.

[link] shows resistors in series connected to a **voltage** source. It seems reasonable that the total resistance is the sum of the individual resistances, considering that the current has to pass through each resistor in sequence. (This fact would be an advantage to a person wishing to avoid an electrical shock, who could reduce the current by wearing high-resistance rubber-soled shoes. It could be a disadvantage if one of the resistances were a faulty high-resistance cord to an appliance that would reduce the operating current.)



Three resistors connected in series to a battery (left) and the equivalent single or series resistance (right).

To verify that resistances in series do indeed add, let us consider the loss of electrical power, called a **voltage drop**, in each resistor in [link].

According to **Ohm's law**, the voltage drop, V, across a resistor when a current flows through it is calculated using the equation $V = \text{IR}$, where I equals the current in amps (A) and R is the resistance in ohms (Ω). Another

way to think of this is that V is the voltage necessary to make a current I flow through a resistance R.

So the voltage drop across R_1 is $V_1 = IR_1$, that across R_2 is $V_2 = IR_2$, and that across R_3 is $V_3 = IR_3$. The sum of these voltages equals the voltage output of the source; that is,

Equation:

$$V = V_1 + V_2 + V_3.$$

This equation is based on the conservation of energy and conservation of charge. Electrical potential energy can be described by the equation $\mathrm{PE} = \mathrm{qV}$, where q is the electric charge and V is the voltage. Thus the energy supplied by the source is qV, while that dissipated by the resistors is

Equation:

$$qV_1 + qV_2 + qV_3.$$

Note:

Connections: Conservation Laws

The derivations of the expressions for series and parallel resistance are based on the laws of conservation of energy and conservation of charge, which state that total charge and total energy are constant in any process. These two laws are directly involved in all electrical phenomena and will be invoked repeatedly to explain both specific effects and the general behavior of electricity.

These energies must be equal, because there is no other source and no other destination for energy in the circuit. Thus, $qV = qV_1 + qV_2 + qV_3$. The charge q cancels, yielding $V = V_1 + V_2 + V_3$, as stated. (Note that the same amount of charge passes through the battery and each resistor in a given amount of time, since there is no capacitance to store charge, there is no place for charge to leak, and charge is conserved.)

Now substituting the values for the individual voltages gives
Equation:

$$V = IR_1 + IR_2 + IR_3 = I(R_1 + R_2 + R_3).$$

Note that for the equivalent single series resistance R_s, we have
Equation:

$$V = IR_s.$$

This implies that the total or equivalent series resistance R_s of three resistors is $R_s = R_1 + R_2 + R_3$.

This logic is valid in general for any number of resistors in series; thus, the total resistance R_s of a series connection is
Equation:

$$R_s = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + ...,$$

as proposed. Since all of the current must pass through each resistor, it experiences the resistance of each, and resistances in series simply add up.

Example:
Calculating Resistance, Current, Voltage Drop, and Power Dissipation: Analysis of a Series Circuit
Suppose the voltage output of the battery in [link] is $12.0\ \text{V}$, and the resistances are $R_1 = 1.00\ \Omega$, $R_2 = 6.00\ \Omega$, and $R_3 = 13.0\ \Omega$. (a) What is the total resistance? (b) Find the current. (c) Calculate the voltage drop in each resistor, and show these add to equal the voltage output of the source. (d) Calculate the power dissipated by each resistor. (e) Find the power output of the source, and show that it equals the total power dissipated by the resistors.
Strategy and Solution for (a)

The total resistance is simply the sum of the individual resistances, as given by this equation:

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} R_s &= R_1 + R_2 + R_3 \\ &= 1.00\ \Omega + 6.00\ \Omega + 13.0\ \Omega \\ &= 20.0\ \Omega. \end{aligned}$$

Strategy and Solution for (b)

The current is found using Ohm's law, $V = \text{IR}$. Entering the value of the applied voltage and the total resistance yields the current for the circuit:

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{R_s} = \frac{12.0\ \text{V}}{20.0\ \Omega} = 0.600\ \text{A}.$$

Strategy and Solution for (c)

The voltage—or IR drop—in a resistor is given by Ohm's law. Entering the current and the value of the first resistance yields

Equation:

$$V_1 = IR_1 = (0.600\ \text{A})(1.0\ \Omega) = 0.600\ \text{V}.$$

Similarly,

Equation:

$$V_2 = IR_2 = (0.600\ \text{A})(6.0\ \Omega) = 3.60\ \text{V}$$

and

Equation:

$$V_3 = IR_3 = (0.600\ \text{A})(13.0\ \Omega) = 7.80\ \text{V}.$$

Discussion for (c)

The three IR drops add to $12.0\ \text{V}$, as predicted:

Equation:

$$V_1 + V_2 + V_3 = (0.600 + 3.60 + 7.80)\ \text{V} = 12.0\ \text{V}.$$

Strategy and Solution for (d)

The easiest way to calculate power in watts (W) dissipated by a resistor in a DC circuit is to use **Joule's law**, $P = \text{IV}$, where P is electric power. In this case, each resistor has the same full current flowing through it. By substituting Ohm's law $V = \text{IR}$ into Joule's law, we get the power dissipated by the first resistor as

Equation:

$$P_1 = I^2 R_1 = (0.600\ \text{A})^2 (1.00\ \Omega) = 0.360\ \text{W}.$$

Similarly,

Equation:

$$P_2 = I^2 R_2 = (0.600\ \text{A})^2 (6.00\ \Omega) = 2.16\ \text{W}$$

and

Equation:

$$P_3 = I^2 R_3 = (0.600\ \text{A})^2 (13.0\ \Omega) = 4.68\ \text{W}.$$

Discussion for (d)

Power can also be calculated using either $P = \text{IV}$ or $P = \frac{V^2}{R}$, where V is the voltage drop across the resistor (not the full voltage of the source). The same values will be obtained.

Strategy and Solution for (e)

The easiest way to calculate power output of the source is to use $P = \text{IV}$, where V is the source voltage. This gives

Equation:

$$P = (0.600\ \text{A})(12.0\ \text{V}) = 7.20\ \text{W}.$$

Discussion for (e)

Note, coincidentally, that the total power dissipated by the resistors is also 7.20 W, the same as the power put out by the source. That is,

Equation:

$$P_1 + P_2 + P_3 = (0.360 + 2.16 + 4.68)\ \text{W} = 7.20\ \text{W}.$$

Power is energy per unit time (watts), and so conservation of energy requires the power output of the source to be equal to the total power dissipated by the resistors.

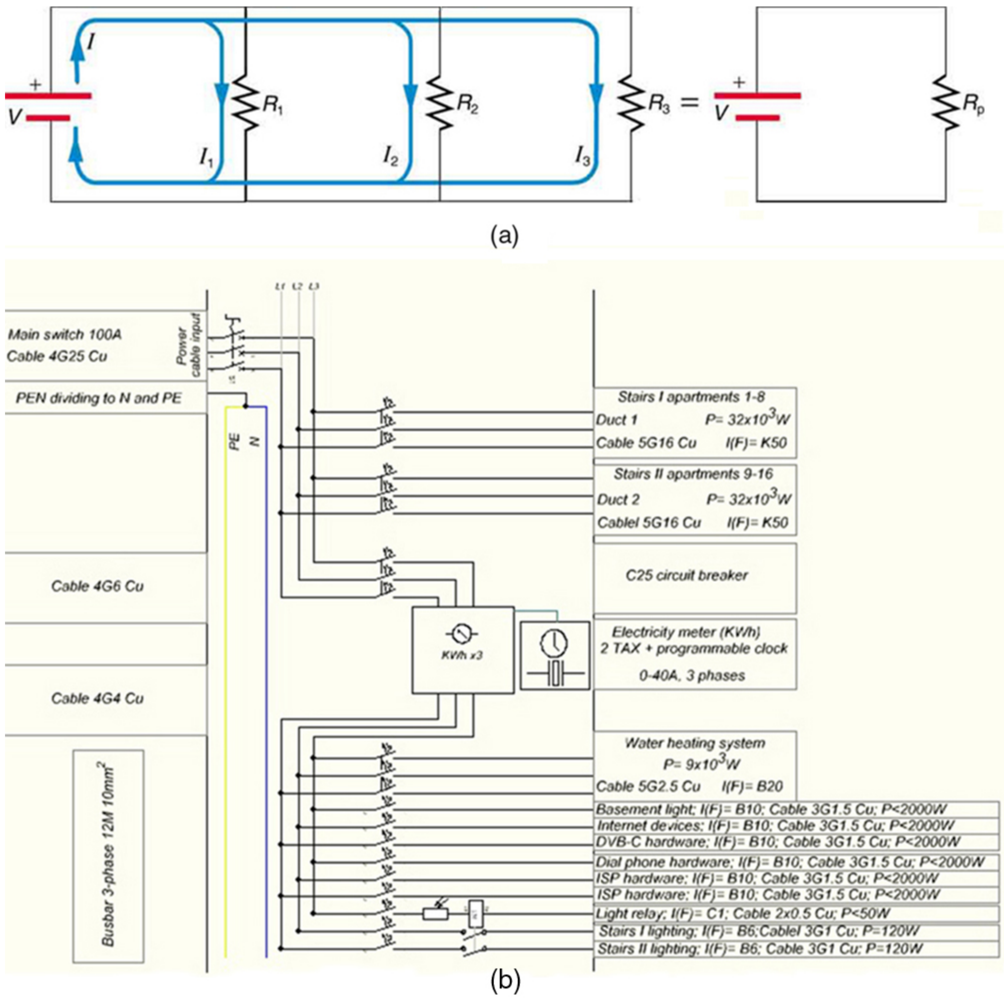
Note:
Major Features of Resistors in Series

1. Series resistances add: $R_{\text{s}} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + \ldots.$
2. The same current flows through each resistor in series.
3. Individual resistors in series do not get the total source voltage, but divide it.

Resistors in Parallel

[link] shows resistors in **parallel**, wired to a voltage source. Resistors are in parallel when each resistor is connected directly to the voltage source by connecting wires having negligible resistance. Each resistor thus has the full voltage of the source applied to it.

Each resistor draws the same current it would if it alone were connected to the voltage source (provided the voltage source is not overloaded). For example, an automobile's headlights, radio, and so on, are wired in parallel, so that they utilize the full voltage of the source and can operate completely independently. The same is true in your house, or any building. (See [link] (b).)



(a) Three resistors connected in parallel to a battery and the equivalent single or parallel resistance. (b) Electrical power setup in a house. (credit: Dmitry G, Wikimedia Commons)

To find an expression for the equivalent parallel resistance R_{p}, let us consider the currents that flow and how they are related to resistance. Since each resistor in the circuit has the full voltage, the currents flowing through the individual resistors are $I_1 = \frac{V}{R_1}$, $I_2 = \frac{V}{R_2}$, and $I_3 = \frac{V}{R_3}$. Conservation of charge implies that the total current I produced by the source is the sum of these currents:

Equation:

$$I = I_1 + I_2 + I_3.$$

Substituting the expressions for the individual currents gives

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{R_1} + \frac{V}{R_2} + \frac{V}{R_3} = V\left(\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3}\right).$$

Note that Ohm's law for the equivalent single resistance gives

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{R_{\mathrm{p}}} = V\left(\frac{1}{R_{\mathrm{p}}}\right).$$

The terms inside the parentheses in the last two equations must be equal. Generalizing to any number of resistors, the total resistance R_{p} of a parallel connection is related to the individual resistances by

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{R_{\mathrm{p}}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_{.3}} + \ldots.$$

This relationship results in a total resistance R_{p} that is less than the smallest of the individual resistances. (This is seen in the next example.) When resistors are connected in parallel, more current flows from the source than would flow for any of them individually, and so the total resistance is lower.

Example:

Calculating Resistance, Current, Power Dissipation, and Power Output: Analysis of a Parallel Circuit

Let the voltage output of the battery and resistances in the parallel connection in [link] be the same as the previously considered series

connection: $V = 12.0\text{ V}$, $R_1 = 1.00\ \Omega$, $R_2 = 6.00\ \Omega$, and $R_3 = 13.0\ \Omega$. (a) What is the total resistance? (b) Find the total current. (c) Calculate the currents in each resistor, and show these add to equal the total current output of the source. (d) Calculate the power dissipated by each resistor. (e) Find the power output of the source, and show that it equals the total power dissipated by the resistors.

Strategy and Solution for (a)

The total resistance for a parallel combination of resistors is found using the equation below. Entering known values gives

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{R_\text{p}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} = \frac{1}{1.00\ \Omega} + \frac{1}{6.00\ \Omega} + \frac{1}{13.0\ \Omega}.$$

Thus,

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{R_\text{p}} = \frac{1.00}{\Omega} + \frac{0.1667}{\Omega} + \frac{0.07692}{\Omega} = \frac{1.2436}{\Omega}.$$

(Note that in these calculations, each intermediate answer is shown with an extra digit.)

We must invert this to find the total resistance R_p. This yields

Equation:

$$R_\text{p} = \frac{1}{1.2436}\Omega = 0.8041\ \Omega.$$

The total resistance with the correct number of significant digits is $R_\text{p} = 0.804\ \Omega$.

Discussion for (a)

R_p is, as predicted, less than the smallest individual resistance.

Strategy and Solution for (b)

The total current can be found from Ohm’s law, substituting R_p for the total resistance. This gives

Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{R_{\text{p}}} = \frac{12.0\ \text{V}}{0.8041\ \Omega} = 14.92\ \text{A}.$$

Discussion for (b)

Current I for each device is much larger than for the same devices connected in series (see the previous example). A circuit with parallel connections has a smaller total resistance than the resistors connected in series.

Strategy and Solution for (c)

The individual currents are easily calculated from Ohm's law, since each resistor gets the full voltage. Thus,

Equation:

$$I_1 = \frac{V}{R_1} = \frac{12.0\ \text{V}}{1.00\,\Omega} = 12.0\ \text{A}.$$

Similarly,

Equation:

$$I_2 = \frac{V}{R_2} = \frac{12.0\ \text{V}}{6.00\,\Omega} = 2.00\ \text{A}$$

and

Equation:

$$I_3 = \frac{V}{R_3} = \frac{12.0\ \text{V}}{13.0\,\Omega} = 0.92\ \text{A}.$$

Discussion for (c)

The total current is the sum of the individual currents:

Equation:

$$I_1 + I_2 + I_3 = 14.92\ \text{A}.$$

This is consistent with conservation of charge.

Strategy and Solution for (d)

The power dissipated by each resistor can be found using any of the equations relating power to current, voltage, and resistance, since all three

are known. Let us use $P = \frac{V^2}{R}$, since each resistor gets full voltage. Thus,
Equation:

$$P_1 = \frac{V^2}{R_1} = \frac{(12.0\text{ V})^2}{1.00\ \Omega} = 144\text{ W}.$$

Similarly,
Equation:

$$P_2 = \frac{V^2}{R_2} = \frac{(12.0\text{ V})^2}{6.00\ \Omega} = 24.0\text{ W}$$

and
Equation:

$$P_3 = \frac{V^2}{R_3} = \frac{(12.0\text{ V})^2}{13.0\ \Omega} = 11.1\text{ W}.$$

Discussion for (d)
The power dissipated by each resistor is considerably higher in parallel than when connected in series to the same voltage source.
Strategy and Solution for (e)
The total power can also be calculated in several ways. Choosing $P = \text{IV}$, and entering the total current, yields
Equation:

$$P = \text{IV} = (14.92\text{ A})(12.0\text{ V}) = 179\text{ W}.$$

Discussion for (e)
Total power dissipated by the resistors is also 179 W:
Equation:

$$P_1 + P_2 + P_3 = 144\text{ W} + 24.0\text{ W} + 11.1\text{ W} = 179\text{ W}.$$

This is consistent with the law of conservation of energy.
Overall Discussion
Note that both the currents and powers in parallel connections are greater than for the same devices in series.

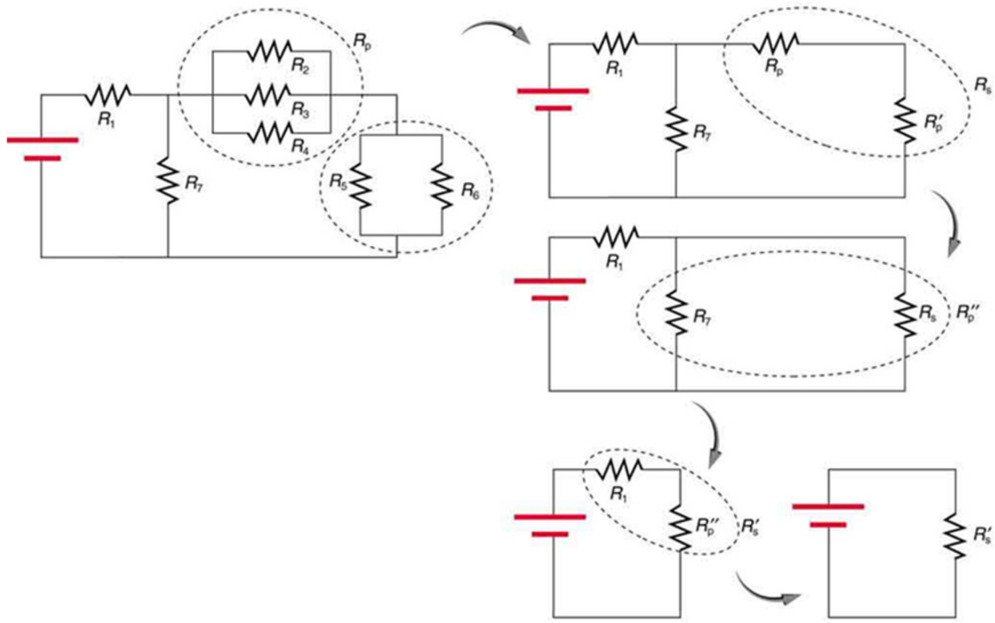
Note:
Major Features of Resistors in Parallel

1. Parallel resistance is found from $\frac{1}{R_{\mathrm{p}}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} + \ldots$, and it is smaller than any individual resistance in the combination.
2. Each resistor in parallel has the same full voltage of the source applied to it. (Power distribution systems most often use parallel connections to supply the myriad devices served with the same voltage and to allow them to operate independently.)
3. Parallel resistors do not each get the total current; they divide it.

Combinations of Series and Parallel

More complex connections of resistors are sometimes just combinations of series and parallel. These are commonly encountered, especially when wire resistance is considered. In that case, wire resistance is in series with other resistances that are in parallel.

Combinations of series and parallel can be reduced to a single equivalent resistance using the technique illustrated in [link]. Various parts are identified as either series or parallel, reduced to their equivalents, and further reduced until a single resistance is left. The process is more time consuming than difficult.



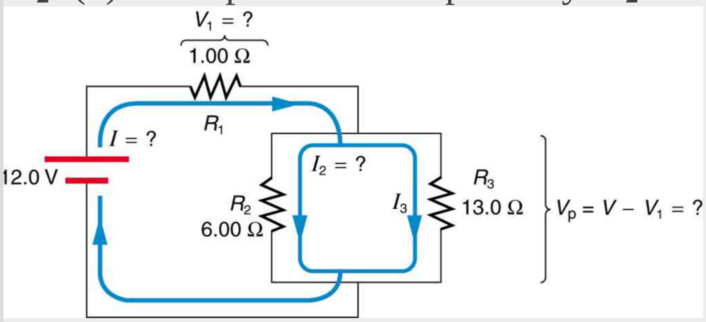
This combination of seven resistors has both series and parallel parts. Each is identified and reduced to an equivalent resistance, and these are further reduced until a single equivalent resistance is reached.

The simplest combination of series and parallel resistance, shown in [link], is also the most instructive, since it is found in many applications. For example, R_1 could be the resistance of wires from a car battery to its electrical devices, which are in parallel. R_2 and R_3 could be the starter motor and a passenger compartment light. We have previously assumed that wire resistance is negligible, but, when it is not, it has important effects, as the next example indicates.

Example:
Calculating Resistance, IR Drop, Current, and Power Dissipation: Combining Series and Parallel Circuits

[link] shows the resistors from the previous two examples wired in a different way—a combination of series and parallel. We can consider R_1 to be the resistance of wires leading to R_2 and R_3. (a) Find the total

resistance. (b) What is the IR drop in R_1? (c) Find the current I_2 through R_2. (d) What power is dissipated by R_2?



These three resistors are connected to a voltage source so that R_2 and R_3 are in parallel with one another and that combination is in series with R_1.

Strategy and Solution for (a)

To find the total resistance, we note that R_2 and R_3 are in parallel and their combination R_p is in series with R_1. Thus the total (equivalent) resistance of this combination is

Equation:

$$R_\mathrm{tot} = R_1 + R_\mathrm{p}.$$

First, we find R_p using the equation for resistors in parallel and entering known values:

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{R_\mathrm{p}} = \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} = \frac{1}{6.00\ \Omega} + \frac{1}{13.0\ \Omega} = \frac{0.2436}{\Omega}.$$

Inverting gives

Equation:

$$R_\mathrm{p} = \frac{1}{0.2436}\Omega = 4.11\ \Omega.$$

So the total resistance is

Equation:

$$R_{\text{tot}} = R_1 + R_{\text{p}} = 1.00\ \Omega + 4.11\ \Omega = 5.11\ \Omega.$$

Discussion for (a)
The total resistance of this combination is intermediate between the pure series and pure parallel values ($20.0\ \Omega$ and $0.804\ \Omega$, respectively) found for the same resistors in the two previous examples.
Strategy and Solution for (b)
To find the IR drop in R_1, we note that the full current I flows through R_1. Thus its IR drop is
Equation:

$$V_1 = \text{IR}_1.$$

We must find I before we can calculate V_1. The total current I is found using Ohm's law for the circuit. That is,
Equation:

$$I = \frac{V}{R_{\text{tot}}} = \frac{12.0\ \text{V}}{5.11\ \Omega} = 2.35\ \text{A}.$$

Entering this into the expression above, we get
Equation:

$$V_1 = \text{IR}_1 = (2.35\ \text{A})(1.00\ \Omega) = 2.35\ \text{V}.$$

Discussion for (b)
The voltage applied to R_2 and R_3 is less than the total voltage by an amount V_1. When wire resistance is large, it can significantly affect the operation of the devices represented by R_2 and R_3.
Strategy and Solution for (c)
To find the current through R_2, we must first find the voltage applied to it. We call this voltage V_{p}, because it is applied to a parallel combination of resistors. The voltage applied to both R_2 and R_3 is reduced by the amount V_1, and so it is
Equation:

$$V_p = V - V_1 = 12.0 \text{ V} - 2.35 \text{ V} = 9.65 \text{ V}.$$

Now the current I_2 through resistance R_2 is found using Ohm's law:
Equation:

$$I_2 = \frac{V_p}{R_2} = \frac{9.65 \text{ V}}{6.00 \ \Omega} = 1.61 \text{ A}.$$

Discussion for (c)
The current is less than the 2.00 A that flowed through R_2 when it was connected in parallel to the battery in the previous parallel circuit example.
Strategy and Solution for (d)
The power dissipated by R_2 is given by
Equation:

$$P_2 = (I_2)^2 R_2 = (1.61 \text{ A})^2 (6.00 \ \Omega) = 15.5 \text{ W}.$$

Discussion for (d)
The power is less than the 24.0 W this resistor dissipated when connected in parallel to the 12.0-V source.

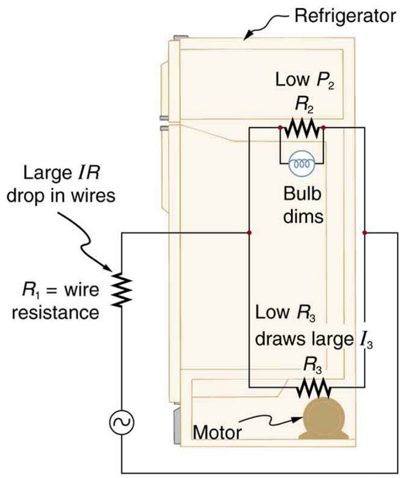
Practical Implications

One implication of this last example is that resistance in wires reduces the current and power delivered to a resistor. If wire resistance is relatively large, as in a worn (or a very long) extension cord, then this loss can be significant. If a large current is drawn, the IR drop in the wires can also be significant.

For example, when you are rummaging in the refrigerator and the motor comes on, the refrigerator light dims momentarily. Similarly, you can see the passenger compartment light dim when you start the engine of your car (although this may be due to resistance inside the battery itself).

What is happening in these high-current situations is illustrated in [link]. The device represented by R_3 has a very low resistance, and so when it is

switched on, a large current flows. This increased current causes a larger IR drop in the wires represented by R_1, reducing the voltage across the light bulb (which is R_2), which then dims noticeably.



Why do lights dim when a large appliance is switched on? The answer is that the large current the appliance motor draws causes a significant IR drop in the wires and reduces the voltage across the light.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Can any arbitrary combination of resistors be broken down into series and parallel combinations? See if you can draw a circuit diagram of resistors that cannot be broken down into combinations of series and parallel.

Solution:

No, there are many ways to connect resistors that are not combinations of series and parallel, including loops and junctions. In such cases Kirchhoff's rules, to be introduced in Kirchhoff's Rules, will allow you to analyze the circuit.

Note:
Problem-Solving Strategies for Series and Parallel Resistors

1. Draw a clear circuit diagram, labeling all resistors and voltage sources. This step includes a list of the knowns for the problem, since they are labeled in your circuit diagram.
2. Identify exactly what needs to be determined in the problem (identify the unknowns). A written list is useful.
3. Determine whether resistors are in series, parallel, or a combination of both series and parallel. Examine the circuit diagram to make this assessment. Resistors are in series if the same current must pass sequentially through them.
4. Use the appropriate list of major features for series or parallel connections to solve for the unknowns. There is one list for series and another for parallel. If your problem has a combination of series and parallel, reduce it in steps by considering individual groups of series or parallel connections, as done in this module and the examples. Special note: When finding R_{p}, the reciprocal must be taken with care.
5. Check to see whether the answers are reasonable and consistent. Units and numerical results must be reasonable. Total series resistance

should be greater, whereas total parallel resistance should be smaller, for example. Power should be greater for the same devices in parallel compared with series, and so on.

Section Summary

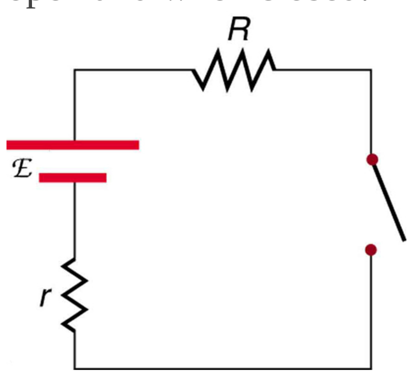
- The total resistance of an electrical circuit with resistors wired in a series is the sum of the individual resistances: $R_{\mathrm{s}} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + ...$
- Each resistor in a series circuit has the same amount of current flowing through it.
- The voltage drop, or power dissipation, across each individual resistor in a series is different, and their combined total adds up to the power source input.
- The total resistance of an electrical circuit with resistors wired in parallel is less than the lowest resistance of any of the components and can be determined using the formula:
  Equation:
  $$\frac{1}{R_{\mathrm{p}}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} + ...$$
- Each resistor in a parallel circuit has the same full voltage of the source applied to it.
- The current flowing through each resistor in a parallel circuit is different, depending on the resistance.
- If a more complex connection of resistors is a combination of series and parallel, it can be reduced to a single equivalent resistance by identifying its various parts as series or parallel, reducing each to its equivalent, and continuing until a single resistance is eventually reached.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

A switch has a variable resistance that is nearly zero when closed and extremely large when open, and it is placed in series with the device it controls. Explain the effect the switch in [link] has on current when open and when closed.



A switch is ordinarily in series with a resistance and voltage source. Ideally, the switch has nearly zero resistance when closed but has an extremely large resistance when open. (Note that in this diagram, the script E represents the voltage (or electromotive force) of the battery.)

Exercise:

Problem: What is the voltage across the open switch in [link]?

Exercise:

Problem:

There is a voltage across an open switch, such as in [link]. Why, then, is the power dissipated by the open switch small?

Exercise:

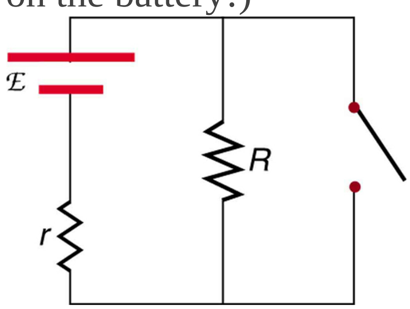
Problem:

Why is the power dissipated by a closed switch, such as in [link], small?

Exercise:

Problem:

A student in a physics lab mistakenly wired a light bulb, battery, and switch as shown in [link]. Explain why the bulb is on when the switch is open, and off when the switch is closed. (Do not try this—it is hard on the battery!)



A wiring mistake put this switch in parallel with the device represented by R. (Note that in this diagram, the script E represents the voltage (or

electromotive force) of the battery.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Knowing that the severity of a shock depends on the magnitude of the current through your body, would you prefer to be in series or parallel with a resistance, such as the heating element of a toaster, if shocked by it? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Would your headlights dim when you start your car's engine if the wires in your automobile were superconductors? (Do not neglect the battery's internal resistance.) Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Some strings of holiday lights are wired in series to save wiring costs. An old version utilized bulbs that break the electrical connection, like an open switch, when they burn out. If one such bulb burns out, what happens to the others? If such a string operates on 120 V and has 40 identical bulbs, what is the normal operating voltage of each? Newer versions use bulbs that short circuit, like a closed switch, when they burn out. If one such bulb burns out, what happens to the others? If such a string operates on 120 V and has 39 remaining identical bulbs, what is then the operating voltage of each?

Exercise:

Problem:

If two household lightbulbs rated 60 W and 100 W are connected in series to household power, which will be brighter? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you are doing a physics lab that asks you to put a resistor into a circuit, but all the resistors supplied have a larger resistance than the requested value. How would you connect the available resistances to attempt to get the smaller value asked for?

Exercise:

Problem:

Before World War II, some radios got power through a “resistance cord” that had a significant resistance. Such a resistance cord reduces the voltage to a desired level for the radio’s tubes and the like, and it saves the expense of a transformer. Explain why resistance cords become warm and waste energy when the radio is on.

Exercise:

Problem:

Some light bulbs have three power settings (not including zero), obtained from multiple filaments that are individually switched and wired in parallel. What is the minimum number of filaments needed for three power settings?

Problem Exercises

Note: Data taken from figures can be assumed to be accurate to three significant digits.
Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the resistance of ten $275\text{-}\Omega$ resistors connected in series? (b) In parallel?

Solution:

(a) $2.75 \text{ k}\Omega$

(b) $27.5 \ \Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the resistance of a 1.00×10^2 -Ω, a $2.50\text{-k}\Omega$, and a $4.00\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor connected in series? (b) In parallel?

Exercise:

Problem:

What are the largest and smallest resistances you can obtain by connecting a $36.0\text{-}\Omega$, a $50.0\text{-}\Omega$, and a $700\text{-}\Omega$ resistor together?

Solution:

(a) $786 \ \Omega$

(b) $20.3 \ \Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

An 1800-W toaster, a 1400-W electric frying pan, and a 75-W lamp are plugged into the same outlet in a 15-A, 120-V circuit. (The three devices are in parallel when plugged into the same socket.). (a) What current is drawn by each device? (b) Will this combination blow the 15-A fuse?

Exercise:

Problem:

Your car’s 30.0-W headlight and 2.40-kW starter are ordinarily connected in parallel in a 12.0-V system. What power would one headlight and the starter consume if connected in series to a 12.0-V battery? (Neglect any other resistance in the circuit and any change in resistance in the two devices.)

Solution:

29.6 W

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Given a 48.0-V battery and $24.0\text{-}\Omega$ and $96.0\text{-}\Omega$ resistors, find the current and power for each when connected in series. (b) Repeat when the resistances are in parallel.

Exercise:

Problem:

Referring to the example combining series and parallel circuits and [link], calculate I_3 in the following two different ways: (a) from the known values of I and I_2; (b) using Ohm’s law for R_3. In both parts explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategies for Series and Parallel Resistors.

Solution:

(a) 0.74 A

(b) 0.742 A

Exercise:

Problem:

Referring to [link]: (a) Calculate P_3 and note how it compares with P_3 found in the first two example problems in this module. (b) Find the total power supplied by the source and compare it with the sum of the powers dissipated by the resistors.

Exercise:

Problem:

Refer to [link] and the discussion of lights dimming when a heavy appliance comes on. (a) Given the voltage source is 120 V, the wire resistance is $0.400\ \Omega$, and the bulb is nominally 75.0 W, what power will the bulb dissipate if a total of 15.0 A passes through the wires when the motor comes on? Assume negligible change in bulb resistance. (b) What power is consumed by the motor?

Solution:

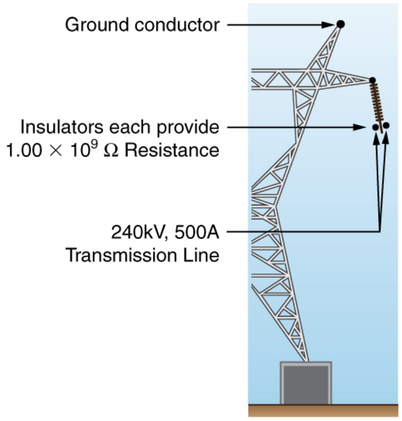
(a) 60.8 W

(b) 3.18 kW

Exercise:

Problem:

A 240-kV power transmission line carrying 5.00×10^2 A is hung from grounded metal towers by ceramic insulators, each having a 1.00×10^9 -Ω resistance. [link]. (a) What is the resistance to ground of 100 of these insulators? (b) Calculate the power dissipated by 100 of them. (c) What fraction of the power carried by the line is this? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategies for Series and Parallel Resistors.



High-voltage (240-kV) transmission line carrying 5.00×10^2 A is hung from a grounded metal transmission tower. The row of ceramic insulators provide $1.00 \times 10^9 \Omega$ of resistance each.

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that if two resistors R_1 and R_2 are combined and one is much greater than the other ($R_1 >> R_2$): (a) Their series resistance is very nearly equal to the greater resistance R_1. (b) Their parallel resistance is very nearly equal to smaller resistance R_2.

Solution:

(a) $$\begin{aligned} R_s &= R_1 + R_2 \\ \Rightarrow R_s &\approx R_1 (R_1 >> R_2) \end{aligned}$$

(b) $\frac{1}{R_{\mathrm{p}}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} = \frac{R_1+R_2}{R_1 R_2}$,

so that

$$R_{\mathrm{p}} = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1+R_2} \approx \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1} = R_2 (R_1 >> R_2).$$

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

Two resistors, one having a resistance of $145\ \Omega$, are connected in parallel to produce a total resistance of $150\ \Omega$. (a) What is the value of the second resistance? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

Two resistors, one having a resistance of $900\ \mathrm{k}\Omega$, are connected in series to produce a total resistance of $0.500\ \mathrm{M}\Omega$. (a) What is the value of the second resistance? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) $-400\ \mathrm{k}\Omega$

(b) Resistance cannot be negative.

(c) Series resistance is said to be less than one of the resistors, but it must be greater than any of the resistors.

Glossary

series

a sequence of resistors or other components wired into a circuit one after the other

resistor
: a component that provides resistance to the current flowing through an electrical circuit

resistance
: causing a loss of electrical power in a circuit

Ohm's law
: the relationship between current, voltage, and resistance within an electrical circuit: $V = \text{IR}$

voltage
: the electrical potential energy per unit charge; electric pressure created by a power source, such as a battery

voltage drop
: the loss of electrical power as a current travels through a resistor, wire or other component

current
: the flow of charge through an electric circuit past a given point of measurement

Joule's law
: the relationship between potential electrical power, voltage, and resistance in an electrical circuit, given by: $P_e = \text{IV}$

parallel
: the wiring of resistors or other components in an electrical circuit such that each component receives an equal voltage from the power source; often pictured in a ladder-shaped diagram, with each component on a rung of the ladder

Electromotive Force: Terminal Voltage

- Compare and contrast the voltage and the electromagnetic force of an electric power source.
- Describe what happens to the terminal voltage, current, and power delivered to a load as internal resistance of the voltage source increases (due to aging of batteries, for example).
- Explain why it is beneficial to use more than one voltage source connected in parallel.

When you forget to turn off your car lights, they slowly dim as the battery runs down. Why don’t they simply blink off when the battery’s energy is gone? Their gradual dimming implies that battery output voltage decreases as the battery is depleted.

Furthermore, if you connect an excessive number of 12-V lights in parallel to a car battery, they will be dim even when the battery is fresh and even if the wires to the lights have very low resistance. This implies that the battery’s output voltage is reduced by the overload.

The reason for the decrease in output voltage for depleted or overloaded batteries is that all voltage sources have two fundamental parts—a source of electrical energy and an **internal resistance**. Let us examine both.

Electromotive Force

You can think of many different types of voltage sources. Batteries themselves come in many varieties. There are many types of mechanical/electrical generators, driven by many different energy sources, ranging from nuclear to wind. Solar cells create voltages directly from light, while thermoelectric devices create voltage from temperature differences.

A few voltage sources are shown in [link]. All such devices create a **potential difference** and can supply current if connected to a resistance. On the small scale, the potential difference creates an electric field that exerts force on charges, causing current. We thus use the name **electromotive force**, abbreviated emf.

Emf is not a force at all; it is a special type of potential difference. To be precise, the electromotive force (emf) is the potential difference of a source when no current is flowing. Units of emf are volts.

A variety of voltage sources (clockwise from top left): the Brazos Wind Farm in Fluvanna, Texas (credit: Leaflet, Wikimedia Commons); the Krasnoyarsk Dam in Russia (credit: Alex Polezhaev); a solar farm (credit: U.S. Department of Energy); and a group of nickel metal hydride batteries (credit: Tiaa Monto). The voltage output of each depends on its construction and load, and equals emf only if there is no load.

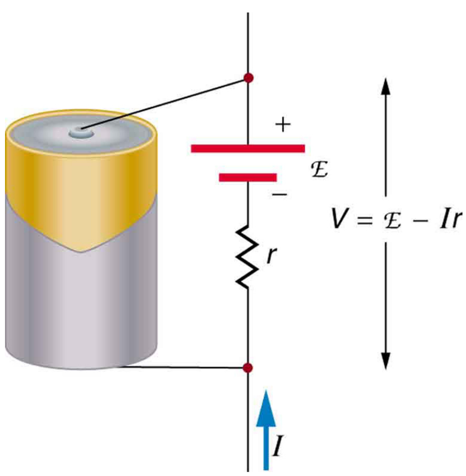
Electromotive force is directly related to the source of potential difference, such as the particular combination of chemicals in a battery. However, emf

differs from the voltage output of the device when current flows. The voltage across the terminals of a battery, for example, is less than the emf when the battery supplies current, and it declines further as the battery is depleted or loaded down. However, if the device's output voltage can be measured without drawing current, then output voltage will equal emf (even for a very depleted battery).

Internal Resistance

As noted before, a 12-V truck battery is physically larger, contains more charge and energy, and can deliver a larger current than a 12-V motorcycle battery. Both are lead-acid batteries with identical emf, but, because of its size, the truck battery has a smaller internal resistance r. Internal resistance is the inherent resistance to the flow of current within the source itself.

[link] is a schematic representation of the two fundamental parts of any voltage source. The emf (represented by a script E in the figure) and internal resistance r are in series. The smaller the internal resistance for a given emf, the more current and the more power the source can supply.



Any voltage source (in this case, a carbon-zinc dry cell) has an emf related to its source of

potential difference, and an internal resistance r related to its construction. (Note that the script E stands for emf.). Also shown are the output terminals across which the terminal voltage V is measured. Since $V = \text{emf} - \text{Ir}$, terminal voltage equals emf only if there is no current flowing.

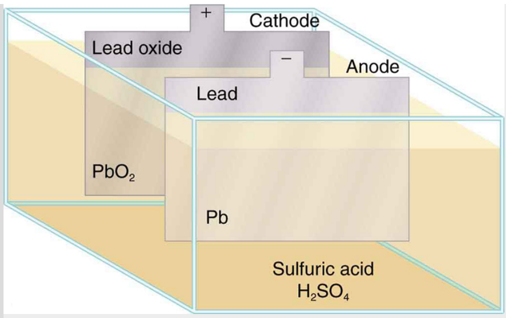
The internal resistance r can behave in complex ways. As noted, r increases as a battery is depleted. But internal resistance may also depend on the magnitude and direction of the current through a voltage source, its temperature, and even its history. The internal resistance of rechargeable nickel-cadmium cells, for example, depends on how many times and how deeply they have been depleted.

Note:

Things Great and Small: The Submicroscopic Origin of Battery Potential

Various types of batteries are available, with emfs determined by the combination of chemicals involved. We can view this as a molecular reaction (what much of chemistry is about) that separates charge.

The lead-acid battery used in cars and other vehicles is one of the most common types. A single cell (one of six) of this battery is seen in [link]. The cathode (positive) terminal of the cell is connected to a lead oxide plate, while the anode (negative) terminal is connected to a lead plate. Both plates are immersed in sulfuric acid, the electrolyte for the system.

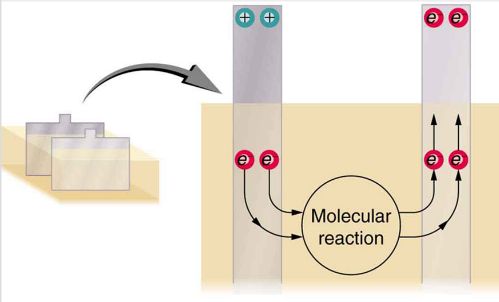


Artist’s conception of a lead-acid cell. Chemical reactions in a lead-acid cell separate charge, sending negative charge to the anode, which is connected to the lead plates. The lead oxide plates are connected to the positive or cathode terminal of the cell. Sulfuric acid conducts the charge as well as participating in the chemical reaction.

The details of the chemical reaction are left to the reader to pursue in a chemistry text, but their results at the molecular level help explain the potential created by the battery. [link] shows the result of a single chemical reaction. Two electrons are placed on the anode, making it negative, provided that the cathode supplied two electrons. This leaves the cathode positively charged, because it has lost two electrons. In short, a separation of charge has been driven by a chemical reaction.

Note that the reaction will not take place unless there is a complete circuit to allow two electrons to be supplied to the cathode. Under many circumstances, these electrons come from the anode, flow through a resistance, and return to the cathode. Note also that since the chemical

reactions involve substances with resistance, it is not possible to create the emf without an internal resistance.



Artist’s conception of two electrons being forced onto the anode of a cell and two electrons being removed from the cathode of the cell. The chemical reaction in a lead-acid battery places two electrons on the anode and removes two from the cathode. It requires a closed circuit to proceed, since the two electrons must be supplied to the cathode.

Why are the chemicals able to produce a unique potential difference? Quantum mechanical descriptions of molecules, which take into account the types of atoms and numbers of electrons in them, are able to predict the energy states they can have and the energies of reactions between them.

In the case of a lead-acid battery, an energy of 2 eV is given to each electron sent to the anode. Voltage is defined as the electrical potential

energy divided by charge: $V = \frac{P_{\text{E}}}{q}$. An electron volt is the energy given to a single electron by a voltage of 1 V. So the voltage here is 2 V, since 2 eV is given to each electron. It is the energy produced in each molecular reaction that produces the voltage. A different reaction produces a different energy and, hence, a different voltage.

Terminal Voltage

The voltage output of a device is measured across its terminals and, thus, is called its **terminal voltage** V. Terminal voltage is given by

Equation:

$$V = \text{emf} - \text{Ir},$$

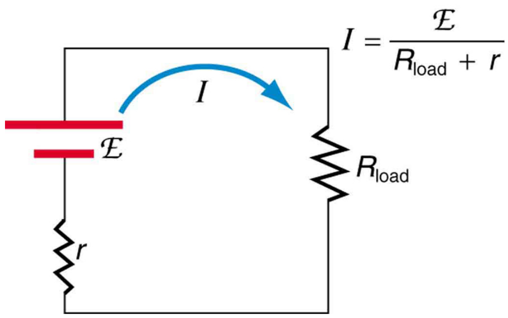
where r is the internal resistance and I is the current flowing at the time of the measurement.

I is positive if current flows away from the positive terminal, as shown in [link]. You can see that the larger the current, the smaller the terminal voltage. And it is likewise true that the larger the internal resistance, the smaller the terminal voltage.

Suppose a load resistance R_{load} is connected to a voltage source, as in [link]. Since the resistances are in series, the total resistance in the circuit is $R_{\text{load}} + r$. Thus the current is given by Ohm's law to be

Equation:

$$I = \frac{\text{emf}}{R_{\text{load}} + r}.$$



Schematic of a voltage source and its load R_{load}. Since the internal resistance r is in series with the load, it can significantly affect the terminal voltage and current delivered to the load. (Note that the script E stands for emf.)

We see from this expression that the smaller the internal resistance r, the greater the current the voltage source supplies to its load R_{load}. As batteries are depleted, r increases. If r becomes a significant fraction of the load resistance, then the current is significantly reduced, as the following example illustrates.

Example:
Calculating Terminal Voltage, Power Dissipation, Current, and Resistance: Terminal Voltage and Load
A certain battery has a 12.0-V emf and an internal resistance of $0.100\ \Omega$. (a) Calculate its terminal voltage when connected to a $10.0\text{-}\Omega$ load. (b) What is the terminal voltage when connected to a $0.500\text{-}\Omega$ load? (c) What power does the $0.500\text{-}\Omega$ load dissipate? (d) If the internal resistance grows

to 0.500 Ω, find the current, terminal voltage, and power dissipated by a 0.500-Ω load.

Strategy

The analysis above gave an expression for current when internal resistance is taken into account. Once the current is found, the terminal voltage can be calculated using the equation $V = \text{emf} - \text{Ir}$. Once current is found, the power dissipated by a resistor can also be found.

Solution for (a)

Entering the given values for the emf, load resistance, and internal resistance into the expression above yields

Equation:

$$I = \frac{\text{emf}}{R_{\text{load}} + r} = \frac{12.0\ \text{V}}{10.1\,\Omega} = 1.188\ \text{A}.$$

Enter the known values into the equation $V = \text{emf} - \text{Ir}$ to get the terminal voltage:

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \text{emf} - Ir = 12.0\ \text{V} - (1.188\ \text{A})(0.100\ \Omega) \\ &= 11.9\ \text{V}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (a)

The terminal voltage here is only slightly lower than the emf, implying that 10.0 Ω is a light load for this particular battery.

Solution for (b)

Similarly, with $R_{\text{load}} = 0.500\,\Omega$, the current is

Equation:

$$I = \frac{\text{emf}}{R_{\text{load}} + r} = \frac{12.0\ \text{V}}{0.600\,\Omega} = 20.0\ \text{A}.$$

The terminal voltage is now

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \text{emf} - Ir = 12.0\ \text{V} - (20.0\ \text{A})(0.100\ \Omega) \\ &= 10.0\ \text{V}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion for (b)

This terminal voltage exhibits a more significant reduction compared with emf, implying $0.500\,\Omega$ is a heavy load for this battery.

Solution for (c)

The power dissipated by the 0.500 - Ω load can be found using the formula $P = I^2R$. Entering the known values gives

Equation:

$$P_{\text{load}} = I^2R_{\text{load}} = (20.0\text{ A})^2(0.500\ \Omega) = 2.00 \times 10^2\text{ W}.$$

Discussion for (c)

Note that this power can also be obtained using the expressions $\frac{V^2}{R}$ or IV, where V is the terminal voltage (10.0 V in this case).

Solution for (d)

Here the internal resistance has increased, perhaps due to the depletion of the battery, to the point where it is as great as the load resistance. As before, we first find the current by entering the known values into the expression, yielding

Equation:

$$I = \frac{\text{emf}}{R_{\text{load}} + r} = \frac{12.0\text{ V}}{1.00\ \Omega} = 12.0\text{ A}.$$

Now the terminal voltage is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \text{emf} - Ir = 12.0\text{ V} - (12.0\text{ A})(0.500\ \Omega) \\ &= 6.00\text{ V}, \end{aligned}$$

and the power dissipated by the load is

Equation:

$$P_{\text{load}} = I^2R_{\text{load}} = (12.0\text{ A})^2(0.500\ \Omega) = 72.0\text{ W}.$$

Discussion for (d)

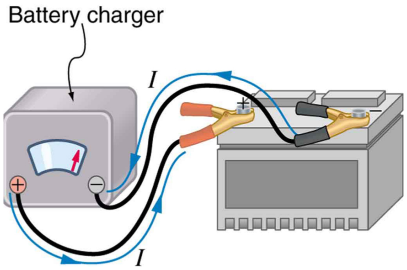
We see that the increased internal resistance has significantly decreased terminal voltage, current, and power delivered to a load.

Battery testers, such as those in [link], use small load resistors to intentionally draw current to determine whether the terminal voltage drops below an acceptable level. They really test the internal resistance of the battery. If internal resistance is high, the battery is weak, as evidenced by its low terminal voltage.

These two battery testers measure terminal voltage under a load to determine the condition of a battery. The large device is being used by a U.S. Navy electronics technician to test large batteries aboard the aircraft carrier USS *Nimitz* and has a small resistance that can dissipate large amounts of power. (credit: U.S. Navy photo by Photographer’s Mate Airman Jason A. Johnston) The small device is used on small batteries and has a digital display to indicate the acceptability of their terminal voltage. (credit: Keith Williamson)

Some batteries can be recharged by passing a current through them in the direction opposite to the current they supply to a resistance. This is done routinely in cars and batteries for small electrical appliances and electronic devices, and is represented pictorially in [link]. The voltage output of the battery charger must be greater than the emf of the battery to reverse current

through it. This will cause the terminal voltage of the battery to be greater than the emf, since $V = \text{emf} - \text{Ir}$, and I is now negative.



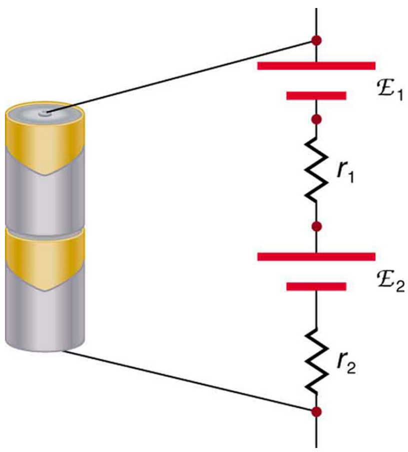
A car battery charger reverses the normal direction of current through a battery, reversing its chemical reaction and replenishing its chemical potential.

Multiple Voltage Sources

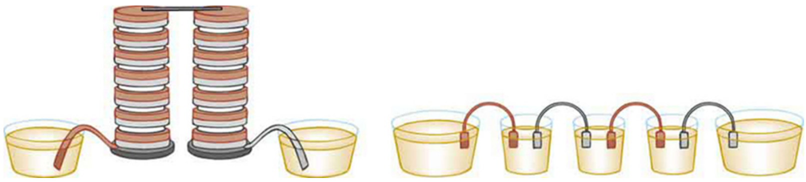
There are two voltage sources when a battery charger is used. Voltage sources connected in series are relatively simple. When voltage sources are in series, their internal resistances add and their emfs add algebraically. (See [link].) Series connections of voltage sources are common—for example, in flashlights, toys, and other appliances. Usually, the cells are in series in order to produce a larger total emf.

But if the cells oppose one another, such as when one is put into an appliance backward, the total emf is less, since it is the algebraic sum of the individual emfs.

A battery is a multiple connection of voltaic cells, as shown in [link]. The disadvantage of series connections of cells is that their internal resistances add. One of the authors once owned a 1957 MGA that had two 6-V batteries in series, rather than a single 12-V battery. This arrangement produced a large internal resistance that caused him many problems in starting the engine.

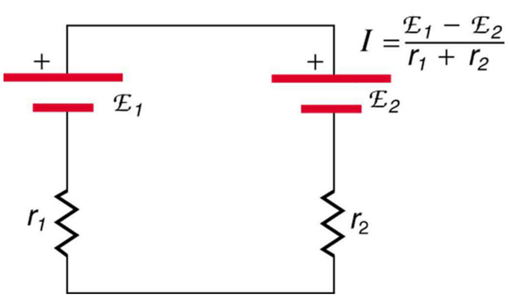


A series connection of two voltage sources. The emfs (each labeled with a script E) and internal resistances add, giving a total emf of $\text{emf}_1 + \text{emf}_2$ and a total internal resistance of $r_1 + r_2$.



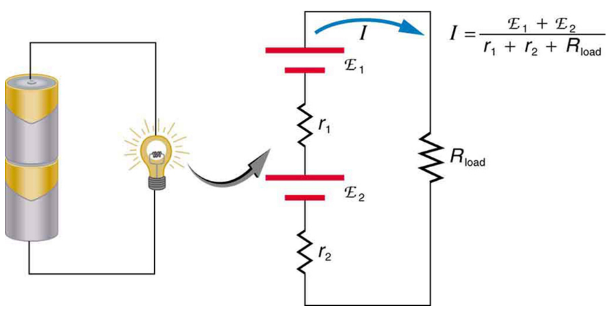
Batteries are multiple connections of individual cells, as shown in this modern rendition of an old print. Single cells, such as AA or C cells, are commonly called batteries, although this is technically incorrect.

If the *series* connection of two voltage sources is made into a complete circuit with the emfs in opposition, then a current of magnitude $I=\frac{(\text{emf}_1-\text{emf}_2)}{r_1+r_2}$ flows. See [link], for example, which shows a circuit exactly analogous to the battery charger discussed above. If two voltage sources in series with emfs in the same sense are connected to a load R_{load}, as in [link], then $I=\frac{(\text{emf}_1+\text{emf}_2)}{r_1+r_2+R_{\text{load}}}$ flows.



These two voltage sources are connected in series with their emfs in opposition. Current flows in the direction of the greater emf and is limited

to $I = \frac{(\text{emf}_1 - \text{emf}_2)}{r_1 + r_2}$ by the sum of the internal resistances. (Note that each emf is represented by script E in the figure.) A battery charger connected to a battery is an example of such a connection. The charger must have a larger emf than the battery to reverse current through it.

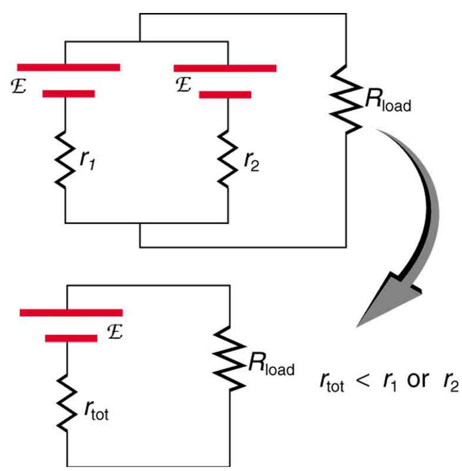


This schematic represents a flashlight with two cells (voltage sources) and a single bulb (load resistance) in series. The current that flows is $I = \frac{(\text{emf}_1 + \text{emf}_2)}{r_1 + r_2 + R_{\text{load}}}$. (Note that each emf is represented by script E in the figure.)

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Flashlight Batteries
Find a flashlight that uses several batteries and find new and old batteries. Based on the discussions in this module, predict the brightness of the flashlight when different combinations of batteries are used. Do your predictions match what you observe? Now place new batteries in the flashlight and leave the flashlight switched on for several hours. Is the flashlight still quite bright? Do the same with the old batteries. Is the flashlight as bright when left on for the same length of time with old and new batteries? What does this say for the case when you are limited in the number of available new batteries?

[link] shows two voltage sources with identical emfs in parallel and connected to a load resistance. In this simple case, the total emf is the same as the individual emfs. But the total internal resistance is reduced, since the internal resistances are in parallel. The parallel connection thus can produce a larger current.

Here, $I = \frac{\text{emf}}{(r_{\text{tot}} + R_{\text{load}})}$ flows through the load, and r_{tot} is less than those of the individual batteries. For example, some diesel-powered cars use two 12-V batteries in parallel; they produce a total emf of 12 V but can deliver the larger current needed to start a diesel engine.



Two voltage sources with identical emfs (each labeled by script E) connected in parallel produce the same emf but have a smaller total internal resistance than the individual sources. Parallel combinations are often used to deliver more current. Here $I = \frac{\text{emf}}{(r_{\text{tot}} + R_{\text{load}})}$ flows through the load.

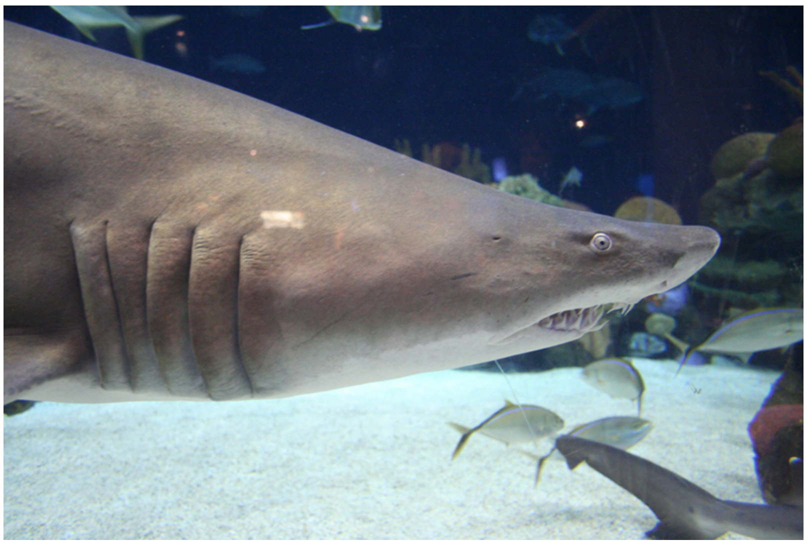
Animals as Electrical Detectors

A number of animals both produce and detect electrical signals. Fish, sharks, platypuses, and echidnas (spiny anteaters) all detect electric fields generated by nerve activity in prey. Electric eels produce their own emf through biological cells (electric organs) called electroplaques, which are arranged in both series and parallel as a set of batteries.

Electroplaques are flat, disk-like cells; those of the electric eel have a voltage of 0.15 V across each one. These cells are usually located toward the head or tail of the animal, although in the case of the electric eel, they are found along the entire body. The electroplaques in the South American eel are arranged in 140 rows, with each row stretching horizontally along the body and containing 5,000 electroplaques. This can yield an emf of approximately 600 V, and a current of 1 A—deadly.

The mechanism for detection of external electric fields is similar to that for producing nerve signals in the cell through depolarization and

repolarization—the movement of ions across the cell membrane. Within the fish, weak electric fields in the water produce a current in a gel-filled canal that runs from the skin to sensing cells, producing a nerve signal. The Australian platypus, one of the very few mammals that lay eggs, can detect fields of 30 $\frac{\text{mV}}{\text{m}}$, while sharks have been found to be able to sense a field in their snouts as small as 100 $\frac{\text{mV}}{\text{m}}$ ([link]). Electric eels use their own electric fields produced by the electroplaques to stun their prey or enemies.



Sand tiger sharks (*Carcharias taurus*), like this one at the Minnesota Zoo, use electroreceptors in their snouts to locate prey. (credit: Jim Winstead, Flickr)

Solar Cell Arrays

Another example dealing with multiple voltage sources is that of combinations of solar cells—wired in both series and parallel combinations to yield a desired voltage and current. Photovoltaic generation (PV), the conversion of sunlight directly into electricity, is based upon the

photoelectric effect, in which photons hitting the surface of a solar cell create an electric current in the cell.

Most solar cells are made from pure silicon—either as single-crystal silicon, or as a thin film of silicon deposited upon a glass or metal backing. Most single cells have a voltage output of about 0.5 V, while the current output is a function of the amount of sunlight upon the cell (the incident solar radiation—the insolation). Under bright noon sunlight, a current of about $100\ \text{mA/cm}^2$ of cell surface area is produced by typical single-crystal cells.

Individual solar cells are connected electrically in modules to meet electrical-energy needs. They can be wired together in series or in parallel—connected like the batteries discussed earlier. A solar-cell array or module usually consists of between 36 and 72 cells, with a power output of 50 W to 140 W.

The output of the solar cells is direct current. For most uses in a home, AC is required, so a device called an inverter must be used to convert the DC to AC. Any extra output can then be passed on to the outside electrical grid for sale to the utility.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Virtual Solar Cells
One can assemble a “virtual” solar cell array by using playing cards, or business or index cards, to represent a solar cell. Combinations of these cards in series and/or parallel can model the required array output. Assume each card has an output of 0.5 V and a current (under bright light) of 2 A. Using your cards, how would you arrange them to produce an output of 6 A at 3 V (18 W)?
Suppose you were told that you needed only 18 W (but no required voltage). Would you need more cards to make this arrangement?

Section Summary

- All voltage sources have two fundamental parts—a source of electrical energy that has a characteristic electromotive force (emf), and an internal resistance r.
- The emf is the potential difference of a source when no current is flowing.
- The numerical value of the emf depends on the source of potential difference.
- The internal resistance r of a voltage source affects the output voltage when a current flows.
- The voltage output of a device is called its terminal voltage V and is given by $V = \text{emf} - \text{Ir}$, where I is the electric current and is positive when flowing away from the positive terminal of the voltage source.
- When multiple voltage sources are in series, their internal resistances add and their emfs add algebraically.
- Solar cells can be wired in series or parallel to provide increased voltage or current, respectively.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

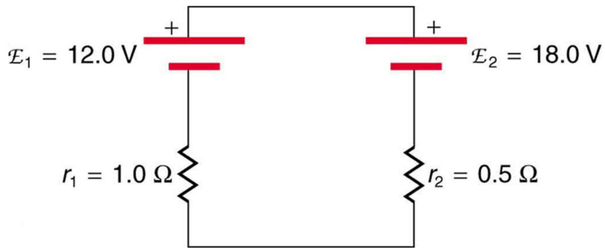
Problem:

Is every emf a potential difference? Is every potential difference an emf? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain which battery is doing the charging and which is being charged in [link].



Exercise:

Problem:

Given a battery, an assortment of resistors, and a variety of voltage and current measuring devices, describe how you would determine the internal resistance of the battery.

Exercise:

Problem:

Two different 12-V automobile batteries on a store shelf are rated at 600 and 850 "cold cranking amps." Which has the smallest internal resistance?

Exercise:

Problem:

What are the advantages and disadvantages of connecting batteries in series? In parallel?

Exercise:

Problem:

Semitractor trucks use four large 12-V batteries. The starter system requires 24 V, while normal operation of the truck's other electrical components utilizes 12 V. How could the four batteries be connected to produce 24 V? To produce 12 V? Why is 24 V better than 12 V for starting the truck's engine (a very heavy load)?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Standard automobile batteries have six lead-acid cells in series, creating a total emf of 12.0 V. What is the emf of an individual lead-acid cell?

Solution:

2.00 V

Exercise:

Problem:

Carbon-zinc dry cells (sometimes referred to as non-alkaline cells) have an emf of 1.54 V, and they are produced as single cells or in various combinations to form other voltages. (a) How many 1.54-V cells are needed to make the common 9-V battery used in many small electronic devices? (b) What is the actual emf of the approximately 9-V battery? (c) Discuss how internal resistance in the series connection of cells will affect the terminal voltage of this approximately 9-V battery.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the output voltage of a 3.0000-V lithium cell in a digital wristwatch that draws 0.300 mA, if the cell’s internal resistance is $2.00\ \Omega$?

Solution:

2.9994 V

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the terminal voltage of a large 1.54-V carbon-zinc dry cell used in a physics lab to supply 2.00 A to a circuit, if the cell's internal resistance is $0.100\ \Omega$? (b) How much electrical power does the cell produce? (c) What power goes to its load?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the internal resistance of an automobile battery that has an emf of 12.0 V and a terminal voltage of 15.0 V while a current of 8.00 A is charging it?

Solution:

$0.375\ \Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Find the terminal voltage of a 12.0-V motorcycle battery having a $0.600\text{-}\Omega$ internal resistance, if it is being charged by a current of 10.0 A. (b) What is the output voltage of the battery charger?

Exercise:

Problem:

A car battery with a 12-V emf and an internal resistance of $0.050\ \Omega$ is being charged with a current of 60 A. Note that in this process the battery is being charged. (a) What is the potential difference across its terminals? (b) At what rate is thermal energy being dissipated in the battery? (c) At what rate is electric energy being converted to chemical energy? (d) What are the answers to (a) and (b) when the battery is used to supply 60 A to the starter motor?

Exercise:

Problem:

The hot resistance of a flashlight bulb is $2.30\,\Omega$, and it is run by a 1.58-V alkaline cell having a 0.100-Ω internal resistance. (a) What current flows? (b) Calculate the power supplied to the bulb using $I^2 R_{\text{bulb}}$. (c) Is this power the same as calculated using $\frac{V^2}{R_{\text{bulb}}}$?

Solution:

(a) 0.658 A

(b) 0.997 W

(c) 0.997 W; yes

Exercise:

Problem:

The label on a portable radio recommends the use of rechargeable nickel-cadmium cells (nicads), although they have a 1.25-V emf while alkaline cells have a 1.58-V emf. The radio has a 3.20-Ω resistance. (a) Draw a circuit diagram of the radio and its batteries. Now, calculate the power delivered to the radio. (b) When using Nicad cells each having an internal resistance of $0.0400\ \Omega$. (c) When using alkaline cells each having an internal resistance of $0.200\ \Omega$. (d) Does this difference seem significant, considering that the radio's effective resistance is lowered when its volume is turned up?

Exercise:

Problem:

An automobile starter motor has an equivalent resistance of $0.0500\,\Omega$ and is supplied by a 12.0-V battery with a $0.0100\text{-}\Omega$ internal resistance. (a) What is the current to the motor? (b) What voltage is applied to it? (c) What power is supplied to the motor? (d) Repeat these calculations for when the battery connections are corroded and add $0.0900\,\Omega$ to the circuit. (Significant problems are caused by even small amounts of unwanted resistance in low-voltage, high-current applications.)

Solution:

(a) 200 A

(b) 10.0 V

(c) 2.00 kW

(d) $0.1000\ \Omega$; 80.0 A, 4.0 V, 320 W

Exercise:

Problem:

A child's electronic toy is supplied by three 1.58-V alkaline cells having internal resistances of $0.0200\,\Omega$ in series with a 1.53-V carbon-zinc dry cell having a $0.100\text{-}\Omega$ internal resistance. The load resistance is $10.0\,\Omega$. (a) Draw a circuit diagram of the toy and its batteries. (b) What current flows? (c) How much power is supplied to the load? (d) What is the internal resistance of the dry cell if it goes bad, resulting in only 0.500 W being supplied to the load?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the internal resistance of a voltage source if its terminal voltage drops by 2.00 V when the current supplied increases by 5.00 A? (b) Can the emf of the voltage source be found with the information supplied?

Solution:

(a) $0.400\ \Omega$

(b) No, there is only one independent equation, so only r can be found.

Exercise:

Problem:

A person with body resistance between his hands of $10.0\ \text{k}\Omega$ accidentally grasps the terminals of a 20.0-kV power supply. (Do NOT do this!) (a) Draw a circuit diagram to represent the situation. (b) If the internal resistance of the power supply is $2000\ \Omega$, what is the current through his body? (c) What is the power dissipated in his body? (d) If the power supply is to be made safe by increasing its internal resistance, what should the internal resistance be for the maximum current in this situation to be 1.00 mA or less? (e) Will this modification compromise the effectiveness of the power supply for driving low-resistance devices? Explain your reasoning.

Exercise:

Problem:

Electric fish generate current with biological cells called electroplaques, which are physiological emf devices. The electroplaques in the South American eel are arranged in 140 rows, each row stretching horizontally along the body and each containing 5000 electroplaques. Each electroplaque has an emf of 0.15 V and internal resistance of $0.25\ \Omega$. If the water surrounding the fish has resistance of $800\ \Omega$, how much current can the eel produce in water from near its head to near its tail?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A 12.0-V emf automobile battery has a terminal voltage of 16.0 V when being charged by a current of 10.0 A. (a) What is the battery's internal resistance? (b) What power is dissipated inside the battery? (c) At what rate (in $^\circ\text{C/min}$) will its temperature increase if its mass is 20.0 kg and it has a specific heat of $0.300\ \text{kcal/kg}\cdot{}^\circ\text{C}$, assuming no heat escapes?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A 1.58-V alkaline cell with a $0.200\text{-}\Omega$ internal resistance is supplying 8.50 A to a load. (a) What is its terminal voltage? (b) What is the value of the load resistance? (c) What is unreasonable about these results? (d) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) –0.120 V

(b) $-1.41\times10^{-2}\ \Omega$

(c) Negative terminal voltage; negative load resistance.

(d) The assumption that such a cell could provide 8.50 A is inconsistent with its internal resistance.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) What is the internal resistance of a 1.54-V dry cell that supplies 1.00 W of power to a $15.0\text{-}\Omega$ bulb? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Glossary

electromotive force (emf)
: the potential difference of a source of electricity when no current is flowing; measured in volts

internal resistance
: the amount of resistance within the voltage source

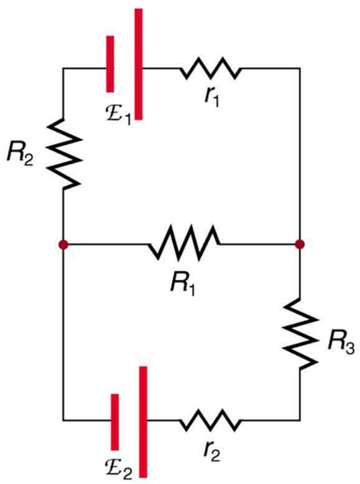
potential difference
: the difference in electric potential between two points in an electric circuit, measured in volts

terminal voltage
: the voltage measured across the terminals of a source of potential difference

Kirchhoff’s Rules

- Analyze a complex circuit using Kirchhoff’s rules, using the conventions for determining the correct signs of various terms.

Many complex circuits, such as the one in [link], cannot be analyzed with the series-parallel techniques developed in Resistors in Series and Parallel and Electromotive Force: Terminal Voltage. There are, however, two circuit analysis rules that can be used to analyze any circuit, simple or complex. These rules are special cases of the laws of conservation of charge and conservation of energy. The rules are known as **Kirchhoff’s rules**, after their inventor Gustav Kirchhoff (1824–1887).



This circuit cannot be reduced to a combination of series and parallel connections. Kirchhoff’s rules, special applications of the laws of conservation of charge and energy, can be

used to analyze it. (Note: The script E in the figure represents electromotive force, emf.)

Note:
Kirchhoff’s Rules

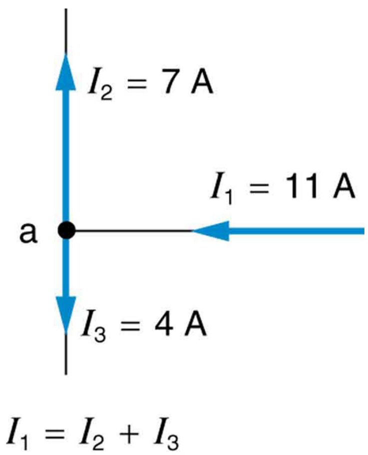
- Kirchhoff’s first rule—the junction rule. The sum of all currents entering a junction must equal the sum of all currents leaving the junction.
- Kirchhoff’s second rule—the loop rule. The algebraic sum of changes in potential around any closed circuit path (loop) must be zero.

Explanations of the two rules will now be given, followed by problem-solving hints for applying Kirchhoff’s rules, and a worked example that uses them.

Kirchhoff’s First Rule

Kirchhoff’s first rule (the **junction rule**) is an application of the conservation of charge to a junction; it is illustrated in [link]. Current is the flow of charge, and charge is conserved; thus, whatever charge flows into the junction must flow out. Kirchhoff’s first rule requires that $I_1 = I_2 + I_3$ (see figure). Equations like this can and will be used to analyze circuits and to solve circuit problems.

Note:
Making Connections: Conservation Laws
Kirchhoff’s rules for circuit analysis are applications of **conservation laws** to circuits. The first rule is the application of conservation of charge, while the second rule is the application of conservation of energy. Conservation laws, even used in a specific application, such as circuit analysis, are so basic as to form the foundation of that application.



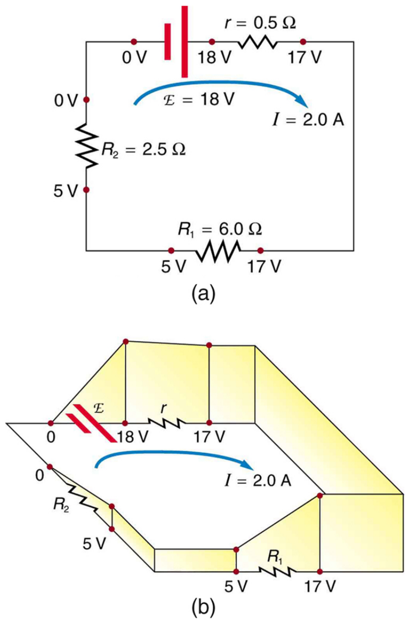
The junction rule. The diagram shows an example of Kirchhoff’s first rule where the sum of the currents into a junction equals the sum of the currents out of a junction. In this case, the current going into the junction splits and comes out as

two currents, so that $I_1 = I_2 + I_3$. Here I_1 must be 11 A, since I_2 is 7 A and I_3 is 4 A.

Kirchhoff's Second Rule

Kirchhoff's second rule (the **loop rule**) is an application of conservation of energy. The loop rule is stated in terms of potential, V, rather than potential energy, but the two are related since $\mathrm{PE_{elec}} = \mathrm{qV}$. Recall that **emf** is the potential difference of a source when no current is flowing. In a closed loop, whatever energy is supplied by emf must be transferred into other forms by devices in the loop, since there are no other ways in which energy can be transferred into or out of the circuit. [link] illustrates the changes in potential in a simple series circuit loop.

Kirchhoff's second rule requires $\mathrm{emf} - \mathrm{Ir} - \mathrm{IR_1} - \mathrm{IR_2} = 0$. Rearranged, this is $\mathrm{emf} = \mathrm{Ir} + IR_1 + IR_2$, which means the emf equals the sum of the IR (voltage) drops in the loop.



The loop rule. An example of Kirchhoff's second rule where the sum of the changes in potential around a closed loop must be zero. (a) In this standard schematic of a simple series circuit, the emf supplies 18 V, which is reduced to zero by the resistances, with 1 V across the internal resistance, and 12 V and 5 V across the two load resistances, for a total of 18 V. (b) This perspective view represents the

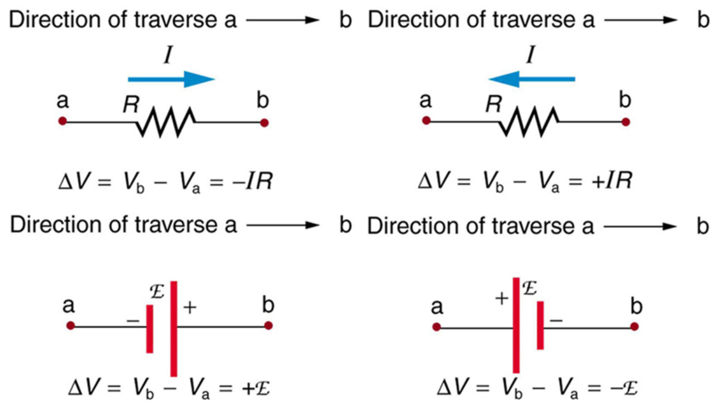
potential as something like a roller coaster, where charge is raised in potential by the emf and lowered by the resistances. (Note that the script E stands for emf.)

Applying Kirchhoff’s Rules

By applying Kirchhoff’s rules, we generate equations that allow us to find the unknowns in circuits. The unknowns may be currents, emfs, or resistances. Each time a rule is applied, an equation is produced. If there are as many independent equations as unknowns, then the problem can be solved. There are two decisions you must make when applying Kirchhoff’s rules. These decisions determine the signs of various quantities in the equations you obtain from applying the rules.

1. When applying Kirchhoff’s first rule, the junction rule, you must label the current in each branch and decide in what direction it is going. For example, in [link], [link], and [link], currents are labeled I_1, I_2, I_3, and I, and arrows indicate their directions. There is no risk here, for if you choose the wrong direction, the current will be of the correct magnitude but negative.
2. When applying Kirchhoff’s second rule, the loop rule, you must identify a closed loop and decide in which direction to go around it, clockwise or counterclockwise. For example, in [link] the loop was traversed in the same direction as the current (clockwise). Again, there is no risk; going around the circuit in the opposite direction reverses the sign of every term in the equation, which is like multiplying both sides of the equation by –1.

[link] and the following points will help you get the plus or minus signs right when applying the loop rule. Note that the resistors and emfs are traversed by going from a to b. In many circuits, it will be necessary to construct more than one loop. In traversing each loop, one needs to be consistent for the sign of the change in potential. (See [link].)



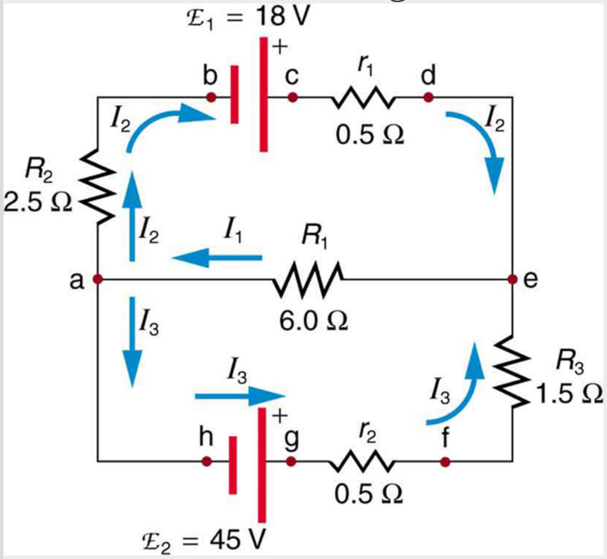
Each of these resistors and voltage sources is traversed from a to b. The potential changes are shown beneath each element and are explained in the text. (Note that the script E stands for emf.)

- When a resistor is traversed in the same direction as the current, the change in potential is $-IR$. (See [link].)
- When a resistor is traversed in the direction opposite to the current, the change in potential is $+IR$. (See [link].)
- When an emf is traversed from – to + (the same direction it moves positive charge), the change in potential is +emf. (See [link].)
- When an emf is traversed from + to – (opposite to the direction it moves positive charge), the change in potential is $-$emf. (See [link].)

Example:

Calculating Current: Using Kirchhoff’s Rules

Find the currents flowing in the circuit in [link].



This circuit is similar to that in [link], but the resistances and emfs are specified. (Each emf is denoted by script E.) The currents in each branch are labeled and assumed to move in the directions shown. This example uses Kirchhoff’s rules to find the currents.

Strategy

This circuit is sufficiently complex that the currents cannot be found using Ohm’s law and the series-parallel techniques—it is necessary to use Kirchhoff’s rules. Currents have been labeled I_1, I_2, and I_3 in the figure and assumptions have been made about their directions. Locations on the diagram have been labeled with letters a through h. In the solution we will apply the junction and loop rules, seeking three independent equations to allow us to solve for the three unknown currents.

Solution

We begin by applying Kirchhoff's first or junction rule at point a. This gives

Equation:

$$I_1 = I_2 + I_3,$$

since I_1 flows into the junction, while I_2 and I_3 flow out. Applying the junction rule at e produces exactly the same equation, so that no new information is obtained. This is a single equation with three unknowns—three independent equations are needed, and so the loop rule must be applied.

Now we consider the loop abcdea. Going from a to b, we traverse R_2 in the same (assumed) direction of the current I_2, and so the change in potential is $-I_2R_2$. Then going from b to c, we go from – to +, so that the change in potential is $+\text{emf}_1$. Traversing the internal resistance r_1 from c to d gives $-I_2r_1$. Completing the loop by going from d to a again traverses a resistor in the same direction as its current, giving a change in potential of $-I_1R_1$.

The loop rule states that the changes in potential sum to zero. Thus,

Equation:

$$-I_2R_2 + \text{emf}_1 - I_2r_1 - I_1R_1 = -I_2(R_2 + r_1) + \text{emf}_1 - I_1R_1 = 0.$$

Substituting values from the circuit diagram for the resistances and emf, and canceling the ampere unit gives

Equation:

$$-3I_2 + 18 - 6I_1 = 0.$$

Now applying the loop rule to aefgha (we could have chosen abcdefgha as well) similarly gives

Equation:

$$+ I_1R_1 + I_3R_3 + I_3r_2 - \text{emf}_2 = +I_1R_1 + I_3(R_3 + r_2) - \text{emf}_2 = 0.$$

Note that the signs are reversed compared with the other loop, because elements are traversed in the opposite direction. With values entered, this becomes

Equation:

$$+6I_1 + 2I_3 - 45 = 0.$$

These three equations are sufficient to solve for the three unknown currents. First, solve the second equation for I_2:

Equation:

$$I_2 = 6 - 2I_1.$$

Now solve the third equation for I_3:

Equation:

$$I_3 = 22.5 - 3I_1.$$

Substituting these two new equations into the first one allows us to find a value for I_1:

Equation:

$$I_1 = I_2 + I_3 = (6 - 2I_1) + (22.5 - 3I_1) = 28.5 - 5I_1.$$

Combining terms gives

Equation:

$$6I_1 = 28.5, \text{ and}$$

Equation:

$$I_1 = 4.75 \text{ A}.$$

Substituting this value for I_1 back into the fourth equation gives

Equation:

$$I_2 = 6 - 2I_1 = 6 - 9.50$$

Equation:

$$I_2 = -3.50 \text{ A}.$$

The minus sign means I_2 flows in the direction opposite to that assumed in [link].

Finally, substituting the value for I_1 into the fifth equation gives

Equation:

$$I_3 = 22.5 - 3I_1 = 22.5 - 14.25$$

Equation:

$$I_3 = 8.25 \text{ A.}$$

Discussion

Just as a check, we note that indeed $I_1 = I_2 + I_3$. The results could also have been checked by entering all of the values into the equation for the abcdefgha loop.

Note:

Problem-Solving Strategies for Kirchhoff's Rules

1. Make certain there is a clear circuit diagram on which you can label all known and unknown resistances, emfs, and currents. If a current is unknown, you must assign it a direction. This is necessary for determining the signs of potential changes. If you assign the direction incorrectly, the current will be found to have a negative value—no harm done.
2. Apply the junction rule to any junction in the circuit. Each time the junction rule is applied, you should get an equation with a current that does not appear in a previous application—if not, then the equation is redundant.
3. Apply the loop rule to as many loops as needed to solve for the unknowns in the problem. (There must be as many independent equations as unknowns.) To apply the loop rule, you must choose a direction to go around the loop. Then carefully and consistently determine the signs of the potential changes for each element using the four bulleted points discussed above in conjunction with [link].
4. Solve the simultaneous equations for the unknowns. This may involve many algebraic steps, requiring careful checking and rechecking.
5. Check to see whether the answers are reasonable and consistent. The numbers should be of the correct order of magnitude, neither

exceedingly large nor vanishingly small. The signs should be reasonable—for example, no resistance should be negative. Check to see that the values obtained satisfy the various equations obtained from applying the rules. The currents should satisfy the junction rule, for example.

The material in this section is correct in theory. We should be able to verify it by making measurements of current and voltage. In fact, some of the devices used to make such measurements are straightforward applications of the principles covered so far and are explored in the next modules. As we shall see, a very basic, even profound, fact results—making a measurement alters the quantity being measured.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Can Kirchhoff’s rules be applied to simple series and parallel circuits or are they restricted for use in more complicated circuits that are not combinations of series and parallel?

Solution:

Kirchhoff's rules can be applied to any circuit since they are applications to circuits of two conservation laws. Conservation laws are the most broadly applicable principles in physics. It is usually mathematically simpler to use the rules for series and parallel in simpler circuits so we emphasize Kirchhoff’s rules for use in more complicated situations. But the rules for series and parallel can be derived from Kirchhoff’s rules. Moreover, Kirchhoff’s rules can be expanded to devices other than resistors and emfs, such as capacitors, and are one of the basic analysis devices in circuit analysis.

Section Summary

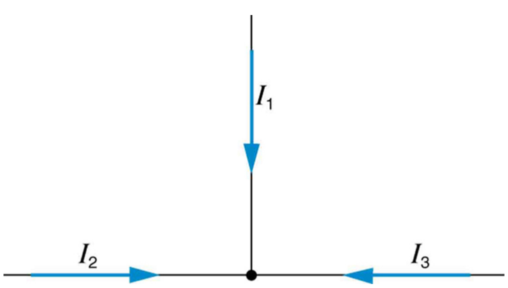
- Kirchhoff’s rules can be used to analyze any circuit, simple or complex.
- Kirchhoff’s first rule—the junction rule: The sum of all currents entering a junction must equal the sum of all currents leaving the junction.
- Kirchhoff’s second rule—the loop rule: The algebraic sum of changes in potential around any closed circuit path (loop) must be zero.
- The two rules are based, respectively, on the laws of conservation of charge and energy.
- When calculating potential and current using Kirchhoff’s rules, a set of conventions must be followed for determining the correct signs of various terms.
- The simpler series and parallel rules are special cases of Kirchhoff’s rules.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

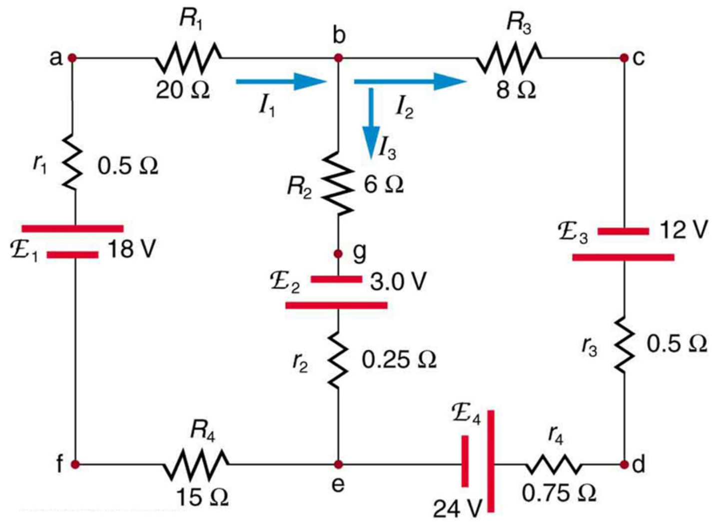
Can all of the currents going into the junction in [link] be positive? Explain.



Exercise:

Problem:

Apply the junction rule to junction b in [link]. Is any new information gained by applying the junction rule at e? (In the figure, each emf is represented by script E.)



Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the potential difference going from point a to point b in [link]? (b) What is the potential difference going from c to b? (c) From e to g? (d) From e to d?

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the loop rule to loop afedcba in [link].

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the loop rule to loops abgefa and cbgedc in [link].

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the loop rule to loop abcdefgha in [link].

Solution:
Equation:

$$-I_2R_2 + \text{emf}_1 - \text{I}_2r_1 + \text{I}_3R_3 + \text{I}_3r_2 - \text{emf}_2 = 0$$

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the loop rule to loop aedcba in [link].

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify the second equation in [link] by substituting the values found for the currents I_1 and I_2.

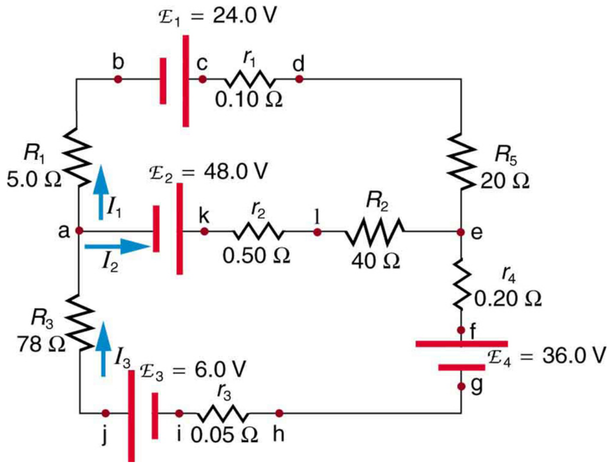
Exercise:

Problem:

Verify the third equation in [link] by substituting the values found for the currents I_1 and I_3.

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the junction rule at point a in [link].



Solution:
Equation:

$$I_3 = I_1 + I_2$$

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the loop rule to loop abcdefghija in [link].

Exercise:

Problem: Apply the loop rule to loop akledcba in [link].

Solution:
Equation:

$$\text{emf}_2 - I_2 r_2 - I_2 R_2 + I_1 R_5 + I_1 r_1 - \text{emf}_1 + I_1 R_1 = 0$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the currents flowing in the circuit in [link]. Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategies for Series and Parallel Resistors.

Exercise:

Problem:

Solve [link], but use loop abcdefgha instead of loop akledcba. Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategies for Series and Parallel Resistors.

Solution:

(a) $\mathrm{I}_1 = 4.75\ \mathrm{A}$

(b) $\mathrm{I}_2 = -3.5\ \mathrm{A}$

(c) $\mathrm{I}_3 = 8.25\ \mathrm{A}$

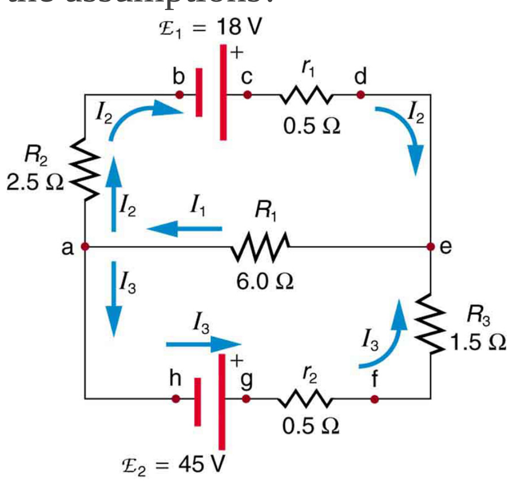
Exercise:

Problem: Find the currents flowing in the circuit in [link].

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

Consider the circuit in [link], and suppose that the emfs are unknown and the currents are given to be $I_1 = 5.00\ \mathrm{A}$, $I_2 = 3.0\ \mathrm{A}$, and $I_3 = -2.00\ \mathrm{A}$. (a) Could you find the emfs? (b) What is wrong with the assumptions?



Solution:

(a) No, you would get inconsistent equations to solve.

(b) $I_1 \neq I_2 + I_3$. The assumed currents violate the junction rule.

Glossary

Kirchhoff's rules
: a set of two rules, based on conservation of charge and energy, governing current and changes in potential in an electric circuit

junction rule
: Kirchhoff's first rule, which applies the conservation of charge to a junction; current is the flow of charge; thus, whatever charge flows into the junction must flow out; the rule can be stated $I_1 = I_2 + I_3$

loop rule
: Kirchhoff's second rule, which states that in a closed loop, whatever energy is supplied by emf must be transferred into other forms by devices in the loop, since there are no other ways in which energy can be transferred into or out of the circuit. Thus, the emf equals the sum of the IR (voltage) drops in the loop and can be stated: $\text{emf} = Ir + IR_1 + IR_2$

conservation laws
: require that energy and charge be conserved in a system

DC Voltmeters and Ammeters

- Explain why a voltmeter must be connected in parallel with the circuit.
- Draw a diagram showing an ammeter correctly connected in a circuit.
- Describe how a galvanometer can be used as either a voltmeter or an ammeter.
- Find the resistance that must be placed in series with a galvanometer to allow it to be used as a voltmeter with a given reading.
- Explain why measuring the voltage or current in a circuit can never be exact.

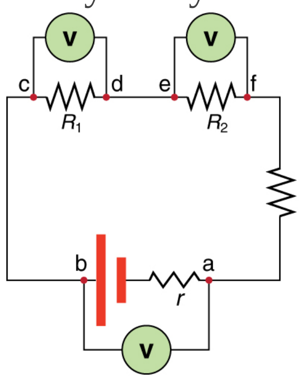
Voltmeters measure voltage, whereas **ammeters** measure current. Some of the meters in automobile dashboards, digital cameras, cell phones, and tuner-amplifiers are voltmeters or ammeters. (See [link].) The internal construction of the simplest of these meters and how they are connected to the system they monitor give further insight into applications of series and parallel connections.

The fuel and temperature gauges (far right and far left, respectively) in this 1996 Volkswagen are voltmeters that register the voltage output of “sender” units, which are hopefully proportional to the amount of gasoline in the tank and the engine

temperature. (credit: Christian Giersing)

Voltmeters are connected in parallel with whatever device's voltage is to be measured. A parallel connection is used because objects in parallel experience the same potential difference. (See [link], where the voltmeter is represented by the symbol V.)

Ammeters are connected in series with whatever device's current is to be measured. A series connection is used because objects in series have the same current passing through them. (See [link], where the ammeter is represented by the symbol A.)

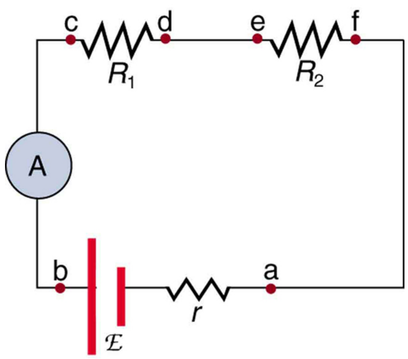


(a)

(b)

(a) To measure potential differences in this series circuit, the voltmeter (V) is placed in parallel with the

voltage source or either of the resistors. Note that terminal voltage is measured between points a and b. It is not possible to connect the voltmeter directly across the emf without including its internal resistance, r. (b) A digital voltmeter in use. (credit: Messtechniker, Wikimedia Commons)



An ammeter (A) is placed in series to measure current. All of the current in this circuit flows through the meter. The ammeter would have the same reading if located between points d and e or between points f and a as it does in the position shown. (Note that the script

capital E stands for emf, and r stands for the internal resistance of the source of potential difference.)

Analog Meters: Galvanometers

Analog meters have a needle that swivels to point at numbers on a scale, as opposed to **digital meters**, which have numerical readouts similar to a hand-held calculator. The heart of most analog meters is a device called a **galvanometer**, denoted by G. Current flow through a galvanometer, I_{G}, produces a proportional needle deflection. (This deflection is due to the force of a magnetic field upon a current-carrying wire.)

The two crucial characteristics of a given galvanometer are its resistance and current sensitivity. **Current sensitivity** is the current that gives a **full-scale deflection** of the galvanometer's needle, the maximum current that the instrument can measure. For example, a galvanometer with a current sensitivity of $50\ \mu\text{A}$ has a maximum deflection of its needle when $50\ \mu\text{A}$ flows through it, reads half-scale when $25\ \mu\text{A}$ flows through it, and so on.

If such a galvanometer has a $25\text{-}\Omega$ resistance, then a voltage of only $V = \text{IR} = (50\ \mu\text{A})(25\ \Omega) = 1.25\ \text{mV}$ produces a full-scale reading. By connecting resistors to this galvanometer in different ways, you can use it as either a voltmeter or ammeter that can measure a broad range of voltages or currents.

Galvanometer as Voltmeter

[link] shows how a galvanometer can be used as a voltmeter by connecting it in series with a large resistance, R. The value of the resistance R is

determined by the maximum voltage to be measured. Suppose you want 10 V to produce a full-scale deflection of a voltmeter containing a $25\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer with a $50\text{-}\mu A$ sensitivity. Then 10 V applied to the meter must produce a current of $50\ \mu A$. The total resistance must be

Equation:

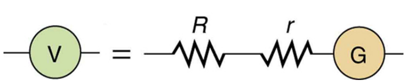
$$R_{\text{tot}} = R + r = \frac{V}{I} = \frac{10\text{ V}}{50\ \mu\text{A}} = 200\text{ k }\Omega\text{, or}$$

Equation:

$$R = R_{\text{tot}} - r = 200\text{ k}\Omega - 25\ \Omega \approx 200\text{ k}\Omega.$$

(R is so large that the galvanometer resistance, r, is nearly negligible.) Note that 5 V applied to this voltmeter produces a half-scale deflection by producing a $25\text{-}\mu A$ current through the meter, and so the voltmeter's reading is proportional to voltage as desired.

This voltmeter would not be useful for voltages less than about half a volt, because the meter deflection would be small and difficult to read accurately. For other voltage ranges, other resistances are placed in series with the galvanometer. Many meters have a choice of scales. That choice involves switching an appropriate resistance into series with the galvanometer.



A large resistance R placed in series with a galvanometer G produces a voltmeter, the full-scale deflection of which depends on the choice of R.

The larger the voltage to be measured, the larger R must be. (Note that r represents the internal resistance of the galvanometer.)

Galvanometer as Ammeter

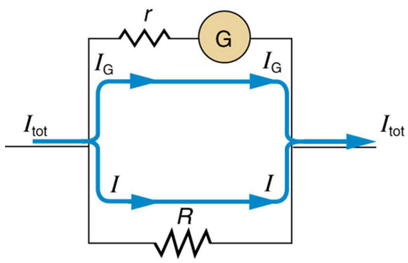
The same galvanometer can also be made into an ammeter by placing it in parallel with a small resistance R, often called the **shunt resistance**, as shown in [link]. Since the shunt resistance is small, most of the current passes through it, allowing an ammeter to measure currents much greater than those producing a full-scale deflection of the galvanometer.

Suppose, for example, an ammeter is needed that gives a full-scale deflection for 1.0 A, and contains the same $25\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer with its $50\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity. Since R and r are in parallel, the voltage across them is the same.

These IR drops are $\text{IR} = I_{\text{G}}r$ so that $\text{IR} = \frac{I_{\text{G}}}{I} = \frac{R}{r}$. Solving for R, and noting that I_{G} is 50 µA and I is 0.999950 A, we have

Equation:

$$R = r\frac{I_{\text{G}}}{I} = (25\,\Omega)\frac{50\ \mu\text{A}}{0.999950\ \text{A}} = 1.25\times10^{-3}\,\Omega.$$



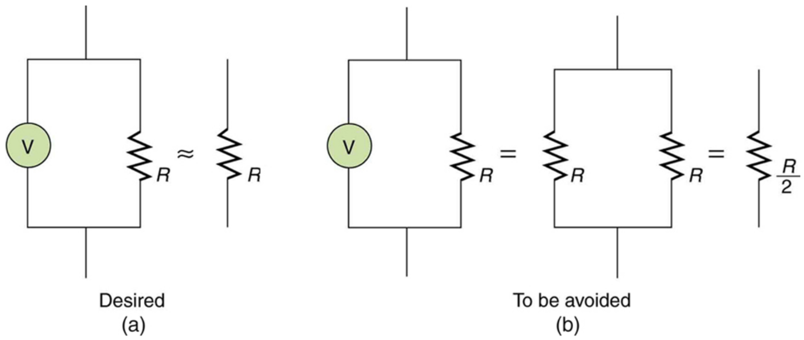
A small shunt resistance R placed in parallel with a galvanometer G produces an ammeter, the full-scale deflection of which depends on the choice of R. The larger the current to be measured, the smaller R must be. Most of the current (I) flowing through the meter is shunted through R to protect the galvanometer. (Note that r represents the internal resistance of the galvanometer.) Ammeters may also have multiple scales for greater flexibility in application. The various scales are

achieved by switching various shunt resistances in parallel with the galvanometer—the greater the maximum current to be measured, the smaller the shunt resistance must be.

Taking Measurements Alters the Circuit

When you use a voltmeter or ammeter, you are connecting another resistor to an existing circuit and, thus, altering the circuit. Ideally, voltmeters and ammeters do not appreciably affect the circuit, but it is instructive to examine the circumstances under which they do or do not interfere.

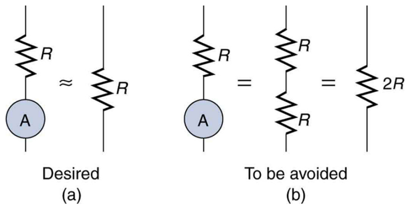
First, consider the voltmeter, which is always placed in parallel with the device being measured. Very little current flows through the voltmeter if its resistance is a few orders of magnitude greater than the device, and so the circuit is not appreciably affected. (See [link](a).) (A large resistance in parallel with a small one has a combined resistance essentially equal to the small one.) If, however, the voltmeter's resistance is comparable to that of the device being measured, then the two in parallel have a smaller resistance, appreciably affecting the circuit. (See [link](b).) The voltage across the device is not the same as when the voltmeter is out of the circuit.



(a) A voltmeter having a resistance much larger than the device ($R_{\text{Voltmeter}}>>R$) with which it is in parallel produces a parallel resistance essentially the same as the device and does not appreciably affect the circuit being measured. (b) Here the voltmeter has the same resistance as the device ($R_{\text{Voltmeter}} \cong R$), so that the parallel resistance is half of what it is when the voltmeter is not connected. This is an example of a significant alteration of the circuit and is to be avoided.

An ammeter is placed in series in the branch of the circuit being measured, so that its resistance adds to that branch. Normally, the ammeter's resistance is very small compared with the resistances of the devices in the circuit, and so the extra resistance is negligible. (See [link](a).) However, if very small load resistances are involved, or if the ammeter is not as low in resistance as it should be, then the total series resistance is significantly greater, and the current in the branch being measured is reduced. (See [link](b).)

A practical problem can occur if the ammeter is connected incorrectly. If it was put in parallel with the resistor to measure the current in it, you could possibly damage the meter; the low resistance of the ammeter would allow most of the current in the circuit to go through the galvanometer, and this current would be larger since the effective resistance is smaller.



(a) An ammeter normally has such a small resistance that the total series resistance in the branch being measured is not appreciably increased. The circuit is essentially unaltered compared with when the ammeter is absent. (b) Here the ammeter's resistance is the same as that of the branch, so that the total resistance is doubled and the current is half what it is without the ammeter. This significant alteration of the circuit is to be avoided.

One solution to the problem of voltmeters and ammeters interfering with the circuits being measured is to use galvanometers with greater sensitivity.

This allows construction of voltmeters with greater resistance and ammeters with smaller resistance than when less sensitive galvanometers are used.

There are practical limits to galvanometer sensitivity, but it is possible to get analog meters that make measurements accurate to a few percent. Note that the inaccuracy comes from altering the circuit, not from a fault in the meter.

Note:
Connections: Limits to Knowledge
Making a measurement alters the system being measured in a manner that produces uncertainty in the measurement. For macroscopic systems, such as the circuits discussed in this module, the alteration can usually be made negligibly small, but it cannot be eliminated entirely. For submicroscopic systems, such as atoms, nuclei, and smaller particles, measurement alters the system in a manner that cannot be made arbitrarily small. This actually limits knowledge of the system—even limiting what nature can know about itself. We shall see profound implications of this when the Heisenberg uncertainty principle is discussed in the modules on quantum mechanics.
There is another measurement technique based on drawing no current at all and, hence, not altering the circuit at all. These are called null measurements and are the topic of Null Measurements. Digital meters that employ solid-state electronics and null measurements can attain accuracies of one part in 10^6.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Digital meters are able to detect smaller currents than analog meters employing galvanometers. How does this explain their ability to measure voltage and current more accurately than analog meters?

Solution:

Since digital meters require less current than analog meters, they alter the circuit less than analog meters. Their resistance as a voltmeter can be far greater than an analog meter, and their resistance as an ammeter can be far less than an analog meter. Consult [link] and [link] and their discussion in the text.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Circuit Construction Kit (DC Only), Virtual Lab
Stimulate a neuron and monitor what happens. Pause, rewind, and move forward in time in order to observe the ions as they move across the neuron membrane.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/circuit-construction-kit-dc-virtual-lab/latest/circuit-construction-kit-dc-virtual-lab_en.html

Section Summary

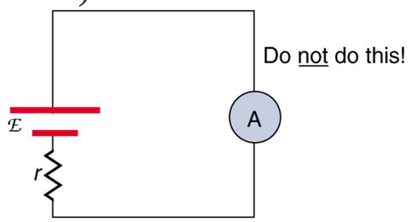
- Voltmeters measure voltage, and ammeters measure current.
- A voltmeter is placed in parallel with the voltage source to receive full voltage and must have a large resistance to limit its effect on the circuit.
- An ammeter is placed in series to get the full current flowing through a branch and must have a small resistance to limit its effect on the circuit.
- Both can be based on the combination of a resistor and a galvanometer, a device that gives an analog reading of current.
- Standard voltmeters and ammeters alter the circuit being measured and are thus limited in accuracy.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why should you not connect an ammeter directly across a voltage source as shown in [link]? (Note that script E in the figure stands for emf.)



Exercise:

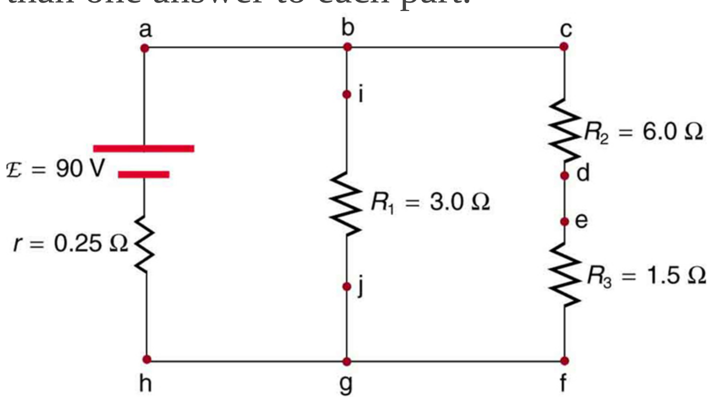
Problem:

Suppose you are using a multimeter (one designed to measure a range of voltages, currents, and resistances) to measure current in a circuit and you inadvertently leave it in a voltmeter mode. What effect will the meter have on the circuit? What would happen if you were measuring voltage but accidentally put the meter in the ammeter mode?

Exercise:

Problem:

Specify the points to which you could connect a voltmeter to measure the following potential differences in [link]: (a) the potential difference of the voltage source; (b) the potential difference across R_1; (c) across R_2; (d) across R_3; (e) across R_2 and R_3. Note that there may be more than one answer to each part.



Exercise:

Problem:

To measure currents in [link], you would replace a wire between two points with an ammeter. Specify the points between which you would place an ammeter to measure the following: (a) the total current; (b) the current flowing through R_1; (c) through R_2; (d) through R_3. Note that there may be more than one answer to each part.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the sensitivity of the galvanometer (that is, what current gives a full-scale deflection) inside a voltmeter that has a $1.00\text{-M}\Omega$ resistance on its 30.0-V scale?

Solution:

30 μA

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the sensitivity of the galvanometer (that is, what current gives a full-scale deflection) inside a voltmeter that has a $25.0\text{-k}\Omega$ resistance on its 100-V scale?

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the resistance that must be placed in series with a $25.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $50.0-\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity (the same as the one discussed in the text) to allow it to be used as a voltmeter with a 0.100-V full-scale reading.

Solution:

$1.98\ \text{k}\Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the resistance that must be placed in series with a $25.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $50.0\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity (the same as the one discussed in the text) to allow it to be used as a voltmeter with a 3000-V full-scale reading. Include a circuit diagram with your solution.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the resistance that must be placed in parallel with a $25.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $50.0\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity (the same as the one discussed in the text) to allow it to be used as an ammeter with a 10.0-A full-scale reading. Include a circuit diagram with your solution.

Solution:
Equation:

$$1.25\times10^{-4}\ \Omega$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the resistance that must be placed in parallel with a $25.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $50.0\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity (the same as the one discussed in the text) to allow it to be used as an ammeter with a 300-mA full-scale reading.

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the resistance that must be placed in series with a $10.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $100\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity to allow it to be used as a voltmeter with: (a) a 300-V full-scale reading, and (b) a 0.300-V full-scale reading.

Solution:

(a) $3.00\text{ M}\Omega$

(b) $2.99\text{ k}\Omega$

Exercise:

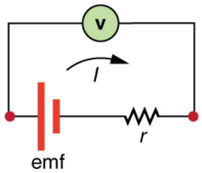
Problem:

Find the resistance that must be placed in parallel with a $10.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $100\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity to allow it to be used as an ammeter with: (a) a 20.0-A full-scale reading, and (b) a 100-mA full-scale reading.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you measure the terminal voltage of a 1.585-V alkaline cell having an internal resistance of $0.100\,\Omega$ by placing a $1.00\text{-k}\Omega$ voltmeter across its terminals. (See [link].) (a) What current flows? (b) Find the terminal voltage. (c) To see how close the measured terminal voltage is to the emf, calculate their ratio.



Solution:

(a) 1.58 mA

(b) 1.5848 V (need four digits to see the difference)

(c) 0.99990 (need five digits to see the difference from unity)

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you measure the terminal voltage of a 3.200-V lithium cell having an internal resistance of $5.00\,\Omega$ by placing a 1.00-kΩ voltmeter across its terminals. (a) What current flows? (b) Find the terminal voltage. (c) To see how close the measured terminal voltage is to the emf, calculate their ratio.

Exercise:

Problem:

A certain ammeter has a resistance of $5.00\times10^{-5}\ \Omega$ on its 3.00-A scale and contains a 10.0-Ω galvanometer. What is the sensitivity of the galvanometer?

Solution:

15.0 μA

Exercise:

Problem:

A 1.00-MΩ voltmeter is placed in parallel with a 75.0-kΩ resistor in a circuit. (a) Draw a circuit diagram of the connection. (b) What is the resistance of the combination? (c) If the voltage across the combination is kept the same as it was across the 75.0-kΩ resistor alone, what is the percent increase in current? (d) If the current through the combination is kept the same as it was through the 75.0-kΩ resistor alone, what is the percentage decrease in voltage? (e) Are the changes found in parts (c) and (d) significant? Discuss.

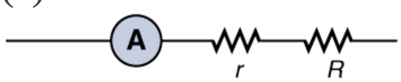
Exercise:

Problem:

A $0.0200\text{-}\Omega$ ammeter is placed in series with a $10.00\text{-}\Omega$ resistor in a circuit. (a) Draw a circuit diagram of the connection. (b) Calculate the resistance of the combination. (c) If the voltage is kept the same across the combination as it was through the $10.00\text{-}\Omega$ resistor alone, what is the percent decrease in current? (d) If the current is kept the same through the combination as it was through the $10.00\text{-}\Omega$ resistor alone, what is the percent increase in voltage? (e) Are the changes found in parts (c) and (d) significant? Discuss.

Solution:

(a)



(b) $10.02\ \Omega$

(c) 0.9980, or a 2.0×10^{-1} percent decrease

(d) 1.002, or a 2.0×10^{-1} percent increase

(e) Not significant.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

Suppose you have a $40.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer with a $25.0\text{-}\mu A$ sensitivity. (a) What resistance would you put in series with it to allow it to be used as a voltmeter that has a full-scale deflection for 0.500 mV? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) What resistance would you put in parallel with a $40.0\text{-}\Omega$ galvanometer having a $25.0\text{-}\mu\text{A}$ sensitivity to allow it to be used as an ammeter that has a full-scale deflection for $10.0\text{-}\mu\text{A}$? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Solution:

(a) $-66.7\ \Omega$

(b) You can’t have negative resistance.

(c) It is unreasonable that I_{G} is greater than I_{tot} (see [link]). You cannot achieve a full-scale deflection using a current less than the sensitivity of the galvanometer.

Glossary

voltmeter
: an instrument that measures voltage

ammeter
: an instrument that measures current

analog meter
: a measuring instrument that gives a readout in the form of a needle movement over a marked gauge

digital meter
: a measuring instrument that gives a readout in a digital form

galvanometer
: an analog measuring device, denoted by G, that measures current flow using a needle deflection caused by a magnetic field force acting upon a current-carrying wire

current sensitivity

the maximum current that a galvanometer can read

full-scale deflection
: the maximum deflection of a galvanometer needle, also known as current sensitivity; a galvanometer with a full-scale deflection of $50\ \mu A$ has a maximum deflection of its needle when $50\ \mu A$ flows through it

shunt resistance
: a small resistance R placed in parallel with a galvanometer G to produce an ammeter; the larger the current to be measured, the smaller R must be; most of the current flowing through the meter is shunted through R to protect the galvanometer

Null Measurements

- Explain why a null measurement device is more accurate than a standard voltmeter or ammeter.
- Demonstrate how a Wheatstone bridge can be used to accurately calculate the resistance in a circuit.

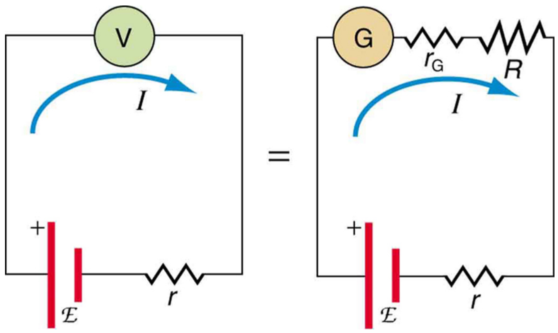
Standard measurements of voltage and current alter the circuit being measured, introducing uncertainties in the measurements. Voltmeters draw some extra current, whereas ammeters reduce current flow. **Null measurements** balance voltages so that there is no current flowing through the measuring device and, therefore, no alteration of the circuit being measured.

Null measurements are generally more accurate but are also more complex than the use of standard voltmeters and ammeters, and they still have limits to their precision. In this module, we shall consider a few specific types of null measurements, because they are common and interesting, and they further illuminate principles of electric circuits.

The Potentiometer

Suppose you wish to measure the emf of a battery. Consider what happens if you connect the battery directly to a standard voltmeter as shown in [link]. (Once we note the problems with this measurement, we will examine a null measurement that improves accuracy.) As discussed before, the actual quantity measured is the terminal voltage V, which is related to the emf of the battery by $V = \text{emf} - \text{Ir}$, where I is the current that flows and r is the internal resistance of the battery.

The emf could be accurately calculated if r were very accurately known, but it is usually not. If the current I could be made zero, then $V = \text{emf}$, and so emf could be directly measured. However, standard voltmeters need a current to operate; thus, another technique is needed.



An analog voltmeter attached to a battery draws a small but nonzero current and measures a terminal voltage that differs from the emf of the battery. (Note that the script capital E symbolizes electromotive force, or emf.) Since the internal resistance of the battery is not known precisely, it is not possible to calculate the emf precisely.

A **potentiometer** is a null measurement device for measuring potentials (voltages). (See [link].) A voltage source is connected to a resistor R, say, a long wire, and passes a constant current through it. There is a steady drop in potential (an IR drop) along the wire, so that a variable potential can be obtained by making contact at varying locations along the wire.

[link](b) shows an unknown $\mathrm{emf}_{\mathrm{x}}$ (represented by script E_{x} in the figure) connected in series with a galvanometer. Note that $\mathrm{emf}_{\mathrm{x}}$ opposes the other voltage source. The location of the contact point (see the arrow on the drawing) is adjusted until the galvanometer reads zero. When the galvanometer reads zero, $\mathrm{emf}_{\mathrm{x}} = IR_{\mathrm{x}}$, where R_{x} is the resistance of the section of wire up to the contact point. Since no current flows through the

galvanometer, none flows through the unknown emf, and so emf_x is directly sensed.

Now, a very precisely known standard emf_s is substituted for emf_x, and the contact point is adjusted until the galvanometer again reads zero, so that $\text{emf}_\text{s} = IR_\text{s}$. In both cases, no current passes through the galvanometer, and so the current I through the long wire is the same. Upon taking the ratio $\frac{\text{emf}_\text{x}}{\text{emf}_\text{s}}$, I cancels, giving

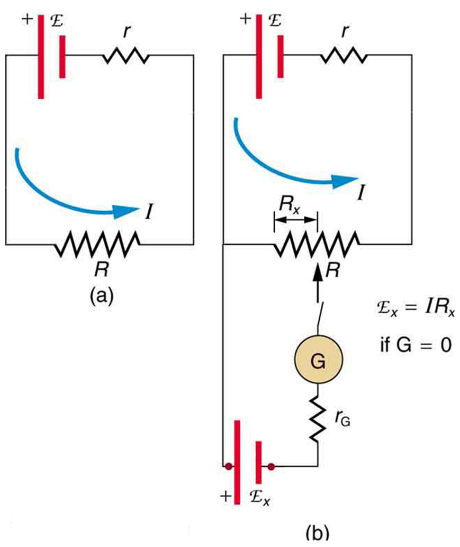
Equation:

$$\frac{\text{emf}_\text{x}}{\text{emf}_\text{s}} = \frac{IR_\text{x}}{IR_\text{s}} = \frac{R_\text{x}}{R_\text{s}}.$$

Solving for emf_x gives

Equation:

$$\text{emf}_\text{x} = \text{emf}_\text{s}\frac{R_\text{x}}{R_\text{s}}.$$



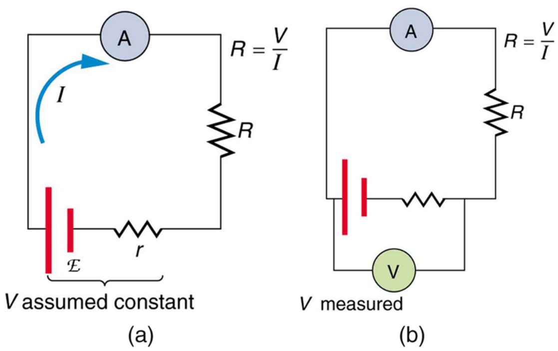
The potentiometer, a null measurement

device. (a) A voltage source connected to a long wire resistor passes a constant current I through it. (b) An unknown emf (labeled script E_{x} in the figure) is connected as shown, and the point of contact along R is adjusted until the galvanometer reads zero. The segment of wire has a resistance R_{x} and script $E_{\text{x}} = IR_{\text{x}}$, where I is unaffected by the connection since no current flows through the galvanometer. The unknown emf is thus proportional to the resistance of the wire segment.

Because a long uniform wire is used for R, the ratio of resistances $R_{\text{x}}/R_{\text{s}}$ is the same as the ratio of the lengths of wire that zero the galvanometer for each emf. The three quantities on the right-hand side of the equation are now known or measured, and emf_{x} can be calculated. The uncertainty in this calculation can be considerably smaller than when using a voltmeter directly, but it is not zero. There is always some uncertainty in the ratio of resistances $R_{\text{x}}/R_{\text{s}}$ and in the standard emf_{s}. Furthermore, it is not possible to tell when the galvanometer reads exactly zero, which introduces error into both R_{x} and R_{s}, and may also affect the current I.

Resistance Measurements and the Wheatstone Bridge

There is a variety of so-called **ohmmeters** that purport to measure resistance. What the most common ohmmeters actually do is to apply a voltage to a resistance, measure the current, and calculate the resistance using Ohm's law. Their readout is this calculated resistance. Two configurations for ohmmeters using standard voltmeters and ammeters are shown in [link]. Such configurations are limited in accuracy, because the meters alter both the voltage applied to the resistor and the current that flows through it.



Two methods for measuring resistance with standard meters. (a) Assuming a known voltage for the source, an ammeter measures current, and resistance is calculated as $R = \frac{V}{I}$. (b) Since the terminal voltage V varies with current, it is better to measure it. V is most accurately known when I is small, but I itself is most accurately known when it is large.

The **Wheatstone bridge** is a null measurement device for calculating resistance by balancing potential drops in a circuit. (See [link].) The device is called a bridge because the galvanometer forms a bridge between two branches. A variety of **bridge devices** are used to make null measurements in circuits.

Resistors R_1 and R_2 are precisely known, while the arrow through R_3 indicates that it is a variable resistance. The value of R_3 can be precisely read. With the unknown resistance R_{x} in the circuit, R_3 is adjusted until the galvanometer reads zero. The potential difference between points b and d is then zero, meaning that b and d are at the same potential. With no current running through the galvanometer, it has no effect on the rest of the circuit. So the branches abc and adc are in parallel, and each branch has the full voltage of the source. That is, the IR drops along abc and adc are the same. Since b and d are at the same potential, the IR drop along ad must equal the IR drop along ab. Thus,

Equation:

$$I_1R_1 = I_2R_3.$$

Again, since b and d are at the same potential, the IR drop along dc must equal the IR drop along bc. Thus,

Equation:

$$I_1R_2 = I_2R_{\mathrm{x}}.$$

Taking the ratio of these last two expressions gives

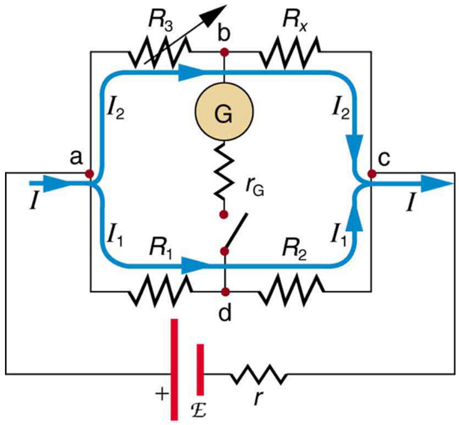
Equation:

$$\frac{I_1R_1}{I_1R_2} = \frac{I_2R_3}{I_2R_{\mathrm{x}}}.$$

Canceling the currents and solving for R_x yields

Equation:

$$R_x = R_3 \frac{R_2}{R_1}.$$



The Wheatstone bridge is used to calculate unknown resistances. The variable resistance R_3 is adjusted until the galvanometer reads zero with the switch closed. This simplifies the circuit, allowing R_x to be calculated based on the IR drops as discussed in the text.

This equation is used to calculate the unknown resistance when current through the galvanometer is zero. This method can be very accurate (often to four significant digits), but it is limited by two factors. First, it is not possible to get the current through the galvanometer to be exactly zero.

Second, there are always uncertainties in R_1, R_2, and R_3, which contribute to the uncertainty in R_{x}.

Exercise:

Check Your Understanding

Problem:

Identify other factors that might limit the accuracy of null measurements. Would the use of a digital device that is more sensitive than a galvanometer improve the accuracy of null measurements?

Solution:

One factor would be resistance in the wires and connections in a null measurement. These are impossible to make zero, and they can change over time. Another factor would be temperature variations in resistance, which can be reduced but not completely eliminated by choice of material. Digital devices sensitive to smaller currents than analog devices do improve the accuracy of null measurements because they allow you to get the current closer to zero.

Section Summary

- Null measurement techniques achieve greater accuracy by balancing a circuit so that no current flows through the measuring device.
- One such device, for determining voltage, is a potentiometer.
- Another null measurement device, for determining resistance, is the Wheatstone bridge.
- Other physical quantities can also be measured with null measurement techniques.

Conceptual questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Why can a null measurement be more accurate than one using standard voltmeters and ammeters? What factors limit the accuracy of null measurements?

Exercise:

Problem:

If a potentiometer is used to measure cell emfs on the order of a few volts, why is it most accurate for the standard emf_s to be the same order of magnitude and the resistances to be in the range of a few ohms?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the emf_x of a cell being measured in a potentiometer, if the standard cell's emf is 12.0 V and the potentiometer balances for $R_\text{x} = 5.000\,\Omega$ and $R_\text{s} = 2.500\,\Omega$?

Solution:

24.0 V

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the emf_x of a dry cell for which a potentiometer is balanced when $R_\text{x} = 1.200\ \Omega$, while an alkaline standard cell with an emf of 1.600 V requires $R_\text{s} = 1.247\ \Omega$ to balance the potentiometer.

Exercise:

Problem:

When an unknown resistance R_{x} is placed in a Wheatstone bridge, it is possible to balance the bridge by adjusting R_3 to be $2500\ \Omega$. What is R_{x} if $\frac{R_2}{R_1} = 0.625$?

Solution:

$1.56\ \mathrm{k}\Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

To what value must you adjust R_3 to balance a Wheatstone bridge, if the unknown resistance R_{x} is $100\,\Omega$, R_1 is $50.0\,\Omega$, and R_2 is $175\,\Omega$?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the unknown $\mathrm{emf}_{\mathrm{x}}$ in a potentiometer that balances when R_{x} is $10.0\,\Omega$, and balances when R_{s} is $15.0\,\Omega$ for a standard 3.000-V emf? (b) The same $\mathrm{emf}_{\mathrm{x}}$ is placed in the same potentiometer, which now balances when R_{s} is $15.0\,\Omega$ for a standard emf of 3.100 V. At what resistance R_{x} will the potentiometer balance?

Solution:

(a) 2.00 V

(b) 9.68 Ω

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you want to measure resistances in the range from $10.0\ \Omega$ to $10.0\ \mathrm{k}\Omega$ using a Wheatstone bridge that has $\frac{R_2}{R_1} = 2.000$. Over what range should R_3 be adjustable?

Solution:
Equation:

$$\text{Range} = 5.00\ \Omega \text{ to } 5.00\ \text{k}\Omega$$

Glossary

null measurements
: methods of measuring current and voltage more accurately by balancing the circuit so that no current flows through the measurement device

potentiometer
: a null measurement device for measuring potentials (voltages)

ohmmeter
: an instrument that applies a voltage to a resistance, measures the current, calculates the resistance using Ohm's law, and provides a readout of this calculated resistance

bridge device
: a device that forms a bridge between two branches of a circuit; some bridge devices are used to make null measurements in circuits

Wheatstone bridge
: a null measurement device for calculating resistance by balancing potential drops in a circuit

DC Circuits Containing Resistors and Capacitors

- Explain the importance of the time constant, τ , and calculate the time constant for a given resistance and capacitance.
- Explain why batteries in a flashlight gradually lose power and the light dims over time.
- Describe what happens to a graph of the voltage across a capacitor over time as it charges.
- Explain how a timing circuit works and list some applications.
- Calculate the necessary speed of a strobe flash needed to “stop” the movement of an object over a particular length.

When you use a flash camera, it takes a few seconds to charge the capacitor that powers the flash. The light flash discharges the capacitor in a tiny fraction of a second. Why does charging take longer than discharging? This question and a number of other phenomena that involve charging and discharging capacitors are discussed in this module.

RC Circuits

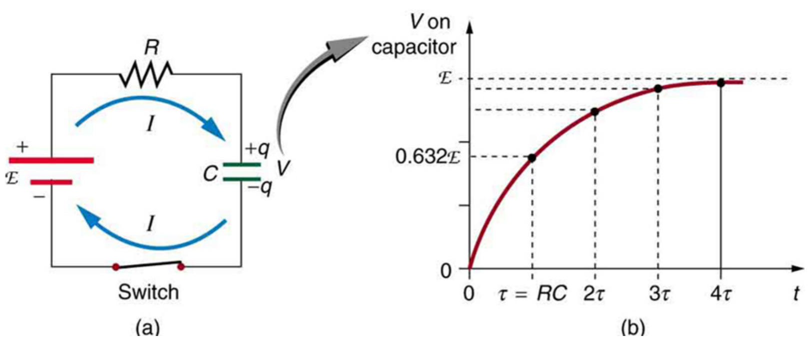
An $\mathbf{RC}$ **circuit** is one containing a **resistor** R and a **capacitor** C. The capacitor is an electrical component that stores electric charge.

[link] shows a simple RC circuit that employs a DC (direct current) voltage source. The capacitor is initially uncharged. As soon as the switch is closed, current flows to and from the initially uncharged capacitor. As charge increases on the capacitor plates, there is increasing opposition to the flow of charge by the repulsion of like charges on each plate.

In terms of voltage, this is because voltage across the capacitor is given by $V_{\text{c}}=Q/C$, where Q is the amount of charge stored on each plate and C is the **capacitance**. This voltage opposes the battery, growing from zero to the maximum emf when fully charged. The current thus decreases from its initial value of $I_0=\frac{\text{emf}}{R}$ to zero as the voltage on the capacitor reaches the same value as the emf. When there is no current, there is no IR drop, and so the voltage on the capacitor must then equal the emf of the voltage source. This can also be explained with Kirchhoff’s second rule (the loop rule),

discussed in Kirchhoff's Rules, which says that the algebraic sum of changes in potential around any closed loop must be zero.

The initial current is $I_0 = \frac{\text{emf}}{R}$, because all of the IR drop is in the resistance. Therefore, the smaller the resistance, the faster a given capacitor will be charged. Note that the internal resistance of the voltage source is included in R, as are the resistances of the capacitor and the connecting wires. In the flash camera scenario above, when the batteries powering the camera begin to wear out, their internal resistance rises, reducing the current and lengthening the time it takes to get ready for the next flash.



(a) An RC circuit with an initially uncharged capacitor. Current flows in the direction shown (opposite of electron flow) as soon as the switch is closed. Mutual repulsion of like charges in the capacitor progressively slows the flow as the capacitor is charged, stopping the current when the capacitor is fully charged and $Q = C \cdot \text{emf}$. (b) A graph of voltage across the capacitor versus time, with the switch closing at time $t = 0$. (Note that in the two parts of the figure, the capital script E stands for emf, q stands for the charge stored on the capacitor, and τ is the RC time constant.)

Voltage on the capacitor is initially zero and rises rapidly at first, since the initial current is a maximum. [link](b) shows a graph of capacitor voltage versus time (t) starting when the switch is closed at $t=0$. The voltage approaches emf asymptotically, since the closer it gets to emf the less current flows. The equation for voltage versus time when charging a capacitor C through a resistor R, derived using calculus, is

Equation:

$$V=\text{emf}(1-e^{-t/\text{RC}})\text{ (charging)},$$

where V is the voltage across the capacitor, emf is equal to the emf of the DC voltage source, and the exponential e = 2.718 … is the base of the natural logarithm. Note that the units of RC are seconds. We define

Equation:

$$\tau=\text{RC},$$

where τ (the Greek letter tau) is called the time constant for an RC circuit. As noted before, a small resistance R allows the capacitor to charge faster. This is reasonable, since a larger current flows through a smaller resistance. It is also reasonable that the smaller the capacitor C, the less time needed to charge it. Both factors are contained in $\tau=\text{RC}$.

More quantitatively, consider what happens when $t=\tau=\text{RC}$. Then the voltage on the capacitor is

Equation:

$$V=\text{emf}\left(1-e^{-1}\right)=\text{emf}(1-0.368)=0.632\cdot\text{emf}.$$

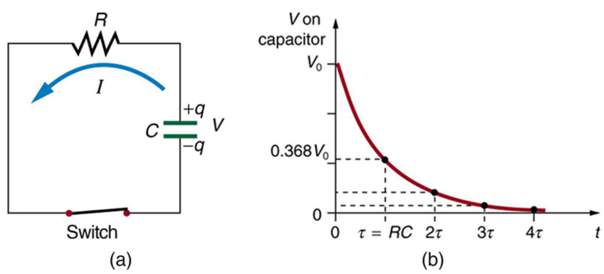
This means that in the time $\tau=\text{RC}$, the voltage rises to 0.632 of its final value. The voltage will rise 0.632 of the remainder in the next time τ. It is a characteristic of the exponential function that the final value is never reached, but 0.632 of the remainder to that value is achieved in every time, τ. In just a few multiples of the time constant τ, then, the final value is very nearly achieved, as the graph in [link](b) illustrates.

Discharging a Capacitor

Discharging a capacitor through a resistor proceeds in a similar fashion, as [link] illustrates. Initially, the current is $I_0 = \frac{V_0}{R}$, driven by the initial voltage V_0 on the capacitor. As the voltage decreases, the current and hence the rate of discharge decreases, implying another exponential formula for V. Using calculus, the voltage V on a capacitor C being discharged through a resistor R is found to be

Equation:

$$V = V_0\, e^{-t/\mathrm{RC}}(\text{discharging}).$$



(a) Closing the switch discharges the capacitor C through the resistor R. Mutual repulsion of like charges on each plate drives the current. (b) A graph of voltage across the capacitor versus time, with $V = V_0$ at $t = 0$. The voltage decreases exponentially, falling a fixed fraction of the way to zero in each subsequent time constant τ.

The graph in [link](b) is an example of this exponential decay. Again, the time constant is $\tau = \text{RC}$. A small resistance R allows the capacitor to discharge in a small time, since the current is larger. Similarly, a small capacitance requires less time to discharge, since less charge is stored. In the first time interval $\tau = \text{RC}$ after the switch is closed, the voltage falls to 0.368 of its initial value, since $V = V_0 \cdot e^{-1} = 0.368V_0$.

During each successive time τ, the voltage falls to 0.368 of its preceding value. In a few multiples of τ, the voltage becomes very close to zero, as indicated by the graph in [link](b).

Now we can explain why the flash camera in our scenario takes so much longer to charge than discharge; the resistance while charging is significantly greater than while discharging. The internal resistance of the battery accounts for most of the resistance while charging. As the battery ages, the increasing internal resistance makes the charging process even slower. (You may have noticed this.)

The flash discharge is through a low-resistance ionized gas in the flash tube and proceeds very rapidly. Flash photographs, such as in [link], can capture a brief instant of a rapid motion because the flash can be less than a microsecond in duration. Such flashes can be made extremely intense.

During World War II, nighttime reconnaissance photographs were made from the air with a single flash illuminating more than a square kilometer of enemy territory. The brevity of the flash eliminated blurring due to the surveillance aircraft’s motion. Today, an important use of intense flash lamps is to pump energy into a laser. The short intense flash can rapidly energize a laser and allow it to reemit the energy in another form.

This stop-motion photograph of a rufous hummingbird (*Selasphorus rufus*) feeding on a flower was obtained with an extremely brief and intense flash of light powered by the discharge of a capacitor through a gas. (credit: Dean E. Biggins, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service)

Example:
Integrated Concept Problem: Calculating Capacitor Size—Strobe Lights

High-speed flash photography was pioneered by Doc Edgerton in the 1930s, while he was a professor of electrical engineering at MIT. You might have seen examples of his work in the amazing shots of hummingbirds in motion, a drop of milk splattering on a table, or a bullet penetrating an apple (see [link]). To stop the motion and capture these pictures, one needs a high-intensity, very short pulsed flash, as mentioned earlier in this module.

Suppose one wished to capture the picture of a bullet (moving at $5.0 \times 10^2\ \mathrm{m/s}$) that was passing through an apple. The duration of the flash is related to the RC time constant, τ. What size capacitor would one

need in the RC circuit to succeed, if the resistance of the flash tube was $10.0\ \Omega$? Assume the apple is a sphere with a diameter of $8.0 \times 10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m}$.

Strategy

We begin by identifying the physical principles involved. This example deals with the strobe light, as discussed above. [link] shows the circuit for this probe. The characteristic time τ of the strobe is given as $\tau = \mathrm{RC}$.

Solution

We wish to find C, but we don't know τ. We want the flash to be on only while the bullet traverses the apple. So we need to use the kinematic equations that describe the relationship between distance x, velocity v, and time t:

Equation:

$$x = \mathrm{vt} \text{ or } t = \frac{x}{v}.$$

The bullet's velocity is given as $5.0 \times 10^{2}\ \mathrm{m/s}$, and the distance x is $8.0 \times 10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m}$. The traverse time, then, is

Equation:

$$t = \frac{x}{v} = \frac{8.0 \times 10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m}}{5.0 \times 10^{2}\ \mathrm{m/s}} = 1.6 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{s}.$$

We set this value for the crossing time t equal to τ. Therefore,

Equation:

$$C = \frac{t}{R} = \frac{1.6{\times}10^{-4}\ \mathrm{s}}{10.0\ \Omega} = 16\ \mu\mathrm{F}.$$

(Note: Capacitance C is typically measured in farads, F, defined as Coulombs per volt. From the equation, we see that C can also be stated in units of seconds per ohm.)

Discussion

The flash interval of 160 μs (the traverse time of the bullet) is relatively easy to obtain today. Strobe lights have opened up new worlds from science to entertainment. The information from the picture of the apple and bullet was used in the Warren Commission Report on the assassination of

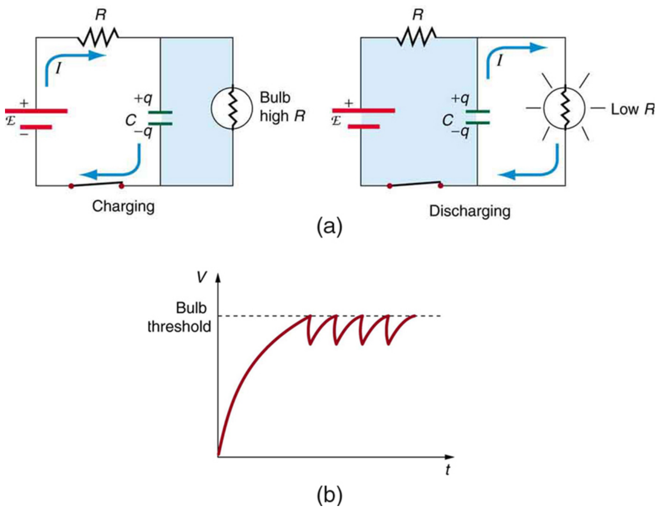
President John F. Kennedy in 1963 to confirm that only one bullet was fired.

RC Circuits for Timing

RC circuits are commonly used for timing purposes. A mundane example of this is found in the ubiquitous intermittent wiper systems of modern cars. The time between wipes is varied by adjusting the resistance in an RC circuit. Another example of an RC circuit is found in novelty jewelry, Halloween costumes, and various toys that have battery-powered flashing lights. (See [link] for a timing circuit.)

A more crucial use of RC circuits for timing purposes is in the artificial pacemaker, used to control heart rate. The heart rate is normally controlled by electrical signals generated by the sino-atrial (SA) node, which is on the wall of the right atrium chamber. This causes the muscles to contract and pump blood. Sometimes the heart rhythm is abnormal and the heartbeat is too high or too low.

The artificial pacemaker is inserted near the heart to provide electrical signals to the heart when needed with the appropriate time constant. Pacemakers have sensors that detect body motion and breathing to increase the heart rate during exercise to meet the body’s increased needs for blood and oxygen.



(a) The lamp in this RC circuit ordinarily has a very high resistance, so that the battery charges the capacitor as if the lamp were not there. When the voltage reaches a threshold value, a current flows through the lamp that dramatically reduces its resistance, and the capacitor discharges through the lamp as if the battery and charging resistor were not there. Once discharged, the process starts again, with the flash period determined by the RC constant τ. (b) A graph of voltage versus time for this circuit.

Example:
Calculating Time: *RC* Circuit in a Heart Defibrillator
A heart defibrillator is used to resuscitate an accident victim by discharging a capacitor through the trunk of her body. A simplified version of the

circuit is seen in [link]. (a) What is the time constant if an 8.00-μF capacitor is used and the path resistance through her body is $1.00 \times 10^3\ \Omega$? (b) If the initial voltage is 10.0 kV, how long does it take to decline to $5.00 \times 10^2\ \text{V}$?

Strategy

Since the resistance and capacitance are given, it is straightforward to multiply them to give the time constant asked for in part (a). To find the time for the voltage to decline to $5.00 \times 10^2\ \text{V}$, we repeatedly multiply the initial voltage by 0.368 until a voltage less than or equal to $5.00 \times 10^2\ \text{V}$ is obtained. Each multiplication corresponds to a time of τ seconds.

Solution for (a)

The time constant τ is given by the equation $\tau = \text{RC}$. Entering the given values for resistance and capacitance (and remembering that units for a farad can be expressed as s/Ω) gives

Equation:

$$\tau = \text{RC} = (1.00 \times 10^3\ \Omega)(8.00\ \mu F) = 8.00\ \text{ms.}$$

Solution for (b)

In the first 8.00 ms, the voltage (10.0 kV) declines to 0.368 of its initial value. That is:

Equation:

$$V = 0.368V_0 = 3.680 \times 10^3\ \text{V at } t = 8.00\ \text{ms.}$$

(Notice that we carry an extra digit for each intermediate calculation.) After another 8.00 ms, we multiply by 0.368 again, and the voltage is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} V\prime &= 0.368V \\ &= (0.368)\left(3.680 \times 10^3\ \text{V}\right) \\ &= 1.354 \times 10^3\ \text{V at } t = 16.0\ \text{ms.} \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, after another 8.00 ms, the voltage is

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} V'' &= 0.368V' = (0.368)(1.354 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{V}) \\ &= 498\ \mathrm{V\ at}\ t = 24.0\ \mathrm{ms.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

So after only 24.0 ms, the voltage is down to 498 V, or 4.98% of its original value.Such brief times are useful in heart defibrillation, because the brief but intense current causes a brief but effective contraction of the heart. The actual circuit in a heart defibrillator is slightly more complex than the one in [link], to compensate for magnetic and AC effects that will be covered in Magnetism.

Exercise:
Check Your Understanding

Problem: When is the potential difference across a capacitor an emf?

Solution:

Only when the current being drawn from or put into the capacitor is zero. Capacitors, like batteries, have internal resistance, so their output voltage is not an emf unless current is zero. This is difficult to measure in practice so we refer to a capacitor’s voltage rather than its emf. But the source of potential difference in a capacitor is fundamental and it is an emf.

Note:

PhET Explorations: Circuit Construction Kit (DC only)

An electronics kit in your computer! Build circuits with resistors, light bulbs, batteries, and switches. Take measurements with the realistic ammeter and voltmeter. View the circuit as a schematic diagram, or switch to a life-like view.

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/f23ce496-c9d1-11e5-bdc8-bb04dc1eecb6/circuit-construction-kit-dc-only/#sim-cck

Section Summary

- An RC circuit is one that has both a resistor and a capacitor.
- The time constant τ for an RC circuit is $\tau = \mathrm{RC}$.
- When an initially uncharged ($V_0 = 0$ at $t = 0$) capacitor in series with a resistor is charged by a DC voltage source, the voltage rises, asymptotically approaching the emf of the voltage source; as a function of time,
  Equation:

  $$V = \mathrm{emf}(1 - e^{-t/\mathrm{RC}})(\mathrm{charging}).$$

- Within the span of each time constant τ, the voltage rises by 0.632 of the remaining value, approaching the final voltage asymptotically.
- If a capacitor with an initial voltage V_0 is discharged through a resistor starting at $t = 0$, then its voltage decreases exponentially as given by
  Equation:

  $$V = V_0 e^{-t/\mathrm{RC}}(\mathrm{discharging}).$$

- In each time constant τ, the voltage falls by 0.368 of its remaining initial value, approaching zero asymptotically.

Conceptual questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Regarding the units involved in the relationship $\tau = \mathrm{RC}$, verify that the units of resistance times capacitance are time, that is, $\Omega \cdot \mathrm{F} = \mathrm{s}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

The RC time constant in heart defibrillation is crucial to limiting the time the current flows. If the capacitance in the defibrillation unit is fixed, how would you manipulate resistance in the circuit to adjust the RC constant τ? Would an adjustment of the applied voltage also be needed to ensure that the current delivered has an appropriate value?

Exercise:

Problem:

When making an ECG measurement, it is important to measure voltage variations over small time intervals. The time is limited by the RC constant of the circuit—it is not possible to measure time variations shorter than RC. How would you manipulate R and C in the circuit to allow the necessary measurements?

Exercise:

Problem:

Draw two graphs of charge versus time on a capacitor. Draw one for charging an initially uncharged capacitor in series with a resistor, as in the circuit in [link], starting from $\mathrm{t}=0$. Draw the other for discharging a capacitor through a resistor, as in the circuit in [link], starting at $\mathrm{t}=0$, with an initial charge Q_0. Show at least two intervals of τ.

Exercise:

Problem:

When charging a capacitor, as discussed in conjunction with [link], how long does it take for the voltage on the capacitor to reach emf? Is this a problem?

Exercise:

Problem:

When discharging a capacitor, as discussed in conjunction with [link], how long does it take for the voltage on the capacitor to reach zero? Is this a problem?

Exercise:

Problem:

Referring to [link], draw a graph of potential difference across the resistor versus time, showing at least two intervals of τ. Also draw a graph of current versus time for this situation.

Exercise:

Problem:

A long, inexpensive extension cord is connected from inside the house to a refrigerator outside. The refrigerator doesn't run as it should. What might be the problem?

Exercise:

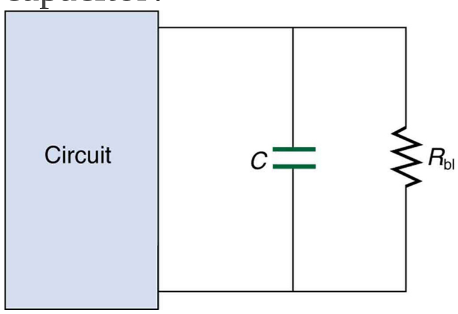
Problem:

In [link], does the graph indicate the time constant is shorter for discharging than for charging? Would you expect ionized gas to have low resistance? How would you adjust R to get a longer time between flashes? Would adjusting R affect the discharge time?

Exercise:

Problem:

An electronic apparatus may have large capacitors at high voltage in the power supply section, presenting a shock hazard even when the apparatus is switched off. A “bleeder resistor” is therefore placed across such a capacitor, as shown schematically in [link], to bleed the charge from it after the apparatus is off. Why must the bleeder resistance be much greater than the effective resistance of the rest of the circuit? How does this affect the time constant for discharging the capacitor?



A bleeder resistor R_{bl} discharges the capacitor in this electronic device once it is switched off.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The timing device in an automobile’s intermittent wiper system is based on an RC time constant and utilizes a $0.500\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor and a variable resistor. Over what range must R be made to vary to achieve time constants from 2.00 to 15.0 s?

Solution:

range 4.00 to $30.0\ \text{M}\Omega$

Exercise:

Problem:

A heart pacemaker fires 72 times a minute, each time a 25.0-nF capacitor is charged (by a battery in series with a resistor) to 0.632 of its full voltage. What is the value of the resistance?

Exercise:

Problem:

The duration of a photographic flash is related to an RC time constant, which is $0.100\ \mu\text{s}$ for a certain camera. (a) If the resistance of the flash lamp is $0.0400\,\Omega$ during discharge, what is the size of the capacitor supplying its energy? (b) What is the time constant for charging the capacitor, if the charging resistance is $800\ \text{k}\Omega$?

Solution:

(a) $2.50\ \mu\text{F}$

(b) 2.00 s

Exercise:

Problem:

A 2.00- and a $7.50\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor can be connected in series or parallel, as can a 25.0- and a $100\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor. Calculate the four RC time constants possible from connecting the resulting capacitance and resistance in series.

Exercise:

Problem:

After two time constants, what percentage of the final voltage, emf, is on an initially uncharged capacitor C, charged through a resistance R?

Solution:

86.5%

Exercise:

Problem:

A $500\text{-}\Omega$ resistor, an uncharged $1.50\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor, and a 6.16-V emf are connected in series. (a) What is the initial current? (b) What is the RC time constant? (c) What is the current after one time constant? (d) What is the voltage on the capacitor after one time constant?

Exercise:

Problem:

A heart defibrillator being used on a patient has an RC time constant of 10.0 ms due to the resistance of the patient and the capacitance of the defibrillator. (a) If the defibrillator has an $8.00\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitance, what is the resistance of the path through the patient? (You may neglect the capacitance of the patient and the resistance of the defibrillator.) (b) If the initial voltage is 12.0 kV, how long does it take to decline to 6.00×10^2 V?

Solution:

(a) $1.25\text{ k}\Omega$

(b) 30.0 ms

Exercise:

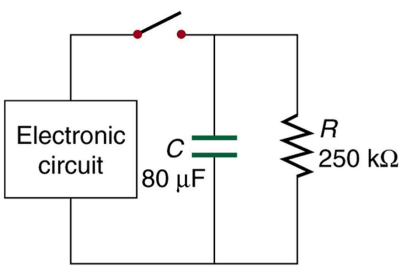
Problem:

An ECG monitor must have an RC time constant less than 1.00×10^{2} μs to be able to measure variations in voltage over small time intervals. (a) If the resistance of the circuit (due mostly to that of the patient's chest) is $1.00\text{ k}\Omega$, what is the maximum capacitance of the circuit? (b) Would it be difficult in practice to limit the capacitance to less than the value found in (a)?

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows how a bleeder resistor is used to discharge a capacitor after an electronic device is shut off, allowing a person to work on the electronics with less risk of shock. (a) What is the time constant? (b) How long will it take to reduce the voltage on the capacitor to 0.250% (5% of 5%) of its full value once discharge begins? (c) If the capacitor is charged to a voltage V_0 through a $100\text{-}\Omega$ resistance, calculate the time it takes to rise to $0.865V_0$ (This is about two time constants.)



Solution:

(a) 20.0 s

(b) 120 s

(c) 16.0 ms

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the exact exponential treatment, find how much time is required to discharge a $250\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor through a $500\text{-}\Omega$ resistor down to 1.00% of its original voltage.

Exercise:

Problem:

Using the exact exponential treatment, find how much time is required to charge an initially uncharged 100-pF capacitor through a $75.0\text{-M}\Omega$ resistor to 90.0% of its final voltage.

Solution:

1.73×10^{-2} s

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

If you wish to take a picture of a bullet traveling at 500 m/s, then a very brief flash of light produced by an RC discharge through a flash tube can limit blurring. Assuming 1.00 mm of motion during one RC constant is acceptable, and given that the flash is driven by a $600\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor, what is the resistance in the flash tube?

Solution:

$3.33 \times 10^{-3}\ \Omega$

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A flashing lamp in a Christmas earring is based on an RC discharge of a capacitor through its resistance. The effective duration of the flash is 0.250 s, during which it produces an average 0.500 W from an average

3.00 V. (a) What energy does it dissipate? (b) How much charge moves through the lamp? (c) Find the capacitance. (d) What is the resistance of the lamp?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A $160\text{-}\mu\text{F}$ capacitor charged to 450 V is discharged through a $31.2\text{-k}\Omega$ resistor. (a) Find the time constant. (b) Calculate the temperature increase of the resistor, given that its mass is 2.50 g and its specific heat is $1.67\,\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}\cdot\text{ºC}}$, noting that most of the thermal energy is retained in the short time of the discharge. (c) Calculate the new resistance, assuming it is pure carbon. (d) Does this change in resistance seem significant?

Solution:

(a) 4.99 s

(b) 3.87ºC

(c) $31.1\text{ k}\Omega$

(d) No

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) Calculate the capacitance needed to get an RC time constant of 1.00×10^{3} s with a $0.100\text{-}\Omega$ resistor. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a camera’s flash unit. Construct a problem in which you calculate the size of the capacitor that stores energy for the flash lamp. Among the things to be considered are the voltage applied to the capacitor, the energy needed in the flash and the associated charge needed on the capacitor, the resistance of the flash lamp during discharge, and the desired RC time constant.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a rechargeable lithium cell that is to be used to power a camcorder. Construct a problem in which you calculate the internal resistance of the cell during normal operation. Also, calculate the minimum voltage output of a battery charger to be used to recharge your lithium cell. Among the things to be considered are the emf and useful terminal voltage of a lithium cell and the current it should be able to supply to a camcorder.

Glossary

RC circuit
: a circuit that contains both a resistor and a capacitor

capacitor
: an electrical component used to store energy by separating electric charge on two opposing plates

capacitance
: the maximum amount of electric potential energy that can be stored (or separated) for a given electric potential

# Introduction to Magnetism
class="introduction"

The magnificent spectacle of the Aurora Borealis, or northern lights, glows in the northern sky above Bear Lake near Eielson Air Force Base, Alaska. Shaped by the Earth’s magnetic field, this light is produced by radiation spewed from solar storms. (credit: Senior Airman Joshua Strang, via Flickr)

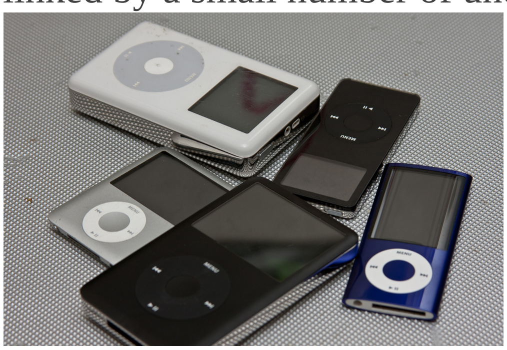
One evening, an Alaskan sticks a note to his refrigerator with a small magnet. Through the kitchen window, the Aurora Borealis glows in the night sky. This grand spectacle is shaped by the same force that holds the note to the refrigerator.

People have been aware of magnets and magnetism for thousands of years. The earliest records date to well before the time of Christ, particularly in a region of Asia Minor called Magnesia (the name of this region is the source of words like *magnetic*). Magnetic rocks found in Magnesia, which is now part of western Turkey, stimulated interest during ancient times. A practical application for magnets was found later, when they were employed as navigational compasses. The use of magnets in compasses resulted not only in improved long-distance sailing, but also in the names of “north” and “south” being given to the two types of magnetic poles.

Today magnetism plays many important roles in our lives. Physicists’ understanding of magnetism has enabled the development of technologies that affect our everyday lives. The iPod in your purse or backpack, for example, wouldn’t have been possible without the applications of magnetism and electricity on a small scale.

The discovery that weak changes in a magnetic field in a thin film of iron and chromium could bring about much larger changes in electrical resistance was one of the first large successes of nanotechnology. The 2007 Nobel Prize in Physics went to Albert Fert from France and Peter Grunberg from Germany for this discovery of *giant magnetoresistance* and its applications to computer memory.

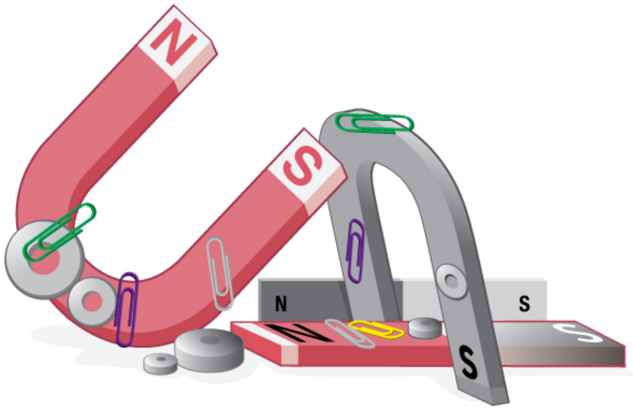
All electric motors, with uses as diverse as powering refrigerators, starting cars, and moving elevators, contain magnets. Generators, whether producing hydroelectric power or running bicycle lights, use magnetic fields. Recycling facilities employ magnets to separate iron from other refuse. Hundreds of millions of dollars are spent annually on magnetic containment of fusion as a future energy source. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) has become an important diagnostic tool in the field of medicine, and the use of magnetism to explore brain activity is a subject of contemporary research and development. The list of applications also includes computer hard drives, tape recording, detection of inhaled asbestos, and levitation of high-speed trains. Magnetism is used to explain atomic energy levels, cosmic rays, and charged particles trapped in the Van Allen belts. Once again, we will find all these disparate phenomena are linked by a small number of underlying physical principles.



Engineering of technology like iPods would not be possible without a deep understanding magnetism. (credit: Jesse! S?, Flickr)

Magnets

- Describe the difference between the north and south poles of a magnet.
- Describe how magnetic poles interact with each other.

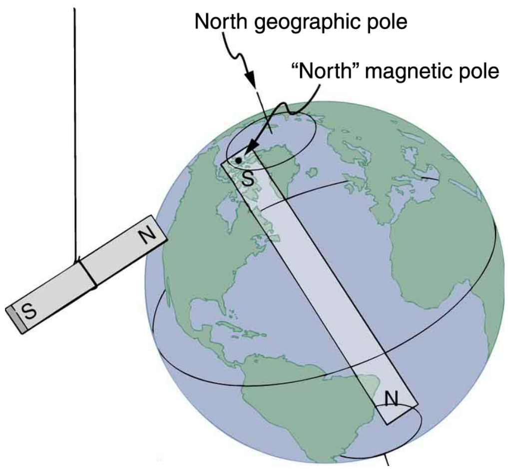


Magnets come in various shapes, sizes, and strengths. All have both a north pole and a south pole. There is never an isolated pole (a monopole).

All magnets attract iron, such as that in a refrigerator door. However, magnets may attract or repel other magnets. Experimentation shows that all magnets have two poles. If freely suspended, one pole will point toward the north. The two poles are thus named the **north magnetic pole** and the **south magnetic pole** (or more properly, north-seeking and south-seeking poles, for the attractions in those directions).

Note:
Universal Characteristics of Magnets and Magnetic Poles
It is a universal characteristic of all magnets that *like poles repel and unlike poles attract*. (Note the similarity with electrostatics: unlike charges attract and like charges repel.)

Further experimentation shows that it is *impossible to separate north and south poles* in the manner that + and − charges can be separated.



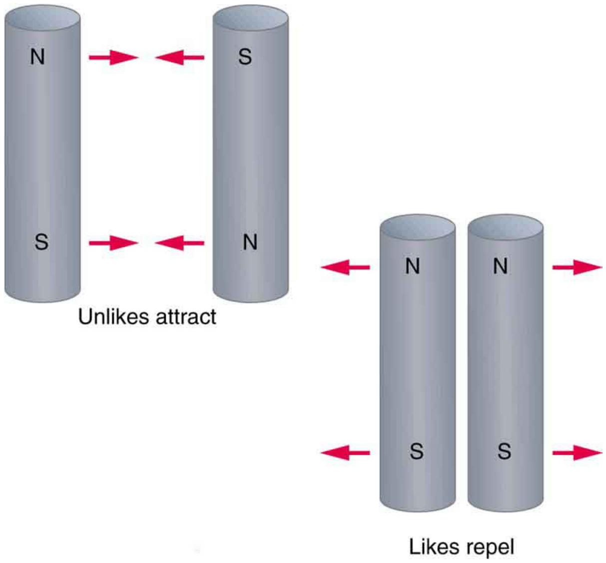
One end of a bar magnet is suspended from a thread that points toward north. The magnet's two poles are labeled N and S for north-seeking and south-seeking poles, respectively.

Note:

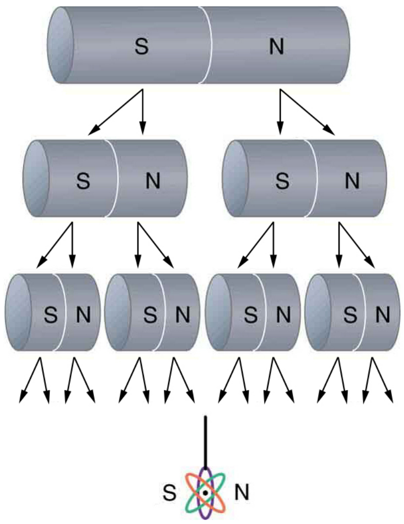
Misconception Alert: Earth's Geographic North Pole Hides an S

The Earth acts like a very large bar magnet with its south-seeking pole near the geographic North Pole. That is why the north pole of your compass is attracted toward the geographic north pole of the Earth—because the magnetic pole that is near the geographic North Pole is actually a south magnetic pole! Confusion arises because the geographic term "North Pole" has come to be used (incorrectly) for the magnetic pole that is near the

North Pole. Thus, “North magnetic pole” is actually a misnomer—it should be called the South magnetic pole.



Unlike poles attract, whereas like poles repel.



North and south poles always occur in pairs. Attempts

to separate them result in more pairs of poles. If we continue to split the magnet, we will eventually get down to an iron atom with a north pole and a south pole—these, too, cannot be separated.

The fact that magnetic poles always occur in pairs of north and south is true from the very large scale—for example, sunspots always occur in pairs that are north and south magnetic poles—all the way down to the very small scale. Magnetic atoms have both a north pole and a south pole, as do many types of subatomic particles, such as electrons, protons, and neutrons.

Note:
Making Connections: Take-Home Experiment—Refrigerator Magnets
We know that like magnetic poles repel and unlike poles attract. See if you can show this for two refrigerator magnets. Will the magnets stick if you turn them over? Why do they stick to the door anyway? What can you say about the magnetic properties of the door next to the magnet? Do refrigerator magnets stick to metal or plastic spoons? Do they stick to all types of metal?

Section Summary

- Magnetism is a subject that includes the properties of magnets, the effect of the magnetic force on moving charges and currents, and the

creation of magnetic fields by currents.
- There are two types of magnetic poles, called the north magnetic pole and south magnetic pole.
- North magnetic poles are those that are attracted toward the Earth’s geographic north pole.
- Like poles repel and unlike poles attract.
- Magnetic poles always occur in pairs of north and south—it is not possible to isolate north and south poles.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Volcanic and other such activity at the mid-Atlantic ridge extrudes material to fill the gap between separating tectonic plates associated with continental drift. The magnetization of rocks is found to reverse in a coordinated manner with distance from the ridge. What does this imply about the Earth’s magnetic field and how could the knowledge of the spreading rate be used to give its historical record?

Glossary

north magnetic pole
: the end or the side of a magnet that is attracted toward Earth’s geographic north pole

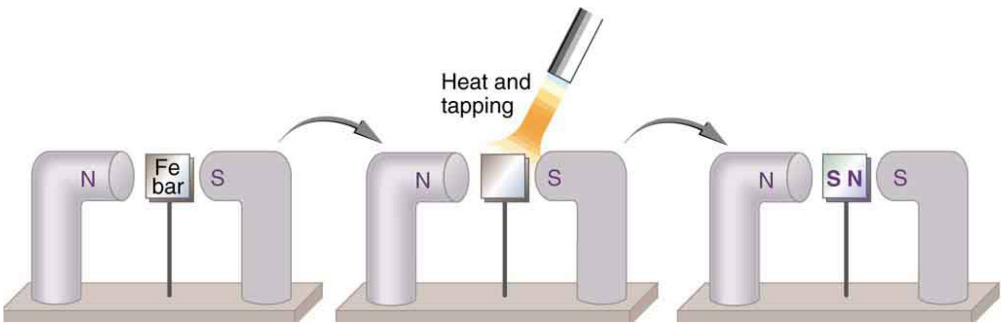
south magnetic pole
: the end or the side of a magnet that is attracted toward Earth’s geographic south pole

Ferromagnets and Electromagnets

- Define ferromagnet.
- Describe the role of magnetic domains in magnetization.
- Explain the significance of the Curie temperature.
- Describe the relationship between electricity and magnetism.

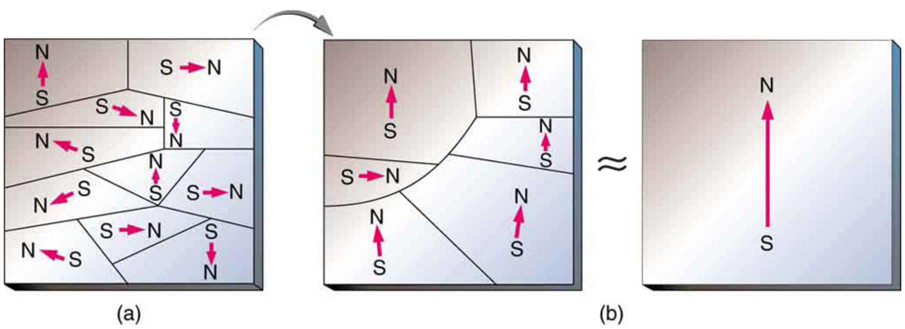
Ferromagnets

Only certain materials, such as iron, cobalt, nickel, and gadolinium, exhibit strong magnetic effects. Such materials are called **ferromagnetic**, after the Latin word for iron, *ferrum*. A group of materials made from the alloys of the rare earth elements are also used as strong and permanent magnets; a popular one is neodymium. Other materials exhibit weak magnetic effects, which are detectable only with sensitive instruments. Not only do ferromagnetic materials respond strongly to magnets (the way iron is attracted to magnets), they can also be **magnetized** themselves—that is, they can be induced to be magnetic or made into permanent magnets.



An unmagnetized piece of iron is placed between two magnets, heated, and then cooled, or simply tapped when cold. The iron becomes a permanent magnet with the poles aligned as shown: its south pole is adjacent to the north pole of the original magnet, and its north pole is adjacent to the south pole of the original magnet. Note that there are attractive forces between the magnets.

When a magnet is brought near a previously unmagnetized ferromagnetic material, it causes local magnetization of the material with unlike poles closest, as in [link]. (This results in the attraction of the previously unmagnetized material to the magnet.) What happens on a microscopic scale is illustrated in [link]. The regions within the material called **domains** act like small bar magnets. Within domains, the poles of individual atoms are aligned. Each atom acts like a tiny bar magnet. Domains are small and randomly oriented in an unmagnetized ferromagnetic object. In response to an external magnetic field, the domains may grow to millimeter size, aligning themselves as shown in [link](b). This induced magnetization can be made permanent if the material is heated and then cooled, or simply tapped in the presence of other magnets.



(a) An unmagnetized piece of iron (or other ferromagnetic material) has randomly oriented domains. (b) When magnetized by an external field, the domains show greater alignment, and some grow at the expense of others. Individual atoms are aligned within domains; each atom acts like a tiny bar magnet.

Conversely, a permanent magnet can be demagnetized by hard blows or by heating it in the absence of another magnet. Increased thermal motion at higher temperature can disrupt and randomize the orientation and the size of

the domains. There is a well-defined temperature for ferromagnetic materials, which is called the **Curie temperature**, above which they cannot be magnetized. The Curie temperature for iron is 1043 K $(770^{\circ}C)$, which is well above room temperature. There are several elements and alloys that have Curie temperatures much lower than room temperature and are ferromagnetic only below those temperatures.

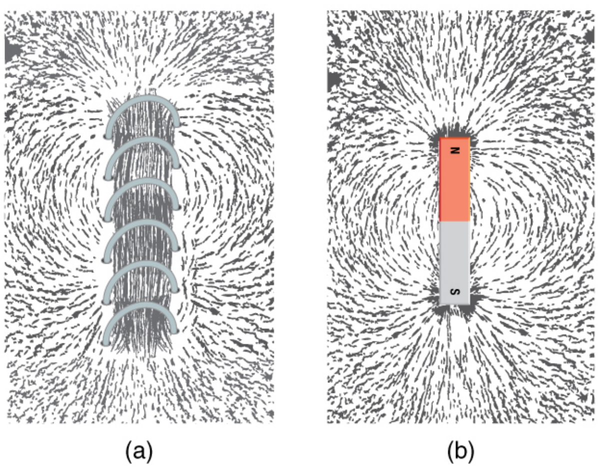
Electromagnets

Early in the 19th century, it was discovered that electrical currents cause magnetic effects. The first significant observation was by the Danish scientist Hans Christian Oersted (1777–1851), who found that a compass needle was deflected by a current-carrying wire. This was the first significant evidence that the movement of charges had any connection with magnets. **Electromagnetism** is the use of electric current to make magnets. These temporarily induced magnets are called **electromagnets**. Electromagnets are employed for everything from a wrecking yard crane that lifts scrapped cars to controlling the beam of a 90-km-circumference particle accelerator to the magnets in medical imaging machines (See [link]).

Instrument for magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). The device uses a superconducting

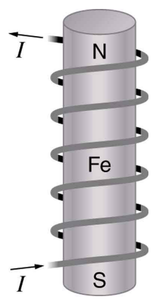
cylindrical coil for the main magnetic field. The patient goes into this “tunnel” on the gurney. (credit: Bill McChesney, Flickr)

[link] shows that the response of iron filings to a current-carrying coil and to a permanent bar magnet. The patterns are similar. In fact, electromagnets and ferromagnets have the same basic characteristics—for example, they have north and south poles that cannot be separated and for which like poles repel and unlike poles attract.



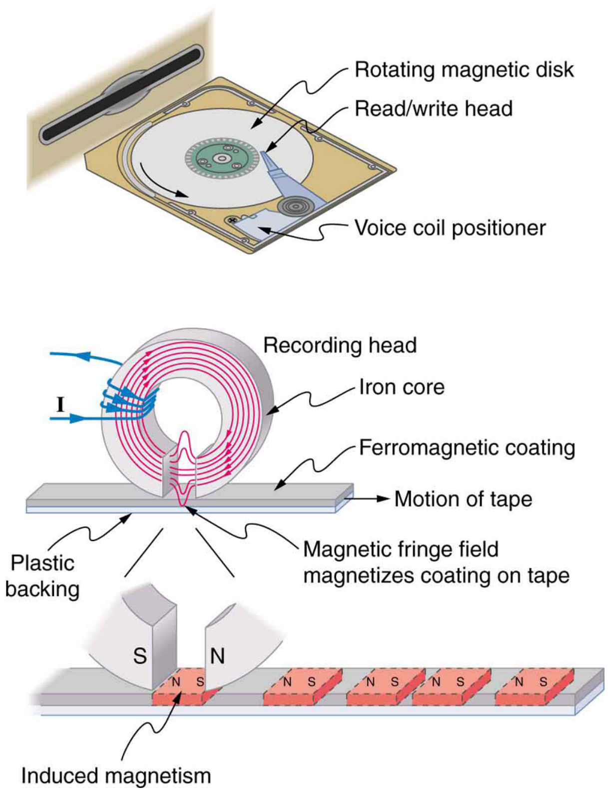
Iron filings near (a) a current-carrying coil and (b) a magnet act like tiny compass needles, showing the shape of their fields. Their response to a current-carrying coil and a permanent magnet is seen to be very similar, especially near the ends of the coil and the magnet.

Combining a ferromagnet with an electromagnet can produce particularly strong magnetic effects. (See [link].) Whenever strong magnetic effects are needed, such as lifting scrap metal, or in particle accelerators, electromagnets are enhanced by ferromagnetic materials. Limits to how strong the magnets can be made are imposed by coil resistance (it will overheat and melt at sufficiently high current), and so superconducting magnets may be employed. These are still limited, because superconducting properties are destroyed by too great a magnetic field.



An electromagnet with a ferromagnetic core can produce very strong magnetic effects. Alignment of domains in the core produces a magnet, the poles of which are aligned with the electromagnet.

[link] shows a few uses of combinations of electromagnets and ferromagnets. Ferromagnetic materials can act as memory devices, because the orientation of the magnetic fields of small domains can be reversed or erased. Magnetic information storage on videotapes and computer hard drives are among the most common applications. This property is vital in our digital world.



An electromagnet induces regions of permanent magnetism on a floppy disk coated with a ferromagnetic material. The information stored here is digital (a region is either magnetic or not); in other applications, it can be analog

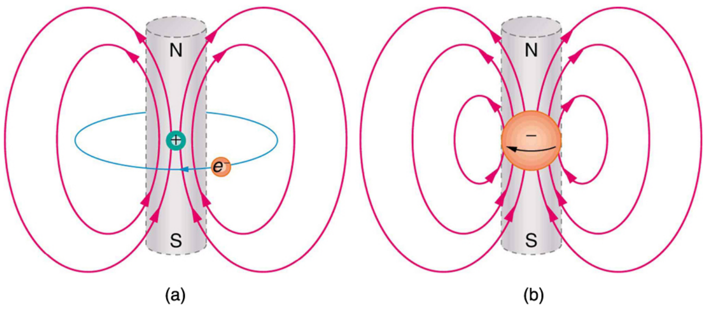
(with a varying strength), such as on audiotapes.

Current: The Source of All Magnetism

An electromagnet creates magnetism with an electric current. In later sections we explore this more quantitatively, finding the strength and direction of magnetic fields created by various currents. But what about ferromagnets? [link] shows models of how electric currents create magnetism at the submicroscopic level. (Note that we cannot directly observe the paths of individual electrons about atoms, and so a model or visual image, consistent with all direct observations, is made. We can directly observe the electron’s orbital angular momentum, its spin momentum, and subsequent magnetic moments, all of which are explained with electric-current-creating subatomic magnetism.) Currents, including those associated with other submicroscopic particles like protons, allow us to explain ferromagnetism and all other magnetic effects. Ferromagnetism, for example, results from an internal cooperative alignment of electron spins, possible in some materials but not in others.

Crucial to the statement that electric current is the source of all magnetism is the fact that it is impossible to separate north and south magnetic poles. (This is far different from the case of positive and negative charges, which are easily separated.) A current loop always produces a magnetic dipole—that is, a magnetic field that acts like a north pole and south pole pair. Since isolated north and south magnetic poles, called **magnetic monopoles**, are not observed, currents are used to explain all magnetic effects. If magnetic monopoles did exist, then we would have to modify this underlying connection that all magnetism is due to electrical current. There is no known reason that magnetic monopoles should not exist—they are simply never observed—and so searches at the subnuclear level continue. If they do *not* exist, we would like to find out why not. If they *do* exist, we would like to see evidence of them.

Note:
Electric Currents and Magnetism
Electric current is the source of all magnetism.



(a) In the planetary model of the atom, an electron orbits a nucleus, forming a closed-current loop and producing a magnetic field with a north pole and a south pole. (b) Electrons have spin and can be crudely pictured as rotating charge, forming a current that produces a magnetic field with a north pole and a south pole. Neither the planetary model nor the image of a spinning electron is completely consistent with modern physics. However, they do provide a useful way of understanding phenomena.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Magnets and Electromagnets
Explore the interactions between a compass and bar magnet. Discover how you can use a battery and wire to make a magnet! Can you make it a stronger magnet? Can you make the magnetic field reverse?

https://archive.cnx.org/specials/92176000-ae74-11e5-baad-cfab91c15075/magnets-and-electromagnets/#sim-bar-magnet

Section Summary

- Magnetic poles always occur in pairs of north and south—it is not possible to isolate north and south poles.
- All magnetism is created by electric current.
- Ferromagnetic materials, such as iron, are those that exhibit strong magnetic effects.
- The atoms in ferromagnetic materials act like small magnets (due to currents within the atoms) and can be aligned, usually in millimeter-sized regions called domains.
- Domains can grow and align on a larger scale, producing permanent magnets. Such a material is magnetized, or induced to be magnetic.
- Above a material's Curie temperature, thermal agitation destroys the alignment of atoms, and ferromagnetism disappears.
- Electromagnets employ electric currents to make magnetic fields, often aided by induced fields in ferromagnetic materials.

Glossary

ferromagnetic
: materials, such as iron, cobalt, nickel, and gadolinium, that exhibit strong magnetic effects

magnetized
: to be turned into a magnet; to be induced to be magnetic

domains
: regions within a material that behave like small bar magnets

Curie temperature
: the temperature above which a ferromagnetic material cannot be magnetized

electromagnetism
: the use of electrical currents to induce magnetism

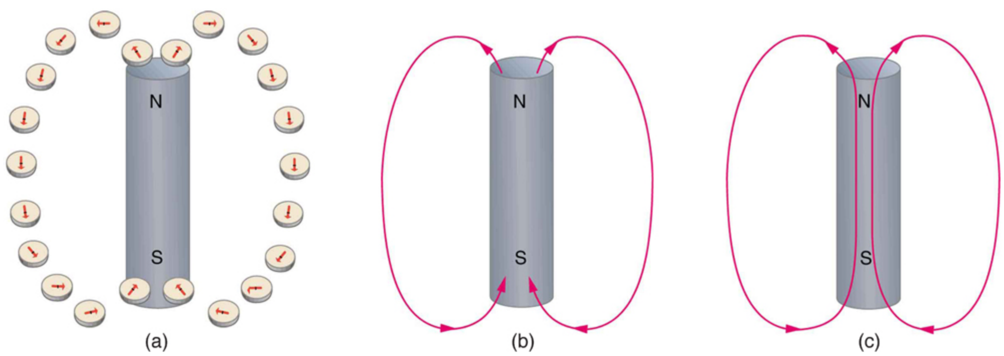
electromagnet
: an object that is temporarily magnetic when an electrical current is passed through it

magnetic monopoles
: an isolated magnetic pole; a south pole without a north pole, or vice versa (no magnetic monopole has ever been observed)

Magnetic Fields and Magnetic Field Lines

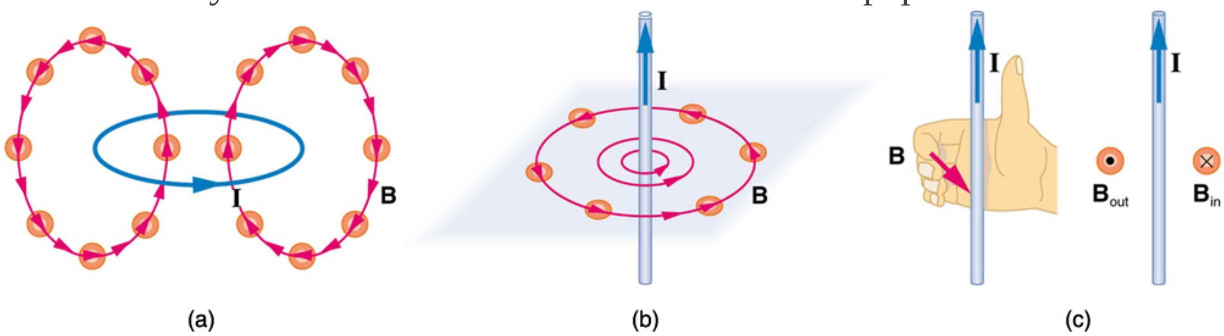
- Define magnetic field and describe the magnetic field lines of various magnetic fields.

Einstein is said to have been fascinated by a compass as a child, perhaps musing on how the needle felt a force without direct physical contact. His ability to think deeply and clearly about action at a distance, particularly for gravitational, electric, and magnetic forces, later enabled him to create his revolutionary theory of relativity. Since magnetic forces act at a distance, we define a **magnetic field** to represent magnetic forces. The pictorial representation of **magnetic field lines** is very useful in visualizing the strength and direction of the magnetic field. As shown in [link], the **direction of magnetic field lines** is defined to be the direction in which the north end of a compass needle points. The magnetic field is traditionally called the ***B*-field**.



Magnetic field lines are defined to have the direction that a small compass points when placed at a location. (a) If small compasses are used to map the magnetic field around a bar magnet, they will point in the directions shown: away from the north pole of the magnet, toward the south pole of the magnet. (Recall that the Earth's north magnetic pole is really a south pole in terms of definitions of poles on a bar magnet.) (b) Connecting the arrows gives continuous magnetic field lines. The strength of the field is proportional to the closeness (or density) of the lines. (c) If the interior of the magnet could be probed, the field lines would be found to form continuous closed loops.

Small compasses used to test a magnetic field will not disturb it. (This is analogous to the way we tested electric fields with a small test charge. In both cases, the fields represent only the object creating them and not the probe testing them.) [link] shows how the magnetic field appears for a current loop and a long straight wire, as could be explored with small compasses. A small compass placed in these fields will align itself parallel to the field line at its location, with its north pole pointing in the direction of *B*. Note the symbols used for field into and out of the paper.



Small compasses could be used to map the fields shown here. (a) The magnetic field of a circular current loop is similar to that of a bar magnet. (b) A long and straight wire creates a field with magnetic field lines forming circular loops. (c) When the wire is in the plane of the paper, the field is perpendicular to the paper. Note that the symbols used for the field pointing inward (like the tail of an arrow) and the field pointing outward (like the tip of an arrow).

Note:

Making Connections: Concept of a Field

A field is a way of mapping forces surrounding any object that can act on another object at a distance without apparent physical connection. The field represents the object generating it. Gravitational fields map

gravitational forces, electric fields map electrical forces, and magnetic fields map magnetic forces.

Extensive exploration of magnetic fields has revealed a number of hard-and-fast rules. We use magnetic field lines to represent the field (the lines are a pictorial tool, not a physical entity in and of themselves). The properties of magnetic field lines can be summarized by these rules:

1. The direction of the magnetic field is tangent to the field line at any point in space. A small compass will point in the direction of the field line.
2. The strength of the field is proportional to the closeness of the lines. It is exactly proportional to the number of lines per unit area perpendicular to the lines (called the areal density).
3. Magnetic field lines can never cross, meaning that the field is unique at any point in space.
4. Magnetic field lines are continuous, forming closed loops without beginning or end. They go from the north pole to the south pole.

The last property is related to the fact that the north and south poles cannot be separated. It is a distinct difference from electric field lines, which begin and end on the positive and negative charges. If magnetic monopoles existed, then magnetic field lines would begin and end on them.

Section Summary

- Magnetic fields can be pictorially represented by magnetic field lines, the properties of which are as follows:

1. The field is tangent to the magnetic field line.
2. Field strength is proportional to the line density.
3. Field lines cannot cross.
4. Field lines are continuous loops.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why the magnetic field would not be unique (that is, not have a single value) at a point in space where magnetic field lines might cross. (Consider the direction of the field at such a point.)

Exercise:

Problem:

List the ways in which magnetic field lines and electric field lines are similar. For example, the field direction is tangent to the line at any point in space. Also list the ways in which they differ. For example, electric force is parallel to electric field lines, whereas magnetic force on moving charges is perpendicular to magnetic field lines.

Exercise:

Problem:

Noting that the magnetic field lines of a bar magnet resemble the electric field lines of a pair of equal and opposite charges, do you expect the magnetic field to rapidly decrease in strength with distance from the magnet? Is this consistent with your experience with magnets?

Exercise:

Problem:

Is the Earth’s magnetic field parallel to the ground at all locations? If not, where is it parallel to the surface? Is its strength the same at all locations? If not, where is it greatest?

Glossary

magnetic field
: the representation of magnetic forces

B-field
: another term for magnetic field

magnetic field lines
: the pictorial representation of the strength and the direction of a magnetic field

direction of magnetic field lines
: the direction that the north end of a compass needle points

Magnetic Field Strength: Force on a Moving Charge in a Magnetic Field

- Describe the effects of magnetic fields on moving charges.
- Use the right hand rule 1 to determine the velocity of a charge, the direction of the magnetic field, and the direction of the magnetic force on a moving charge.
- Calculate the magnetic force on a moving charge.

What is the mechanism by which one magnet exerts a force on another? The answer is related to the fact that all magnetism is caused by current, the flow of charge. *Magnetic fields exert forces on moving charges*, and so they exert forces on other magnets, all of which have moving charges.

Right Hand Rule 1

The magnetic force on a moving charge is one of the most fundamental known. Magnetic force is as important as the electrostatic or Coulomb force. Yet the magnetic force is more complex, in both the number of factors that affects it and in its direction, than the relatively simple Coulomb force. The magnitude of the **magnetic force** F on a charge q moving at a speed v in a magnetic field of strength B is given by
Equation:

$$F = \text{qvB}\sin\theta,$$

where θ is the angle between the directions of **v** and $\mathbf{B}$. This force is often called the **Lorentz force**. In fact, this is how we define the magnetic field strength B—in terms of the force on a charged particle moving in a magnetic field. The SI unit for magnetic field strength B is called the **tesla** (T) after the eccentric but brilliant inventor Nikola Tesla (1856–1943). To determine how the tesla relates to other SI units, we solve $F = \text{qvB}\sin\theta$ for B.
Equation:

$$B = \frac{F}{\text{qv}\sin\theta}$$

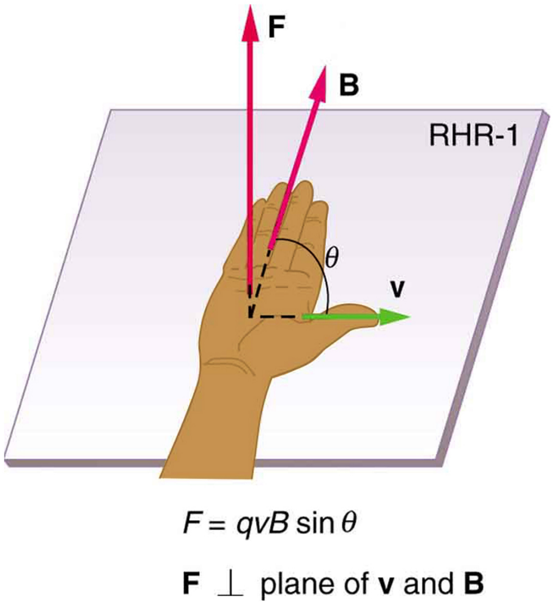
Because sin θ is unitless, the tesla is
Equation:

$$1\ \text{T} = \frac{1\ \text{N}}{\text{C}\cdot\text{m/s}} = \frac{1\ \text{N}}{\text{A}\cdot\text{m}}$$

(note that C/s = A).

Another smaller unit, called the **gauss** (G), where $1\ \text{G} = 10^{-4}\ \text{T}$, is sometimes used. The strongest permanent magnets have fields near 2 T; superconducting electromagnets may attain 10 T or more. The Earth's magnetic field on its surface is only about $5 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T}$, or 0.5 G.

The *direction* of the magnetic force $\mathbf{F}$ is perpendicular to the plane formed by $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{B}$, as determined by the **right hand rule 1** (or RHR-1), which is illustrated in [link]. RHR-1 states that, to determine the direction of the magnetic force on a positive moving charge, you point the thumb of the right hand in the direction of $\mathbf{v}$, the fingers in the direction of $\mathbf{B}$, and a perpendicular to the palm points in the direction of $\mathbf{F}$. One way to remember this is that there is one velocity, and so the thumb represents it. There are many field lines, and so the fingers represent them. The force is in the direction you would push with your palm. The force on a negative charge is in exactly the opposite direction to that on a positive charge.



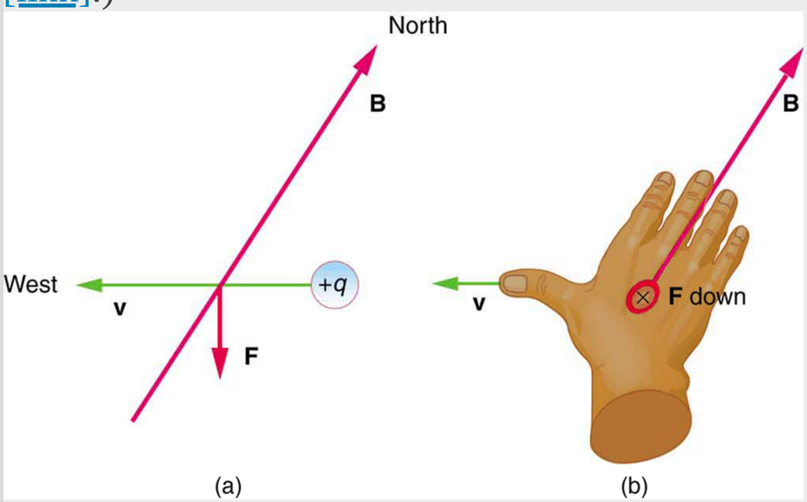
Magnetic fields exert forces on moving charges. This force is one of the most basic known. The direction of the magnetic force on a moving charge is perpendicular to the plane formed by $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ and follows right hand rule–1 (RHR-1) as shown. The magnitude of the force is proportional to q, v, B, and the sine of the angle between $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{B}$.

Note:
Making Connections: Charges and Magnets
There is no magnetic force on static charges. However, there is a magnetic force on moving charges. When charges are stationary, their electric fields do not affect magnets. But, when charges move, they produce magnetic

fields that exert forces on other magnets. When there is relative motion, a connection between electric and magnetic fields emerges—each affects the other.

Example:
Calculating Magnetic Force: Earth's Magnetic Field on a Charged Glass Rod

With the exception of compasses, you seldom see or personally experience forces due to the Earth's small magnetic field. To illustrate this, suppose that in a physics lab you rub a glass rod with silk, placing a 20-nC positive charge on it. Calculate the force on the rod due to the Earth's magnetic field, if you throw it with a horizontal velocity of 10 m/s due west in a place where the Earth's field is due north parallel to the ground. (The direction of the force is determined with right hand rule 1 as shown in [link].)



A positively charged object moving due west in a region where the Earth's magnetic field is due north experiences a force that is straight down as shown. A negative charge moving in the same direction would feel a force straight up.

Strategy
We are given the charge, its velocity, and the magnetic field strength and direction. We can thus use the equation $F = \text{qvB} \sin \theta$ to find the force.
Solution
The magnetic force is
Equation:

$$F = \text{qvb} \sin \theta.$$

We see that $\sin \theta = 1$, since the angle between the velocity and the direction of the field is 90º. Entering the other given quantities yields
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll} F & = & \left(20 \times 10^{-9} \text{ C}\right)\left(10 \text{ m/s}\right)\left(5 \times 10^{-5} \text{ T}\right) \\ & = & 1 \times 10^{-11} \left(\text{C} \cdot \text{m/s}\right)\left(\frac{\text{N}}{\text{C} \cdot \text{m/s}}\right) = 1 \times 10^{-11} \text{ N.} \end{array}$$

Discussion
This force is completely negligible on any macroscopic object, consistent with experience. (It is calculated to only one digit, since the Earth's field varies with location and is given to only one digit.) The Earth's magnetic field, however, does produce very important effects, particularly on submicroscopic particles. Some of these are explored in Force on a Moving Charge in a Magnetic Field: Examples and Applications.

Section Summary

- Magnetic fields exert a force on a moving charge q, the magnitude of which is
  Equation:

  $$F = \text{qvB} \sin \theta,$$

  where θ is the angle between the directions of v and B.
- The SI unit for magnetic field strength B is the tesla (T), which is related to other units by

Equation:

$$1\ \mathrm{T} = \frac{1\ \mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{C} \cdot \mathrm{m/s}} = \frac{1\ \mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{A} \cdot \mathrm{m}}.$$

- The *direction* of the force on a moving charge is given by right hand rule 1 (RHR-1): Point the thumb of the right hand in the direction of v, the fingers in the direction of B, and a perpendicular to the palm points in the direction of F.
- The force is perpendicular to the plane formed by $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{B}$. Since the force is zero if $\mathbf{v}$ is parallel to $\mathbf{B}$, charged particles often follow magnetic field lines rather than cross them.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

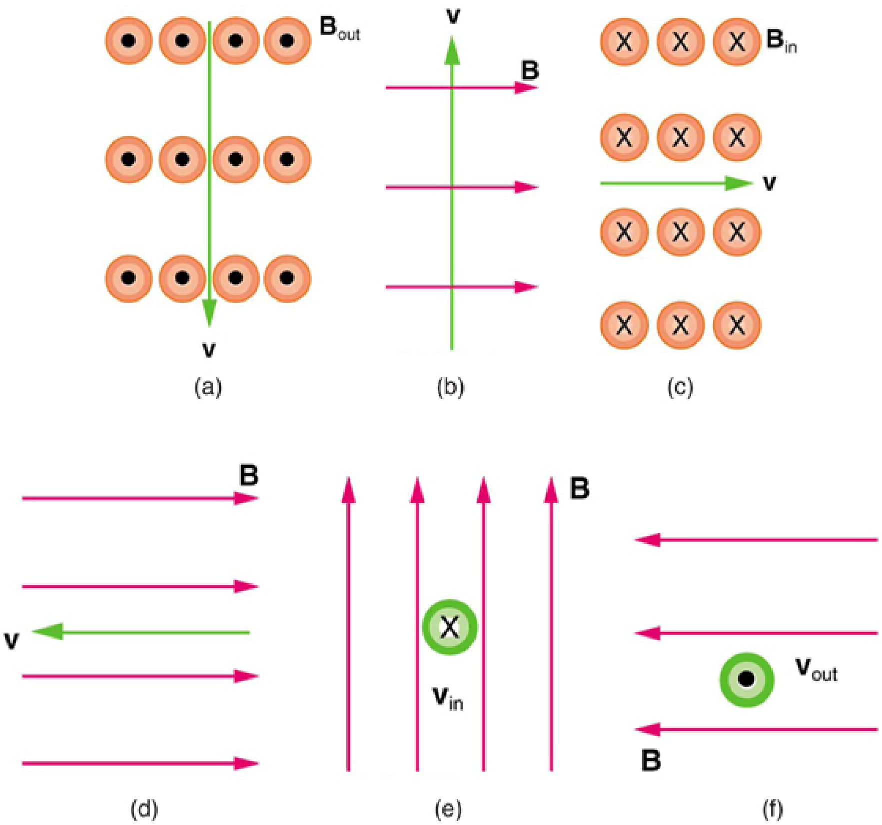
If a charged particle moves in a straight line through some region of space, can you say that the magnetic field in that region is necessarily zero?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the direction of the magnetic force on a positive charge that moves as shown in each of the six cases shown in [link]?



Solution:

(a) Left (West)

(b) Into the page

(c) Up (North)

(d) No force

(e) Right (East)

(f) Down (South)

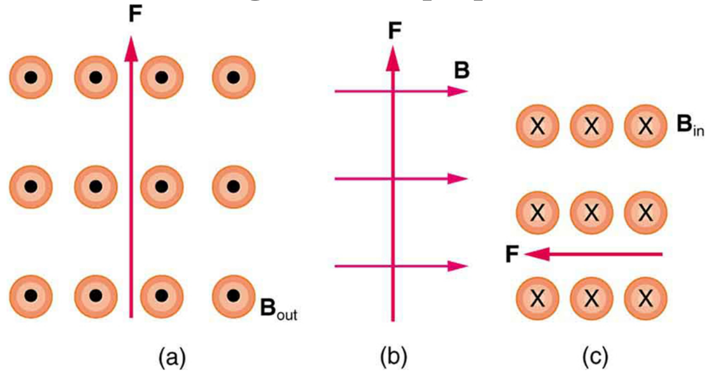
Exercise:

Problem: Repeat [link] for a negative charge.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the direction of the velocity of a negative charge that experiences the magnetic force shown in each of the three cases in [link], assuming it moves perpendicular to $\mathbf{B}$?



Solution:

(a) East (right)

(b) Into page

(c) South (down)

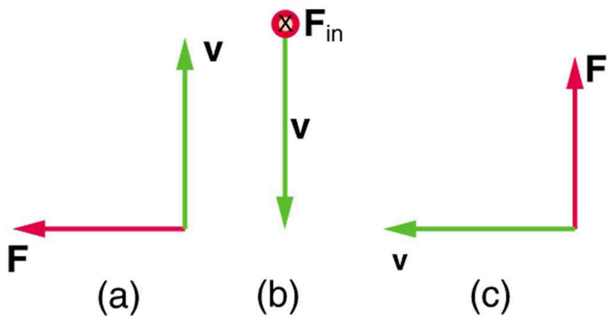
Exercise:

Problem: Repeat [link] for a positive charge.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the direction of the magnetic field that produces the magnetic force on a positive charge as shown in each of the three cases in the figure below, assuming $\mathbf{B}$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{v}$?



Solution:

(a) Into page

(b) West (left)

(c) Out of page

Exercise:

Problem: Repeat [link] for a negative charge.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the maximum magnitude of the force on an aluminum rod with a $0.100\text{-}\mu\text{C}$ charge that you pass between the poles of a 1.50-T permanent magnet at a speed of 5.00 m/s? In what direction is the force?

Solution:

7.50×10^{-7} N perpendicular to both the magnetic field lines and the velocity

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Aircraft sometimes acquire small static charges. Suppose a supersonic jet has a $0.500\text{-}\mu C$ charge and flies due west at a speed of 660 m/s over the Earth’s magnetic south pole (near Earth's geographic north pole), where the $8.00 \times 10^{-5}\text{-T}$ magnetic field points straight down. What are the direction and the magnitude of the magnetic force on the plane? (b) Discuss whether the value obtained in part (a) implies this is a significant or negligible effect.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A cosmic ray proton moving toward the Earth at $5.00 \times 10^{7}\ \mathrm{m/s}$ experiences a magnetic force of $1.70 \times 10^{-16}\ \mathrm{N}$. What is the strength of the magnetic field if there is a 45° angle between it and the proton’s velocity? (b) Is the value obtained in part (a) consistent with the known strength of the Earth’s magnetic field on its surface? Discuss.

Solution:

(a) $3.01 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$

(b) This is slightly less then the magnetic field strength of $5 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$ at the surface of the Earth, so it is consistent.

Exercise:

Problem:

An electron moving at $4.00 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{m/s}$ in a 1.25-T magnetic field experiences a magnetic force of $1.40 \times 10^{-16}\ \mathrm{N}$. What angle does the velocity of the electron make with the magnetic field? There are two answers.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A physicist performing a sensitive measurement wants to limit the magnetic force on a moving charge in her equipment to less than 1.00×10^{-12} N. What is the greatest the charge can be if it moves at a maximum speed of 30.0 m/s in the Earth's field? (b) Discuss whether it would be difficult to limit the charge to less than the value found in (a) by comparing it with typical static electricity and noting that static is often absent.

Solution:

(a) 6.67×10^{-10} C (taking the Earth's field to be 5.00×10^{-5} T)

(b) Less than typical static, therefore difficult

Glossary

right hand rule 1 (RHR-1)
: the rule to determine the direction of the magnetic force on a positive moving charge: when the thumb of the right hand points in the direction of the charge's velocity **v** and the fingers point in the direction of the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$, then the force on the charge is perpendicular and away from the palm; the force on a negative charge is perpendicular and into the palm

Lorentz force
: the force on a charge moving in a magnetic field

tesla
: T, the SI unit of the magnetic field strength; $1\ \mathrm{T} = \frac{1\ \mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{A \cdot m}}$

magnetic force
: the force on a charge produced by its motion through a magnetic field; the Lorentz force

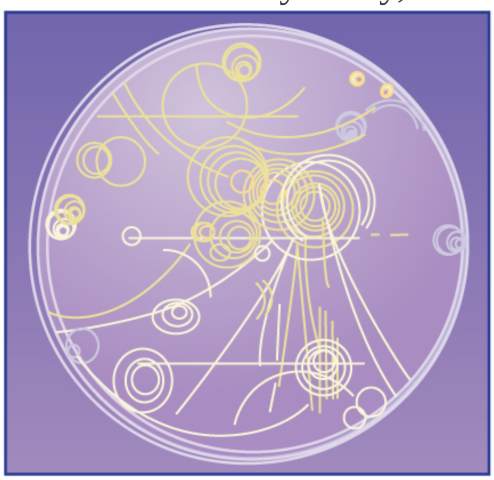
gauss

G, the unit of the magnetic field strength; $1\ \mathrm{G} = 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{T}$

Force on a Moving Charge in a Magnetic Field: Examples and Applications

- Describe the effects of a magnetic field on a moving charge.
- Calculate the radius of curvature of the path of a charge that is moving in a magnetic field.

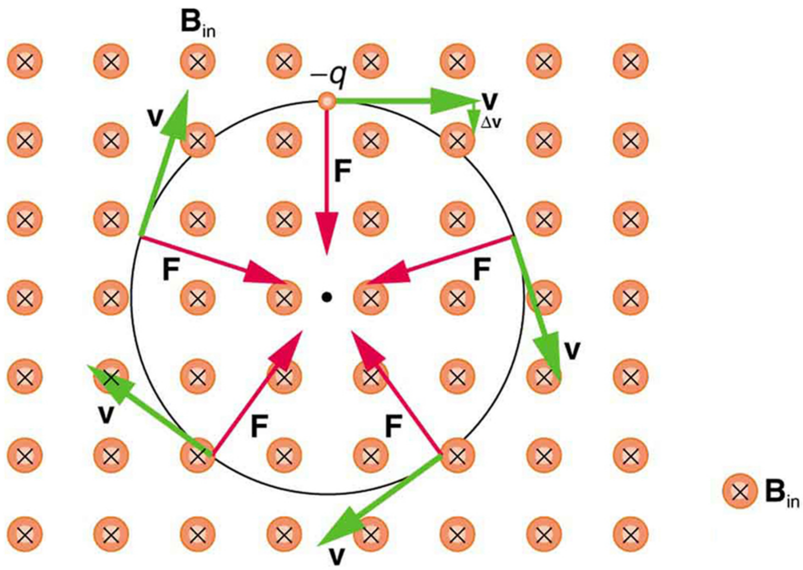
Magnetic force can cause a charged particle to move in a circular or spiral path. Cosmic rays are energetic charged particles in outer space, some of which approach the Earth. They can be forced into spiral paths by the Earth's magnetic field. Protons in giant accelerators are kept in a circular path by magnetic force. The bubble chamber photograph in [link] shows charged particles moving in such curved paths. The curved paths of charged particles in magnetic fields are the basis of a number of phenomena and can even be used analytically, such as in a mass spectrometer.



Trails of bubbles are produced by high-energy charged particles moving through the superheated liquid hydrogen in this artist's rendition of a bubble chamber. There is a strong magnetic field perpendicular to the page that causes the curved paths of the particles. The radius of the path can be

used to find the mass, charge, and energy of the particle.

So does the magnetic force cause circular motion? Magnetic force is always perpendicular to velocity, so that it does no work on the charged particle. The particle's kinetic energy and speed thus remain constant. The direction of motion is affected, but not the speed. This is typical of uniform circular motion. The simplest case occurs when a charged particle moves perpendicular to a uniform B-field, such as shown in [link]. (If this takes place in a vacuum, the magnetic field is the dominant factor determining the motion.) Here, the magnetic force supplies the centripetal force $F_{\text{c}} = mv^2/r$. Noting that $\sin\theta = 1$, we see that $F = \text{qvB}$.



A negatively charged particle moves in the plane of the page in a region where the magnetic field is perpendicular into the page (represented by the small circles with x's—like the tails of arrows). The magnetic force is perpendicular to the velocity, and so velocity changes in direction but not magnitude. Uniform circular motion results.

Because the magnetic force F supplies the centripetal force F_{c}, we have
Equation:

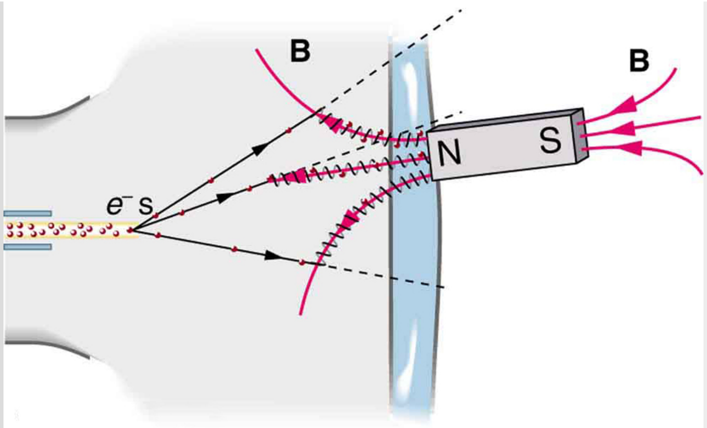
$$\mathrm{qvB} = \frac{mv^2}{r}.$$

Solving for r yields
Equation:

$$r = \frac{\mathrm{mv}}{\mathrm{qB}}.$$

Here, r is the radius of curvature of the path of a charged particle with mass m and charge q, moving at a speed v perpendicular to a magnetic field of strength B. If the velocity is not perpendicular to the magnetic field, then v is the component of the velocity perpendicular to the field. The component of the velocity parallel to the field is unaffected, since the magnetic force is zero for motion parallel to the field. This produces a spiral motion rather than a circular one.

Example:
Calculating the Curvature of the Path of an Electron Moving in a Magnetic Field: A Magnet on a TV Screen
A magnet brought near an old-fashioned TV screen such as in [link] (TV sets with cathode ray tubes instead of LCD screens) severely distorts its picture by altering the path of the electrons that make its phosphors glow. ***(Don't try this at home, as it will permanently magnetize and ruin the TV.)*** To illustrate this, calculate the radius of curvature of the path of an electron having a velocity of $6.00 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{m/s}$ (corresponding to the accelerating voltage of about 10.0 kV used in some TVs) perpendicular to a magnetic field of strength $B = 0.500\ \mathrm{T}$ (obtainable with permanent magnets).



Side view showing what happens when a magnet comes in contact with a computer monitor or TV screen. Electrons moving toward the screen spiral about magnetic field lines, maintaining the component of their velocity parallel to the field lines. This distorts the image on the screen.

Strategy
We can find the radius of curvature r directly from the equation $r = \frac{mv}{qB}$, since all other quantities in it are given or known.
Solution
Using known values for the mass and charge of an electron, along with the given values of v and B gives us
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} r = \frac{\text{mv}}{\text{qB}} &= \frac{\left(9.11\times10^{-31}\ \text{kg}\right)\left(6.00\times10^{7}\ \text{m/s}\right)}{\left(1.60\times10^{-19}\ \text{C}\right)(0.500\ \text{T})} \\ &= 6.83\times10^{-4}\ \text{m} \end{aligned}$$

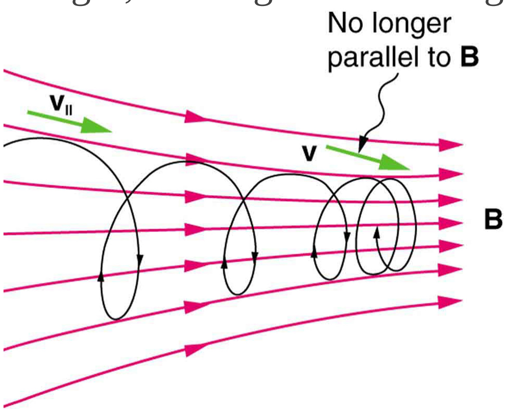
or
Equation:

$$r = 0.683\ \text{mm}.$$

Discussion

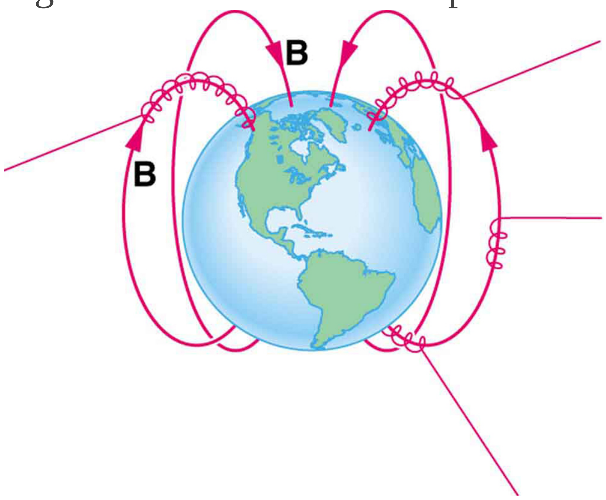
The small radius indicates a large effect. The electrons in the TV picture tube are made to move in very tight circles, greatly altering their paths and distorting the image.

[link] shows how electrons not moving perpendicular to magnetic field lines follow the field lines. The component of velocity parallel to the lines is unaffected, and so the charges spiral along the field lines. If field strength increases in the direction of motion, the field will exert a force to slow the charges, forming a kind of magnetic mirror, as shown below.



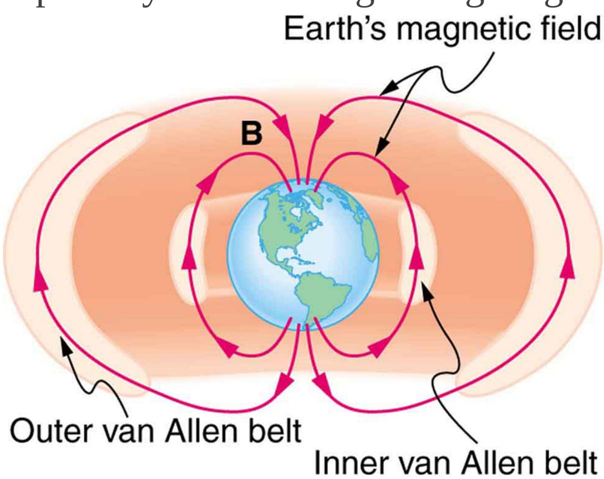
When a charged particle moves along a magnetic field line into a region where the field becomes stronger, the particle experiences a force that reduces the component of velocity parallel to the field. This force slows the motion along the field line and here reverses it, forming a “magnetic mirror.”

The properties of charged particles in magnetic fields are related to such different things as the Aurora Australis or Aurora Borealis and particle accelerators. *Charged particles approaching magnetic field lines may get trapped in spiral orbits about the lines rather than crossing them*, as seen above. Some cosmic rays, for example, follow the Earth's magnetic field lines, entering the atmosphere near the magnetic poles and causing the southern or northern lights through their ionization of molecules in the atmosphere. This glow of energized atoms and molecules is seen in [link]. Those particles that approach middle latitudes must cross magnetic field lines, and many are prevented from penetrating the atmosphere. Cosmic rays are a component of background radiation; consequently, they give a higher radiation dose at the poles than at the equator.



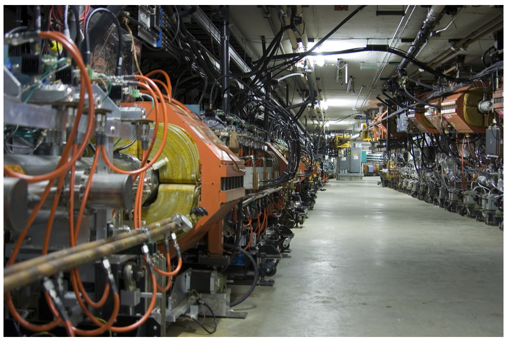
Energetic electrons and protons, components of cosmic rays, from the Sun and deep outer space often follow the Earth's magnetic field lines rather than cross them. (Recall that the Earth's north magnetic pole is really a south pole in terms of a bar magnet.)

Some incoming charged particles become trapped in the Earth's magnetic field, forming two belts above the atmosphere known as the Van Allen radiation belts after the discoverer James A. Van Allen, an American astrophysicist. (See [link].) Particles trapped in these belts form radiation fields (similar to nuclear radiation) so intense that piloted space flights avoid them and satellites with sensitive electronics are kept out of them. In the few minutes it took lunar missions to cross the Van Allen radiation belts, astronauts received radiation doses more than twice the allowed annual exposure for radiation workers. Other planets have similar belts, especially those having strong magnetic fields like Jupiter.



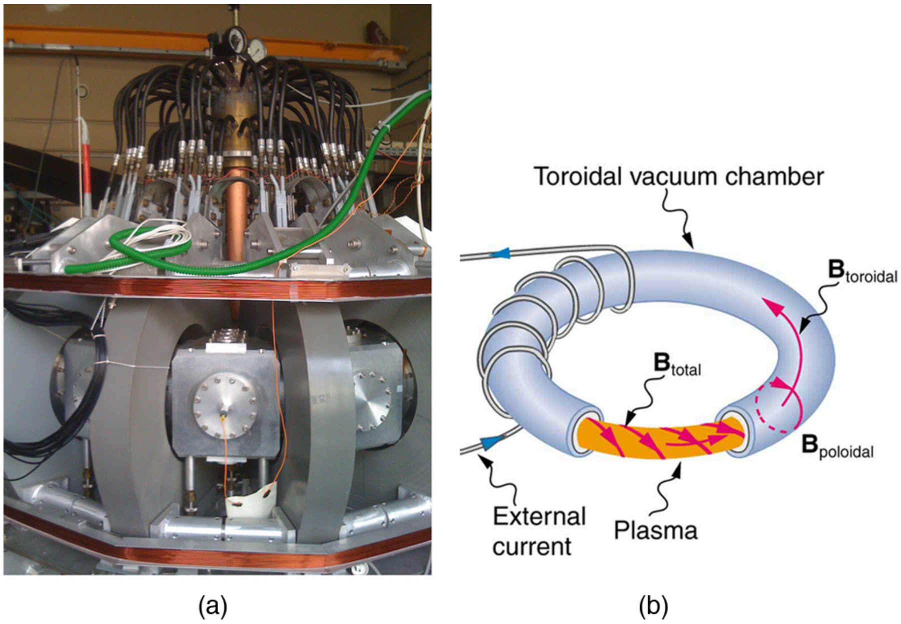
The Van Allen radiation belts are two regions in which energetic charged particles are trapped in the Earth's magnetic field. One belt lies about 300 km above the Earth's surface, the other about 16,000 km. Charged particles in these belts migrate along magnetic field lines and are partially reflected away from the poles by the stronger fields there. The charged particles that enter the atmosphere are replenished by the Sun and sources in deep outer space.

Back on Earth, we have devices that employ magnetic fields to contain charged particles. Among them are the giant particle accelerators that have been used to explore the substructure of matter. (See [link].) Magnetic fields not only control the direction of the charged particles, they also are used to focus particles into beams and overcome the repulsion of like charges in these beams.



The Fermilab facility in Illinois has a large particle accelerator (the most powerful in the world until 2008) that employs magnetic fields (magnets seen here in orange) to contain and direct its beam. This and other accelerators have been in use for several decades and have allowed us to discover some of the laws underlying all matter. (credit: ammcrim, Flickr)

Thermonuclear fusion (like that occurring in the Sun) is a hope for a future clean energy source. One of the most promising devices is the *tokamak*, which uses magnetic fields to contain (or trap) and direct the reactive charged particles. (See [link].) Less exotic, but more immediately practical, amplifiers in microwave ovens use a magnetic field to contain oscillating electrons. These oscillating electrons generate the microwaves sent into the oven.



Tokamaks such as the one shown in the figure are being studied with the goal of economical production of energy by nuclear fusion. Magnetic fields in the doughnut-shaped device contain and direct the reactive charged particles. (credit: David Mellis, Flickr)

Mass spectrometers have a variety of designs, and many use magnetic fields to measure mass. The curvature of a charged particle's path in the field is related to its mass and is measured to obtain mass information. (See More Applications of Magnetism.) Historically, such techniques were employed in the first direct observations of electron charge and mass. Today, mass

spectrometers (sometimes coupled with gas chromatographs) are used to determine the make-up and sequencing of large biological molecules.

Section Summary

- Magnetic force can supply centripetal force and cause a charged particle to move in a circular path of radius
  Equation:
  $$r = \frac{\mathrm{mv}}{\mathrm{qB}},$$
  where v is the component of the velocity perpendicular to B for a charged particle with mass m and charge q.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

How can the motion of a charged particle be used to distinguish between a magnetic and an electric field?

Exercise:

Problem:

High-velocity charged particles can damage biological cells and are a component of radiation exposure in a variety of locations ranging from research facilities to natural background. Describe how you could use a magnetic field to shield yourself.

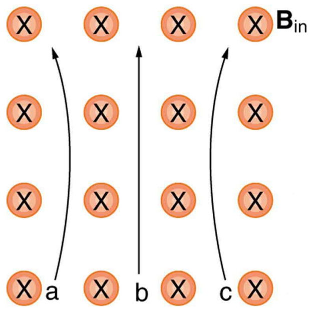
Exercise:

Problem:

If a cosmic ray proton approaches the Earth from outer space along a line toward the center of the Earth that lies in the plane of the equator, in what direction will it be deflected by the Earth's magnetic field? What about an electron? A neutron?

Exercise:

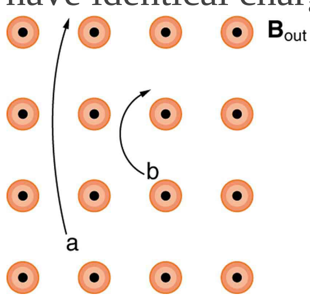
Problem: What are the signs of the charges on the particles in [link]?



Exercise:

Problem:

Which of the particles in [link] has the greatest velocity, assuming they have identical charges and masses?



Exercise:

Problem:

Which of the particles in [link] has the greatest mass, assuming all have identical charges and velocities?

Exercise:

Problem:

While operating, a high-precision TV monitor is placed on its side during maintenance. The image on the monitor changes color and blurs slightly. Discuss the possible relation of these effects to the Earth's magnetic field.

Problems & Exercises

If you need additional support for these problems, see More Applications of Magnetism.

Exercise:

Problem:

A cosmic ray electron moves at $7.50 \times 10^{6}\ \text{m/s}$ perpendicular to the Earth's magnetic field at an altitude where field strength is $1.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T}$. What is the radius of the circular path the electron follows?

Solution:

4.27 m

Exercise:

Problem:

A proton moves at $7.50 \times 10^{7}\ \text{m/s}$ perpendicular to a magnetic field. The field causes the proton to travel in a circular path of radius 0.800 m. What is the field strength?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Viewers of *Star Trek* hear of an antimatter drive on the Starship *Enterprise*. One possibility for such a futuristic energy source is to store antimatter charged particles in a vacuum chamber, circulating in a magnetic field, and then extract them as needed. Antimatter annihilates with normal matter, producing pure energy. What strength magnetic field is needed to hold antiprotons, moving at $5.00 \times 10^7 \text{ m/s}$ in a circular path 2.00 m in radius? Antiprotons have the same mass as protons but the opposite (negative) charge. (b) Is this field strength obtainable with today's technology or is it a futuristic possibility?

Solution:

(a) 0.261 T

(b) This strength is definitely obtainable with today's technology. Magnetic field strengths of 0.500 T are obtainable with permanent magnets.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) An oxygen-16 ion with a mass of 2.66×10^{-26} kg travels at $5.00 \times 10^6 \text{ m/s}$ perpendicular to a 1.20-T magnetic field, which makes it move in a circular arc with a 0.231-m radius. What positive charge is on the ion? (b) What is the ratio of this charge to the charge of an electron? (c) Discuss why the ratio found in (b) should be an integer.

Exercise:

Problem:

What radius circular path does an electron travel if it moves at the same speed and in the same magnetic field as the proton in [link]?

Solution:

4.36×10^{-4} m

Exercise:

Problem:

A velocity selector in a mass spectrometer uses a 0.100-T magnetic field. (a) What electric field strength is needed to select a speed of 4.00×10^{6} m/s? (b) What is the voltage between the plates if they are separated by 1.00 cm?

Exercise:

Problem:

An electron in a TV CRT moves with a speed of 6.00×10^{7} m/s, in a direction perpendicular to the Earth's field, which has a strength of 5.00×10^{-5} T. (a) What strength electric field must be applied perpendicular to the Earth's field to make the electron moves in a straight line? (b) If this is done between plates separated by 1.00 cm, what is the voltage applied? (Note that TVs are usually surrounded by a ferromagnetic material to shield against external magnetic fields and avoid the need for such a correction.)

Solution:

(a) 3.00 kV/m

(b) 30.0 V

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) At what speed will a proton move in a circular path of the same radius as the electron in [link]? (b) What would the radius of the path be if the proton had the same speed as the electron? (c) What would the radius be if the proton had the same kinetic energy as the electron? (d) The same momentum?

Exercise:

Problem:

A mass spectrometer is being used to separate common oxygen-16 from the much rarer oxygen-18, taken from a sample of old glacial ice. (The relative abundance of these oxygen isotopes is related to climatic temperature at the time the ice was deposited.) The ratio of the masses of these two ions is 16 to 18, the mass of oxygen-16 is $2.66 \times 10^{-26}\ \text{kg}$, and they are singly charged and travel at $5.00 \times 10^{6}\ \text{m/s}$ in a 1.20-T magnetic field. What is the separation between their paths when they hit a target after traversing a semicircle?

Solution:

0.173 m

Exercise:

Problem:

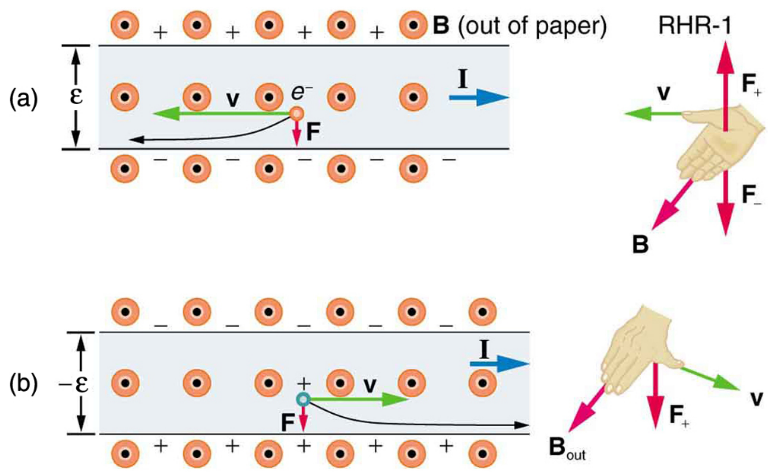
(a) Triply charged uranium-235 and uranium-238 ions are being separated in a mass spectrometer. (The much rarer uranium-235 is used as reactor fuel.) The masses of the ions are $3.90 \times 10^{-25}\ \text{kg}$ and $3.95 \times 10^{-25}\ \text{kg}$, respectively, and they travel at $3.00 \times 10^{5}\ \text{m/s}$ in a 0.250-T field. What is the separation between their paths when they hit a target after traversing a semicircle? (b) Discuss whether this distance between their paths seems to be big enough to be practical in the separation of uranium-235 from uranium-238.

The Hall Effect

- Describe the Hall effect.
- Calculate the Hall emf across a current-carrying conductor.

We have seen effects of a magnetic field on free-moving charges. The magnetic field also affects charges moving in a conductor. One result is the Hall effect, which has important implications and applications.

[link] shows what happens to charges moving through a conductor in a magnetic field. The field is perpendicular to the electron drift velocity and to the width of the conductor. Note that conventional current is to the right in both parts of the figure. In part (a), electrons carry the current and move to the left. In part (b), positive charges carry the current and move to the right. Moving electrons feel a magnetic force toward one side of the conductor, leaving a net positive charge on the other side. This separation of charge *creates a voltage* ε, known as the **Hall emf**, *across* the conductor. The creation of a voltage *across* a current-carrying conductor by a magnetic field is known as the **Hall effect**, after Edwin Hall, the American physicist who discovered it in 1879.



The Hall effect. (a) Electrons move to the left in this flat conductor (conventional current to the right). The magnetic field is directly out of the page, represented by circled dots; it exerts a force on the moving charges, causing a voltage ε, the

Hall emf, across the conductor. (b) Positive charges moving to the right (conventional current also to the right) are moved to the side, producing a Hall emf of the opposite sign, –ε. Thus, if the direction of the field and current are known, the sign of the charge carriers can be determined from the Hall effect.

One very important use of the Hall effect is to determine whether positive or negative charges carries the current. Note that in [link](b), where positive charges carry the current, the Hall emf has the sign opposite to when negative charges carry the current. Historically, the Hall effect was used to show that electrons carry current in metals and it also shows that positive charges carry current in some semiconductors. The Hall effect is used today as a research tool to probe the movement of charges, their drift velocities and densities, and so on, in materials. In 1980, it was discovered that the Hall effect is quantized, an example of quantum behavior in a macroscopic object.

The Hall effect has other uses that range from the determination of blood flow rate to precision measurement of magnetic field strength. To examine these quantitatively, we need an expression for the Hall emf, ε, across a conductor. Consider the balance of forces on a moving charge in a situation where B, v, and l are mutually perpendicular, such as shown in [link]. Although the magnetic force moves negative charges to one side, they cannot build up without limit. The electric field caused by their separation opposes the magnetic force, $F = \mathrm{qvB}$, and the electric force, $F_{\mathrm{e}} = \mathrm{qE}$, eventually grows to equal it. That is,

Equation:

$$\mathrm{qE} = \mathrm{qvB}$$

or

Equation:

$$E = \text{vB}.$$

Note that the electric field E is uniform across the conductor because the magnetic field B is uniform, as is the conductor. For a uniform electric field, the relationship between electric field and voltage is $E = \varepsilon / l$, where l is the width of the conductor and ε is the Hall emf. Entering this into the last expression gives

Equation:

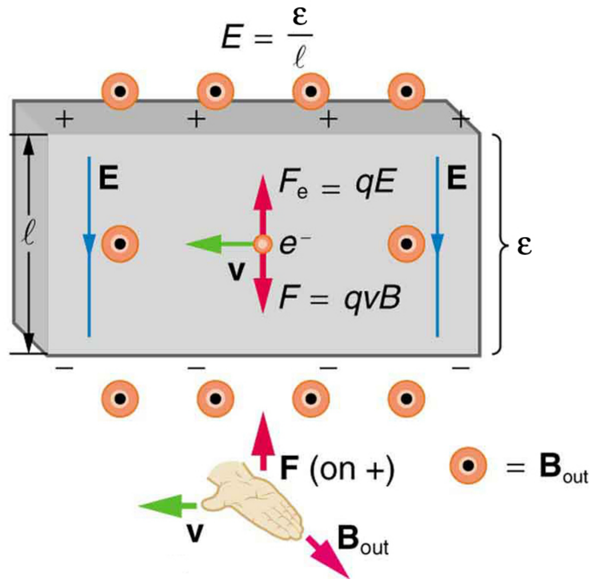
$$\frac{\varepsilon}{l} = \text{vB}.$$

Solving this for the Hall emf yields

Equation:

$$\varepsilon = Blv \; (B, v, \text{ and } l, \text{ mutually perpendicular}),$$

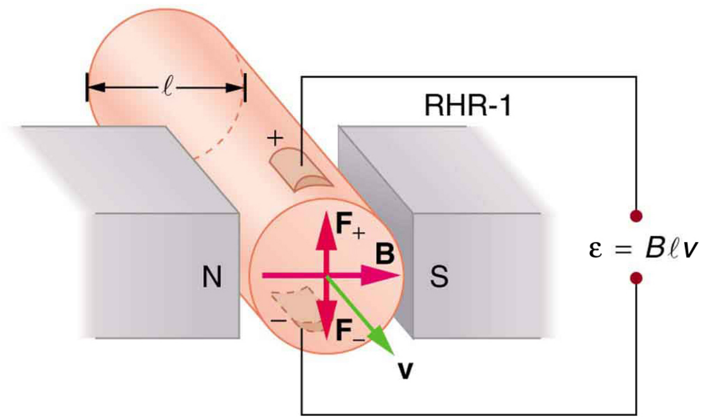
where ε is the Hall effect voltage across a conductor of width l through which charges move at a speed v.



The Hall emf ε produces an electric force that balances the magnetic force on the moving

charges. The magnetic force produces charge separation, which builds up until it is balanced by the electric force, an equilibrium that is quickly reached.

One of the most common uses of the Hall effect is in the measurement of magnetic field strength B. Such devices, called *Hall probes*, can be made very small, allowing fine position mapping. Hall probes can also be made very accurate, usually accomplished by careful calibration. Another application of the Hall effect is to measure fluid flow in any fluid that has free charges (most do). (See [link].) A magnetic field applied perpendicular to the flow direction produces a Hall emf ε as shown. Note that the sign of ε depends not on the sign of the charges, but only on the directions of B and v. The magnitude of the Hall emf is $\varepsilon = \mathrm{Blv}$, where l is the pipe diameter, so that the average velocity v can be determined from ε providing the other factors are known.



The Hall effect can be used to measure fluid flow in any fluid having free charges, such as blood. The Hall emf ε is measured across the tube perpendicular to the applied magnetic field and is proportional to the average velocity v.

Example:
Calculating the Hall emf: Hall Effect for Blood Flow
A Hall effect flow probe is placed on an artery, applying a 0.100-T magnetic field across it, in a setup similar to that in [link]. What is the Hall emf, given the vessel's inside diameter is 4.00 mm and the average blood velocity is 20.0 cm/s?

Strategy
Because B, v, and l are mutually perpendicular, the equation $\varepsilon = \text{Blv}$ can be used to find ε.

Solution
Entering the given values for B, v, and l gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\varepsilon &= Blv = (0.100\ \text{T})\left(4.00 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}\right)(0.200\ \text{m/s}) \\ &= 80.0\ \mu\text{V}\end{aligned}$$

Discussion
This is the average voltage output. Instantaneous voltage varies with pulsating blood flow. The voltage is small in this type of measurement. ε is particularly difficult to measure, because there are voltages associated with heart action (ECG voltages) that are on the order of millivolts. In practice, this difficulty is overcome by applying an AC magnetic field, so that the Hall emf is AC with the same frequency. An amplifier can be very selective in picking out only the appropriate frequency, eliminating signals and noise at other frequencies.

Section Summary

- The Hall effect is the creation of voltage ε, known as the Hall emf, across a current-carrying conductor by a magnetic field.
- The Hall emf is given by

Equation:

$$\varepsilon = Blv \; (B, v, \text{ and } l, \text{ mutually perpendicular})$$

for a conductor of width l through which charges move at a speed v.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Discuss how the Hall effect could be used to obtain information on free charge density in a conductor. (Hint: Consider how drift velocity and current are related.)

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A large water main is 2.50 m in diameter and the average water velocity is 6.00 m/s. Find the Hall voltage produced if the pipe runs perpendicular to the Earth's $5.00 \times 10^{-5}\text{-T}$ field.

Solution:

$7.50 \times 10^{-4}\text{ V}$

Exercise:

Problem:

What Hall voltage is produced by a 0.200-T field applied across a 2.60-cm-diameter aorta when blood velocity is 60.0 cm/s?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the speed of a supersonic aircraft with a 17.0-m wingspan, if it experiences a 1.60-V Hall voltage between its wing tips when in level flight over the north magnetic pole, where the Earth's field strength is $8.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T}$? (b) Explain why very little current flows as a result of this Hall voltage.

Solution:

(a) 1.18×10^{3} m/s

(b) Once established, the Hall emf pushes charges one direction and the magnetic force acts in the opposite direction resulting in no net force on the charges. Therefore, no current flows in the direction of the Hall emf. This is the same as in a current-carrying conductor—current does not flow in the direction of the Hall emf.

Exercise:

Problem:

A nonmechanical water meter could utilize the Hall effect by applying a magnetic field across a metal pipe and measuring the Hall voltage produced. What is the average fluid velocity in a 3.00-cm-diameter pipe, if a 0.500-T field across it creates a 60.0-mV Hall voltage?

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the Hall voltage induced on a patient's heart while being scanned by an MRI unit. Approximate the conducting path on the heart wall by a wire 7.50 cm long that moves at 10.0 cm/s perpendicular to a 1.50-T magnetic field.

Solution:

11.3 mV

Exercise:

Problem:

A Hall probe calibrated to read 1.00 μV when placed in a 2.00-T field is placed in a 0.150-T field. What is its output voltage?

Exercise:

Problem:

Using information in [link], what would the Hall voltage be if a 2.00-T field is applied across a 10-gauge copper wire (2.588 mm in diameter) carrying a 20.0-A current?

Solution:

1.16 μV

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the Hall voltage across wires made of the same material, carrying identical currents, and subjected to the same magnetic field is inversely proportional to their diameters. (Hint: Consider how drift velocity depends on wire diameter.)

Exercise:

Problem:

A patient with a pacemaker is mistakenly being scanned for an MRI image. A 10.0-cm-long section of pacemaker wire moves at a speed of 10.0 cm/s perpendicular to the MRI unit's magnetic field and a 20.0-mV Hall voltage is induced. What is the magnetic field strength?

Solution:

2.00 T

Glossary

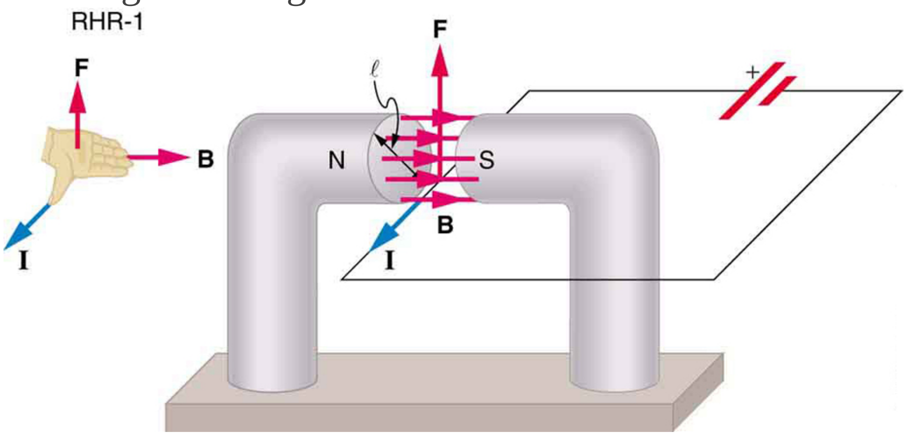
Hall effect
: the creation of voltage across a current-carrying conductor by a magnetic field

Hall emf
: the electromotive force created by a current-carrying conductor by a magnetic field, $\varepsilon = \text{Blv}$

Magnetic Force on a Current-Carrying Conductor

- Describe the effects of a magnetic force on a current-carrying conductor.
- Calculate the magnetic force on a current-carrying conductor.

Because charges ordinarily cannot escape a conductor, the magnetic force on charges moving in a conductor is transmitted to the conductor itself.



The magnetic field exerts a force on a current-carrying wire in a direction given by the right hand rule 1 (the same direction as that on the individual moving charges). This force can easily be large enough to move the wire, since typical currents consist of very large numbers of moving charges.

We can derive an expression for the magnetic force on a current by taking a sum of the magnetic forces on individual charges. (The forces add because they are in the same direction.) The force on an individual charge moving at the drift velocity v_d is given by $F = qv_\mathrm{d}B \sin \theta$. Taking B to be uniform over a length of wire l and zero elsewhere, the total magnetic force on the wire is then $F = (qv_\mathrm{d}B \sin \theta)(N)$, where N is the number of charge carriers in the section of wire of length l. Now, $N = \mathrm{nV}$, where n is the number of charge carriers per unit volume and V is the volume of wire in the field. Noting that $V = \mathrm{Al}$, where A is the cross-sectional area of the

wire, then the force on the wire is $F=(qv_{\mathrm{d}}B\sin\theta)(\mathrm{nAl})$. Gathering terms,

Equation:

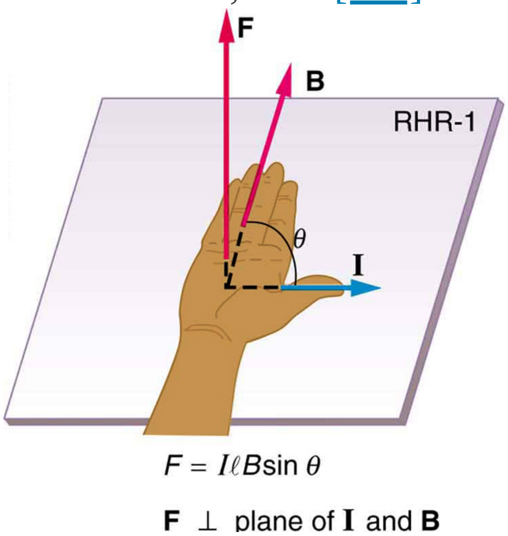
$$F=(nqAv_{\mathrm{d}})lB\sin\theta.$$

Because $nqAv_{\mathrm{d}}=I$ (see Current),

Equation:

$$F=\mathrm{IlB}\sin\theta$$

is the equation for *magnetic force on a length l of wire carrying a current I in a uniform magnetic field B*, as shown in [link]. If we divide both sides of this expression by l, we find that the magnetic force per unit length of wire in a uniform field is $\frac{F}{l}=\mathrm{IB}\sin\theta$. The direction of this force is given by RHR-1, with the thumb in the direction of the current I. Then, with the fingers in the direction of B, a perpendicular to the palm points in the direction of F, as in [link].



The force on a current-carrying wire in a magnetic field is $F=\mathrm{IlB}\sin\theta$. Its

direction is given by
RHR-1.

Example:
Calculating Magnetic Force on a Current-Carrying Wire: A Strong Magnetic Field

Calculate the force on the wire shown in [link], given $B=1.50\text{ T}$, $l=5.00\text{ cm}$, and $I=20.0\text{ A}$.

Strategy

The force can be found with the given information by using $F=\text{IlB sin }\theta$ and noting that the angle θ between I and B is 90º, so that $\text{sin }\theta =1$.

Solution

Entering the given values into $F=\text{IlB sin }\theta$ yields

Equation:

$$F=\text{IlB sin }\theta =\left(20.0\text{ A}\right)\left(0.0500\text{ m}\right)\left(1.50\text{ T}\right)\left(1\right).$$

The units for tesla are $1\text{ T}=\frac{\text{N}}{\text{A}\cdot \text{m}}$; thus,

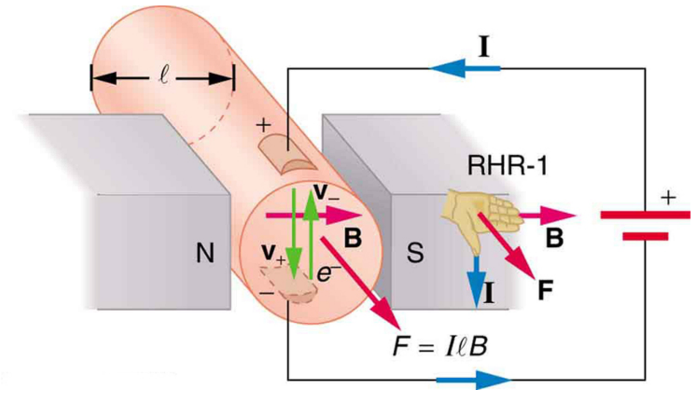
Equation:

$$F=1.50\text{ N}.$$

Discussion

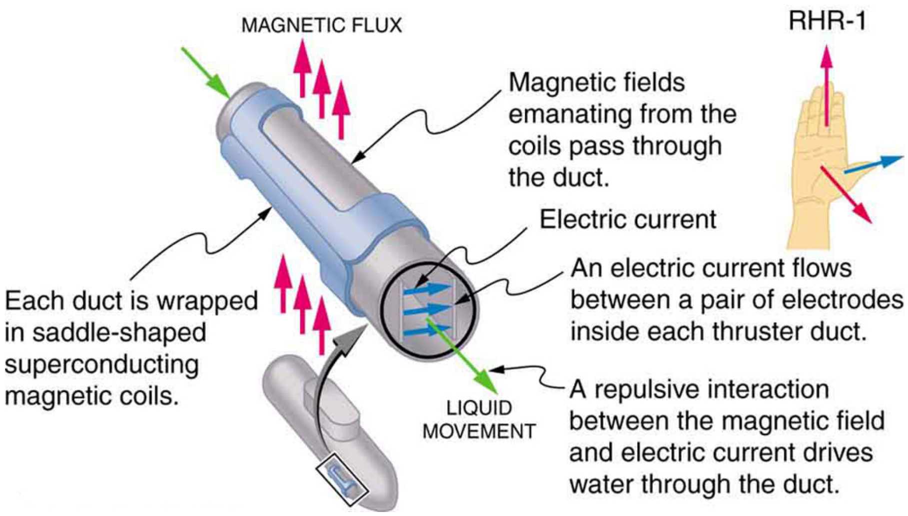
This large magnetic field creates a significant force on a small length of wire.

Magnetic force on current-carrying conductors is used to convert electric energy to work. (Motors are a prime example—they employ loops of wire and are considered in the next section.) Magnetohydrodynamics (MHD) is the technical name given to a clever application where magnetic force pumps fluids without moving mechanical parts. (See [link].)



Magnetohydrodynamics. The magnetic force on the current passed through this fluid can be used as a nonmechanical pump.

A strong magnetic field is applied across a tube and a current is passed through the fluid at right angles to the field, resulting in a force on the fluid parallel to the tube axis as shown. The absence of moving parts makes this attractive for moving a hot, chemically active substance, such as the liquid sodium employed in some nuclear reactors. Experimental artificial hearts are testing with this technique for pumping blood, perhaps circumventing the adverse effects of mechanical pumps. (Cell membranes, however, are affected by the large fields needed in MHD, delaying its practical application in humans.) MHD propulsion for nuclear submarines has been proposed, because it could be considerably quieter than conventional propeller drives. The deterrent value of nuclear submarines is based on their ability to hide and survive a first or second nuclear strike. As we slowly disassemble our nuclear weapons arsenals, the submarine branch will be the last to be decommissioned because of this ability (See [link].) Existing MHD drives are heavy and inefficient—much development work is needed.



An MHD propulsion system in a nuclear submarine could produce significantly less turbulence than propellers and allow it to run more silently. The development of a silent drive submarine was dramatized in the book and the film *The Hunt for Red October*.

Section Summary

- The magnetic force on current-carrying conductors is given by **Equation:**

$$F = \mathrm{IlB}\ \sin\ \theta,$$

where I is the current, l is the length of a straight conductor in a uniform magnetic field B, and θ is the angle between I and B. The force follows RHR-1 with the thumb in the direction of I.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Draw a sketch of the situation in [link] showing the direction of electrons carrying the current, and use RHR-1 to verify the direction of the force on the wire.

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that the direction of the force in an MHD drive, such as that in [link], does not depend on the sign of the charges carrying the current across the fluid.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why would a magnetohydrodynamic drive work better in ocean water than in fresh water? Also, why would superconducting magnets be desirable?

Exercise:

Problem:

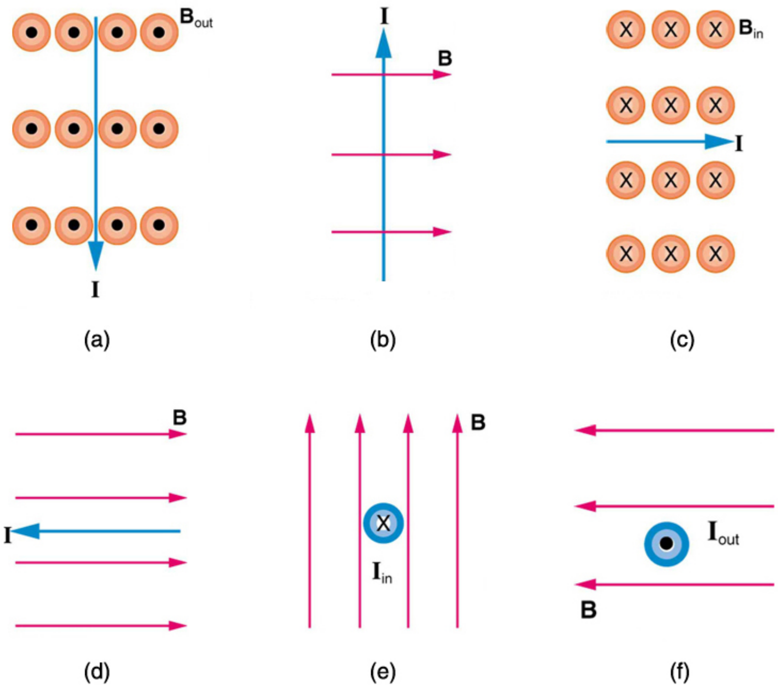
Which is more likely to interfere with compass readings, AC current in your refrigerator or DC current when you start your car? Explain.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the direction of the magnetic force on the current in each of the six cases in [link]?



Solution:

(a) west (left)

(b) into page

(c) north (up)

(d) no force

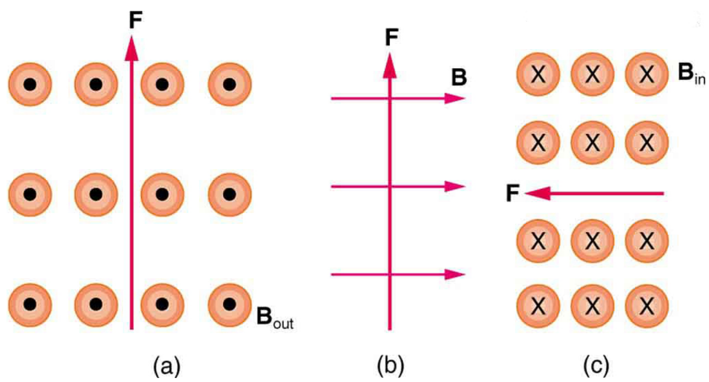
(e) east (right)

(f) south (down)

Exercise:

Problem:

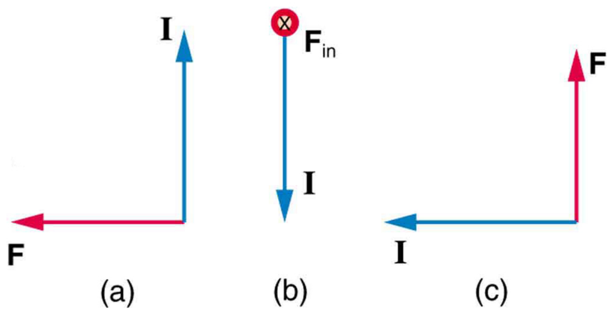
What is the direction of a current that experiences the magnetic force shown in each of the three cases in [link], assuming the current runs perpendicular to B?



Exercise:

Problem:

What is the direction of the magnetic field that produces the magnetic force shown on the currents in each of the three cases in [link], assuming $\mathbf{B}$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{I}$?



Solution:

(a) into page

(b) west (left)

(c) out of page

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the force per meter on a lightning bolt at the equator that carries 20,000 A perpendicular to the Earth's $3.00 \times 10^{-5}\text{-T}$ field? (b) What is the direction of the force if the current is straight up and the Earth's field direction is due north, parallel to the ground?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A DC power line for a light-rail system carries 1000 A at an angle of 30.0° to the Earth's 5.00×10^{-5} -T field. What is the force on a 100-m section of this line? (b) Discuss practical concerns this presents, if any.

Solution:

(a) 2.50 N

(b) This is about half a pound of force per 100 m of wire, which is much less than the weight of the wire itself. Therefore, it does not cause any special concerns.

Exercise:

Problem:

What force is exerted on the water in an MHD drive utilizing a 25.0-cm-diameter tube, if 100-A current is passed across the tube that is perpendicular to a 2.00-T magnetic field? (The relatively small size of this force indicates the need for very large currents and magnetic fields to make practical MHD drives.)

Exercise:

Problem:

A wire carrying a 30.0-A current passes between the poles of a strong magnet that is perpendicular to its field and experiences a 2.16-N force on the 4.00 cm of wire in the field. What is the average field strength?

Solution:

1.80 T

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A 0.750-m-long section of cable carrying current to a car starter motor makes an angle of 60º with the Earth's 5.50×10^{-5} T field. What is the current when the wire experiences a force of 7.00×10^{-3} N? (b) If you run the wire between the poles of a strong horseshoe magnet, subjecting 5.00 cm of it to a 1.75-T field, what force is exerted on this segment of wire?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the angle between a wire carrying an 8.00-A current and the 1.20-T field it is in if 50.0 cm of the wire experiences a magnetic force of 2.40 N? (b) What is the force on the wire if it is rotated to make an angle of 90º with the field?

Solution:

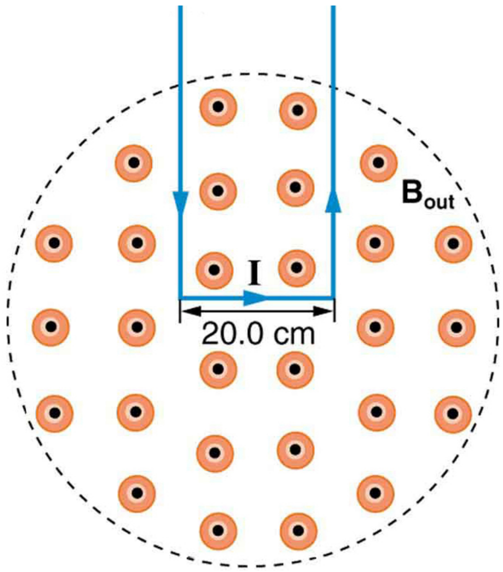
(a) 30º

(b) 4.80 N

Exercise:

Problem:

The force on the rectangular loop of wire in the magnetic field in [link] can be used to measure field strength. The field is uniform, and the plane of the loop is perpendicular to the field. (a) What is the direction of the magnetic force on the loop? Justify the claim that the forces on the sides of the loop are equal and opposite, independent of how much of the loop is in the field and do not affect the net force on the loop. (b) If a current of 5.00 A is used, what is the force per tesla on the 20.0-cm-wide loop?

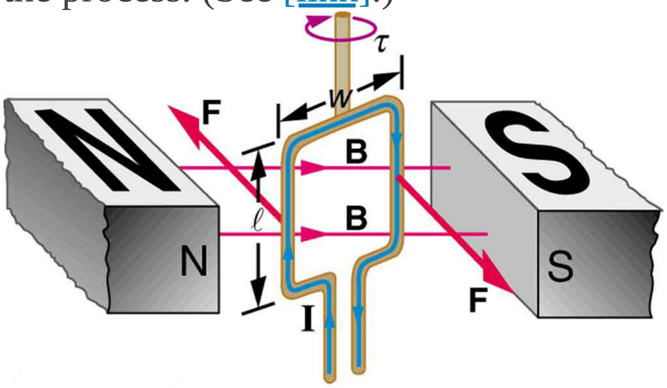


A rectangular loop of wire carrying a current is perpendicular to a magnetic field. The field is uniform in the region shown and is zero outside that region.

Torque on a Current Loop: Motors and Meters

- Describe how motors and meters work in terms of torque on a current loop.
- Calculate the torque on a current-carrying loop in a magnetic field.

Motors are the most common application of magnetic force on current-carrying wires. Motors have loops of wire in a magnetic field. When current is passed through the loops, the magnetic field exerts torque on the loops, which rotates a shaft. Electrical energy is converted to mechanical work in the process. (See [link].)



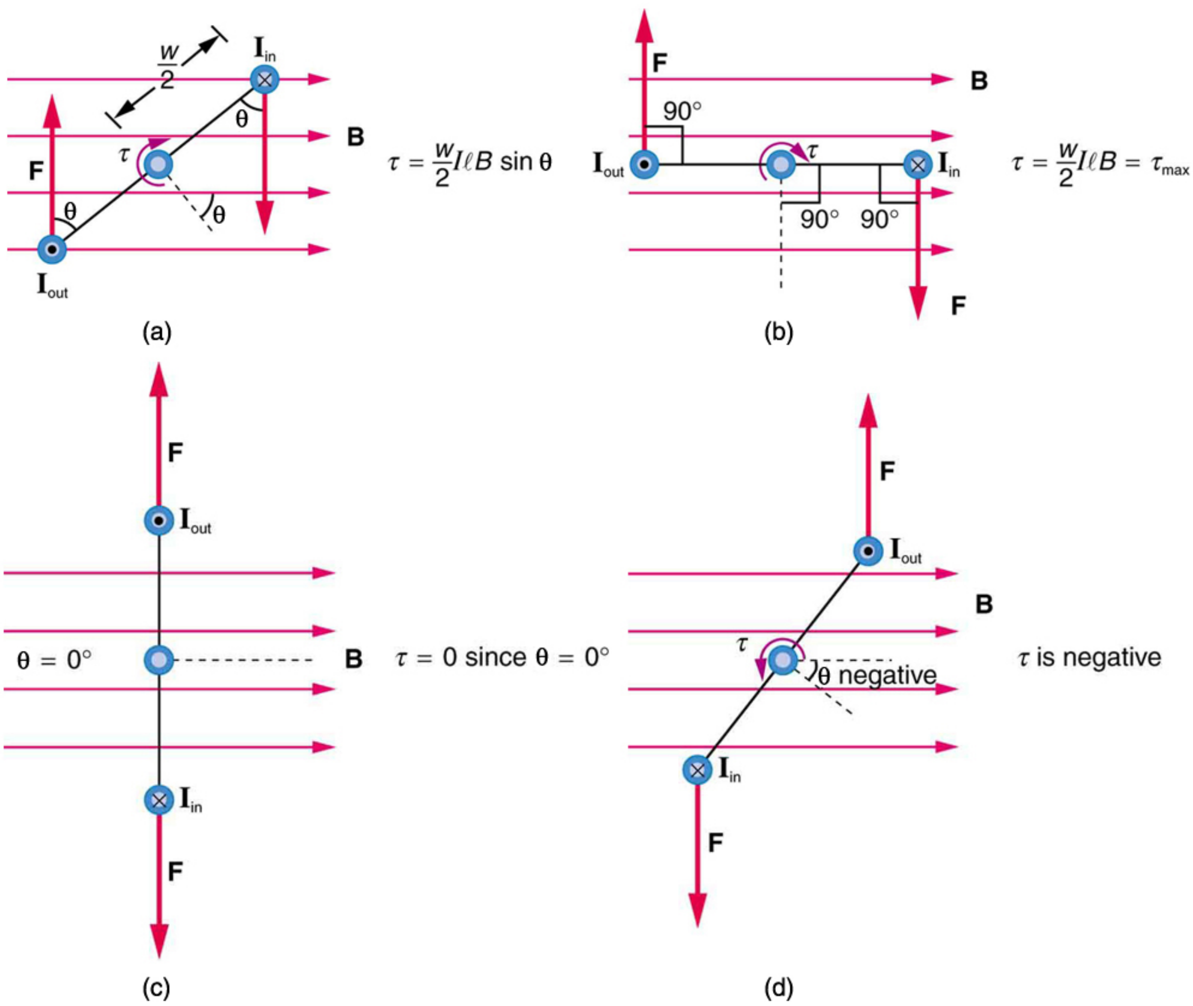
Torque on a current loop. A current-carrying loop of wire attached to a vertically rotating shaft feels magnetic forces that produce a clockwise torque as viewed from above.

Let us examine the force on each segment of the loop in [link] to find the torques produced about the axis of the vertical shaft. (This will lead to a useful equation for the torque on the loop.) We take the magnetic field to be uniform over the rectangular loop, which has width w and height l. First, we note that the forces on the top and bottom segments are vertical and, therefore, parallel to the shaft, producing no torque. Those vertical forces are equal in magnitude and opposite in direction, so that they also produce no net force on the loop. [link] shows views of the loop from above. Torque

is defined as $\tau = \text{rF} \sin \theta$, where F is the force, r is the distance from the pivot that the force is applied, and θ is the angle between r and F. As seen in [link](a), right hand rule 1 gives the forces on the sides to be equal in magnitude and opposite in direction, so that the net force is again zero. However, each force produces a clockwise torque. Since $r = w/2$, the torque on each vertical segment is $(w/2)F \sin \theta$, and the two add to give a total torque.

Equation:

$$\tau = \frac{w}{2}F \sin \theta + \frac{w}{2}F \sin \theta = \text{wF} \sin \theta$$



Top views of a current-carrying loop in a magnetic field. (a) The equation for torque is derived using this view. Note that the perpendicular to the loop makes an angle θ with the field that is the

same as the angle between $w/2$ and $\mathbf{F}$. (b) The maximum torque occurs when θ is a right angle and $\sin\theta = 1$. (c) Zero (minimum) torque occurs when θ is zero and $\sin\theta = 0$. (d) The torque reverses once the loop rotates past $\theta = 0$.

Now, each vertical segment has a length l that is perpendicular to B, so that the force on each is $F = \text{IlB}$. Entering F into the expression for torque yields

Equation:

$$\tau = \text{wIlB}\sin\theta.$$

If we have a multiple loop of N turns, we get N times the torque of one loop. Finally, note that the area of the loop is $A = \text{wl}$; the expression for the torque becomes

Equation:

$$\tau = \text{NIAB}\sin\theta.$$

This is the torque on a current-carrying loop in a uniform magnetic field. This equation can be shown to be valid for a loop of any shape. The loop carries a current I, has N turns, each of area A, and the perpendicular to the loop makes an angle θ with the field B. The net force on the loop is zero.

Example:

Calculating Torque on a Current-Carrying Loop in a Strong Magnetic Field

Find the maximum torque on a 100-turn square loop of a wire of 10.0 cm on a side that carries 15.0 A of current in a 2.00-T field.

Strategy

Torque on the loop can be found using $\tau = \text{NIAB}\sin\theta$. Maximum torque occurs when $\theta = 90^\text{o}$ and $\sin\theta = 1$.

Solution
For $\sin\,\theta = 1$, the maximum torque is
Equation:

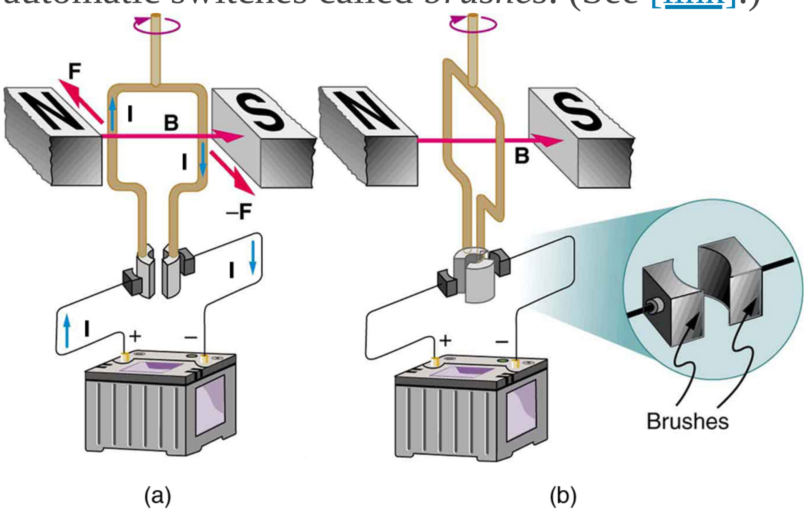
$$\tau_{\text{max}} = \text{NIAB.}$$

Entering known values yields
Equation:

$$\begin{array}{lll}\tau_{\text{max}} & = & (100)(15.0\text{ A})\left(0.100\text{ m}^2\right)(2.00\text{ T}) \\ & = & 30.0\text{ N}\cdot\text{m.}\end{array}$$

Discussion
This torque is large enough to be useful in a motor.

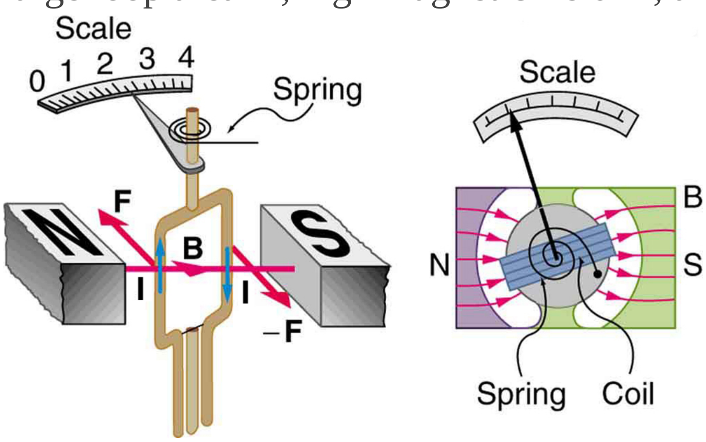
The torque found in the preceding example is the maximum. As the coil rotates, the torque decreases to zero at $\theta = 0$. The torque then *reverses* its direction once the coil rotates past $\theta = 0$. (See [link](d).) This means that, unless we do something, the coil will oscillate back and forth about equilibrium at $\theta = 0$. To get the coil to continue rotating in the same direction, we can reverse the current as it passes through $\theta = 0$ with automatic switches called *brushes*. (See [link].)



(a) As the angular momentum of the coil carries it through $\theta = 0$, the brushes reverse

the current to keep the torque clockwise. (b) The coil will rotate continuously in the clockwise direction, with the current reversing each half revolution to maintain the clockwise torque.

Meters, such as those in analog fuel gauges on a car, are another common application of magnetic torque on a current-carrying loop. [link] shows that a meter is very similar in construction to a motor. The meter in the figure has its magnets shaped to limit the effect of θ by making B perpendicular to the loop over a large angular range. Thus the torque is proportional to I and not θ. A linear spring exerts a counter-torque that balances the current-produced torque. This makes the needle deflection proportional to I. If an exact proportionality cannot be achieved, the gauge reading can be calibrated. To produce a galvanometer for use in analog voltmeters and ammeters that have a low resistance and respond to small currents, we use a large loop area A, high magnetic field B, and low-resistance coils.



Meters are very similar to motors but only rotate through a part of a revolution. The magnetic poles of this meter are shaped to keep the component of B perpendicular to the loop constant, so that the torque does not depend on θ and the deflection

against the return spring is proportional only to the current I.

Section Summary

- The torque τ on a current-carrying loop of any shape in a uniform magnetic field. is
  Equation:

  $$\tau = \text{NIAB}\sin\theta,$$

  where N is the number of turns, I is the current, A is the area of the loop, B is the magnetic field strength, and θ is the angle between the perpendicular to the loop and the magnetic field.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Draw a diagram and use RHR-1 to show that the forces on the top and bottom segments of the motor's current loop in [link] are vertical and produce no torque about the axis of rotation.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) By how many percent is the torque of a motor decreased if its permanent magnets lose 5.0% of their strength? (b) How many percent would the current need to be increased to return the torque to original values?

Solution:

(a) τ decreases by 5.00% if B decreases by 5.00%

(b) 5.26% increase

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the maximum torque on a 150-turn square loop of wire 18.0 cm on a side that carries a 50.0-A current in a 1.60-T field? (b) What is the torque when θ is 10.9º?

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the current through a loop needed to create a maximum torque of $9.00 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$. The loop has 50 square turns that are 15.0 cm on a side and is in a uniform 0.800-T magnetic field.

Solution:

10.0 A

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the magnetic field strength needed on a 200-turn square loop 20.0 cm on a side to create a maximum torque of $300 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ if the loop is carrying 25.0 A.

Exercise:

Problem:

Since the equation for torque on a current-carrying loop is $\tau = \text{NIAB sin } \theta$, the units of $\text{N} \cdot \text{m}$ must equal units of $\text{A} \cdot \text{m}^2 \text{ T}$. Verify this.

Solution:

$$A \cdot m^2 \cdot T = A \cdot m^2 \left(\frac{N}{A \cdot m}\right) = N \cdot m.$$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) At what angle θ is the torque on a current loop 90.0% of maximum? (b) 50.0% of maximum? (c) 10.0% of maximum?

Exercise:

Problem:

A proton has a magnetic field due to its spin on its axis. The field is similar to that created by a circular current loop 0.650×10^{-15} m in radius with a current of 1.05×10^{4} A (no kidding). Find the maximum torque on a proton in a 2.50-T field. (This is a significant torque on a small particle.)

Solution:

$3.48 \times 10^{-26}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A 200-turn circular loop of radius 50.0 cm is vertical, with its axis on an east-west line. A current of 100 A circulates clockwise in the loop when viewed from the east. The Earth's field here is due north, parallel to the ground, with a strength of 3.00×10^{-5} T. What are the direction and magnitude of the torque on the loop? (b) Does this device have any practical applications as a motor?

Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat [link], but with the loop lying flat on the ground with its current circulating counterclockwise (when viewed from above) in a location where the Earth's field is north, but at an angle 45.0° below the horizontal and with a strength of 6.00×10^{-5} T.

Solution:

(a) $0.666\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}$ west

(b) This is not a very significant torque, so practical use would be limited. Also, the current would need to be alternated to make the loop rotate (otherwise it would oscillate).

Glossary

motor
: loop of wire in a magnetic field; when current is passed through the loops, the magnetic field exerts torque on the loops, which rotates a shaft; electrical energy is converted to mechanical work in the process

meter
: common application of magnetic torque on a current-carrying loop that is very similar in construction to a motor; by design, the torque is proportional to I and not θ, so the needle deflection is proportional to the current

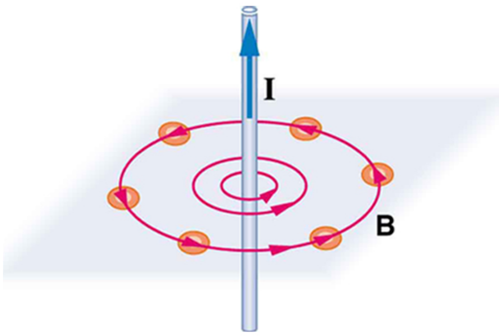
Magnetic Fields Produced by Currents: Ampere’s Law

- Calculate current that produces a magnetic field.
- Use the right hand rule 2 to determine the direction of current or the direction of magnetic field loops.

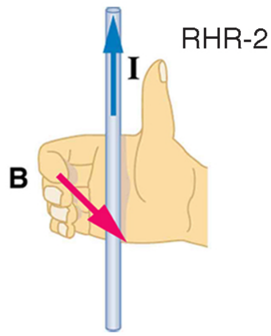
How much current is needed to produce a significant magnetic field, perhaps as strong as the Earth’s field? Surveyors will tell you that overhead electric power lines create magnetic fields that interfere with their compass readings. Indeed, when Oersted discovered in 1820 that a current in a wire affected a compass needle, he was not dealing with extremely large currents. How does the shape of wires carrying current affect the shape of the magnetic field created? We noted earlier that a current loop created a magnetic field similar to that of a bar magnet, but what about a straight wire or a toroid (doughnut)? How is the direction of a current-created field related to the direction of the current? Answers to these questions are explored in this section, together with a brief discussion of the law governing the fields created by currents.

Magnetic Field Created by a Long Straight Current-Carrying Wire: Right Hand Rule 2

Magnetic fields have both direction and magnitude. As noted before, one way to explore the direction of a magnetic field is with compasses, as shown for a long straight current-carrying wire in [link]. Hall probes can determine the magnitude of the field. The field around a long straight wire is found to be in circular loops. The **right hand rule 2** (RHR-2) emerges from this exploration and is valid for any current segment—*point the thumb in the direction of the current, and the fingers curl in the direction of the magnetic field loops* created by it.



(a)



(b)

(a) Compasses placed near a long straight current-carrying wire indicate that field lines form circular loops centered on the wire. (b) Right hand rule 2 states that, if the right hand thumb points in the direction of the current, the fingers curl in the direction of the field. This rule is consistent with the field mapped for the long straight wire and is valid for any current segment.

The **magnetic field strength (magnitude) produced by a long straight current-carrying wire** is found by experiment to be
Equation:

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r} \text{ (long straight wire)},$$

where I is the current, r is the shortest distance to the wire, and the constant $\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \text{T} \cdot \text{m/A}$ is the **permeability of free space**. (μ_0 is one of the basic constants in nature. We will see later that μ_0 is related to the speed of light.) Since the wire is very long, the magnitude of the field depends only on distance from the wire r, not on position along the wire.

Example:
Calculating Current that Produces a Magnetic Field
Find the current in a long straight wire that would produce a magnetic field twice the strength of the Earth's at a distance of 5.0 cm from the wire.
Strategy
The Earth's field is about 5.0×10^{-5} T, and so here B due to the wire is taken to be 1.0×10^{-4} T. The equation $B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r}$ can be used to find I, since all other quantities are known.
Solution
Solving for I and entering known values gives
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \frac{2\pi r B}{\mu_0} = \frac{2\pi\left(5.0\times10^{-2}\text{ m}\right)\left(1.0\times10^{-4}\text{ T}\right)}{4\pi\times10^{-7}\text{ T}\cdot\text{m/A}} \\ &= 25\text{ A}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
So a moderately large current produces a significant magnetic field at a distance of 5.0 cm from a long straight wire. Note that the answer is stated to only two digits, since the Earth's field is specified to only two digits in this example.

Ampere’s Law and Others

The magnetic field of a long straight wire has more implications than you might at first suspect. *Each segment of current produces a magnetic field like that of a long straight wire, and the total field of any shape current is the vector sum of the fields due to each segment.* The formal statement of the direction and magnitude of the field due to each segment is called the **Biot-Savart law**. Integral calculus is needed to sum the field for an arbitrary shape current. This results in a more complete law, called **Ampere’s law**, which relates magnetic field and current in a general way. Ampere’s law in turn is a part of **Maxwell’s equations**, which give a complete theory of all electromagnetic phenomena. Considerations of how Maxwell’s equations appear to different observers led to the modern theory of relativity, and the realization that electric and magnetic fields are different manifestations of the same thing. Most of this is beyond the scope of this text in both mathematical level, requiring calculus, and in the amount of space that can be devoted to it. But for the interested student, and particularly for those who continue in physics, engineering, or similar pursuits, delving into these matters further will reveal descriptions of nature that are elegant as well as profound. In this text, we shall keep the general features in mind, such as RHR-2 and the rules for magnetic field lines listed in Magnetic Fields and Magnetic Field Lines, while concentrating on the fields created in certain important situations.

Note:
Making Connections: Relativity
Hearing all we do about Einstein, we sometimes get the impression that he invented relativity out of nothing. On the contrary, one of Einstein’s motivations was to solve difficulties in knowing how different observers see magnetic and electric fields.

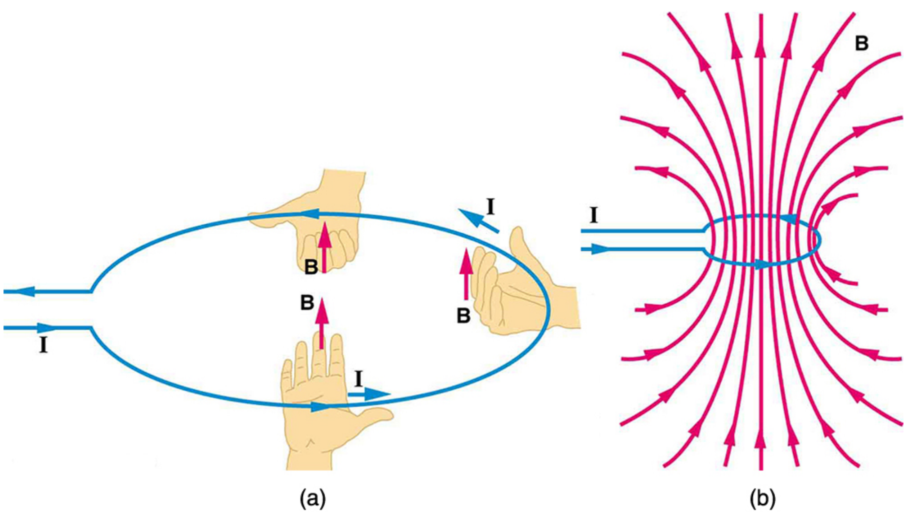
Magnetic Field Produced by a Current-Carrying Circular Loop

The magnetic field near a current-carrying loop of wire is shown in [link]. Both the direction and the magnitude of the magnetic field produced by a current-carrying loop are complex. RHR-2 can be used to give the direction of the field near the loop, but mapping with compasses and the rules about field lines given in Magnetic Fields and Magnetic Field Lines are needed for more detail. There is a simple formula for the **magnetic field strength at the center of a circular loop**. It is

Equation:

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2R} \text{ (at center of loop)},$$

where R is the radius of the loop. This equation is very similar to that for a straight wire, but it is valid *only* at the center of a circular loop of wire. The similarity of the equations does indicate that similar field strength can be obtained at the center of a loop. One way to get a larger field is to have N loops; then, the field is $B = N\mu_0 I/(2R)$. Note that the larger the loop, the smaller the field at its center, because the current is farther away.

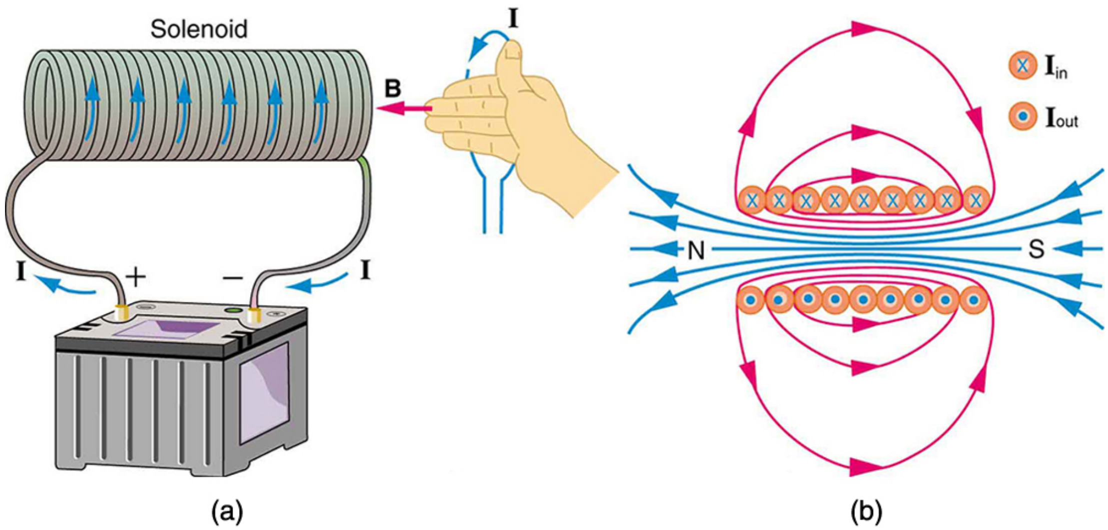


(a) RHR-2 gives the direction of the magnetic field inside and outside a current-carrying loop. (b) More detailed mapping with compasses or with a

Hall probe completes the picture. The field is similar to that of a bar magnet.

Magnetic Field Produced by a Current-Carrying Solenoid

A **solenoid** is a long coil of wire (with many turns or loops, as opposed to a flat loop). Because of its shape, the field inside a solenoid can be very uniform, and also very strong. The field just outside the coils is nearly zero. [link] shows how the field looks and how its direction is given by RHR-2.



(a) Because of its shape, the field inside a solenoid of length l is remarkably uniform in magnitude and direction, as indicated by the straight and uniformly spaced field lines. The field outside the coils is nearly zero. (b) This cutaway shows the magnetic field generated by the current in the solenoid.

The magnetic field inside of a current-carrying solenoid is very uniform in direction and magnitude. Only near the ends does it begin to weaken and change direction. The field outside has similar complexities to flat loops

and bar magnets, but the **magnetic field strength inside a solenoid** is simply

Equation:

$$B = \mu_0 \text{nI} \ \ (\text{inside a solenoid}),$$

where n is the number of loops per unit length of the solenoid $(n = N/l$, with N being the number of loops and l the length). Note that B is the field strength anywhere in the uniform region of the interior and not just at the center. Large uniform fields spread over a large volume are possible with solenoids, as [link] implies.

Example:

Calculating Field Strength inside a Solenoid

What is the field inside a 2.00-m-long solenoid that has 2000 loops and carries a 1600-A current?

Strategy

To find the field strength inside a solenoid, we use $B = \mu_0 \text{nI}$. First, we note the number of loops per unit length is

Equation:

$$n = \frac{N}{l} = \frac{2000}{2.00 \text{ m}} = 1000 \text{ m}^{-1} = 10 \text{ cm}^{-1}.$$

Solution

Substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} B &= \mu_0 \text{nI} = \left(4\pi \times 10^{-7} \text{ T} \cdot \text{m/A}\right)\left(1000 \text{ m}^{-1}\right)(1600 \text{ A}) \\ &= 2.01 \text{ T}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

This is a large field strength that could be established over a large-diameter solenoid, such as in medical uses of magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). The very large current is an indication that the fields of this strength are not

easily achieved, however. Such a large current through 1000 loops squeezed into a meter’s length would produce significant heating. Higher currents can be achieved by using superconducting wires, although this is expensive. There is an upper limit to the current, since the superconducting state is disrupted by very large magnetic fields.

There are interesting variations of the flat coil and solenoid. For example, the toroidal coil used to confine the reactive particles in tokamaks is much like a solenoid bent into a circle. The field inside a toroid is very strong but circular. Charged particles travel in circles, following the field lines, and collide with one another, perhaps inducing fusion. But the charged particles do not cross field lines and escape the toroid. A whole range of coil shapes are used to produce all sorts of magnetic field shapes. Adding ferromagnetic materials produces greater field strengths and can have a significant effect on the shape of the field. Ferromagnetic materials tend to trap magnetic fields (the field lines bend into the ferromagnetic material, leaving weaker fields outside it) and are used as shields for devices that are adversely affected by magnetic fields, including the Earth’s magnetic field.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Generator
Generate electricity with a bar magnet! Discover the physics behind the phenomena by exploring magnets and how you can use them to make a bulb light.
https://archive.cnx.org/specials/1e9b7292-ae74-11e5-a9dc-c7c8521ba8e6/generator/#sim-generator

Section Summary

- The strength of the magnetic field created by current in a long straight wire is given by
  Equation:

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r}(\text{long straight wire}),$$

where I is the current, r is the shortest distance to the wire, and the constant $\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \text{T} \cdot \text{m/A}$ is the permeability of free space.

- The direction of the magnetic field created by a long straight wire is given by right hand rule 2 (RHR-2): *Point the thumb of the right hand in the direction of current, and the fingers curl in the direction of the magnetic field loops* created by it.
- The magnetic field created by current following any path is the sum (or integral) of the fields due to segments along the path (magnitude and direction as for a straight wire), resulting in a general relationship between current and field known as Ampere's law.
- The magnetic field strength at the center of a circular loop is given by **Equation:**

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2R}(\text{at center of loop}),$$

where R is the radius of the loop. This equation becomes $B = \mu_0 \text{nI}/(2R)$ for a flat coil of N loops. RHR-2 gives the direction of the field about the loop. A long coil is called a solenoid.

- The magnetic field strength inside a solenoid is **Equation:**

$$B = \mu_0 \text{nI}\ \ (\text{inside a solenoid}),$$

where n is the number of loops per unit length of the solenoid. The field inside is very uniform in magnitude and direction.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Make a drawing and use RHR-2 to find the direction of the magnetic field of a current loop in a motor (such as in [link]). Then show that the direction of the torque on the loop is the same as produced by like poles repelling and unlike poles attracting.

Glossary

right hand rule 2 (RHR-2)
: a rule to determine the direction of the magnetic field induced by a current-carrying wire: Point the thumb of the right hand in the direction of current, and the fingers curl in the direction of the magnetic field loops

magnetic field strength (magnitude) produced by a long straight current-carrying wire
: defined as $B=\frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r}$, where I is the current, r is the shortest distance to the wire, and μ_0 is the permeability of free space

permeability of free space
: the measure of the ability of a material, in this case free space, to support a magnetic field; the constant $\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \text{T}\cdot\text{m/A}$

magnetic field strength at the center of a circular loop
: defined as $B=\frac{\mu_0 I}{2R}$ where R is the radius of the loop

solenoid
: a thin wire wound into a coil that produces a magnetic field when an electric current is passed through it

magnetic field strength inside a solenoid
: defined as $B=\mu_0 nI$ where n is the number of loops per unit length of the solenoid ($n = N/l$, with N being the number of loops and l the length)

Biot-Savart law

a physical law that describes the magnetic field generated by an electric current in terms of a specific equation

Ampere’s law

the physical law that states that the magnetic field around an electric current is proportional to the current; each segment of current produces a magnetic field like that of a long straight wire, and the total field of any shape current is the vector sum of the fields due to each segment

Maxwell’s equations

a set of four equations that describe electromagnetic phenomena

Magnetic Force between Two Parallel Conductors

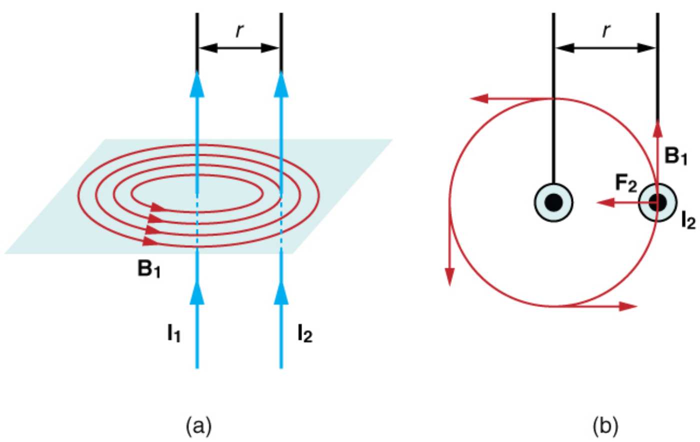
- Describe the effects of the magnetic force between two conductors.
- Calculate the force between two parallel conductors.

You might expect that there are significant forces between current-carrying wires, since ordinary currents produce significant magnetic fields and these fields exert significant forces on ordinary currents. But you might not expect that the force between wires is used to *define* the ampere. It might also surprise you to learn that this force has something to do with why large circuit breakers burn up when they attempt to interrupt large currents.

The force between two long straight and parallel conductors separated by a distance r can be found by applying what we have developed in preceding sections. [link] shows the wires, their currents, the fields they create, and the subsequent forces they exert on one another. Let us consider the field produced by wire 1 and the force it exerts on wire 2 (call the force F_2). The field due to I_1 at a distance r is given to be

Equation:

$$B_1 = \frac{\mu_0 I_1}{2\pi r}.$$



(a) The magnetic field produced by a long straight conductor is perpendicular to a parallel conductor, as indicated by RHR-2. (b) A view

from above of the two wires shown in (a), with one magnetic field line shown for each wire. RHR-1 shows that the force between the parallel conductors is attractive when the currents are in the same direction. A similar analysis shows that the force is repulsive between currents in opposite directions.

This field is uniform along wire 2 and perpendicular to it, and so the force F_2 it exerts on wire 2 is given by $F = \text{IlB} \sin \theta$ with $\sin \theta = 1$:

Equation:

$$F_2 = I_2 l B_1.$$

By Newton's third law, the forces on the wires are equal in magnitude, and so we just write F for the magnitude of F_2. (Note that $F_1 = -F_2$.) Since the wires are very long, it is convenient to think in terms of F/l, the force per unit length. Substituting the expression for B_1 into the last equation and rearranging terms gives

Equation:

$$\frac{F}{l} = \frac{\mu_0 I_1 I_2}{2\pi r}.$$

F/l is the force per unit length between two parallel currents I_1 and I_2 separated by a distance r. The force is attractive if the currents are in the same direction and repulsive if they are in opposite directions.

This force is responsible for the *pinch effect* in electric arcs and plasmas. The force exists whether the currents are in wires or not. In an electric arc, where currents are moving parallel to one another, there is an attraction that squeezes currents into a smaller tube. In large circuit breakers, like those

used in neighborhood power distribution systems, the pinch effect can concentrate an arc between plates of a switch trying to break a large current, burn holes, and even ignite the equipment. Another example of the pinch effect is found in the solar plasma, where jets of ionized material, such as solar flares, are shaped by magnetic forces.

The *operational definition of the ampere* is based on the force between current-carrying wires. Note that for parallel wires separated by 1 meter with each carrying 1 ampere, the force per meter is

Equation:

$$\frac{F}{l} = \frac{\left(4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{T \cdot m/A}\right)(1\ \mathrm{A})^2}{(2\pi)(1\ \mathrm{m})} = 2 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{N/m}.$$

Since μ_0 is exactly $4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{T \cdot m/A}$ by definition, and because $1\ \mathrm{T} = 1\ \mathrm{N/(A \cdot m)}$, the force per meter is exactly $2 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{N/m}$. This is the basis of the operational definition of the ampere.

Note:

The Ampere

The official definition of the ampere is:

One ampere of current through each of two parallel conductors of infinite length, separated by one meter in empty space free of other magnetic fields, causes a force of exactly $2 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{N/m}$ on each conductor.

Infinite-length straight wires are impractical and so, in practice, a current balance is constructed with coils of wire separated by a few centimeters. Force is measured to determine current. This also provides us with a method for measuring the coulomb. We measure the charge that flows for a current of one ampere in one second. That is, $1\ \mathrm{C} = 1\ \mathrm{A \cdot s}$. For both the ampere and the coulomb, the method of measuring force between conductors is the most accurate in practice.

Section Summary

- The force between two parallel currents I_1 and I_2, separated by a distance r, has a magnitude per unit length given by
  Equation:
  $$\frac{F}{l} = \frac{\mu_0 I_1 I_2}{2\pi r}.$$
- The force is attractive if the currents are in the same direction, repulsive if they are in opposite directions.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

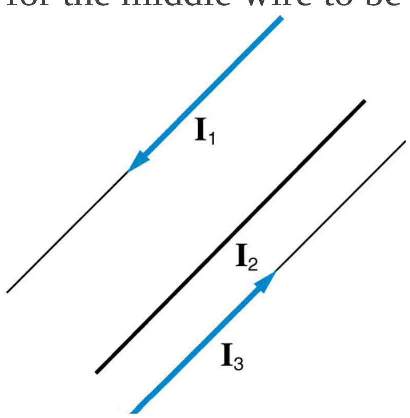
Problem:

Is the force attractive or repulsive between the hot and neutral lines hung from power poles? Why?

Exercise:

Problem:

If you have three parallel wires in the same plane, as in [link], with currents in the outer two running in opposite directions, is it possible for the middle wire to be repelled by both? Attracted by both? Explain.



Three parallel

coplanar wires with currents in the outer two in opposite directions.

Exercise:

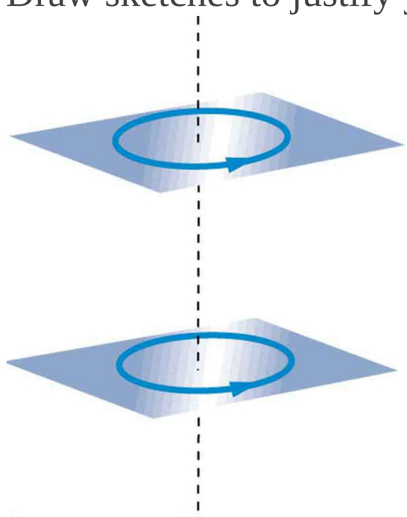
Problem:

Suppose two long straight wires run perpendicular to one another without touching. Does one exert a net force on the other? If so, what is its direction? Does one exert a net torque on the other? If so, what is its direction? Justify your responses by using the right hand rules.

Exercise:

Problem:

Use the right hand rules to show that the force between the two loops in [link] is attractive if the currents are in the same direction and repulsive if they are in opposite directions. Is this consistent with like poles of the loops repelling and unlike poles of the loops attracting? Draw sketches to justify your answers.



Two loops of wire carrying currents

can exert forces
and torques on one
another.

Exercise:

Problem:

If one of the loops in [link] is tilted slightly relative to the other and their currents are in the same direction, what are the directions of the torques they exert on each other? Does this imply that the poles of the bar magnet-like fields they create will line up with each other if the loops are allowed to rotate?

Exercise:

Problem:

Electric field lines can be shielded by the Faraday cage effect. Can we have magnetic shielding? Can we have gravitational shielding?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The hot and neutral wires supplying DC power to a light-rail commuter train carry 800 A and are separated by 75.0 cm. What is the magnitude and direction of the force between 50.0 m of these wires? (b) Discuss the practical consequences of this force, if any.

Solution:

(a) 8.53 N, repulsive

(b) This force is repulsive and therefore there is never a risk that the two wires will touch and short circuit.

Exercise:

Problem:

The force per meter between the two wires of a jumper cable being used to start a stalled car is 0.225 N/m. (a) What is the current in the wires, given they are separated by 2.00 cm? (b) Is the force attractive or repulsive?

Exercise:

Problem:

A 2.50-m segment of wire supplying current to the motor of a submerged submarine carries 1000 A and feels a 4.00-N repulsive force from a parallel wire 5.00 cm away. What is the direction and magnitude of the current in the other wire?

Solution:

400 A in the opposite direction

Exercise:

Problem:

The wire carrying 400 A to the motor of a commuter train feels an attractive force of $4.00 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{N/m}$ due to a parallel wire carrying 5.00 A to a headlight. (a) How far apart are the wires? (b) Are the currents in the same direction?

Exercise:

Problem:

An AC appliance cord has its hot and neutral wires separated by 3.00 mm and carries a 5.00-A current. (a) What is the average force per meter between the wires in the cord? (b) What is the maximum force per meter between the wires? (c) Are the forces attractive or repulsive? (d) Do appliance cords need any special design features to compensate for these forces?

Solution:

(a) $1.67 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{N/m}$

(b) $3.33 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{N/m}$

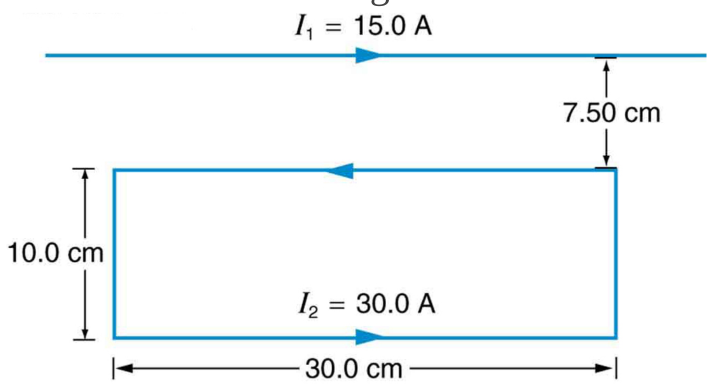
(c) Repulsive

(d) No, these are very small forces

Exercise:

Problem:

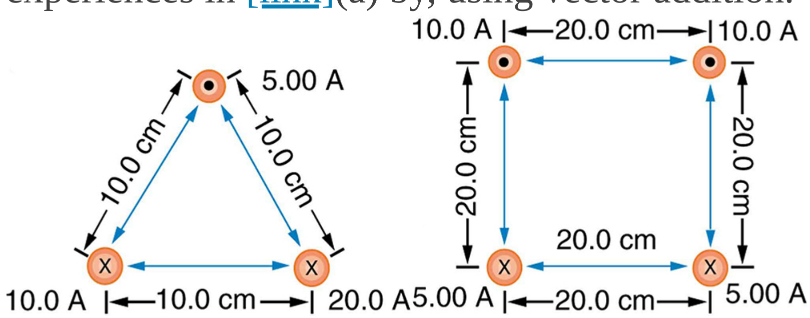
[link] shows a long straight wire near a rectangular current loop. What is the direction and magnitude of the total force on the loop?



Exercise:

Problem:

Find the direction and magnitude of the force that each wire experiences in [link](a) by, using vector addition.



Solution:

(a) Top wire: $2.65 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{N/m}$ s, 10.9^{o} to left of up

(b) Lower left wire: $3.61 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{N/m}$, 13.9^{o} down from right

(c) Lower right wire: $3.46 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{N/m}$, 30.0^{o} down from left

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the direction and magnitude of the force that each wire experiences in [link](b), using vector addition.

More Applications of Magnetism

- Describe some applications of magnetism.

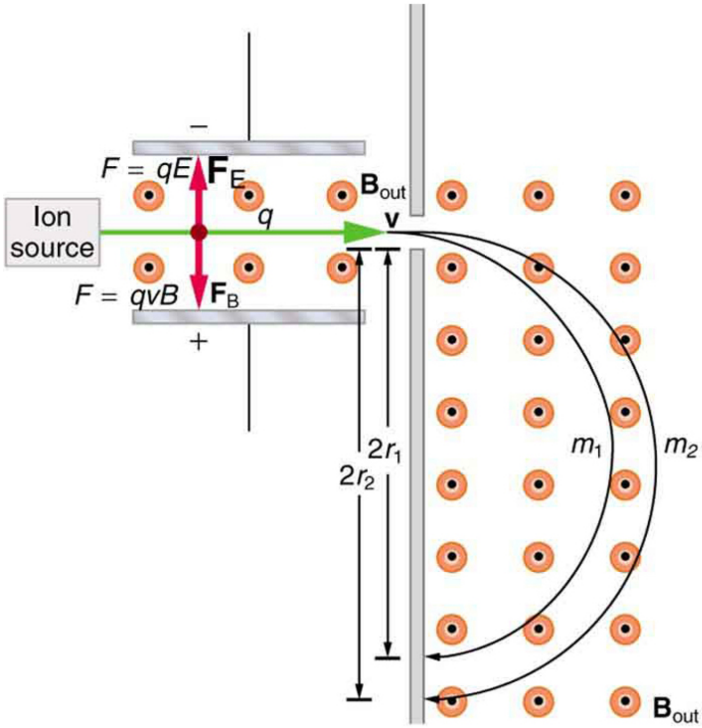
Mass Spectrometry

The curved paths followed by charged particles in magnetic fields can be put to use. A charged particle moving perpendicular to a magnetic field travels in a circular path having a radius r.

Equation:

$$r=\frac{\text{mv}}{\text{qB}}$$

It was noted that this relationship could be used to measure the mass of charged particles such as ions. A mass spectrometer is a device that measures such masses. Most mass spectrometers use magnetic fields for this purpose, although some of them have extremely sophisticated designs. Since there are five variables in the relationship, there are many possibilities. However, if v, q, and B can be fixed, then the radius of the path r is simply proportional to the mass m of the charged particle. Let us examine one such mass spectrometer that has a relatively simple design. (See [link].) The process begins with an ion source, a device like an electron gun. The ion source gives ions their charge, accelerates them to some velocity v, and directs a beam of them into the next stage of the spectrometer. This next region is a *velocity selector* that only allows particles with a particular value of v to get through.



This mass spectrometer uses a velocity selector to fix v so that the radius of the path is proportional to mass.

The velocity selector has both an electric field and a magnetic field, perpendicular to one another, producing forces in opposite directions on the ions. Only those ions for which the forces balance travel in a straight line into the next region. If the forces balance, then the electric force $F = \text{qE}$ equals the magnetic force $F = \text{qvB}$, so that $\text{qE} = \text{qvB}$. Noting that q cancels, we see that

Equation:

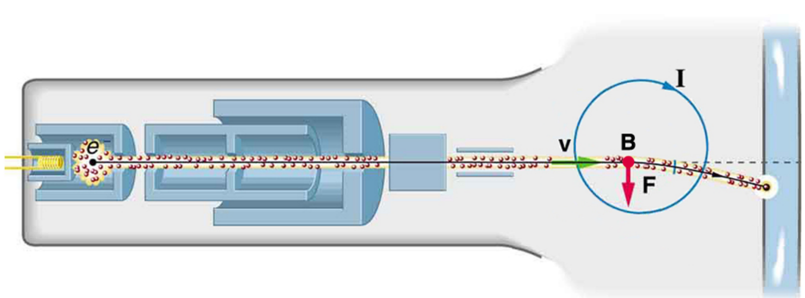
$$v = \frac{E}{B}$$

is the velocity particles must have to make it through the velocity selector, and further, that v can be selected by varying E and B. In the final region, there is only a uniform magnetic field, and so the charged particles move in circular arcs with radii proportional to particle mass. The paths also depend on charge q, but since q is in multiples of electron charges, it is easy to determine and to discriminate between ions in different charge states.

Mass spectrometry today is used extensively in chemistry and biology laboratories to identify chemical and biological substances according to their mass-to-charge ratios. In medicine, mass spectrometers are used to measure the concentration of isotopes used as tracers. Usually, biological molecules such as proteins are very large, so they are broken down into smaller fragments before analyzing. Recently, large virus particles have been analyzed as a whole on mass spectrometers. Sometimes a gas chromatograph or high-performance liquid chromatograph provides an initial separation of the large molecules, which are then input into the mass spectrometer.

Cathode Ray Tubes—CRTs—and the Like

What do non-flat-screen TVs, old computer monitors, x-ray machines, and the 2-mile-long Stanford Linear Accelerator have in common? All of them accelerate electrons, making them different versions of the electron gun. Many of these devices use magnetic fields to steer the accelerated electrons. [link] shows the construction of the type of cathode ray tube (CRT) found in some TVs, oscilloscopes, and old computer monitors. Two pairs of coils are used to steer the electrons, one vertically and the other horizontally, to their desired destination.



The cathode ray tube (CRT) is so named because rays of electrons originate at the cathode in the electron gun. Magnetic coils are used to steer the beam in many CRTs. In this case, the beam is moved down. Another pair of horizontal coils would steer the beam horizontally.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is one of the most useful and rapidly growing medical imaging tools. It non-invasively produces two-dimensional and three-dimensional images of the body that provide important medical information with none of the hazards of x-rays. MRI is based on an effect called **nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR)** in which an externally applied magnetic field interacts with the nuclei of certain atoms, particularly those of hydrogen (protons). These nuclei possess their own small magnetic fields, similar to those of electrons and the current loops discussed earlier in this chapter.

When placed in an external magnetic field, such nuclei experience a torque that pushes or aligns the nuclei into one of two new energy states—depending on the orientation of its spin (analogous to the N pole and S pole in a bar magnet). Transitions from the lower to higher energy state can be achieved by using an external radio frequency signal to “flip” the orientation of the small magnets. (This is actually a quantum mechanical process. The direction of the nuclear magnetic field is quantized as is energy in the radio waves. We will return to these topics in later chapters.) The specific frequency of the radio waves that are absorbed and reemitted depends sensitively on the type of nucleus, the chemical environment, and the external magnetic field strength. Therefore, this is a *resonance* phenomenon in which *nuclei* in a *magnetic* field act like resonators (analogous to those discussed in the treatment of sound in Oscillatory

Motion and Waves) that absorb and reemit only certain frequencies. Hence, the phenomenon is named *nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR).*

NMR has been used for more than 50 years as an analytical tool. It was formulated in 1946 by F. Bloch and E. Purcell, with the 1952 Nobel Prize in Physics going to them for their work. Over the past two decades, NMR has been developed to produce detailed images in a process now called magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), a name coined to avoid the use of the word “nuclear” and the concomitant implication that nuclear radiation is involved. (It is not.) The 2003 Nobel Prize in Medicine went to P. Lauterbur and P. Mansfield for their work with MRI applications.

The largest part of the MRI unit is a superconducting magnet that creates a magnetic field, typically between 1 and 2 T in strength, over a relatively large volume. MRI images can be both highly detailed and informative about structures and organ functions. It is helpful that normal and non-normal tissues respond differently for slight changes in the magnetic field. In most medical images, the protons that are hydrogen nuclei are imaged. (About 2/3 of the atoms in the body are hydrogen.) Their location and density give a variety of medically useful information, such as organ function, the condition of tissue (as in the brain), and the shape of structures, such as vertebral disks and knee-joint surfaces. MRI can also be used to follow the movement of certain ions across membranes, yielding information on active transport, osmosis, dialysis, and other phenomena. With excellent spatial resolution, MRI can provide information about tumors, strokes, shoulder injuries, infections, etc.

An image requires position information as well as the density of a nuclear type (usually protons). By varying the magnetic field slightly over the volume to be imaged, the resonant frequency of the protons is made to vary with position. Broadcast radio frequencies are swept over an appropriate range and nuclei absorb and reemit them only if the nuclei are in a magnetic field with the correct strength. The imaging receiver gathers information through the body almost point by point, building up a tissue map. The reception of reemitted radio waves as a function of frequency thus gives position information. These “slices” or cross sections through the body are only several mm thick. The intensity of the reemitted radio waves is

proportional to the concentration of the nuclear type being flipped, as well as information on the chemical environment in that area of the body. Various techniques are available for enhancing contrast in images and for obtaining more information. Scans called T1, T2, or proton density scans rely on different relaxation mechanisms of nuclei. Relaxation refers to the time it takes for the protons to return to equilibrium after the external field is turned off. This time depends upon tissue type and status (such as inflammation).

While MRI images are superior to x rays for certain types of tissue and have none of the hazards of x rays, they do not completely supplant x-ray images. MRI is less effective than x rays for detecting breaks in bone, for example, and in imaging breast tissue, so the two diagnostic tools complement each other. MRI images are also expensive compared to simple x-ray images and tend to be used most often where they supply information not readily obtained from x rays. Another disadvantage of MRI is that the patient is totally enclosed with detectors close to the body for about 30 minutes or more, leading to claustrophobia. It is also difficult for the obese patient to be in the magnet tunnel. New “open-MRI” machines are now available in which the magnet does not completely surround the patient.

Over the last decade, the development of much faster scans, called “functional MRI” (fMRI), has allowed us to map the functioning of various regions in the brain responsible for thought and motor control. This technique measures the change in blood flow for activities (thought, experiences, action) in the brain. The nerve cells increase their consumption of oxygen when active. Blood hemoglobin releases oxygen to active nerve cells and has somewhat different magnetic properties when oxygenated than when deoxygenated. With MRI, we can measure this and detect a blood oxygen-dependent signal. Most of the brain scans today use fMRI.

Other Medical Uses of Magnetic Fields

Currents in nerve cells and the heart create magnetic fields like any other currents. These can be measured but with some difficulty since their strengths are about 10^{-6} to 10^{-8} *less* than the Earth’s magnetic field. Recording of the heart’s magnetic field as it beats is called a

magnetocardiogram (MCG), while measurements of the brain's magnetic field is called a **magnetoencephalogram (MEG)**. Both give information that differs from that obtained by measuring the electric fields of these organs (ECGs and EEGs), but they are not yet of sufficient importance to make these difficult measurements common.

In both of these techniques, the sensors do not touch the body. MCG can be used in fetal studies, and is probably more sensitive than echocardiography. MCG also looks at the heart's electrical activity whose voltage output is too small to be recorded by surface electrodes as in EKG. It has the potential of being a rapid scan for early diagnosis of cardiac ischemia (obstruction of blood flow to the heart) or problems with the fetus.

MEG can be used to identify abnormal electrical discharges in the brain that produce weak magnetic signals. Therefore, it looks at brain activity, not just brain structure. It has been used for studies of Alzheimer's disease and epilepsy. Advances in instrumentation to measure very small magnetic fields have allowed these two techniques to be used more in recent years. What is used is a sensor called a SQUID, for superconducting quantum interference device. This operates at liquid helium temperatures and can measure magnetic fields thousands of times smaller than the Earth's.

Finally, there is a burgeoning market for magnetic cures in which magnets are applied in a variety of ways to the body, from magnetic bracelets to magnetic mattresses. The best that can be said for such practices is that they are apparently harmless, unless the magnets get close to the patient's computer or magnetic storage disks. Claims are made for a broad spectrum of benefits from cleansing the blood to giving the patient more energy, but clinical studies have not verified these claims, nor is there an identifiable mechanism by which such benefits might occur.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Magnet and Compass
Ever wonder how a compass worked to point you to the Arctic? Explore the interactions between a compass and bar magnet, and then add the Earth and find the surprising answer! Vary the magnet's strength, and see how

things change both inside and outside. Use the field meter to measure how the magnetic field changes.
https://archive.cnx.org/specials/5ca3e2cc-ae74-11e5-b6d3-f3c228f04b5c/magnet-and-compass/#sim-bar-magnet

Section Summary

- Crossed (perpendicular) electric and magnetic fields act as a velocity filter, giving equal and opposite forces on any charge with velocity perpendicular to the fields and of magnitude
  Equation:

$$v = \frac{E}{B}.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Measurements of the weak and fluctuating magnetic fields associated with brain activity are called magnetoencephalograms (MEGs). Do the brain's magnetic fields imply coordinated or uncoordinated nerve impulses? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Discuss the possibility that a Hall voltage would be generated on the moving heart of a patient during MRI imaging. Also discuss the same effect on the wires of a pacemaker. (The fact that patients with pacemakers are not given MRIs is significant.)

Exercise:

Problem:

A patient in an MRI unit turns his head quickly to one side and experiences momentary dizziness and a strange taste in his mouth. Discuss the possible causes.

Exercise:

Problem:

You are told that in a certain region there is either a uniform electric or magnetic field. What measurement or observation could you make to determine the type? (Ignore the Earth's magnetic field.)

Exercise:

Problem:

An example of magnetohydrodynamics (MHD) comes from the flow of a river (salty water). This fluid interacts with the Earth's magnetic field to produce a potential difference between the two river banks. How would you go about calculating the potential difference?

Exercise:

Problem:

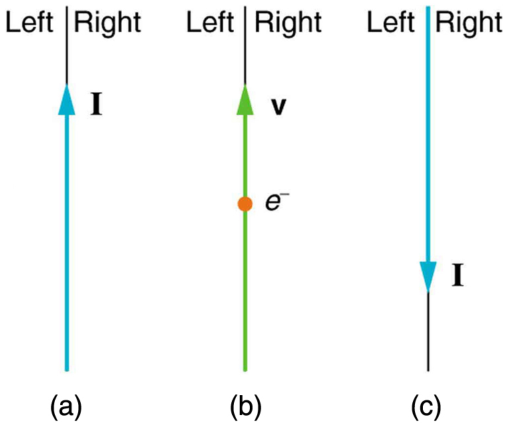
Draw gravitational field lines between 2 masses, electric field lines between a positive and a negative charge, electric field lines between 2 positive charges and magnetic field lines around a magnet. Qualitatively describe the differences between the fields and the entities responsible for the field lines.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Indicate whether the magnetic field created in each of the three situations shown in [link] is into or out of the page on the left and right of the current.



Solution:

(a) right-into page, left-out of page

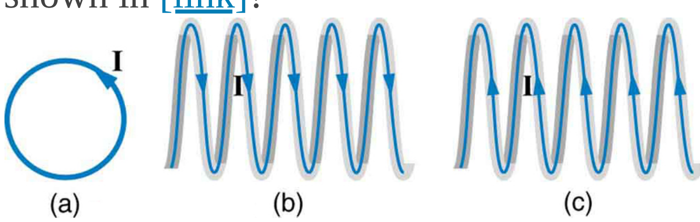
(b) right-out of page, left-into page

(c) right-out of page, left-into page

Exercise:

Problem:

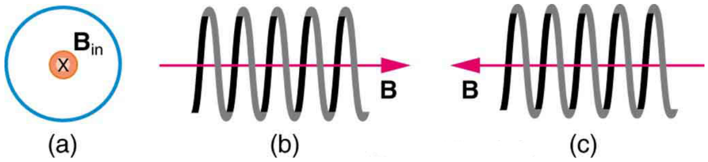
What are the directions of the fields in the center of the loop and coils shown in [link]?



Exercise:

Problem:

What are the directions of the currents in the loop and coils shown in [link]?



Solution:

(a) clockwise

(b) clockwise as seen from the left

(c) clockwise as seen from the right

Exercise:

Problem:

To see why an MRI utilizes iron to increase the magnetic field created by a coil, calculate the current needed in a 400-loop-per-meter circular coil 0.660 m in radius to create a 1.20-T field (typical of an MRI instrument) at its center with no iron present. The magnetic field of a proton is approximately like that of a circular current loop $0.650 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{m}$ in radius carrying $1.05 \times 10^{4}\ \text{A}$. What is the field at the center of such a loop?

Solution:

$1.01 \times 10^{13}\ \text{T}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Inside a motor, 30.0 A passes through a 250-turn circular loop that is 10.0 cm in radius. What is the magnetic field strength created at its center?

Exercise:

Problem:

Nonnuclear submarines use batteries for power when submerged. (a) Find the magnetic field 50.0 cm from a straight wire carrying 1200 A from the batteries to the drive mechanism of a submarine. (b) What is the field if the wires to and from the drive mechanism are side by side? (c) Discuss the effects this could have for a compass on the submarine that is not shielded.

Solution:

(a) $4.80 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{T}$

(b) Zero

(c) If the wires are not paired, the field is about 10 times stronger than Earth’s magnetic field and so could severely disrupt the use of a compass.

Exercise:

Problem:

How strong is the magnetic field inside a solenoid with 10,000 turns per meter that carries 20.0 A?

Exercise:

Problem:

What current is needed in the solenoid described in [link] to produce a magnetic field 10^4 times the Earth’s magnetic field of $5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{T}$?

Solution:

39.8 A

Exercise:

Problem:

How far from the starter cable of a car, carrying 150 A, must you be to experience a field less than the Earth's $(5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T})$? Assume a long straight wire carries the current. (In practice, the body of your car shields the dashboard compass.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Measurements affect the system being measured, such as the current loop in [link]. (a) Estimate the field the loop creates by calculating the field at the center of a circular loop 20.0 cm in diameter carrying 5.00 A. (b) What is the smallest field strength this loop can be used to measure, if its field must alter the measured field by less than 0.0100%?

Solution:

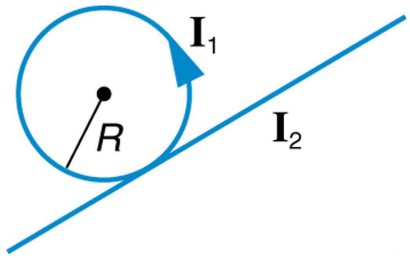
(a) $3.14 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$

(b) 0.314 T

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows a long straight wire just touching a loop carrying a current I_1. Both lie in the same plane. (a) What direction must the current I_2 in the straight wire have to create a field at the center of the loop in the direction opposite to that created by the loop? (b) What is the ratio of I_1/I_2 that gives zero field strength at the center of the loop? (c) What is the direction of the field directly above the loop under this circumstance?



Exercise:

Problem:

Find the magnitude and direction of the magnetic field at the point equidistant from the wires in [link](a), using the rules of vector addition to sum the contributions from each wire.

Solution:

7.55×10^{-5} T, 23.4º

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the magnitude and direction of the magnetic field at the point equidistant from the wires in [link](b), using the rules of vector addition to sum the contributions from each wire.

Exercise:

Problem:

What current is needed in the top wire in [link](a) to produce a field of zero at the point equidistant from the wires, if the currents in the bottom two wires are both 10.0 A into the page?

Solution:

10.0 A

Exercise:

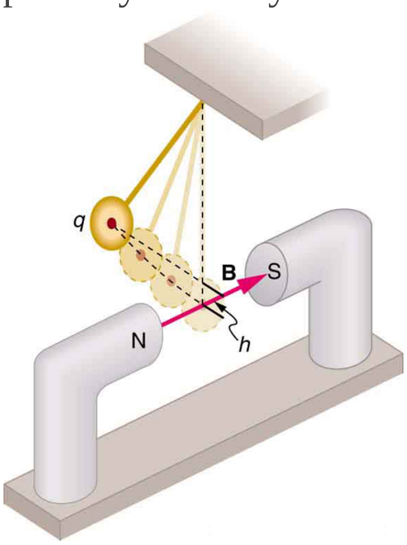
Problem:

Calculate the size of the magnetic field 20 m below a high voltage power line. The line carries 450 MW at a voltage of 300,000 V.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) A pendulum is set up so that its bob (a thin copper disk) swings between the poles of a permanent magnet as shown in [link]. What is the magnitude and direction of the magnetic force on the bob at the lowest point in its path, if it has a positive $0.250\ \mu C$ charge and is released from a height of 30.0 cm above its lowest point? The magnetic field strength is 1.50 T. (b) What is the acceleration of the bob at the bottom of its swing if its mass is 30.0 grams and it is hung from a flexible string? Be certain to include a free-body diagram as part of your analysis.



Solution:

(a) 9.09×10^{-7} N upward

(b) $3.03 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m/s}^2$

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) What voltage will accelerate electrons to a speed of $6.00 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{m/s}$? (b) Find the radius of curvature of the path of a *proton* accelerated through this potential in a 0.500-T field and compare this with the radius of curvature of an electron accelerated through the same potential.

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

Find the radius of curvature of the path of a 25.0-MeV proton moving perpendicularly to the 1.20-T field of a cyclotron.

Solution:

60.2 cm

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

To construct a nonmechanical water meter, a 0.500-T magnetic field is placed across the supply water pipe to a home and the Hall voltage is recorded. (a) Find the flow rate in liters per second through a 3.00-cm-diameter pipe if the Hall voltage is 60.0 mV. (b) What would the Hall voltage be for the same flow rate through a 10.0-cm-diameter pipe with the same field applied?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) Using the values given for an MHD drive in [link], and assuming the force is uniformly applied to the fluid, calculate the pressure created in $\mathrm{N/m^2}$. (b) Is this a significant fraction of an atmosphere?

Solution:

(a) $1.02 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{N/m}^{2}$

(b) Not a significant fraction of an atmosphere

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) Calculate the maximum torque on a 50-turn, 1.50 cm radius circular current loop carrying $50\ \mu\mathrm{A}$ in a 0.500-T field. (b) If this coil is to be used in a galvanometer that reads $50\ \mu\mathrm{A}$ full scale, what force constant spring must be used, if it is attached 1.00 cm from the axis of rotation and is stretched by the 60^{o} arc moved?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

A current balance used to define the ampere is designed so that the current through it is constant, as is the distance between wires. Even so, if the wires change length with temperature, the force between them will change. What percent change in force per degree will occur if the wires are copper?

Solution:

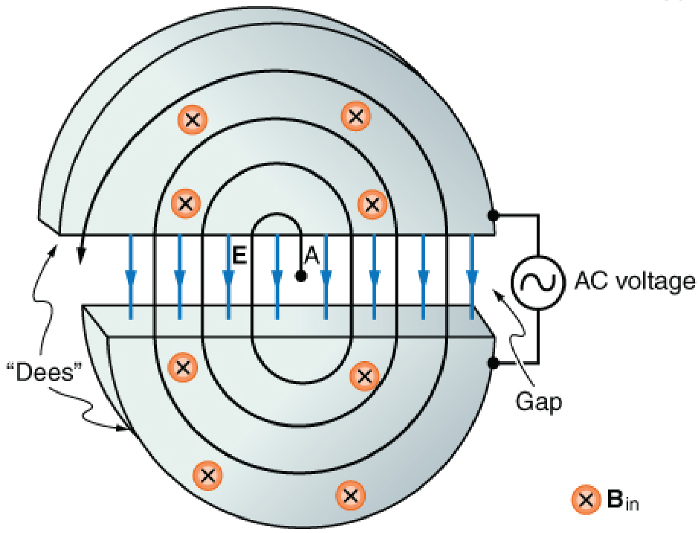
$17.0 \times 10^{-4}\%/^{\mathrm{o}}\mathrm{C}$

Exercise:

Problem:Integrated Concepts

(a) Show that the period of the circular orbit of a charged particle moving perpendicularly to a uniform magnetic field is $T = 2\pi m/(\mathrm{qB})$. (b) What is the frequency f? (c) What is the angular

velocity ω? Note that these results are independent of the velocity and radius of the orbit and, hence, of the energy of the particle. ([link].)



Cyclotrons accelerate charged particles orbiting in a magnetic field by placing an AC voltage on the metal Dees, between which the particles move, so that energy is added twice each orbit. The frequency is constant, since it is independent of the particle energy—the radius of the orbit simply increases with energy until the particles approach the edge and are extracted for various experiments and applications.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A cyclotron accelerates charged particles as shown in [link]. Using the results of the previous problem, calculate the frequency of the accelerating voltage needed for a proton in a 1.20-T field.

Solution:

18.3 MHz

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) A 0.140-kg baseball, pitched at 40.0 m/s horizontally and perpendicular to the Earth's horizontal $5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$ field, has a 100-nC charge on it. What distance is it deflected from its path by the magnetic force, after traveling 30.0 m horizontally? (b) Would you suggest this as a secret technique for a pitcher to throw curve balls?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) What is the direction of the force on a wire carrying a current due east in a location where the Earth's field is due north? Both are parallel to the ground. (b) Calculate the force per meter if the wire carries 20.0 A and the field strength is $3.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$. (c) What diameter copper wire would have its weight supported by this force? (d) Calculate the resistance per meter and the voltage per meter needed.

Solution:

(a) Straight up

(b) $6.00 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{N/m}$

(c) 94.1 μm

(d)2.47 Ω/m, 49.4 V/m

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

One long straight wire is to be held directly above another by repulsion between their currents. The lower wire carries 100 A and the wire 7.50 cm above it is 10-gauge (2.588 mm diameter) copper wire. (a) What current must flow in the upper wire, neglecting the Earth's field? (b) What is the smallest current if the Earth's $3.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$ field is parallel to the ground and is not neglected? (c) Is the supported wire in a stable or unstable equilibrium if displaced vertically? If displaced horizontally?

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

(a) Find the charge on a baseball, thrown at 35.0 m/s perpendicular to the Earth's $5.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{T}$ field, that experiences a 1.00-N magnetic force. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumption or premise is responsible?

Solution:

(a) 571 C

(b) Impossible to have such a large separated charge on such a small object.

(c) The 1.00-N force is much too great to be realistic in the Earth's field.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A charged particle having mass 6.64×10^{-27} kg (that of a helium atom) moving at $8.70 \times 10^{5}\ \mathrm{m/s}$ perpendicular to a 1.50-T magnetic field travels in a circular path of radius 16.0 mm. (a) What is the charge of the particle? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are responsible?

Exercise:

Problem:Unreasonable Results

An inventor wants to generate 120-V power by moving a 1.00-m-long wire perpendicular to the Earth's 5.00×10^{-5} T field. (a) Find the speed with which the wire must move. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumption is responsible?

Solution:

(a) 2.40×10^{6} m/s

(b) The speed is too high to be practical $\leq$ 1% speed of light

(c) The assumption that you could reasonably generate such a voltage with a single wire in the Earth's field is unreasonable

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

Frustrated by the small Hall voltage obtained in blood flow measurements, a medical physicist decides to increase the applied magnetic field strength to get a 0.500-V output for blood moving at 30.0 cm/s in a 1.50-cm-diameter vessel. (a) What magnetic field strength is needed? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which premise is responsible?

Exercise:

Problem:Unreasonable Results

A surveyor 100 m from a long straight 200-kV DC power line suspects that its magnetic field may equal that of the Earth and affect compass readings. (a) Calculate the current in the wire needed to create a 5.00×10^{-5} T field at this distance. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumption or premise is responsible?

Solution:

(a) 25.0 kA

(b) This current is unreasonably high. It implies a total power delivery in the line of 50.0x10^9 W, which is much too high for standard transmission lines.

(c)100 meters is a long distance to obtain the required field strength. Also coaxial cables are used for transmission lines so that there is virtually no field for DC power lines, because of cancellation from opposing currents. The surveyor’s concerns are not a problem for his magnetic field measurements.

Exercise:

Problem:Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a mass separator that applies a magnetic field perpendicular to the velocity of ions and separates the ions based on the radius of curvature of their paths in the field. Construct a problem in which you calculate the magnetic field strength needed to separate two ions that differ in mass, but not charge, and have the same initial velocity. Among the things to consider are the types of ions, the velocities they can be given before entering the magnetic field, and a reasonable value for the radius of curvature of the paths they follow. In addition, calculate the separation distance between the ions at the point where they are detected.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider using the torque on a current-carrying coil in a magnetic field to detect relatively small magnetic fields (less than the field of the Earth, for example). Construct a problem in which you calculate the maximum torque on a current-carrying loop in a magnetic field. Among the things to be considered are the size of the coil, the number

of loops it has, the current you pass through the coil, and the size of the field you wish to detect. Discuss whether the torque produced is large enough to be effectively measured. Your instructor may also wish for you to consider the effects, if any, of the field produced by the coil on the surroundings that could affect detection of the small field.

Glossary

magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)
: a medical imaging technique that uses magnetic fields create detailed images of internal tissues and organs

nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR)
: a phenomenon in which an externally applied magnetic field interacts with the nuclei of certain atoms

magnetocardiogram (MCG)
: a recording of the heart’s magnetic field as it beats

magnetoencephalogram (MEG)
: a measurement of the brain’s magnetic field

Introduction to Electromagnetic Waves
class="introduction"

Human eyes detect these orange “sea goldie” fish swimming over a coral reef in the blue waters of the Gulf of Eilat (Red Sea) using visible light. (credit: Daviddarom, Wikimedia Commons)

The beauty of a coral reef, the warm radiance of sunshine, the sting of sunburn, the X-ray revealing a broken bone, even microwave popcorn—all are brought to us by **electromagnetic waves**. The list of the various types of electromagnetic waves, ranging from radio transmission waves to nuclear gamma-ray (γ-ray) emissions, is interesting in itself.

Even more intriguing is that all of these widely varied phenomena are different manifestations of the same thing—electromagnetic waves. (See [link].) What are electromagnetic waves? How are they created, and how do they travel? How can we understand and organize their widely varying properties? What is their relationship to electric and magnetic effects? These and other questions will be explored.

Note:
Misconception Alert: Sound Waves vs. Radio Waves
Many people confuse sound waves with **radio waves**, one type of electromagnetic (EM) wave. However, sound and radio waves are

completely different phenomena. Sound creates pressure variations (waves) in matter, such as air or water, or your eardrum. Conversely, radio waves are *electromagnetic waves*, like visible light, infrared, ultraviolet, X-rays, and gamma rays. EM waves don’t need a medium in which to propagate; they can travel through a vacuum, such as outer space.

A radio works because sound waves played by the D.J. at the radio station are converted into electromagnetic waves, then encoded and transmitted in the radio-frequency range. The radio in your car receives the radio waves, decodes the information, and uses a speaker to change it back into a sound wave, bringing sweet music to your ears.

Discovering a New Phenomenon

It is worth noting at the outset that the general phenomenon of electromagnetic waves was predicted by theory before it was realized that light is a form of electromagnetic wave. The prediction was made by James Clerk Maxwell in the mid-19th century when he formulated a single theory combining all the electric and magnetic effects known by scientists at that time. “Electromagnetic waves” was the name he gave to the phenomena his theory predicted.

Such a theoretical prediction followed by experimental verification is an indication of the power of science in general, and physics in particular. The underlying connections and unity of physics allow certain great minds to solve puzzles without having all the pieces. The prediction of electromagnetic waves is one of the most spectacular examples of this power. Certain others, such as the prediction of antimatter, will be discussed in later modules.

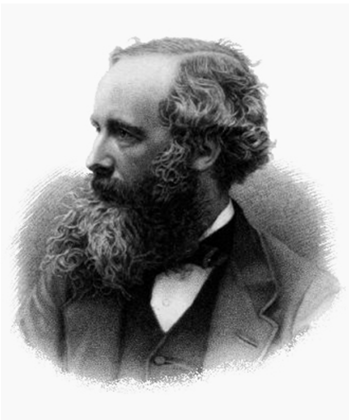
The electromagnetic waves sent and received by this 50-foot radar dish antenna at Kennedy Space Center in Florida are not visible, but help track expendable launch vehicles with high-definition imagery. The first use of this C-band radar dish was for the launch of the Atlas V rocket sending the New Horizons probe

toward Pluto.
(credit: NASA)

Maxwell’s Equations: Electromagnetic Waves Predicted and Observed

- Restate Maxwell’s equations.

The Scotsman James Clerk Maxwell (1831–1879) is regarded as the greatest theoretical physicist of the 19th century. (See [link].) Although he died young, Maxwell not only formulated a complete electromagnetic theory, represented by **Maxwell’s equations**, he also developed the kinetic theory of gases and made significant contributions to the understanding of color vision and the nature of Saturn’s rings.



James Clerk Maxwell, a 19th-century physicist, developed a theory that explained the relationship between electricity and magnetism and correctly predicted that visible light is caused by electromagnetic

waves. (credit:
G. J. Stodart)

Maxwell brought together all the work that had been done by brilliant physicists such as Oersted, Coulomb, Gauss, and Faraday, and added his own insights to develop the overarching theory of electromagnetism. Maxwell's equations are paraphrased here in words because their mathematical statement is beyond the level of this text. However, the equations illustrate how apparently simple mathematical statements can elegantly unite and express a multitude of concepts—why mathematics is the language of science.

Note:
Maxwell's Equations

1. **Electric field lines** originate on positive charges and terminate on negative charges. The electric field is defined as the force per unit charge on a test charge, and the strength of the force is related to the electric constant ε_0, also known as the permittivity of free space. From Maxwell's first equation we obtain a special form of Coulomb's law known as Gauss's law for electricity.
2. **Magnetic field lines** are continuous, having no beginning or end. No magnetic monopoles are known to exist. The strength of the magnetic force is related to the magnetic constant μ_0, also known as the permeability of free space. This second of Maxwell's equations is known as Gauss's law for magnetism.
3. A changing magnetic field induces an electromotive force (emf) and, hence, an electric field. The direction of the emf opposes the change. This third of Maxwell's equations is Faraday's law of induction, and includes Lenz's law.
4. Magnetic fields are generated by moving charges or by changing electric fields. This fourth of Maxwell's equations encompasses Ampere's law and adds another source of magnetism—changing electric fields.

Maxwell’s equations encompass the major laws of electricity and magnetism. What is not so apparent is the symmetry that Maxwell introduced in his mathematical framework. Especially important is his addition of the hypothesis that changing electric fields create magnetic fields. This is exactly analogous (and symmetric) to Faraday’s law of induction and had been suspected for some time, but fits beautifully into Maxwell’s equations.

Symmetry is apparent in nature in a wide range of situations. In contemporary research, symmetry plays a major part in the search for sub-atomic particles using massive multinational particle accelerators such as the new Large Hadron Collider at CERN.

Note:
Making Connections: Unification of Forces
Maxwell’s complete and symmetric theory showed that electric and magnetic forces are not separate, but different manifestations of the same thing—the electromagnetic force. This classical unification of forces is one motivation for current attempts to unify the four basic forces in nature—the gravitational, electrical, strong, and weak nuclear forces.

Since changing electric fields create relatively weak magnetic fields, they could not be easily detected at the time of Maxwell’s hypothesis. Maxwell realized, however, that oscillating charges, like those in AC circuits, produce changing electric fields. He predicted that these changing fields would propagate from the source like waves generated on a lake by a jumping fish.

The waves predicted by Maxwell would consist of oscillating electric and magnetic fields—defined to be an electromagnetic wave (EM wave). Electromagnetic waves would be capable of exerting forces on charges great distances from their source, and they might thus be detectable. Maxwell calculated that electromagnetic waves would propagate at a speed given by the equation

Equation:

$$c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mu_0 \varepsilon_0}}.$$

When the values for μ_0 and ε_0 are entered into the equation for c, we find that

Equation:

$$c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\left(8.85 \times 10^{-12}\ \frac{\mathrm{C}^2}{\mathrm{N{\cdot}m}^2}\right)\left(4\pi\times 10^{-7}\ \frac{\mathrm{T{\cdot}m}}{\mathrm{A}}\right)}} = 3.00 \times 10^8\ \mathrm{m/s},$$

which is the speed of light. In fact, Maxwell concluded that light is an electromagnetic wave having such wavelengths that it can be detected by the eye.

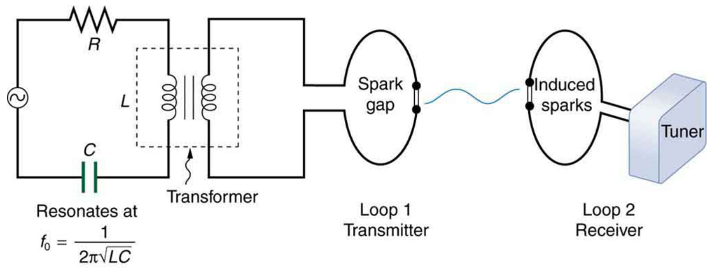
Other wavelengths should exist—it remained to be seen if they did. If so, Maxwell's theory and remarkable predictions would be verified, the greatest triumph of physics since Newton. Experimental verification came within a few years, but not before Maxwell's death.

Hertz's Observations

The German physicist Heinrich Hertz (1857–1894) was the first to generate and detect certain types of electromagnetic waves in the laboratory. Starting in 1887, he performed a series of experiments that not only confirmed the existence of electromagnetic waves, but also verified that they travel at the speed of light.

Hertz used an AC RLC (resistor-inductor-capacitor) circuit that resonates at a known frequency $f_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{\mathrm{LC}}}$ and connected it to a loop of wire as shown in [link]. High voltages induced across the gap in the loop produced sparks that were visible evidence of the current in the circuit and that helped generate electromagnetic waves.

Across the laboratory, Hertz had another loop attached to another RLC circuit, which could be tuned (as the dial on a radio) to the same resonant frequency as the first and could, thus, be made to receive electromagnetic waves. This loop also had a gap across which sparks were generated, giving solid evidence that electromagnetic waves had been received.



The apparatus used by Hertz in 1887 to generate and detect electromagnetic waves. An RLC circuit connected to the first loop caused sparks across a gap in the wire loop and generated electromagnetic waves. Sparks across a gap in the second loop located across the laboratory gave evidence that the waves had been received.

Hertz also studied the reflection, refraction, and interference patterns of the electromagnetic waves he generated, verifying their wave character. He was able to determine wavelength from the interference patterns, and knowing their frequency, he could calculate the propagation speed using the equation $v = f\lambda$ (velocity—or speed—equals frequency times wavelength). Hertz was thus able to prove that electromagnetic waves travel at the speed of light. The SI unit for frequency, the hertz ($1\text{ Hz} = 1\text{ cycle/s}$), is named in his honor.

Section Summary

- Electromagnetic waves consist of oscillating electric and magnetic fields and propagate at the speed of light c. They were predicted by Maxwell, who also showed that
  Equation:
  $$c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mu_0 \varepsilon_0}},$$
  where μ_0 is the permeability of free space and ε_0 is the permittivity of free space.
- Maxwell's prediction of electromagnetic waves resulted from his formulation of a complete and symmetric theory of electricity and magnetism, known as Maxwell's equations.
- These four equations are paraphrased in this text, rather than presented numerically, and encompass the major laws of electricity and magnetism. First is Gauss's law for electricity, second is Gauss's law for magnetism, third is Faraday's law of induction, including Lenz's law, and fourth is Ampere's law in a symmetric formulation that adds another source of magnetism—changing electric fields.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that the correct value for the speed of light c is obtained when numerical values for the permeability and permittivity of free space (μ_0 and ε_0) are entered into the equation $c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mu_0 \varepsilon_0}}$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that, when SI units for μ_0 and ε_0 are entered, the units given by the right-hand side of the equation in the problem above are m/s.

Glossary

electromagnetic waves
radiation in the form of waves of electric and magnetic energy

Maxwell’s equations
a set of four equations that comprise a complete, overarching theory of electromagnetism

RLC circuit
an electric circuit that includes a resistor, capacitor and inductor

hertz
an SI unit denoting the frequency of an electromagnetic wave, in cycles per second

speed of light
in a vacuum, such as space, the speed of light is a constant 3×10^8 m/s

electromotive force (emf)
energy produced per unit charge, drawn from a source that produces an electrical current

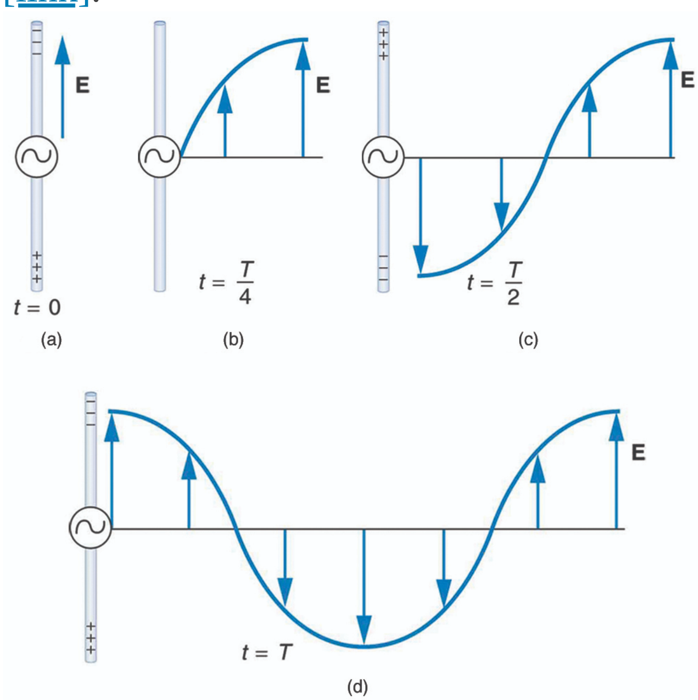
electric field lines
a pattern of imaginary lines that extend between an electric source and charged objects in the surrounding area, with arrows pointed away from positively charged objects and toward negatively charged objects. The more lines in the pattern, the stronger the electric field in that region

magnetic field lines
a pattern of continuous, imaginary lines that emerge from and enter into opposite magnetic poles. The density of the lines indicates the magnitude of the magnetic field

Production of Electromagnetic Waves

- Describe the electric and magnetic waves as they move out from a source, such as an AC generator.
- Explain the mathematical relationship between the magnetic field strength and the electrical field strength.
- Calculate the maximum strength of the magnetic field in an electromagnetic wave, given the maximum electric field strength.

We can get a good understanding of **electromagnetic waves** (EM) by considering how they are produced. Whenever a current varies, associated electric and magnetic fields vary, moving out from the source like waves. Perhaps the easiest situation to visualize is a varying current in a long straight wire, produced by an AC generator at its center, as illustrated in [link].



This long straight gray wire with an AC generator at its center becomes a broadcast antenna for electromagnetic waves. Shown here are the charge distributions at four different times. The electric field ($\mathbf{E}$) propagates away

from the antenna at the speed of light, forming part of an electromagnetic wave.

The **electric field** ($\mathbf{E}$) shown surrounding the wire is produced by the charge distribution on the wire. Both the $\mathbf{E}$ and the charge distribution vary as the current changes. The changing field propagates outward at the speed of light.

There is an associated **magnetic field** ($\mathbf{B}$) which propagates outward as well (see [link]). The electric and magnetic fields are closely related and propagate as an electromagnetic wave. This is what happens in broadcast antennae such as those in radio and TV stations.

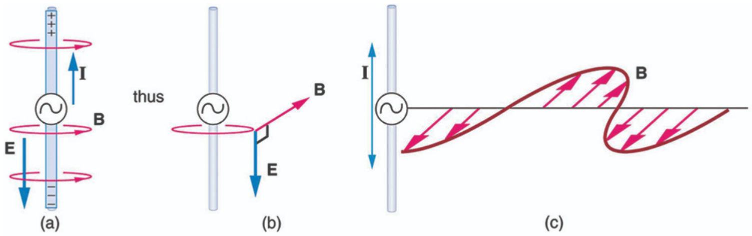
Closer examination of the one complete cycle shown in [link] reveals the periodic nature of the generator-driven charges oscillating up and down in the antenna and the electric field produced. At time $t = 0$, there is the maximum separation of charge, with negative charges at the top and positive charges at the bottom, producing the maximum magnitude of the electric field (or E-field) in the upward direction. One-fourth of a cycle later, there is no charge separation and the field next to the antenna is zero, while the maximum E-field has moved away at speed c.

As the process continues, the charge separation reverses and the field reaches its maximum downward value, returns to zero, and rises to its maximum upward value at the end of one complete cycle. The outgoing wave has an **amplitude** proportional to the maximum separation of charge. Its **wavelength**(λ) is proportional to the period of the oscillation and, hence, is smaller for short periods or high frequencies. (As usual, wavelength and **frequency**(f) are inversely proportional.)

Electric and Magnetic Waves: Moving Together

Following Ampere's law, current in the antenna produces a magnetic field, as shown in [link]. The relationship between $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ is shown at one

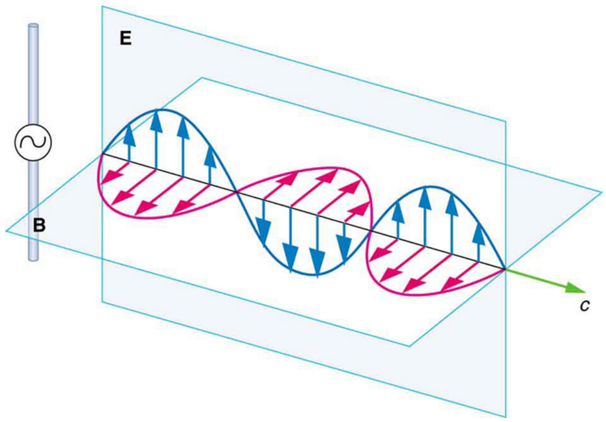
instant in [link] (a). As the current varies, the magnetic field varies in magnitude and direction.



(a) The current in the antenna produces the circular magnetic field lines. The current ($\mathbf{I}$) produces the separation of charge along the wire, which in turn creates the electric field as shown. (b) The electric and magnetic fields ($\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$) near the wire are perpendicular; they are shown here for one point in space. (c) The magnetic field varies with current and propagates away from the antenna at the speed of light.

The magnetic field lines also propagate away from the antenna at the speed of light, forming the other part of the electromagnetic wave, as seen in [link] (b). The magnetic part of the wave has the same period and wavelength as the electric part, since they are both produced by the same movement and separation of charges in the antenna.

The electric and magnetic waves are shown together at one instant in time in [link]. The electric and magnetic fields produced by a long straight wire antenna are exactly in phase. Note that they are perpendicular to one another and to the direction of propagation, making this a **transverse wave**.



A part of the electromagnetic wave sent out from the antenna at one instant in time. The electric and magnetic fields ($\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$) are in phase, and they are perpendicular to one another and the direction of propagation. For clarity, the waves are shown only along one direction, but they propagate out in other directions too.

Electromagnetic waves generally propagate out from a source in all directions, sometimes forming a complex radiation pattern. A linear antenna like this one will not radiate parallel to its length, for example. The wave is shown in one direction from the antenna in [link] to illustrate its basic characteristics.

Instead of the AC generator, the antenna can also be driven by an AC circuit. In fact, charges radiate whenever they are accelerated. But while a current in a circuit needs a complete path, an antenna has a varying charge distribution forming a **standing wave**, driven by the AC. The dimensions of the antenna are critical for determining the frequency of the radiated electromagnetic waves. This is a **resonant** phenomenon and when we tune

radios or TV, we vary electrical properties to achieve appropriate resonant conditions in the antenna.

Receiving Electromagnetic Waves

Electromagnetic waves carry energy away from their source, similar to a sound wave carrying energy away from a standing wave on a guitar string. An antenna for receiving EM signals works in reverse. And like antennas that produce EM waves, receiver antennas are specially designed to resonate at particular frequencies.

An incoming electromagnetic wave accelerates electrons in the antenna, setting up a standing wave. If the radio or TV is switched on, electrical components pick up and amplify the signal formed by the accelerating electrons. The signal is then converted to audio and/or video format. Sometimes big receiver dishes are used to focus the signal onto an antenna.

In fact, charges radiate whenever they are accelerated. When designing circuits, we often assume that energy does not quickly escape AC circuits, and mostly this is true. A broadcast antenna is specially designed to enhance the rate of electromagnetic radiation, and shielding is necessary to keep the radiation close to zero. Some familiar phenomena are based on the production of electromagnetic waves by varying currents. Your microwave oven, for example, sends electromagnetic waves, called microwaves, from a concealed antenna that has an oscillating current imposed on it.

Relating E-Field and B-Field Strengths

There is a relationship between the E- and B-field strengths in an electromagnetic wave. This can be understood by again considering the antenna just described. The stronger the E-field created by a separation of charge, the greater the current and, hence, the greater the B-field created.

Since current is directly proportional to voltage (Ohm’s law) and voltage is directly proportional to E-field strength, the two should be directly proportional. It can be shown that the magnitudes of the fields do have a constant ratio, equal to the speed of light. That is,

Equation:

$$\frac{E}{B} = c$$

is the ratio of E-field strength to B-field strength in any electromagnetic wave. This is true at all times and at all locations in space. A simple and elegant result.

Example:
Calculating B-Field Strength in an Electromagnetic Wave
What is the maximum strength of the B-field in an electromagnetic wave that has a maximum E-field strength of $1000\ \text{V/m}$?
Strategy
To find the B-field strength, we rearrange the above equation to solve for B, yielding
Equation:

$$B = \frac{E}{c}.$$

Solution
We are given E, and c is the speed of light. Entering these into the expression for B yields
Equation:

$$B = \frac{1000\ \text{V/m}}{3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s}} = 3.33 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{T},$$

Where T stands for Tesla, a measure of magnetic field strength.
Discussion
The B-field strength is less than a tenth of the Earth's admittedly weak magnetic field. This means that a relatively strong electric field of 1000 V/m is accompanied by a relatively weak magnetic field. Note that as this

wave spreads out, say with distance from an antenna, its field strengths become progressively weaker.

The result of this example is consistent with the statement made in the module Maxwell’s Equations: Electromagnetic Waves Predicted and Observed that changing electric fields create relatively weak magnetic fields. They can be detected in electromagnetic waves, however, by taking advantage of the phenomenon of resonance, as Hertz did. A system with the same natural frequency as the electromagnetic wave can be made to oscillate. All radio and TV receivers use this principle to pick up and then amplify weak electromagnetic waves, while rejecting all others not at their resonant frequency.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Antennas
For your TV or radio at home, identify the antenna, and sketch its shape. If you don’t have cable, you might have an outdoor or indoor TV antenna. Estimate its size. If the TV signal is between 60 and 216 MHz for basic channels, then what is the wavelength of those EM waves?
Try tuning the radio and note the small range of frequencies at which a reasonable signal for that station is received. (This is easier with digital readout.) If you have a car with a radio and extendable antenna, note the quality of reception as the length of the antenna is changed.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Radio Waves and Electromagnetic Fields
Broadcast radio waves from KPhET. Wiggle the transmitter electron manually or have it oscillate automatically. Display the field as a curve or vectors. The strip chart shows the electron positions at the transmitter and at the receiver.
https://archive.cnx.org/specials/c8dd764c-ae74-11e5-af4c-3375261fa183/radio-waves/#sim-radio-waves

Section Summary

- Electromagnetic waves are created by oscillating charges (which radiate whenever accelerated) and have the same frequency as the oscillation.
- Since the electric and magnetic fields in most electromagnetic waves are perpendicular to the direction in which the wave moves, it is ordinarily a transverse wave.
- The strengths of the electric and magnetic parts of the wave are related by
  Equation:

  $$\frac{E}{B} = \text{c},$$

  which implies that the magnetic field B is very weak relative to the electric field E.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

The direction of the electric field shown in each part of [link] is that produced by the charge distribution in the wire. Justify the direction shown in each part, using the Coulomb force law and the definition of $\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{F}/q$, where q is a positive test charge.

Exercise:

Problem:

Is the direction of the magnetic field shown in [link] (a) consistent with the right-hand rule for current (RHR-2) in the direction shown in the figure?

Exercise:

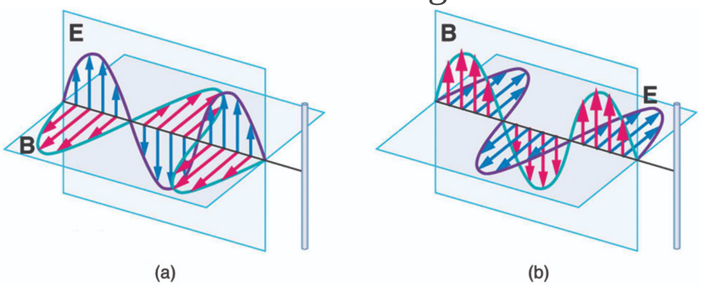
Problem:

Why is the direction of the current shown in each part of [link] opposite to the electric field produced by the wire's charge separation?

Exercise:

Problem:

In which situation shown in [link] will the electromagnetic wave be more successful in inducing a current in the wire? Explain.

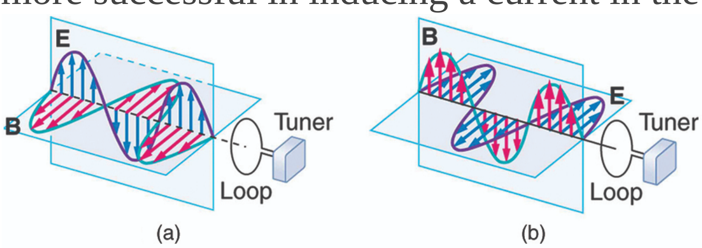


Electromagnetic waves approaching long straight wires.

Exercise:

Problem:

In which situation shown in [link] will the electromagnetic wave be more successful in inducing a current in the loop? Explain.



Electromagnetic waves approaching a wire loop.

Exercise:

Problem:

Should the straight wire antenna of a radio be vertical or horizontal to best receive radio waves broadcast by a vertical transmitter antenna? How should a loop antenna be aligned to best receive the signals? (Note that the direction of the loop that produces the best reception can be used to determine the location of the source. It is used for that purpose in tracking tagged animals in nature studies, for example.)

Exercise:

Problem:

Under what conditions might wires in a DC circuit emit electromagnetic waves?

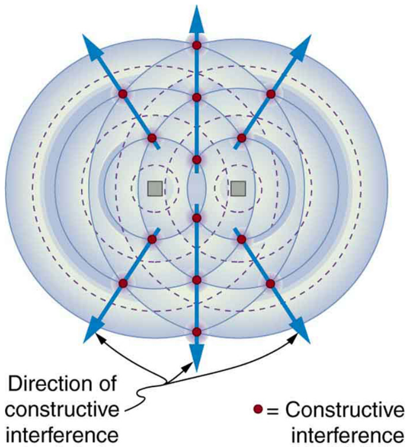
Exercise:

Problem: Give an example of interference of electromagnetic waves.

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows the interference pattern of two radio antennas broadcasting the same signal. Explain how this is analogous to the interference pattern for sound produced by two speakers. Could this be used to make a directional antenna system that broadcasts preferentially in certain directions? Explain.



An overhead view of two radio broadcast antennas sending the same signal, and the interference pattern they produce.

Exercise:

Problem: Can an antenna be any length? Explain your answer.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the maximum electric field strength in an electromagnetic wave that has a maximum magnetic field strength of $5.00 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{T}$ (about 10 times the Earth's)?

Solution:

150 kV/m

Exercise:

Problem:

The maximum magnetic field strength of an electromagnetic field is $5 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{T}$. Calculate the maximum electric field strength if the wave is traveling in a medium in which the speed of the wave is $0.75c$.

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify the units obtained for magnetic field strength B in [link] (using the equation $B = \frac{E}{c}$) are in fact teslas (T).

Glossary

electric field
: a vector quantity (**E**); the lines of electric force per unit charge, moving radially outward from a positive charge and in toward a negative charge

electric field strength
: the magnitude of the electric field, denoted *E*-field

magnetic field
: a vector quantity (**B**); can be used to determine the magnetic force on a moving charged particle

magnetic field strength
: the magnitude of the magnetic field, denoted *B*-field

transverse wave
: a wave, such as an electromagnetic wave, which oscillates perpendicular to the axis along the line of travel

standing wave

a wave that oscillates in place, with nodes where no motion happens

wavelength
: the distance from one peak to the next in a wave

amplitude
: the height, or magnitude, of an electromagnetic wave

frequency
: the number of complete wave cycles (up-down-up) passing a given point within one second (cycles/second)

resonant
: a system that displays enhanced oscillation when subjected to a periodic disturbance of the same frequency as its natural frequency

oscillate
: to fluctuate back and forth in a steady beat

The Electromagnetic Spectrum

- List three “rules of thumb” that apply to the different frequencies along the electromagnetic spectrum.
- Explain why the higher the frequency, the shorter the wavelength of an electromagnetic wave.
- Draw a simplified electromagnetic spectrum, indicating the relative positions, frequencies, and spacing of the different types of radiation bands.
- List and explain the different methods by which electromagnetic waves are produced across the spectrum.

In this module we examine how electromagnetic waves are classified into categories such as radio, infrared, ultraviolet, and so on, so that we can understand some of their similarities as well as some of their differences. We will also find that there are many connections with previously discussed topics, such as wavelength and resonance. A brief overview of the production and utilization of electromagnetic waves is found in [link].

Type of EM wave	**Production**	**Applications**	**Life sciences aspect**	**Issues**
Radio & TV	Accelerating charges	Communications Remote controls	MRI	Requires controls for band use
Microwaves	Accelerating charges & thermal agitation	Communications Ovens Radar	Deep heating	Cell phone use
Infrared	Thermal agitations & electronic transitions	Thermal imaging Heating	Absorbed by atmosphere	Greenhouse effect
Visible light	Thermal agitations & electronic transitions	All pervasive	Photosynthesis Human vision	

Type of EM wave	Production	Applications	Life sciences aspect	Issues
Ultraviolet	Thermal agitations & electronic transitions	Sterilization Cancer control	Vitamin D production	Ozone depletion Cancer causing
X-rays	Inner electronic transitions and fast collisions	Medical Security	Medical diagnosis Cancer therapy	Cancer causing
Gamma rays	Nuclear decay	Nuclear medicineSecurity	Medical diagnosis Cancer therapy	Cancer causing Radiation damage

Electromagnetic Waves

Note:
Connections: Waves
There are many types of waves, such as water waves and even earthquakes. Among the many shared attributes of waves are propagation speed, frequency, and wavelength. These are always related by the expression $v_{\text{W}} = f\lambda$. This module concentrates on EM waves, but other modules contain examples of all of these characteristics for sound waves and submicroscopic particles.

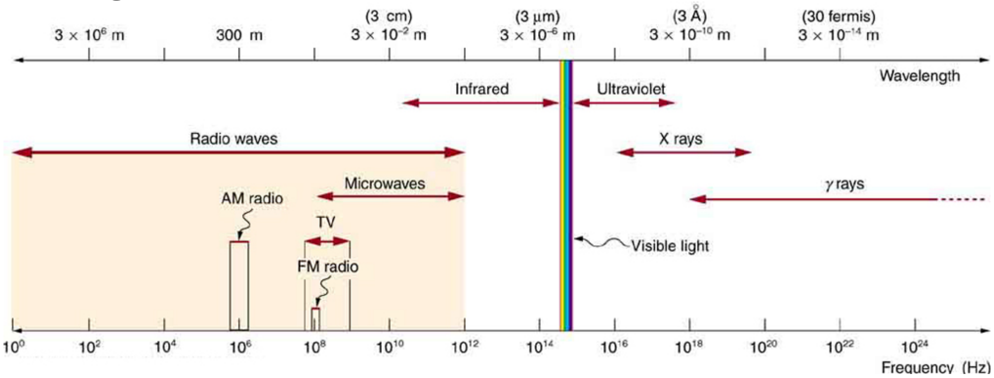
As noted before, an electromagnetic wave has a frequency and a wavelength associated with it and travels at the speed of light, or c. The relationship among these wave characteristics can be described by $v_{\text{W}} = f\lambda$, where v_{W} is the propagation speed of the wave, f is the frequency, and λ is the wavelength. Here $v_{\text{W}} = c$, so that for all electromagnetic waves,
Equation:

$$c = f\lambda.$$

Thus, for all electromagnetic waves, the greater the frequency, the smaller the wavelength.

[link] shows how the various types of electromagnetic waves are categorized according to their wavelengths and frequencies—that is, it shows the electromagnetic spectrum. Many of the

characteristics of the various types of electromagnetic waves are related to their frequencies and wavelengths, as we shall see.



The electromagnetic spectrum, showing the major categories of electromagnetic waves. The range of frequencies and wavelengths is remarkable. The dividing line between some categories is distinct, whereas other categories overlap.

Note:
Electromagnetic Spectrum: Rules of Thumb
Three rules that apply to electromagnetic waves in general are as follows:

- High-frequency electromagnetic waves are more energetic and are more able to penetrate than low-frequency waves.
- High-frequency electromagnetic waves can carry more information per unit time than low-frequency waves.
- The shorter the wavelength of any electromagnetic wave probing a material, the smaller the detail it is possible to resolve.

Note that there are exceptions to these rules of thumb.

Transmission, Reflection, and Absorption

What happens when an electromagnetic wave impinges on a material? If the material is transparent to the particular frequency, then the wave can largely be transmitted. If the material is opaque to the frequency, then the wave can be totally reflected. The wave can also be absorbed by the material, indicating that there is some interaction between the wave and the material, such as the thermal agitation of molecules.

Of course it is possible to have partial transmission, reflection, and absorption. We normally associate these properties with visible light, but they do apply to all electromagnetic waves.

What is not obvious is that something that is transparent to light may be opaque at other frequencies. For example, ordinary glass is transparent to visible light but largely opaque to ultraviolet radiation. Human skin is opaque to visible light—we cannot see through people—but transparent to X-rays.

Radio and TV Waves

The broad category of **radio waves** is defined to contain any electromagnetic wave produced by currents in wires and circuits. Its name derives from their most common use as a carrier of audio information (i.e., radio). The name is applied to electromagnetic waves of similar frequencies regardless of source. Radio waves from outer space, for example, do not come from alien radio stations. They are created by many astronomical phenomena, and their study has revealed much about nature on the largest scales.

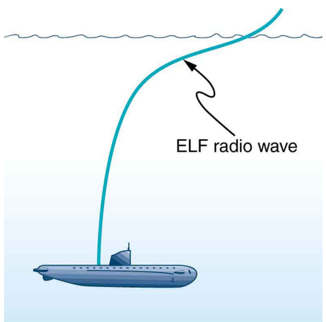
There are many uses for radio waves, and so the category is divided into many subcategories, including microwaves and those electromagnetic waves used for AM and FM radio, cellular telephones, and TV.

The lowest commonly encountered radio frequencies are produced by high-voltage AC power transmission lines at frequencies of 50 or 60 Hz. (See [link].) These extremely long wavelength electromagnetic waves (about 6000 km!) are one means of energy loss in long-distance power transmission.

This high-voltage traction power line running to Eutingen Railway Substation in Germany radiates electromagnetic waves with very long wavelengths. (credit: Zonk43, Wikimedia Commons)

There is an ongoing controversy regarding potential health hazards associated with exposure to these electromagnetic fields (E-fields). Some people suspect that living near such transmission lines may cause a variety of illnesses, including cancer. But demographic data are either inconclusive or simply do not support the hazard theory. Recent reports that have looked at many European and American epidemiological studies have found no increase in risk for cancer due to exposure to E-fields.

Extremely low frequency (ELF) radio waves of about 1 kHz are used to communicate with submerged submarines. The ability of radio waves to penetrate salt water is related to their wavelength (much like ultrasound penetrating tissue)—the longer the wavelength, the farther they penetrate. Since salt water is a good conductor, radio waves are strongly absorbed by it, and very long wavelengths are needed to reach a submarine under the surface. (See [link].)

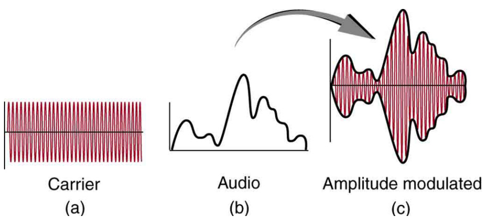


Very long wavelength radio waves are needed to reach this submarine, requiring extremely low frequency signals (ELF). Shorter wavelengths do not penetrate to any significant depth.

AM radio waves are used to carry commercial radio signals in the frequency range from 540 to 1600 kHz. The abbreviation AM stands for **amplitude modulation**, which is the method for placing information on these waves. (See [link].) A **carrier wave** having the basic frequency of the radio station, say 1530 kHz, is varied or modulated in amplitude by an audio signal. The resulting wave has a constant frequency, but a varying amplitude.

A radio receiver tuned to have the same resonant frequency as the carrier wave can pick up the signal, while rejecting the many other frequencies impinging on its antenna. The receiver’s

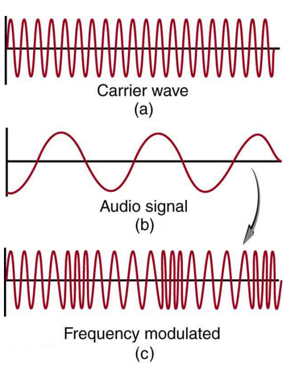
circuitry is designed to respond to variations in amplitude of the carrier wave to replicate the original audio signal. That audio signal is amplified to drive a speaker or perhaps to be recorded.



Amplitude modulation for AM radio. (a) A carrier wave at the station's basic frequency. (b) An audio signal at much lower audible frequencies. (c) The amplitude of the carrier is modulated by the audio signal without changing its basic frequency.

FM Radio Waves

FM radio waves are also used for commercial radio transmission, but in the frequency range of 88 to 108 MHz. FM stands for **frequency modulation**, another method of carrying information. (See [link].) Here a carrier wave having the basic frequency of the radio station, perhaps 105.1 MHz, is modulated in frequency by the audio signal, producing a wave of constant amplitude but varying frequency.



Frequency modulation for

FM radio. (a) A carrier wave at the station’s basic frequency. (b) An audio signal at much lower audible frequencies. (c) The frequency of the carrier is modulated by the audio signal without changing its amplitude.

Since audible frequencies range up to 20 kHz (or 0.020 MHz) at most, the frequency of the FM radio wave can vary from the carrier by as much as 0.020 MHz. Thus the carrier frequencies of two different radio stations cannot be closer than 0.020 MHz. An FM receiver is tuned to resonate at the carrier frequency and has circuitry that responds to variations in frequency, reproducing the audio information.

FM radio is inherently less subject to noise from stray radio sources than AM radio. The reason is that amplitudes of waves add. So an AM receiver would interpret noise added onto the amplitude of its carrier wave as part of the information. An FM receiver can be made to reject amplitudes other than that of the basic carrier wave and only look for variations in frequency. It is thus easier to reject noise from FM, since noise produces a variation in amplitude.

Television is also broadcast on electromagnetic waves. Since the waves must carry a great deal of visual as well as audio information, each channel requires a larger range of frequencies than simple radio transmission. TV channels utilize frequencies in the range of 54 to 88 MHz and 174 to 222 MHz. (The entire FM radio band lies between channels 88 MHz and 174 MHz.) These TV channels are called VHF (for **very high frequency**). Other channels called UHF (for **ultra high frequency**) utilize an even higher frequency range of 470 to 1000 MHz.

The TV video signal is AM, while the TV audio is FM. Note that these frequencies are those of free transmission with the user utilizing an old-fashioned roof antenna. Satellite dishes and cable transmission of TV occurs at significantly higher frequencies and is rapidly evolving with the use of the high-definition or HD format.

Example:
Calculating Wavelengths of Radio Waves

Calculate the wavelengths of a 1530-kHz AM radio signal, a 105.1-MHz FM radio signal, and a 1.90-GHz cell phone signal.

Strategy

The relationship between wavelength and frequency is $c = f\lambda$, where $c = 3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ is the speed of light (the speed of light is only very slightly smaller in air than it is in a vacuum). We can rearrange this equation to find the wavelength for all three frequencies.

Solution

Rearranging gives

Equation:

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f}.$$

(a) For the $f = 1530 \text{ kHz}$ AM radio signal, then,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda &= \frac{3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}}{1530 \times 10^3 \text{ cycles/s}} \\ &= 196 \text{ m.} \end{aligned}$$

(b) For the $f = 105.1 \text{ MHz}$ FM radio signal,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda &= \frac{3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}}{105.1 \times 10^6 \text{ cycles/s}} \\ &= 2.85 \text{ m.} \end{aligned}$$

(c) And for the $f = 1.90 \text{ GHz}$ cell phone,

Equation:

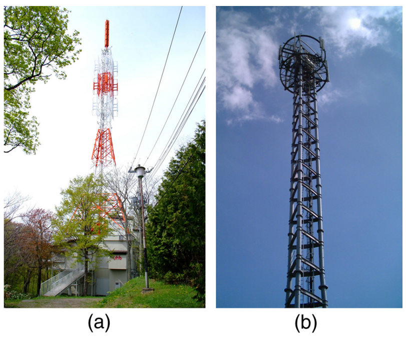
$$\begin{aligned} \lambda &= \frac{3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}}{1.90 \times 10^9 \text{ cycles/s}} \\ &= 0.158 \text{ m.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

These wavelengths are consistent with the spectrum in [link]. The wavelengths are also related to other properties of these electromagnetic waves, as we shall see.

The wavelengths found in the preceding example are representative of AM, FM, and cell phones, and account for some of the differences in how they are broadcast and how well they travel. The most efficient length for a linear antenna, such as discussed in Production of Electromagnetic Waves, is $\lambda/2$, half the wavelength of the electromagnetic wave. Thus a very large antenna is needed to efficiently broadcast typical AM radio with its carrier wavelengths on the order of hundreds of meters.

One benefit to these long AM wavelengths is that they can go over and around rather large obstacles (like buildings and hills), just as ocean waves can go around large rocks. FM and TV are best received when there is a line of sight between the broadcast antenna and receiver, and they are often sent from very tall structures. FM, TV, and mobile phone antennas themselves are much smaller than those used for AM, but they are elevated to achieve an unobstructed line of sight. (See [link].)



(a) A large tower is used to broadcast TV signals. The actual antennas are small structures on top of the tower—they are placed at great heights to have a clear line of sight over a large broadcast area. (credit: Ozizo, Wikimedia Commons) (b) The NTT Dokomo mobile phone tower at Tokorozawa City, Japan. (credit: tokoroten, Wikimedia Commons)

Radio Wave Interference

Astronomers and astrophysicists collect signals from outer space using electromagnetic waves. A common problem for astrophysicists is the “pollution” from electromagnetic radiation pervading our surroundings from communication systems in general. Even everyday gadgets like our car keys having the facility to lock car doors remotely and being able to turn TVs on and off using remotes involve radio-wave frequencies. In order to prevent interference between all these electromagnetic signals, strict regulations are drawn up for different organizations to utilize different radio frequency bands.

One reason why we are sometimes asked to switch off our mobile phones (operating in the range of 1.9 GHz) on airplanes and in hospitals is that important communications or medical equipment often uses similar radio frequencies and their operation can be affected by frequencies used in the communication devices.

For example, radio waves used in magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) have frequencies on the order of 100 MHz, although this varies significantly depending on the strength of the magnetic field used and the nuclear type being scanned. MRI is an important medical imaging and research tool, producing highly detailed two- and three-dimensional images. Radio waves are broadcast, absorbed, and reemitted in a resonance process that is sensitive to the density of nuclei (usually protons or hydrogen nuclei).

The wavelength of 100-MHz radio waves is 3 m, yet using the sensitivity of the resonant frequency to the magnetic field strength, details smaller than a millimeter can be imaged. This is a good example of an exception to a rule of thumb (in this case, the rubric that details much smaller than the probe’s wavelength cannot be detected). The intensity of the radio waves used in MRI presents little or no hazard to human health.

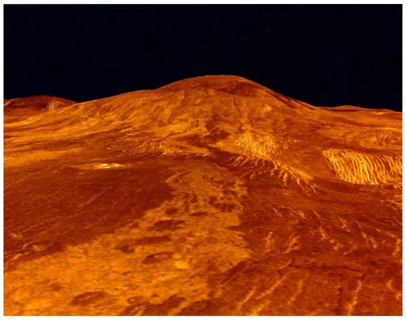
Microwaves

Microwaves are the highest-frequency electromagnetic waves that can be produced by currents in macroscopic circuits and devices. Microwave frequencies range from about $10^9\ \text{Hz}$ to the highest practical LC resonance at nearly $10^{12}\ \text{Hz}$. Since they have high frequencies, their wavelengths are short compared with those of other radio waves—hence the name “microwave.”

Microwaves can also be produced by atoms and molecules. They are, for example, a component of electromagnetic radiation generated by **thermal agitation**. The thermal motion of atoms and molecules in any object at a temperature above absolute zero causes them to emit and absorb radiation.

Since it is possible to carry more information per unit time on high frequencies, microwaves are quite suitable for communications. Most satellite-transmitted information is carried on microwaves, as are land-based long-distance transmissions. A clear line of sight between transmitter and receiver is needed because of the short wavelengths involved.

Radar is a common application of microwaves that was first developed in World War II. By detecting and timing microwave echoes, radar systems can determine the distance to objects as diverse as clouds and aircraft. A Doppler shift in the radar echo can be used to determine the speed of a car or the intensity of a rainstorm. Sophisticated radar systems are used to map the Earth and other planets, with a resolution limited by wavelength. (See [link].) The shorter the wavelength of any probe, the smaller the detail it is possible to observe.



An image of Sif Mons with lava flows on Venus, based on Magellan synthetic aperture radar data combined with radar altimetry to produce a three-dimensional map of the surface. The Venusian atmosphere is opaque to visible light, but not to the microwaves that were used to create this image. (credit: NSSDC, NASA/JPL)

Heating with Microwaves

How does the ubiquitous microwave oven produce microwaves electronically, and why does food absorb them preferentially? Microwaves at a frequency of 2.45 GHz are produced by accelerating electrons. The microwaves are then used to induce an alternating electric field in the oven.

Water and some other constituents of food have a slightly negative charge at one end and a slightly positive charge at one end (called polar molecules). The range of microwave frequencies is specially selected so that the polar molecules, in trying to keep orienting themselves with the electric field, absorb these energies and increase their temperatures—called dielectric heating.

The energy thereby absorbed results in thermal agitation heating food and not the plate, which does not contain water. Hot spots in the food are related to constructive and destructive interference patterns. Rotating antennas and food turntables help spread out the hot spots.

Another use of microwaves for heating is within the human body. Microwaves will penetrate more than shorter wavelengths into tissue and so can accomplish “deep heating” (called

microwave diathermy). This is used for treating muscular pains, spasms, tendonitis, and rheumatoid arthritis.

Note:
Making Connections: Take-Home Experiment—Microwave Ovens

1. Look at the door of a microwave oven. Describe the structure of the door. Why is there a metal grid on the door? How does the size of the holes in the grid compare with the wavelengths of microwaves used in microwave ovens? What is this wavelength?
2. Place a glass of water (about 250 ml) in the microwave and heat it for 30 seconds. Measure the temperature gain (the ΔT). Assuming that the power output of the oven is 1000 W, calculate the efficiency of the heat-transfer process.
3. Remove the rotating turntable or moving plate and place a cup of water in several places along a line parallel with the opening. Heat for 30 seconds and measure the ΔT for each position. Do you see cases of destructive interference?

Microwaves generated by atoms and molecules far away in time and space can be received and detected by electronic circuits. Deep space acts like a blackbody with a 2.7 K temperature, radiating most of its energy in the microwave frequency range. In 1964, Penzias and Wilson detected this radiation and eventually recognized that it was the radiation of the Big Bang's cooled remnants.

Infrared Radiation

The microwave and infrared regions of the electromagnetic spectrum overlap (see [link]). **Infrared radiation** is generally produced by thermal motion and the vibration and rotation of atoms and molecules. Electronic transitions in atoms and molecules can also produce infrared radiation.

The range of infrared frequencies extends up to the lower limit of visible light, just below red. In fact, infrared means "below red." Frequencies at its upper limit are too high to be produced by accelerating electrons in circuits, but small systems, such as atoms and molecules, can vibrate fast enough to produce these waves.

Water molecules rotate and vibrate particularly well at infrared frequencies, emitting and absorbing them so efficiently that the emissivity for skin is $e = 0.97$ in the infrared. Night-vision scopes can detect the infrared emitted by various warm objects, including humans, and convert it to visible light.

We can examine radiant heat transfer from a house by using a camera capable of detecting infrared radiation. Reconnaissance satellites can detect buildings, vehicles, and even individual humans by their infrared emissions, whose power radiation is proportional to the fourth power of the absolute temperature. More mundanely, we use infrared lamps, some of which are called

quartz heaters, to preferentially warm us because we absorb infrared better than our surroundings.

The Sun radiates like a nearly perfect blackbody (that is, it has $e = 1$), with a 6000 K surface temperature. About half of the solar energy arriving at the Earth is in the infrared region, with most of the rest in the visible part of the spectrum, and a relatively small amount in the ultraviolet. On average, 50 percent of the incident solar energy is absorbed by the Earth.

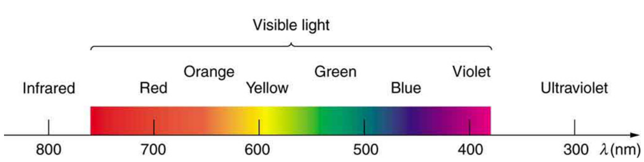
The relatively constant temperature of the Earth is a result of the energy balance between the incoming solar radiation and the energy radiated from the Earth. Most of the infrared radiation emitted from the Earth is absorbed by CO_2 and H_2O in the atmosphere and then radiated back to Earth or into outer space. This radiation back to Earth is known as the greenhouse effect, and it maintains the surface temperature of the Earth about 40^oC higher than it would be if there is no absorption. Some scientists think that the increased concentration of CO_2 and other greenhouse gases in the atmosphere, resulting from increases in fossil fuel burning, has increased global average temperatures.

Visible Light

Visible light is the narrow segment of the electromagnetic spectrum to which the normal human eye responds. Visible light is produced by vibrations and rotations of atoms and molecules, as well as by electronic transitions within atoms and molecules. The receivers or detectors of light largely utilize electronic transitions. We say the atoms and molecules are excited when they absorb and relax when they emit through electronic transitions.

[link] shows this part of the spectrum, together with the colors associated with particular pure wavelengths. We usually refer to visible light as having wavelengths of between 400 nm and 750 nm. (The retina of the eye actually responds to the lowest ultraviolet frequencies, but these do not normally reach the retina because they are absorbed by the cornea and lens of the eye.)

Red light has the lowest frequencies and longest wavelengths, while violet has the highest frequencies and shortest wavelengths. Blackbody radiation from the Sun peaks in the visible part of the spectrum but is more intense in the red than in the violet, making the Sun yellowish in appearance.



A small part of the electromagnetic spectrum that includes its visible components. The divisions between infrared, visible, and ultraviolet are not perfectly

distinct, nor are those between the seven rainbow colors.

Living things—plants and animals—have evolved to utilize and respond to parts of the electromagnetic spectrum they are embedded in. Visible light is the most predominant and we enjoy the beauty of nature through visible light. Plants are more selective. Photosynthesis makes use of parts of the visible spectrum to make sugars.

Example:
Integrated Concept Problem: Correcting Vision with Lasers
During laser vision correction, a brief burst of 193-nm ultraviolet light is projected onto the cornea of a patient. It makes a spot 0.80 mm in diameter and evaporates a layer of cornea $0.30\ \mu\text{m}$ thick. Calculate the energy absorbed, assuming the corneal tissue has the same properties as water; it is initially at 34°C. Assume the evaporated tissue leaves at a temperature of 100°C.
Strategy
The energy from the laser light goes toward raising the temperature of the tissue and also toward evaporating it. Thus we have two amounts of heat to add together. Also, we need to find the mass of corneal tissue involved.
Solution
To figure out the heat required to raise the temperature of the tissue to 100°C, we can apply concepts of thermal energy. We know that
Equation:

$$\text{Q} = \text{mc}\Delta T,$$

where Q is the heat required to raise the temperature, ΔT is the desired change in temperature, m is the mass of tissue to be heated, and c is the specific heat of water equal to 4186 J/kg/K. Without knowing the mass m at this point, we have
Equation:

$$Q = m(4186\ \text{J/kg/K})(100^{\circ}\text{C}–34^{\circ}\text{C}) = m(276{,}276\ \text{J/kg}) = m(276\ \text{kJ/kg}\ ).$$

The latent heat of vaporization of water is 2256 kJ/kg, so that the energy needed to evaporate mass m is
Equation:

$$Q_{\text{v}} = mL_{\text{v}} = m(2256\ \text{kJ/kg}).$$

To find the mass m, we use the equation $\rho = m/\text{V}$, where ρ is the density of the tissue and V is its volume. For this case,
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} m &= \rho \mathrm{V} \\ &= (1000\ \mathrm{kg/m^3})(\mathrm{area} \times \mathrm{thickness}(\mathrm{m^3})) \\ &= (1000\ \mathrm{kg/m^3})(\pi(0.80 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m})^2/4)(0.30 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m}) \\ &= 0.151 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{kg}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the total energy absorbed by the tissue in the eye is the sum of Q and $\mathrm{Q_v}$:
Equation:

$$\mathrm{Q_{tot}} = m(c\Delta\mathrm{T} + \mathrm{L_v}) = (0.151 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{kg})(276\ \mathrm{kJ/kg} + 2256\ \mathrm{kJ/kg}) = 382 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{kJ}.$$

Discussion
The lasers used for this eye surgery are excimer lasers, whose light is well absorbed by biological tissue. They evaporate rather than burn the tissue, and can be used for precision work. Most lasers used for this type of eye surgery have an average power rating of about one watt. For our example, if we assume that each laser burst from this pulsed laser lasts for 10 ns, and there are 400 bursts per second, then the average power is $\mathrm{Q_{tot}} \times 400 = 150\ \mathrm{mW}$.

Optics is the study of the behavior of visible light and other forms of electromagnetic waves. Optics falls into two distinct categories. When electromagnetic radiation, such as visible light, interacts with objects that are large compared with its wavelength, its motion can be represented by straight lines like rays. Ray optics is the study of such situations and includes lenses and mirrors.

When electromagnetic radiation interacts with objects about the same size as the wavelength or smaller, its wave nature becomes apparent. For example, observable detail is limited by the wavelength, and so visible light can never detect individual atoms, because they are so much smaller than its wavelength. Physical or wave optics is the study of such situations and includes all wave characteristics.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Colors That Match
When you light a match you see largely orange light; when you light a gas stove you see blue light. Why are the colors different? What other colors are present in these?

Ultraviolet Radiation

Ultraviolet means “above violet.” The electromagnetic frequencies of **ultraviolet radiation (UV)** extend upward from violet, the highest-frequency visible light. Ultraviolet is also produced by atomic and molecular motions and electronic transitions. The wavelengths of ultraviolet extend from 400 nm down to about 10 nm at its highest frequencies, which overlap

with the lowest X-ray frequencies. It was recognized as early as 1801 by Johann Ritter that the solar spectrum had an invisible component beyond the violet range.

Solar UV radiation is broadly subdivided into three regions: UV-A (320–400 nm), UV-B (290–320 nm), and UV-C (220–290 nm), ranked from long to shorter wavelengths (from smaller to larger energies). Most UV-B and all UV-C is absorbed by ozone (O_3) molecules in the upper atmosphere. Consequently, 99% of the solar UV radiation reaching the Earth's surface is UV-A.

Human Exposure to UV Radiation

It is largely exposure to UV-B that causes skin cancer. It is estimated that as many as 20% of adults will develop skin cancer over the course of their lifetime. Again, treatment is often successful if caught early. Despite very little UV-B reaching the Earth's surface, there are substantial increases in skin-cancer rates in countries such as Australia, indicating how important it is that UV-B and UV-C continue to be absorbed by the upper atmosphere.

All UV radiation can damage collagen fibers, resulting in an acceleration of the aging process of skin and the formation of wrinkles. Because there is so little UV-B and UV-C reaching the Earth's surface, sunburn is caused by large exposures, and skin cancer from repeated exposure. Some studies indicate a link between overexposure to the Sun when young and melanoma later in life.

The tanning response is a defense mechanism in which the body produces pigments to absorb future exposures in inert skin layers above living cells. Basically UV-B radiation excites DNA molecules, distorting the DNA helix, leading to mutations and the possible formation of cancerous cells.

Repeated exposure to UV-B may also lead to the formation of cataracts in the eyes—a cause of blindness among people living in the equatorial belt where medical treatment is limited. Cataracts, clouding in the eye's lens and a loss of vision, are age related; 60% of those between the ages of 65 and 74 will develop cataracts. However, treatment is easy and successful, as one replaces the lens of the eye with a plastic lens. Prevention is important. Eye protection from UV is more effective with plastic sunglasses than those made of glass.

A major acute effect of extreme UV exposure is the suppression of the immune system, both locally and throughout the body.

Low-intensity ultraviolet is used to sterilize haircutting implements, implying that the energy associated with ultraviolet is deposited in a manner different from lower-frequency electromagnetic waves. (Actually this is true for all electromagnetic waves with frequencies greater than visible light.)

Flash photography is generally not allowed of precious artworks and colored prints because the UV radiation from the flash can cause photo-degradation in the artworks. Often artworks will have an extra-thick layer of glass in front of them, which is especially designed to absorb UV radiation.

UV Light and the Ozone Layer

If all of the Sun's ultraviolet radiation reached the Earth's surface, there would be extremely grave effects on the biosphere from the severe cell damage it causes. However, the layer of ozone (O_3) in our upper atmosphere (10 to 50 km above the Earth) protects life by absorbing most of the dangerous UV radiation.

Unfortunately, today we are observing a depletion in ozone concentrations in the upper atmosphere. This depletion has led to the formation of an "ozone hole" in the upper atmosphere. The hole is more centered over the southern hemisphere, and changes with the seasons, being largest in the spring. This depletion is attributed to the breakdown of ozone molecules by refrigerant gases called chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs).

The UV radiation helps dissociate the CFC's, releasing highly reactive chlorine (Cl) atoms, which catalyze the destruction of the ozone layer. For example, the reaction of $\mathrm{CFCl_3}$ with a photon of light (hv) can be written as:

Equation:

$$\mathrm{CFCl_3} + \mathrm{h}v \rightarrow \mathrm{CFCl_2} + \mathrm{Cl.}$$

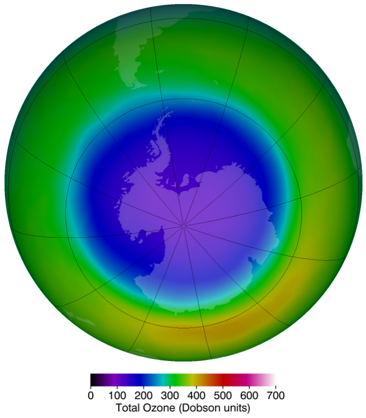
The Cl atom then catalyzes the breakdown of ozone as follows:

Equation:

$$\mathrm{Cl} + \mathrm{O_3} \rightarrow \mathrm{ClO} + \mathrm{O_2} \text{ and } \mathrm{ClO} + \mathrm{O_3} \rightarrow \mathrm{Cl} + 2\mathrm{O_2}.$$

A single chlorine atom could destroy ozone molecules for up to two years before being transported down to the surface. The CFCs are relatively stable and will contribute to ozone depletion for years to come. CFCs are found in refrigerants, air conditioning systems, foams, and aerosols.

International concern over this problem led to the establishment of the "Montreal Protocol" agreement (1987) to phase out CFC production in most countries. However, developing-country participation is needed if worldwide production and elimination of CFCs is to be achieved. Probably the largest contributor to CFC emissions today is India. But the protocol seems to be working, as there are signs of an ozone recovery. (See [link].)



This map of ozone concentration over Antarctica in October 2011 shows severe depletion suspected to be caused by CFCs. Less dramatic but more general depletion has been observed over northern latitudes, suggesting the effect is global. With less ozone, more ultraviolet radiation from the Sun reaches the surface, causing more damage. (credit: NASA Ozone Watch)

Benefits of UV Light

Besides the adverse effects of ultraviolet radiation, there are also benefits of exposure in nature and uses in technology. Vitamin D production in the skin (epidermis) results from exposure to UVB radiation, generally from sunlight. A number of studies indicate lack of vitamin D can result in the development of a range of cancers (prostate, breast, colon), so a certain amount of UV exposure is helpful. Lack of vitamin D is also linked to osteoporosis. Exposures (with no sunscreen) of 10 minutes a day to arms, face, and legs might be sufficient to provide the accepted dietary level. However, in the winter time north of about 37^{o} latitude, most UVB gets blocked by the atmosphere.

UV radiation is used in the treatment of infantile jaundice and in some skin conditions. It is also used in sterilizing workspaces and tools, and killing germs in a wide range of applications. It is

also used as an analytical tool to identify substances.

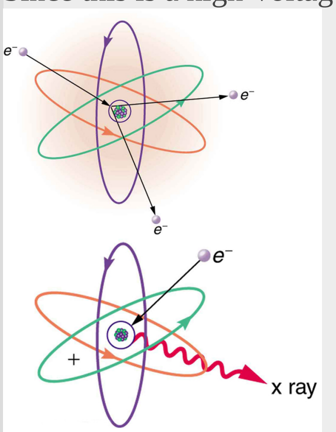
When exposed to ultraviolet, some substances, such as minerals, glow in characteristic visible wavelengths, a process called fluorescence. So-called black lights emit ultraviolet to cause posters and clothing to fluoresce in the visible. Ultraviolet is also used in special microscopes to detect details smaller than those observable with longer-wavelength visible-light microscopes.

Note:

Things Great and Small: A Submicroscopic View of X-Ray Production

X-rays can be created in a high-voltage discharge. They are emitted in the material struck by electrons in the discharge current. There are two mechanisms by which the electrons create X-rays.

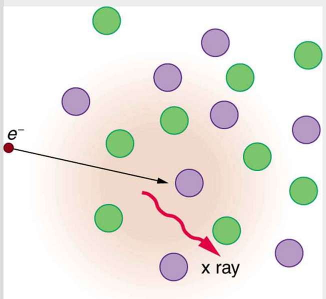
The first method is illustrated in [link]. An electron is accelerated in an evacuated tube by a high positive voltage. The electron strikes a metal plate (e.g., copper) and produces X-rays. Since this is a high-voltage discharge, the electron gains sufficient energy to ionize the atom.



Artist’s conception of an electron ionizing an atom followed by the recapture of an electron and emission of an X-ray. An energetic electron strikes an atom and knocks an electron out of one of the orbits closest to the nucleus. Later, the atom captures another electron, and the energy released by

its fall into a low orbit generates a high-energy EM wave called an X-ray.

In the case shown, an inner-shell electron (one in an orbit relatively close to and tightly bound to the nucleus) is ejected. A short time later, another electron is captured and falls into the orbit in a single great plunge. The energy released by this fall is given to an EM wave known as an X-ray. Since the orbits of the atom are unique to the type of atom, the energy of the X-ray is characteristic of the atom, hence the name characteristic X-ray.
The second method by which an energetic electron creates an X-ray when it strikes a material is illustrated in [link]. The electron interacts with charges in the material as it penetrates. These collisions transfer kinetic energy from the electron to the electrons and atoms in the material.



Artist's conception of an electron being slowed by collisions in a material and emitting X-ray radiation. This energetic electron makes numerous collisions with electrons and atoms in a material it penetrates. An accelerated charge radiates EM waves, a second method by which X-rays are created.

A loss of kinetic energy implies an acceleration, in this case decreasing the electron's velocity. Whenever a charge is accelerated, it radiates EM waves. Given the high energy of the electron,

these EM waves can have high energy. We call them X-rays. Since the process is random, a broad spectrum of X-ray energy is emitted that is more characteristic of the electron energy than the type of material the electron encounters. Such EM radiation is called “bremsstrahlung” (German for “braking radiation”).

X-Rays

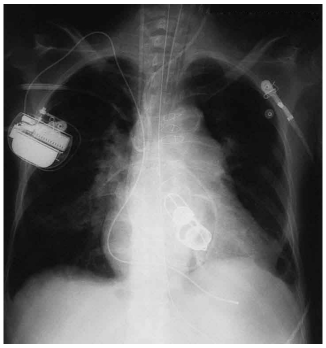
In the 1850s, scientists (such as Faraday) began experimenting with high-voltage electrical discharges in tubes filled with rarefied gases. It was later found that these discharges created an invisible, penetrating form of very high frequency electromagnetic radiation. This radiation was called an **X-ray**, because its identity and nature were unknown.

As described in Things Great and Small, there are two methods by which X-rays are created—both are submicroscopic processes and can be caused by high-voltage discharges. While the low-frequency end of the X-ray range overlaps with the ultraviolet, X-rays extend to much higher frequencies (and energies).

X-rays have adverse effects on living cells similar to those of ultraviolet radiation, and they have the additional liability of being more penetrating, affecting more than the surface layers of cells. Cancer and genetic defects can be induced by exposure to X-rays. Because of their effect on rapidly dividing cells, X-rays can also be used to treat and even cure cancer.

The widest use of X-rays is for imaging objects that are opaque to visible light, such as the human body or aircraft parts. In humans, the risk of cell damage is weighed carefully against the benefit of the diagnostic information obtained. However, questions have risen in recent years as to accidental overexposure of some people during CT scans—a mistake at least in part due to poor monitoring of radiation dose.

The ability of X-rays to penetrate matter depends on density, and so an X-ray image can reveal very detailed density information. [link] shows an example of the simplest type of X-ray image, an X-ray shadow on film. The amount of information in a simple X-ray image is impressive, but more sophisticated techniques, such as CT scans, can reveal three-dimensional information with details smaller than a millimeter.



This shadow X-ray image shows many interesting features, such as artificial heart valves, a pacemaker, and the wires used to close the sternum. (credit: P. P. Urone)

The use of X-ray technology in medicine is called radiology—an established and relatively cheap tool in comparison to more sophisticated technologies. Consequently, X-rays are widely available and used extensively in medical diagnostics. During World War I, mobile X-ray units, advocated by Madame Marie Curie, were used to diagnose soldiers.

Because they can have wavelengths less than 0.01 nm, X-rays can be scattered (a process called X-ray diffraction) to detect the shape of molecules and the structure of crystals. X-ray diffraction was crucial to Crick, Watson, and Wilkins in the determination of the shape of the double-helix DNA molecule.

X-rays are also used as a precise tool for trace-metal analysis in X-ray induced fluorescence, in which the energy of the X-ray emissions are related to the specific types of elements and amounts of materials present.

Gamma Rays

Soon after nuclear radioactivity was first detected in 1896, it was found that at least three distinct types of radiation were being emitted. The most penetrating nuclear radiation was called a **gamma ray (γ ray)** (again a name given because its identity and character were unknown), and it was later found to be an extremely high frequency electromagnetic wave.

In fact, γ rays are any electromagnetic radiation emitted by a nucleus. This can be from natural nuclear decay or induced nuclear processes in nuclear reactors and weapons. The lower end of the $\gamma\text{-ray}$ frequency range overlaps the upper end of the X-ray range, but γ rays can have the highest frequency of any electromagnetic radiation.

Gamma rays have characteristics identical to X-rays of the same frequency—they differ only in source. At higher frequencies, γ rays are more penetrating and more damaging to living tissue. They have many of the same uses as X-rays, including cancer therapy. Gamma radiation from radioactive materials is used in nuclear medicine.

[link] shows a medical image based on γ rays. Food spoilage can be greatly inhibited by exposing it to large doses of γ radiation, thereby obliterating responsible microorganisms. Damage to food cells through irradiation occurs as well, and the long-term hazards of

consuming radiation-preserved food are unknown and controversial for some groups. Both X-ray and γ-ray technologies are also used in scanning luggage at airports.

This is an image of the γ rays emitted by nuclei in a compound that is concentrated in the bones and eliminated through the kidneys. Bone cancer is evidenced by nonuniform concentration in similar

structures. For example, some ribs are darker than others. (credit: P. P. Urone)

Detecting Electromagnetic Waves from Space

A final note on star gazing. The entire electromagnetic spectrum is used by researchers for investigating stars, space, and time. As noted earlier, Penzias and Wilson detected microwaves to identify the background radiation originating from the Big Bang. Radio telescopes such as the Arecibo Radio Telescope in Puerto Rico and Parkes Observatory in Australia were designed to detect radio waves.

Infrared telescopes need to have their detectors cooled by liquid nitrogen to be able to gather useful signals. Since infrared radiation is predominantly from thermal agitation, if the detectors were not cooled, the vibrations of the molecules in the antenna would be stronger than the signal being collected.

The most famous of these infrared sensitive telescopes is the James Clerk Maxwell Telescope in Hawaii. The earliest telescopes, developed in the seventeenth century, were optical telescopes, collecting visible light. Telescopes in the ultraviolet, X-ray, and γ-ray regions are placed outside the atmosphere on satellites orbiting the Earth.

The Hubble Space Telescope (launched in 1990) gathers ultraviolet radiation as well as visible light. In the X-ray region, there is the Chandra X-ray Observatory (launched in 1999), and in the γ-ray region, there is the new Fermi Gamma-ray Space Telescope (launched in 2008—taking the place of the Compton Gamma Ray Observatory, 1991–2000.).

Note:
PhET Explorations: Color Vision
Make a whole rainbow by mixing red, green, and blue light. Change the wavelength of a monochromatic beam or filter white light. View the light as a solid beam, or see the individual photons.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/color-vision/latest/color-vision_en.html

Section Summary

- The relationship among the speed of propagation, wavelength, and frequency for any wave is given by $v_{\mathrm{W}} = f\lambda$, so that for electromagnetic waves,
  Equation:
  $$c = f\lambda,$$
  where f is the frequency, λ is the wavelength, and c is the speed of light.
- The electromagnetic spectrum is separated into many categories and subcategories, based on the frequency and wavelength, source, and uses of the electromagnetic waves.
- Any electromagnetic wave produced by currents in wires is classified as a radio wave, the lowest frequency electromagnetic waves. Radio waves are divided into many types, depending on their applications, ranging up to microwaves at their highest frequencies.
- Infrared radiation lies below visible light in frequency and is produced by thermal motion and the vibration and rotation of atoms and molecules. Infrared's lower frequencies overlap with the highest-frequency microwaves.
- Visible light is largely produced by electronic transitions in atoms and molecules, and is defined as being detectable by the human eye. Its colors vary with frequency, from red at the lowest to violet at the highest.
- Ultraviolet radiation starts with frequencies just above violet in the visible range and is produced primarily by electronic transitions in atoms and molecules.
- X-rays are created in high-voltage discharges and by electron bombardment of metal targets. Their lowest frequencies overlap the ultraviolet range but extend to much higher values, overlapping at the high end with gamma rays.
- Gamma rays are nuclear in origin and are defined to include the highest-frequency electromagnetic radiation of any type.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

If you live in a region that has a particular TV station, you can sometimes pick up some of its audio portion on your FM radio receiver. Explain how this is possible. Does it imply that TV audio is broadcast as FM?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why people who have the lens of their eye removed because of cataracts are able to see low-frequency ultraviolet.

Exercise:

Problem:

How do fluorescent soap residues make clothing look "brighter and whiter" in outdoor light? Would this be effective in candlelight?

Exercise:

Problem: Give an example of resonance in the reception of electromagnetic waves.

Exercise:

Problem:

Illustrate that the size of details of an object that can be detected with electromagnetic waves is related to their wavelength, by comparing details observable with two different types (for example, radar and visible light or infrared and X-rays).

Exercise:

Problem: Why don’t buildings block radio waves as completely as they do visible light?

Exercise:

Problem:

Make a list of some everyday objects and decide whether they are transparent or opaque to each of the types of electromagnetic waves.

Exercise:

Problem:

Your friend says that more patterns and colors can be seen on the wings of birds if viewed in ultraviolet light. Would you agree with your friend? Explain your answer.

Exercise:

Problem:

The rate at which information can be transmitted on an electromagnetic wave is proportional to the frequency of the wave. Is this consistent with the fact that laser telephone transmission at visible frequencies carries far more conversations per optical fiber than conventional electronic transmission in a wire? What is the implication for ELF radio communication with submarines?

Exercise:

Problem: Give an example of energy carried by an electromagnetic wave.

Exercise:

Problem:

In an MRI scan, a higher magnetic field requires higher frequency radio waves to resonate with the nuclear type whose density and location is being imaged. What effect does going to a larger magnetic field have on the most efficient antenna to broadcast those radio waves? Does it favor a smaller or larger antenna?

Exercise:

Problem:

Laser vision correction often uses an excimer laser that produces 193-nm electromagnetic radiation. This wavelength is extremely strongly absorbed by the cornea and ablates it in a manner that reshapes the cornea to correct vision defects. Explain how the strong absorption helps concentrate the energy in a thin layer and thus give greater accuracy in shaping the cornea. Also explain how this strong absorption limits damage to the lens and retina of the eye.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Two microwave frequencies are authorized for use in microwave ovens: 900 and 2560 MHz. Calculate the wavelength of each. (b) Which frequency would produce smaller hot spots in foods due to interference effects?

Solution:

(a) 33.3 cm (900 MHz) 11.7 cm (2560 MHz)

(b) The microwave oven with the smaller wavelength would produce smaller hot spots in foods, corresponding to the one with the frequency 2560 MHz.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the range of wavelengths for AM radio given its frequency range is 540 to 1600 kHz. (b) Do the same for the FM frequency range of 88.0 to 108 MHz.

Exercise:

Problem:

A radio station utilizes frequencies between commercial AM and FM. What is the frequency of a 11.12-m-wavelength channel?

Solution:

26.96 MHz

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the frequency range of visible light, given that it encompasses wavelengths from 380 to 760 nm.

Exercise:

Problem:

Combing your hair leads to excess electrons on the comb. How fast would you have to move the comb up and down to produce red light?

Solution:

5.0×10^{14} Hz

Exercise:

Problem:

Electromagnetic radiation having a $15.0 - \mu\text{m}$ wavelength is classified as infrared radiation. What is its frequency?

Exercise:

Problem:

Approximately what is the smallest detail observable with a microscope that uses ultraviolet light of frequency 1.20×10^{15} Hz?

Solution:
Equation:

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f} = \frac{3.00\times10^{8}\text{ m/s}}{1.20\times10^{15}\text{ Hz}} = 2.50\times10^{-7}\text{ m}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

A radar used to detect the presence of aircraft receives a pulse that has reflected off an object 6×10^{-5} s after it was transmitted. What is the distance from the radar station to the reflecting object?

Exercise:

Problem:

Some radar systems detect the size and shape of objects such as aircraft and geological terrain. Approximately what is the smallest observable detail utilizing 500-MHz radar?

Solution:

0.600 m

Exercise:

Problem:

Determine the amount of time it takes for X-rays of frequency 3×10^{18} Hz to travel (a) 1 mm and (b) 1 cm.

Exercise:

Problem:

If you wish to detect details of the size of atoms (about 1×10^{-10} m) with electromagnetic radiation, it must have a wavelength of about this size. (a) What is its frequency? (b) What type of electromagnetic radiation might this be?

Solution:

(a) $f = \frac{c}{\lambda} = \frac{3.00 \times 10^{8} \text{ m/s}}{1 \times 10^{-10} \text{ m}} = 3 \times 10^{18} \text{ Hz}$

(b) X-rays

Exercise:

Problem:

If the Sun suddenly turned off, we would not know it until its light stopped coming. How long would that be, given that the Sun is 1.50×10^{11} m away?

Exercise:

Problem:

Distances in space are often quoted in units of light years, the distance light travels in one year. (a) How many meters is a light year? (b) How many meters is it to Andromeda, the nearest large galaxy, given that it is 2.00×10^{6} light years away? (c) The most distant galaxy yet discovered is 12.0×10^{9} light years away. How far is this in meters?

Exercise:

Problem:

A certain 50.0-Hz AC power line radiates an electromagnetic wave having a maximum electric field strength of 13.0 kV/m. (a) What is the wavelength of this very low frequency electromagnetic wave? (b) What is its maximum magnetic field strength?

Solution:

(a) 6.00×10^{6} m

(b) 4.33×10^{-5} T

Exercise:

Problem:

During normal beating, the heart creates a maximum 4.00-mV potential across 0.300 m of a person's chest, creating a 1.00-Hz electromagnetic wave. (a) What is the maximum electric field strength created? (b) What is the corresponding maximum magnetic field strength in the electromagnetic wave? (c) What is the wavelength of the electromagnetic wave?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The ideal size (most efficient) for a broadcast antenna with one end on the ground is one-fourth the wavelength ($\lambda/4$) of the electromagnetic radiation being sent out. If a new radio station has such an antenna that is 50.0 m high, what frequency does it broadcast most efficiently? Is this in the AM or FM band? (b) Discuss the analogy of the fundamental resonant mode of an air column closed at one end to the resonance of currents on an antenna that is one-fourth their wavelength.

Solution:

(a) 1.50×10^{6} Hz, AM band
(b) The resonance of currents on an antenna that is 1/4 their wavelength is analogous to the fundamental resonant mode of an air column closed at one end, since the tube also has a length equal to 1/4 the wavelength of the fundamental oscillation.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the wavelength of 100-MHz radio waves used in an MRI unit? (b) If the frequencies are swept over a ± 1.00 range centered on 100 MHz, what is the range of wavelengths broadcast?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the frequency of the 193-nm ultraviolet radiation used in laser eye surgery? (b) Assuming the accuracy with which this EM radiation can ablate the cornea is directly proportional to wavelength, how much more accurate can this UV be than the shortest visible wavelength of light?

Solution:

(a) $1.55 \times 10^{15}\text{ Hz}$

(b) The shortest wavelength of visible light is 380 nm, so that
Equation:

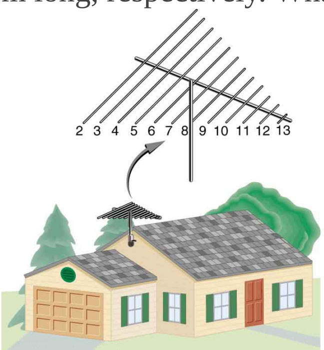
$$\frac{\lambda_{\text{visible}}}{\lambda_{\text{UV}}} = \frac{380\text{ nm}}{193\text{ nm}} = 1.97.$$

In other words, the UV radiation is 97% more accurate than the shortest wavelength of visible light, or almost twice as accurate!

Exercise:

Problem:

TV-reception antennas for VHF are constructed with cross wires supported at their centers, as shown in [link]. The ideal length for the cross wires is one-half the wavelength to be received, with the more expensive antennas having one for each channel. Suppose you measure the lengths of the wires for particular channels and find them to be 1.94 and 0.753 m long, respectively. What are the frequencies for these channels?



A television reception antenna has cross wires of various lengths to most efficiently receive different wavelengths.

Exercise:

Problem:

Conversations with astronauts on lunar walks had an echo that was used to estimate the distance to the Moon. The sound spoken by the person on Earth was transformed into a radio signal sent to the Moon, and transformed back into sound on a speaker inside the astronaut's space suit. This sound was picked up by the microphone in the space suit (intended for the astronaut's voice) and sent back to Earth as a radio echo of sorts. If the round-trip time was 2.60 s, what was the approximate distance to the Moon, neglecting any delays in the electronics?

Solution:

3.90×10^8 m

Exercise:

Problem:

Lunar astronauts placed a reflector on the Moon's surface, off which a laser beam is periodically reflected. The distance to the Moon is calculated from the round-trip time. (a) To what accuracy in meters can the distance to the Moon be determined, if this time can be measured to 0.100 ns? (b) What percent accuracy is this, given the average distance to the Moon is 3.84×10^8 m?

Exercise:

Problem:

Radar is used to determine distances to various objects by measuring the round-trip time for an echo from the object. (a) How far away is the planet Venus if the echo time is 1000 s? (b) What is the echo time for a car 75.0 m from a Highway Police radar unit? (c) How accurately (in nanoseconds) must you be able to measure the echo time to an airplane 12.0 km away to determine its distance within 10.0 m?

Solution:

(a) 1.50×10^{11} m

(b) 0.500 μs

(c) 66.7 ns

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) Calculate the ratio of the highest to lowest frequencies of electromagnetic waves the eye can see, given the wavelength range of visible light is from 380 to 760 nm. (b) Compare this with the ratio of highest to lowest frequencies the ear can hear.

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

(a) Calculate the rate in watts at which heat transfer through radiation occurs (almost entirely in the infrared) from 1.0 m^2 of the Earth's surface at night. Assume the emissivity is 0.90, the temperature of the Earth is $15^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$, and that of outer space is 2.7 K. (b) Compare the intensity of this radiation with that coming to the Earth from the Sun during the day, which averages about 800 $\mathrm{W/m}^2$, only half of which is absorbed. (c) What is the

maximum magnetic field strength in the outgoing radiation, assuming it is a continuous wave?

Solution:

(a) $-3.5 \times 10^2\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$

(b) 88%

(c) $1.7\ \mu\mathrm{T}$

Glossary

electromagnetic spectrum
: the full range of wavelengths or frequencies of electromagnetic radiation

radio waves
: electromagnetic waves with wavelengths in the range from 1 mm to 100 km; they are produced by currents in wires and circuits and by astronomical phenomena

microwaves
: electromagnetic waves with wavelengths in the range from 1 mm to 1 m; they can be produced by currents in macroscopic circuits and devices

thermal agitation
: the thermal motion of atoms and molecules in any object at a temperature above absolute zero, which causes them to emit and absorb radiation

radar
: a common application of microwaves. Radar can determine the distance to objects as diverse as clouds and aircraft, as well as determine the speed of a car or the intensity of a rainstorm

infrared radiation (IR)
: a region of the electromagnetic spectrum with a frequency range that extends from just below the red region of the visible light spectrum up to the microwave region, or from $0.74\ \mu m$ to $300\ \mu m$

ultraviolet radiation (UV)
: electromagnetic radiation in the range extending upward in frequency from violet light and overlapping with the lowest X-ray frequencies, with wavelengths from 400 nm down to about 10 nm

visible light
: the narrow segment of the electromagnetic spectrum to which the normal human eye responds

amplitude modulation (AM)
: a method for placing information on electromagnetic waves by modulating the amplitude of a carrier wave with an audio signal, resulting in a wave with constant frequency but varying amplitude

extremely low frequency (ELF)
: electromagnetic radiation with wavelengths usually in the range of 0 to 300 Hz, but also about 1kHz

carrier wave
: an electromagnetic wave that carries a signal by modulation of its amplitude or frequency

frequency modulation (FM)
: a method of placing information on electromagnetic waves by modulating the frequency of a carrier wave with an audio signal, producing a wave of constant amplitude but varying frequency

TV
: video and audio signals broadcast on electromagnetic waves

very high frequency (VHF)
: TV channels utilizing frequencies in the two ranges of 54 to 88 MHz and 174 to 222 MHz

ultra-high frequency (UHF)
: TV channels in an even higher frequency range than VHF, of 470 to 1000 MHz

X-ray
: invisible, penetrating form of very high frequency electromagnetic radiation, overlapping both the ultraviolet range and the γ-ray range

gamma ray
: (γ ray); extremely high frequency electromagnetic radiation emitted by the nucleus of an atom, either from natural nuclear decay or induced nuclear processes in nuclear reactors and weapons. The lower end of the γ-ray frequency range overlaps the upper end of the X-ray range, but γ rays can have the highest frequency of any electromagnetic radiation

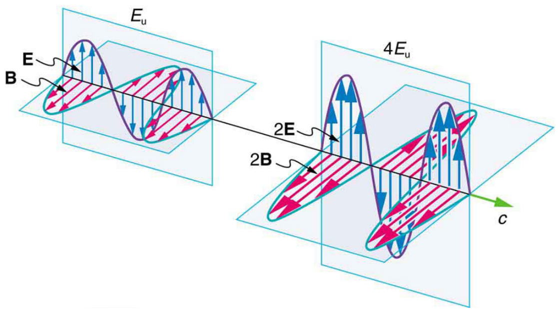
Energy in Electromagnetic Waves

- Explain how the energy and amplitude of an electromagnetic wave are related.
- Given its power output and the heating area, calculate the intensity of a microwave oven’s electromagnetic field, as well as its peak electric and magnetic field strengths

Anyone who has used a microwave oven knows there is energy in **electromagnetic waves**. Sometimes this energy is obvious, such as in the warmth of the summer sun. Other times it is subtle, such as the unfelt energy of gamma rays, which can destroy living cells.

Electromagnetic waves can bring energy into a system by virtue of their **electric and magnetic fields**. These fields can exert forces and move charges in the system and, thus, do work on them. If the frequency of the electromagnetic wave is the same as the natural frequencies of the system (such as microwaves at the resonant frequency of water molecules), the transfer of energy is much more efficient.

Note:
Connections: Waves and Particles
The behavior of electromagnetic radiation clearly exhibits wave characteristics. But we shall find in later modules that at high frequencies, electromagnetic radiation also exhibits particle characteristics. These particle characteristics will be used to explain more of the properties of the electromagnetic spectrum and to introduce the formal study of modern physics.
Another startling discovery of modern physics is that particles, such as electrons and protons, exhibit wave characteristics. This simultaneous sharing of wave and particle properties for all submicroscopic entities is one of the great symmetries in nature.



Energy carried by a wave is proportional to its amplitude squared. With electromagnetic waves, larger E-fields and B-fields exert larger forces and can do more work.

But there is energy in an electromagnetic wave, whether it is absorbed or not. Once created, the fields carry energy away from a source. If absorbed, the field strengths are diminished and anything left travels on. Clearly, the larger the strength of the electric and magnetic fields, the more work they can do and the greater the energy the electromagnetic wave carries.

A wave's energy is proportional to its **amplitude** squared (E^2 or B^2). This is true for waves on guitar strings, for water waves, and for sound waves, where amplitude is proportional to pressure. In electromagnetic waves, the amplitude is the **maximum field strength** of the electric and magnetic fields. (See [link].)

Thus the energy carried and the **intensity** I of an electromagnetic wave is proportional to E^2 and B^2. In fact, for a continuous sinusoidal electromagnetic wave, the average intensity I_{ave} is given by
Equation:

$$I_{\text{ave}} = \frac{c\varepsilon_0 E_0^2}{2},$$

where c is the speed of light, ε_0 is the permittivity of free space, and E_0 is the maximum electric field strength; intensity, as always, is power per unit area (here in $\mathrm{W/m^2}$).

The average intensity of an electromagnetic wave I_{ave} can also be expressed in terms of the magnetic field strength by using the relationship $B = E/c$, and the fact that $\varepsilon_0 = 1/\mu_0 c^2$, where μ_0 is the permeability of free space. Algebraic manipulation produces the relationship

Equation:

$$I_{\text{ave}} = \frac{\mathrm{cB}_0^2}{2\mu_0},$$

where B_0 is the maximum magnetic field strength.

One more expression for I_{ave} in terms of both electric and magnetic field strengths is useful. Substituting the fact that $c \cdot B_0 = E_0$, the previous expression becomes

Equation:

$$I_{\text{ave}} = \frac{E_0 B_0}{2\mu_0}.$$

Whichever of the three preceding equations is most convenient can be used, since they are really just different versions of the same principle: Energy in a wave is related to amplitude squared. Furthermore, since these equations are based on the assumption that the electromagnetic waves are sinusoidal, peak intensity is twice the average; that is, $I_0 = 2I_{\text{ave}}$.

Example:

Calculate Microwave Intensities and Fields

On its highest power setting, a certain microwave oven projects 1.00 kW of microwaves onto a 30.0 by 40.0 cm area. (a) What is the intensity in

W/m^2? (b) Calculate the peak electric field strength E_0 in these waves. (c) What is the peak magnetic field strength B_0?

Strategy

In part (a), we can find intensity from its definition as power per unit area. Once the intensity is known, we can use the equations below to find the field strengths asked for in parts (b) and (c).

Solution for (a)

Entering the given power into the definition of intensity, and noting the area is 0.300 by 0.400 m, yields

Equation:

$$I = \frac{P}{A} = \frac{1.00\text{ kW}}{0.300\text{ m } \times \text{ } 0.400\text{ m}}.$$

Here $I = I_{\text{ave}}$, so that

Equation:

$$I_{\text{ave}} = \frac{1000\text{ W}}{0.120\text{ m}^2} = 8.33 \times 10^3\text{ W/m}^2.$$

Note that the peak intensity is twice the average:

Equation:

$$I_0 = 2I_{\text{ave}} = 1.67 \times 10^4\text{ W/m}^2.$$

Solution for (b)

To find E_0, we can rearrange the first equation given above for I_{ave} to give

Equation:

$$E_0 = \left(\frac{2I_{\text{ave}}}{c\varepsilon_0}\right)^{1/2}.$$

Entering known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} E_0 &= \sqrt{\frac{2(8.33 \times 10^3 \text{ W/m}^2)}{(3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})(8.85 \times 10^{-12} \text{ C}^2/\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2)}} \\ &= 2.51 \times 10^3 \text{ V/m}. \end{aligned}$$

Solution for (c)

Perhaps the easiest way to find magnetic field strength, now that the electric field strength is known, is to use the relationship given by

Equation:

$$B_0 = \frac{E_0}{c}.$$

Entering known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} B_0 &= \frac{2.51 \times 10^3 \text{ V/m}}{3.0 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}} \\ &= 8.35 \times 10^{-6} \text{ T}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

As before, a relatively strong electric field is accompanied by a relatively weak magnetic field in an electromagnetic wave, since $B = E/c$, and c is a large number.

Section Summary

- The energy carried by any wave is proportional to its amplitude squared. For electromagnetic waves, this means intensity can be expressed as

  Equation:

  $$I_{\text{ave}} = \frac{c\varepsilon_0 E_0^2}{2},$$

where I_{ave} is the average intensity in W/m^2, and E_0 is the maximum electric field strength of a continuous sinusoidal wave.

- This can also be expressed in terms of the maximum magnetic field strength B_0 as

  Equation:

  $$I_{\text{ave}} = \frac{\text{cB}_0^2}{2\mu_0}$$

  and in terms of both electric and magnetic fields as

  Equation:

  $$I_{\text{ave}} = \frac{E_0 B_0}{2\mu_0}.$$

- The three expressions for I_{ave} are all equivalent.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the intensity of an electromagnetic wave with a peak electric field strength of 125 V/m?

Solution:

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \frac{c\varepsilon_0 E_0^2}{2} \\ &= \frac{(3.00\times10^8\text{ m/s})(8.85\times10^{-12}\text{C}^2/\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2)(125\text{ V/m})^2}{2} \\ &= 20.7\text{ W/m}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the intensity of an electromagnetic wave having a peak magnetic field strength of 4.00×10^{-9} T.

Exercise:

Problem:

Assume the helium-neon lasers commonly used in student physics laboratories have power outputs of 0.250 mW. (a) If such a laser beam is projected onto a circular spot 1.00 mm in diameter, what is its intensity? (b) Find the peak magnetic field strength. (c) Find the peak electric field strength.

Solution:

(a) $I = \frac{P}{A} = \frac{P}{\pi r^2} = \frac{0.250 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{W}}{\pi \left(0.500 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}\right)^2} = 318\ \text{W/m}^2$

(b)
$$\begin{aligned} I_{\text{ave}} &= \frac{\text{c}\text{B}_0^2}{2\mu_0} \Rightarrow B_0 = \left(\frac{2\mu_0 I}{c}\right)^{1/2} \\ &= \left(\frac{2\left(4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \text{T}\cdot\text{m/A}\right)\left(318.3\ \text{W/m}^2\right)}{3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s}}\right)^{1/2} \\ &= 1.63 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{T} \end{aligned}$$

(c)
$$\begin{aligned} E_0 &= \text{c}\text{B}_0 = \left(3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s}\right)\left(1.633 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{T}\right) \\ &= 4.90 \times 10^{2}\ \text{V/m} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

An AM radio transmitter broadcasts 50.0 kW of power uniformly in all directions. (a) Assuming all of the radio waves that strike the ground are completely absorbed, and that there is no absorption by the atmosphere or other objects, what is the intensity 30.0 km away? (Hint: Half the power will be spread over the area of a hemisphere.) (b) What is the maximum electric field strength at this distance?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose the maximum safe intensity of microwaves for human exposure is taken to be $1.00\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$. (a) If a radar unit leaks 10.0 W of microwaves (other than those sent by its antenna) uniformly in all directions, how far away must you be to be exposed to an intensity considered to be safe? Assume that the power spreads uniformly over the area of a sphere with no complications from absorption or reflection. (b) What is the maximum electric field strength at the safe intensity? (Note that early radar units leaked more than modern ones do. This caused identifiable health problems, such as cataracts, for people who worked near them.)

Solution:

(a) 89.2 cm

(b) 27.4 V/m

Exercise:

Problem:

A 2.50-m-diameter university communications satellite dish receives TV signals that have a maximum electric field strength (for one channel) of $7.50\ \mu\text{V/m}$. (See [link].) (a) What is the intensity of this wave? (b) What is the power received by the antenna? (c) If the orbiting satellite broadcasts uniformly over an area of $1.50 \times 10^{13}\ \text{m}^2$ (a large fraction of North America), how much power does it radiate?

Satellite dishes receive TV signals sent from orbit. Although the signals are quite weak, the receiver can detect them by being tuned to resonate at their frequency.

Exercise:

Problem:

Lasers can be constructed that produce an extremely high intensity electromagnetic wave for a brief time—called pulsed lasers. They are used to ignite nuclear fusion, for example. Such a laser may produce an electromagnetic wave with a maximum electric field strength of $1.00 \times 10^{11}\ \mathrm{V/m}$ for a time of 1.00 ns. (a) What is the maximum magnetic field strength in the wave? (b) What is the intensity of the beam? (c) What energy does it deliver on a 1.00-mm^2 area?

Solution:

(a) 333 T

(b) $1.33 \times 10^{19}\ \mathrm{W/m}^2$

(c) 13.3 kJ

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that for a continuous sinusoidal electromagnetic wave, the peak intensity is twice the average intensity ($I_0 = 2I_{\text{ave}}$), using either the fact that $E_0 = \sqrt{2}E_{\text{rms}}$, or $B_0 = \sqrt{2}B_{\text{rms}}$, where rms means average (actually root mean square, a type of average).

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a source of electromagnetic waves radiates uniformly in all directions in empty space where there are no absorption or interference effects. (a) Show that the intensity is inversely proportional to r^2, the distance from the source squared. (b) Show that the magnitudes of the electric and magnetic fields are inversely proportional to r.

Solution:

(a) $I = \frac{P}{A} = \frac{P}{4\pi r^2} \propto \frac{1}{r^2}$

(b) $I \propto E_0^2, B_0^2 \Rightarrow E_0^2, B_0^2 \propto \frac{1}{r^2} \Rightarrow E_0, B_0 \propto \frac{1}{r}$

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

An LC circuit with a 5.00-pF capacitor oscillates in such a manner as to radiate at a wavelength of 3.30 m. (a) What is the resonant frequency? (b) What inductance is in series with the capacitor?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

What capacitance is needed in series with an $800 - \mu\mathrm{H}$ inductor to form a circuit that radiates a wavelength of 196 m?

Solution:

13.5 pF

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Police radar determines the speed of motor vehicles using the same Doppler-shift technique employed for ultrasound in medical diagnostics. Beats are produced by mixing the double Doppler-shifted echo with the original frequency. If 1.50×10^9-Hz microwaves are used and a beat frequency of 150 Hz is produced, what is the speed of the vehicle? (Assume the same Doppler-shift formulas are valid with the speed of sound replaced by the speed of light.)

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

Assume the mostly infrared radiation from a heat lamp acts like a continuous wave with wavelength $1.50\ \mu\text{m}$. (a) If the lamp's 200-W output is focused on a person's shoulder, over a circular area 25.0 cm in diameter, what is the intensity in W/m^2? (b) What is the peak electric field strength? (c) Find the peak magnetic field strength. (d) How long will it take to increase the temperature of the 4.00-kg shoulder by $2.00^{\circ}\ \text{C}$, assuming no other heat transfer and given that its specific heat is $3.47\times10^3\ \text{J/kg}\cdot^{\circ}\text{C}$?

Solution:

(a) $4.07\ \text{kW/m}^2$

(b) 1.75 kV/m

(c) $5.84\ \mu\text{T}$

(d) 2 min 19 s

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

On its highest power setting, a microwave oven increases the temperature of 0.400 kg of spaghetti by 45.0°C in 120 s. (a) What was the rate of power absorption by the spaghetti, given that its specific heat is $3.76\times10^3\ \text{J/kg}\cdot^{\circ}\text{C}$? (b) Find the average intensity of the microwaves, given that they are absorbed over a circular area 20.0 cm in diameter. (c) What is the peak electric field strength of the microwave? (d) What is its peak magnetic field strength?

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

Electromagnetic radiation from a 5.00-mW laser is concentrated on a 1.00-mm^2 area. (a) What is the intensity in W/m^2? (b) Suppose a 2.00-nC static charge is in the beam. What is the maximum electric

force it experiences? (c) If the static charge moves at 400 m/s, what maximum magnetic force can it feel?

Solution:

(a) $5.00\times10^{3}\ \mathrm{W/m}^{2}$

(b) $3.88\times10^{-6}\ \mathrm{N}$

(c) $5.18\times10^{-12}\ \mathrm{N}$

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

A 200-turn flat coil of wire 30.0 cm in diameter acts as an antenna for FM radio at a frequency of 100 MHz. The magnetic field of the incoming electromagnetic wave is perpendicular to the coil and has a maximum strength of $1.00\times10^{-12}\ \mathrm{T}$. (a) What power is incident on the coil? (b) What average emf is induced in the coil over one-fourth of a cycle? (c) If the radio receiver has an inductance of $2.50\ \mu\mathrm{H}$, what capacitance must it have to resonate at 100 MHz?

Exercise:

Problem: Integrated Concepts

If electric and magnetic field strengths vary sinusoidally in time, being zero at $t=0$, then $E=E_0\ \sin 2\pi ft$ and $B=B_0\ \sin 2\pi ft$. Let $f=1.00\ \mathrm{GHz}$ here. (a) When are the field strengths first zero? (b) When do they reach their most negative value? (c) How much time is needed for them to complete one cycle?

Solution:

(a) $t=0$

(b) $7.50\times10^{-10}\ \mathrm{s}$

(c) 1.00×10^{-9} s

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

A researcher measures the wavelength of a 1.20-GHz electromagnetic wave to be 0.500 m. (a) Calculate the speed at which this wave propagates. (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

The peak magnetic field strength in a residential microwave oven is 9.20×10^{-5} T. (a) What is the intensity of the microwave? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) What is wrong about the premise?

Solution:

(a) $1.01 \times 10^{6}\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$

(b) Much too great for an oven.

(c) The assumed magnetic field is unreasonably large.

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

An LC circuit containing a 2.00-H inductor oscillates at such a frequency that it radiates at a 1.00-m wavelength. (a) What is the capacitance of the circuit? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Exercise:

Problem: **Unreasonable Results**

An LC circuit containing a 1.00-pF capacitor oscillates at such a frequency that it radiates at a 300-nm wavelength. (a) What is the inductance of the circuit? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) $2.53 \times 10^{-20}\ \mathrm{H}$

(b) L is much too small.

(c) The wavelength is unreasonably small.

Exercise:

Problem: Create Your Own Problem

Consider electromagnetic fields produced by high voltage power lines. Construct a problem in which you calculate the intensity of this electromagnetic radiation in $\mathrm{W/m^2}$ based on the measured magnetic field strength of the radiation in a home near the power lines. Assume these magnetic field strengths are known to average less than a $\mu\mathrm{T}$. The intensity is small enough that it is difficult to imagine mechanisms for biological damage due to it. Discuss how much energy may be radiating from a section of power line several hundred meters long and compare this to the power likely to be carried by the lines. An idea of how much power this is can be obtained by calculating the approximate current responsible for $\mu\mathrm{T}$ fields at distances of tens of meters.

Exercise:

Problem: Create Your Own Problem

Consider the most recent generation of residential satellite dishes that are a little less than half a meter in diameter. Construct a problem in which you calculate the power received by the dish and the maximum electric field strength of the microwave signals for a single channel

received by the dish. Among the things to be considered are the power broadcast by the satellite and the area over which the power is spread, as well as the area of the receiving dish.

Glossary

maximum field strength
: the maximum amplitude an electromagnetic wave can reach, representing the maximum amount of electric force and/or magnetic flux that the wave can exert

intensity
: the power of an electric or magnetic field per unit area, for example, Watts per square meter

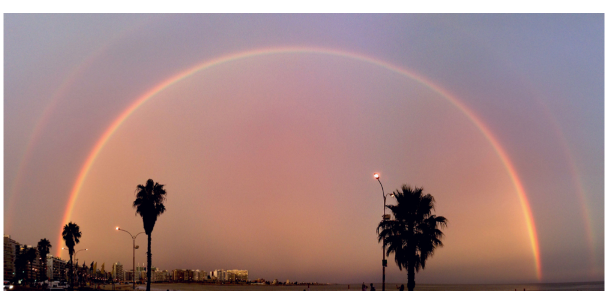
Introduction to Geometric Optics
class="introduction"

Geometric Optics

Light from this page or screen is formed into an image by the lens of your eye, much as the lens of the camera that made this photograph. Mirrors, like lenses, can also form images that in turn are captured by your eye.

Image seen as a result of reflection of light on a plane smooth surface. (credit: NASA Goddard Photo and Video, via Flickr)

Our lives are filled with light. Through vision, the most valued of our senses, light can evoke spiritual emotions, such as when we view a magnificent sunset or glimpse a rainbow breaking through the clouds. Light can also simply amuse us in a theater, or warn us to stop at an intersection. It has innumerable uses beyond vision. Light can carry telephone signals through glass fibers or cook a meal in a solar oven. Life itself could not exist without light’s energy. From photosynthesis in plants to the sun warming a cold-blooded animal, its supply of energy is vital.



Double Rainbow over the bay

of Pocitos in Montevideo, Uruguay. (credit: Madrax, Wikimedia Commons)

We already know that visible light is the type of electromagnetic waves to which our eyes respond. That knowledge still leaves many questions regarding the nature of light and vision. What is color, and how do our eyes detect it? Why do diamonds sparkle? How does light travel? How do lenses and mirrors form images? These are but a few of the questions that are answered by the study of optics. Optics is the branch of physics that deals with the behavior of visible light and other electromagnetic waves. In particular, optics is concerned with the generation and propagation of light and its interaction with matter. What we have already learned about the generation of light in our study of heat transfer by radiation will be expanded upon in later topics, especially those on atomic physics. Now, we will concentrate on the propagation of light and its interaction with matter.

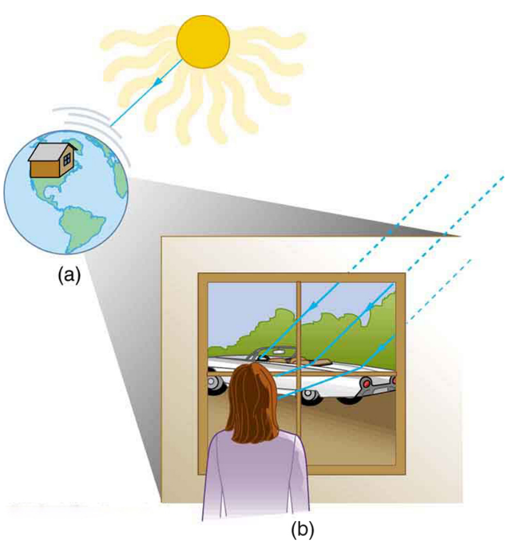
It is convenient to divide optics into two major parts based on the size of objects that light encounters. When light interacts with an object that is several times as large as the light’s wavelength, its observable behavior is like that of a ray; it does not prominently display its wave characteristics. We call this part of optics “geometric optics.” This chapter will concentrate on such situations. When light interacts with smaller objects, it has very prominent wave characteristics, such as constructive and destructive interference. Wave Optics will concentrate on such situations.

The Ray Aspect of Light

- List the ways by which light travels from a source to another location.

There are three ways in which light can travel from a source to another location. (See [link].) It can come directly from the source through empty space, such as from the Sun to Earth. Or light can travel through various media, such as air and glass, to the person. Light can also arrive after being reflected, such as by a mirror. In all of these cases, light is modeled as traveling in straight lines called rays. Light may change direction when it encounters objects (such as a mirror) or in passing from one material to another (such as in passing from air to glass), but it then continues in a straight line or as a ray. The word **ray** comes from mathematics and here means a straight line that originates at some point. It is acceptable to visualize light rays as laser rays (or even science fiction depictions of ray guns).

Note:
Ray
The word "ray" comes from mathematics and here means a straight line that originates at some point.



Three methods for light to travel from a source to another location. (a) Light reaches the upper atmosphere of Earth traveling through empty space directly from the source. (b) Light can reach a person in one of two ways. It can travel through media like air and glass. It can also reflect from an object like a mirror. In the situations shown here, light interacts with objects large enough that it travels in straight lines, like a ray.

Experiments, as well as our own experiences, show that when light interacts with objects several times as large as its wavelength, it travels in straight lines and acts like a ray. Its wave characteristics are not pronounced in such situations. Since the wavelength of light is less than a micron (a thousandth of a millimeter), it acts like a ray in the many common situations in which it encounters objects larger than a micron. For example, when light encounters anything we can observe with unaided eyes, such as a mirror, it acts like a ray, with only subtle wave characteristics. We will concentrate on the ray characteristics in this chapter.

Since light moves in straight lines, changing directions when it interacts with materials, it is described by geometry and simple trigonometry. This part of optics, where the ray aspect of light dominates, is therefore called **geometric optics**. There are two laws that govern how light changes direction when it interacts with matter. These are the law of reflection, for

situations in which light bounces off matter, and the law of refraction, for situations in which light passes through matter.

Note:
Geometric Optics
The part of optics dealing with the ray aspect of light is called geometric optics.

Section Summary

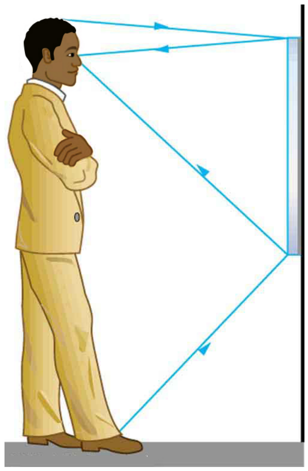
- A straight line that originates at some point is called a ray.
- The part of optics dealing with the ray aspect of light is called geometric optics.
- Light can travel in three ways from a source to another location: (1) directly from the source through empty space; (2) through various media; (3) after being reflected from a mirror.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a man stands in front of a mirror as shown in [link]. His eyes are 1.65 m above the floor, and the top of his head is 0.13 m higher. Find the height above the floor of the top and bottom of the smallest mirror in which he can see both the top of his head and his feet. How is this distance related to the man’s height?



A full-length mirror is one in which you can see all of yourself. It need not be as big as you, and its size is independent of your distance from it.

Solution:

Top 1.715 m from floor, bottom 0.825 m from floor. Height of mirror is 0.890 m, or precisely one-half the height of the person.

Glossary

ray
: straight line that originates at some point

geometric optics

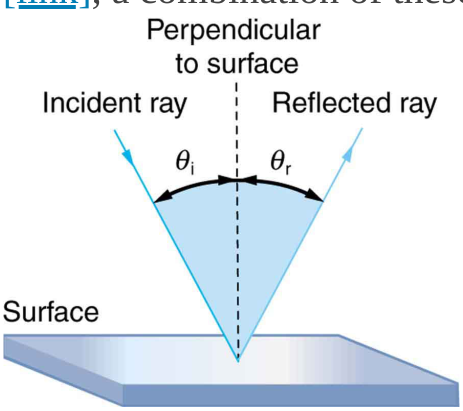
part of optics dealing with the ray aspect of light

The Law of Reflection

- Explain reflection of light from polished and rough surfaces.

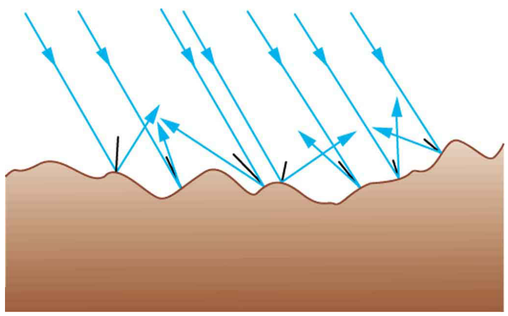
Whenever we look into a mirror, or squint at sunlight glinting from a lake, we are seeing a reflection. When you look at this page, too, you are seeing light reflected from it. Large telescopes use reflection to form an image of stars and other astronomical objects.

The law of reflection is illustrated in [link], which also shows how the angles are measured relative to the perpendicular to the surface at the point where the light ray strikes. We expect to see reflections from smooth surfaces, but [link] illustrates how a rough surface reflects light. Since the light strikes different parts of the surface at different angles, it is reflected in many different directions, or diffused. Diffused light is what allows us to see a sheet of paper from any angle, as illustrated in [link]. Many objects, such as people, clothing, leaves, and walls, have rough surfaces and can be seen from all sides. A mirror, on the other hand, has a smooth surface (compared with the wavelength of light) and reflects light at specific angles, as illustrated in [link]. When the moon reflects from a lake, as shown in [link], a combination of these effects takes place.

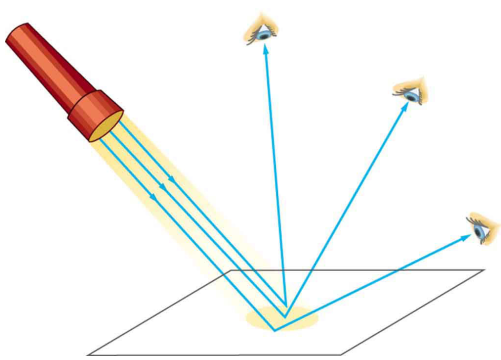


The law of reflection states that the angle of reflection equals the angle of incidence—$\theta_r = \theta_i$. The angles are measured relative to the perpendicular to

the surface at the point where the ray strikes the surface.

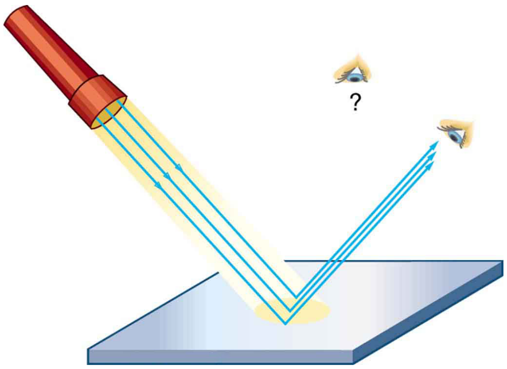


Light is diffused when it reflects from a rough surface. Here many parallel rays are incident, but they are reflected at many different angles since the surface is rough.



When a sheet of paper is illuminated with many parallel incident rays, it can be seen at many different angles, because

its surface is rough and diffuses the light.



A mirror illuminated by many parallel rays reflects them in only one direction, since its surface is very smooth. Only the observer at a particular angle will see the reflected light.

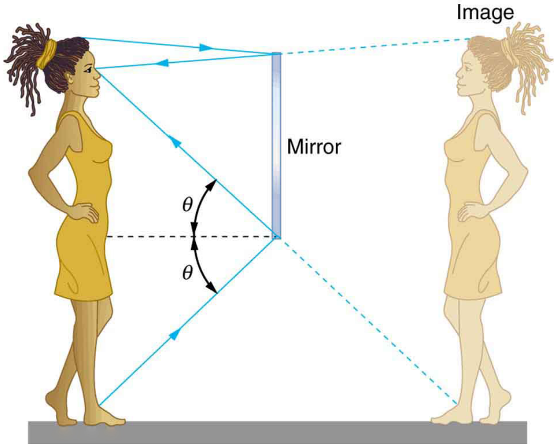
Moonlight is spread out when it is reflected by the lake, since the surface is shiny but uneven. (credit:

Diego Torres Silvestre,
Flickr)

The law of reflection is very simple: The angle of reflection equals the angle of incidence.

Note:
The Law of Reflection
The angle of reflection equals the angle of incidence.

When we see ourselves in a mirror, it appears that our image is actually behind the mirror. This is illustrated in [link]. We see the light coming from a direction determined by the law of reflection. The angles are such that our image is exactly the same distance behind the mirror as we stand away from the mirror. If the mirror is on the wall of a room, the images in it are all behind the mirror, which can make the room seem bigger. Although these mirror images make objects appear to be where they cannot be (like behind a solid wall), the images are not figments of our imagination. Mirror images can be photographed and videotaped by instruments and look just as they do with our eyes (optical instruments themselves). The precise manner in which images are formed by mirrors and lenses will be treated in later sections of this chapter.



Our image in a mirror is behind the mirror. The two rays shown are those that strike the mirror at just the correct angles to be reflected into the eyes of the person. The image appears to be in the direction the rays are coming from when they enter the eyes.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment: Law of Reflection

Take a piece of paper and shine a flashlight at an angle at the paper, as shown in [link]. Now shine the flashlight at a mirror at an angle. Do your observations confirm the predictions in [link] and [link]? Shine the flashlight on various surfaces and determine whether the reflected light is diffuse or not. You can choose a shiny metallic lid of a pot or your skin. Using the mirror and flashlight, can you confirm the law of reflection? You will need to draw lines on a piece of paper showing the incident and reflected rays. (This part works even better if you use a laser pencil.)

Section Summary

- The angle of reflection equals the angle of incidence.
- A mirror has a smooth surface and reflects light at specific angles.
- Light is diffused when it reflects from a rough surface.
- Mirror images can be photographed and videotaped by instruments.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

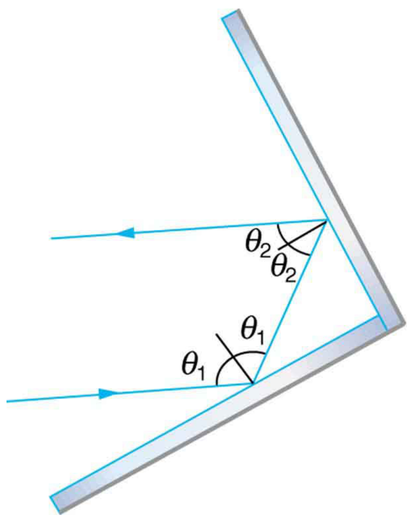
Using the law of reflection, explain how powder takes the shine off of a person’s nose. What is the name of the optical effect?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that when light reflects from two mirrors that meet each other at a right angle, the outgoing ray is parallel to the incoming ray, as illustrated in the following figure.



A corner reflector sends the reflected ray back in a direction parallel to the incident ray, independent of incoming direction.

Exercise:

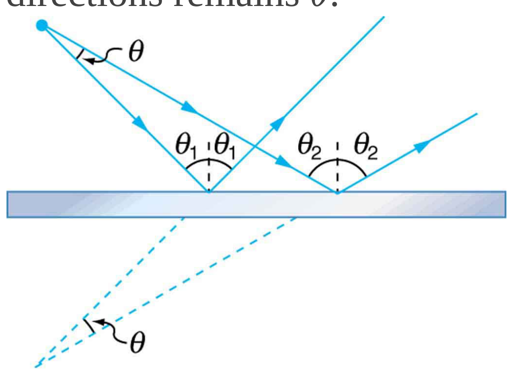
Problem:

Light shows staged with lasers use moving mirrors to swing beams and create colorful effects. Show that a light ray reflected from a mirror changes direction by 2θ when the mirror is rotated by an angle θ.

Exercise:

Problem:

A flat mirror is neither converging nor diverging. To prove this, consider two rays originating from the same point and diverging at an angle θ. Show that after striking a plane mirror, the angle between their directions remains θ.



A flat mirror neither converges nor diverges light rays. Two rays continue to diverge at the same angle after reflection.

Glossary

mirror

smooth surface that reflects light at specific angles, forming an image of the person or object in front of it

law of reflection
: angle of reflection equals the angle of incidence

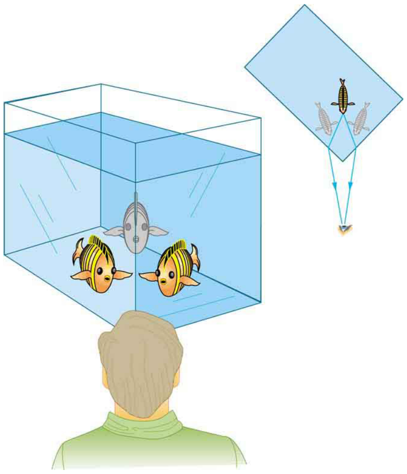
The Law of Refraction

- Determine the index of refraction, given the speed of light in a medium.

It is easy to notice some odd things when looking into a fish tank. For example, you may see the same fish appearing to be in two different places. (See [link].) This is because light coming from the fish to us changes direction when it leaves the tank, and in this case, it can travel two different paths to get to our eyes. The changing of a light ray’s direction (loosely called bending) when it passes through variations in matter is called **refraction**. Refraction is responsible for a tremendous range of optical phenomena, from the action of lenses to voice transmission through optical fibers.

Note:
Refraction
The changing of a light ray’s direction (loosely called bending) when it passes through variations in matter is called refraction.

Note:
Speed of Light
The speed of light c not only affects refraction, it is one of the central concepts of Einstein’s theory of relativity. As the accuracy of the measurements of the speed of light were improved, c was found not to depend on the velocity of the source or the observer. However, the speed of light does vary in a precise manner with the material it traverses. These facts have far-reaching implications, as we will see in Special Relativity. It makes connections between space and time and alters our expectations that all observers measure the same time for the same event, for example. The speed of light is so important that its value in a vacuum is one of the most fundamental constants in nature as well as being one of the four fundamental SI units.



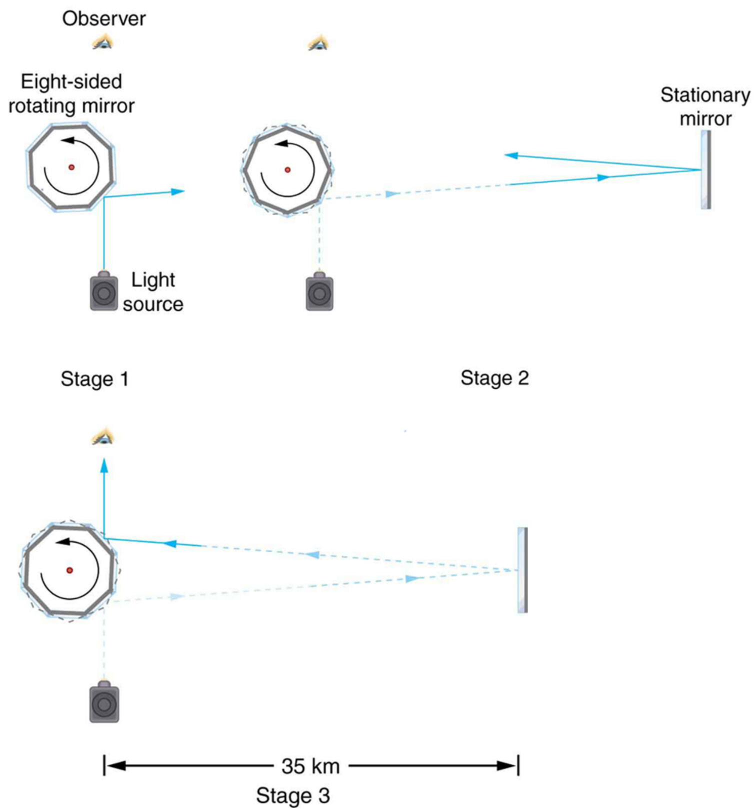
Looking at the fish tank as shown, we can see the same fish in two different locations, because light changes directions when it passes from water to air. In this case, the light can reach the observer by two different paths, and so the fish seems to be in two different places. This bending of light is called refraction and is responsible for many optical phenomena.

Why does light change direction when passing from one material (medium) to another? It is because light changes speed when going from one material

to another. So before we study the law of refraction, it is useful to discuss the speed of light and how it varies in different media.

The Speed of Light

Early attempts to measure the speed of light, such as those made by Galileo, determined that light moved extremely fast, perhaps instantaneously. The first real evidence that light traveled at a finite speed came from the Danish astronomer Ole Roemer in the late 17th century. Roemer had noted that the average orbital period of one of Jupiter’s moons, as measured from Earth, varied depending on whether Earth was moving toward or away from Jupiter. He correctly concluded that the apparent change in period was due to the change in distance between Earth and Jupiter and the time it took light to travel this distance. From his 1676 data, a value of the speed of light was calculated to be $2.26 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{m/s}$ (only 25% different from today’s accepted value). In more recent times, physicists have measured the speed of light in numerous ways and with increasing accuracy. One particularly direct method, used in 1887 by the American physicist Albert Michelson (1852–1931), is illustrated in [link]. Light reflected from a rotating set of mirrors was reflected from a stationary mirror 35 km away and returned to the rotating mirrors. The time for the light to travel can be determined by how fast the mirrors must rotate for the light to be returned to the observer’s eye.



A schematic of early apparatus used by Michelson and others to determine the speed of light. As the mirrors rotate, the reflected ray is only briefly directed at the stationary mirror. The returning ray will be reflected into the observer's eye only if the next mirror has rotated into the correct position just as the ray returns. By measuring the correct rotation rate, the time for the round trip can be measured and the speed of light calculated. Michelson’s calculated value of the speed of light was only 0.04% different from the value used today.

The speed of light is now known to great precision. In fact, the speed of light in a vacuum c is so important that it is accepted as one of the basic physical quantities and has the fixed value

Equation:

$$c = 2.99792458 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s} \approx 3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s},$$

where the approximate value of $3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ is used whenever three-digit accuracy is sufficient. The speed of light through matter is less than it is in a vacuum, because light interacts with atoms in a material. The speed of light depends strongly on the type of material, since its interaction with different atoms, crystal lattices, and other substructures varies. We define the **index of refraction** n of a material to be

Equation:

$$n = \frac{c}{v},$$

where v is the observed speed of light in the material. Since the speed of light is always less than c in matter and equals c only in a vacuum, the index of refraction is always greater than or equal to one.

Note:

Value of the Speed of Light

Equation:

$$c = 2.99792458 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s} \approx 3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$$

Note:

Index of Refraction

Equation:

$$n = \frac{c}{v}$$

That is, $n \geq 1$. [link] gives the indices of refraction for some representative substances. The values are listed for a particular wavelength of light, because they vary slightly with wavelength. (This can have important effects, such as colors produced by a prism.) Note that for gases, n is close to 1.0. This seems reasonable, since atoms in gases are widely separated and light travels at c in the vacuum between atoms. It is common to take $n = 1$ for gases unless great precision is needed. Although the speed of light v in a medium varies considerably from its value c in a vacuum, it is still a large speed.

Medium	***n***
Gases at 0°C***, 1 atm***	
Air	1.000293
Carbon dioxide	1.00045
Hydrogen	1.000139
Oxygen	1.000271
Liquids at 20°C	
Benzene	1.501
Carbon disulfide	1.628

Medium	***n***
Carbon tetrachloride	1.461
Ethanol	1.361
Glycerine	1.473
Water, fresh	1.333
Solids at 20°C	
Diamond	2.419
Fluorite	1.434
Glass, crown	1.52
Glass, flint	1.66
Ice at 20°C	1.309
Polystyrene	1.49
Plexiglas	1.51
Quartz, crystalline	1.544
Quartz, fused	1.458
Sodium chloride	1.544
Zircon	1.923

Index of Refraction in Various Media

Example:
Speed of Light in Matter
Calculate the speed of light in zircon, a material used in jewelry to imitate diamond.
Strategy
The speed of light in a material, v, can be calculated from the index of refraction n of the material using the equation $n = c/v$.
Solution
The equation for index of refraction states that $n = c/v$. Rearranging this to determine v gives
Equation:

$$v = \frac{c}{n}.$$

The index of refraction for zircon is given as 1.923 in [link], and c is given in the equation for speed of light. Entering these values in the last expression gives
Equation:

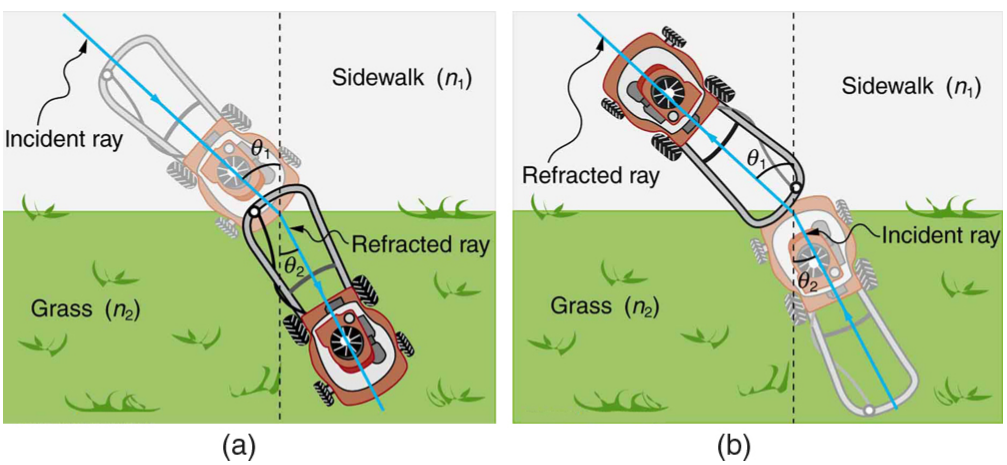
$$\begin{aligned} v &= \frac{3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}}{1.923} \\ &= 1.56 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion
This speed is slightly larger than half the speed of light in a vacuum and is still high compared with speeds we normally experience. The only substance listed in [link] that has a greater index of refraction than zircon is diamond. We shall see later that the large index of refraction for zircon makes it sparkle more than glass, but less than diamond.

Law of Refraction

[link] shows how a ray of light changes direction when it passes from one medium to another. As before, the angles are measured relative to a perpendicular to the surface at the point where the light ray crosses it.

(Some of the incident light will be reflected from the surface, but for now we will concentrate on the light that is transmitted.) The change in direction of the light ray depends on how the speed of light changes. The change in the speed of light is related to the indices of refraction of the media involved. In the situations shown in [link], medium 2 has a greater index of refraction than medium 1. This means that the speed of light is less in medium 2 than in medium 1. Note that as shown in [link](a), the direction of the ray moves closer to the perpendicular when it slows down. Conversely, as shown in [link](b), the direction of the ray moves away from the perpendicular when it speeds up. The path is exactly reversible. In both cases, you can imagine what happens by thinking about pushing a lawn mower from a footpath onto grass, and vice versa. Going from the footpath to grass, the front wheels are slowed and pulled to the side as shown. This is the same change in direction as for light when it goes from a fast medium to a slow one. When going from the grass to the footpath, the front wheels can move faster and the mower changes direction as shown. This, too, is the same change in direction as for light going from slow to fast.



The change in direction of a light ray depends on how the speed of light changes when it crosses from one medium to another. The speed of light is greater in medium 1 than in medium 2 in the situations shown here. (a) A ray of light moves closer to the perpendicular when it slows down. This is analogous to what happens when a lawn mower goes from a footpath to grass. (b) A ray of

light moves away from the perpendicular when it speeds up. This is analogous to what happens when a lawn mower goes from grass to footpath. The paths are exactly reversible.

The amount that a light ray changes its direction depends both on the incident angle and the amount that the speed changes. For a ray at a given incident angle, a large change in speed causes a large change in direction, and thus a large change in angle. The exact mathematical relationship is the **law of refraction**, or "Snell's Law," which is stated in equation form as
Equation:

$$n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2 \sin \theta_2.$$

Here n_1 and n_2 are the indices of refraction for medium 1 and 2, and θ_1 and θ_2 are the angles between the rays and the perpendicular in medium 1 and 2, as shown in [link]. The incoming ray is called the incident ray and the outgoing ray the refracted ray, and the associated angles the incident angle and the refracted angle. The law of refraction is also called Snell's law after the Dutch mathematician Willebrord Snell (1591–1626), who discovered it in 1621. Snell's experiments showed that the law of refraction was obeyed and that a characteristic index of refraction n could be assigned to a given medium. Snell was not aware that the speed of light varied in different media, but through experiments he was able to determine indices of refraction from the way light rays changed direction.

Note:
The Law of Refraction
Equation:

$$n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2 \sin \theta_2$$

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: A Broken Pencil
A classic observation of refraction occurs when a pencil is placed in a glass half filled with water. Do this and observe the shape of the pencil when you look at the pencil sideways, that is, through air, glass, water. Explain your observations. Draw ray diagrams for the situation.

Example:
Determine the Index of Refraction from Refraction Data
Find the index of refraction for medium 2 in [link](a), assuming medium 1 is air and given the incident angle is 30.0° and the angle of refraction is 22.0°.
Strategy
The index of refraction for air is taken to be 1 in most cases (and up to four significant figures, it is 1.000). Thus $n_1 = 1.00$ here. From the given information, $\theta_1 = 30.0^{\circ}$ and $\theta_2 = 22.0^{\circ}$. With this information, the only unknown in Snell's law is n_2, so that it can be used to find this unknown.
Solution
Snell's law is
Equation:

$$n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2 \sin \theta_2.$$

Rearranging to isolate n_2 gives
Equation:

$$n_2 = n_1 \frac{\sin \theta_1}{\sin \theta_2}.$$

Entering known values,
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} n_2 &= 1.00 \frac{\sin 30.0^{\circ}}{\sin 22.0^{\circ}} = \frac{0.500}{0.375} \\ &= 1.33. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

This is the index of refraction for water, and Snell could have determined it by measuring the angles and performing this calculation. He would then have found 1.33 to be the appropriate index of refraction for water in all other situations, such as when a ray passes from water to glass. Today we can verify that the index of refraction is related to the speed of light in a medium by measuring that speed directly.

Example:

A Larger Change in Direction

Suppose that in a situation like that in [link], light goes from air to diamond and that the incident angle is 30.0º. Calculate the angle of refraction θ_2 in the diamond.

Strategy

Again the index of refraction for air is taken to be $n_1 = 1.00$, and we are given $\theta_1 = 30.0º$. We can look up the index of refraction for diamond in [link], finding $n_2 = 2.419$. The only unknown in Snell's law is θ_2, which we wish to determine.

Solution

Solving Snell's law for sin θ_2 yields

Equation:

$$\sin\,\theta_2 = \frac{n_1}{n_2}\sin\,\theta_1.$$

Entering known values,

Equation:

$$\sin\,\theta_2 = \frac{1.00}{2.419}\sin\,30.0º = \left(0.413\right)(0.500) = 0.207.$$

The angle is thus

Equation:

$$\theta_2 = \sin^{-1} 0.207 = 11.9º.$$

Discussion

For the same 30° angle of incidence, the angle of refraction in diamond is significantly smaller than in water (11.9° rather than 22°—see the preceding example). This means there is a larger change in direction in diamond. The cause of a large change in direction is a large change in the index of refraction (or speed). In general, the larger the change in speed, the greater the effect on the direction of the ray.

Section Summary

- The changing of a light ray's direction when it passes through variations in matter is called refraction.
- The speed of light in vacuum $c = 2.99792458 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s} \approx 3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s}$.
- Index of refraction $n = \frac{c}{v}$, where v is the speed of light in the material, c is the speed of light in vacuum, and n is the index of refraction.
- Snell's law, the law of refraction, is stated in equation form as $n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2 \sin \theta_2$.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Diffusion by reflection from a rough surface is described in this chapter. Light can also be diffused by refraction. Describe how this occurs in a specific situation, such as light interacting with crushed ice.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why is the index of refraction always greater than or equal to 1?

Exercise:

Problem:

Does the fact that the light flash from lightning reaches you before its sound prove that the speed of light is extremely large or simply that it is greater than the speed of sound? Discuss how you could use this effect to get an estimate of the speed of light.

Exercise:

Problem:

Will light change direction toward or away from the perpendicular when it goes from air to water? Water to glass? Glass to air?

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why an object in water always appears to be at a depth shallower than it actually is? Why do people sometimes sustain neck and spinal injuries when diving into unfamiliar ponds or waters?

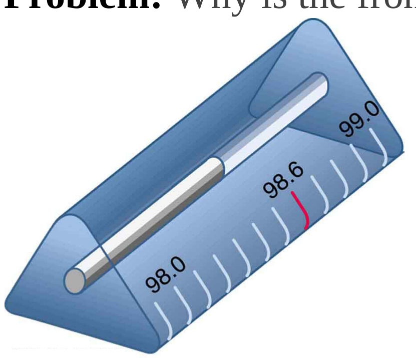
Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why a person’s legs appear very short when wading in a pool. Justify your explanation with a ray diagram showing the path of rays from the feet to the eye of an observer who is out of the water.

Exercise:

Problem: Why is the front surface of a thermometer curved as shown?



The curved surface of the thermometer serves a purpose.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose light were incident from air onto a material that had a negative index of refraction, say –1.3; where does the refracted light ray go?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: What is the speed of light in water? In glycerine?

Solution:

$2.25 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ in water

$2.04 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ in glycerine

Exercise:

Problem: What is the speed of light in air? In crown glass?

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the index of refraction for a medium in which the speed of light is $2.012 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$, and identify the most likely substance based on [link].

Solution:

1.490, polystyrene

Exercise:

Problem:

In what substance in [link] is the speed of light $2.290 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$?

Exercise:

Problem:

There was a major collision of an asteroid with the Moon in medieval times. It was described by monks at Canterbury Cathedral in England as a red glow on and around the Moon. How long after the asteroid hit the Moon, which is $3.84 \times 10^5 \text{ km}$ away, would the light first arrive on Earth?

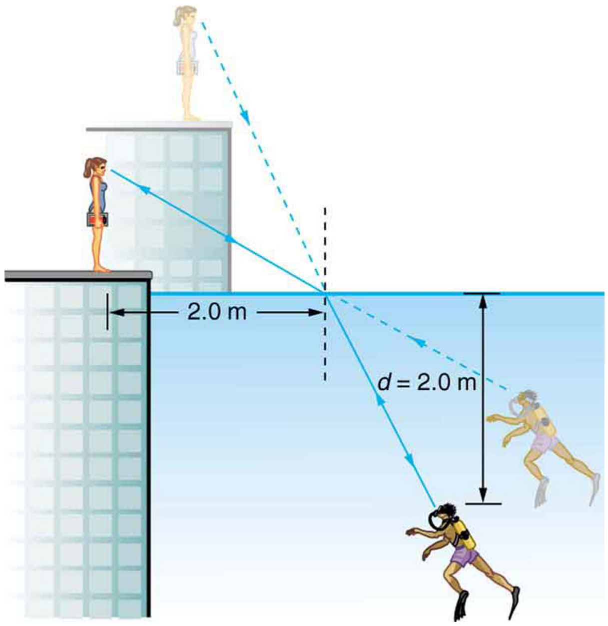
Solution:

1.28 s

Exercise:

Problem:

A scuba diver training in a pool looks at his instructor as shown in [link]. What angle does the ray from the instructor's face make with the perpendicular to the water at the point where the ray enters? The angle between the ray in the water and the perpendicular to the water is 25.0°.



A scuba diver in a pool and his trainer look at each other.

Exercise:

Problem:

Components of some computers communicate with each other through optical fibers having an index of refraction $n = 1.55$. What time in nanoseconds is required for a signal to travel 0.200 m through such a fiber?

Solution:

1.03 ns

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Given that the angle between the ray in the water and the perpendicular to the water is 25.0°, and using information in [link], find the height of the instructor's head above the water, noting that you will first have to calculate the angle of incidence. (b) Find the apparent depth of the diver's head below water as seen by the instructor.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you have an unknown clear substance immersed in water, and you wish to identify it by finding its index of refraction. You arrange to have a beam of light enter it at an angle of 45.0°, and you observe the angle of refraction to be 40.3°. What is the index of refraction of the substance and its likely identity?

Solution:

$n = 1.46$, fused quartz

Exercise:

Problem:

On the Moon's surface, lunar astronauts placed a corner reflector, off which a laser beam is periodically reflected. The distance to the Moon is calculated from the round-trip time. What percent correction is needed to account for the delay in time due to the slowing of light in Earth's atmosphere? Assume the distance to the Moon is precisely 3.84×10^{8} m, and Earth's atmosphere (which varies in density with altitude) is equivalent to a layer 30.0 km thick with a constant index of refraction $n = 1.000293$.

Exercise:

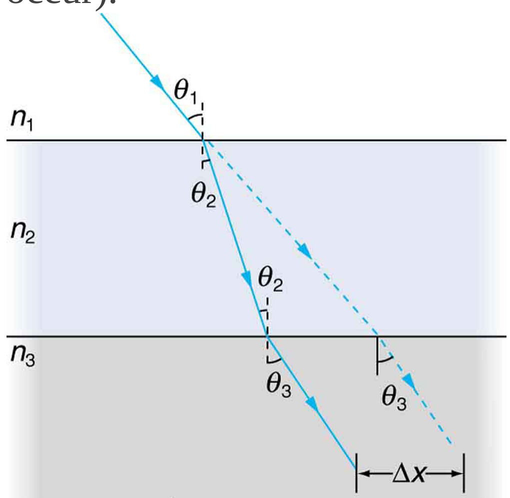
Problem:

Suppose [link] represents a ray of light going from air through crown glass into water, such as going into a fish tank. Calculate the amount the ray is displaced by the glass (Δx), given that the incident angle is 40.0º and the glass is 1.00 cm thick.

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows a ray of light passing from one medium into a second and then a third. Show that θ_3 is the same as it would be if the second medium were not present (provided total internal reflection does not occur).



A ray of light passes from one medium to a third by traveling through a second. The final direction is the same as if the second medium were not present, but the ray is displaced by Δx (shown exaggerated).

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

Suppose light travels from water to another substance, with an angle of incidence of 10.0^{o} and an angle of refraction of 14.9^{o}. (a) What is the index of refraction of the other substance? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) 0.898

(b) Can't have $n < 1.00$ since this would imply a speed greater than c.

(c) Refracted angle is too big relative to the angle of incidence.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider sunlight entering the Earth's atmosphere at sunrise and sunset —that is, at a 90^{o} incident angle. Taking the boundary between nearly empty space and the atmosphere to be sudden, calculate the angle of refraction for sunlight. This lengthens the time the Sun appears to be above the horizon, both at sunrise and sunset. Now construct a problem in which you determine the angle of refraction for different models of the atmosphere, such as various layers of varying density. Your instructor may wish to guide you on the level of complexity to consider and on how the index of refraction varies with air density.

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

Light traveling from water to a gemstone strikes the surface at an angle of 80.0^{o} and has an angle of refraction of 15.2^{o}. (a) What is the speed

of light in the gemstone? (b) What is unreasonable about this result? (c) Which assumptions are unreasonable or inconsistent?

Solution:

(a) $\frac{c}{5.00}$

(b) Speed of light too slow, since index is much greater than that of diamond.

(c) Angle of refraction is unreasonable relative to the angle of incidence.

Glossary

refraction
: changing of a light ray’s direction when it passes through variations in matter

index of refraction
: for a material, the ratio of the speed of light in vacuum to that in the material

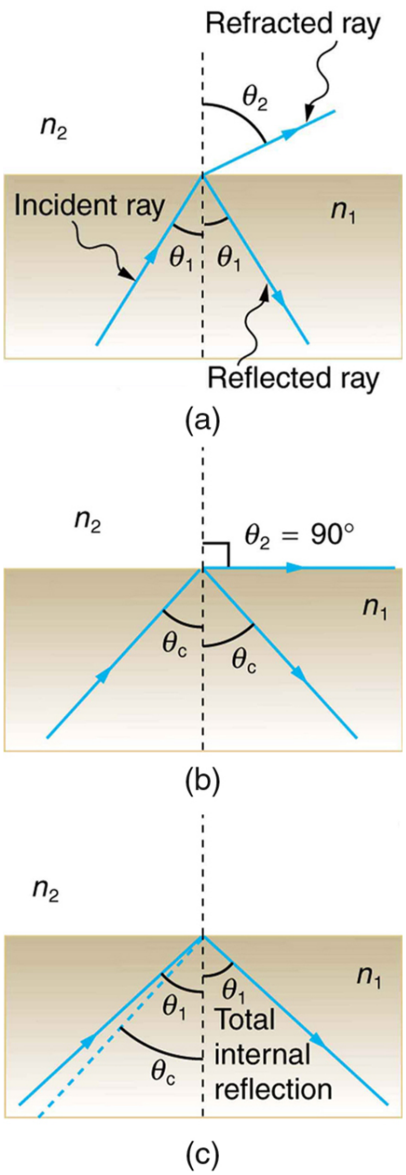
Total Internal Reflection

- Explain the phenomenon of total internal reflection.
- Describe the workings and uses of fiber optics.
- Analyze the reason for the sparkle of diamonds.

A good-quality mirror may reflect more than 90% of the light that falls on it, absorbing the rest. But it would be useful to have a mirror that reflects all of the light that falls on it. Interestingly, we can produce *total reflection* using an aspect of *refraction*.

Consider what happens when a ray of light strikes the surface between two materials, such as is shown in [link](a). Part of the light crosses the boundary and is refracted; the rest is reflected. If, as shown in the figure, the index of refraction for the second medium is less than for the first, the ray bends away from the perpendicular. (Since $n_1 > n_2$, the angle of refraction is greater than the angle of incidence—that is, $\theta_2 > \theta_1$.) Now imagine what happens as the incident angle is increased. This causes θ_2 to increase also. The largest the angle of refraction $\theta_2$can be is 90º, as shown in [link](b).The **critical angle**θ_c for a combination of materials is defined to be the incident angle θ_1 that produces an angle of refraction of 90º. That is, θ_c is the incident angle for which $\theta_2 = 90º$. If the incident angle θ_1 is greater than the critical angle, as shown in [link](c), then all of the light is reflected back into medium 1, a condition called **total internal reflection**.

Note:
Critical Angle
The incident angle θ_1 that produces an angle of refraction of 90º is called the critical angle, θ_c.



(a) A ray of light crosses a boundary where the speed of light increases and the index of refraction decreases. That is, $n_2 < n_1$. The ray bends away from the perpendicular. (b) The critical

angle θ_c is the one for which the angle of refraction is . (c) Total internal reflection occurs when the incident angle is greater than the critical angle.

Snell's law states the relationship between angles and indices of refraction. It is given by

Equation:

$$n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2 \sin \theta_2.$$

When the incident angle equals the critical angle ($\theta_1 = \theta_c$), the angle of refraction is 90º ($\theta_2 = 90º$). Noting that sin 90º=1, Snell's law in this case becomes

Equation:

$$n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2.$$

The critical angle θ_c for a given combination of materials is thus

Equation:

$$\theta_c = \sin^{-1}(n_2/n_1) \text{ for } n_1 > n_2.$$

Total internal reflection occurs for any incident angle greater than the critical angle θ_c, and it can only occur when the second medium has an index of refraction less than the first. Note the above equation is written for a light ray that travels in medium 1 and reflects from medium 2, as shown in the figure.

Example:
How Big is the Critical Angle Here?
What is the critical angle for light traveling in a polystyrene (a type of plastic) pipe surrounded by air?

Strategy

The index of refraction for polystyrene is found to be 1.49 in [link], and the index of refraction of air can be taken to be 1.00, as before. Thus, the condition that the second medium (air) has an index of refraction less than the first (plastic) is satisfied, and the equation $\theta_c = \sin^{-1}(n_2/n_1)$ can be used to find the critical angle θ_c. Here, then, $n_2 = 1.00$ and $n_1 = 1.49$.

Solution

The critical angle is given by

Equation:

$$\theta_c = \sin^{-1}(n_2/n_1).$$

Substituting the identified values gives

Equation:

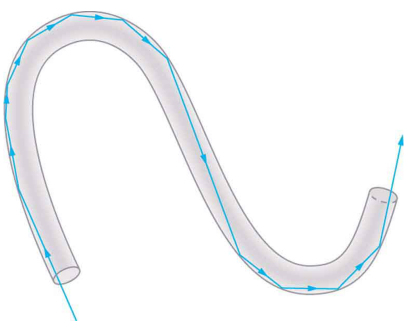
$$\theta_c = \sin^{-1}(1.00/1.49) = \sin^{-1}(0.671)$$
$$42.2^{\mathrm{o}}.$$

Discussion

This means that any ray of light inside the plastic that strikes the surface at an angle greater than 42.2^{o} will be totally reflected. This will make the inside surface of the clear plastic a perfect mirror for such rays without any need for the silvering used on common mirrors. Different combinations of materials have different critical angles, but any combination with $n_1 > n_2$ can produce total internal reflection. The same calculation as made here shows that the critical angle for a ray going from water to air is 48.6^{o}, while that from diamond to air is 24.4^{o}, and that from flint glass to crown glass is 66.3^{o}. There is no total reflection for rays going in the other direction—for example, from air to water—since the condition that the second medium must have a smaller index of refraction is not satisfied. A number of interesting applications of total internal reflection follow.

Fiber Optics: Endoscopes to Telephones

Fiber optics is one application of total internal reflection that is in wide use. In communications, it is used to transmit telephone, internet, and cable TV signals. **Fiber optics** employs the transmission of light down fibers of plastic or glass. Because the fibers are thin, light entering one is likely to strike the inside surface at an angle greater than the critical angle and, thus, be totally reflected (See [link].) The index of refraction outside the fiber must be smaller than inside, a condition that is easily satisfied by coating the outside of the fiber with a material having an appropriate refractive index. In fact, most fibers have a varying refractive index to allow more light to be guided along the fiber through total internal refraction. Rays are reflected around corners as shown, making the fibers into tiny light pipes.

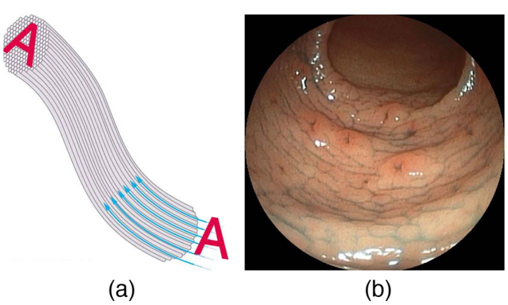


Light entering a thin fiber may strike the inside surface at large or grazing angles and is completely reflected if these angles exceed the critical angle. Such rays continue down the fiber, even following it around corners, since the angles of reflection

and incidence
remain large.

Bundles of fibers can be used to transmit an image without a lens, as illustrated in [link]. The output of a device called an **endoscope** is shown in [link](b). Endoscopes are used to explore the body through various orifices or minor incisions. Light is transmitted down one fiber bundle to illuminate internal parts, and the reflected light is transmitted back out through another to be observed. Surgery can be performed, such as arthroscopic surgery on the knee joint, employing cutting tools attached to and observed with the endoscope. Samples can also be obtained, such as by lassoing an intestinal polyp for external examination.

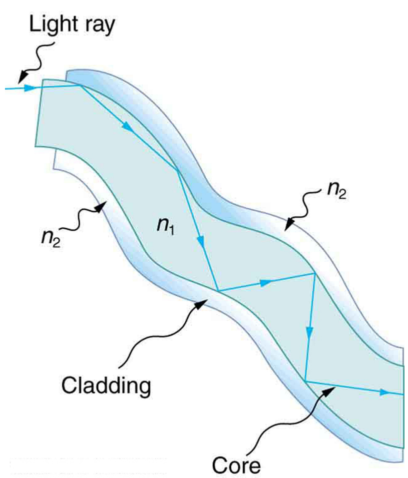
Fiber optics has revolutionized surgical techniques and observations within the body. There are a host of medical diagnostic and therapeutic uses. The flexibility of the fiber optic bundle allows it to navigate around difficult and small regions in the body, such as the intestines, the heart, blood vessels, and joints. Transmission of an intense laser beam to burn away obstructing plaques in major arteries as well as delivering light to activate chemotherapy drugs are becoming commonplace. Optical fibers have in fact enabled microsurgery and remote surgery where the incisions are small and the surgeon's fingers do not need to touch the diseased tissue.



(a) An image is
transmitted by a bundle of
fibers that have fixed

neighbors. (b) An endoscope is used to probe the body, both transmitting light to the interior and returning an image such as the one shown. (credit: Med_Chaos, Wikimedia Commons)

Fibers in bundles are surrounded by a cladding material that has a lower index of refraction than the core. (See [link].) The cladding prevents light from being transmitted between fibers in a bundle. Without cladding, light could pass between fibers in contact, since their indices of refraction are identical. Since no light gets into the cladding (there is total internal reflection back into the core), none can be transmitted between clad fibers that are in contact with one another. The cladding prevents light from escaping out of the fiber; instead most of the light is propagated along the length of the fiber, minimizing the loss of signal and ensuring that a quality image is formed at the other end. The cladding and an additional protective layer make optical fibers flexible and durable.



Fibers in bundles are clad by a material that has a lower index of refraction than the core to ensure total internal reflection, even when fibers are in contact with one another. This shows a single fiber with its cladding.

Note:
Cladding
The cladding prevents light from being transmitted between fibers in a bundle.

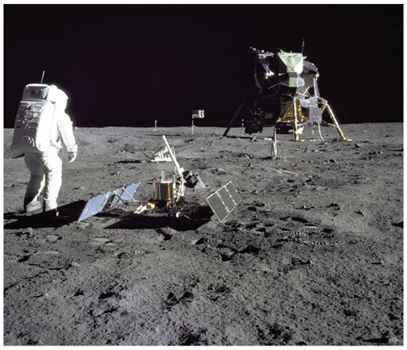
Special tiny lenses that can be attached to the ends of bundles of fibers are being designed and fabricated. Light emerging from a fiber bundle can be focused and a tiny spot can be imaged. In some cases the spot can be scanned, allowing quality imaging of a region inside the body. Special minute optical filters inserted at the end of the fiber bundle have the capacity to image tens of microns below the surface without cutting the surface—non-intrusive diagnostics. This is particularly useful for determining the extent of cancers in the stomach and bowel.

Most telephone conversations and Internet communications are now carried by laser signals along optical fibers. Extensive optical fiber cables have been placed on the ocean floor and underground to enable optical communications. Optical fiber communication systems offer several advantages over electrical (copper) based systems, particularly for long

distances. The fibers can be made so transparent that light can travel many kilometers before it becomes dim enough to require amplification—much superior to copper conductors. This property of optical fibers is called *low loss*. Lasers emit light with characteristics that allow far more conversations in one fiber than are possible with electric signals on a single conductor. This property of optical fibers is called *high bandwidth*. Optical signals in one fiber do not produce undesirable effects in other adjacent fibers. This property of optical fibers is called *reduced crosstalk*. We shall explore the unique characteristics of laser radiation in a later chapter.

Corner Reflectors and Diamonds

A light ray that strikes an object consisting of two mutually perpendicular reflecting surfaces is reflected back exactly parallel to the direction from which it came. This is true whenever the reflecting surfaces are perpendicular, and it is independent of the angle of incidence. Such an object, shown in [link], is called a **corner reflector**, since the light bounces from its inside corner. Many inexpensive reflector buttons on bicycles, cars, and warning signs have corner reflectors designed to return light in the direction from which it originated. It was more expensive for astronauts to place one on the moon. Laser signals can be bounced from that corner reflector to measure the gradually increasing distance to the moon with great precision.

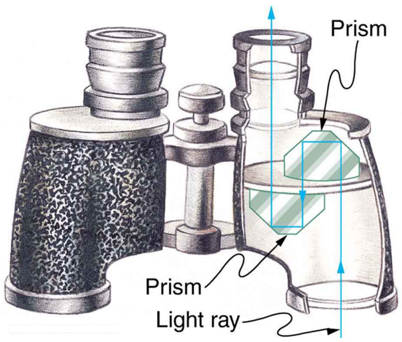


(a)

(b)

(a) Astronauts placed a corner reflector on the moon to measure its gradually increasing orbital distance. (credit: NASA) (b) The bright spots on these bicycle safety reflectors are reflections of the flash of the camera that took this picture on a dark night. (credit: Julo, Wikimedia Commons)

Corner reflectors are perfectly efficient when the conditions for total internal reflection are satisfied. With common materials, it is easy to obtain a critical angle that is less than 45°. One use of these perfect mirrors is in binoculars, as shown in [link]. Another use is in periscopes found in submarines.

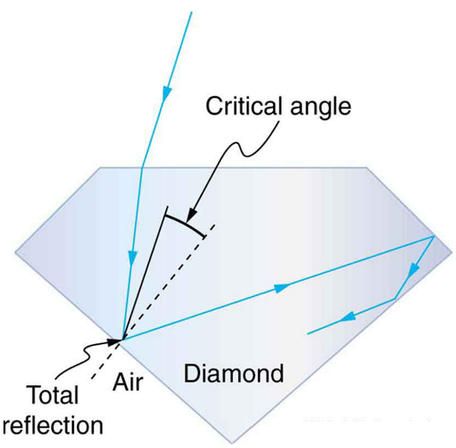


These binoculars employ corner reflectors with total internal reflection to get light to the observer's eyes.

The Sparkle of Diamonds

Total internal reflection, coupled with a large index of refraction, explains why diamonds sparkle more than other materials. The critical angle for a diamond-to-air surface is only 24.4°, and so when light enters a diamond, it has trouble getting back out. (See [link].) Although light freely enters the diamond, it can exit only if it makes an angle less than 24.4°. Facets on diamonds are specifically intended to make this unlikely, so that the light can exit only in certain places. Good diamonds are very clear, so that the light makes many internal reflections and is concentrated at the few places it can exit—hence the sparkle. (Zircon is a natural gemstone that has an exceptionally large index of refraction, but not as large as diamond, so it is

not as highly prized. Cubic zirconia is manufactured and has an even higher index of refraction (≈ 2.17), but still less than that of diamond.) The colors you see emerging from a sparkling diamond are not due to the diamond's color, which is usually nearly colorless. Those colors result from dispersion, the topic of Dispersion: The Rainbow and Prisms. Colored diamonds get their color from structural defects of the crystal lattice and the inclusion of minute quantities of graphite and other materials. The Argyle Mine in Western Australia produces around 90% of the world's pink, red, champagne, and cognac diamonds, while around 50% of the world's clear diamonds come from central and southern Africa.



Light cannot easily escape a diamond, because its critical angle with air is so small. Most reflections are total, and the facets are placed so that light can exit only in particular ways—thus concentrating the light and making the diamond sparkle.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Bending Light
Explore bending of light between two media with different indices of refraction. See how changing from air to water to glass changes the bending angle. Play with prisms of different shapes and make rainbows.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/bending-light/latest/bending-light_en.html

Section Summary

- The incident angle that produces an angle of refraction of 90° is called critical angle.
- Total internal reflection is a phenomenon that occurs at the boundary between two mediums, such that if the incident angle in the first medium is greater than the critical angle, then all the light is reflected back into that medium.
- Fiber optics involves the transmission of light down fibers of plastic or glass, applying the principle of total internal reflection.
- Endoscopes are used to explore the body through various orifices or minor incisions, based on the transmission of light through optical fibers.
- Cladding prevents light from being transmitted between fibers in a bundle.
- Diamonds sparkle due to total internal reflection coupled with a large index of refraction.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

A ring with a colorless gemstone is dropped into water. The gemstone becomes invisible when submerged. Can it be a diamond? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

A high-quality diamond may be quite clear and colorless, transmitting all visible wavelengths with little absorption. Explain how it can sparkle with flashes of brilliant color when illuminated by white light.

Exercise:

Problem:

Is it possible that total internal reflection plays a role in rainbows? Explain in terms of indices of refraction and angles, perhaps referring to [link]. Some of us have seen the formation of a double rainbow. Is it physically possible to observe a triple rainbow?

Double rainbows are not a very common observance. (credit: InvictusOU812, Flickr)

Exercise:

Problem:

The most common type of mirage is an illusion that light from faraway objects is reflected by a pool of water that is not really there. Mirages are generally observed in deserts, when there is a hot layer of air near the ground. Given that the refractive index of air is lower for air at higher temperatures, explain how mirages can be formed.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Verify that the critical angle for light going from water to air is 48.6°, as discussed at the end of [link], regarding the critical angle for light traveling in a polystyrene (a type of plastic) pipe surrounded by air.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) At the end of [link], it was stated that the critical angle for light going from diamond to air is 24.4°. Verify this. (b) What is the critical angle for light going from zircon to air?

Exercise:

Problem:

An optical fiber uses flint glass clad with crown glass. What is the critical angle?

Solution:

66.3°

Exercise:

Problem:

At what minimum angle will you get total internal reflection of light traveling in water and reflected from ice?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you are using total internal reflection to make an efficient corner reflector. If there is air outside and the incident angle is 45.0^{o}, what must be the minimum index of refraction of the material from which the reflector is made?

Solution:

> 1.414

Exercise:

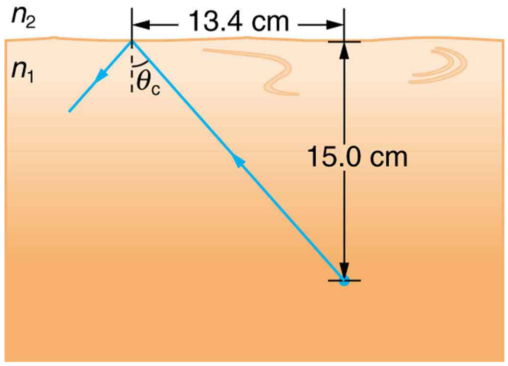
Problem:

You can determine the index of refraction of a substance by determining its critical angle. (a) What is the index of refraction of a substance that has a critical angle of 68.4^{o} when submerged in water? What is the substance, based on [link]? (b) What would the critical angle be for this substance in air?

Exercise:

Problem:

A ray of light, emitted beneath the surface of an unknown liquid with air above it, undergoes total internal reflection as shown in [link]. What is the index of refraction for the liquid and its likely identification?



A light ray inside a liquid strikes the surface at the critical angle and undergoes total internal reflection.

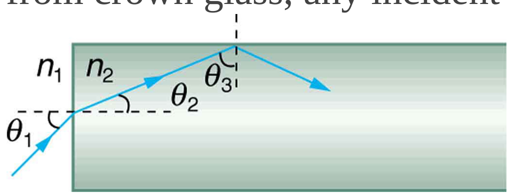
Solution:

1.50, benzene

Exercise:

Problem:

A light ray entering an optical fiber surrounded by air is first refracted and then reflected as shown in [link]. Show that if the fiber is made from crown glass, any incident ray will be totally internally reflected.



A light ray enters the end of a fiber, the surface of which is perpendicular to its sides. Examine the conditions under which it

may be totally internally reflected.

Glossary

critical angle
: incident angle that produces an angle of refraction of 90°

fiber optics
: transmission of light down fibers of plastic or glass, applying the principle of total internal reflection

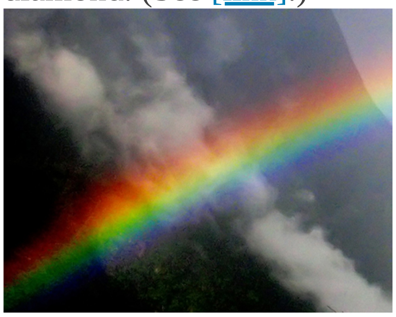
corner reflector
: an object consisting of two mutually perpendicular reflecting surfaces, so that the light that enters is reflected back exactly parallel to the direction from which it came

zircon
: natural gemstone with a large index of refraction

Dispersion: The Rainbow and Prisms

- Explain the phenomenon of dispersion and discuss its advantages and disadvantages.

Everyone enjoys the spectacle of a rainbow glimmering against a dark stormy sky. How does sunlight falling on clear drops of rain get broken into the rainbow of colors we see? The same process causes white light to be broken into colors by a clear glass prism or a diamond. (See [link].)



(a)

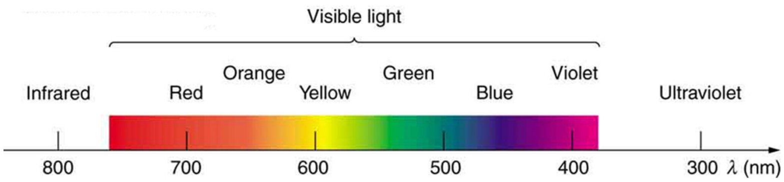
(b)

The colors of the rainbow (a) and those produced by a prism (b) are identical. (credit: Alfredo55, Wikimedia Commons; NASA)

We see about six colors in a rainbow—red, orange, yellow, green, blue, and violet; sometimes indigo is listed, too. Those colors are associated with different wavelengths of light, as shown in [link]. When our eye receives pure-wavelength light, we tend to see only one of the six colors, depending on wavelength. The thousands of other hues we can sense in other situations are our eye’s response to various mixtures of wavelengths. White light, in particular, is a fairly uniform mixture of all visible wavelengths. Sunlight, considered to be white, actually appears to be a bit yellow because of its mixture of wavelengths, but it does contain all visible wavelengths. The sequence of colors in rainbows is the same sequence as the colors plotted versus wavelength in [link]. What this implies is that white light is spread out according to

wavelength in a rainbow. **Dispersion** is defined as the spreading of white light into its full spectrum of wavelengths. More technically, dispersion occurs whenever there is a process that changes the direction of light in a manner that depends on wavelength. Dispersion, as a general phenomenon, can occur for any type of wave and always involves wavelength-dependent processes.

Note:
Dispersion
Dispersion is defined to be the spreading of white light into its full spectrum of wavelengths.



Even though rainbows are associated with seven colors, the rainbow is a continuous distribution of colors according to wavelengths.

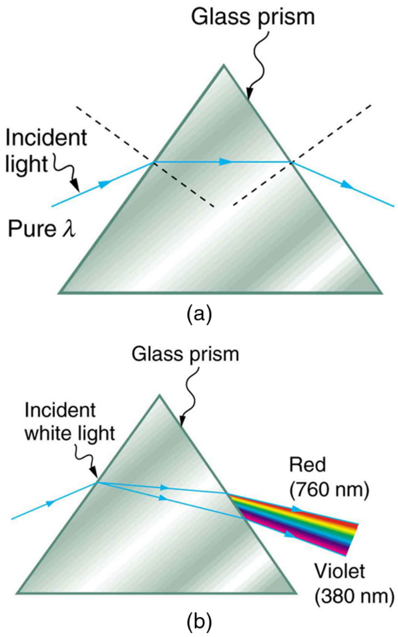
Refraction is responsible for dispersion in rainbows and many other situations. The angle of refraction depends on the index of refraction, as we saw in The Law of Refraction. We know that the index of refraction n depends on the medium. But for a given medium, n also depends on wavelength. (See [link]. Note that, for a given medium, n increases as wavelength decreases and is greatest for violet light. Thus violet light is bent more than red light, as shown for a prism in [link](b), and the light is dispersed into the same sequence of wavelengths as seen in [link] and [link].

Note:
Making Connections: Dispersion
Any type of wave can exhibit dispersion. Sound waves, all types of electromagnetic waves, and water waves can be dispersed according to wavelength. Dispersion occurs whenever the speed of propagation depends on wavelength, thus separating and spreading out various wavelengths. Dispersion may require special circumstances and can result in spectacular displays such as in the production of a rainbow. This is also

true for sound, since all frequencies ordinarily travel at the same speed. If you listen to sound through a long tube, such as a vacuum cleaner hose, you can easily hear it is dispersed by interaction with the tube. Dispersion, in fact, can reveal a great deal about what the wave has encountered that disperses its wavelengths. The dispersion of electromagnetic radiation from outer space, for example, has revealed much about what exists between the stars—the so-called empty space.

Medium	**Red (660 nm)**	**Orange (610 nm)**	**Yellow (580 nm)**	**Green (550 nm)**	**Blue (470 nm)**	**Violet (410 nm)**
Water	1.331	1.332	1.333	1.335	1.338	1.342
Diamond	2.410	2.415	2.417	2.426	2.444	2.458
Glass, crown	1.512	1.514	1.518	1.519	1.524	1.530
Glass, flint	1.662	1.665	1.667	1.674	1.684	1.698
Polystyrene	1.488	1.490	1.492	1.493	1.499	1.506
Quartz, fused	1.455	1.456	1.458	1.459	1.462	1.468

Index of Refraction n in Selected Media at Various Wavelengths

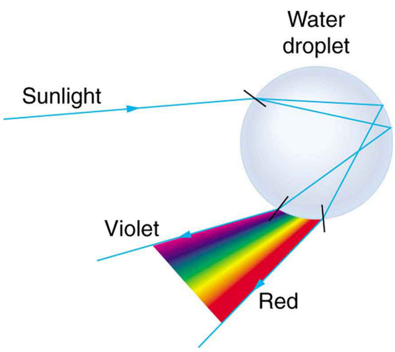


(a) A pure wavelength of light falls onto a prism and is refracted at both surfaces. (b) White light is dispersed by the prism (shown exaggerated). Since the index of refraction varies with wavelength, the angles of refraction vary with wavelength. A sequence of red to violet is produced, because the index of refraction increases steadily with decreasing wavelength.

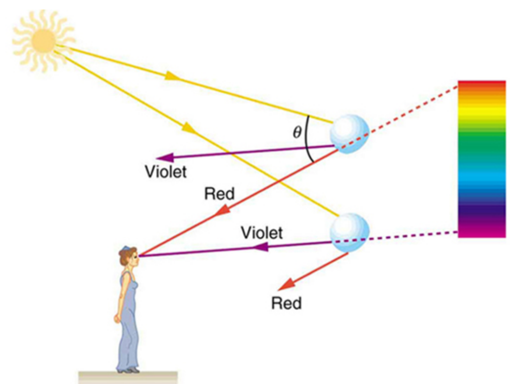
Rainbows are produced by a combination of refraction and reflection. You may have noticed that you see a rainbow only when you look away from the sun. Light enters a drop of water and is reflected from the back of the drop, as shown in [link]. The light is refracted both as it enters and as it leaves the drop. Since the index of refraction of water

varies with wavelength, the light is dispersed, and a rainbow is observed, as shown in [link] (a). (There is no dispersion caused by reflection at the back surface, since the law of reflection does not depend on wavelength.) The actual rainbow of colors seen by an observer depends on the myriad of rays being refracted and reflected toward the observer's eyes from numerous drops of water. The effect is most spectacular when the background is dark, as in stormy weather, but can also be observed in waterfalls and lawn sprinklers. The arc of a rainbow comes from the need to be looking at a specific angle relative to the direction of the sun, as illustrated in [link] (b). (If there are two reflections of light within the water drop, another "secondary" rainbow is produced. This rare event produces an arc that lies above the primary rainbow arc—see [link] (c).)

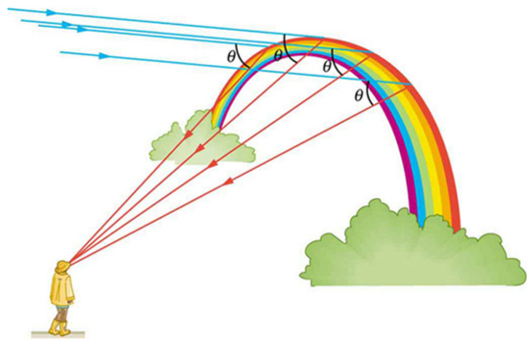
Note:
Rainbows
Rainbows are produced by a combination of refraction and reflection.



Part of the light falling on this water drop enters and is reflected from the back of the drop. This light is refracted and dispersed both as it enters and as it leaves the drop.



(a)



(b)

(c)

(a) Different colors emerge in different directions, and so you must look at different locations to see the various colors of a rainbow. (b) The arc of a rainbow results from the fact that a line between the observer and any point on the arc must make the correct angle with the parallel rays of sunlight to receive the refracted rays. (c)

Double rainbow. (credit: Nicholas, Wikimedia Commons)

Dispersion may produce beautiful rainbows, but it can cause problems in optical systems. White light used to transmit messages in a fiber is dispersed, spreading out in time and eventually overlapping with other messages. Since a laser produces a nearly pure wavelength, its light experiences little dispersion, an advantage over white light for transmission of information. In contrast, dispersion of electromagnetic waves coming to us from outer space can be used to determine the amount of matter they pass through. As with many phenomena, dispersion can be useful or a nuisance, depending on the situation and our human goals.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Geometric Optics
How does a lens form an image? See how light rays are refracted by a lens. Watch how the image changes when you adjust the focal length of the lens, move the object, move the lens, or move the screen.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/geometric-optics/geometric-optics_en.html

Section Summary

- The spreading of white light into its full spectrum of wavelengths is called dispersion.
- Rainbows are produced by a combination of refraction and reflection and involve the dispersion of sunlight into a continuous distribution of colors.
- Dispersion produces beautiful rainbows but also causes problems in certain optical systems.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the ratio of the speed of red light to violet light in diamond, based on [link]? (b) What is this ratio in polystyrene? (c) Which is more dispersive?

Exercise:

Problem:

A beam of white light goes from air into water at an incident angle of 75.0°. At what angles are the red (660 nm) and violet (410 nm) parts of the light refracted?

Solution:

46.5°, red; 46.0°, violet

Exercise:

Problem:

By how much do the critical angles for red (660 nm) and violet (410 nm) light differ in a diamond surrounded by air?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A narrow beam of light containing yellow (580 nm) and green (550 nm) wavelengths goes from polystyrene to air, striking the surface at a 30.0° incident angle. What is the angle between the colors when they emerge? (b) How far would they have to travel to be separated by 1.00 mm?

Solution:

(a) 0.043°

(b) 1.33 m

Exercise:

Problem:

A parallel beam of light containing orange (610 nm) and violet (410 nm) wavelengths goes from fused quartz to water, striking the surface between them at a 60.0° incident angle. What is the angle between the two colors in water?

Exercise:

Problem:

A ray of 610 nm light goes from air into fused quartz at an incident angle of 55.0°. At what incident angle must 470 nm light enter flint glass to have the same angle of refraction?

Solution:

71.3º

Exercise:

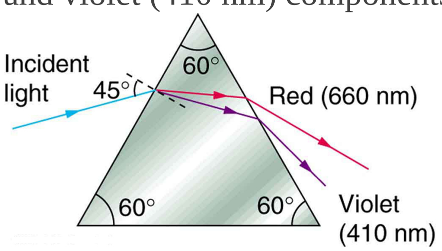
Problem:

A narrow beam of light containing red (660 nm) and blue (470 nm) wavelengths travels from air through a 1.00 cm thick flat piece of crown glass and back to air again. The beam strikes at a 30.0º incident angle. (a) At what angles do the two colors emerge? (b) By what distance are the red and blue separated when they emerge?

Exercise:

Problem:

A narrow beam of white light enters a prism made of crown glass at a 45.0º incident angle, as shown in [link]. At what angles, θ_R and θ_V, do the red (660 nm) and violet (410 nm) components of the light emerge from the prism?



This prism will disperse the white light into a rainbow of colors. The incident angle is 45.0º, and the angles at which the red and violet light emerge are θ_R and θ_V.

Solution:

53.5º, red; 55.2º, violet

Glossary

dispersion
: spreading of white light into its full spectrum of wavelengths

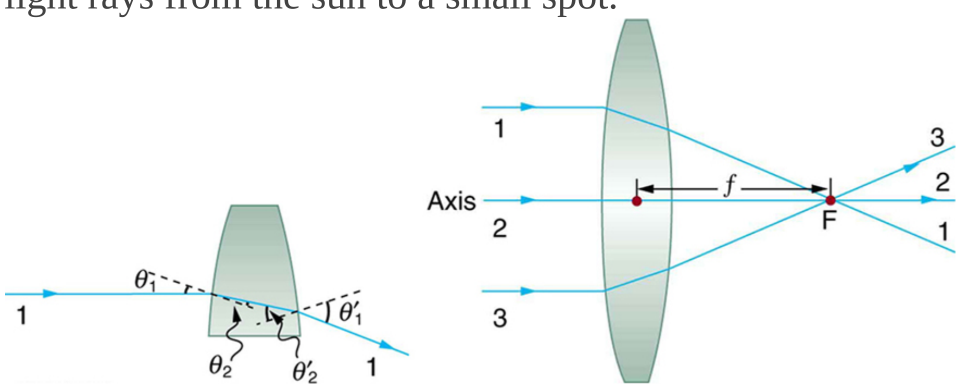
rainbow
: dispersion of sunlight into a continuous distribution of colors according to wavelength, produced by the refraction and reflection of sunlight by water droplets in the sky

Image Formation by Lenses

- List the rules for ray tracking for thin lenses.
- Illustrate the formation of images using the technique of ray tracking.
- Determine power of a lens given the focal length.

Lenses are found in a huge array of optical instruments, ranging from a simple magnifying glass to the eye to a camera's zoom lens. In this section, we will use the law of refraction to explore the properties of lenses and how they form images.

The word *lens* derives from the Latin word for a lentil bean, the shape of which is similar to the convex lens in [link]. The convex lens shown has been shaped so that all light rays that enter it parallel to its axis cross one another at a single point on the opposite side of the lens. (The axis is defined to be a line normal to the lens at its center, as shown in [link].) Such a lens is called a **converging (or convex) lens** for the converging effect it has on light rays. An expanded view of the path of one ray through the lens is shown, to illustrate how the ray changes direction both as it enters and as it leaves the lens. Since the index of refraction of the lens is greater than that of air, the ray moves towards the perpendicular as it enters and away from the perpendicular as it leaves. (This is in accordance with the law of refraction.) Due to the lens's shape, light is thus bent toward the axis at both surfaces. The point at which the rays cross is defined to be the **focal point** F of the lens. The distance from the center of the lens to its focal point is defined to be the **focal length** f of the lens. [link] shows how a converging lens, such as that in a magnifying glass, can converge the nearly parallel light rays from the sun to a small spot.



Rays of light entering a converging lens parallel to its axis converge at its focal point F. (Ray 2 lies on the axis of the lens.) The distance from the center of the lens to the focal point is the lens's focal length f. An expanded view of the path taken by ray 1 shows the perpendiculars and the angles of incidence and refraction at both surfaces.

Note:
Converging or Convex Lens
The lens in which light rays that enter it parallel to its axis cross one another at a single point on the opposite side with a converging effect is called converging lens.

Note:
Focal Point F
The point at which the light rays cross is called the focal point F of the lens.

Note:
Focal Length f
The distance from the center of the lens to its focal point is called focal length f.

Sunlight focused by a converging magnifying glass can burn paper. Light rays from the sun are nearly parallel and cross at the focal point of the lens. The more powerful the lens, the closer to the lens the rays will cross.

The greater effect a lens has on light rays, the more powerful it is said to be. For example, a powerful converging lens will focus parallel light rays closer to itself and will have a smaller focal length than a weak lens. The light will also focus into a smaller and more intense spot for a more powerful lens. The **power** P of a lens is defined to be the inverse of its focal length. In equation form, this is

Equation:

$$P = \frac{1}{f}.$$

Note:

Power P

The **power** P of a lens is defined to be the inverse of its focal length. In equation form, this is

Equation:

$$P = \frac{1}{f}.$$

where f is the focal length of the lens, which must be given in meters (and not cm or mm). The power of a lens P has the unit diopters (D), provided that the focal length is given in meters. That is, $1\ \text{D} = 1/\text{m}$, or $1\ \text{m}^{-1}$. (Note that this power (optical power, actually) is not the same as power in watts defined in Work, Energy, and Energy Resources. It is a concept related to the effect of optical devices on light.) Optometrists prescribe common spectacles and contact lenses in units of diopters.

Example:

What is the Power of a Common Magnifying Glass?

Suppose you take a magnifying glass out on a sunny day and you find that it concentrates sunlight to a small spot 8.00 cm away from the lens. What are the focal length and power of the lens?

Strategy

The situation here is the same as those shown in [link] and [link]. The Sun is so far away that the Sun's rays are nearly parallel when they reach Earth. The magnifying glass is a convex (or converging) lens, focusing the nearly parallel rays of sunlight. Thus the focal length of the lens is the distance from the lens to the spot, and its power is the inverse of this distance (in m).

Solution

The focal length of the lens is the distance from the center of the lens to the spot, given to be 8.00 cm. Thus,

Equation:

$$f = 8.00\ \text{cm}.$$

To find the power of the lens, we must first convert the focal length to meters; then, we substitute this value into the equation for power. This gives

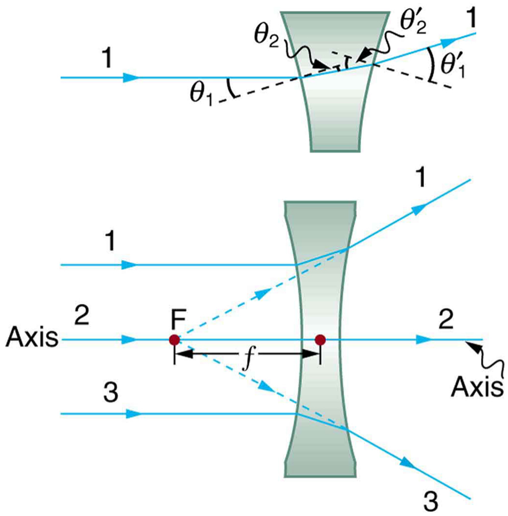
Equation:

$$P = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{0.0800\text{ m}} = 12.5\text{ D}.$$

Discussion

This is a relatively powerful lens. The power of a lens in diopters should not be confused with the familiar concept of power in watts. It is an unfortunate fact that the word "power" is used for two completely different concepts. If you examine a prescription for eyeglasses, you will note lens powers given in diopters. If you examine the label on a motor, you will note energy consumption rate given as a power in watts.

[link] shows a concave lens and the effect it has on rays of light that enter it parallel to its axis (the path taken by ray 2 in the figure is the axis of the lens). The concave lens is a **diverging lens**, because it causes the light rays to bend away (diverge) from its axis. In this case, the lens has been shaped so that all light rays entering it parallel to its axis appear to originate from the same point, F, defined to be the focal point of a diverging lens. The distance from the center of the lens to the focal point is again called the focal length f of the lens. Note that the focal length and power of a diverging lens are defined to be negative. For example, if the distance to F in [link] is 5.00 cm, then the focal length is $f = \text{–}5.00\text{ cm}$ and the power of the lens is $P = \text{–}20\text{ D}$. An expanded view of the path of one ray through the lens is shown in the figure to illustrate how the shape of the lens, together with the law of refraction, causes the ray to follow its particular path and be diverged.

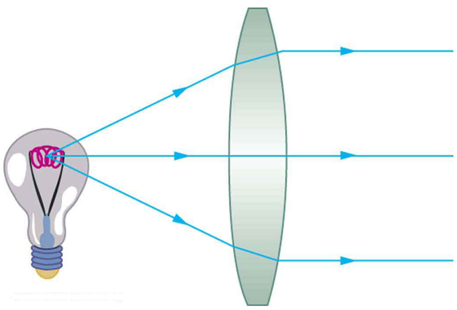


Rays of light entering a diverging lens parallel to its axis are diverged, and all appear to originate at its focal point F. The dashed lines are not rays—they indicate the directions from which the rays appear to come. The focal length f of a diverging lens is negative. An expanded view of the path taken by ray 1 shows the perpendiculars and the angles of incidence and refraction at both surfaces.

Note:
Diverging Lens

A lens that causes the light rays to bend away from its axis is called a diverging lens.

As noted in the initial discussion of the law of refraction in The Law of Refraction, the paths of light rays are exactly reversible. This means that the direction of the arrows could be reversed for all of the rays in [link] and [link]. For example, if a point light source is placed at the focal point of a convex lens, as shown in [link], parallel light rays emerge from the other side.



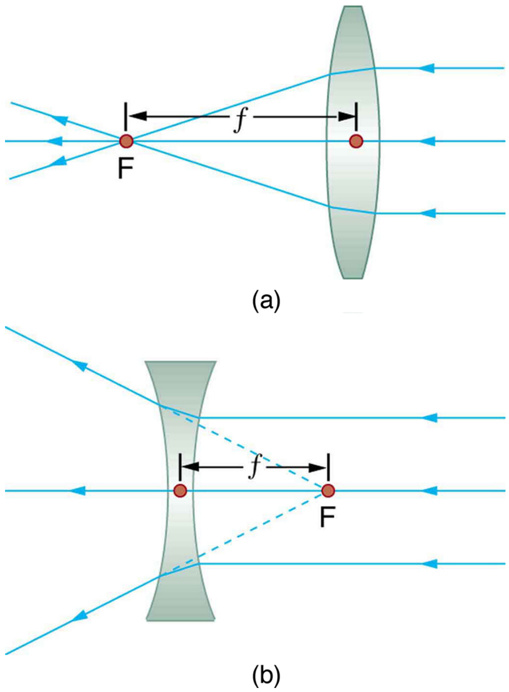
A small light source, like a light bulb filament, placed at the focal point of a convex lens, results in parallel rays of light emerging from the other side. The paths are exactly the reverse of those shown in [link]. This technique is used in lighthouses and sometimes in traffic lights to produce a directional beam of light from a source that emits light in all directions.

Ray Tracing and Thin Lenses

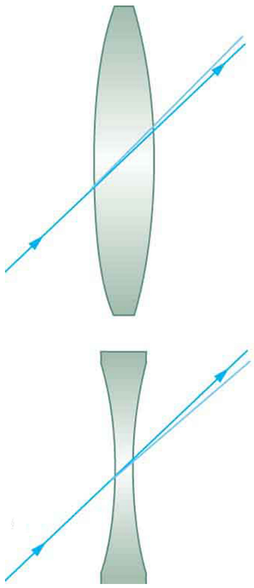
Ray tracing is the technique of determining or following (tracing) the paths that light rays take. For rays passing through matter, the law of refraction is used to trace the paths. Here we use ray tracing to help us understand the action of lenses in situations ranging from forming images on film to magnifying small print to correcting nearsightedness. While ray tracing for complicated lenses, such as those found in sophisticated cameras, may require computer techniques, there is a set of simple rules for tracing rays through thin lenses. A **thin lens** is defined to be one whose thickness allows rays to refract, as illustrated in [link], but does not allow properties such as dispersion and aberrations. An ideal thin lens has two refracting surfaces but the lens is thin enough to assume that light rays bend only once. A thin symmetrical lens has two focal points, one on either side and both at the same distance from the lens. (See [link].) Another important characteristic of a thin lens is that light rays through its center are deflected by a negligible amount, as seen in [link].

Note:
Thin Lens
A thin lens is defined to be one whose thickness allows rays to refract but does not allow properties such as dispersion and aberrations.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: A Visit to the Optician
Look through your eyeglasses (or those of a friend) backward and forward and comment on whether they act like thin lenses.



Thin lenses have the same focal length on either side. (a) Parallel light rays entering a converging lens from the right cross at its focal point on the left. (b) Parallel light rays entering a diverging lens from the right seem to come from the focal point on the right.



The light ray through the center of a thin lens is deflected by a negligible amount and is assumed to emerge parallel to its original path (shown as a shaded line).

Using paper, pencil, and a straight edge, ray tracing can accurately describe the operation of a lens. The rules for ray tracing for thin lenses are based on the illustrations already discussed:

1. A ray entering a converging lens parallel to its axis passes through the focal point F of the lens on the other side. (See rays 1 and 3 in [link].)
2. A ray entering a diverging lens parallel to its axis seems to come from the focal point F. (See rays 1 and 3 in [link].)
3. A ray passing through the center of either a converging or a diverging lens does not change direction. (See [link], and see ray 2 in [link] and [link].)
4. A ray entering a converging lens through its focal point exits parallel to its axis. (The reverse of rays 1 and 3 in [link].)
5. A ray that enters a diverging lens by heading toward the focal point on the opposite side exits parallel to the axis. (The reverse of rays 1 and 3 in [link].)

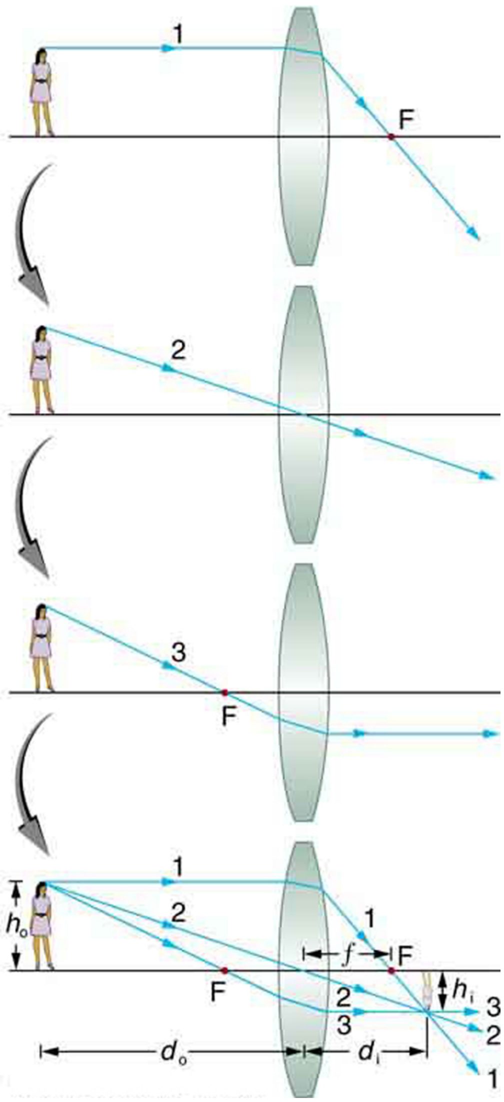
Note:
Rules for Ray Tracing

1. A ray entering a converging lens parallel to its axis passes through the focal point F of the lens on the other side.
2. A ray entering a diverging lens parallel to its axis seems to come from the focal point F.
3. A ray passing through the center of either a converging or a diverging lens does not change direction.
4. A ray entering a converging lens through its focal point exits parallel to its axis.
5. A ray that enters a diverging lens by heading toward the focal point on the opposite side exits parallel to the axis.

Image Formation by Thin Lenses

In some circumstances, a lens forms an obvious image, such as when a movie projector casts an image onto a screen. In other cases, the image is less obvious. Where, for example, is the image formed by eyeglasses? We will use ray tracing for thin lenses to illustrate how they form images, and we will develop equations to describe the image formation quantitatively.

Consider an object some distance away from a converging lens, as shown in [link]. To find the location and size of the image formed, we trace the paths of selected light rays originating from one point on the object, in this case the top of the person’s head. The figure shows three rays from the top of the object that can be traced using the ray tracing rules given above. (Rays leave this point going in many directions, but we concentrate on only a few with paths that are easy to trace.) The first ray is one that enters the lens parallel to its axis and passes through the focal point on the other side (rule 1). The second ray passes through the center of the lens without changing direction (rule 3). The third ray passes through the nearer focal point on its way into the lens and leaves the lens parallel to its axis (rule 4). The three rays cross at the same point on the other side of the lens. The image of the top of the person’s head is located at this point. All rays that come from the same point on the top of the person’s head are refracted in such a way as to cross at the point shown. Rays from another point on the object, such as her belt buckle, will also cross at another common point, forming a complete image, as shown. Although three rays are traced in [link], only two are necessary to locate the image. It is best to trace rays for which there are simple ray tracing rules. Before applying ray tracing to other situations, let us consider the example shown in [link] in more detail.

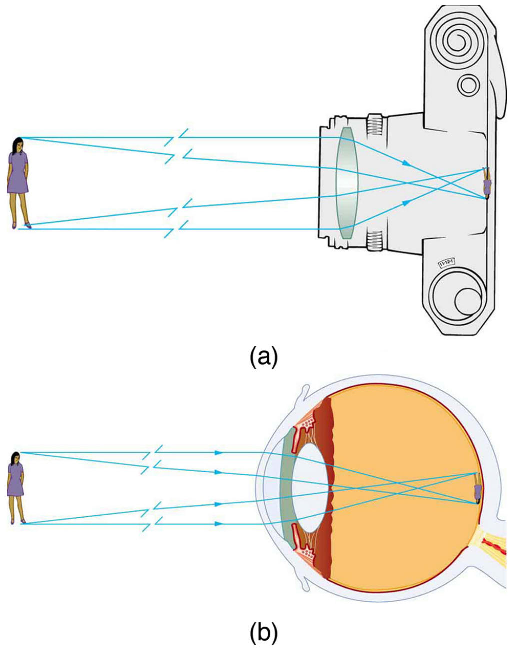


Ray tracing is used to locate the image formed by a lens. Rays originating from the same point on the object are traced—the three chosen rays each follow one of the rules for ray tracing, so that their paths are easy to determine. The image is located at the point where the rays

cross. In this case, a real image—one that can be projected on a screen—is formed.

The image formed in [link] is a **real image**, meaning that it can be projected. That is, light rays from one point on the object actually cross at the location of the image and can be projected onto a screen, a piece of film, or the retina of an eye, for example. [link] shows how such an image would be projected onto film by a camera lens. This figure also shows how a real image is projected onto the retina by the lens of an eye. Note that the image is there whether it is projected onto a screen or not.

Note:
Real Image
The image in which light rays from one point on the object actually cross at the location of the image and can be projected onto a screen, a piece of film, or the retina of an eye is called a real image.



Real images can be projected. (a) A real image of the person is projected onto film. (b) The converging nature of the multiple surfaces that make up the eye result in the projection of a real image on the retina.

Several important distances appear in [link]. We define d_o to be the object distance, the distance of an object from the center of a lens. **Image distance** d_i is defined to be the distance of the image from the center of a lens. The height of the object and height of the image are given the symbols h_o and h_i, respectively. Images that appear upright relative to the object have heights that are positive and those that are inverted have negative heights. Using the rules of ray tracing and making a scale drawing with paper and pencil, like that in [link], we can accurately describe the location and size of an image. But the real benefit of ray tracing is in visualizing how images are formed in a variety of situations. To obtain numerical information, we use a pair of

equations that can be derived from a geometric analysis of ray tracing for thin lenses. The **thin lens equations** are

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_{\text{o}}} + \frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}} = \frac{1}{f}$$

and

Equation:

$$\frac{h_{\text{i}}}{h_{\text{o}}} = -\frac{d_{\text{i}}}{d_{\text{o}}} = m.$$

We define the ratio of image height to object height ($h_{\text{i}}/h_{\text{o}}$) to be the **magnification** m. (The minus sign in the equation above will be discussed shortly.) The thin lens equations are broadly applicable to all situations involving thin lenses (and "thin" mirrors, as we will see later). We will explore many features of image formation in the following worked examples.

Note:
Image Distance
The distance of the image from the center of the lens is called image distance.

Note:
Thin Lens Equations and Magnification

Equation:

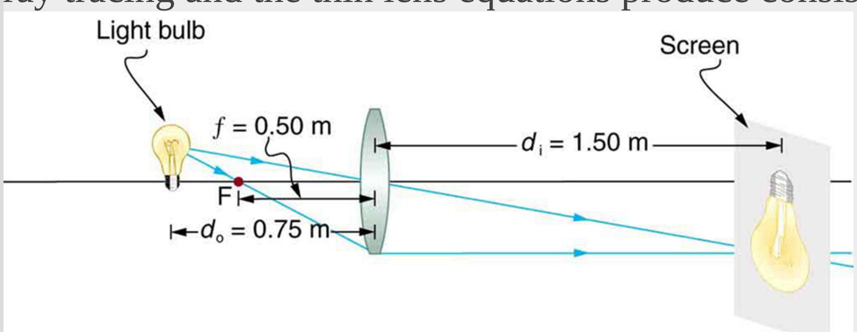
$$\frac{1}{d_{\text{o}}} + \frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}} = \frac{1}{f}$$

Equation:

$$\frac{h_{\mathrm{i}}}{h_{\mathrm{o}}} = -\frac{d_{\mathrm{i}}}{d_{\mathrm{o}}} = m$$

Example:
Finding the Image of a Light Bulb Filament by Ray Tracing and by the Thin Lens Equations

A clear glass light bulb is placed 0.750 m from a convex lens having a 0.500 m focal length, as shown in [link]. Use ray tracing to get an approximate location for the image. Then use the thin lens equations to calculate (a) the location of the image and (b) its magnification. Verify that ray tracing and the thin lens equations produce consistent results.



A light bulb placed 0.750 m from a lens having a 0.500 m focal length produces a real image on a poster board as discussed in the example above. Ray tracing predicts the image location and size.

Strategy and Concept

Since the object is placed farther away from a converging lens than the focal length of the lens, this situation is analogous to those illustrated in [link] and [link]. Ray tracing to scale should produce similar results for d_{i}. Numerical solutions for d_{i} and m can be obtained using the thin lens equations, noting that $d_{\mathrm{o}} = 0.750\ \mathrm{m}$ and $f = 0.500\ \mathrm{m}$.

Solutions (Ray tracing)

The ray tracing to scale in [link] shows two rays from a point on the bulb's filament crossing about 1.50 m on the far side of the lens. Thus the image distance d_i is about 1.50 m. Similarly, the image height based on ray tracing is greater than the object height by about a factor of 2, and the image is inverted. Thus m is about –2. The minus sign indicates that the image is inverted.

The thin lens equations can be used to find d_i from the given information:

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f}.$$

Rearranging to isolate d_i gives

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{d_o}.$$

Entering known quantities gives a value for $1/d_i$:

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{0.500\text{ m}} - \frac{1}{0.750\text{ m}} = \frac{0.667}{\text{m}}.$$

This must be inverted to find d_i:

Equation:

$$d_i = \frac{\text{m}}{0.667} = 1.50\text{ m}.$$

Note that another way to find d_i is to rearrange the equation:

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{d_o}.$$

This yields the equation for the image distance as:

Equation:

$$d_{\mathrm{i}} = \frac{fd_{\mathrm{o}}}{d_{\mathrm{o}} - f}.$$

Note that there is no inverting here.
The thin lens equations can be used to find the magnification m, since both d_{i} and d_{o} are known. Entering their values gives
Equation:

$$m = -\frac{d_{\mathrm{i}}}{d_{\mathrm{o}}} = -\frac{1.50 \text{ m}}{0.750 \text{ m}} = -2.00.$$

Discussion
Note that the minus sign causes the magnification to be negative when the image is inverted. Ray tracing and the use of the thin lens equations produce consistent results. The thin lens equations give the most precise results, being limited only by the accuracy of the given information. Ray tracing is limited by the accuracy with which you can draw, but it is highly useful both conceptually and visually.

Real images, such as the one considered in the previous example, are formed by converging lenses whenever an object is farther from the lens than its focal length. This is true for movie projectors, cameras, and the eye. We shall refer to these as *case 1* images. A case 1 image is formed when $d_{\mathrm{o}} > f$ and f is positive, as in [link](a). (A summary of the three cases or types of image formation appears at the end of this section.)

A different type of image is formed when an object, such as a person's face, is held close to a convex lens. The image is upright and larger than the object, as seen in [link](b), and so the lens is called a magnifier. If you slowly pull the magnifier away from the face, you will see that the magnification steadily increases until the image begins to blur. Pulling the magnifier even farther away produces an inverted image as seen in [link](a). The distance at which the image blurs, and beyond which it inverts, is the focal length of the lens. To use a convex lens as a magnifier, the object

must be closer to the converging lens than its focal length. This is called a *case 2* image. A case 2 image is formed when $d_o < f$ and f is positive.

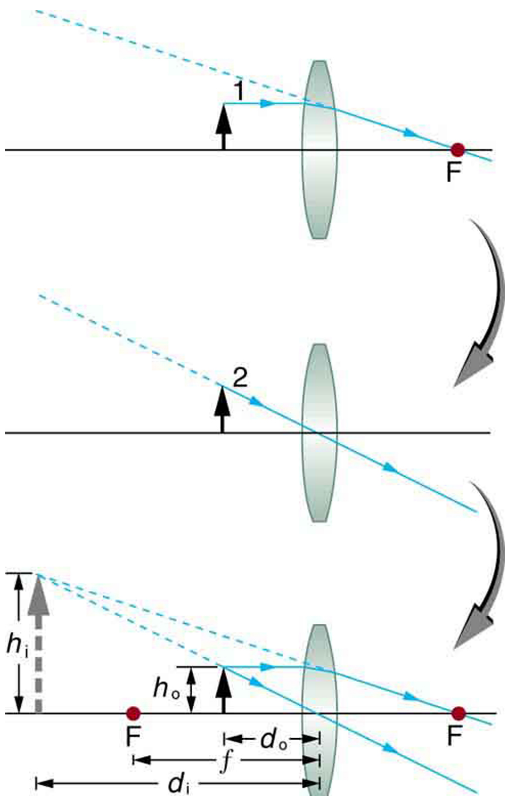
(a)

(b)

(a) When a converging lens is held farther away from the face than the lens's focal length, an inverted image is formed. This is a case 1 image. Note that the image is in focus but the face is not, because the image is much closer to the camera taking this photograph than the face. (credit: DaMongMan, Flickr) (b) A magnified image

of a face is produced by placing it closer to the converging lens than its focal length. This is a case 2 image. (credit: Casey Fleser, Flickr)

[link] uses ray tracing to show how an image is formed when an object is held closer to a converging lens than its focal length. Rays coming from a common point on the object continue to diverge after passing through the lens, but all appear to originate from a point at the location of the image. The image is on the same side of the lens as the object and is farther away from the lens than the object. This image, like all case 2 images, cannot be projected and, hence, is called a **virtual image**. Light rays only appear to originate at a virtual image; they do not actually pass through that location in space. A screen placed at the location of a virtual image will receive only diffuse light from the object, not focused rays from the lens. Additionally, a screen placed on the opposite side of the lens will receive rays that are still diverging, and so no image will be projected on it. We can see the magnified image with our eyes, because the lens of the eye converges the rays into a real image projected on our retina. Finally, we note that a virtual image is upright and larger than the object, meaning that the magnification is positive and greater than 1.



Ray tracing predicts the image location and size for an object held closer to a converging lens than its focal length. Ray 1 enters parallel to the axis and exits through the focal point on the opposite side, while ray 2 passes through the center of the lens without changing path. The two rays continue to diverge on the other side of the lens, but both appear to come from a common point, locating the upright, magnified,

virtual image. This is a case 2 image.

Note:
Virtual Image
An image that is on the same side of the lens as the object and cannot be projected on a screen is called a virtual image.

Example:
Image Produced by a Magnifying Glass
Suppose the book page in [link] (a) is held 7.50 cm from a convex lens of focal length 10.0 cm, such as a typical magnifying glass might have. What magnification is produced?
Strategy and Concept
We are given that $d_o = 7.50 \text{ cm}$ and $f = 10.0 \text{ cm}$, so we have a situation where the object is placed closer to the lens than its focal length. We therefore expect to get a case 2 virtual image with a positive magnification that is greater than 1. Ray tracing produces an image like that shown in [link], but we will use the thin lens equations to get numerical solutions in this example.
Solution
To find the magnification m, we try to use magnification equation, $m = -d_i/d_o$. We do not have a value for d_i, so that we must first find the location of the image using lens equation. (The procedure is the same as followed in the preceding example, where d_o and f were known.) Rearranging the magnification equation to isolate d_i gives
Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{d_o}.$$

Entering known values, we obtain a value for $1/d_i$:
Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}} = \frac{1}{10.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{7.50\text{ cm}} = \frac{-0.0333}{\text{cm}}.$$

This must be inverted to find d_{i}:

Equation:

$$d_{\text{i}} = -\frac{\text{cm}}{0.0333} = -30.0\text{ cm}.$$

Now the thin lens equation can be used to find the magnification m, since both d_{i} and d_{o} are known. Entering their values gives

Equation:

$$m = -\frac{d_{\text{i}}}{d_{\text{o}}} = -\frac{-30.0\text{ cm}}{7.50\text{ cm}} = 4.00.$$

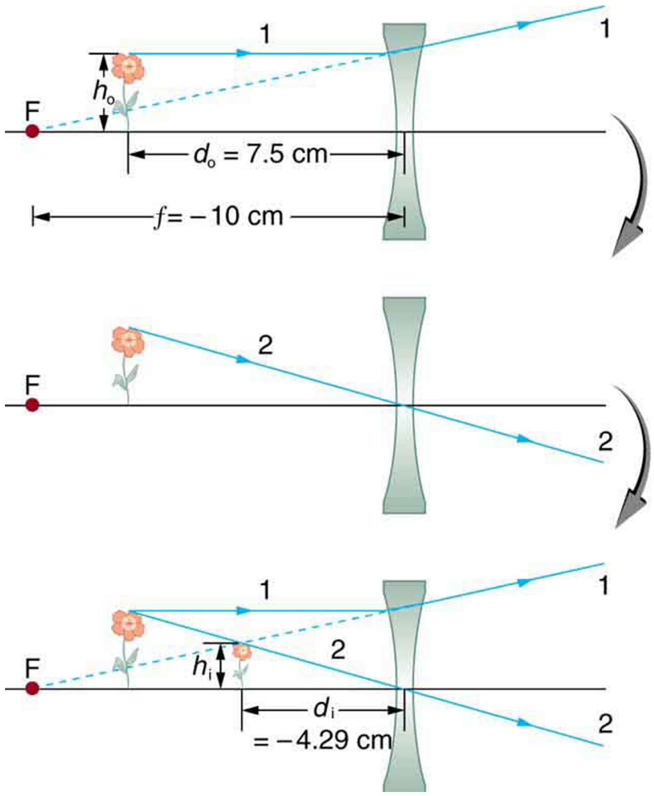
Discussion

A number of results in this example are true of all case 2 images, as well as being consistent with [link]. Magnification is indeed positive (as predicted), meaning the image is upright. The magnification is also greater than 1, meaning that the image is larger than the object—in this case, by a factor of 4. Note that the image distance is negative. This means the image is on the same side of the lens as the object. Thus the image cannot be projected and is virtual. (Negative values of d_{i} occur for virtual images.) The image is farther from the lens than the object, since the image distance is greater in magnitude than the object distance. The location of the image is not obvious when you look through a magnifier. In fact, since the image is bigger than the object, you may think the image is closer than the object. But the image is farther away, a fact that is useful in correcting farsightedness, as we shall see in a later section.

A third type of image is formed by a diverging or concave lens. Try looking through eyeglasses meant to correct nearsightedness. (See [link].) You will see an image that is upright but smaller than the object. This means that the magnification is positive but less than 1. The ray diagram in [link] shows that the image is on the same side of the lens as the object and, hence,

cannot be projected—it is a virtual image. Note that the image is closer to the lens than the object. This is a *case 3* image, formed for any object by a negative focal length or diverging lens.

A car viewed through a concave or diverging lens looks upright. This is a case 3 image. (credit: Daniel Oines, Flickr)



Ray tracing predicts the image location and size for a concave or diverging lens. Ray 1 enters parallel to the axis and is bent so that it appears to originate from the focal point. Ray 2 passes through the center of the lens without changing path. The two rays appear to come from a common point, locating the upright image. This is a case 3 image, which is closer to the lens than the object and smaller in height.

Example:

Image Produced by a Concave Lens

Suppose an object such as a book page is held 7.50 cm from a concave lens of focal length –10.0 cm. Such a lens could be used in eyeglasses to correct pronounced nearsightedness. What magnification is produced?

Strategy and Concept

This example is identical to the preceding one, except that the focal length is negative for a concave or diverging lens. The method of solution is thus the same, but the results are different in important ways.

Solution

To find the magnification m, we must first find the image distance d_{i} using thin lens equation

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{d_{\text{o}}},$$

or its alternative rearrangement

Equation:

$$d_i = \frac{fd_{\text{o}}}{d_{\text{o}} - f}.$$

We are given that $f = –10.0$ cm and $d_{\text{o}} = 7.50$ cm. Entering these yields a value for $1/d_{\text{i}}$:

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}} = \frac{1}{-10.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{7.50\text{ cm}} = \frac{-0.2333}{\text{cm}}.$$

This must be inverted to find d_{i}:

Equation:

$$d_{\text{i}} = -\frac{\text{cm}}{0.2333} = -4.29\text{ cm}.$$

Or

Equation:

$$d_i = \frac{(7.5)(-10)}{(7.5-(-10))} = -75/17.5 = -4.29\text{ cm}.$$

Now the magnification equation can be used to find the magnification m, since both d_i and d_o are known. Entering their values gives

Equation:

$$m = -\frac{d_i}{d_o} = -\frac{-4.29\text{ cm}}{7.50\text{ cm}} = 0.571.$$

Discussion

A number of results in this example are true of all case 3 images, as well as being consistent with [link]. Magnification is positive (as predicted), meaning the image is upright. The magnification is also less than 1, meaning the image is smaller than the object—in this case, a little over half its size. The image distance is negative, meaning the image is on the same side of the lens as the object. (The image is virtual.) The image is closer to the lens than the object, since the image distance is smaller in magnitude than the object distance. The location of the image is not obvious when you look through a concave lens. In fact, since the image is smaller than the object, you may think it is farther away. But the image is closer than the object, a fact that is useful in correcting nearsightedness, as we shall see in a later section.

[link] summarizes the three types of images formed by single thin lenses. These are referred to as case 1, 2, and 3 images. Convex (converging) lenses can form either real or virtual images (cases 1 and 2, respectively), whereas concave (diverging) lenses can form only virtual images (always case 3). Real images are always inverted, but they can be either larger or smaller than the object. For example, a slide projector forms an image larger than the slide, whereas a camera makes an image smaller than the object being photographed. Virtual images are always upright and cannot be projected. Virtual images are larger than the object only in case 2, where a convex lens is used. The virtual image produced by a concave lens is

always smaller than the object—a case 3 image. We can see and photograph virtual images only by using an additional lens to form a real image.

Type	**Formed when**	**Image type**	d_i	m
Case 1	f positive, $d_o > f$	real	positive	negative
Case 2	f positive, $d_o < f$	virtual	negative	positive $m > 1$
Case 3	f negative	virtual	negative	positive $m < 1$

Three Types of Images Formed By Thin Lenses

In Image Formation by Mirrors, we shall see that mirrors can form exactly the same types of images as lenses.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment: Concentrating Sunlight

Find several lenses and determine whether they are converging or diverging. In general those that are thicker near the edges are diverging and those that are thicker near the center are converging. On a bright sunny day take the converging lenses outside and try focusing the sunlight onto a piece of paper. Determine the focal lengths of the lenses. Be careful because the paper may start to burn, depending on the type of lens you have selected.

Problem-Solving Strategies for Lenses

Step 1. Examine the situation to determine that image formation by a lens is involved.

Step 2. Determine whether ray tracing, the thin lens equations, or both are to be employed. A sketch is very useful even if ray tracing is not specifically required by the problem. Write symbols and values on the sketch.

Step 3. Identify exactly what needs to be determined in the problem (identify the unknowns).

Step 4. Make alist of what is given or can be inferred from the problem as stated (identify the knowns). It is helpful to determine whether the situation involves a case 1, 2, or 3 image. While these are just names for types of images, they have certain characteristics (given in [link]) that can be of great use in solving problems.

Step 5. If ray tracing is required, use the ray tracing rules listed near the beginning of this section.

Step 6. Most quantitative problems require the use of the thin lens equations. These are solved in the usual manner by substituting knowns and solving for unknowns. Several worked examples serve as guides.

Step 7. Check to see if the answer is reasonable: Does it make sense? If you have identified the type of image (case 1, 2, or 3), you should assess whether your answer is consistent with the type of image, magnification, and so on.

Note:
Misconception Alert
We do not realize that light rays are coming from every part of the object, passing through every part of the lens, and all can be used to form the final image.
We generally feel the entire lens, or mirror, is needed to form an image. Actually, half a lens will form the same, though a fainter, image.

Section Summary

- Light rays entering a converging lens parallel to its axis cross one another at a single point on the opposite side.
- For a converging lens, the focal point is the point at which converging light rays cross; for a diverging lens, the focal point is the point from which diverging light rays appear to originate.
- The distance from the center of the lens to its focal point is called the focal length f.
- Power P of a lens is defined to be the inverse of its focal length, $P = \frac{1}{f}$.
- A lens that causes the light rays to bend away from its axis is called a diverging lens.
- Ray tracing is the technique of graphically determining the paths that light rays take.
- The image in which light rays from one point on the object actually cross at the location of the image and can be projected onto a screen, a piece of film, or the retina of an eye is called a real image.
- Thin lens equations are $\frac{1}{d_\mathrm{o}} + \frac{1}{d_\mathrm{i}} = \frac{1}{f}$ and $\frac{h_\mathrm{i}}{h_\mathrm{o}} = -\frac{d_\mathrm{i}}{d_\mathrm{o}} = m$ (magnification).

- The distance of the image from the center of the lens is called image distance.
- An image that is on the same side of the lens as the object and cannot be projected on a screen is called a virtual image.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

It can be argued that a flat piece of glass, such as in a window, is like a lens with an infinite focal length. If so, where does it form an image? That is, how are d_i and d_o related?

Exercise:

Problem:

You can often see a reflection when looking at a sheet of glass, particularly if it is darker on the other side. Explain why you can often see a double image in such circumstances.

Exercise:

Problem:

When you focus a camera, you adjust the distance of the lens from the film. If the camera lens acts like a thin lens, why can it not be a fixed distance from the film for both near and distant objects?

Exercise:

Problem:

A thin lens has two focal points, one on either side, at equal distances from its center, and should behave the same for light entering from either side. Look through your eyeglasses (or those of a friend) backward and forward and comment on whether they are thin lenses.

Exercise:

Problem:

Will the focal length of a lens change when it is submerged in water? Explain.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the power in diopters of a camera lens that has a 50.0 mm focal length?

Exercise:

Problem:

Your camera's zoom lens has an adjustable focal length ranging from 80.0 to 200 mm. What is its range of powers?

Solution:

$5.00 \text{ to } 12.5 \text{ D}$

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the focal length of 1.75 D reading glasses found on the rack in a pharmacy?

Exercise:

Problem:

You note that your prescription for new eyeglasses is –4.50 D. What will their focal length be?

Solution:

-0.222 m

Exercise:

Problem:

How far from the lens must the film in a camera be, if the lens has a 35.0 mm focal length and is being used to photograph a flower 75.0 cm away? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for lenses.

Exercise:

Problem:

A certain slide projector has a 100 mm focal length lens. (a) How far away is the screen, if a slide is placed 103 mm from the lens and produces a sharp image? (b) If the slide is 24.0 by 36.0 mm, what are the dimensions of the image? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for lenses.

Solution:

(a) 3.43 m

(b) 0.800 by 1.20 m

Exercise:

Problem:

A doctor examines a mole with a 15.0 cm focal length magnifying glass held 13.5 cm from the mole (a) Where is the image? (b) What is its magnification? (c) How big is the image of a 5.00 mm diameter mole?

Solution:

(a) -1.35 m (on the object side of the lens).

(b) $+10.0$

(c) 5.00 cm

Exercise:

Problem:

How far from a piece of paper must you hold your father’s 2.25 D reading glasses to try to burn a hole in the paper with sunlight?

Solution:

44.4 cm

Exercise:

Problem:

A camera with a 50.0 mm focal length lens is being used to photograph a person standing 3.00 m away. (a) How far from the lens must the film be? (b) If the film is 36.0 mm high, what fraction of a 1.75 m tall person will fit on it? (c) Discuss how reasonable this seems, based on your experience in taking or posing for photographs.

Exercise:

Problem:

A camera lens used for taking close-up photographs has a focal length of 22.0 mm. The farthest it can be placed from the film is 33.0 mm. (a) What is the closest object that can be photographed? (b) What is the magnification of this closest object?

Solution:

(a) 6.60 cm

(b) –0.333

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose your 50.0 mm focal length camera lens is 51.0 mm away from the film in the camera. (a) How far away is an object that is in focus? (b) What is the height of the object if its image is 2.00 cm high?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the focal length of a magnifying glass that produces a magnification of 3.00 when held 5.00 cm from an object, such as a rare coin? (b) Calculate the power of the magnifier in diopters. (c) Discuss how this power compares to those for store-bought reading glasses (typically 1.0 to 4.0 D). Is the magnifier's power greater, and should it be?

Solution:

(a) $+7.50\text{ cm}$

(b) 13.3 D

(c) Much greater

Exercise:

Problem:

What magnification will be produced by a lens of power –4.00 D (such as might be used to correct myopia) if an object is held 25.0 cm away?

Exercise:

Problem:

In [link], the magnification of a book held 7.50 cm from a 10.0 cm focal length lens was found to be 3.00. (a) Find the magnification for the book when it is held 8.50 cm from the magnifier. (b) Do the same for when it is held 9.50 cm from the magnifier. (c) Comment on the trend in m as the object distance increases as in these two calculations.

Solution:

(a) +6.67

(b) +20.0

(c) The magnification increases without limit (to infinity) as the object distance increases to the limit of the focal distance.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a 200 mm focal length telephoto lens is being used to photograph mountains 10.0 km away. (a) Where is the image? (b) What is the height of the image of a 1000 m high cliff on one of the mountains?

Exercise:

Problem:

A camera with a 100 mm focal length lens is used to photograph the sun and moon. What is the height of the image of the sun on the film, given the sun is 1.40×10^6 km in diameter and is 1.50×10^8 km away?

Solution:

-0.933 mm

Exercise:

Problem:

Combine thin lens equations to show that the magnification for a thin lens is determined by its focal length and the object distance and is given by $m = f/(f - d_\text{o})$.

Glossary

converging lens
: a convex lens in which light rays that enter it parallel to its axis converge at a single point on the opposite side

diverging lens
: a concave lens in which light rays that enter it parallel to its axis bend away (diverge) from its axis

focal point
: for a converging lens or mirror, the point at which converging light rays cross; for a diverging lens or mirror, the point from which diverging light rays appear to originate

focal length
: distance from the center of a lens or curved mirror to its focal point

magnification
: ratio of image height to object height

power
: inverse of focal length

real image
: image that can be projected

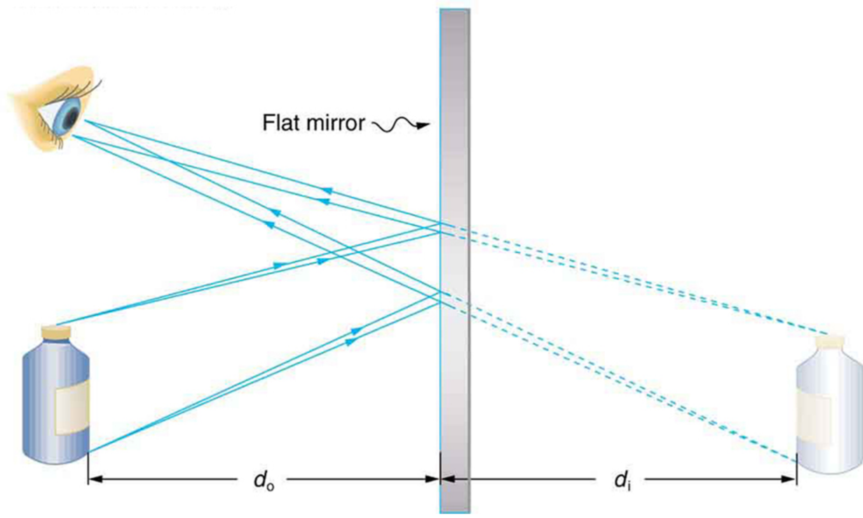
virtual image
: image that cannot be projected

Image Formation by Mirrors

- Illustrate image formation in a flat mirror.
- Explain with ray diagrams the formation of an image using spherical mirrors.
- Determine focal length and magnification given radius of curvature, distance of object and image.

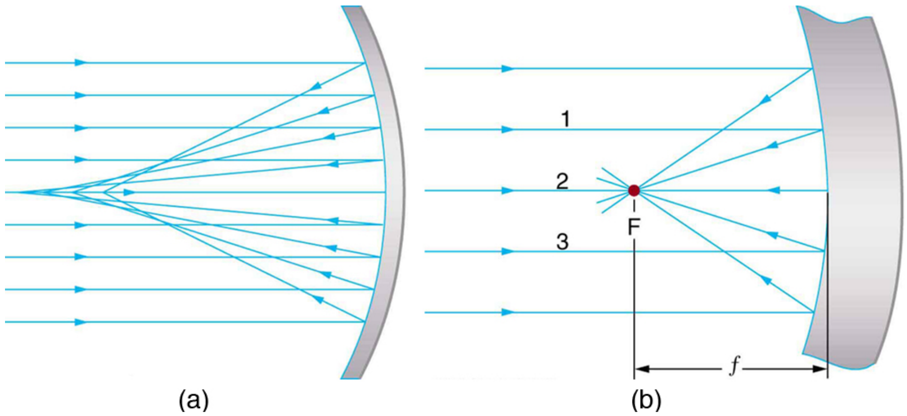
We only have to look as far as the nearest bathroom to find an example of an image formed by a mirror. Images in flat mirrors are the same size as the object and are located behind the mirror. Like lenses, mirrors can form a variety of images. For example, dental mirrors may produce a magnified image, just as makeup mirrors do. Security mirrors in shops, on the other hand, form images that are smaller than the object. We will use the law of reflection to understand how mirrors form images, and we will find that mirror images are analogous to those formed by lenses.

[link] helps illustrate how a flat mirror forms an image. Two rays are shown emerging from the same point, striking the mirror, and being reflected into the observer's eye. The rays can diverge slightly, and both still get into the eye. If the rays are extrapolated backward, they seem to originate from a common point behind the mirror, locating the image. (The paths of the reflected rays into the eye are the same as if they had come directly from that point behind the mirror.) Using the law of reflection—the angle of reflection equals the angle of incidence—we can see that the image and object are the same distance from the mirror. This is a virtual image, since it cannot be projected—the rays only appear to originate from a common point behind the mirror. Obviously, if you walk behind the mirror, you cannot see the image, since the rays do not go there. But in front of the mirror, the rays behave exactly as if they had come from behind the mirror, so that is where the image is situated.



Two sets of rays from common points on an object are reflected by a flat mirror into the eye of an observer. The reflected rays seem to originate from behind the mirror, locating the virtual image.

Now let us consider the focal length of a mirror—for example, the concave spherical mirrors in [link]. Rays of light that strike the surface follow the law of reflection. For a mirror that is large compared with its radius of curvature, as in [link](a), we see that the reflected rays do not cross at the same point, and the mirror does not have a well-defined focal point. If the mirror had the shape of a parabola, the rays would all cross at a single point, and the mirror would have a well-defined focal point. But parabolic mirrors are much more expensive to make than spherical mirrors. The solution is to use a mirror that is small compared with its radius of curvature, as shown in [link](b). (This is the mirror equivalent of the thin lens approximation.) To a very good approximation, this mirror has a well-defined focal point at F that is the focal distance f from the center of the mirror. The focal length f of a concave mirror is positive, since it is a converging mirror.



(a) Parallel rays reflected from a large spherical mirror do not all cross at a common point. (b) If a spherical mirror is small compared with its radius of curvature, parallel rays are focused to a common point. The distance of the focal point from the center of the mirror is its focal length f. Since this mirror is converging, it has a positive focal length.

Just as for lenses, the shorter the focal length, the more powerful the mirror; thus, $P = 1/f$ for a mirror, too. A more strongly curved mirror has a shorter focal length and a greater power. Using the law of reflection and some simple trigonometry, it can be shown that the focal length is half the radius of curvature, or

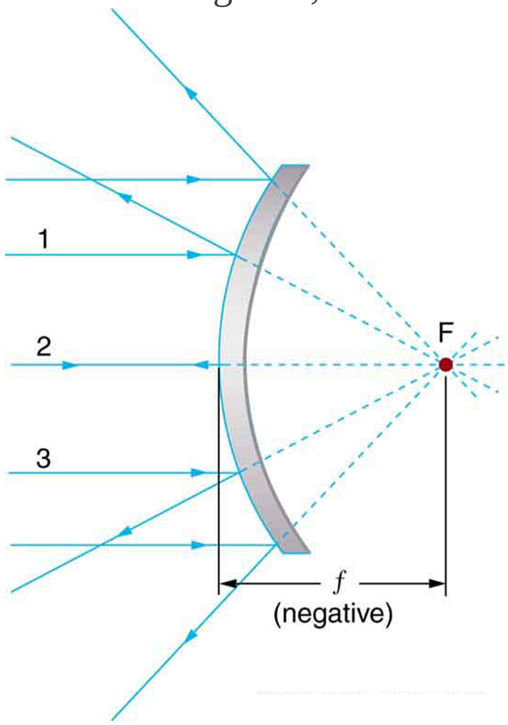
Equation:

$$f = \frac{R}{2},$$

where R is the radius of curvature of a spherical mirror. The smaller the radius of curvature, the smaller the focal length and, thus, the more powerful the mirror.

The convex mirror shown in [link] also has a focal point. Parallel rays of light reflected from the mirror seem to originate from the point F at the

focal distance f behind the mirror. The focal length and power of a convex mirror are negative, since it is a diverging mirror.



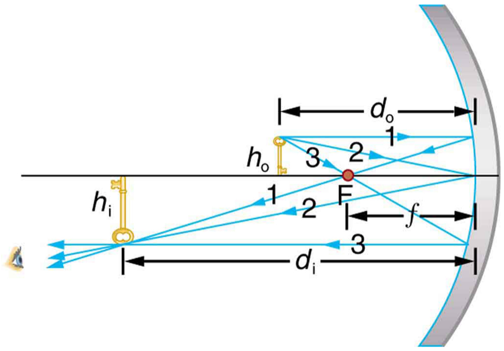
Parallel rays of light reflected from a convex spherical mirror (small in size compared with its radius of curvature) seem to originate from a well-defined focal point at the focal distance f behind the mirror. Convex mirrors diverge light rays and, thus, have a negative focal length.

Ray tracing is as useful for mirrors as for lenses. The rules for ray tracing for mirrors are based on the illustrations just discussed:

1. A ray approaching a concave converging mirror parallel to its axis is reflected through the focal point F of the mirror on the same side. (See rays 1 and 3 in [link](b).)
2. A ray approaching a convex diverging mirror parallel to its axis is reflected so that it seems to come from the focal point F behind the mirror. (See rays 1 and 3 in [link].)
3. Any ray striking the center of a mirror is followed by applying the law of reflection; it makes the same angle with the axis when leaving as when approaching. (See ray 2 in [link].)
4. A ray approaching a concave converging mirror through its focal point is reflected parallel to its axis. (The reverse of rays 1 and 3 in [link].)
5. A ray approaching a convex diverging mirror by heading toward its focal point on the opposite side is reflected parallel to the axis. (The reverse of rays 1 and 3 in [link].)

We will use ray tracing to illustrate how images are formed by mirrors, and we can use ray tracing quantitatively to obtain numerical information. But since we assume each mirror is small compared with its radius of curvature, we can use the thin lens equations for mirrors just as we did for lenses.

Consider the situation shown in [link], concave spherical mirror reflection, in which an object is placed farther from a concave (converging) mirror than its focal length. That is, f is positive and $d_o > f$, so that we may expect an image similar to the case 1 real image formed by a converging lens. Ray tracing in [link] shows that the rays from a common point on the object all cross at a point on the same side of the mirror as the object. Thus a real image can be projected onto a screen placed at this location. The image distance is positive, and the image is inverted, so its magnification is negative. This is a *case 1 image for mirrors*. It differs from the case 1 image for lenses only in that the image is on the same side of the mirror as the object. It is otherwise identical.



A case 1 image for a mirror. An object is farther from the converging mirror than its focal length. Rays from a common point on the object are traced using the rules in the text. Ray 1 approaches parallel to the axis, ray 2 strikes the center of the mirror, and ray 3 goes through the focal point on the way toward the mirror. All three rays cross at the same point after being reflected, locating the inverted real image. Although three rays are shown, only two of the three are needed to locate the image and determine its height.

Example:

A Concave Reflector

Electric room heaters use a concave mirror to reflect infrared (IR) radiation from hot coils. Note that IR follows the same law of reflection as visible light. Given that the mirror has a radius of curvature of 50.0 cm and produces an image of the coils 3.00 m away from the mirror, where are the coils?

Strategy and Concept

We are given that the concave mirror projects a real image of the coils at an image distance $d_{\text{i}} = 3.00\ \text{m}$. The coils are the object, and we are asked to find their location—that is, to find the object distance d_{o}. We are also given the radius of curvature of the mirror, so that its focal length is $f = R/2 = 25.0\ \text{cm}$ (positive since the mirror is concave or converging). Assuming the mirror is small compared with its radius of curvature, we can use the thin lens equations, to solve this problem.

Solution

Since d_{i} and f are known, thin lens equation can be used to find d_{o}:

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_{\text{o}}} + \frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}} = \frac{1}{f}.$$

Rearranging to isolate d_{o} gives

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_{\text{o}}} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}}.$$

Entering known quantities gives a value for $1/d_{\text{o}}$:

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_{\text{o}}} = \frac{1}{0.250\ \text{m}} - \frac{1}{3.00\ \text{m}} = \frac{3.667}{\text{m}}.$$

This must be inverted to find d_{o}:

Equation:

$$d_{\text{o}} = \frac{1\ \text{m}}{3.667} = 27.3\ \text{cm}.$$

Discussion

Note that the object (the filament) is farther from the mirror than the mirror's focal length. This is a case 1 image ($d_o > f$ and f positive), consistent with the fact that a real image is formed. You will get the most concentrated thermal energy directly in front of the mirror and 3.00 m away from it. Generally, this is not desirable, since it could cause burns. Usually, you want the rays to emerge parallel, and this is accomplished by having the filament at the focal point of the mirror.

Note that the filament here is not much farther from the mirror than its focal length and that the image produced is considerably farther away. This is exactly analogous to a slide projector. Placing a slide only slightly farther away from the projector lens than its focal length produces an image significantly farther away. As the object gets closer to the focal distance, the image gets farther away. In fact, as the object distance approaches the focal length, the image distance approaches infinity and the rays are sent out parallel to one another.

Example:
Solar Electric Generating System

One of the solar technologies used today for generating electricity is a device (called a parabolic trough or concentrating collector) that concentrates the sunlight onto a blackened pipe that contains a fluid. This heated fluid is pumped to a heat exchanger, where its heat energy is transferred to another system that is used to generate steam—and so generate electricity through a conventional steam cycle. [link] shows such a working system in southern California. Concave mirrors are used to concentrate the sunlight onto the pipe. The mirror has the approximate shape of a section of a cylinder. For the problem, assume that the mirror is exactly one-quarter of a full cylinder.

a. If we wish to place the fluid-carrying pipe 40.0 cm from the concave mirror at the mirror's focal point, what will be the radius of curvature of the mirror?
b. Per meter of pipe, what will be the amount of sunlight concentrated onto the pipe, assuming the insolation (incident solar radiation) is

$0.900\ \mathrm{kW/m^2}$?

c. If the fluid-carrying pipe has a 2.00-cm diameter, what will be the temperature increase of the fluid per meter of pipe over a period of one minute? Assume all the solar radiation incident on the reflector is absorbed by the pipe, and that the fluid is mineral oil.

Strategy

To solve an *Integrated Concept Problem* we must first identify the physical principles involved. Part (a) is related to the current topic. Part (b) involves a little math, primarily geometry. Part (c) requires an understanding of heat and density.

Solution to (a)

To a good approximation for a concave or semi-spherical surface, the point where the parallel rays from the sun converge will be at the focal point, so $R = 2f = 80.0$ cm.

Solution to (b)

The insolation is $900\ \mathrm{W/m^2}$. We must find the cross-sectional area A of the concave mirror, since the power delivered is $900\ \mathrm{W/m^2} \times \mathrm{A}$. The mirror in this case is a quarter-section of a cylinder, so the area for a length L of the mirror is $\mathrm{A} = \frac{1}{4}(2\pi R)\mathrm{L}$. The area for a length of 1.00 m is then

Equation:

$$\mathrm{A} = \frac{\pi}{2}R(1.00\ \mathrm{m}) = \frac{(3.14)}{2}(0.800\ \mathrm{m})(1.00\ \mathrm{m}) = 1.26\ \mathrm{m}^2.$$

The insolation on the 1.00-m length of pipe is then

Equation:

$$\left(9.00 \times 10^2 \frac{\mathrm{W}}{\mathrm{m}^2}\right)\left(1.26\ \mathrm{m}^2\right) = 1130\ \mathrm{W}.$$

Solution to (c)

The increase in temperature is given by $Q = mc\Delta T$. The mass m of the mineral oil in the one-meter section of pipe is

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} m & = & \rho \text{V} = \rho\pi\left(\frac{d}{2}\right)^2 (1.00 \text{ m}) \\ & = & \left(8.00 \times 10^2 \text{ kg/m}^3\right)(3.14)(0.0100 \text{ m})^2 (1.00 \text{ m}) \\ & = & 0.251 \text{ kg.} \end{array}$$

Therefore, the increase in temperature in one minute is

Equation:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \Delta T & = & Q/mc \\ & = & \frac{(1130 \text{ W})(60.0 \text{ s})}{(0.251 \text{ kg})(1670 \text{ J}\cdot\text{kg/ºC})} \\ & = & 162\text{ºC.} \end{array}$$

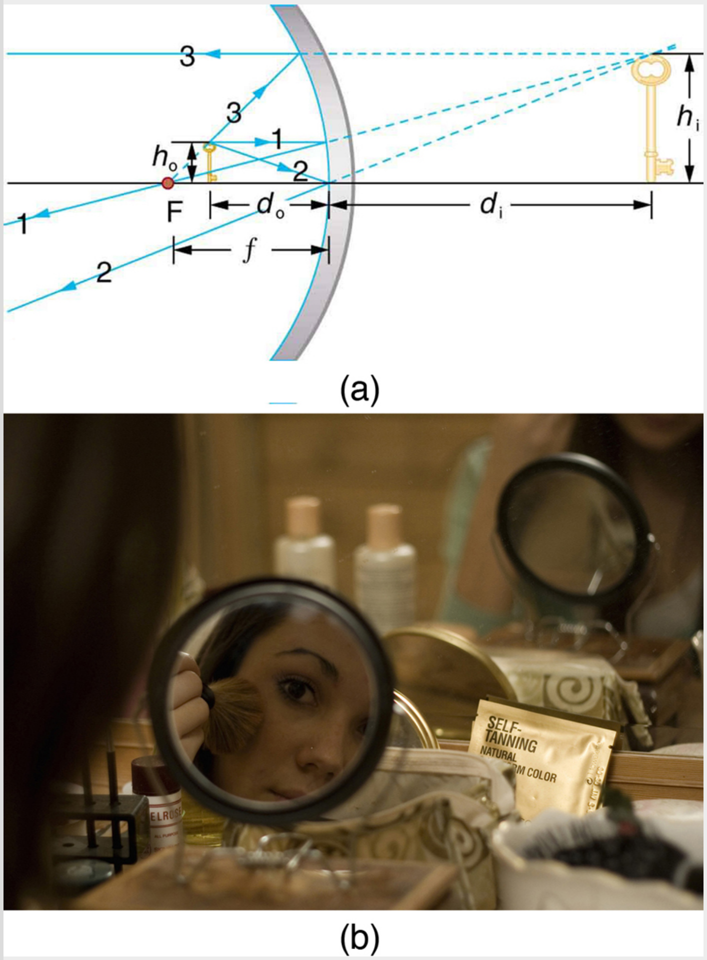
Discussion for (c)

An array of such pipes in the California desert can provide a thermal output of 250 MW on a sunny day, with fluids reaching temperatures as high as 400ºC. We are considering only one meter of pipe here, and ignoring heat losses along the pipe.

Parabolic trough collectors are used to generate electricity in southern California. (credit: kjkolb, Wikimedia Commons)

What happens if an object is closer to a concave mirror than its focal length? This is analogous to a case 2 image for lenses ($d_o < f$ and f positive), which is a magnifier. In fact, this is how makeup mirrors act as magnifiers. [link](a) uses ray tracing to locate the image of an object placed close to a concave mirror. Rays from a common point on the object

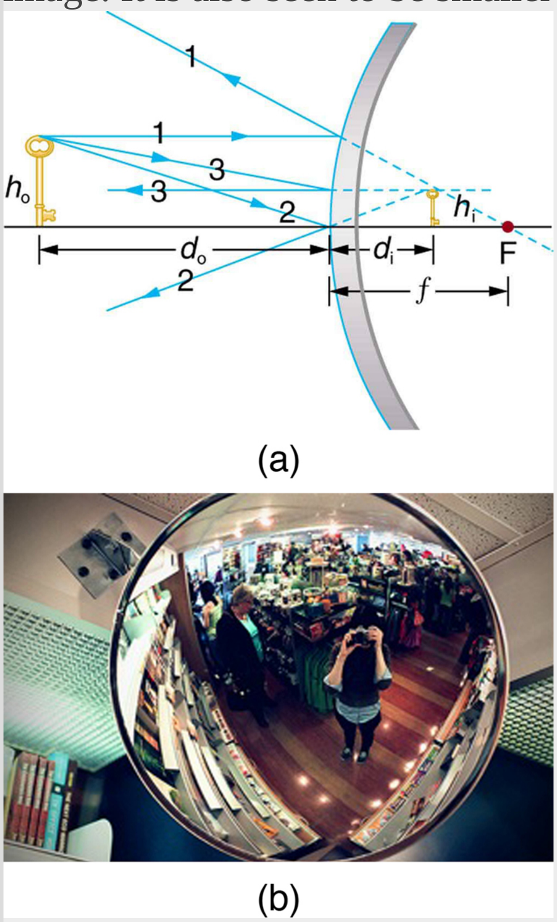
are reflected in such a manner that they appear to be coming from behind the mirror, meaning that the image is virtual and cannot be projected. As with a magnifying glass, the image is upright and larger than the object. This is a *case 2 image for mirrors* and is exactly analogous to that for lenses.



(a) Case 2 images for mirrors are formed when a converging mirror has an object closer to it than its focal length. Ray 1 approaches parallel to the axis, ray 2 strikes the center of the mirror, and ray 3 approaches the mirror as if it came from the focal point. (b) A magnifying mirror showing the reflection. (credit: Mike Melrose, Flickr)

All three rays appear to originate from the same point after being reflected, locating the upright virtual image behind the mirror and showing it to be larger than the object. (b) Makeup mirrors are perhaps the most common use of a concave mirror to produce a larger, upright image.

A convex mirror is a diverging mirror (f is negative) and forms only one type of image. It is a *case 3* image—one that is upright and smaller than the object, just as for diverging lenses. [link](a) uses ray tracing to illustrate the location and size of the case 3 image for mirrors. Since the image is behind the mirror, it cannot be projected and is thus a virtual image. It is also seen to be smaller than the object.



Case 3 images for mirrors are formed by any convex mirror. Ray 1 approaches parallel to the axis, ray 2 strikes the center of the

mirror, and ray 3 approaches toward the focal point. All three rays appear to originate from the same point after being reflected, locating the upright virtual image behind the mirror and showing it to be smaller than the object. (b) Security mirrors are convex, producing a smaller, upright image. Because the image is smaller, a larger area is imaged compared to what would be observed for a flat mirror (and hence security is improved). (credit: Laura D’Alessandro, Flickr)

Example:
Image in a Convex Mirror

A keratometer is a device used to measure the curvature of the cornea, particularly for fitting contact lenses. Light is reflected from the cornea, which acts like a convex mirror, and the keratometer measures the magnification of the image. The smaller the magnification, the smaller the radius of curvature of the cornea. If the light source is 12.0 cm from the cornea and the image’s magnification is 0.0320, what is the cornea’s radius of curvature?

Strategy

If we can find the focal length of the convex mirror formed by the cornea, we can find its radius of curvature (the radius of curvature is twice the focal length of a spherical mirror). We are given that the object distance is

$d_o = 12.0$ cm and that $m = 0.0320$. We first solve for the image distance d_i, and then for f.

Solution

$m = -d_i/d_o$. Solving this expression for d_i gives

Equation:

$$d_i = -md_o.$$

Entering known values yields

Equation:

$$d_i = -(0.0320)(12.0 \text{ cm}) = -0.384 \text{ cm}.$$

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i}$$

Substituting known values,

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{12.0 \text{ cm}} + \frac{1}{-0.384 \text{ cm}} = \frac{-2.52}{\text{cm}}.$$

This must be inverted to find f:

Equation:

$$f = \frac{\text{cm}}{-2.52} = -0.400 \text{ cm}.$$

The radius of curvature is twice the focal length, so that

Equation:

$$R = 2 \mid f \mid = 0.800 \text{ cm}.$$

Discussion

Although the focal length f of a convex mirror is defined to be negative, we take the absolute value to give us a positive value for R. The radius of curvature found here is reasonable for a cornea. The distance from cornea

to retina in an adult eye is about 2.0 cm. In practice, many corneas are not spherical, complicating the job of fitting contact lenses. Note that the image distance here is negative, consistent with the fact that the image is behind the mirror, where it cannot be projected. In this section's Problems and Exercises, you will show that for a fixed object distance, the smaller the radius of curvature, the smaller the magnification.

The three types of images formed by mirrors (cases 1, 2, and 3) are exactly analogous to those formed by lenses, as summarized in the table at the end of Image Formation by Lenses. It is easiest to concentrate on only three types of images—then remember that concave mirrors act like convex lenses, whereas convex mirrors act like concave lenses.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment: Concave Mirrors Close to Home

Find a flashlight and identify the curved mirror used in it. Find another flashlight and shine the first flashlight onto the second one, which is turned off. Estimate the focal length of the mirror. You might try shining a flashlight on the curved mirror behind the headlight of a car, keeping the headlight switched off, and determine its focal length.

Problem-Solving Strategy for Mirrors

Step 1. Examine the situation to determine that image formation by a mirror is involved.

Step 2. Refer to the Problem-Solving Strategies for Lenses. The same strategies are valid for mirrors as for lenses with one qualification—use the ray tracing rules for mirrors listed earlier in this section.

Section Summary

- The characteristics of an image formed by a flat mirror are: (a) The image and object are the same distance from the mirror, (b) The image

is a virtual image, and (c) The image is situated behind the mirror.
- Image length is half the radius of curvature.
Equation:

$$f = \frac{R}{2}$$

- A convex mirror is a diverging mirror and forms only one type of image, namely a virtual image.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What are the differences between real and virtual images? How can you tell (by looking) whether an image formed by a single lens or mirror is real or virtual?

Exercise:

Problem:

Can you see a virtual image? Can you photograph one? Can one be projected onto a screen with additional lenses or mirrors? Explain your responses.

Exercise:

Problem:

Is it necessary to project a real image onto a screen for it to exist?

Exercise:

Problem:

At what distance is an image *always* located—at d_o, d_i, or f?

Exercise:

Problem:

Under what circumstances will an image be located at the focal point of a lens or mirror?

Exercise:

Problem:

What is meant by a negative magnification? What is meant by a magnification that is less than 1 in magnitude?

Exercise:

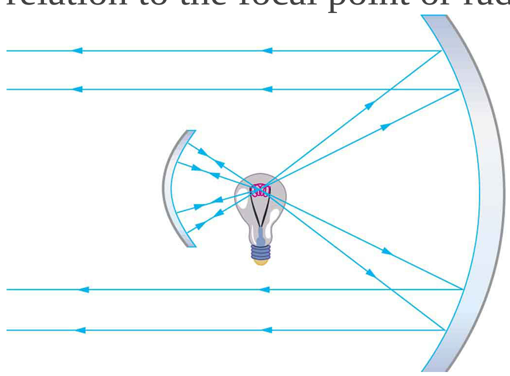
Problem:

Can a case 1 image be larger than the object even though its magnification is always negative? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

[link] shows a light bulb between two mirrors. One mirror produces a beam of light with parallel rays; the other keeps light from escaping without being put into the beam. Where is the filament of the light in relation to the focal point or radius of curvature of each mirror?



The two mirrors trap most of the bulb’s light and form a directional beam as in a headlight.

Exercise:

Problem:

Devise an arrangement of mirrors allowing you to see the back of your head. What is the minimum number of mirrors needed for this task?

Exercise:

Problem:

If you wish to see your entire body in a flat mirror (from head to toe), how tall should the mirror be? Does its size depend upon your distance away from the mirror? Provide a sketch.

Exercise:

Problem:

It can be argued that a flat mirror has an infinite focal length. If so, where does it form an image? That is, how are d_i and d_o related?

Exercise:

Problem:

Why are diverging mirrors often used for rear-view mirrors in vehicles? What is the main disadvantage of using such a mirror compared with a flat one?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the focal length of a makeup mirror that has a power of 1.50 D?

Solution:

+0.667 m

Exercise:

Problem:

Some telephoto cameras use a mirror rather than a lens. What radius of curvature mirror is needed to replace a 800 mm focal length telephoto lens?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the focal length of the mirror formed by the shiny back of a spoon that has a 3.00 cm radius of curvature. (b) What is its power in diopters?

Solution:

(a) -1.5×10^{-2} m

(b)-66.7 D

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the magnification of the heater element in [link]. Note that its large magnitude helps spread out the reflected energy.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the focal length of a makeup mirror that produces a magnification of 1.50 when a person's face is 12.0 cm away? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for Mirrors.

Solution:

+0.360 m (concave)

Exercise:

Problem:

A shopper standing 3.00 m from a convex security mirror sees his image with a magnification of 0.250. (a) Where is his image? (b) What is the focal length of the mirror? (c) What is its radius of curvature? Explicitly show how you follow the steps in the Problem-Solving Strategy for Mirrors.

Exercise:

Problem:

An object 1.50 cm high is held 3.00 cm from a person’s cornea, and its reflected image is measured to be 0.167 cm high. (a) What is the magnification? (b) Where is the image? (c) Find the radius of curvature of the convex mirror formed by the cornea. (Note that this technique is used by optometrists to measure the curvature of the cornea for contact lens fitting. The instrument used is called a keratometer, or curve measurer.)

Solution:

(a) +0.111

(b) -0.334 cm (behind “mirror”)

(c) 0.752cm

Exercise:

Problem:

Ray tracing for a flat mirror shows that the image is located a distance behind the mirror equal to the distance of the object from the mirror. This is stated $d_\mathrm{i} = -d_\mathrm{o}$, since this is a negative image distance (it is a virtual image). (a) What is the focal length of a flat mirror? (b) What is its power?

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that for a flat mirror $h_{\mathrm{i}} = h_{\mathrm{o}}$, knowing that the image is a distance behind the mirror equal in magnitude to the distance of the object from the mirror.

Solution:
Equation:

$$m = \frac{h_{\mathrm{i}}}{h_{\mathrm{o}}} = -\frac{d_{\mathrm{i}}}{d_{\mathrm{o}}} = -\frac{-d_{\mathrm{o}}}{d_{\mathrm{o}}} = \frac{d_{\mathrm{o}}}{d_{\mathrm{o}}} = 1 \Rightarrow h_{\mathrm{i}} = h_{\mathrm{o}}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

Use the law of reflection to prove that the focal length of a mirror is half its radius of curvature. That is, prove that $f = R/2$. Note this is true for a spherical mirror only if its diameter is small compared with its radius of curvature.

Exercise:

Problem:

Referring to the electric room heater considered in the first example in this section, calculate the intensity of IR radiation in $\mathrm{W/m^2}$ projected by the concave mirror on a person 3.00 m away. Assume that the heating element radiates 1500 W and has an area of $100\ \mathrm{cm^2}$, and that half of the radiated power is reflected and focused by the mirror.

Solution:

$6.82\ \mathrm{kW/m^2}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Consider a 250-W heat lamp fixed to the ceiling in a bathroom. If the filament in one light burns out then the remaining three still work. Construct a problem in which you determine the resistance of each filament in order to obtain a certain intensity projected on the bathroom floor. The ceiling is 3.0 m high. The problem will need to involve concave mirrors behind the filaments. Your instructor may wish to guide you on the level of complexity to consider in the electrical components.

Glossary

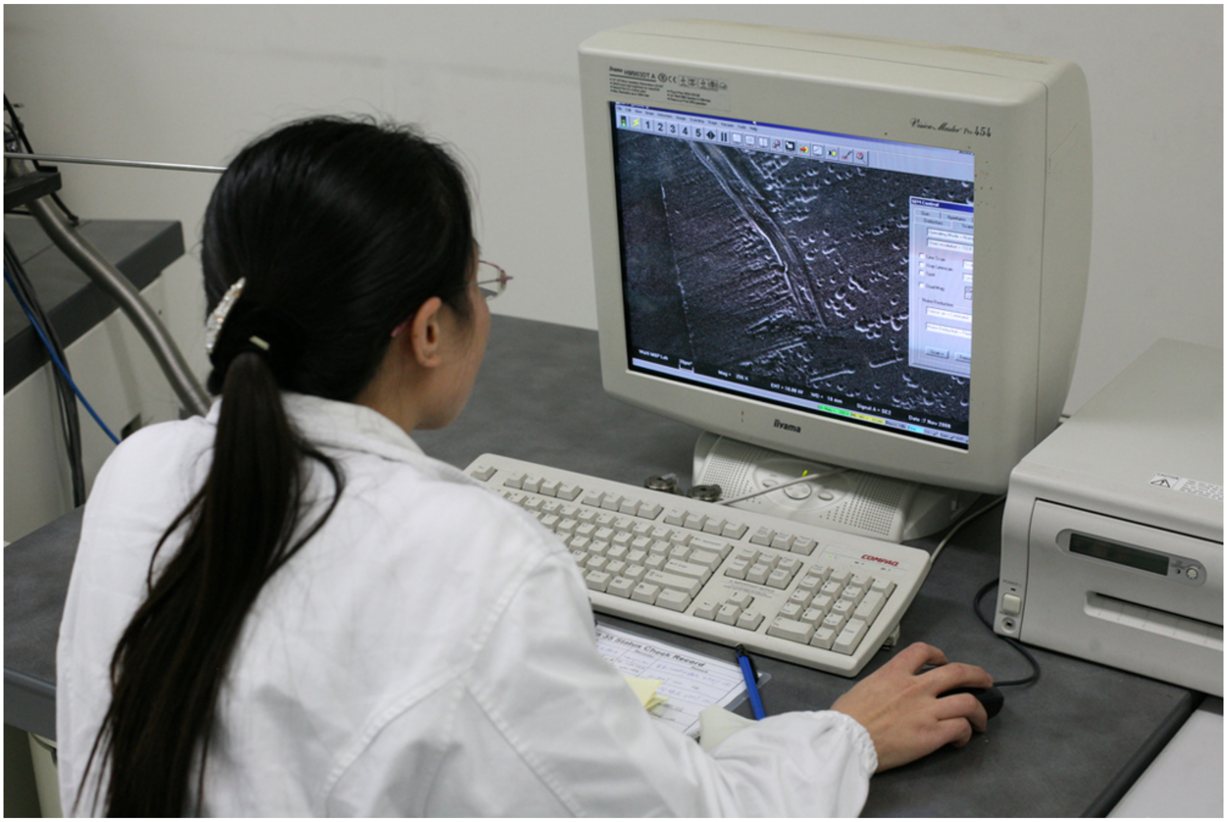
converging mirror
: a concave mirror in which light rays that strike it parallel to its axis converge at one or more points along the axis

diverging mirror
: a convex mirror in which light rays that strike it parallel to its axis bend away (diverge) from its axis

law of reflection
: angle of reflection equals the angle of incidence

Introduction to Vision and Optical Instruments
class="introduction"

A scientist examines minute details on the surface of a disk drive at a magnification of 100,000 times. The image was produced using an electron microscope. (credit: Robert Scoble)



Explore how the image on the computer screen is formed. How is the image formation on the computer screen different from the image formation in your eye as you look down the microscope? How can videos of living cell processes be taken for viewing later on, and by many different people?

Seeing faces and objects we love and cherish is a delight—one’s favorite teddy bear, a picture on the wall, or the sun rising over the mountains. Intricate images help us understand nature and are invaluable for developing techniques and technologies in order to improve the quality of life. The image of a red blood cell that almost fills the cross-sectional area of a tiny capillary makes us wonder how blood makes it through and not get stuck. We are able to see bacteria and viruses and understand their structure. It is the knowledge of physics that provides fundamental understanding and models required to develop new techniques and instruments. Therefore, physics is called an *enabling science*—a science that enables development and advancement in other areas. It is through optics and imaging that physics enables advancement in major areas of biosciences. This chapter illustrates the enabling nature of physics through an understanding of how a

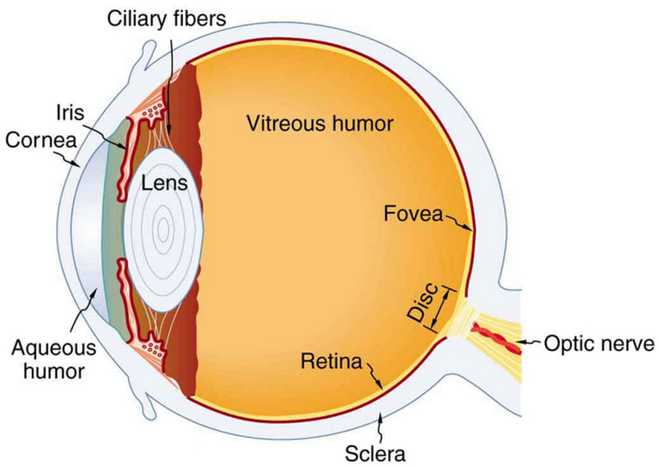
human eye is able to see and how we are able to use optical instruments to see beyond what is possible with the naked eye. It is convenient to categorize these instruments on the basis of geometric optics (see Geometric Optics) and wave optics (see Wave Optics).

Physics of the Eye

- Explain the image formation by the eye.
- Explain why peripheral images lack detail and color.
- Define refractive indices.
- Analyze the accommodation of the eye for distant and near vision.

The eye is perhaps the most interesting of all optical instruments. The eye is remarkable in how it forms images and in the richness of detail and color it can detect. However, our eyes commonly need some correction, to reach what is called “normal” vision, but should be called ideal rather than normal. Image formation by our eyes and common vision correction are easy to analyze with the optics discussed in Geometric Optics.

[link] shows the basic anatomy of the eye. The cornea and lens form a system that, to a good approximation, acts as a single thin lens. For clear vision, a real image must be projected onto the light-sensitive retina, which lies at a fixed distance from the lens. The lens of the eye adjusts its power to produce an image on the retina for objects at different distances. The center of the image falls on the fovea, which has the greatest density of light receptors and the greatest acuity (sharpness) in the visual field. The variable opening (or pupil) of the eye along with chemical adaptation allows the eye to detect light intensities from the lowest observable to 10^{10} times greater (without damage). This is an incredible range of detection. Our eyes perform a vast number of functions, such as sense direction, movement, sophisticated colors, and distance. Processing of visual nerve impulses begins with interconnections in the retina and continues in the brain. The optic nerve conveys signals received by the eye to the brain.



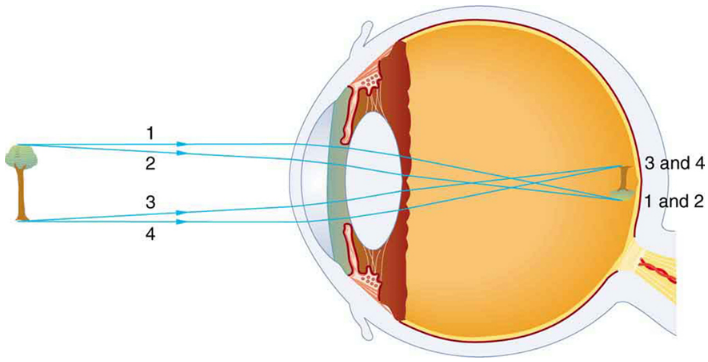
The cornea and lens of an eye act together to form a real image on the light-sensing retina, which has its densest concentration of receptors in the fovea and a blind spot over the optic nerve. The power of the lens of an eye is adjustable to provide an image on the retina for varying object distances. Layers of tissues with varying indices of refraction in the lens are shown here. However, they have been omitted from other pictures for clarity.

Refractive indices are crucial to image formation using lenses. [link] shows refractive indices relevant to the eye. The biggest change in the refractive index, and bending of rays, occurs at the cornea rather than the lens. The ray diagram in [link] shows image formation by the cornea and lens of the eye. The rays bend according to the refractive indices provided in [link]. The cornea provides about two-thirds of the power of the eye, owing to the fact that speed of light changes considerably while traveling from air into cornea. The lens provides the remaining power needed to produce an image on the retina. The cornea and lens can be treated as a single thin lens, even

though the light rays pass through several layers of material (such as cornea, aqueous humor, several layers in the lens, and vitreous humor), changing direction at each interface. The image formed is much like the one produced by a single convex lens. This is a case 1 image. Images formed in the eye are inverted but the brain inverts them once more to make them seem upright.

Material	**Index of Refraction**
Water	1.33
Air	1.0
Cornea	1.38
Aqueous humor	1.34
Lens	1.41 average (varies throughout the lens, greatest in center)
Vitreous humor	1.34

Refractive Indices Relevant to the Eye

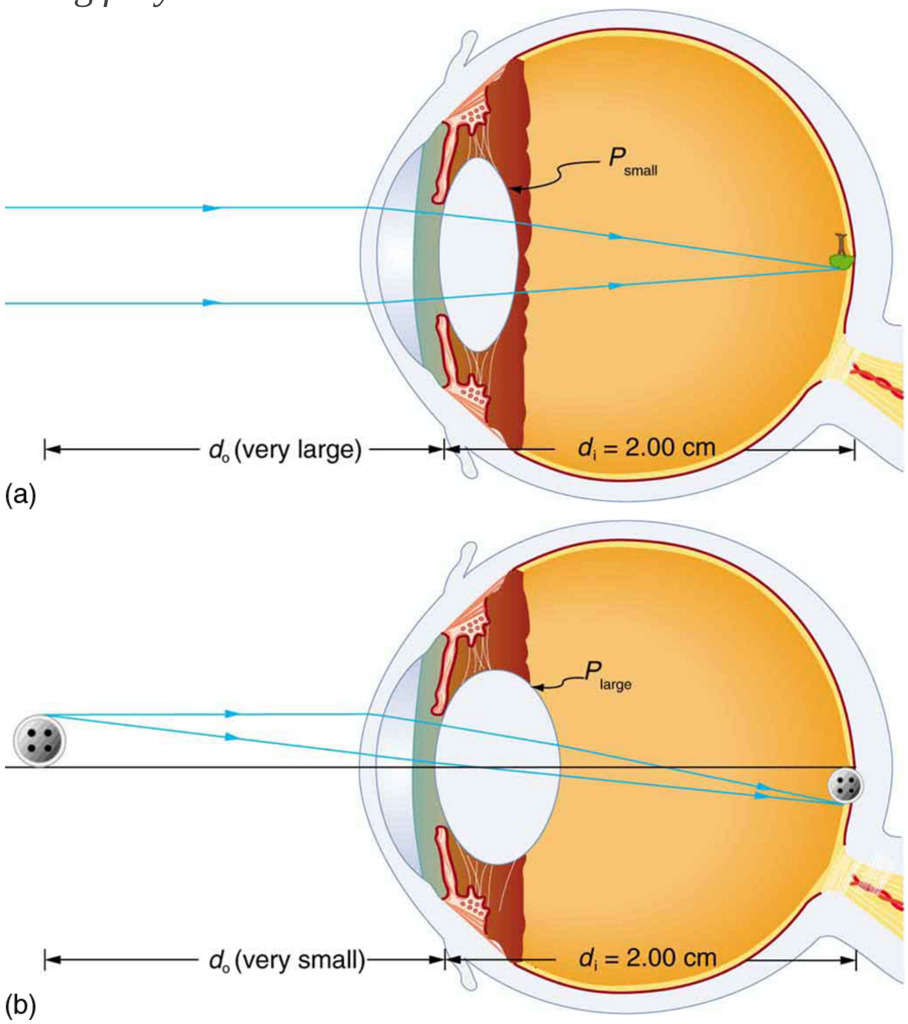


An image is formed on the retina with light rays converging most at the cornea and upon entering and exiting the lens. Rays from the top and bottom of the object are traced and produce an inverted real image on the retina. The distance to the object is drawn smaller than scale.

As noted, the image must fall precisely on the retina to produce clear vision — that is, the image distance d_i must equal the lens-to-retina distance. Because the lens-to-retina distance does not change, the image distance d_i must be the same for objects at all distances. The eye manages this by varying the power (and focal length) of the lens to accommodate for objects at various distances. The process of adjusting the eye's focal length is called **accommodation**. A person with normal (ideal) vision can see objects clearly at distances ranging from 25 cm to essentially infinity. However, although the near point (the shortest distance at which a sharp focus can be obtained) increases with age (becoming meters for some older people), we will consider it to be 25 cm in our treatment here.

[link] shows the accommodation of the eye for distant and near vision. Since light rays from a nearby object can diverge and still enter the eye, the lens must be more converging (more powerful) for close vision than for distant vision. To be more converging, the lens is made thicker by the action of the ciliary muscle surrounding it. The eye is most relaxed when viewing

distant objects, one reason that microscopes and telescopes are designed to produce distant images. Vision of very distant objects is called *totally relaxed*, while close vision is termed *accommodated*, with the closest vision being *fully accommodated*.



Relaxed and accommodated vision for distant and close objects. (a) Light rays from the same point on a distant object must be nearly parallel while entering the eye and more easily converge to produce an image on the retina. (b) Light rays from a nearby object can diverge more and still enter the eye. A more powerful lens is needed to converge them on the retina than if they were parallel.

We will use the thin lens equations to examine image formation by the eye quantitatively. First, note the power of a lens is given as $p = 1/f$, so we rewrite the thin lens equations as

Equation:

$$P = \frac{1}{d_{\text{o}}} + \frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}}$$

and

Equation:

$$\frac{h_{\text{i}}}{h_{\text{o}}} = -\frac{d_{\text{i}}}{d_{\text{o}}} = m.$$

We understand that d_{i} must equal the lens-to-retina distance to obtain clear vision, and that normal vision is possible for objects at distances $d_{\text{o}} = 25\text{ cm}$ to infinity.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment: The Pupil

Look at the central transparent area of someone's eye, the pupil, in normal room light. Estimate the diameter of the pupil. Now turn off the lights and darken the room. After a few minutes turn on the lights and promptly estimate the diameter of the pupil. What happens to the pupil as the eye adjusts to the room light? Explain your observations.

The eye can detect an impressive amount of detail, considering how small the image is on the retina. To get some idea of how small the image can be, consider the following example.

Example:

Size of Image on Retina

What is the size of the image on the retina of a 1.20×10^{-2} cm diameter human hair, held at arm's length (60.0 cm) away? Take the lens-to-retina distance to be 2.00 cm.

Strategy

We want to find the height of the image h_{i}, given the height of the object is $h_{\text{o}} = 1.20 \times 10^{-2}$ cm. We also know that the object is 60.0 cm away, so that $d_{\text{o}} = 60.0\text{ cm}$. For clear vision, the image distance must equal the lens-to-retina distance, and so $d_{\text{i}} = 2.00\text{ cm}$. The equation $\frac{h_{\text{i}}}{h_{\text{o}}} = -\frac{d_{\text{i}}}{d_{\text{o}}} = m$ can be used to find h_{i} with the known information.

Solution

The only unknown variable in the equation $\frac{h_{\text{i}}}{h_{\text{o}}} = -\frac{d_{\text{i}}}{d_{\text{o}}} = m$ is h_{i}:

Equation:

$$\frac{h_{\text{i}}}{h_{\text{o}}} = -\frac{d_{\text{i}}}{d_{\text{o}}}.$$

Rearranging to isolate h_{i} yields

Equation:

$$h_{\text{i}} = -h_{\text{o}} \cdot \frac{d_{\text{i}}}{d_{\text{o}}}.$$

Substituting the known values gives

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} h_{\text{i}} &= -(1.20 \times 10^{-2}\text{ cm})\frac{2.00\text{ cm}}{60.0\text{ cm}} \\ &= -4.00 \times 10^{-4}\text{ cm.} \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

This truly small image is not the smallest discernible—that is, the limit to visual acuity is even smaller than this. Limitations on visual acuity have to do with the wave properties of light and will be discussed in the next chapter. Some limitation is also due to the inherent anatomy of the eye and processing that occurs in our brain.

Example:
Power Range of the Eye
Calculate the power of the eye when viewing objects at the greatest and smallest distances possible with normal vision, assuming a lens-to-retina distance of 2.00 cm (a typical value).

Strategy

For clear vision, the image must be on the retina, and so $d_{\text{i}} = 2.00\text{ cm}$ here. For distant vision, $d_{\text{o}} \approx \infty$, and for close vision, $d_{\text{o}} = 25.0\text{ cm}$, as discussed earlier. The equation $P = \frac{1}{d_{\text{o}}} + \frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}}$ as written just above, can be used directly to solve for P in both cases, since we know d_{i} and d_{o}. Power has units of diopters, where $1\text{ D} = 1/\text{m}$, and so we should express all distances in meters.

Solution

For distant vision,

Equation:

$$P = \frac{1}{d_{\text{o}}} + \frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}} = \frac{1}{\infty} + \frac{1}{0.0200\text{ m}}.$$

Since $1/\infty = 0$, this gives

Equation:

$$P = 0 + 50.0/\text{m} = 50.0\text{ D (distant vision)}.$$

Now, for close vision,

Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \tfrac{1}{d_{\text{o}}} + \tfrac{1}{d_{\text{i}}} = \tfrac{1}{0.250\text{ m}} + \tfrac{1}{0.0200\text{ m}} \\ &= \tfrac{4.00}{\text{m}} + \tfrac{50.0}{\text{m}} = 4.00\text{ D} + 50.0\text{ D} \\ &= 54.0\text{ D (close vision)}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

For an eye with this typical 2.00 cm lens-to-retina distance, the power of the eye ranges from 50.0 D (for distant totally relaxed vision) to 54.0 D (for close fully accommodated vision), which is an 8% increase. This increase in power for close vision is consistent with the preceding

discussion and the ray tracing in [link]. An 8% ability to accommodate is considered normal but is typical for people who are about 40 years old. Younger people have greater accommodation ability, whereas older people gradually lose the ability to accommodate. When an optometrist identifies accommodation as a problem in elder people, it is most likely due to stiffening of the lens. The lens of the eye changes with age in ways that tend to preserve the ability to see distant objects clearly but do not allow the eye to accommodate for close vision, a condition called **presbyopia** (literally, elder eye). To correct this vision defect, we place a converging, positive power lens in front of the eye, such as found in reading glasses. Commonly available reading glasses are rated by their power in diopters, typically ranging from 1.0 to 3.5 D.

Section Summary

- Image formation by the eye is adequately described by the thin lens equations:
  Equation:
  $$P=\frac{1}{d_{\text{o}}}+\frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}}\text{ and }\frac{h_{\text{i}}}{h_{\text{o}}}=-\frac{d_{\text{i}}}{d_{\text{o}}}=m.$$
- The eye produces a real image on the retina by adjusting its focal length and power in a process called accommodation.
- For close vision, the eye is fully accommodated and has its greatest power, whereas for distant vision, it is totally relaxed and has its smallest power.
- The loss of the ability to accommodate with age is called presbyopia, which is corrected by the use of a converging lens to add power for close vision.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

If the lens of a person’s eye is removed because of cataracts (as has been done since ancient times), why would you expect a spectacle lens of about 16 D to be prescribed?

Exercise:

Problem:

A cataract is cloudiness in the lens of the eye. Is light dispersed or diffused by it?

Exercise:

Problem:

When laser light is shone into a relaxed normal-vision eye to repair a tear by spot-welding the retina to the back of the eye, the rays entering the eye must be parallel. Why?

Exercise:

Problem:

How does the power of a dry contact lens compare with its power when resting on the tear layer of the eye? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why is your vision so blurry when you open your eyes while swimming under water? How does a face mask enable clear vision?

Problem Exercises

Unless otherwise stated, the lens-to-retina distance is 2.00 cm.

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the power of the eye when viewing an object 50.0 cm away?

Solution:

$52.0\ \mathrm{D}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Calculate the power of the eye when viewing an object $3.00\ \mathrm{m}$ away.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) The print in many books averages 3.50 mm in height. How high is the image of the print on the retina when the book is held 30.0 cm from the eye?

(b) Compare the size of the print to the sizes of rods and cones in the fovea and discuss the possible details observable in the letters. (The eye-brain system can perform better because of interconnections and higher order image processing.)

Solution:

(a) $-0.233\ \mathrm{mm}$

(b) The size of the rods and the cones is smaller than the image height, so we can distinguish letters on a page.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose a certain person’s visual acuity is such that he can see objects clearly that form an image 4.00 μm high on his retina. What is the maximum distance at which he can read the 75.0 cm high letters on the side of an airplane?

Exercise:

Problem:

People who do very detailed work close up, such as jewellers, often can see objects clearly at much closer distance than the normal 25 cm.

(a) What is the power of the eyes of a woman who can see an object clearly at a distance of only 8.00 cm?

(b) What is the size of an image of a 1.00 mm object, such as lettering inside a ring, held at this distance?

(c) What would the size of the image be if the object were held at the normal 25.0 cm distance?

Solution:

(a) $+62.5 \text{ D}$

(b) -0.250 mm

(c) -0.0800 mm

Glossary

accommodation
: the ability of the eye to adjust its focal length is known as accommodation

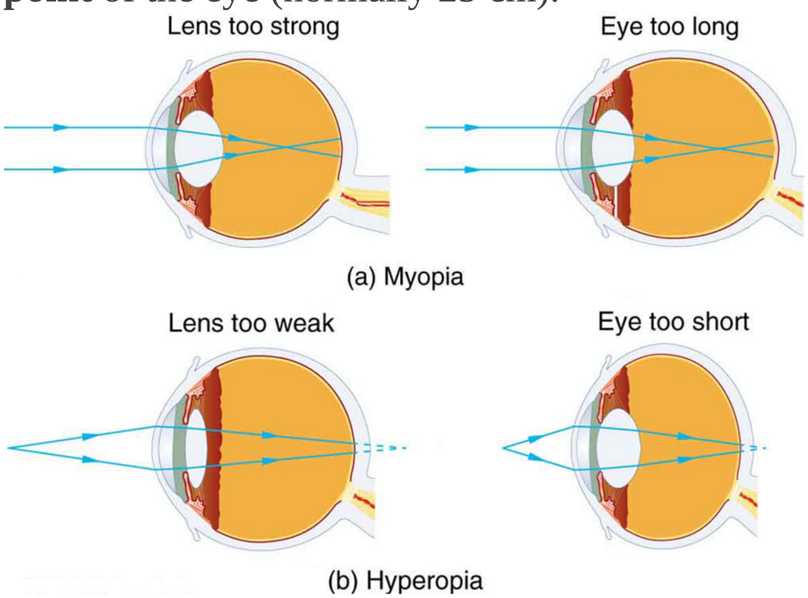
presbyopia

a condition in which the lens of the eye becomes progressively unable to focus on objects close to the viewer

Vision Correction

- Identify and discuss common vision defects.
- Explain nearsightedness and farsightedness corrections.
- Explain laser vision correction.

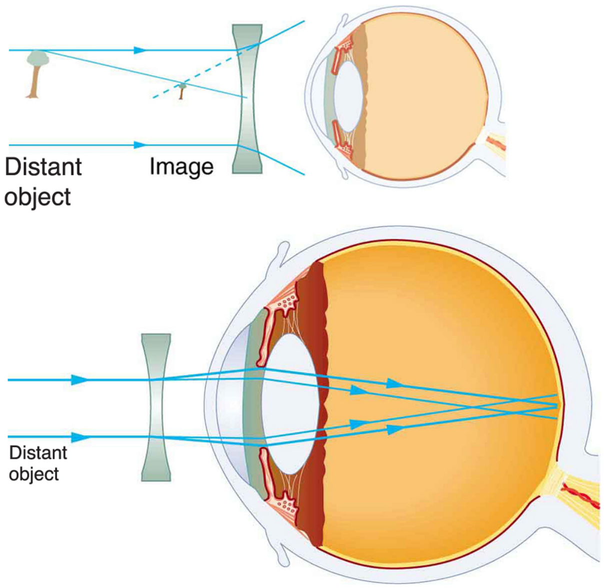
The need for some type of vision correction is very common. Common vision defects are easy to understand, and some are simple to correct. [link] illustrates two common vision defects. **Nearsightedness**, or **myopia**, is the inability to see distant objects clearly while close objects are clear. The eye overconverges the nearly parallel rays from a distant object, and the rays cross in front of the retina. More divergent rays from a close object are converged on the retina for a clear image. The distance to the farthest object that can be seen clearly is called the **far point** of the eye (normally infinity). **Farsightedness**, or **hyperopia**, is the inability to see close objects clearly while distant objects may be clear. A farsighted eye does not converge sufficient rays from a close object to make the rays meet on the retina. Less diverging rays from a distant object can be converged for a clear image. The distance to the closest object that can be seen clearly is called the **near point** of the eye (normally 25 cm).



(a) The nearsighted (myopic) eye converges rays from a distant object in front of the retina; thus, they are diverging when they

strike the retina, producing a blurry image. This can be caused by the lens of the eye being too powerful or the length of the eye being too great. (b) The farsighted (hyperopic) eye is unable to converge the rays from a close object by the time they strike the retina, producing blurry close vision. This can be caused by insufficient power in the lens or by the eye being too short.

Since the nearsighted eye over converges light rays, the correction for nearsightedness is to place a diverging spectacle lens in front of the eye. This reduces the power of an eye that is too powerful. Another way of thinking about this is that a diverging spectacle lens produces a case 3 image, which is closer to the eye than the object (see [link]). To determine the spectacle power needed for correction, you must know the person’s far point—that is, you must know the greatest distance at which the person can see clearly. Then the image produced by a spectacle lens must be at this distance or closer for the nearsighted person to be able to see it clearly. It is worth noting that wearing glasses does not change the eye in any way. The eyeglass lens is simply used to create an image of the object at a distance where the nearsighted person can see it clearly. Whereas someone not wearing glasses can see clearly *objects* that fall between their near point and their far point, someone wearing glasses can see *images* that fall between their near point and their far point.



Correction of nearsightedness requires a diverging lens that compensates for the overconvergence by the eye. The diverging lens produces an image closer to the eye than the object, so that the nearsighted person can see it clearly.

Example:
Correcting Nearsightedness

What power of spectacle lens is needed to correct the vision of a nearsighted person whose far point is 30.0 cm? Assume the spectacle (corrective) lens is held 1.50 cm away from the eye by eyeglass frames.

Strategy

You want this nearsighted person to be able to see very distant objects clearly. That means the spectacle lens must produce an image 30.0 cm from the eye for an object very far away. An image 30.0 cm from the eye will be 28.5 cm to the left of the spectacle lens (see [link]). Therefore, we

must get $d_i = -28.5\text{ cm}$ when $d_o \approx \infty$. The image distance is negative, because it is on the same side of the spectacle as the object.

Solution

Since d_i and d_o are known, the power of the spectacle lens can be found using $P = \frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i}$ as written earlier:

Equation:

$$P = \frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{\infty} + \frac{1}{-0.285\text{ m}}.$$

Since $1/\infty = 0$, we obtain:

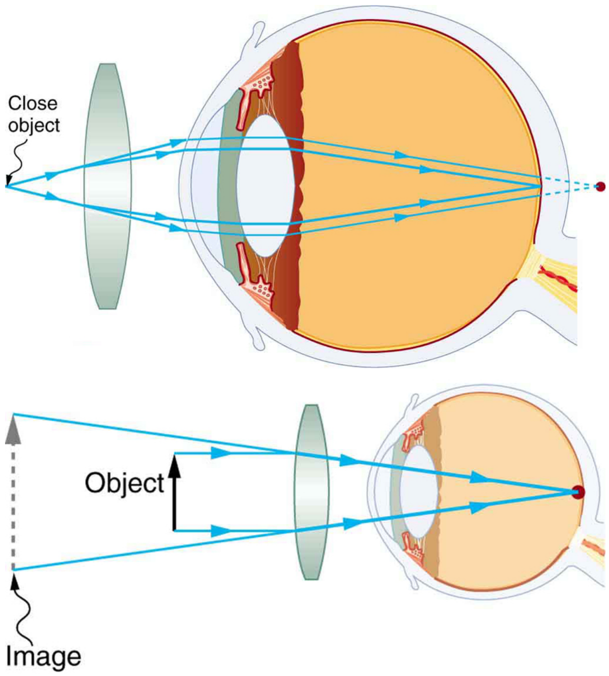
Equation:

$$P = 0 - 3.51/\text{m} = -3.51\text{ D}.$$

Discussion

The negative power indicates a diverging (or concave) lens, as expected. The spectacle produces a case 3 image closer to the eye, where the person can see it. If you examine eyeglasses for nearsighted people, you will find the lenses are thinnest in the center. Additionally, if you examine a prescription for eyeglasses for nearsighted people, you will find that the prescribed power is negative and given in units of diopters.

Since the farsighted eye under converges light rays, the correction for farsightedness is to place a converging spectacle lens in front of the eye. This increases the power of an eye that is too weak. Another way of thinking about this is that a converging spectacle lens produces a case 2 image, which is farther from the eye than the object (see [link]). To determine the spectacle power needed for correction, you must know the person's near point—that is, you must know the smallest distance at which the person can see clearly. Then the image produced by a spectacle lens must be at this distance or farther for the farsighted person to be able to see it clearly.



Correction of farsightedness uses a converging lens that compensates for the under convergence by the eye. The converging lens produces an image farther from the eye than the object, so that the farsighted person can see it clearly.

Example:
Correcting Farsightedness

What power of spectacle lens is needed to allow a farsighted person, whose near point is 1.00 m, to see an object clearly that is 25.0 cm away? Assume the spectacle (corrective) lens is held 1.50 cm away from the eye by eyeglass frames.

Strategy

When an object is held 25.0 cm from the person's eyes, the spectacle lens must produce an image 1.00 m away (the near point). An image 1.00 m

from the eye will be 98.5 cm to the left of the spectacle lens because the spectacle lens is 1.50 cm from the eye (see [link]). Therefore, $d_{\text{i}} = -98.5\text{ cm}$. The image distance is negative, because it is on the same side of the spectacle as the object. The object is 23.5 cm to the left of the spectacle, so that $d_{\text{o}} = 23.5\text{ cm}$.

Solution

Since d_{i} and d_{o} are known, the power of the spectacle lens can be found using $P = \frac{1}{d_{\text{o}}} + \frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}}$:

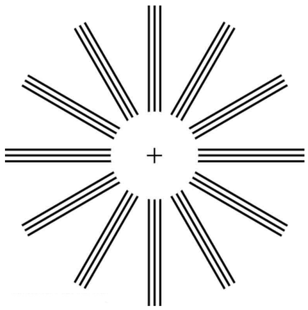
Equation:

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}} = \frac{1}{0.235\text{ m}} + \frac{1}{-0.985\text{ m}} \\ &= 4.26\text{ D} - 1.02\text{ D} = 3.24\text{ D}. \end{aligned}$$

Discussion

The positive power indicates a converging (convex) lens, as expected. The convex spectacle produces a case 2 image farther from the eye, where the person can see it. If you examine eyeglasses of farsighted people, you will find the lenses to be thickest in the center. In addition, a prescription of eyeglasses for farsighted people has a prescribed power that is positive.

Another common vision defect is **astigmatism**, an unevenness or asymmetry in the focus of the eye. For example, rays passing through a vertical region of the eye may focus closer than rays passing through a horizontal region, resulting in the image appearing elongated. This is mostly due to irregularities in the shape of the cornea but can also be due to lens irregularities or unevenness in the retina. Because of these irregularities, different parts of the lens system produce images at different locations. The eye-brain system can compensate for some of these irregularities, but they generally manifest themselves as less distinct vision or sharper images along certain axes. [link] shows a chart used to detect astigmatism. Astigmatism can be at least partially corrected with a spectacle having the opposite irregularity of the eye. If an eyeglass prescription has a cylindrical correction, it is there to correct astigmatism. The normal corrections for short- or farsightedness are spherical corrections, uniform along all axes.



This chart can detect astigmatism, unevenness in the focus of the eye. Check each of your eyes separately by looking at the center cross (without spectacles if you wear them). If lines along some axes appear darker or clearer than others, you have an astigmatism.

Contact lenses have advantages over glasses beyond their cosmetic aspects. One problem with glasses is that as the eye moves, it is not at a fixed distance from the spectacle lens. Contacts rest on and move with the eye, eliminating this problem. Because contacts cover a significant portion of the

cornea, they provide superior peripheral vision compared with eyeglasses. Contacts also correct some corneal astigmatism caused by surface irregularities. The tear layer between the smooth contact and the cornea fills in the irregularities. Since the index of refraction of the tear layer and the cornea are very similar, you now have a regular optical surface in place of an irregular one. If the curvature of a contact lens is not the same as the cornea (as may be necessary with some individuals to obtain a comfortable fit), the tear layer between the contact and cornea acts as a lens. If the tear layer is thinner in the center than at the edges, it has a negative power, for example. Skilled optometrists will adjust the power of the contact to compensate.

Laser vision correction has progressed rapidly in the last few years. It is the latest and by far the most successful in a series of procedures that correct vision by reshaping the cornea. As noted at the beginning of this section, the cornea accounts for about two-thirds of the power of the eye. Thus, small adjustments of its curvature have the same effect as putting a lens in front of the eye. To a reasonable approximation, the power of multiple lenses placed close together equals the sum of their powers. For example, a concave spectacle lens (for nearsightedness) having $P = -3.00 \text{ D}$ has the same effect on vision as reducing the power of the eye itself by 3.00 D. So to correct the eye for nearsightedness, the cornea is flattened to reduce its power. Similarly, to correct for farsightedness, the curvature of the cornea is enhanced to increase the power of the eye—the same effect as the positive power spectacle lens used for farsightedness. Laser vision correction uses high intensity electromagnetic radiation to ablate (to remove material from the surface) and reshape the corneal surfaces.

Today, the most commonly used laser vision correction procedure is *Laser in situ Keratomileusis (LASIK)*. The top layer of the cornea is surgically peeled back and the underlying tissue ablated by multiple bursts of finely controlled ultraviolet radiation produced by an excimer laser. Lasers are used because they not only produce well-focused intense light, but they also emit very pure wavelength electromagnetic radiation that can be controlled more accurately than mixed wavelength light. The 193 nm wavelength UV commonly used is extremely and strongly absorbed by corneal tissue,

allowing precise evaporation of very thin layers. A computer controlled program applies more bursts, usually at a rate of 10 per second, to the areas that require deeper removal. Typically a spot less than 1 mm in diameter and about $0.3\ \mu m$ in thickness is removed by each burst. Nearsightedness, farsightedness, and astigmatism can be corrected with an accuracy that produces normal distant vision in more than 90% of the patients, in many cases right away. The corneal flap is replaced; healing takes place rapidly and is nearly painless. More than 1 million Americans per year undergo LASIK (see [link]).

Laser vision correction is being performed using the LASIK procedure. Reshaping of the cornea by laser ablation is based on a careful assessment of the patient's vision and is computer controlled. The

upper corneal layer is temporarily peeled back and minimally disturbed in LASIK, providing for more rapid and less painful healing of the less sensitive tissues below. (credit: U.S. Navy photo by Mass Communication Specialist 1st Class Brien Aho)

Section Summary

- Nearsightedness, or myopia, is the inability to see distant objects and is corrected with a diverging lens to reduce power.
- Farsightedness, or hyperopia, is the inability to see close objects and is corrected with a converging lens to increase power.
- In myopia and hyperopia, the corrective lenses produce images at a distance that the person can see clearly—the far point and near point, respectively.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

It has become common to replace the cataract-clouded lens of the eye with an internal lens. This intraocular lens can be chosen so that the person has perfect distant vision. Will the person be able to read without glasses? If the person was nearsighted, is the power of the intraocular lens greater or less than the removed lens?

Exercise:

Problem:

If the cornea is to be reshaped (this can be done surgically or with contact lenses) to correct myopia, should its curvature be made greater or smaller? Explain. Also explain how hyperopia can be corrected.

Exercise:

Problem:

If there is a fixed percent uncertainty in LASIK reshaping of the cornea, why would you expect those people with the greatest correction to have a poorer chance of normal distant vision after the procedure?

Exercise:

Problem:

A person with presbyopia has lost some or all of the ability to accommodate the power of the eye. If such a person’s distant vision is corrected with LASIK, will she still need reading glasses? Explain.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the far point of a person whose eyes have a relaxed power of 50.5 D?

Solution:

2.00 m

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the near point of a person whose eyes have an accommodated power of 53.5 D?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A laser vision correction reshaping the cornea of a myopic patient reduces the power of his eye by 9.00 D, with a $\pm 5.0\%$ uncertainty in the final correction. What is the range of diopters for spectacle lenses that this person might need after LASIK procedure? (b) Was the person nearsighted or farsighted before the procedure? How do you know?

Solution:

(a) ± 0.45 D

(b) The person was nearsighted because the patient was myopic and the power was reduced.

Exercise:

Problem:

In a LASIK vision correction, the power of a patient's eye is increased by 3.00 D. Assuming this produces normal close vision, what was the patient's near point before the procedure?

Exercise:

Problem:

What was the previous far point of a patient who had laser vision correction that reduced the power of her eye by 7.00 D, producing normal distant vision for her?

Solution:

0.143 m

Exercise:

Problem:

A severely myopic patient has a far point of 5.00 cm. By how many diopters should the power of his eye be reduced in laser vision correction to obtain normal distant vision for him?

Exercise:

Problem:

A student's eyes, while reading the blackboard, have a power of 51.0 D. How far is the board from his eyes?

Solution:

1.00 m

Exercise:

Problem:

The power of a physician's eyes is 53.0 D while examining a patient. How far from her eyes is the feature being examined?

Exercise:

Problem:

A young woman with normal distant vision has a 10.0% ability to accommodate (that is, increase) the power of her eyes. What is the closest object she can see clearly?

Solution:

20.0 cm

Exercise:

Problem:

The far point of a myopic administrator is 50.0 cm. (a) What is the relaxed power of his eyes? (b) If he has the normal 8.00% ability to accommodate, what is the closest object he can see clearly?

Exercise:

Problem:

A very myopic man has a far point of 20.0 cm. What power contact lens (when on the eye) will correct his distant vision?

Solution:

–5.00 D

Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat the previous problem for eyeglasses held 1.50 cm from the eyes.

Exercise:

Problem:

A myopic person sees that her contact lens prescription is –4.00 D. What is her far point?

Solution:

25.0 cm

Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat the previous problem for glasses that are 1.75 cm from the eyes.

Exercise:

Problem:

The contact lens prescription for a mildly farsighted person is 0.750 D, and the person has a near point of 29.0 cm. What is the power of the tear layer between the cornea and the lens if the correction is ideal, taking the tear layer into account?

Solution:

–0.198 D

Exercise:

Problem:

A nearsighted man cannot see objects clearly beyond 20 cm from his eyes. How close must he stand to a mirror in order to see what he is doing when he shaves?

Exercise:

Problem:

A mother sees that her child’s contact lens prescription is 0.750 D. What is the child’s near point?

Solution:

30.8 cm

Exercise:

Problem:

Repeat the previous problem for glasses that are 2.20 cm from the eyes.

Exercise:

Problem:

The contact lens prescription for a nearsighted person is –4.00 D and the person has a far point of 22.5 cm. What is the power of the tear layer between the cornea and the lens if the correction is ideal, taking the tear layer into account?

Solution:

–0.444 D

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

A boy has a near point of 50 cm and a far point of 500 cm. Will a –4.00 D lens correct his far point to infinity?

Glossary

nearsightedness
: another term for myopia, a visual defect in which distant objects appear blurred because their images are focused in front of the retina rather than being focused on the retina

myopia
: a visual defect in which distant objects appear blurred because their images are focused in front of the retina rather than being focused on the retina

far point
: the object point imaged by the eye onto the retina in an unaccommodated eye

farsightedness
: another term for hyperopia, the condition of an eye where incoming rays of light reach the retina before they converge into a focused image

hyperopia
: the condition of an eye where incoming rays of light reach the retina before they converge into a focused image

near point
: the point nearest the eye at which an object is accurately focused on the retina at full accommodation

astigmatism
: the result of an inability of the cornea to properly focus an image onto the retina

laser vision correction
: a medical procedure used to correct astigmatism and eyesight deficiencies such as myopia and hyperopia

Color and Color Vision

- Explain the simple theory of color vision.
- Outline the coloring properties of light sources.
- Describe the retinex theory of color vision.

The gift of vision is made richer by the existence of color. Objects and lights abound with thousands of hues that stimulate our eyes, brains, and emotions. Two basic questions are addressed in this brief treatment—what does color mean in scientific terms, and how do we, as humans, perceive it?

Simple Theory of Color Vision

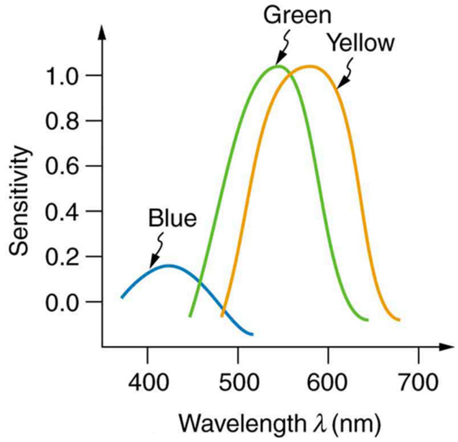
We have already noted that color is associated with the wavelength of visible electromagnetic radiation. When our eyes receive pure-wavelength light, we tend to see only a few colors. Six of these (most often listed) are red, orange, yellow, green, blue, and violet. These are the rainbow of colors produced when white light is dispersed according to different wavelengths. There are thousands of other **hues** that we can perceive. These include brown, teal, gold, pink, and white. One simple theory of color vision implies that all these hues are our eye’s response to different combinations of wavelengths. This is true to an extent, but we find that color perception is even subtler than our eye’s response for various wavelengths of light.

The two major types of light-sensing cells (photoreceptors) in the retina are **rods and cones**. Rods are more sensitive than cones by a factor of about 1000 and are solely responsible for peripheral vision as well as vision in very dark environments. They are also important for motion detection. There are about 120 million rods in the human retina. Rods do not yield color information. You may notice that you lose color vision when it is very dark, but you retain the ability to discern grey scales.

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Rods and Cones

1. Go into a darkened room from a brightly lit room, or from outside in the Sun. How long did it take to start seeing shapes more clearly? What about color? Return to the bright room. Did it take a few minutes before you could see things clearly?
2. Demonstrate the sensitivity of foveal vision. Look at the letter G in the word ROGERS. What about the clarity of the letters on either side of G?

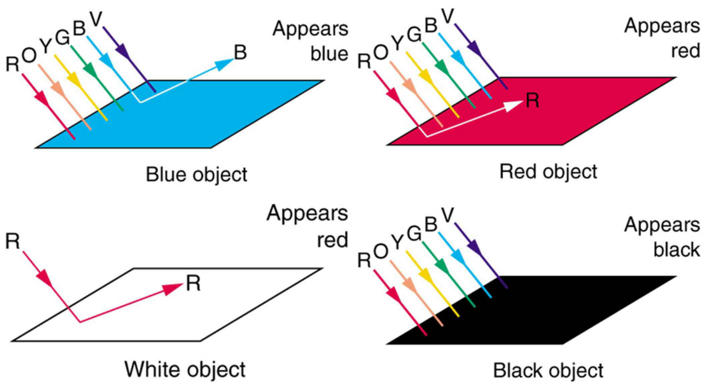
Cones are most concentrated in the fovea, the central region of the retina. There are no rods here. The fovea is at the center of the macula, a 5 mm diameter region responsible for our central vision. The cones work best in bright light and are responsible for high resolution vision. There are about 6 million cones in the human retina. There are three types of cones, and each type is sensitive to different ranges of wavelengths, as illustrated in [link]. A **simplified theory of color vision** is that there are three *primary colors* corresponding to the three types of cones. The thousands of other hues that we can distinguish among are created by various combinations of stimulations of the three types of cones. Color television uses a three-color system in which the screen is covered with equal numbers of red, green, and blue phosphor dots. The broad range of hues a viewer sees is produced by various combinations of these three colors. For example, you will perceive yellow when red and green are illuminated with the correct ratio of intensities. White may be sensed when all three are illuminated. Then, it would seem that all hues can be produced by adding three primary colors in various proportions. But there is an indication that color vision is more sophisticated. There is no unique set of three primary colors. Another set that works is yellow, green, and blue. A further indication of the need for a more complex theory of color vision is that various different combinations can produce the same hue. Yellow can be sensed with yellow light, or with a combination of red and green, and also with white light from which violet has been removed. The three-primary-colors aspect of color vision is well established; more sophisticated theories expand on it rather than deny it.



The image shows the relative sensitivity of the three types of cones, which are named according to wavelengths of greatest sensitivity. Rods are about 1000 times more sensitive, and their curve peaks at about 500 nm. Evidence for the three types of cones comes from direct measurements in animal and human eyes and testing of color blind people.

Consider why various objects display color—that is, why are feathers blue and red in a crimson rosella? The *true color of an object* is defined by its absorptive or reflective characteristics. [link] shows white light falling on three different objects, one pure blue, one pure red, and one black, as well as pure red light falling on a white object. Other hues are created by more

complex absorption characteristics. Pink, for example on a galah cockatoo, can be due to weak absorption of all colors except red. An object can appear a different color under non-white illumination. For example, a pure blue object illuminated with pure red light will *appear* black, because it absorbs all the red light falling on it. But, the true color of the object is blue, which is independent of illumination.



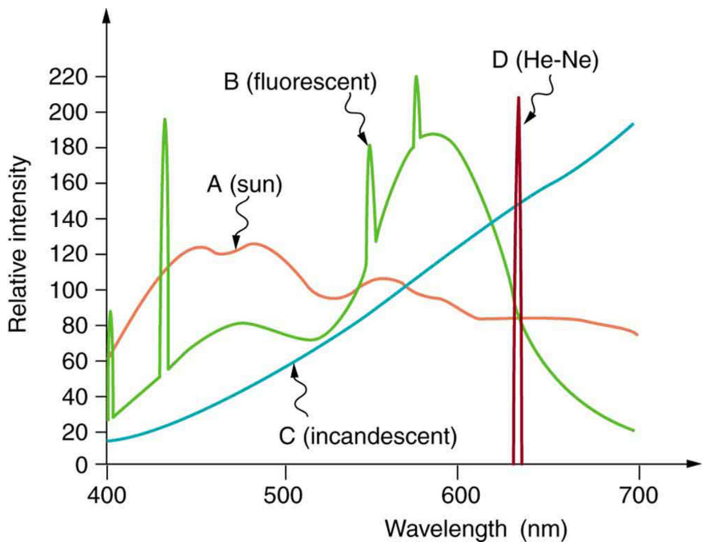
Absorption characteristics determine the true color of an object. Here, three objects are illuminated by white light, and one by pure red light. White is the equal mixture of all visible wavelengths; black is the absence of light.

Similarly, *light sources have colors* that are defined by the wavelengths they produce. A helium-neon laser emits pure red light. In fact, the phrase “pure red light” is defined by having a sharp constrained spectrum, a characteristic of laser light. The Sun produces a broad yellowish spectrum, fluorescent lights emit bluish-white light, and incandescent lights emit reddish-white hues as seen in [link]. As you would expect, you sense these colors when viewing the light source directly or when illuminating a white object with them. All of this fits neatly into the simplified theory that a combination of wavelengths produces various hues.

Note:

Take-Home Experiment: Exploring Color Addition

This activity is best done with plastic sheets of different colors as they allow more light to pass through to our eyes. However, thin sheets of paper and fabric can also be used. Overlay different colors of the material and hold them up to a white light. Using the theory described above, explain the colors you observe. You could also try mixing different crayon colors.

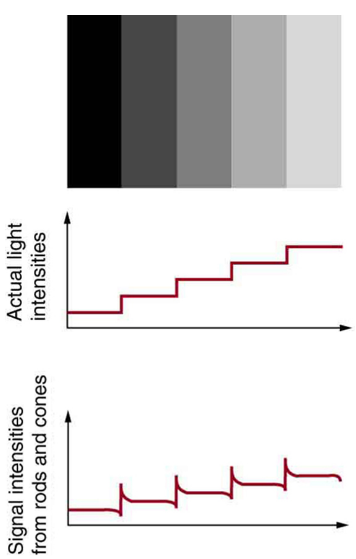


Emission spectra for various light sources are shown. Curve A is average sunlight at Earth’s surface, curve B is light from a fluorescent lamp, and curve C is the output of an incandescent light. The spike for a helium-neon laser (curve D) is due to its pure wavelength emission. The spikes in the fluorescent output are due to atomic spectra—a topic that will be explored later.

Color Constancy and a Modified Theory of Color Vision

The eye-brain color-sensing system can, by comparing various objects in its view, perceive the true color of an object under varying lighting conditions—an ability that is called **color constancy**. We can sense that a white tablecloth, for example, is white whether it is illuminated by sunlight, fluorescent light, or candlelight. The wavelengths entering the eye are quite different in each case, as the graphs in [link] imply, but our color vision can detect the true color by comparing the tablecloth with its surroundings.

Theories that take color constancy into account are based on a large body of anatomical evidence as well as perceptual studies. There are nerve connections among the light receptors on the retina, and there are far fewer nerve connections to the brain than there are rods and cones. This means that there is signal processing in the eye before information is sent to the brain. For example, the eye makes comparisons between adjacent light receptors and is very sensitive to edges as seen in [link]. Rather than responding simply to the light entering the eye, which is uniform in the various rectangles in this figure, the eye responds to the edges and senses false darkness variations.



The importance of edges is

shown. Although the grey strips are uniformly shaded, as indicated by the graph immediately below them, they do not appear uniform at all. Instead, they are perceived darker on the dark side and lighter on the light side of the edge, as shown in the bottom graph. This is due to nerve impulse processing in the eye.

One theory that takes various factors into account was advanced by Edwin Land (1909 – 1991), the creative founder of the Polaroid Corporation. Land proposed, based partly on his many elegant experiments, that the three types of cones are organized into systems called **retinexes**. Each retinex forms an image that is compared with the others, and the eye-brain system thus can compare a candle-illuminated white table cloth with its generally reddish surroundings and determine that it is actually white. This **retinex theory of color vision** is an example of modified theories of color vision that attempt to account for its subtleties. One striking experiment performed by Land demonstrates that some type of image comparison may produce color

vision. Two pictures are taken of a scene on black-and-white film, one using a red filter, the other a blue filter. Resulting black-and-white slides are then projected and superimposed on a screen, producing a black-and-white image, as expected. Then a red filter is placed in front of the slide taken with a red filter, and the images are again superimposed on a screen. You would expect an image in various shades of pink, but instead, the image appears to humans in full color with all the hues of the original scene. This implies that color vision can be induced by comparison of the black-and-white and red images. Color vision is not completely understood or explained, and the retinex theory is not totally accepted. It is apparent that color vision is much subtler than what a first look might imply.

Note:
PhET Explorations: Color Vision
Make a whole rainbow by mixing red, green, and blue light. Change the wavelength of a monochromatic beam or filter white light. View the light as a solid beam, or see the individual photons.
https://phet.colorado.edu/sims/html/color-vision/latest/color-vision_en.html

Section Summary

- The eye has four types of light receptors—rods and three types of color-sensitive cones.
- The rods are good for night vision, peripheral vision, and motion changes, while the cones are responsible for central vision and color.
- We perceive many hues, from light having mixtures of wavelengths.
- A simplified theory of color vision states that there are three primary colors, which correspond to the three types of cones, and that various combinations of the primary colors produce all the hues.
- The true color of an object is related to its relative absorption of various wavelengths of light. The color of a light source is related to the wavelengths it produces.

- Color constancy is the ability of the eye-brain system to discern the true color of an object illuminated by various light sources.
- The retinex theory of color vision explains color constancy by postulating the existence of three retinexes or image systems, associated with the three types of cones that are compared to obtain sophisticated information.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

A pure red object on a black background seems to disappear when illuminated with pure green light. Explain why.

Exercise:

Problem: What is color constancy, and what are its limitations?

Exercise:

Problem:

There are different types of color blindness related to the malfunction of different types of cones. Why would it be particularly useful to study those rare individuals who are color blind only in one eye or who have a different type of color blindness in each eye?

Exercise:

Problem:

Propose a way to study the function of the rods alone, given they can sense light about 1000 times dimmer than the cones.

Glossary

hues

identity of a color as it relates specifically to the spectrum

rods and cones
: two types of photoreceptors in the human retina; rods are responsible for vision at low light levels, while cones are active at higher light levels

simplified theory of color vision
: a theory that states that there are three primary colors, which correspond to the three types of cones

color constancy
: a part of the visual perception system that allows people to perceive color in a variety of conditions and to see some consistency in the color

retinex
: a theory proposed to explain color and brightness perception and constancies; is a combination of the words retina and cortex, which are the two areas responsible for the processing of visual information

retinex theory of color vision
: the ability to perceive color in an ambient-colored environment

Microscopes

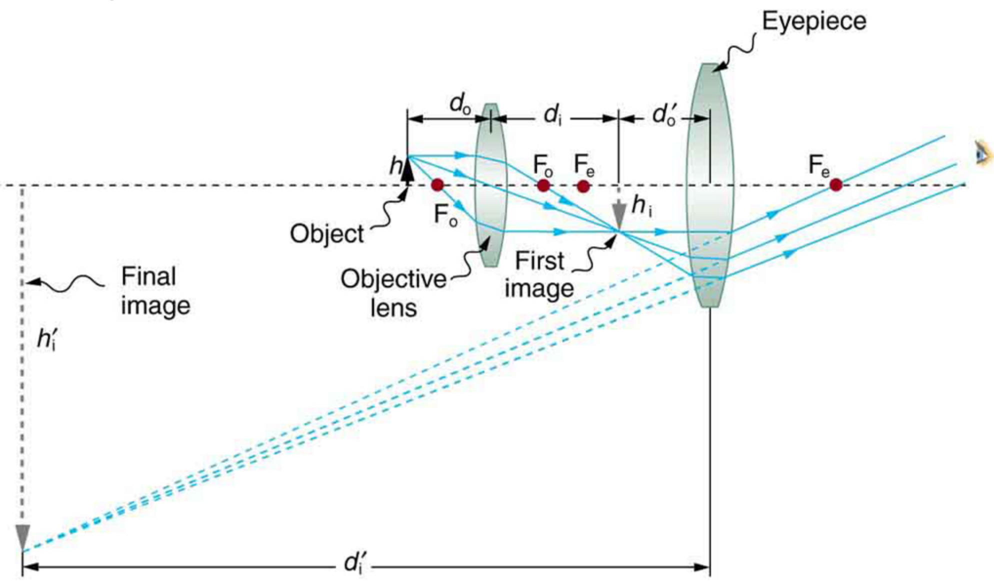
- Investigate different types of microscopes.
- Learn how image is formed in a compound microscope.

Although the eye is marvelous in its ability to see objects large and small, it obviously has limitations to the smallest details it can detect. Human desire to see beyond what is possible with the naked eye led to the use of optical instruments. In this section we will examine microscopes, instruments for enlarging the detail that we cannot see with the unaided eye. The microscope is a multiple-element system having more than a single lens or mirror. (See [link]) A microscope can be made from two convex lenses. The image formed by the first element becomes the object for the second element. The second element forms its own image, which is the object for the third element, and so on. Ray tracing helps to visualize the image formed. If the device is composed of thin lenses and mirrors that obey the thin lens equations, then it is not difficult to describe their behavior numerically.

Multiple lenses and mirrors are used in this microscope. (credit: U.S. Navy photo by Tom Watanabe)

Microscopes were first developed in the early 1600s by eyeglass makers in The Netherlands and Denmark. The simplest **compound microscope** is

constructed from two convex lenses as shown schematically in [link]. The first lens is called the **objective lens**, and has typical magnification values from $5\times$ to $100\times$. In standard microscopes, the objectives are mounted such that when you switch between objectives, the sample remains in focus. Objectives arranged in this way are described as parfocal. The second, the **eyepiece**, also referred to as the ocular, has several lenses which slide inside a cylindrical barrel. The focusing ability is provided by the movement of both the objective lens and the eyepiece. The purpose of a microscope is to magnify small objects, and both lenses contribute to the final magnification. Additionally, the final enlarged image is produced in a location far enough from the observer to be easily viewed, since the eye cannot focus on objects or images that are too close.



A compound microscope composed of two lenses, an objective and an eyepiece. The objective forms a case 1 image that is larger than the object. This first image is the object for the eyepiece. The eyepiece forms a case 2 final image that is further magnified.

To see how the microscope in [link] forms an image, we consider its two lenses in succession. The object is slightly farther away from the objective lens than its focal length f_o, producing a case 1 image that is larger than the

object. This first image is the object for the second lens, or eyepiece. The eyepiece is intentionally located so it can further magnify the image. The eyepiece is placed so that the first image is closer to it than its focal length f_{e}. Thus the eyepiece acts as a magnifying glass, and the final image is made even larger. The final image remains inverted, but it is farther from the observer, making it easy to view (the eye is most relaxed when viewing distant objects and normally cannot focus closer than 25 cm). Since each lens produces a magnification that multiplies the height of the image, it is apparent that the overall magnification m is the product of the individual magnifications:

Equation:

$$m = m_{\mathrm{o}} m_{\mathrm{e}},$$

where m_{o} is the magnification of the objective and m_{e} is the magnification of the eyepiece. This equation can be generalized for any combination of thin lenses and mirrors that obey the thin lens equations.

Note:

Overall Magnification

The overall magnification of a multiple-element system is the product of the individual magnifications of its elements.

Example:

Microscope Magnification

Calculate the magnification of an object placed 6.20 mm from a compound microscope that has a 6.00 mm focal length objective and a 50.0 mm focal length eyepiece. The objective and eyepiece are separated by 23.0 cm.

Strategy and Concept

This situation is similar to that shown in [link]. To find the overall magnification, we must find the magnification of the objective, then the magnification of the eyepiece. This involves using the thin lens equation.

Solution

The magnification of the objective lens is given as

Equation:

$$m_{\text{o}} = -\frac{d_{\text{i}}}{d_{\text{o}}},$$

where d_{o} and d_{i} are the object and image distances, respectively, for the objective lens as labeled in [link]. The object distance is given to be $d_{\text{o}} = 6.20\text{ mm}$, but the image distance d_{i} is not known. Isolating d_{i}, we have

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}} = \frac{1}{f_{\text{o}}} - \frac{1}{d_{\text{o}}},$$

where f_{o} is the focal length of the objective lens. Substituting known values gives

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}} = \frac{1}{6.00\text{ mm}} - \frac{1}{6.20\text{ mm}} = \frac{0.00538}{\text{mm}}.$$

We invert this to find d_{i}:

Equation:

$$d_{\text{i}} = 186\text{ mm}.$$

Substituting this into the expression for m_{o} gives

Equation:

$$m_{\text{o}} = -\frac{d_{\text{i}}}{d_{\text{o}}} = -\frac{186\text{ mm}}{6.20\text{ mm}} = -30.0.$$

Now we must find the magnification of the eyepiece, which is given by

Equation:

$$m_{\text{e}} = -\frac{d_{\text{i}}\prime}{d_{\text{o}}\prime},$$

where $d_i\prime$ and $d_o\prime$ are the image and object distances for the eyepiece (see [link]). The object distance is the distance of the first image from the eyepiece. Since the first image is 186 mm to the right of the objective and the eyepiece is 230 mm to the right of the objective, the object distance is $d_o\prime = 230\ \text{mm} - 186\ \text{mm} = 44.0\ \text{mm}$. This places the first image closer to the eyepiece than its focal length, so that the eyepiece will form a case 2 image as shown in the figure. We still need to find the location of the final image $d_i\prime$ in order to find the magnification. This is done as before to obtain a value for $1/d_i\prime$:

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_i\prime} = \frac{1}{f_e} - \frac{1}{d_o\prime} = \frac{1}{50.0\ \text{mm}} - \frac{1}{44.0\ \text{mm}} = -\frac{0.00273}{\text{mm}}.$$

Inverting gives

Equation:

$$d_i\prime = -\frac{\text{mm}}{0.00273} = -367\ \text{mm}.$$

The eyepiece’s magnification is thus

Equation:

$$m_e = -\frac{d_i\prime}{d_o\prime} = -\frac{-367\ \text{mm}}{44.0\ \text{mm}} = 8.33.$$

So the overall magnification is

Equation:

$$m = m_o m_e = (-30.0)(8.33) = -250.$$

Discussion

Both the objective and the eyepiece contribute to the overall magnification, which is large and negative, consistent with [link], where the image is seen to be large and inverted. In this case, the image is virtual and inverted, which cannot happen for a single element (case 2 and case 3 images for single elements are virtual and upright). The final image is 367 mm (0.367 m) to the left of the eyepiece. Had the eyepiece been placed farther from

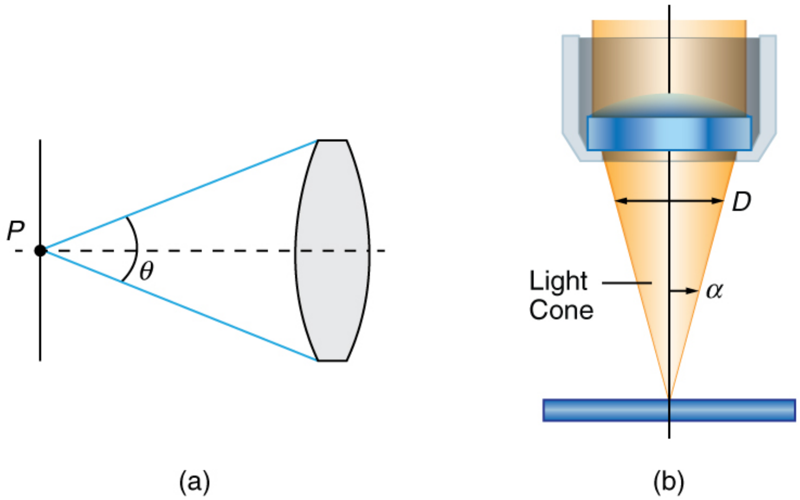
the objective, it could have formed a case 1 image to the right. Such an image could be projected on a screen, but it would be behind the head of the person in the figure and not appropriate for direct viewing. The procedure used to solve this example is applicable in any multiple-element system. Each element is treated in turn, with each forming an image that becomes the object for the next element. The process is not more difficult than for single lenses or mirrors, only lengthier.

Normal optical microscopes can magnify up to $1500\times$ with a theoretical resolution of $-0.2\ \mu\text{m}$. The lenses can be quite complicated and are composed of multiple elements to reduce aberrations. Microscope objective lenses are particularly important as they primarily gather light from the specimen. Three parameters describe microscope objectives: the **numerical aperture** (NA), the magnification (m), and the working distance. The NA is related to the light gathering ability of a lens and is obtained using the angle of acceptance θ formed by the maximum cone of rays focusing on the specimen (see [link](a)) and is given by

Equation:

$$\text{NA} = n\ \text{sin}\ \alpha,$$

where n is the refractive index of the medium between the lens and the specimen and $\alpha = \theta/2$. As the angle of acceptance given by θ increases, NA becomes larger and more light is gathered from a smaller focal region giving higher resolution. A 0.75NA objective gives more detail than a $0.10NA$ objective.



(a) The numerical aperture (NA) of a microscope objective lens refers to the light-gathering ability of the lens and is calculated using half the angle of acceptance θ. (b) Here, α is half the acceptance angle for light rays from a specimen entering a camera lens, and D is the diameter of the aperture that controls the light entering the lens.

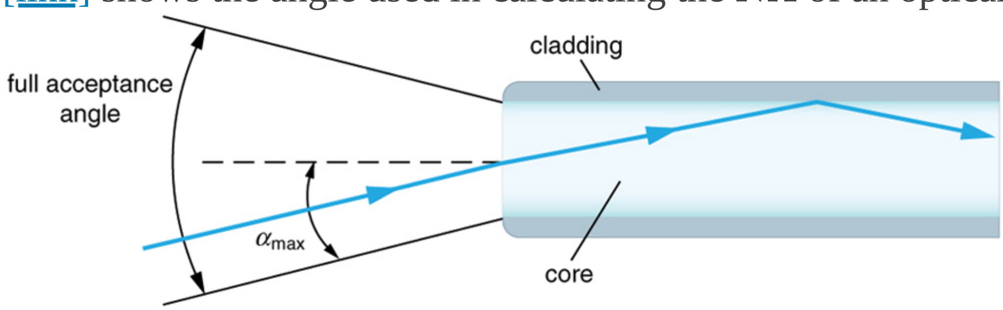
While the numerical aperture can be used to compare resolutions of various objectives, it does not indicate how far the lens could be from the specimen. This is specified by the "working distance," which is the distance (in mm usually) from the front lens element of the objective to the specimen, or cover glass. The higher the NA the closer the lens will be to the specimen and the more chances there are of breaking the cover slip and damaging both the specimen and the lens. The focal length of an objective lens is different than the working distance. This is because objective lenses are made of a combination of lenses and the focal length is measured from inside the barrel. The working distance is a parameter that microscopists can use more readily as it is measured from the outermost lens. The working distance decreases as the NA and magnification both increase.

The term $f/\#$ in general is called the f-number and is used to denote the light per unit area reaching the image plane. In photography, an image of an object at infinity is formed at the focal point and the f-number is given by the ratio of the focal length f of the lens and the diameter D of the aperture controlling the light into the lens (see [link](b)). If the acceptance angle is small the NA of the lens can also be used as given below.

Equation:

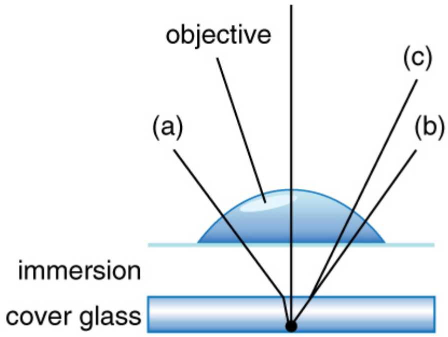
$$f/\# = \frac{f}{D} \approx \frac{1}{2\mathrm{NA}}.$$

As the f-number decreases, the camera is able to gather light from a larger angle, giving wide-angle photography. As usual there is a trade-off. A greater $f/\#$ means less light reaches the image plane. A setting of $f/16$ usually allows one to take pictures in bright sunlight as the aperture diameter is small. In optical fibers, light needs to be focused into the fiber. [link] shows the angle used in calculating the NA of an optical fiber.



Light rays enter an optical fiber. The numerical aperture of the optical fiber can be determined by using the angle α_{max}.

Can the NA be larger than 1.00? The answer is ‘yes’ if we use immersion lenses in which a medium such as oil, glycerine or water is placed between the objective and the microscope cover slip. This minimizes the mismatch in refractive indices as light rays go through different media, generally providing a greater light-gathering ability and an increase in resolution. [link] shows light rays when using air and immersion lenses.

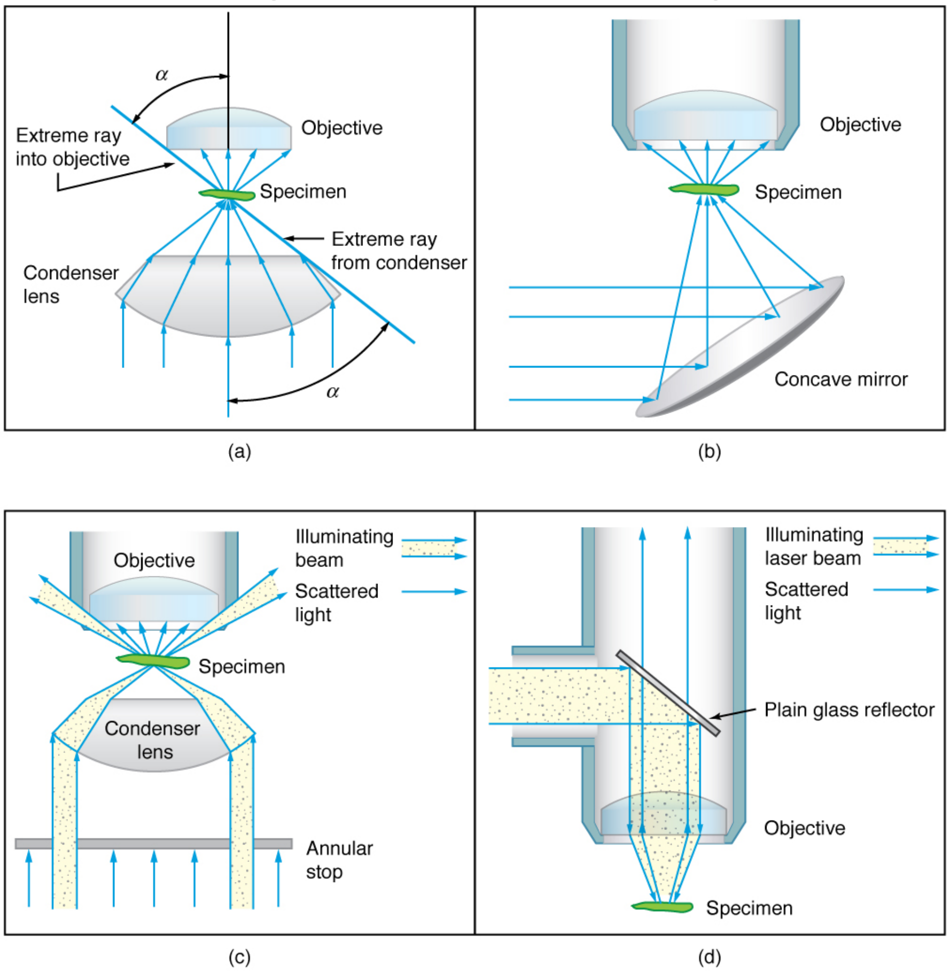


Light rays from a specimen entering the objective. Paths for immersion medium of air (a), water (b) $(n = 1.33)$, and oil (c) $(n = 1.51)$ are shown. The water and oil immersions allow more rays to enter the objective, increasing the resolution.

When using a microscope we do not see the entire extent of the sample. Depending on the eyepiece and objective lens we see a restricted region which we say is the field of view. The objective is then manipulated in two-dimensions above the sample to view other regions of the sample. Electronic scanning of either the objective or the sample is used in scanning microscopy. The image formed at each point during the scanning is combined using a computer to generate an image of a larger region of the sample at a selected magnification.

When using a microscope, we rely on gathering light to form an image. Hence most specimens need to be illuminated, particularly at higher magnifications, when observing details that are so small that they reflect only small amounts of light. To make such objects easily visible, the intensity of light falling on them needs to be increased. Special illuminating

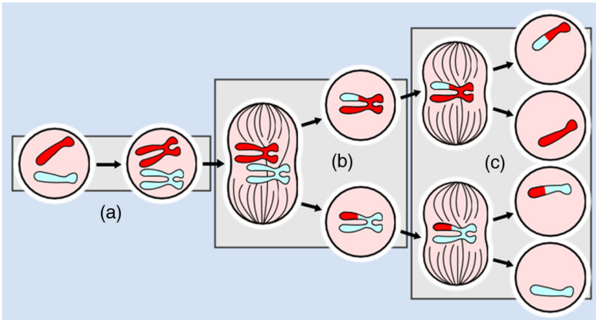
systems called condensers are used for this purpose. The type of condenser that is suitable for an application depends on how the specimen is examined, whether by transmission, scattering or reflecting. See [link] for an example of each. White light sources are common and lasers are often used. Laser light illumination tends to be quite intense and it is important to ensure that the light does not result in the degradation of the specimen.



Illumination of a specimen in a microscope. (a) Transmitted light from a condenser lens. (b) Transmitted light from a mirror condenser. (c) Dark field illumination by scattering (the illuminating beam misses the objective lens). (d) High magnification illumination with reflected light – normally laser light.

We normally associate microscopes with visible light but x ray and electron microscopes provide greater resolution. The focusing and basic physics is the same as that just described, even though the lenses require different technology. The electron microscope requires vacuum chambers so that the electrons can proceed unheeded. Magnifications of 50 million times provide the ability to determine positions of individual atoms within materials. An electron microscope is shown in [link]. We do not use our eyes to form images; rather images are recorded electronically and displayed on computers. In fact observing and saving images formed by optical microscopes on computers is now done routinely. Video recordings of what occurs in a microscope can be made for viewing by many people at later dates. Physics provides the science and tools needed to generate the sequence of time-lapse images of meiosis similar to the sequence sketched in [link].

An electron microscope has the capability to image individual atoms on a material. The microscope uses vacuum technology, sophisticated detectors and state of the art image processing software. (credit: Dave Pape)



The image shows a sequence of events that takes place during meiosis. (credit: PatríciaR, Wikimedia Commons; National Center for Biotechnology Information)

Note:
Take-Home Experiment: Make a Lens
Look through a clear glass or plastic bottle and describe what you see. Now fill the bottle with water and describe what you see. Use the water bottle as a lens to produce the image of a bright object and estimate the focal length of the water bottle lens. How is the focal length a function of the depth of water in the bottle?

Section Summary

- The microscope is a multiple-element system having more than a single lens or mirror.
- Many optical devices contain more than a single lens or mirror. These are analysed by considering each element sequentially. The image formed by the first is the object for the second, and so on. The same ray tracing and thin lens techniques apply to each lens element.

- The overall magnification of a multiple-element system is the product of the magnifications of its individual elements. For a two-element system with an objective and an eyepiece, this is
  Equation:
  $$m = m_{\text{o}} m_{\text{e}},$$
  where m_{o} is the magnification of the objective and m_{e} is the magnification of the eyepiece, such as for a microscope.
- Microscopes are instruments for allowing us to see detail we would not be able to see with the unaided eye and consist of a range of components.
- The eyepiece and objective contribute to the magnification. The numerical aperture (NA) of an objective is given by
  Equation:
  $$\text{NA} = n \sin \alpha$$
  where n is the refractive index and α the angle of acceptance.
- Immersion techniques are often used to improve the light gathering ability of microscopes. The specimen is illuminated by transmitted, scattered or reflected light though a condenser.
- The $f\ /\#$ describes the light gathering ability of a lens. It is given by
  Equation:
  $$f\ /\# = \frac{f}{D} \approx \frac{1}{2\,NA}.$$

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Geometric optics describes the interaction of light with macroscopic objects. Why, then, is it correct to use geometric optics to analyse a microscope’s image?

Exercise:

Problem:

The image produced by the microscope in [link] cannot be projected. Could extra lenses or mirrors project it? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Why not have the objective of a microscope form a case 2 image with a large magnification? (Hint: Consider the location of that image and the difficulty that would pose for using the eyepiece as a magnifier.)

Exercise:

Problem: What advantages do oil immersion objectives offer?

Exercise:

Problem:

How does the NA of a microscope compare with the NA of an optical fiber?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A microscope with an overall magnification of 800 has an objective that magnifies by 200. (a) What is the magnification of the eyepiece? (b) If there are two other objectives that can be used, having magnifications of 100 and 400, what other total magnifications are possible?

Solution:

(a) 4.00

(b) 1600

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What magnification is produced by a 0.150 cm focal length microscope objective that is 0.155 cm from the object being viewed? (b) What is the overall magnification if an $8\times$ eyepiece (one that produces a magnification of 8.00) is used?

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Where does an object need to be placed relative to a microscope for its 0.500 cm focal length objective to produce a magnification of –400 ? (b) Where should the 5.00 cm focal length eyepiece be placed to produce a further fourfold (4.00) magnification?

Solution:

(a) 0.501 cm

(b) Eyepiece should be 204 cm behind the objective lens.

Exercise:

Problem:

You switch from a $1.40NA\ 60\times$ oil immersion objective to a $1.40NA\ 60\times$ oil immersion objective. What are the acceptance angles for each? Compare and comment on the values. Which would you use first to locate the target area on your specimen?

Exercise:

Problem:

An amoeba is 0.305 cm away from the 0.300 cm focal length objective lens of a microscope. (a) Where is the image formed by the objective lens? (b) What is this image's magnification? (c) An eyepiece with a 2.00 cm focal length is placed 20.0 cm from the objective. Where is the final image? (d) What magnification is produced by the eyepiece? (e) What is the overall magnification? (See [link].)

Solution:

(a) +18.3 cm (on the eyepiece side of the objective lens)

(b) -60.0

(c) -11.3 cm (on the objective side of the eyepiece)

(d) +6.67

(e) -400

Exercise:

Problem:

You are using a standard microscope with a $0.10NA$ $4\times$ objective and switch to a $0.65NA$ $40\times$ objective. What are the acceptance angles for each? Compare and comment on the values. Which would you use first to locate the target area on of your specimen? (See [link].)

Exercise:

Problem: Unreasonable Results

Your friends show you an image through a microscope. They tell you that the microscope has an objective with a 0.500 cm focal length and an eyepiece with a 5.00 cm focal length. The resulting overall magnification is 250,000. Are these viable values for a microscope?

Glossary

compound microscope
: a microscope constructed from two convex lenses, the first serving as the ocular lens(close to the eye) and the second serving as the objective lens

objective lens
: the lens nearest to the object being examined

eyepiece
: the lens or combination of lenses in an optical instrument nearest to the eye of the observer

numerical aperture
: a number or measure that expresses the ability of a lens to resolve fine detail in an object being observed. Derived by mathematical formula

Equation:

$$\mathrm{NA} = n \sin \alpha,$$

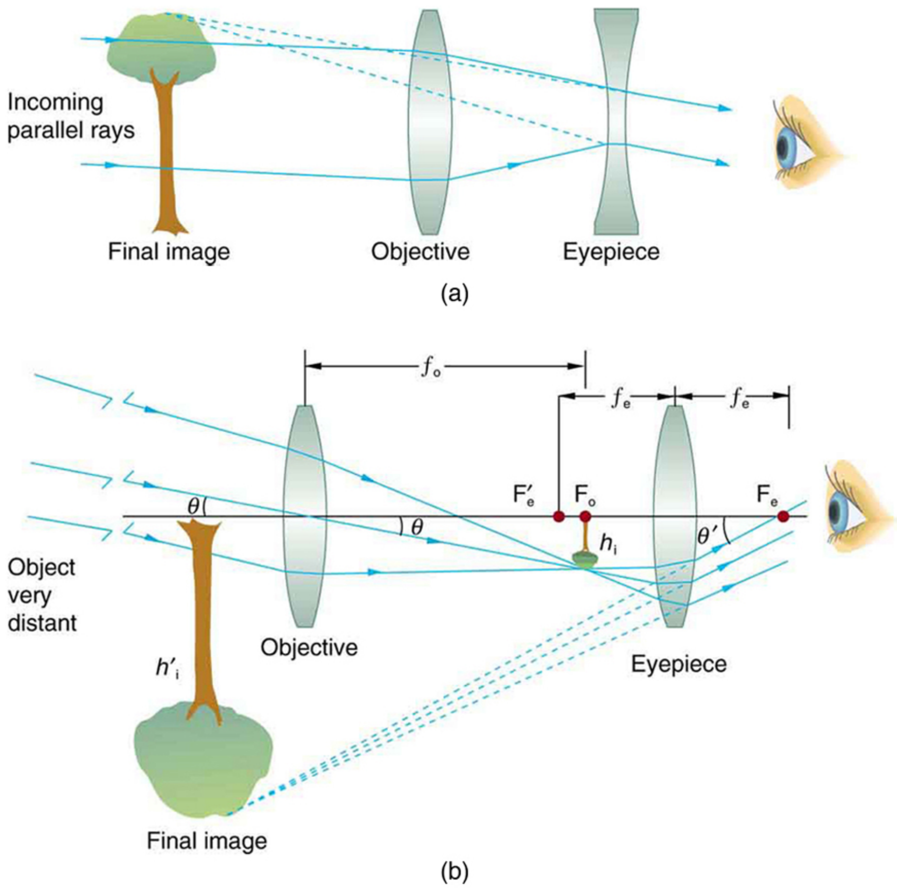
where n is the refractive index of the medium between the lens and the specimen and $\alpha = \theta/2$

Telescopes

- Outline the invention of a telescope.
- Describe the working of a telescope.

Telescopes are meant for viewing distant objects, producing an image that is larger than the image that can be seen with the unaided eye. Telescopes gather far more light than the eye, allowing dim objects to be observed with greater magnification and better resolution. Although Galileo is often credited with inventing the telescope, he actually did not. What he did was more important. He constructed several early telescopes, was the first to study the heavens with them, and made monumental discoveries using them. Among these are the moons of Jupiter, the craters and mountains on the Moon, the details of sunspots, and the fact that the Milky Way is composed of vast numbers of individual stars.

[link](a) shows a telescope made of two lenses, the convex objective and the concave eyepiece, the same construction used by Galileo. Such an arrangement produces an upright image and is used in spyglasses and opera glasses.



(a) Galileo made telescopes with a convex objective and a concave eyepiece. These produce an upright image and are used in spyglasses. (b) Most simple telescopes have two convex lenses. The objective forms a case 1 image that is the object for the eyepiece. The eyepiece forms a case 2 final image that is magnified.

The most common two-lens telescope, like the simple microscope, uses two convex lenses and is shown in [link](b). The object is so far away from the telescope that it is essentially at infinity compared with the focal lengths of the lenses ($d_o \approx \infty$). The first image is thus produced at $d_i = f_o$, as shown in the figure. To prove this, note that

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}} = \frac{1}{f_{\text{o}}} - \frac{1}{d_{\text{o}}} = \frac{1}{f_{\text{o}}} - \frac{1}{\infty}.$$

Because $1/\infty = 0$, this simplifies to

Equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_{\text{i}}} = \frac{1}{f_{\text{o}}},$$

which implies that $d_{\text{i}} = f_{\text{o}}$, as claimed. It is true that for any distant object and any lens or mirror, the image is at the focal length.

The first image formed by a telescope objective as seen in [link](b) will not be large compared with what you might see by looking at the object directly. For example, the spot formed by sunlight focused on a piece of paper by a magnifying glass is the image of the Sun, and it is small. The telescope eyepiece (like the microscope eyepiece) magnifies this first image. The distance between the eyepiece and the objective lens is made slightly less than the sum of their focal lengths so that the first image is closer to the eyepiece than its focal length. That is, $d_{\text{o}}\prime$ is less than f_{e}, and so the eyepiece forms a case 2 image that is large and to the left for easy viewing. If the angle subtended by an object as viewed by the unaided eye is θ, and the angle subtended by the telescope image is $\theta\prime$, then the **angular magnification** M is defined to be their ratio. That is, $M = \theta\prime/\theta$. It can be shown that the angular magnification of a telescope is related to the focal lengths of the objective and eyepiece; and is given by

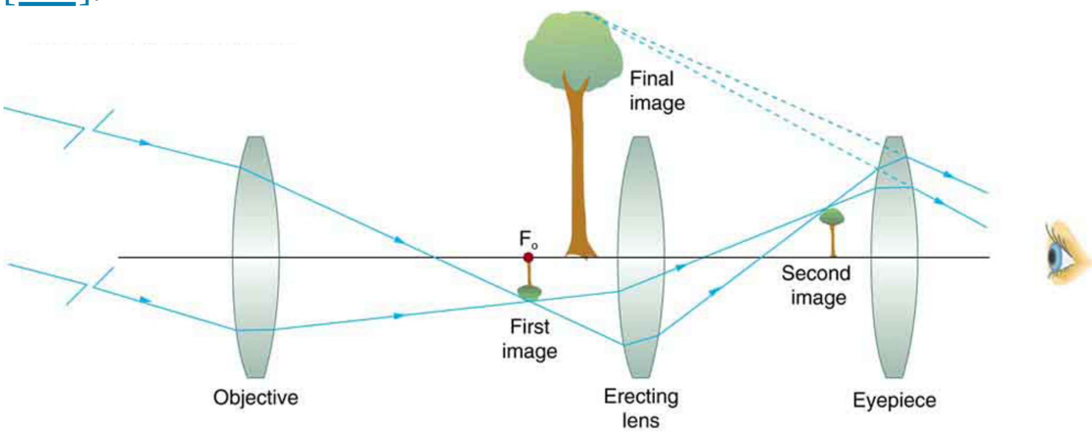
Equation:

$$M = \frac{\theta\prime}{\theta} = -\frac{f_{\text{o}}}{f_{\text{e}}}.$$

The minus sign indicates the image is inverted. To obtain the greatest angular magnification, it is best to have a long focal length objective and a short focal length eyepiece. The greater the angular magnification M, the larger an object will appear when viewed through a telescope, making more

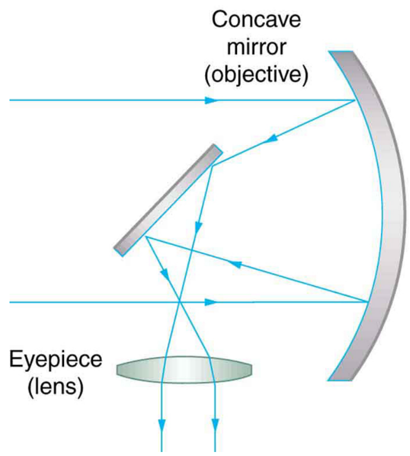
details visible. Limits to observable details are imposed by many factors, including lens quality and atmospheric disturbance.

The image in most telescopes is inverted, which is unimportant for observing the stars but a real problem for other applications, such as telescopes on ships or telescopic gun sights. If an upright image is needed, Galileo's arrangement in [link](a) can be used. But a more common arrangement is to use a third convex lens as an eyepiece, increasing the distance between the first two and inverting the image once again as seen in [link].



This arrangement of three lenses in a telescope produces an upright final image. The first two lenses are far enough apart that the second lens inverts the image of the first one more time. The third lens acts as a magnifier and keeps the image upright and in a location that is easy to view.

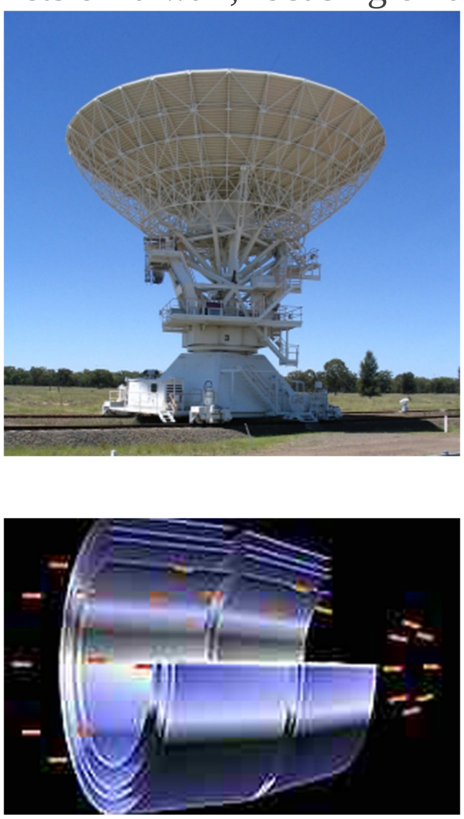
A telescope can also be made with a concave mirror as its first element or objective, since a concave mirror acts like a convex lens as seen in [link]. Flat mirrors are often employed in optical instruments to make them more compact or to send light to cameras and other sensing devices. There are many advantages to using mirrors rather than lenses for telescope objectives. Mirrors can be constructed much larger than lenses and can, thus, gather large amounts of light, as needed to view distant galaxies, for example. Large and relatively flat mirrors have very long focal lengths, so that great angular magnification is possible.



A two-element telescope composed of a mirror as the objective and a lens for the eyepiece is shown. This telescope forms an image in the same manner as the two-convex-lens telescope already discussed, but it does not suffer from chromatic aberrations. Such telescopes can gather more light, since larger mirrors than lenses can be constructed.

Telescopes, like microscopes, can utilize a range of frequencies from the electromagnetic spectrum. [link](a) shows the Australia Telescope Compact

Array, which uses six 22-m antennas for mapping the southern skies using radio waves. [link](b) shows the focusing of x rays on the Chandra X-ray Observatory—a satellite orbiting earth since 1999 and looking at high temperature events as exploding stars, quasars, and black holes. X rays, with much more energy and shorter wavelengths than RF and light, are mainly absorbed and not reflected when incident perpendicular to the medium. But they can be reflected when incident at small glancing angles, much like a rock will skip on a lake if thrown at a small angle. The mirrors for the Chandra consist of a long barrelled pathway and 4 pairs of mirrors to focus the rays at a point 10 meters away from the entrance. The mirrors are extremely smooth and consist of a glass ceramic base with a thin coating of metal (iridium). Four pairs of precision manufactured mirrors are exquisitely shaped and aligned so that x rays ricochet off the mirrors like bullets off a wall, focusing on a spot.



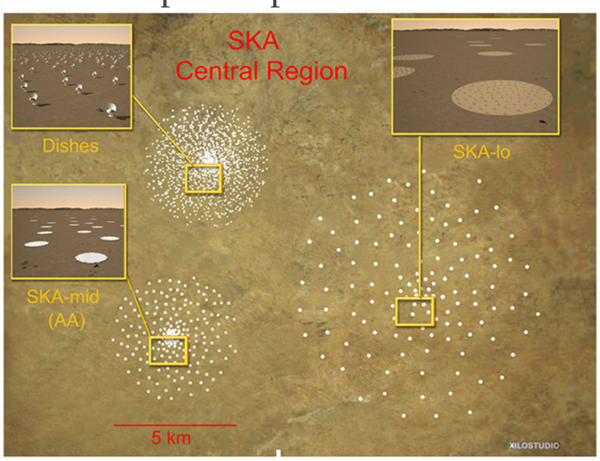
(a)

(b)

(a) The Australia Telescope Compact Array at Narrabri (500 km NW of Sydney). (credit: Ian

Bailey) (b) The focusing of x rays on the Chandra Observatory, a satellite orbiting earth. X rays ricochet off 4 pairs of mirrors forming a barrelled pathway leading to the focus point. (credit: NASA)

A current exciting development is a collaborative effort involving 17 countries to construct a Square Kilometre Array (SKA) of telescopes capable of covering from 80 MHz to 2 GHz. The initial stage of the project is the construction of the Australian Square Kilometre Array Pathfinder in Western Australia (see [link]). The project will use cutting-edge technologies such as **adaptive optics** in which the lens or mirror is constructed from lots of carefully aligned tiny lenses and mirrors that can be manipulated using computers. A range of rapidly changing distortions can be minimized by deforming or tilting the tiny lenses and mirrors. The use of adaptive optics in vision correction is a current area of research.



An artist’s impression of the Australian Square Kilometre Array Pathfinder in Western

Australia is displayed. (credit: SPDO, XILOSTUDIOS)

Section Summary

- Simple telescopes can be made with two lenses. They are used for viewing objects at large distances and utilize the entire range of the electromagnetic spectrum.
- The angular magnification M for a telescope is given by
  Equation:

  $$M = \frac{\theta\prime}{\theta} = -\frac{f_{\text{o}}}{f_{\text{e}}},$$

  where θ is the angle subtended by an object viewed by the unaided eye, $\theta\prime$ is the angle subtended by a magnified image, and f_{o} and f_{e} are the focal lengths of the objective and the eyepiece.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

If you want your microscope or telescope to project a real image onto a screen, how would you change the placement of the eyepiece relative to the objective?

Problem Exercises

Unless otherwise stated, the lens-to-retina distance is 2.00 cm.
Exercise:

Problem:

What is the angular magnification of a telescope that has a 100 cm focal length objective and a 2.50 cm focal length eyepiece?

Solution:

-40.0

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the distance between the objective and eyepiece lenses in the telescope in the above problem needed to produce a final image very far from the observer, where vision is most relaxed. Note that a telescope is normally used to view very distant objects.

Exercise:

Problem:

A large reflecting telescope has an objective mirror with a 10.0 m radius of curvature. What angular magnification does it produce when a 3.00 m focal length eyepiece is used?

Solution:

-1.67

Exercise:

Problem:

A small telescope has a concave mirror with a 2.00 m radius of curvature for its objective. Its eyepiece is a 4.00 cm focal length lens. (a) What is the telescope's angular magnification? (b) What angle is subtended by a 25,000 km diameter sunspot? (c) What is the angle of its telescopic image?

Exercise:

Problem:

A $7.5\times$ binocular produces an angular magnification of -7.50, acting like a telescope. (Mirrors are used to make the image upright.) If the binoculars have objective lenses with a 75.0 cm focal length, what is the focal length of the eyepiece lenses?

Solution:

$+10.0\text{ cm}$

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a telescope of the type used by Galileo, having a convex objective and a concave eyepiece as illustrated in [link](a). Construct a problem in which you calculate the location and size of the image produced. Among the things to be considered are the focal lengths of the lenses and their relative placements as well as the size and location of the object. Verify that the angular magnification is greater than one. That is, the angle subtended at the eye by the image is greater than the angle subtended by the object.

Glossary

adaptive optics
: optical technology in which computers adjust the lenses and mirrors in a device to correct for image distortions

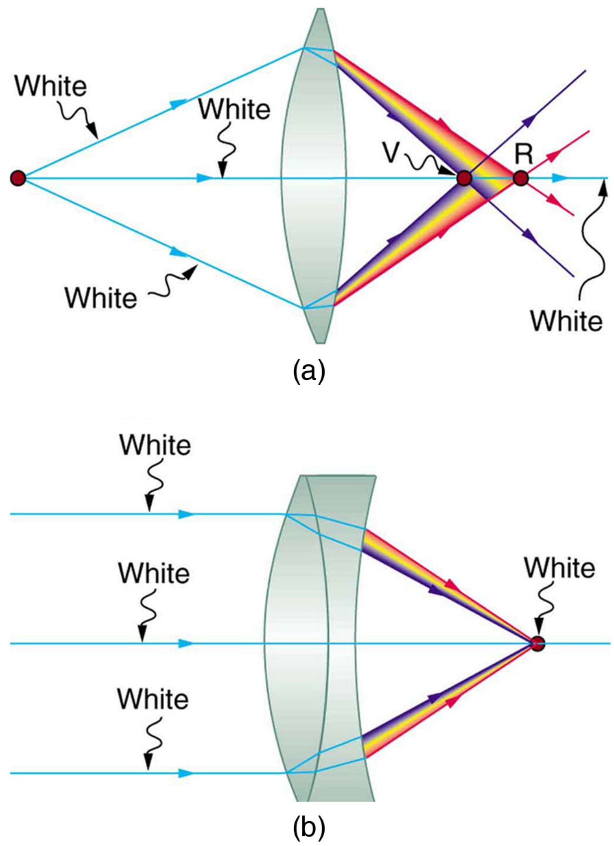
angular magnification
: a ratio related to the focal lengths of the objective and eyepiece and given as $M=-\frac{f_{\text{o}}}{f_{\text{e}}}$

Aberrations

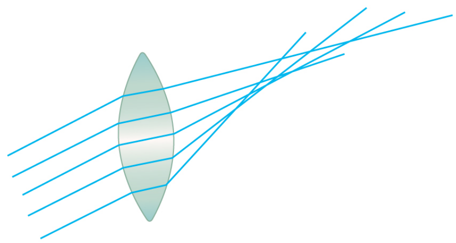
- Describe optical aberration.

Real lenses behave somewhat differently from how they are modeled using the thin lens equations, producing **aberrations**. An aberration is a distortion in an image. There are a variety of aberrations due to a lens size, material, thickness, and position of the object. One common type of aberration is chromatic aberration, which is related to color. Since the index of refraction of lenses depends on color or wavelength, images are produced at different places and with different magnifications for different colors. (The law of reflection is independent of wavelength, and so mirrors do not have this problem. This is another advantage for mirrors in optical systems such as telescopes.) [link](a) shows chromatic aberration for a single convex lens and its partial correction with a two-lens system. Violet rays are bent more than red, since they have a higher index of refraction and are thus focused closer to the lens. The diverging lens partially corrects this, although it is usually not possible to do so completely. Lenses of different materials and having different dispersions may be used. For example an achromatic doublet consisting of a converging lens made of crown glass and a diverging lens made of flint glass in contact can dramatically reduce chromatic aberration (see [link](b)).

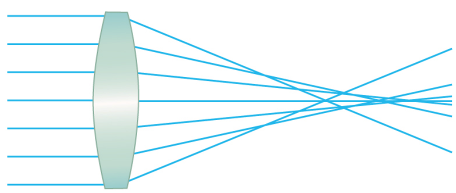
Quite often in an imaging system the object is off-center. Consequently, different parts of a lens or mirror do not refract or reflect the image to the same point. This type of aberration is called a coma and is shown in [link]. The image in this case often appears pear-shaped. Another common aberration is spherical aberration where rays converging from the outer edges of a lens converge to a focus closer to the lens and rays closer to the axis focus further (see [link]). Aberrations due to astigmatism in the lenses of the eyes are discussed in Vision Correction, and a chart used to detect astigmatism is shown in [link]. Such aberrations and can also be an issue with manufactured lenses.



(a) Chromatic aberration is caused by the dependence of a lens’s index of refraction on color (wavelength). The lens is more powerful for violet (V) than for red (R), producing images with different locations and magnifications. (b) Multiple-lens systems can partially correct chromatic aberrations, but they may require lenses of different materials and add to the expense of optical systems such as cameras.



A coma is an aberration caused by an object that is off-center, often resulting in a pear-shaped image. The rays originate from points that are not on the optical axis and they do not converge at one common focal point.



Spherical aberration is caused by rays focusing at different distances from the lens.

The image produced by an optical system needs to be bright enough to be discerned. It is often a challenge to obtain a sufficiently bright image. The brightness is determined by the amount of light passing through the optical system. The optical components determining the brightness are the diameter of the lens and the diameter of pupils, diaphragms or aperture stops placed

in front of lenses. Optical systems often have entrance and exit pupils to specifically reduce aberrations but they inevitably reduce brightness as well. Consequently, optical systems need to strike a balance between the various components used. The iris in the eye dilates and constricts, acting as an entrance pupil. You can see objects more clearly by looking through a small hole made with your hand in the shape of a fist. Squinting, or using a small hole in a piece of paper, also will make the object sharper.

So how are aberrations corrected? The lenses may also have specially shaped surfaces, as opposed to the simple spherical shape that is relatively easy to produce. Expensive camera lenses are large in diameter, so that they can gather more light, and need several elements to correct for various aberrations. Further, advances in materials science have resulted in lenses with a range of refractive indices—technically referred to as graded index (GRIN) lenses. Spectacles often have the ability to provide a range of focusing ability using similar techniques. GRIN lenses are particularly important at the end of optical fibers in endoscopes. Advanced computing techniques allow for a range of corrections on images after the image has been collected and certain characteristics of the optical system are known. Some of these techniques are sophisticated versions of what are available on commercial packages like Adobe Photoshop.

Section Summary

- Aberrations or image distortions can arise due to the finite thickness of optical instruments, imperfections in the optical components, and limitations on the ways in which the components are used.
- The means for correcting aberrations range from better components to computational techniques.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

List the various types of aberrations. What causes them and how can each be reduced?

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem: **Integrated Concepts**

(a) During laser vision correction, a brief burst of 193 nm ultraviolet light is projected onto the cornea of the patient. It makes a spot 1.00 mm in diameter and deposits 0.500 mJ of energy. Calculate the depth of the layer ablated, assuming the corneal tissue has the same properties as water and is initially at 34.0°C. The tissue's temperature is increased to 100°C and evaporated without further temperature increase.

(b) Does your answer imply that the shape of the cornea can be finely controlled?

Solution:

(a) $0.251\ \mu\text{m}$

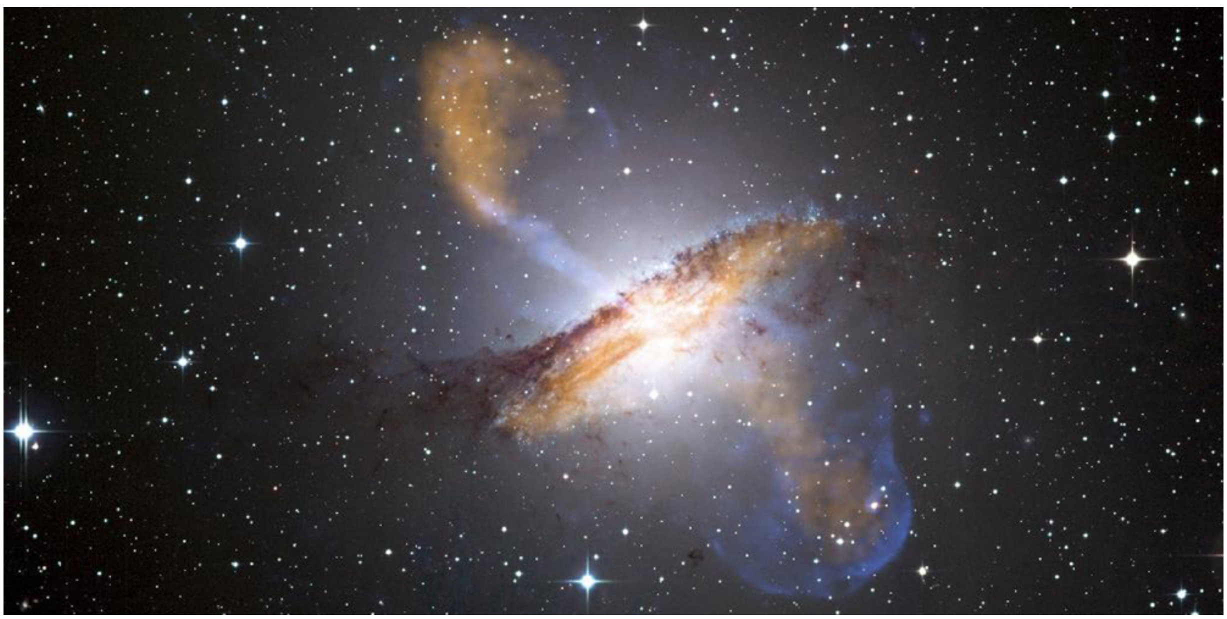
(b) Yes, this thickness implies that the shape of the cornea can be very finely controlled, producing normal distant vision in more than 90% of patients.

Glossary

aberration
: failure of rays to converge at one focus because of limitations or defects in a lens or mirror

Introduction to Frontiers of Physics
class="introduction"

This galaxy is ejecting huge jets of matter, powered by an immensely massive black hole at its center. (credit: X-ray: NASA/CXC/CfA/R. Kraft et al.)



Frontiers are exciting. There is mystery, surprise, adventure, and discovery. The satisfaction of finding the answer to a question is made keener by the fact that the answer always leads to a new question. The picture of nature becomes more complete, yet nature retains its sense of mystery and never loses its ability to awe us. The view of physics is beautiful looking both backward and forward in time. What marvelous patterns we have discovered. How clever nature seems in its rules and connections. How awesome. And we continue looking ever deeper and ever further, probing

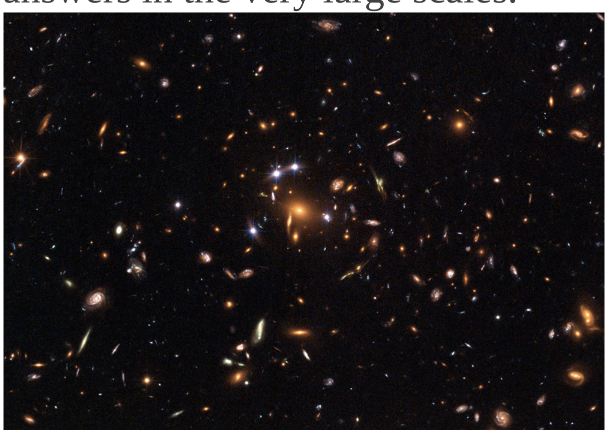
the basic structure of matter, energy, space, and time and wondering about the scope of the universe, its beginnings and future.

You are now in a wonderful position to explore the forefronts of physics, both the new discoveries and the unanswered questions. With the concepts, qualitative and quantitative, the problem-solving skills, the feeling for connections among topics, and all the rest you have mastered, you can more deeply appreciate and enjoy the brief treatments that follow. Years from now you will still enjoy the quest with an insight all the greater for your efforts.

Cosmology and Particle Physics

- Discuss the expansion of the universe.
- Explain the Big Bang.

Look at the sky on some clear night when you are away from city lights. There you will see thousands of individual stars and a faint glowing background of millions more. The Milky Way, as it has been called since ancient times, is an arm of our galaxy of stars—the word *galaxy* coming from the Greek word *galaxias*, meaning milky. We know a great deal about our Milky Way galaxy and of the billions of other galaxies beyond its fringes. But they still provoke wonder and awe (see [link]). And there are still many questions to be answered. Most remarkable when we view the universe on the large scale is that once again explanations of its character and evolution are tied to the very small scale. Particle physics and the questions being asked about the very small scales may also have their answers in the very large scales.

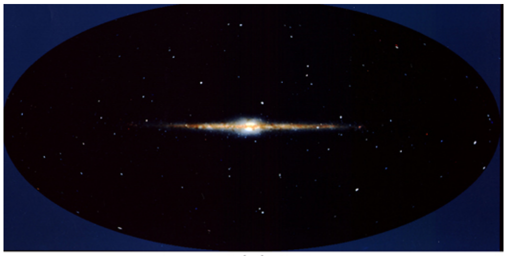


Take a moment to contemplate these clusters of galaxies, photographed by the Hubble Space Telescope. Trillions of stars linked by gravity in fantastic forms, glowing with light and showing evidence of undiscovered matter. What are they like, these myriad stars? How did they evolve? What can

they tell us of matter, energy, space, and time? (credit: NASA, ESA, K. Sharon (Tel Aviv University) and E. Ofek (Caltech))

As has been noted in numerous Things Great and Small vignettes, this is not the first time the large has been explained by the small and vice versa. Newton realized that the nature of gravity on Earth that pulls an apple to the ground could explain the motion of the moon and planets so much farther away. Minute atoms and molecules explain the chemistry of substances on a much larger scale. Decays of tiny nuclei explain the hot interior of the Earth. Fusion of nuclei likewise explains the energy of stars. Today, the patterns in particle physics seem to be explaining the evolution and character of the universe. And the nature of the universe has implications for unexplored regions of particle physics.

Cosmology is the study of the character and evolution of the universe. What are the major characteristics of the universe as we know them today? First, there are approximately 10^{11} galaxies in the observable part of the universe. An average galaxy contains more than 10^{11} stars, with our Milky Way galaxy being larger than average, both in its number of stars and its dimensions. Ours is a spiral-shaped galaxy with a diameter of about 100,000 light years and a thickness of about 2000 light years in the arms with a central bulge about 10,000 light years across. The Sun lies about 30,000 light years from the center near the galactic plane. There are significant clouds of gas, and there is a halo of less-dense regions of stars surrounding the main body. (See [link].) Evidence strongly suggests the existence of a large amount of additional matter in galaxies that does not produce light—the mysterious dark matter we shall later discuss.



(a)

(b)

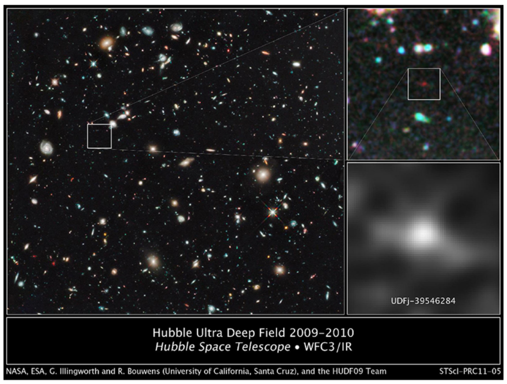
(c)

The Milky Way galaxy is typical of large spiral galaxies in its size, its shape, and the presence of gas and dust. We are fortunate to be in a location where we can see out of the galaxy and observe the vastly larger and fascinating universe

around us. (a) Side view. (b) View from above. (c) The Milky Way as seen from Earth. (credits: (a) NASA, (b) Nick Risinger, (c) Andy)

Distances are great even within our galaxy and are measured in light years (the distance traveled by light in one year). The average distance between galaxies is on the order of a million light years, but it varies greatly with galaxies forming clusters such as shown in [link]. The Magellanic Clouds, for example, are small galaxies close to our own, some 160,000 light years from Earth. The Andromeda galaxy is a large spiral galaxy like ours and lies 2 million light years away. It is just visible to the naked eye as an extended glow in the Andromeda constellation. Andromeda is the closest large galaxy in our local group, and we can see some individual stars in it with our larger telescopes. The most distant known galaxy is 14 billion light years from Earth—a truly incredible distance. (See [link].)

(a)



(b)

(a) Andromeda is the closest large galaxy, at 2 million light years distance, and is very similar to our Milky Way. The blue regions harbor young and emerging stars, while dark streaks are vast clouds of gas and dust. A smaller satellite galaxy is clearly visible. (b) The box indicates what may be the most distant known galaxy, estimated to be 13 billion light years from us. It exists in a much older part of the universe. (credit: NASA, ESA, G.

Illingworth (University of California, Santa Cruz), R. Bouwens (University of California, Santa Cruz and Leiden University), and the HUDF09 Team)

Consider the fact that the light we receive from these vast distances has been on its way to us for a long time. In fact, the time in years is the same as the distance in light years. For example, the Andromeda galaxy is 2 million light years away, so that the light now reaching us left it 2 million years ago. If we could be there now, Andromeda would be different. Similarly, light from the most distant galaxy left it 14 billion years ago. We have an incredible view of the past when looking great distances. We can try to see if the universe was different then—if distant galaxies are more tightly packed or have younger-looking stars, for example, than closer galaxies, in which case there has been an evolution in time. But the problem is that the uncertainties in our data are great. Cosmology is almost typified by these large uncertainties, so that we must be especially cautious in drawing conclusions. One consequence is that there are more questions than answers, and so there are many competing theories. Another consequence is that any hard data produce a major result. Discoveries of some importance are being made on a regular basis, the hallmark of a field in its golden age.

Perhaps the most important characteristic of the universe is that all galaxies except those in our local cluster seem to be moving away from us at speeds proportional to their distance from our galaxy. It looks as if a gigantic explosion, universally called the **Big Bang**, threw matter out some billions of years ago. This amazing conclusion is based on the pioneering work of Edwin Hubble (1889–1953), the American astronomer. In the 1920s, Hubble first demonstrated conclusively that other galaxies, many previously called nebulae or clouds of stars, were outside our own. He then found that all but the closest galaxies have a red shift in their hydrogen spectra that is proportional to their distance. The explanation is that there is a **cosmological red shift** due to the expansion of space itself. The photon

wavelength is stretched in transit from the source to the observer. Double the distance, and the red shift is doubled. While this cosmological red shift is often called a Doppler shift, it is not—space itself is expanding. There is no center of expansion in the universe. All observers see themselves as stationary; the other objects in space appear to be moving away from them. Hubble was directly responsible for discovering that the universe was much larger than had previously been imagined and that it had this amazing characteristic of rapid expansion.

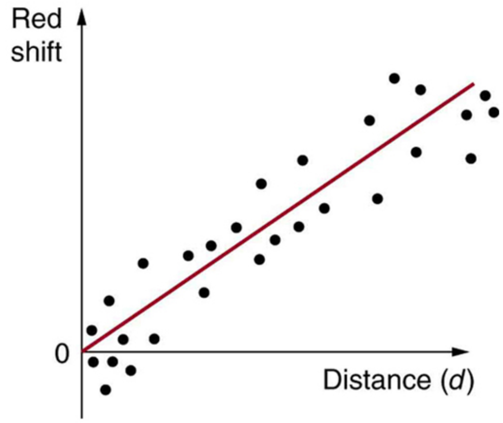
Universal expansion on the scale of galactic clusters (that is, galaxies at smaller distances are not uniformly receding from one another) is an integral part of modern cosmology. For galaxies farther away than about 50 Mly (50 million light years), the expansion is uniform with variations due to local motions of galaxies within clusters. A representative recession velocity v can be obtained from the simple formula

Equation:

$$\mathrm{v} = H_0 d,$$

where d is the distance to the galaxy and H_0 is the **Hubble constant**. The Hubble constant is a central concept in cosmology. Its value is determined by taking the slope of a graph of velocity versus distance, obtained from red shift measurements, such as shown in [link]. We shall use an approximate value of $H_0 = 20\ \text{km/s} \cdot\ \text{Mly}$. Thus, $v = H_0 d$ is an average behavior for all but the closest galaxies. For example, a galaxy 100 Mly away (as determined by its size and brightness) typically moves away from us at a speed of $v = (20\ \text{km/s} \cdot\ \text{Mly})(100\ \text{Mly}) = 2000\ \text{km/s}$. There can be variations in this speed due to so-called local motions or interactions with neighboring galaxies. Conversely, if a galaxy is found to be moving away from us at speed of 100,000 km/s based on its red shift, it is at a distance

$d = v/H_0 = (10{,}000\ \text{km/s})/(20\ \text{km/s} \cdot\ \text{Mly}) = 5000\ \text{Mly} = 5\ \text{Gly}$ or 5×10^9 ly. This last calculation is approximate, because it assumes the expansion rate was the same 5 billion years ago as now. A similar calculation in Hubble’s measurement changed the notion that the universe is in a steady state.

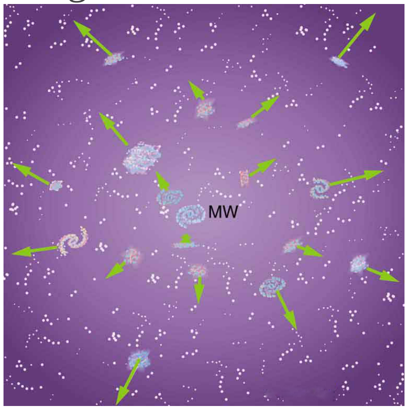


This graph of red shift versus distance for galaxies shows a linear relationship, with larger red shifts at greater distances, implying an expanding universe. The slope gives an approximate value for the expansion rate. (credit: John Cub).

One of the most intriguing developments recently has been the discovery that the expansion of the universe may be *faster now* than in the past, rather than slowing due to gravity as expected. Various groups have been looking, in particular, at supernovas in moderately distant galaxies (less than 1 Gly) to get improved distance measurements. Those distances are larger than expected for the observed galactic red shifts, implying the expansion was slower when that light was emitted. This has cosmological consequences that are discussed in Dark Matter and Closure. The first results, published in 1999, are only the beginning of emerging data, with astronomy now entering a data-rich era.

[link] shows how the recession of galaxies looks like the remnants of a gigantic explosion, the famous Big Bang. Extrapolating backward in time,

the Big Bang would have occurred between 13 and 15 billion years ago when all matter would have been at a point. Questions instantly arise. What caused the explosion? What happened before the Big Bang? Was there a before, or did time start then? Will the universe expand forever, or will gravity reverse it into a Big Crunch? And is there other evidence of the Big Bang besides the well-documented red shifts?

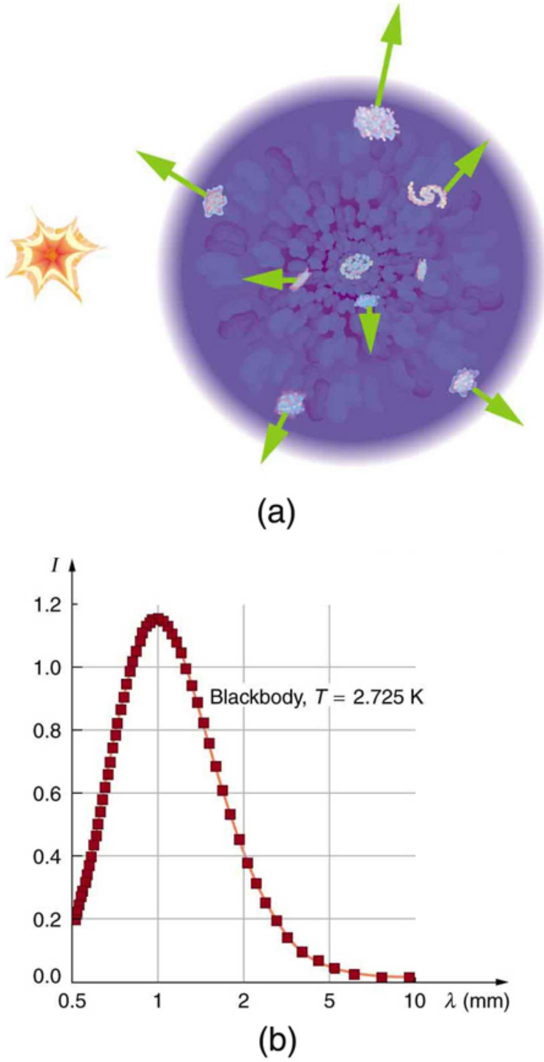


Galaxies are flying apart from one another, with the more distant moving faster as if a primordial explosion expelled the matter from which they formed. The most distant known galaxies move nearly at the speed of light relative to us.

The Russian-born American physicist George Gamow (1904–1968) was among the first to note that, if there was a Big Bang, the remnants of the primordial fireball should still be evident and should be blackbody radiation. Since the radiation from this fireball has been traveling to us

since shortly after the Big Bang, its wavelengths should be greatly stretched. It will look as if the fireball has cooled in the billions of years since the Big Bang. Gamow and collaborators predicted in the late 1940s that there should be blackbody radiation from the explosion filling space with a characteristic temperature of about 7 K. Such blackbody radiation would have its peak intensity in the microwave part of the spectrum. (See [link].) In 1964, Arno Penzias and Robert Wilson, two American scientists working with Bell Telephone Laboratories on a low-noise radio antenna, detected the radiation and eventually recognized it for what it is.

[link](b) shows the spectrum of this microwave radiation that permeates space and is of cosmic origin. It is the most perfect blackbody spectrum known, and the temperature of the fireball remnant is determined from it to be $2.725 \pm 0.002\text{ K}$. The detection of what is now called the **cosmic microwave background** (CMBR) was so important (generally considered as important as Hubble's detection that the galactic red shift is proportional to distance) that virtually every scientist has accepted the expansion of the universe as fact. Penzias and Wilson shared the 1978 Nobel Prize in Physics for their discovery.



(a) The Big Bang is used to explain the present observed expansion of the universe. It was an incredibly energetic explosion some 10 to 20 billion years ago. After expanding and cooling, galaxies form inside the now-cold remnants of the primordial fireball. (b) The spectrum of cosmic microwave radiation is the most perfect blackbody

spectrum ever detected. It is characteristic of a temperature of 2.725 K, the expansion-cooled temperature of the Big Bang's remnant. This radiation can be measured coming from any direction in space not obscured by some other source. It is compelling evidence of the creation of the universe in a gigantic explosion, already indicated by galactic red shifts.

Note:
Making Connections: Cosmology and Particle Physics
There are many connections of cosmology—by definition involving physics on the largest scale—with particle physics—by definition physics on the smallest scale. Among these are the dominance of matter over antimatter, the nearly perfect uniformity of the cosmic microwave background, and the mere existence of galaxies.

Matter versus antimatter
We know from direct observation that antimatter is rare. The Earth and the solar system are nearly pure matter. Space probes and cosmic rays give direct evidence—the landing of the Viking probes on Mars would have been spectacular explosions of mutual annihilation energy if Mars were antimatter. We also know that most of the universe is dominated by matter. This is proven by the lack of annihilation radiation coming to us from space, particularly the relative absence of 0.511-MeV γ rays created by the

mutual annihilation of electrons and positrons. It seemed possible that there could be entire solar systems or galaxies made of antimatter in perfect symmetry with our matter-dominated systems. But the interactions between stars and galaxies would sometimes bring matter and antimatter together in large amounts. The annihilation radiation they would produce is simply not observed. Antimatter in nature is created in particle collisions and in β^+ decays, but only in small amounts that quickly annihilate, leaving almost pure matter surviving.

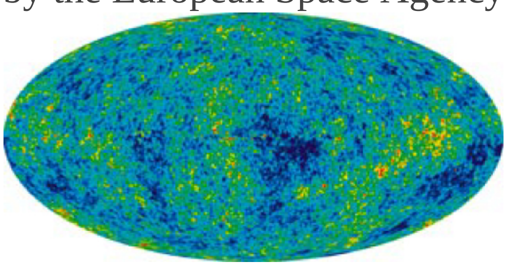
Particle physics seems symmetric in matter and antimatter. Why isn't the cosmos? The answer is that particle physics is not quite perfectly symmetric in this regard. The decay of one of the neutral K-mesons, for example, preferentially creates more matter than antimatter. This is caused by a fundamental small asymmetry in the basic forces. This small asymmetry produced slightly more matter than antimatter in the early universe. If there was only one part in 10^9 more matter (a small asymmetry), the rest would annihilate pair for pair, leaving nearly pure matter to form the stars and galaxies we see today. So the vast number of stars we observe may be only a tiny remnant of the original matter created in the Big Bang. Here at last we see a very real and important asymmetry in nature. Rather than be disturbed by an asymmetry, most physicists are impressed by how small it is. Furthermore, if the universe were completely symmetric, the mutual annihilation would be more complete, leaving far less matter to form us and the universe we know.

How can something so old have so few wrinkles?

A troubling aspect of cosmic microwave background radiation (CMBR) was soon recognized. True, the CMBR verified the Big Bang, had the correct temperature, and had a blackbody spectrum as expected. But the CMBR was *too* smooth—it looked identical in every direction. Galaxies and other similar entities could not be formed without the existence of fluctuations in the primordial stages of the universe and so there should be hot and cool spots in the CMBR, nicknamed wrinkles, corresponding to dense and sparse regions of gas caused by turbulence or early fluctuations. Over time, dense regions would contract under gravity and form stars and galaxies. Why aren't the fluctuations there? (This is a good example of an answer producing more questions.) Furthermore, galaxies are observed very

far from us, so that they formed very long ago. The problem was to explain how galaxies could form so early and so quickly after the Big Bang if its remnant fingerprint is perfectly smooth. The answer is that if you look very closely, the CMBR is not perfectly smooth, only extremely smooth.

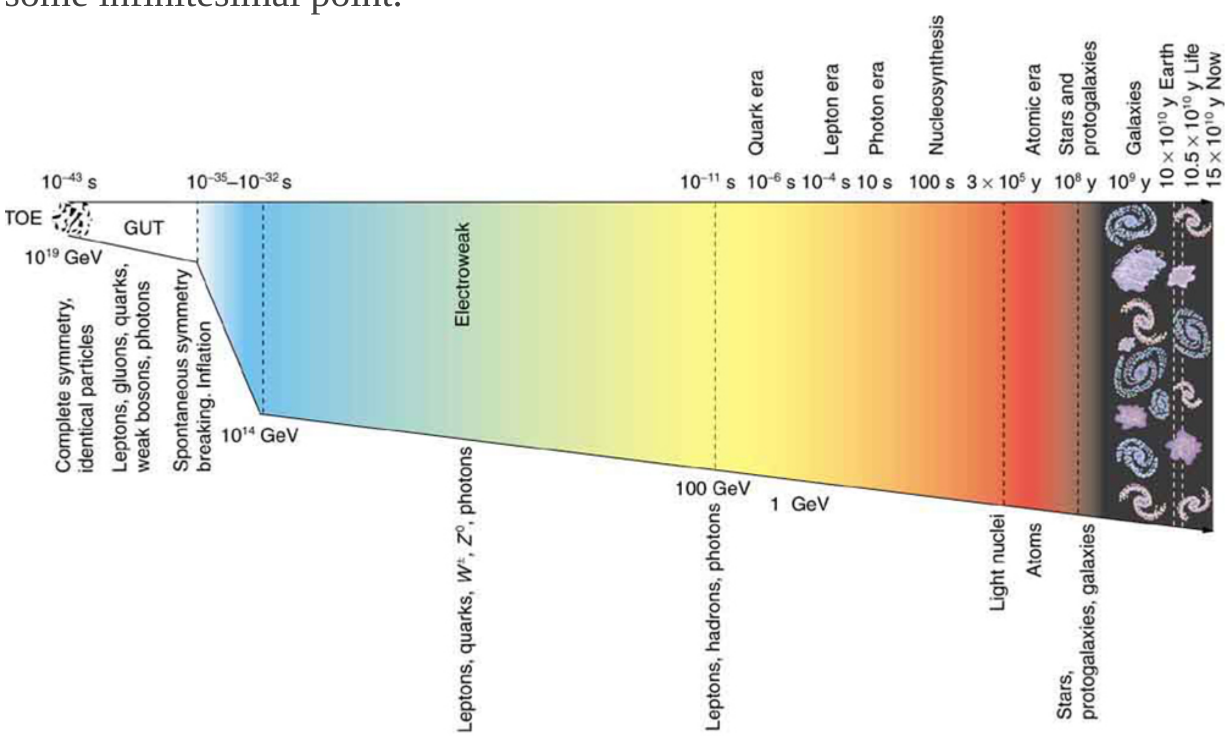
A satellite called the Cosmic Background Explorer (COBE) carried an instrument that made very sensitive and accurate measurements of the CMBR. In April of 1992, there was extraordinary publicity of COBE's first results—there were small fluctuations in the CMBR. Further measurements were carried out by experiments including NASA's Wilkinson Microwave Anisotropy Probe (WMAP), which launched in 2001. Data from WMAP provided a much more detailed picture of the CMBR fluctuations. (See [link].) These amount to temperature fluctuations of only $200\ \mu\text{k}$ out of 2.7 K, better than one part in 1000. The WMAP experiment will be followed up by the European Space Agency's Planck Surveyor, which launched in 2009.



This map of the sky uses color to show fluctuations, or wrinkles, in the cosmic microwave background observed with the WMAP spacecraft. The Milky Way has been removed for clarity. Red represents higher temperature and higher density, while blue is lower temperature and density. The fluctuations are small, less than one part in 1000, but these are still thought to be the

cause of the eventual formation of galaxies. (credit: NASA/WMAP Science Team)

Let us now examine the various stages of the overall evolution of the universe from the Big Bang to the present, illustrated in [link]. Note that scientific notation is used to encompass the many orders of magnitude in time, energy, temperature, and size of the universe. Going back in time, the two lines approach but do not cross (there is no zero on an exponential scale). Rather, they extend indefinitely in ever-smaller time intervals to some infinitesimal point.



The evolution of the universe from the Big Bang onward is intimately tied to the laws of physics, especially those of particle physics at the earliest stages. The universe is relativistic throughout its history. Theories of the unification of forces at high energies may be verified by their shaping of the universe and its evolution.

Going back in time is equivalent to what would happen if expansion stopped and gravity pulled all the galaxies together, compressing and heating all matter. At a time long ago, the temperature and density were too high for stars and galaxies to exist. Before then, there was a time when the temperature was too great for atoms to exist. And farther back yet, there was a time when the temperature and density were so great that nuclei could not exist. Even farther back in time, the temperature was so high that average kinetic energy was great enough to create short-lived particles, and the density was high enough to make this likely. When we extrapolate back to the point of $W^{\pm}$ and Z^0 production (thermal energies reaching 1 TeV, or a temperature of about 10^{15} K), we reach the limits of what we know directly about particle physics. This is at a time about 10^{-12} s after the Big Bang. While 10^{-12} s may seem to be negligibly close to the instant of creation, it is not. There are important stages before this time that are tied to the unification of forces. At those stages, the universe was at extremely high energies and average particle separations were smaller than we can achieve with accelerators. What happened in the early stages before 10^{-12} s is crucial to all later stages and is possibly discerned by observing present conditions in the universe. One of these is the smoothness of the CMBR.

Names are given to early stages representing key conditions. The stage before 10^{-11} s back to 10^{-34} s is called the **electroweak epoch**, because the electromagnetic and weak forces become identical for energies above about 100 GeV. As discussed earlier, theorists expect that the strong force becomes identical to and thus unified with the electroweak force at energies of about 10^{14} GeV. The average particle energy would be this great at 10^{-34} s after the Big Bang, if there are no surprises in the unknown physics at energies above about 1 TeV. At the immense energy of 10^{14} GeV (corresponding to a temperature of about 10^{26} K), the $W^{\pm}$ and Z^0 carrier particles would be transformed into massless gauge bosons to accomplish the unification. Before 10^{-34} s back to about 10^{-43} s, we have Grand Unification in the **GUT epoch**, in which all forces except gravity are identical. At 10^{-43} s, the average energy reaches the immense 10^{19} GeV needed to unify gravity with the other forces in TOE, the Theory of Everything. Before that time is the **TOE epoch**, but we have almost no idea

as to the nature of the universe then, since we have no workable theory of quantum gravity. We call the hypothetical unified force **superforce**.

Now let us imagine starting at TOE and moving forward in time to see what type of universe is created from various events along the way. As temperatures and average energies decrease with expansion, the universe reaches the stage where average particle separations are large enough to see differences between the strong and electroweak forces (at about 10^{-35} s). After this time, the forces become distinct in almost all interactions—they are no longer unified or symmetric. This transition from GUT to electroweak is an example of **spontaneous symmetry breaking**, in which conditions spontaneously evolved to a point where the forces were no longer unified, breaking that symmetry. This is analogous to a phase transition in the universe, and a clever proposal by American physicist Alan Guth in the early 1980s ties it to the smoothness of the CMBR. Guth proposed that spontaneous symmetry breaking (like a phase transition during cooling of normal matter) released an immense amount of energy that caused the universe to expand extremely rapidly for the brief time from 10^{-35} s to about 10^{-32} s. This expansion may have been by an incredible factor of 10^{50} or more in the size of the universe and is thus called the **inflationary scenario**. One result of this inflation is that it would stretch the wrinkles in the universe nearly flat, leaving an extremely smooth CMBR. While speculative, there is as yet no other plausible explanation for the smoothness of the CMBR. Unless the CMBR is not really cosmic but local in origin, the distances between regions of similar temperatures are too great for any coordination to have caused them, since any coordination mechanism must travel at the speed of light. Again, particle physics and cosmology are intimately entwined. There is little hope that we may be able to test the inflationary scenario directly, since it occurs at energies near 10^{14} GeV, vastly greater than the limits of modern accelerators. But the idea is so attractive that it is incorporated into most cosmological theories.

Characteristics of the present universe may help us determine the validity of this intriguing idea. Additionally, the recent indications that the universe's expansion rate may be *increasing* (see Dark Matter and Closure) could even imply that we are *in* another inflationary epoch.

It is important to note that, if conditions such as those found in the early universe could be created in the laboratory, we would see the unification of forces directly today. The forces have not changed in time, but the average energy and separation of particles in the universe have. As discussed in The Four Basic Forces, the four basic forces in nature are distinct under most circumstances found today. The early universe and its remnants provide evidence from times when they were unified under most circumstances.

Section Summary

- Cosmology is the study of the character and evolution of the universe.
- The two most important features of the universe are the cosmological red shifts of its galaxies being proportional to distance and its cosmic microwave background (CMBR). Both support the notion that there was a gigantic explosion, known as the Big Bang that created the universe.
- Galaxies farther away than our local group have, on an average, a recessional velocity given by
  Equation:

  $$v = H_0 d,$$

  where d is the distance to the galaxy and H_0 is the Hubble constant, taken to have the average value $H_0 = 20\ \text{km/s} \cdot \text{Mly}$.
- Explanations of the large-scale characteristics of the universe are intimately tied to particle physics.
- The dominance of matter over antimatter and the smoothness of the CMBR are two characteristics that are tied to particle physics.
- The epochs of the universe are known back to very shortly after the Big Bang, based on known laws of physics.
- The earliest epochs are tied to the unification of forces, with the electroweak epoch being partially understood, the GUT epoch being speculative, and the TOE epoch being highly speculative since it involves an unknown single superforce.
- The transition from GUT to electroweak is called spontaneous symmetry breaking. It released energy that caused the inflationary

scenario, which in turn explains the smoothness of the CMBR.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain why it only *appears* that we are at the center of expansion of the universe and why an observer in another galaxy would see the same relative motion of all but the closest galaxies away from her.

Exercise:

Problem:

If there is no observable edge to the universe, can we determine where its center of expansion is? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem: If the universe is infinite, does it have a center? Discuss.

Exercise:

Problem:

Another known cause of red shift in light is the source being in a high gravitational field. Discuss how this can be eliminated as the source of galactic red shifts, given that the shifts are proportional to distance and not to the size of the galaxy.

Exercise:

Problem:

If some unknown cause of red shift—such as light becoming “tired” from traveling long distances through empty space—is discovered, what effect would there be on cosmology?

Exercise:

Problem:

Olbers's paradox poses an interesting question: If the universe is infinite, then any line of sight should eventually fall on a star's surface. Why then is the sky dark at night? Discuss the commonly accepted evolution of the universe as a solution to this paradox.

Exercise:

Problem:

If the cosmic microwave background radiation (CMBR) is the remnant of the Big Bang's fireball, we expect to see hot and cold regions in it. What are two causes of these wrinkles in the CMBR? Are the observed temperature variations greater or less than originally expected?

Exercise:

Problem:

The decay of one type of K-meson is cited as evidence that nature favors matter over antimatter. Since mesons are composed of a quark and an antiquark, is it surprising that they would preferentially decay to one type over another? Is this an asymmetry in nature? Is the predominance of matter over antimatter an asymmetry?

Exercise:

Problem:

Distances to local galaxies are determined by measuring the brightness of stars, called Cepheid variables, that can be observed individually and that have absolute brightnesses at a standard distance that are well known. Explain how the measured brightness would vary with distance as compared with the absolute brightness.

Exercise:

Problem:

Distances to very remote galaxies are estimated based on their apparent type, which indicate the number of stars in the galaxy, and their measured brightness. Explain how the measured brightness would vary with distance. Would there be any correction necessary to compensate for the red shift of the galaxy (all distant galaxies have significant red shifts)? Discuss possible causes of uncertainties in these measurements.

Exercise:

Problem:

If the smallest meaningful time interval is greater than zero, will the lines in [link] ever meet?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the approximate mass of the luminous matter in the Milky Way galaxy, given it has approximately 10^{11} stars of average mass 1.5 times that of our Sun.

Solution:

3×10^{41} kg

Exercise:

Problem:

Find the approximate mass of the dark and luminous matter in the Milky Way galaxy. Assume the luminous matter is due to approximately 10^{11} stars of average mass 1.5 times that of our Sun, and take the dark matter to be 10 times as massive as the luminous matter.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Estimate the mass of the luminous matter in the known universe, given there are 10^{11} galaxies, each containing 10^{11} stars of average mass 1.5 times that of our Sun. (b) How many protons (the most abundant nuclide) are there in this mass? (c) Estimate the total number of particles in the observable universe by multiplying the answer to (b) by two, since there is an electron for each proton, and then by 10^{9}, since there are far more particles (such as photons and neutrinos) in space than in luminous matter.

Solution:

(a) 3×10^{52} kg

(b) 2×10^{79}

(c) 4×10^{88}

Exercise:

Problem:

If a galaxy is 500 Mly away from us, how fast do we expect it to be moving and in what direction?

Exercise:

Problem:

On average, how far away are galaxies that are moving away from us at 2.0% of the speed of light?

Solution:

0.30 Gly

Exercise:

Problem:

Our solar system orbits the center of the Milky Way galaxy. Assuming a circular orbit 30,000 ly in radius and an orbital speed of 250 km/s, how many years does it take for one revolution? Note that this is approximate, assuming constant speed and circular orbit, but it is representative of the time for our system and local stars to make one revolution around the galaxy.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the approximate speed relative to us of a galaxy near the edge of the known universe, some 10 Gly away? (b) What fraction of the speed of light is this? Note that we have observed galaxies moving away from us at greater than $0.9c$.

Solution:

(a) $2.0 \times 10^5 \text{ km/s}$

(b) $0.67c$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) Calculate the approximate age of the universe from the average value of the Hubble constant, $H_0 = 20\ \text{km/s}$ ·Mly. To do this, calculate the time it would take to travel 1 Mly at a constant expansion rate of 20 km/s. (b) If deceleration is taken into account, would the actual age of the universe be greater or less than that found here? Explain.

Exercise:

Problem:

Assuming a circular orbit for the Sun about the center of the Milky Way galaxy, calculate its orbital speed using the following information: The mass of the galaxy is equivalent to a single mass 1.5×10^{11} times that of the Sun (or 3×10^{41} kg), located 30,000 ly away.

Solution:

$2.7 \times 10^5\ \text{m/s}$

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What is the approximate force of gravity on a 70-kg person due to the Andromeda galaxy, assuming its total mass is 10^{13} that of our Sun and acts like a single mass 2 Mly away? (b) What is the ratio of this force to the person's weight? Note that Andromeda is the closest large galaxy.

Exercise:

Problem:

Andromeda galaxy is the closest large galaxy and is visible to the naked eye. Estimate its brightness relative to the Sun, assuming it has luminosity 10^{12} times that of the Sun and lies 2 Mly away.

Solution:

6×10^{-11} (an overestimate, since some of the light from Andromeda is blocked by gas and dust within that galaxy)

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) A particle and its antiparticle are at rest relative to an observer and annihilate (completely destroying both masses), creating two γ rays of equal energy. What is the characteristic γ-ray energy you would look for if searching for evidence of proton-antiproton annihilation? (The fact that such radiation is rarely observed is evidence that there is very little antimatter in the universe.) (b) How does this compare with the 0.511-MeV energy associated with electron-positron annihilation?

Exercise:

Problem:

The average particle energy needed to observe unification of forces is estimated to be 10^{19} GeV. (a) What is the rest mass in kilograms of a particle that has a rest mass of $10^{19}\ \text{GeV}/c^2$? (b) How many times the mass of a hydrogen atom is this?

Solution:

(a) 2×10^{-8} kg

(b) 1×10^{19}

Exercise:

Problem:

The peak intensity of the CMBR occurs at a wavelength of 1.1 mm. (a) What is the energy in eV of a 1.1-mm photon? (b) There are approximately 10^9 photons for each massive particle in deep space. Calculate the energy of 10^9 such photons. (c) If the average massive particle in space has a mass half that of a proton, what energy would be created by converting its mass to energy? (d) Does this imply that space is "matter dominated"? Explain briefly.

Exercise:

Problem:

(a) What Hubble constant corresponds to an approximate age of the universe of 10^{10} y? To get an approximate value, assume the expansion rate is constant and calculate the speed at which two galaxies must move apart to be separated by 1 Mly (present average galactic separation) in a time of 10^{10} y. (b) Similarly, what Hubble constant corresponds to a universe approximately 2×10^{10}-y old?

Solution:

(a) $30\ \text{km/s} \cdot \text{Mly}$

(b) $15\ \text{km/s} \cdot \text{Mly}$

Exercise:

Problem:

Show that the velocity of a star orbiting its galaxy in a circular orbit is inversely proportional to the square root of its orbital radius, assuming the mass of the stars inside its orbit acts like a single mass at the center of the galaxy. You may use an equation from a previous chapter to support your conclusion, but you must justify its use and define all terms used.

Exercise:

Problem:

The core of a star collapses during a supernova, forming a neutron star. Angular momentum of the core is conserved, and so the neutron star spins rapidly. If the initial core radius is $5.0\times 10^{5}\ \text{km}$ and it collapses to 10.0 km, find the neutron star's angular velocity in revolutions per second, given the core's angular velocity was originally 1 revolution per 30.0 days.

Solution:

960 rev/s

Exercise:

Problem:

Using data from the previous problem, find the increase in rotational kinetic energy, given the core's mass is 1.3 times that of our Sun. Where does this increase in kinetic energy come from?

Exercise:

Problem:

Distances to the nearest stars (up to 500 ly away) can be measured by a technique called parallax, as shown in [link]. What are the angles θ_1 and θ_2 relative to the plane of the Earth's orbit for a star 4.0 ly directly above the Sun?

Solution:

89.999773º (many digits are used to show the difference between 90º)

Exercise:

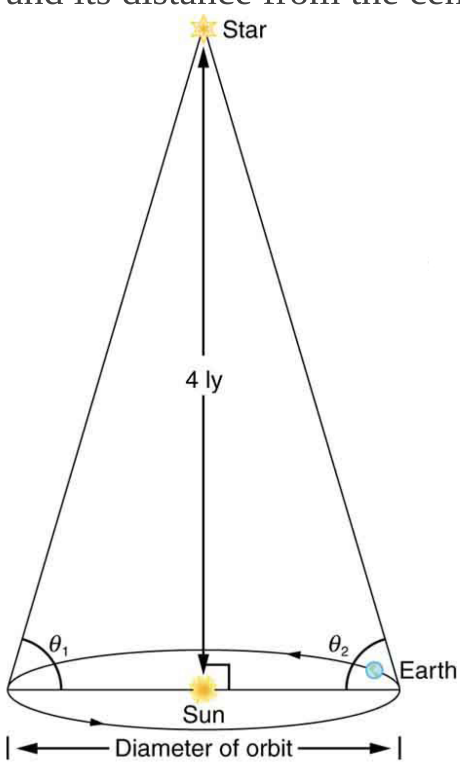
Problem:

(a) Use the Heisenberg uncertainty principle to calculate the uncertainty in energy for a corresponding time interval of 10^{-43} s. (b) Compare this energy with the 10^{19} GeV unification-of-forces energy and discuss why they are similar.

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a star moving in a circular orbit at the edge of a galaxy. Construct a problem in which you calculate the mass of that galaxy in kg and in multiples of the solar mass based on the velocity of the star and its distance from the center of the galaxy.



Distances to nearby stars are measured using triangulation, also called the parallax method. The angle of

line of sight to the star is measured at intervals six months apart, and the distance is calculated by using the known diameter of the Earth's orbit. This can be done for stars up to about 500 ly away.

Glossary

Big Bang
: a gigantic explosion that threw out matter a few billion years ago

cosmic microwave background
: the spectrum of microwave radiation of cosmic origin

cosmological red shift
: the photon wavelength is stretched in transit from the source to the observer because of the expansion of space itself

cosmology
: the study of the character and evolution of the universe

electroweak epoch
: the stage before 10^{-11} back to 10^{-34} after the Big Bang

GUT epoch
: the time period from 10^{-43} to 10^{-34} after the Big Bang, when Grand Unification Theory, in which all forces except gravity are identical, governed the universe

Hubble constant

a central concept in cosmology whose value is determined by taking the slope of a graph of velocity versus distance, obtained from red shift measurements

inflationary scenario
: the rapid expansion of the universe by an incredible factor of 10^{-50} for the brief time from 10^{-35} to about 10^{-32}s

spontaneous symmetry breaking
: the transition from GUT to electroweak where the forces were no longer unified

superforce
: hypothetical unified force in TOE epoch

TOE epoch
: before 10^{-43} after the Big Bang

General Relativity and Quantum Gravity

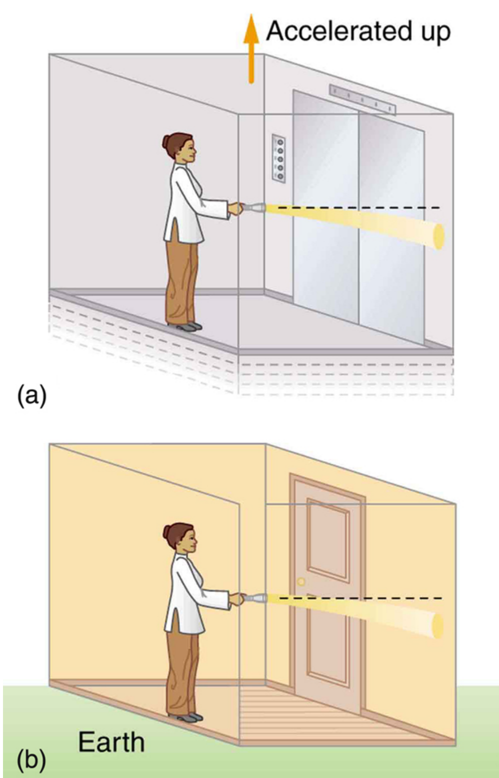
- Explain the effect of gravity on light.
- Discuss black hole.
- Explain quantum gravity.

When we talk of black holes or the unification of forces, we are actually discussing aspects of general relativity and quantum gravity. We know from Special Relativity that relativity is the study of how different observers measure the same event, particularly if they move relative to one another. Einstein's theory of **general relativity** describes all types of relative motion including accelerated motion and the effects of gravity. General relativity encompasses special relativity and classical relativity in situations where acceleration is zero and relative velocity is small compared with the speed of light. Many aspects of general relativity have been verified experimentally, some of which are better than science fiction in that they are bizarre but true. **Quantum gravity** is the theory that deals with particle exchange of gravitons as the mechanism for the force, and with extreme conditions where quantum mechanics and general relativity must both be used. A good theory of quantum gravity does not yet exist, but one will be needed to understand how all four forces may be unified. If we are successful, the theory of quantum gravity will encompass all others, from classical physics to relativity to quantum mechanics—truly a Theory of Everything (TOE).

General Relativity

Einstein first considered the case of no observer acceleration when he developed the revolutionary special theory of relativity, publishing his first work on it in 1905. By 1916, he had laid the foundation of general relativity, again almost on his own. Much of what Einstein did to develop his ideas was to mentally analyze certain carefully and clearly defined situations—doing this is to perform a **thought experiment**. [link] illustrates a thought experiment like the ones that convinced Einstein that light must fall in a gravitational field. Think about what a person feels in an elevator that is accelerated upward. It is identical to being in a stationary elevator in a gravitational field. The feet of a person are pressed against the floor, and

objects released from hand fall with identical accelerations. In fact, it is not possible, without looking outside, to know what is happening—acceleration upward or gravity. This led Einstein to correctly postulate that acceleration and gravity will produce identical effects in all situations. So, if acceleration affects light, then gravity will, too. [link] shows the effect of acceleration on a beam of light shone horizontally at one wall. Since the accelerated elevator moves up during the time light travels across the elevator, the beam of light strikes low, seeming to the person to bend down. (Normally a tiny effect, since the speed of light is so great.) The same effect must occur due to gravity, Einstein reasoned, since there is no way to tell the effects of gravity acting downward from acceleration of the elevator upward. Thus gravity affects the path of light, even though we think of gravity as acting between masses and photons are massless.



(a) A beam of light emerges from a flashlight in an upward-accelerating

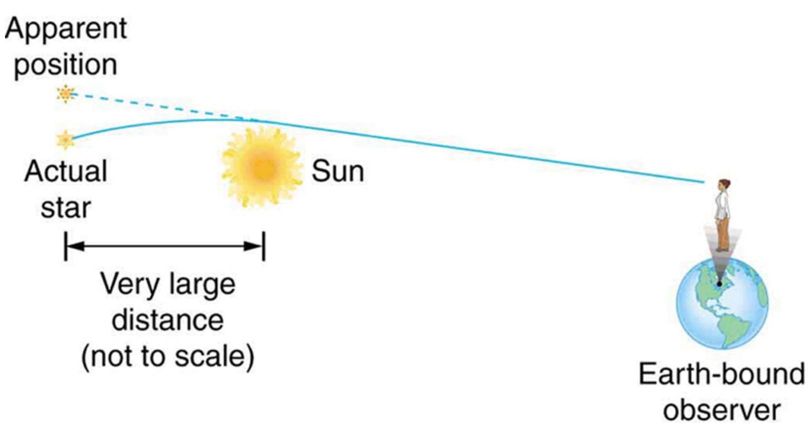
elevator. Since the elevator moves up during the time the light takes to reach the wall, the beam strikes lower than it would if the elevator were not accelerated. (b) Gravity has the same effect on light, since it is not possible to tell whether the elevator is accelerating upward or acted upon by gravity.

Einstein’s theory of general relativity got its first verification in 1919 when starlight passing near the Sun was observed during a solar eclipse. (See [link].) During an eclipse, the sky is darkened and we can briefly see stars. Those in a line of sight nearest the Sun should have a shift in their apparent positions. Not only was this shift observed, but it agreed with Einstein’s predictions well within experimental uncertainties. This discovery created a scientific and public sensation. Einstein was now a folk hero as well as a very great scientist. The bending of light by matter is equivalent to a bending of space itself, with light following the curve. This is another radical change in our concept of space and time. It is also another connection that any particle with mass or energy (massless photons) is affected by gravity.

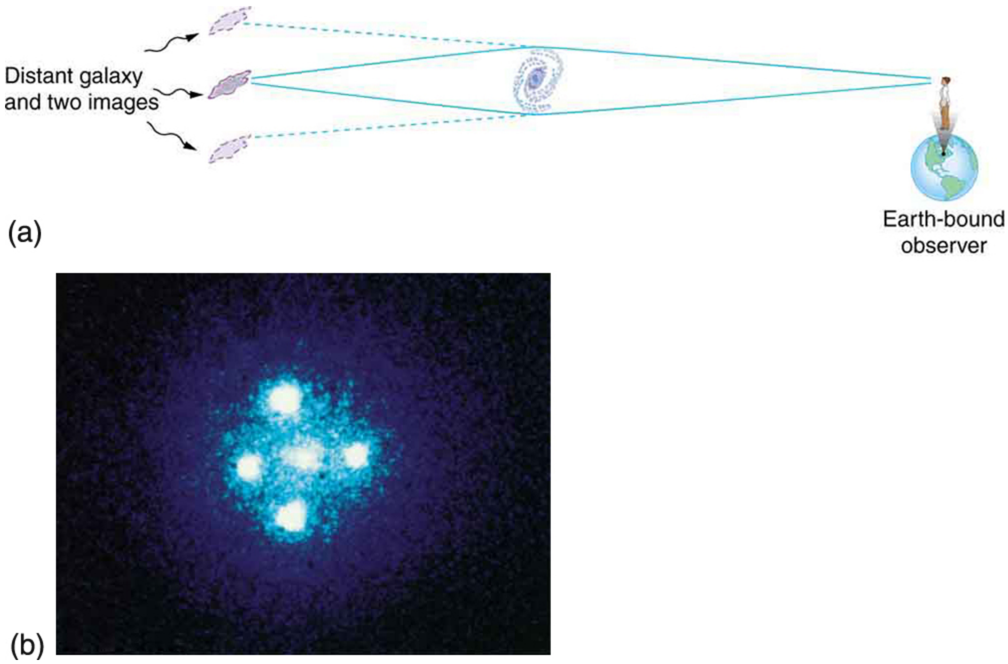
There are several current forefront efforts related to general relativity. One is the observation and analysis of gravitational lensing of light. Another is analysis of the definitive proof of the existence of black holes. Direct observation of gravitational waves or moving wrinkles in space is being searched for. Theoretical efforts are also being aimed at the possibility of time travel and wormholes into other parts of space due to black holes.

Gravitational lensing

As you can see in [link], light is bent toward a mass, producing an effect much like a converging lens (large masses are needed to produce observable effects). On a galactic scale, the light from a distant galaxy could be “lensed” into several images when passing close by another galaxy on its way to Earth. Einstein predicted this effect, but he considered it unlikely that we would ever observe it. A number of cases of this effect have now been observed; one is shown in [link]. This effect is a much larger scale verification of general relativity. But such gravitational lensing is also useful in verifying that the red shift is proportional to distance. The red shift of the intervening galaxy is always less than that of the one being lensed, and each image of the lensed galaxy has the same red shift. This verification supplies more evidence that red shift is proportional to distance. Confidence that the multiple images are not different objects is bolstered by the observations that if one image varies in brightness over time, the others also vary in the same manner.



This schematic shows how light passing near a massive body like the Sun is curved toward it. The light that reaches the Earth then seems to be coming from different locations than the known positions of the originating stars. Not only was this effect observed, the amount of bending was precisely what Einstein predicted in his general theory of relativity.



(a) Light from a distant galaxy can travel different paths to the Earth because it is bent around an intermediary galaxy by gravity. This produces several images of the more distant galaxy. (b) The images around the central galaxy are produced by gravitational lensing. Each image has the same spectrum and a larger red shift than the intermediary. (credit: NASA, ESA, and STScI)

Black holes

Black holes are objects having such large gravitational fields that things can fall in, but nothing, not even light, can escape. Bodies, like the Earth or the Sun, have what is called an **escape velocity**. If an object moves straight up from the body, starting at the escape velocity, it will just be able to escape the gravity of the body. The greater the acceleration of gravity on the body, the greater is the escape velocity. As long ago as the late 1700s, it was proposed that if the escape velocity is greater than the speed of light, then

light cannot escape. Simon Laplace (1749–1827), the French astronomer and mathematician, even incorporated this idea of a dark star into his writings. But the idea was dropped after Young's double slit experiment showed light to be a wave. For some time, light was thought not to have particle characteristics and, thus, could not be acted upon by gravity. The idea of a black hole was very quickly reincarnated in 1916 after Einstein's theory of general relativity was published. It is now thought that black holes can form in the supernova collapse of a massive star, forming an object perhaps 10 km across and having a mass greater than that of our Sun. It is interesting that several prominent physicists who worked on the concept, including Einstein, firmly believed that nature would find a way to prohibit such objects.

Black holes are difficult to observe directly, because they are small and no light comes directly from them. In fact, no light comes from inside the **event horizon**, which is defined to be at a distance from the object at which the escape velocity is exactly the speed of light. The radius of the event horizon is known as the **Schwarzschild radius** R_{S} and is given by

Equation:

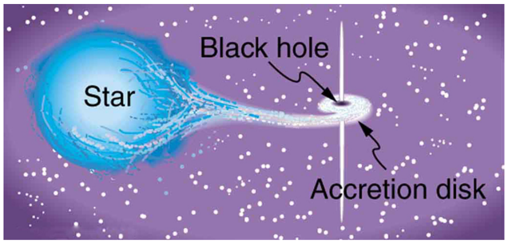
$$R_{\text{S}} = \frac{2\text{GM}}{c^2},$$

where G is the universal gravitational constant, M is the mass of the body, and c is the speed of light. The event horizon is the edge of the black hole and R_{S} is its radius (that is, the size of a black hole is twice R_{S}). Since G is small and c^2 is large, you can see that black holes are extremely small, only a few kilometers for masses a little greater than the Sun's. The object itself is inside the event horizon.

Physics near a black hole is fascinating. Gravity increases so rapidly that, as you approach a black hole, the tidal effects tear matter apart, with matter closer to the hole being pulled in with much more force than that only slightly farther away. This can pull a companion star apart and heat inflowing gases to the point of producing X rays. (See [link].) We have observed X rays from certain binary star systems that are consistent with such a picture. This is not quite proof of black holes, because the X rays

could also be caused by matter falling onto a neutron star. These objects were first discovered in 1967 by the British astrophysicists, Jocelyn Bell and Anthony Hewish. **Neutron stars** are literally a star composed of neutrons. They are formed by the collapse of a star's core in a supernova, during which electrons and protons are forced together to form neutrons (the reverse of neutron β decay). Neutron stars are slightly larger than a black hole of the same mass and will not collapse further because of resistance by the strong force. However, neutron stars cannot have a mass greater than about eight solar masses or they must collapse to a black hole. With recent improvements in our ability to resolve small details, such as with the orbiting Chandra X-ray Observatory, it has become possible to measure the masses of X-ray-emitting objects by observing the motion of companion stars and other matter in their vicinity. What has emerged is a plethora of X-ray-emitting objects too massive to be neutron stars. This evidence is considered conclusive and the existence of black holes is widely accepted. These black holes are concentrated near galactic centers.

We also have evidence that supermassive black holes may exist at the cores of many galaxies, including the Milky Way. Such a black hole might have a mass millions or even billions of times that of the Sun, and it would probably have formed when matter first coalesced into a galaxy billions of years ago. Supporting this is the fact that very distant galaxies are more likely to have abnormally energetic cores. Some of the moderately distant galaxies, and hence among the younger, are known as **quasars** and emit as much or more energy than a normal galaxy but from a region less than a light year across. Quasar energy outputs may vary in times less than a year, so that the energy-emitting region must be less than a light year across. The best explanation of quasars is that they are young galaxies with a supermassive black hole forming at their core, and that they become less energetic over billions of years. In closer superactive galaxies, we observe tremendous amounts of energy being emitted from very small regions of space, consistent with stars falling into a black hole at the rate of one or more a month. The Hubble Space Telescope (1994) observed an accretion disk in the galaxy M87 rotating rapidly around a region of extreme energy emission. (See [link].) A jet of material being ejected perpendicular to the plane of rotation gives further evidence of a supermassive black hole as the engine.



A black hole is shown pulling matter away from a companion star, forming a superheated accretion disk where X rays are emitted before the matter disappears forever into the hole. The in-fall energy also ejects some material, forming the two vertical spikes. (See also the photograph in Introduction to Frontiers of Physics.) There are several X-ray-emitting objects in space that are consistent with this picture and are likely to be black holes.

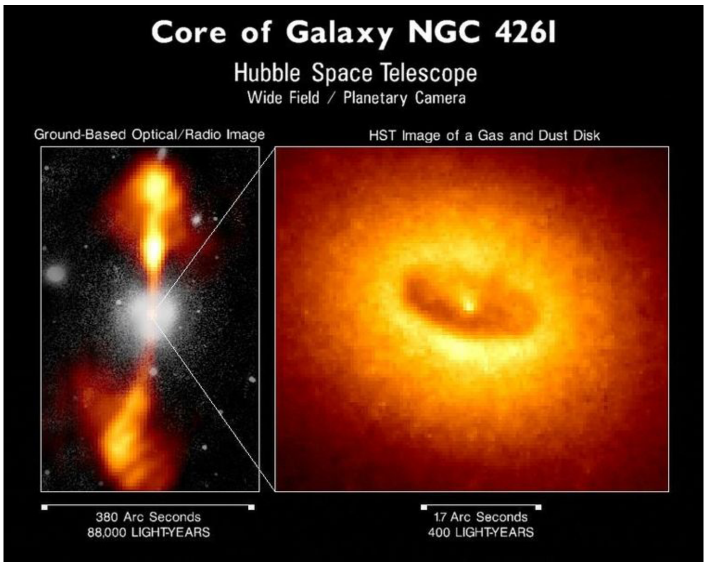
Gravitational waves
If a massive object distorts the space around it, like the foot of a water bug on the surface of a pond, then movement of the massive object should create waves in space like those on a pond. **Gravitational waves** are mass-created distortions in space that propagate at the speed of light and are predicted by general relativity. Since gravity is by far the weakest force, extreme conditions are needed to generate significant gravitational waves. Gravity near binary neutron star systems is so great that significant gravitational wave energy is radiated as the two neutron stars orbit one

another. American astronomers, Joseph Taylor and Russell Hulse, measured changes in the orbit of such a binary neutron star system. They found its orbit to change precisely as predicted by general relativity, a strong indication of gravitational waves, and were awarded the 1993 Nobel Prize. But direct detection of gravitational waves on Earth would be conclusive. For many years, various attempts have been made to detect gravitational waves by observing vibrations induced in matter distorted by these waves. American physicist Joseph Weber pioneered this field in the 1960s, but no conclusive events have been observed. (No gravity wave detectors were in operation at the time of the 1987A supernova, unfortunately.) There are now several ambitious systems of gravitational wave detectors in use around the world. These include the LIGO (Laser Interferometer Gravitational Wave Observatory) system with two laser interferometer detectors, one in the state of Washington and another in Louisiana (See [link]) and the VIRGO (Variability of Irradiance and Gravitational Oscillations) facility in Italy with a single detector.

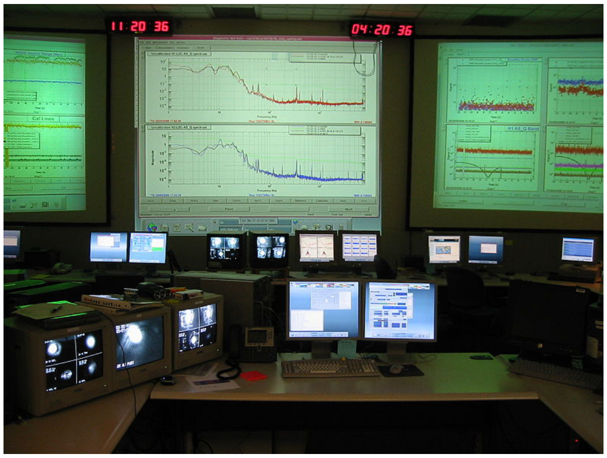
Quantum Gravity

Black holes radiate
Quantum gravity is important in those situations where gravity is so extremely strong that it has effects on the quantum scale, where the other forces are ordinarily much stronger. The early universe was such a place, but black holes are another. The first significant connection between gravity and quantum effects was made by the Russian physicist Yakov Zel’dovich in 1971, and other significant advances followed from the British physicist Stephen Hawking. (See [link].) These two showed that black holes could radiate away energy by quantum effects just outside the event horizon (nothing can escape from inside the event horizon). Black holes are, thus, expected to radiate energy and shrink to nothing, although extremely slowly for most black holes. The mechanism is the creation of a particle-antiparticle pair from energy in the extremely strong gravitational field near the event horizon. One member of the pair falls into the hole and the other escapes, conserving momentum. (See [link].) When a black hole loses energy and, hence, rest mass, its event horizon shrinks, creating an even greater gravitational field. This increases the rate of pair production so that the process grows exponentially until the black hole is nuclear in size. A

final burst of particles and γ rays ensues. This is an extremely slow process for black holes about the mass of the Sun (produced by supernovas) or larger ones (like those thought to be at galactic centers), taking on the order of 10^{67} years or longer! Smaller black holes would evaporate faster, but they are only speculated to exist as remnants of the Big Bang. Searches for characteristic γ-ray bursts have produced events attributable to more mundane objects like neutron stars accreting matter.

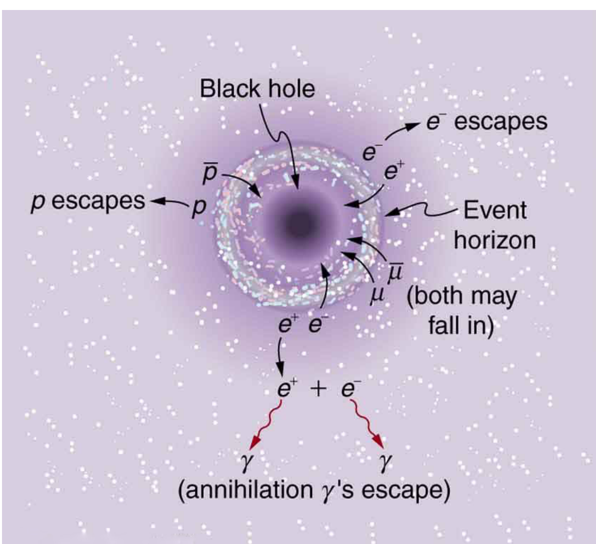


This Hubble Space Telescope photograph shows the extremely energetic core of the NGC 4261 galaxy. With the superior resolution of the orbiting telescope, it has been possible to observe the rotation of an accretion disk around the energy-producing object as well as to map jets of material being ejected from the object. A supermassive black hole is consistent with these observations, but other possibilities are not quite eliminated. (credit: NASA and ESA)



The control room of the LIGO gravitational wave detector. Gravitational waves will cause extremely small vibrations in a mass in this detector, which will be detected by laser interferometer techniques. Such detection in coincidence with other detectors and with astronomical events, such as supernovas, would provide direct evidence of gravitational waves. (credit: Tobin Fricke)

Stephen Hawking (b. 1942) has made many contributions to the theory of quantum gravity. Hawking is a long-time survivor of ALS and has produced popular books on general relativity, cosmology, and quantum gravity. (credit: Lwp Kommunikáció)



Gravity and quantum mechanics

come into play when a black hole creates a particle-antiparticle pair from the energy in its gravitational field. One member of the pair falls into the hole while the other escapes, removing energy and shrinking the black hole. The search is on for the characteristic energy.

Wormholes and time travel

The subject of time travel captures the imagination. Theoretical physicists, such as the American Kip Thorne, have treated the subject seriously, looking into the possibility that falling into a black hole could result in popping up in another time and place—a trip through a so-called wormhole. Time travel and wormholes appear in innumerable science fiction dramatizations, but the consensus is that time travel is not possible in theory. While still debated, it appears that quantum gravity effects inside a black hole prevent time travel due to the creation of particle pairs. Direct evidence is elusive.

The shortest time

Theoretical studies indicate that, at extremely high energies and correspondingly early in the universe, quantum fluctuations may make time intervals meaningful only down to some finite time limit. Early work indicated that this might be the case for times as long as 10^{-43} s, the time at which all forces were unified. If so, then it would be meaningless to consider the universe at times earlier than this. Subsequent studies indicate that the crucial time may be as short as 10^{-95} s. But the point remains—quantum gravity seems to imply that there is no such thing as a vanishingly short time. Time may, in fact, be grainy with no meaning to time intervals shorter than some tiny but finite size.

The future of quantum gravity

Not only is quantum gravity in its infancy, no one knows how to get started on a theory of gravitons and unification of forces. The energies at which TOE should be valid may be so high (at least 10^{19} GeV) and the necessary particle separation so small (less than 10^{-35} m) that only indirect evidence can provide clues. For some time, the common lament of theoretical physicists was one so familiar to struggling students—how do you even get started? But Hawking and others have made a start, and the approach many theorists have taken is called Superstring theory, the topic of the Superstrings.

Section Summary

- Einstein's theory of general relativity includes accelerated frames and, thus, encompasses special relativity and gravity. Created by use of careful thought experiments, it has been repeatedly verified by real experiments.
- One direct result of this behavior of nature is the gravitational lensing of light by massive objects, such as galaxies, also seen in the microlensing of light by smaller bodies in our galaxy.
- Another prediction is the existence of black holes, objects for which the escape velocity is greater than the speed of light and from which nothing can escape.
- The event horizon is the distance from the object at which the escape velocity equals the speed of light c. It is called the Schwarzschild radius R_{S} and is given by
  Equation:
  $$R_{\text{S}} = \frac{2\text{GM}}{c^2},$$
  where G is the universal gravitational constant, and M is the mass of the body.
- Physics is unknown inside the event horizon, and the possibility of wormholes and time travel are being studied.
- Candidates for black holes may power the extremely energetic emissions of quasars, distant objects that seem to be early stages of

galactic evolution.
- Neutron stars are stellar remnants, having the density of a nucleus, that hint that black holes could form from supernovas, too.
- Gravitational waves are wrinkles in space, predicted by general relativity but not yet observed, caused by changes in very massive objects.
- Quantum gravity is an incompletely developed theory that strives to include general relativity, quantum mechanics, and unification of forces (thus, a TOE).
- One unconfirmed connection between general relativity and quantum mechanics is the prediction of characteristic radiation from just outside black holes.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Quantum gravity, if developed, would be an improvement on both general relativity and quantum mechanics, but more mathematically difficult. Under what circumstances would it be necessary to use quantum gravity? Similarly, under what circumstances could general relativity be used? When could special relativity, quantum mechanics, or classical physics be used?

Exercise:

Problem:

Does observed gravitational lensing correspond to a converging or diverging lens? Explain briefly.

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose you measure the red shifts of all the images produced by gravitational lensing, such as in [link].You find that the central image has a red shift less than the outer images, and those all have the same red shift. Discuss how this not only shows that the images are of the same object, but also implies that the red shift is not affected by taking different paths through space. Does it imply that cosmological red shifts are not caused by traveling through space (light getting tired, perhaps)?

Exercise:

Problem:

What are gravitational waves, and have they yet been observed either directly or indirectly?

Exercise:

Problem:

Is the event horizon of a black hole the actual physical surface of the object?

Exercise:

Problem:

Suppose black holes radiate their mass away and the lifetime of a black hole created by a supernova is about 10^{67} years. How does this lifetime compare with the accepted age of the universe? Is it surprising that we do not observe the predicted characteristic radiation?

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

What is the Schwarzschild radius of a black hole that has a mass eight times that of our Sun? Note that stars must be more massive than the Sun to form black holes as a result of a supernova.

Solution:

23.6 km

Exercise:

Problem:

Black holes with masses smaller than those formed in supernovas may have been created in the Big Bang. Calculate the radius of one that has a mass equal to the Earth's.

Exercise:

Problem:

Supermassive black holes are thought to exist at the center of many galaxies.

(a) What is the radius of such an object if it has a mass of 10^9 Suns?

(b) What is this radius in light years?

Solution:

(a) 2.95×10^{12} m

(b) 3.12×10^{-4} ly

Exercise:

Problem: Construct Your Own Problem

Consider a supermassive black hole near the center of a galaxy. Calculate the radius of such an object based on its mass. You must consider how much mass is reasonable for these large objects, and which is now nearly directly observed. (Information on black holes posted on the Web by NASA and other agencies is reliable, for example.)

Glossary

black holes
: objects having such large gravitational fields that things can fall in, but nothing, not even light, can escape

general relativity
: Einstein’s theory thatdescribes all types of relative motion including accelerated motion and the effects of gravity

gravitational waves
: mass-created distortions in space that propagate at the speed of light and that are predicted by general relativity

escape velocity
: takeoff velocity when kinetic energy just cancels gravitational potential energy

event horizon
: the distance from the object at which the escape velocity is exactly the speed of light

neutron stars
: literally a star composed of neutrons

Schwarzschild radius
: the radius of the event horizon

thought experiment

mental analysis of certain carefully and clearly defined situations to develop an idea

quasars
: the moderately distant galaxies that emit as much or more energy than a normal galaxy

Quantum gravity
: the theory that deals with particle exchange of gravitons as the mechanism for the force

Superstrings

- Define Superstring theory.
- Explain the relationship between Superstring theory and the Big Bang.

Introduced earlier in [GUTS: The Unification of Forces] **Superstring theory** is an attempt to unify gravity with the other three forces and, thus, must contain quantum gravity. The main tenet of Superstring theory is that fundamental particles, including the graviton that carries the gravitational force, act like one-dimensional vibrating strings. Since gravity affects the time and space in which all else exists, Superstring theory is an attempt at a Theory of Everything (TOE). Each independent quantum number is thought of as a separate dimension in some super space (analogous to the fact that the familiar dimensions of space are independent of one another) and is represented by a different type of Superstring. As the universe evolved after the Big Bang and forces became distinct (spontaneous symmetry breaking), some of the dimensions of superspace are imagined to have curled up and become unnoticed.

Forces are expected to be unified only at extremely high energies and at particle separations on the order of $10^{-35}\ \mathrm{m}$. This could mean that Superstrings must have dimensions or wavelengths of this size or smaller. Just as quantum gravity may imply that there are no time intervals shorter than some finite value, it also implies that there may be no sizes smaller than some tiny but finite value. That may be about $10^{-35}\ \mathrm{m}$. If so, and if Superstring theory can explain all it strives to, then the structures of Superstrings are at the lower limit of the smallest possible size and can have no further substructure. This would be the ultimate answer to the question the ancient Greeks considered. There is a finite lower limit to space.

Not only is Superstring theory in its infancy, it deals with dimensions about 17 orders of magnitude smaller than the $10^{-18}\ \mathrm{m}$ details that we have been able to observe directly. It is thus relatively unconstrained by experiment, and there are a host of theoretical possibilities to choose from. This has led theorists to make choices subjectively (as always) on what is the most elegant theory, with less hope than usual that experiment will guide them. It has also led to speculation of alternate universes, with their Big Bangs

creating each new universe with a random set of rules. These speculations may not be tested even in principle, since an alternate universe is by definition unattainable. It is something like exploring a self-consistent field of mathematics, with its axioms and rules of logic that are not consistent with nature. Such endeavors have often given insight to mathematicians and scientists alike and occasionally have been directly related to the description of new discoveries.

Section Summary

- Superstring theory holds that fundamental particles are one-dimensional vibrations analogous to those on strings and is an attempt at a theory of quantum gravity.

Problems & Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

The characteristic length of entities in Superstring theory is approximately 10^{-35} m.

(a) Find the energy in GeV of a photon of this wavelength.

(b) Compare this with the average particle energy of 10^{19} GeV needed for unification of forces.

Solution:

(a) 1×10^{20}

(b) 10 times greater

Glossary

Superstring theory

a theory to unify gravity with the other three forces in which the fundamental particles are considered to act like one-dimensional vibrating strings

Dark Matter and Closure

- Discuss the existence of dark matter.
- Explain neutrino oscillations and their consequences.

One of the most exciting problems in physics today is the fact that there is far more matter in the universe than we can see. The motion of stars in galaxies and the motion of galaxies in clusters imply that there is about 10 times as much mass as in the luminous objects we can see. The indirectly observed non-luminous matter is called **dark matter**. Why is dark matter a problem? For one thing, we do not know what it is. It may well be 90% of all matter in the universe, yet there is a possibility that it is of a completely unknown form—a stunning discovery if verified. Dark matter has implications for particle physics. It may be possible that neutrinos actually have small masses or that there are completely unknown types of particles. Dark matter also has implications for cosmology, since there may be enough dark matter to stop the expansion of the universe. That is another problem related to dark matter—we do not know how much there is. We keep finding evidence for more matter in the universe, and we have an idea of how much it would take to eventually stop the expansion of the universe, but whether there is enough is still unknown.

Evidence

The first clues that there is more matter than meets the eye came from the Swiss-born American astronomer Fritz Zwicky in the 1930s; some initial work was also done by the American astronomer Vera Rubin. Zwicky measured the velocities of stars orbiting the galaxy, using the relativistic Doppler shift of their spectra (see [link](a)). He found that velocity varied with distance from the center of the galaxy, as graphed in [link](b). If the mass of the galaxy was concentrated in its center, as are its luminous stars, the velocities should decrease as the square root of the distance from the center. Instead, the velocity curve is almost flat, implying that there is a tremendous amount of matter in the galactic halo. Although not immediately recognized for its significance, such measurements have now been made for many galaxies, with similar results. Further, studies of galactic clusters have also indicated that galaxies have a mass distribution

greater than that obtained from their brightness (proportional to the number of stars), which also extends into large halos surrounding the luminous parts of galaxies. Observations of other EM wavelengths, such as radio waves and X rays, have similarly confirmed the existence of dark matter. Take, for example, X rays in the relatively dark space between galaxies, which indicates the presence of previously unobserved hot, ionized gas (see [link] (c)).

Theoretical Yearnings for Closure

Is the universe open or closed? That is, will the universe expand forever or will it stop, perhaps to contract? This, until recently, was a question of whether there is enough gravitation to stop the expansion of the universe. In the past few years, it has become a question of the combination of gravitation and what is called the **cosmological constant**. The cosmological constant was invented by Einstein to prohibit the expansion or contraction of the universe. At the time he developed general relativity, Einstein considered that an illogical possibility. The cosmological constant was discarded after Hubble discovered the expansion, but has been re-invoked in recent years.

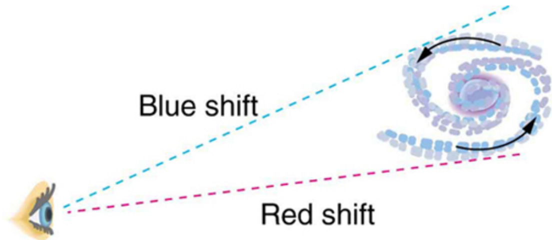
Gravitational attraction between galaxies is slowing the expansion of the universe, but the amount of slowing down is not known directly. In fact, the cosmological constant can counteract gravity's effect. As recent measurements indicate, the universe is expanding *faster* now than in the past—perhaps a "modern inflationary era" in which the dark energy is thought to be causing the expansion of the present-day universe to accelerate. If the expansion rate were affected by gravity alone, we should be able to see that the expansion rate between distant galaxies was once greater than it is now. However, measurements show it was *less* than now. We can, however, calculate the amount of slowing based on the average density of matter we observe directly. Here we have a definite answer—there is far less visible matter than needed to stop expansion. The **critical density** ρ_c is defined to be the density needed to just halt universal expansion in a universe with no cosmological constant. It is estimated to be about

Equation:

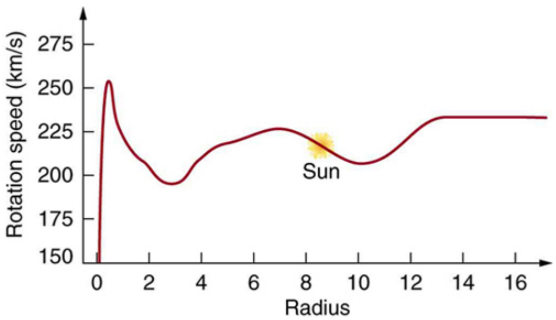
$$\rho_c \approx 10^{-26} \text{ kg/m}^3.$$

However, this estimate of ρ_c is only good to about a factor of two, due to uncertainties in the expansion rate of the universe. The critical density is equivalent to an average of only a few nucleons per cubic meter, remarkably small and indicative of how truly empty intergalactic space is. Luminous matter seems to account for roughly 0.5% to 2% of the critical density, far less than that needed for closure. Taking into account the amount of dark matter we detect indirectly and all other types of indirectly observed normal matter, there is only 10% to 40% of what is needed for closure. If we are able to refine the measurements of expansion rates now and in the past, we will have our answer regarding the curvature of space and we will determine a value for the cosmological constant to justify this observation. Finally, the most recent measurements of the CMBR have implications for the cosmological constant, so it is not simply a device concocted for a single purpose.

After the recent experimental discovery of the cosmological constant, most researchers feel that the universe should be just barely open. Since matter can be thought to curve the space around it, we call an open universe **negatively curved**. This means that you can in principle travel an unlimited distance in any direction. A universe that is closed is called **positively curved**. This means that if you travel far enough in any direction, you will return to your starting point, analogous to circumnavigating the Earth. In between these two is a **flat (zero curvature) universe**. The recent discovery of the cosmological constant has shown the universe is very close to flat, and will expand forever. Why do theorists feel the universe is flat? Flatness is a part of the inflationary scenario that helps explain the flatness of the microwave background. In fact, since general relativity implies that matter creates the space in which it exists, there is a special symmetry to a flat universe.



(a)



(b)

(c)

Evidence for dark matter: (a) We can measure the velocities of stars relative to their galaxies by observing the Doppler shift in emitted light, usually using the hydrogen spectrum. These measurements indicate the

rotation of a spiral galaxy. (b) A graph of velocity versus distance from the galactic center shows that the velocity does not decrease as it would if the matter were concentrated in luminous stars. The flatness of the curve implies a massive galactic halo of dark matter extending beyond the visible stars. (c) This is a computer-generated image of X rays from a galactic cluster. The X rays indicate the presence of otherwise unseen hot clouds of ionized gas in the regions of space previously considered more empty. (credit: NASA, ESA, CXC, M. Bradac (University of California, Santa Barbara), and S. Allen (Stanford University))

What Is the Dark Matter We See Indirectly?

There is no doubt that dark matter exists, but its form and the amount in existence are two facts that are still being studied vigorously. As always, we seek to explain new observations in terms of known principles. However, as more discoveries are made, it is becoming more and more difficult to explain dark matter as a known type of matter.

One of the possibilities for normal matter is being explored using the Hubble Space Telescope and employing the lensing effect of gravity on

light (see [link]). Stars glow because of nuclear fusion in them, but planets are visible primarily by reflected light. Jupiter, for example, is too small to ignite fusion in its core and become a star, but we can see sunlight reflected from it, since we are relatively close. If Jupiter orbited another star, we would not be able to see it directly. The question is open as to how many planets or other bodies smaller than about 1/1000 the mass of the Sun are there. If such bodies pass between us and a star, they will not block the star's light, being too small, but they will form a gravitational lens, as discussed in General Relativity and Quantum Gravity.

In a process called **microlensing**, light from the star is focused and the star appears to brighten in a characteristic manner. Searches for dark matter in this form are particularly interested in galactic halos because of the huge amount of mass that seems to be there. Such microlensing objects are thus called **massive compact halo objects**, or **MACHOs**. To date, a few MACHOs have been observed, but not predominantly in galactic halos, nor in the numbers needed to explain dark matter.

MACHOs are among the most conventional of unseen objects proposed to explain dark matter. Others being actively pursued are red dwarfs, which are small dim stars, but too few have been seen so far, even with the Hubble Telescope, to be of significance. Old remnants of stars called white dwarfs are also under consideration, since they contain about a solar mass, but are small as the Earth and may dim to the point that we ordinarily do not observe them. While white dwarfs are known, old dim ones are not. Yet another possibility is the existence of large numbers of smaller than stellar mass black holes left from the Big Bang—here evidence is entirely absent.

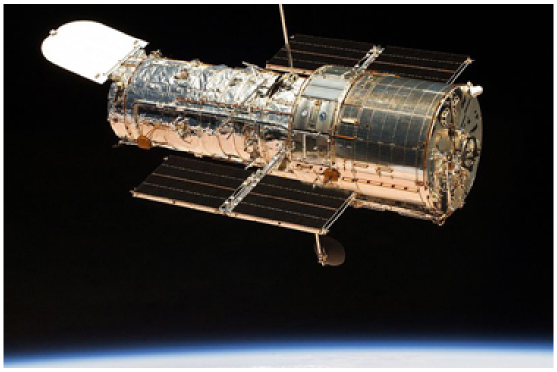
There is a very real possibility that dark matter is composed of the known neutrinos, which may have small, but finite, masses. As discussed earlier, neutrinos are thought to be massless, but we only have upper limits on their masses, rather than knowing they are exactly zero. So far, these upper limits come from difficult measurements of total energy emitted in the decays and reactions in which neutrinos are involved. There is an amusing possibility of proving that neutrinos have mass in a completely different way.

We have noted in Particles, Patterns, and Conservation Laws that there are three flavors of neutrinos (ν_e, v_μ, and v_τ) and that the weak interaction could change quark flavor. It should also change neutrino flavor—that is, any type of neutrino could change spontaneously into any other, a process called **neutrino oscillations**. However, this can occur only if neutrinos have a mass. Why? Crudely, because if neutrinos are massless, they must travel at the speed of light and time will not pass for them, so that they cannot change without an interaction. In 1999, results began to be published containing convincing evidence that neutrino oscillations do occur. Using the Super-Kamiokande detector in Japan, the oscillations have been observed and are being verified and further explored at present at the same facility and others.

Neutrino oscillations may also explain the low number of observed solar neutrinos. Detectors for observing solar neutrinos are specifically designed to detect electron neutrinos ν_e produced in huge numbers by fusion in the Sun. A large fraction of electron neutrinos ν_e may be changing flavor to muon neutrinos v_μ on their way out of the Sun, possibly enhanced by specific interactions, reducing the flux of electron neutrinos to observed levels. There is also a discrepancy in observations of neutrinos produced in cosmic ray showers. While these showers of radiation produced by extremely energetic cosmic rays should contain twice as many v_μ s as ν_e s, their numbers are nearly equal. This may be explained by neutrino oscillations from muon flavor to electron flavor. Massive neutrinos are a particularly appealing possibility for explaining dark matter, since their existence is consistent with a large body of known information and explains more than dark matter. The question is not settled at this writing.

The most radical proposal to explain dark matter is that it consists of previously unknown leptons (sometimes obtusely referred to as non-baryonic matter). These are called **weakly interacting massive particles**, or **WIMPs**, and would also be chargeless, thus interacting negligibly with normal matter, except through gravitation. One proposed group of WIMPs would have masses several orders of magnitude greater than nucleons and are sometimes called **neutralinos**. Others are called **axions** and would have masses about 10^{-10} that of an electron mass. Both neutralinos and axions would be gravitationally attached to galaxies, but because they are

chargeless and only feel the weak force, they would be in a halo rather than interact and coalesce into spirals, and so on, like normal matter (see [link]).



The Hubble Space Telescope is producing exciting data with its corrected optics and with the absence of atmospheric distortion. It has observed some MACHOs, disks of material around stars thought to precede planet formation, black hole candidates, and collisions of comets with Jupiter. (credit: NASA (crew of STS-125))

Dark matter may shepherd normal matter gravitationally in space, as this stream moves the leaves. Dark matter may be invisible and even move through the normal matter, as neutrinos penetrate us without small-scale effect. (credit: Shinichi Sugiyama)

Some particle theorists have built WIMPs into their unified force theories and into the inflationary scenario of the evolution of the universe so popular today. These particles would have been produced in just the correct numbers to make the universe flat, shortly after the Big Bang. The proposal is radical in the sense that it invokes entirely new forms of matter, in fact *two* entirely new forms, in order to explain dark matter and other phenomena. WIMPs have the extra burden of automatically being very difficult to observe directly. This is somewhat analogous to quark confinement, which guarantees that quarks are there, but they can never be seen directly. One of the primary goals of the LHC at CERN, however, is to produce and detect WIMPs. At any rate, before WIMPs are accepted as the best explanation, all other possibilities utilizing known phenomena will have to be shown inferior. Should that occur, we will be in the unanticipated position of admitting that, to date, all we know is only 10% of what exists.

A far cry from the days when people firmly believed themselves to be not only the center of the universe, but also the reason for its existence.

Section Summary

- Dark matter is non-luminous matter detected in and around galaxies and galactic clusters.
- It may be 10 times the mass of the luminous matter in the universe, and its amount may determine whether the universe is open or closed (expands forever or eventually stops).
- The determining factor is the critical density of the universe and the cosmological constant, a theoretical construct intimately related to the expansion and closure of the universe.
- The critical density ρ_c is the density needed to just halt universal expansion. It is estimated to be approximately $10^{-26}\ kg/m^3$.
- An open universe is negatively curved, a closed universe is positively curved, whereas a universe with exactly the critical density is flat.
- Dark matter's composition is a major mystery, but it may be due to the suspected mass of neutrinos or a completely unknown type of leptonic matter.
- If neutrinos have mass, they will change families, a process known as neutrino oscillations, for which there is growing evidence.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Discuss the possibility that star velocities at the edges of galaxies being greater than expected is due to unknown properties of gravity rather than to the existence of dark matter. Would this mean, for example, that gravity is greater or smaller than expected at large distances? Are there other tests that could be made of gravity at large distances, such as observing the motions of neighboring galaxies?

Exercise:

Problem:

How does relativistic time dilation prohibit neutrino oscillations if they are massless?

Exercise:

Problem:

If neutrino oscillations do occur, will they violate conservation of the various lepton family numbers (L_e, L_μ, and L_τ)? Will neutrino oscillations violate conservation of the total number of leptons?

Exercise:

Problem:

Lacking direct evidence of WIMPs as dark matter, why must we eliminate all other possible explanations based on the known forms of matter before we invoke their existence?

Problems Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

If the dark matter in the Milky Way were composed entirely of MACHOs (evidence shows it is not), approximately how many would there have to be? Assume the average mass of a MACHO is 1/1000 that of the Sun, and that dark matter has a mass 10 times that of the luminous Milky Way galaxy with its 10^{11} stars of average mass 1.5 times the Sun's mass.

Solution:
Equation:

$$1.5 \times 10^{15}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

The critical mass density needed to just halt the expansion of the universe is approximately $10^{-26}\ \text{kg/m}^3$.

(a) Convert this to $\text{eV}/c^2 \cdot \text{m}^3$.

(b) Find the number of neutrinos per cubic meter needed to close the universe if their average mass is $7\ \text{eV}/c^2$ and they have negligible kinetic energies.

Exercise:

Problem:

Assume the average density of the universe is 0.1 of the critical density needed for closure. What is the average number of protons per cubic meter, assuming the universe is composed mostly of hydrogen?

Solution:
Equation:

$$0.6\ \text{m}^{-3}$$

Exercise:

Problem:

To get an idea of how empty deep space is on the average, perform the following calculations:

(a) Find the volume our Sun would occupy if it had an average density equal to the critical density of $10^{-26}\ \text{kg/m}^3$ thought necessary to halt the expansion of the universe.

(b) Find the radius of a sphere of this volume in light years.

(c) What would this radius be if the density were that of luminous matter, which is approximately 5% that of the critical density?

(d) Compare the radius found in part (c) with the 4-ly average separation of stars in the arms of the Milky Way.

Glossary

axions
: a type of WIMPs having masses about 10^{-10} of an electron mass

cosmological constant
: a theoretical construct intimately related to the expansion and closure of the universe

critical density
: the density of matter needed to just halt universal expansion

dark matter
: indirectly observed non-luminous matter

flat (zero curvature) universe
: a universe that is infinite but not curved

microlensing
: a process in which light from a distant star is focused and the star appears to brighten in a characteristic manner, when a small body (smaller than about 1/1000 the mass of the Sun) passes between us and the star

MACHOs
: massive compact halo objects; microlensing objects of huge mass

neutrino oscillations
: a process in which any type of neutrino could change spontaneously into any other

neutralinos

a type of WIMPs having masses several orders of magnitude greater than nucleon masses

negatively curved

an open universe that expands forever

positively curved

a universe that is closed and eventually contracts

WIMPs

weakly interacting massive particles; chargeless leptons (non-baryonic matter) interacting negligibly with normal matter

Complexity and Chaos

- Explain complex systems.
- Discuss chaotic behavior of different systems.

Much of what impresses us about physics is related to the underlying connections and basic simplicity of the laws we have discovered. The language of physics is precise and well defined because many basic systems we study are simple enough that we can perform controlled experiments and discover unambiguous relationships. Our most spectacular successes, such as the prediction of previously unobserved particles, come from the simple underlying patterns we have been able to recognize. But there are systems of interest to physicists that are inherently complex. The simple laws of physics apply, of course, but complex systems may reveal patterns that simple systems do not. The emerging field of **complexity** is devoted to the study of complex systems, including those outside the traditional bounds of physics. Of particular interest is the ability of complex systems to adapt and evolve.

What are some examples of complex adaptive systems? One is the primordial ocean. When the oceans first formed, they were a random mix of elements and compounds that obeyed the laws of physics and chemistry. In a relatively short geological time (about 500 million years), life had emerged. Laboratory simulations indicate that the emergence of life was far too fast to have come from random combinations of compounds, even if driven by lightning and heat. There must be an underlying ability of the complex system to organize itself, resulting in the self-replication we recognize as life. Living entities, even at the unicellular level, are highly organized and systematic. Systems of living organisms are themselves complex adaptive systems. The grandest of these evolved into the biological system we have today, leaving traces in the geological record of steps taken along the way.

Complexity as a discipline examines complex systems, how they adapt and evolve, looking for similarities with other complex adaptive systems. Can, for example, parallels be drawn between biological evolution and the evolution of *economic systems*? Economic systems do emerge quickly, they show tendencies for self-organization, they are complex (in the number and

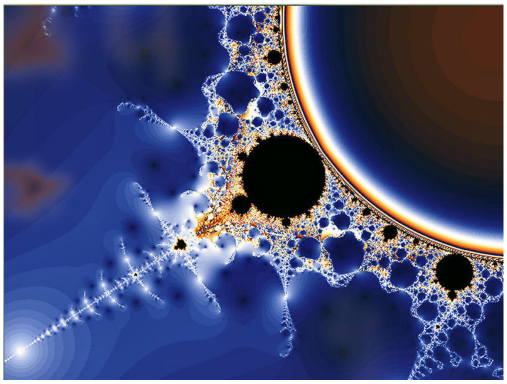
types of transactions), and they adapt and evolve. Biological systems do all the same types of things. There are other examples of complex adaptive systems being studied for fundamental similarities. *Cultures* show signs of adaptation and evolution. The comparison of different cultural evolutions may bear fruit as well as comparisons to biological evolution. *Science* also is a complex system of human interactions, like culture and economics, that adapts to new information and political pressure, and evolves, usually becoming more organized rather than less. Those who study *creative thinking* also see parallels with complex systems. Humans sometimes organize almost random pieces of information, often subconsciously while doing other things, and come up with brilliant creative insights. The development of *language* is another complex adaptive system that may show similar tendencies. *Artificial intelligence* is an overt attempt to devise an adaptive system that will self-organize and evolve in the same manner as an intelligent living being learns. These are a few of the broad range of topics being studied by those who investigate complexity. There are now institutes, journals, and meetings, as well as popularizations of the emerging topic of complexity.

In traditional physics, the discipline of complexity may yield insights in certain areas. Thermodynamics treats systems on the average, while statistical mechanics deals in some detail with complex systems of atoms and molecules in random thermal motion. Yet there is organization, adaptation, and evolution in those complex systems. Non-equilibrium phenomena, such as heat transfer and phase changes, are characteristically complex in detail, and new approaches to them may evolve from complexity as a discipline. Crystal growth is another example of self-organization spontaneously emerging in a complex system. Alloys are also inherently complex mixtures that show certain simple characteristics implying some self-organization. The organization of iron atoms into magnetic domains as they cool is another. Perhaps insights into these difficult areas will emerge from complexity. But at the minimum, the discipline of complexity is another example of human effort to understand and organize the universe around us, partly rooted in the discipline of physics.

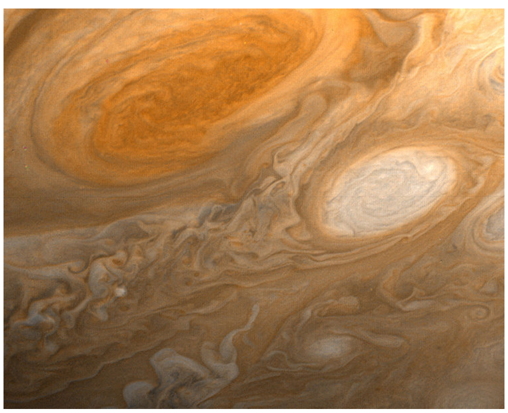
A predecessor to complexity is the topic of chaos, which has been widely publicized and has become a discipline of its own. It is also based partly in physics and treats broad classes of phenomena from many disciplines. **Chaos** is a word used to describe systems whose outcomes are extremely sensitive to initial conditions. The orbit of the planet Pluto, for example, may be chaotic in that it can change tremendously due to small interactions with other planets. This makes its long-term behavior impossible to predict with precision, just as we cannot tell precisely where a decaying Earth satellite will land or how many pieces it will break into. But the discipline of chaos has found ways to deal with such systems and has been applied to apparently unrelated systems. For example, the heartbeat of people with certain types of potentially lethal arrhythmias seems to be chaotic, and this knowledge may allow more sophisticated monitoring and recognition of the need for intervention.

Chaos is related to complexity. Some chaotic systems are also inherently complex; for example, vortices in a fluid as opposed to a double pendulum. Both are chaotic and not predictable in the same sense as other systems. But there can be organization in chaos and it can also be quantified. Examples of chaotic systems are beautiful fractal patterns such as in [link]. Some chaotic systems exhibit self-organization, a type of stable chaos. The orbits of the planets in our solar system, for example, may be chaotic (we are not certain yet). But they are definitely organized and systematic, with a simple formula describing the orbital radii of the first eight planets *and* the asteroid belt. Large-scale vortices in Jupiter's atmosphere are chaotic, but the Great Red Spot is a stable self-organization of rotational energy. (See [link].) The Great Red Spot has been in existence for at least 400 years and is a complex self-adaptive system.

The emerging field of complexity, like the now almost traditional field of chaos, is partly rooted in physics. Both attempt to see similar systematics in a very broad range of phenomena and, hence, generate a better understanding of them. Time will tell what impact these fields have on more traditional areas of physics as well as on the other disciplines they relate to.



This image is related to the Mandelbrot set, a complex mathematical form that is chaotic. The patterns are infinitely fine as you look closer and closer, and they indicate order in the presence of chaos. (credit: Gilberto Santa Rosa)



The Great Red Spot on Jupiter is an example of self-organization in a complex and chaotic system. Smaller vortices in Jupiter's atmosphere

behave chaotically, but the triple-Earth-size spot is self-organized and stable for at least hundreds of years. (credit: NASA)

Section Summary

- Complexity is an emerging field, rooted primarily in physics, that considers complex adaptive systems and their evolution, including self-organization.
- Complexity has applications in physics and many other disciplines, such as biological evolution.
- Chaos is a field that studies systems whose properties depend extremely sensitively on some variables and whose evolution is impossible to predict.
- Chaotic systems may be simple or complex.
- Studies of chaos have led to methods for understanding and predicting certain chaotic behaviors.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

Must a complex system be adaptive to be of interest in the field of complexity? Give an example to support your answer.

Exercise:

Problem: State a necessary condition for a system to be chaotic.

Glossary

complexity
: an emerging field devoted to the study of complex systems

chaos
: word used to describe systems the outcomes of which are extremely sensitive to initial conditions

High-temperature Superconductors

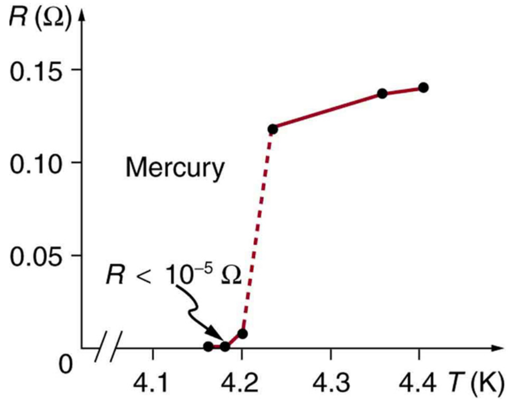
- Identify superconductors and their uses.
- Discuss the need for a high-T_c superconductor.

Superconductors are materials with a resistivity of zero. They are familiar to the general public because of their practical applications and have been mentioned at a number of points in the text. Because the resistance of a piece of superconductor is zero, there are no heat losses for currents through them; they are used in magnets needing high currents, such as in MRI machines, and could cut energy losses in power transmission. But most superconductors must be cooled to temperatures only a few kelvin above absolute zero, a costly procedure limiting their practical applications. In the past decade, tremendous advances have been made in producing materials that become superconductors at relatively high temperatures. There is hope that room temperature superconductors may someday be manufactured.

Superconductivity was discovered accidentally in 1911 by the Dutch physicist H. Kamerlingh Onnes (1853–1926) when he used liquid helium to cool mercury. Onnes had been the first person to liquefy helium a few years earlier and was surprised to observe the resistivity of a mediocre conductor like mercury drop to zero at a temperature of 4.2 K. We define the temperature at which and below which a material becomes a superconductor to be its **critical temperature**, denoted by T_c. (See [link].) Progress in understanding how and why a material became a superconductor was relatively slow, with the first workable theory coming in 1957. Certain other elements were also found to become superconductors, but all had T_c s less than 10 K, which are expensive to maintain. Although Onnes received a Nobel prize in 1913, it was primarily for his work with liquid helium.

In 1986, a breakthrough was announced—a ceramic compound was found to have an unprecedented T_c of 35 K. It looked as if much higher critical temperatures could be possible, and by early 1988 another ceramic (this of thallium, calcium, barium, copper, and oxygen) had been found to have $T_c = 125$ K (see [link].) The economic potential of perfect conductors saving electric energy is immense for T_c s above 77 K, since that is the temperature of liquid nitrogen. Although liquid helium has a boiling point

of 4 K and can be used to make materials superconducting, it costs about $5 per liter. Liquid nitrogen boils at 77 K, but only costs about $0.30 per liter. There was general euphoria at the discovery of these complex ceramic superconductors, but this soon subsided with the sobering difficulty of forming them into usable wires. The first commercial use of a high temperature superconductor is in an electronic filter for cellular phones. High-temperature superconductors are used in experimental apparatus, and they are actively being researched, particularly in thin film applications.



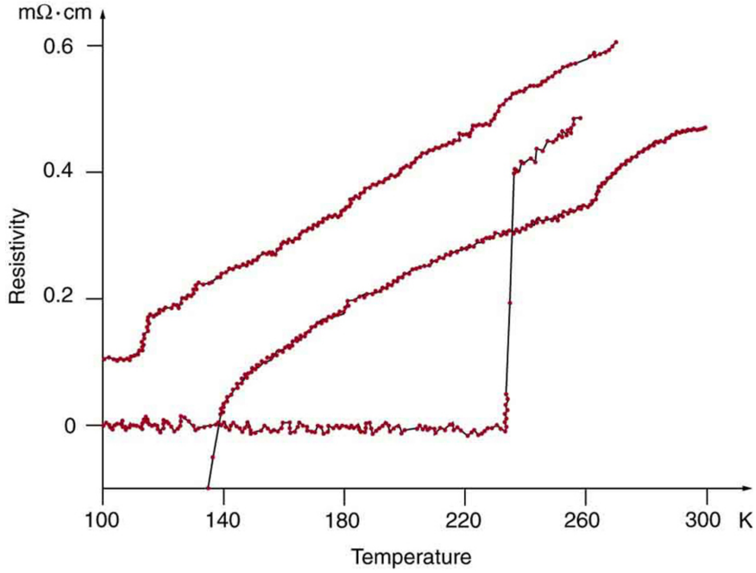
A graph of resistivity versus temperature for a superconductor shows a sharp transition to zero at the critical temperature T_c. High temperature superconductors have verifiable T_c s greater than 125 K, well above the easily achieved 77-K temperature of liquid nitrogen.

One characteristic of a superconductor is that it excludes magnetic flux and, thus, repels other magnets. The small magnet levitated above a high-temperature superconductor, which is cooled by liquid nitrogen, gives evidence that the material is superconducting. When the material warms and becomes conducting, magnetic flux can penetrate it, and the magnet will rest upon it. (credit: Saperaud)

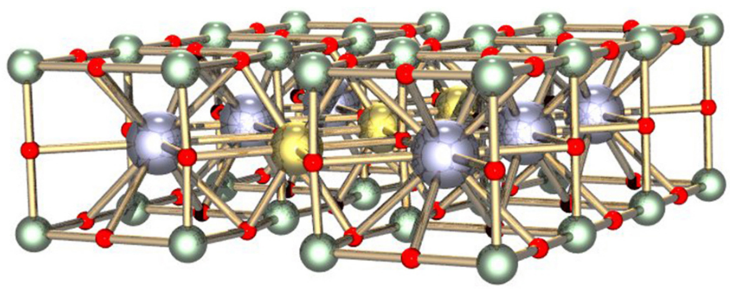
The search is on for even higher T_c superconductors, many of complex and exotic copper oxide ceramics, sometimes including strontium, mercury, or yttrium as well as barium, calcium, and other elements. Room temperature (about 293 K) would be ideal, but any temperature close to room temperature is relatively cheap to produce and maintain. There are persistent reports of T_c s over 200 K and some in the vicinity of 270 K. Unfortunately, these observations are not routinely reproducible, with

samples losing their superconducting nature once heated and recooled (cycled) a few times (see [link].) They are now called USOs or unidentified superconducting objects, out of frustration and the refusal of some samples to show high T_c even though produced in the same manner as others. Reproducibility is crucial to discovery, and researchers are justifiably reluctant to claim the breakthrough they all seek. Time will tell whether USOs are real or an experimental quirk.

The theory of ordinary superconductors is difficult, involving quantum effects for widely separated electrons traveling through a material. Electrons couple in a manner that allows them to get through the material without losing energy to it, making it a superconductor. High- T_c superconductors are more difficult to understand theoretically, but theorists seem to be closing in on a workable theory. The difficulty of understanding how electrons can sneak through materials without losing energy in collisions is even greater at higher temperatures, where vibrating atoms should get in the way. Discoverers of high T_c may feel something analogous to what a politician once said upon an unexpected election victory—“I wonder what we did right?”



(a)



(b)

(a) This graph, adapted from an article in *Physics Today*, shows the behavior of a single sample of a high-temperature superconductor in three different trials. In one case the sample exhibited a T_c of about 230 K, whereas in the others it did not become superconducting at all. The lack of reproducibility is typical of forefront experiments and prohibits definitive conclusions. (b) This colorful diagram shows the complex but systematic nature of the lattice structure of a high-temperature superconducting

ceramic. (credit: en:Cadmium, Wikimedia Commons)

Section Summary

- High-temperature superconductors are materials that become superconducting at temperatures well above a few kelvin.
- The critical temperature T_c is the temperature below which a material is superconducting.
- Some high-temperature superconductors have verified T_c s above 125 K, and there are reports of T_c s as high as 250 K.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

What is critical temperature T_c? Do all materials have a critical temperature? Explain why or why not.

Exercise:

Problem:

Explain how good thermal contact with liquid nitrogen can keep objects at a temperature of 77 K (liquid nitrogen's boiling point at atmospheric pressure).

Exercise:

Problem:

Not only is liquid nitrogen a cheaper coolant than liquid helium, its boiling point is higher (77 K vs. 4.2 K). How does higher temperature help lower the cost of cooling a material? Explain in terms of the rate of heat transfer being related to the temperature difference between the sample and its surroundings.

Problem Exercises

Exercise:

Problem:

A section of superconducting wire carries a current of 100 A and requires 1.00 L of liquid nitrogen per hour to keep it below its critical temperature. For it to be economically advantageous to use a superconducting wire, the cost of cooling the wire must be less than the cost of energy lost to heat in the wire. Assume that the cost of liquid nitrogen is \$0.30 per liter, and that electric energy costs \$0.10 per kW·h. What is the resistance of a normal wire that costs as much in wasted electric energy as the cost of liquid nitrogen for the superconductor?

Solution:
Equation:

$$0.30\ \Omega$$

Glossary

Superconductors
: materials with resistivity of zero

critical temperature
: the temperature at which and below which a material becomes a superconductor

Some Questions We Know to Ask

- Identify sample questions to be asked on the largest scales.
- Identify sample questions to be asked on the intermediate scale.
- Identify sample questions to be asked on the smallest scales.

Throughout the text we have noted how essential it is to be curious and to ask questions in order to first understand what is known, and then to go a little farther. Some questions may go unanswered for centuries; others may not have answers, but some bear delicious fruit. Part of discovery is knowing which questions to ask. You have to know something before you can even phrase a decent question. As you may have noticed, the mere act of asking a question can give you the answer. The following questions are a sample of those physicists now know to ask and are representative of the forefronts of physics. Although these questions are important, they will be replaced by others if answers are found to them. The fun continues.

On the Largest Scale

1. *Is the universe open or closed*? Theorists would like it to be just barely closed and evidence is building toward that conclusion. Recent measurements in the expansion rate of the universe and in CMBR support a flat universe. There is a connection to small-scale physics in the type and number of particles that may contribute to closing the universe.
2. *What is dark matter*? It is definitely there, but we really do not know what it is. Conventional possibilities are being ruled out, but one of them still may explain it. The answer could reveal whole new realms of physics and the disturbing possibility that most of what is out there is unknown to us, a completely different form of matter.
3. *How do galaxies form*? They exist since very early in the evolution of the universe and it remains difficult to understand how they evolved so quickly. The recent finer measurements of fluctuations in the CMBR may yet allow us to explain galaxy formation.
4. *What is the nature of various-mass black holes*? Only recently have we become confident that many black hole candidates cannot be explained by other, less exotic possibilities. But we still do not know much about

how they form, what their role in the history of galactic evolution has been, and the nature of space in their vicinity. However, so many black holes are now known that correlations between black hole mass and galactic nuclei characteristics are being studied.

5. *What is the mechanism for the energy output of quasars*? These distant and extraordinarily energetic objects now seem to be early stages of galactic evolution with a supermassive black-hole-devouring material. Connections are now being made with galaxies having energetic cores, and there is evidence consistent with less consuming, supermassive black holes at the center of older galaxies. New instruments are allowing us to see deeper into our own galaxy for evidence of our own massive black hole.
6. *Where do the γ bursts come from*? We see bursts of γ rays coming from all directions in space, indicating the sources are very distant objects rather than something associated with our own galaxy. Some γ bursts finally are being correlated with known sources so that the possibility they may originate in binary neutron star interactions or black holes eating a companion neutron star can be explored.

On the Intermediate Scale

1. *How do phase transitions take place on the microscopic scale*? We know a lot about phase transitions, such as water freezing, but the details of how they occur molecule by molecule are not well understood. Similar questions about specific heat a century ago led to early quantum mechanics. It is also an example of a complex adaptive system that may yield insights into other self-organizing systems.
2. *Is there a way to deal with nonlinear phenomena that reveals underlying connections*? Nonlinear phenomena lack a direct or linear proportionality that makes analysis and understanding a little easier. There are implications for nonlinear optics and broader topics such as chaos.
3. *How do high- T_c superconductors become resistanceless at such high temperatures*? Understanding how they work may help make them more practical or may result in surprises as unexpected as the discovery of superconductivity itself.

4. *There are magnetic effects in materials we do not understand—how do they work*? Although beyond the scope of this text, there is a great deal to learn in condensed matter physics (the physics of solids and liquids). We may find surprises analogous to lasing, the quantum Hall effect, and the quantization of magnetic flux. Complexity may play a role here, too.

On the Smallest Scale

1. *Are quarks and leptons fundamental, or do they have a substructure*? The higher energy accelerators that are just completed or being constructed may supply some answers, but there will also be input from cosmology and other systematics.
2. *Why do leptons have integral charge while quarks have fractional charge*? If both are fundamental and analogous as thought, this question deserves an answer. It is obviously related to the previous question.
3. *Why are there three families of quarks and leptons*? First, does this imply some relationship? Second, why three and only three families?
4. *Are all forces truly equal (unified) under certain circumstances*? They don't have to be equal just because we want them to be. The answer may have to be indirectly obtained because of the extreme energy at which we think they are unified.
5. *Are there other fundamental forces*? There was a flurry of activity with claims of a fifth and even a sixth force a few years ago. Interest has subsided, since those forces have not been detected consistently. Moreover, the proposed forces have strengths similar to gravity, making them extraordinarily difficult to detect in the presence of stronger forces. But the question remains; and if there are no other forces, we need to ask why only four and why these four.
6. *Is the proton stable*? We have discussed this in some detail, but the question is related to fundamental aspects of the unification of forces. We may never know from experiment that the proton is stable, only that it is very long lived.
7. *Are there magnetic monopoles*? Many particle theories call for very massive individual north- and south-pole particles—magnetic

monopoles. If they exist, why are they so different in mass and elusiveness from electric charges, and if they do not exist, why not?
8. *Do neutrinos have mass*? Definitive evidence has emerged for neutrinos having mass. The implications are significant, as discussed in this chapter. There are effects on the closure of the universe and on the patterns in particle physics.
9. *What are the systematic characteristics of high-* Z *nuclei*? All elements with $Z = 118$ or less (with the exception of 115 and 117) have now been discovered. It has long been conjectured that there may be an island of relative stability near $Z = 114$, and the study of the most recently discovered nuclei will contribute to our understanding of nuclear forces.

These lists of questions are not meant to be complete or consistently important—you can no doubt add to it yourself. There are also important questions in topics not broached in this text, such as certain particle symmetries, that are of current interest to physicists. Hopefully, the point is clear that no matter how much we learn, there always seems to be more to know. Although we are fortunate to have the hard-won wisdom of those who preceded us, we can look forward to new enlightenment, undoubtedly sprinkled with surprise.

Section Summary

- On the largest scale, the questions which can be asked may be about dark matter, dark energy, black holes, quasars, and other aspects of the universe.
- On the intermediate scale, we can query about gravity, phase transitions, nonlinear phenomena, high- T_c superconductors, and magnetic effects on materials.
- On the smallest scale, questions may be about quarks and leptons, fundamental forces, stability of protons, and existence of monopoles.

Conceptual Questions

Exercise:

Problem:

For experimental evidence, particularly of previously unobserved phenomena, to be taken seriously it must be reproducible or of sufficiently high quality that a single observation is meaningful. Supernova 1987A is not reproducible. How do we know observations of it were valid? The fifth force is not broadly accepted. Is this due to lack of reproducibility or poor-quality experiments (or both)? Discuss why forefront experiments are more subject to observational problems than those involving established phenomena.

Exercise:

Problem:

Discuss whether you think there are limits to what humans can understand about the laws of physics. Support your arguments.

Atomic Masses

Atomic Number, Z	Name	Atomic Mass Number, A	Symbol	Atomic Mass (u)	Percent Abundance or Decay Mode	Half-life, $t_{1/2}$
0	neutron	1	n	1.008 665	β^-	10.37 min
1	Hydrogen	1	^1H	1.007 825	99.985%	
	Deuterium	2	^2H or D	2.014 102	0.015%	
	Tritium	3	^3H or T	3.016 050	β^-	12.33 y
2	Helium	3	^3He	3.016 030	$1.38 \times 10^{-4}\%$	
		4	^4He	4.002 603	$\approx 100\%$	
3	Lithium	6	^6Li	6.015 121	7.5%	
		7	^7Li	7.016 003	92.5%	
4	Beryllium	7	^7Be	7.016 928	EC	53.29 d
		9	^9Be	9.012 182	100%	
5	Boron	10	^{10}B	10.012 937	19.9%	
		11	^{11}B	11.009 305	80.1%	
6	Carbon	11	^{11}C	11.011 432	EC, β^+	
		12	^{12}C	12.000 000	98.90%	
		13	^{13}C	13.003 355	1.10%	

Atomic Number, *Z*	Name	Atomic Mass Number, *A*	Symbol	Atomic Mass (u)	Percent Abundance or Decay Mode	Half-life, $t_{1/2}$
		14	^{14}C	14.003 241	β^-	5730 y
7	Nitrogen	13	^{13}N	13.005 738	β^+	9.96 min
		14	^{14}N	14.003 074	99.63%	
		15	^{15}N	15.000 108	0.37%	
8	Oxygen	15	^{15}O	15.003 065	EC, β^+	122 s
		16	^{16}O	15.994 915	99.76%	
		18	^{18}O	17.999 160	0.200%	
9	Fluorine	18	^{18}F	18.000 937	EC, β^+	1.83 h
		19	^{19}F	18.998 403	100%	
10	Neon	20	^{20}Ne	19.992 435	90.51%	
		22	^{22}Ne	21.991 383	9.22%	
11	Sodium	22	^{22}Na	21.994 434	β^+	2.602 y
		23	^{23}Na	22.989 767	100%	
		24	^{24}Na	23.990 961	β^-	14.96 h
12	Magnesium	24	^{24}Mg	23.985 042	78.99%	
13	Aluminum	27	^{27}Al	26.981 539	100%	
14	Silicon	28	^{28}Si	27.976 927	92.23%	2.62h

Atomic Number, Z	Name	Atomic Mass Number, A	Symbol	Atomic Mass (u)	Percent Abundance or Decay Mode	Half-life, $t_{1/2}$
		31	^{31}Si	30.975 362	β^-	
15	Phosphorus	31	^{31}P	30.973 762	100%	
		32	^{32}P	31.973 907	β^-	14.28 d
16	Sulfur	32	^{32}S	31.972 070	95.02%	
		35	^{35}S	34.969 031	β^-	87.4 d
17	Chlorine	35	^{35}Cl	34.968 852	75.77%	
		37	^{37}Cl	36.965 903	24.23%	
18	Argon	40	^{40}Ar	39.962 384	99.60%	
19	Potassium	39	^{39}K	38.963 707	93.26%	
		40	^{40}K	39.963 999	0.0117%, EC, β^-	$1.28 \times 10^9\text{y}$
20	Calcium	40	^{40}Ca	39.962 591	96.94%	
21	Scandium	45	^{45}Sc	44.955 910	100%	
22	Titanium	48	^{48}Ti	47.947 947	73.8%	
23	Vanadium	51	^{51}V	50.943 962	99.75%	
24	Chromium	52	^{52}Cr	51.940 509	83.79%	
25	Manganese	55	^{55}Mn	54.938 047	100%	
26	Iron	56	^{56}Fe	55.934 939	91.72%	

Atomic Number, Z	Name	Atomic Mass Number, A	Symbol	Atomic Mass (u)	Percent Abundance or Decay Mode	Half-life, $t_{1/2}$
27	Cobalt	59	^{59}Co	58.933 198	100%	
		60	^{60}Co	59.933 819	β^-	5.271 y
28	Nickel	58	^{58}Ni	57.935 346	68.27%	
		60	^{60}Ni	59.930 788	26.10%	
29	Copper	63	^{63}Cu	62.939 598	69.17%	
		65	^{65}Cu	64.927 793	30.83%	
30	Zinc	64	^{64}Zn	63.929 145	48.6%	
		66	^{66}Zn	65.926 034	27.9%	
31	Gallium	69	^{69}Ga	68.925 580	60.1%	
32	Germanium	72	^{72}Ge	71.922 079	27.4%	
		74	^{74}Ge	73.921 177	36.5%	
33	Arsenic	75	^{75}As	74.921 594	100%	
34	Selenium	80	^{80}Se	79.916 520	49.7%	
35	Bromine	79	^{79}Br	78.918 336	50.69%	
36	Krypton	84	^{84}Kr	83.911 507	57.0%	
37	Rubidium	85	^{85}Rb	84.911 794	72.17%	
38	Strontium	86	^{86}Sr	85.909 267	9.86%	

Atomic Number, Z	Name	Atomic Mass Number, A	Symbol	Atomic Mass (u)	Percent Abundance or Decay Mode	Half-life, $t_{1/2}$
		88	^{88}Sr	87.905 619	82.58%	
		90	^{90}Sr	89.907 738	β^-	28.8 y
39	Yttrium	89	^{89}Y	88.905 849	100%	
		90	^{90}Y	89.907 152	β^-	64.1 h
40	Zirconium	90	^{90}Zr	89.904 703	51.45%	
41	Niobium	93	^{93}Nb	92.906 377	100%	
42	Molybdenum	98	^{98}Mo	97.905 406	24.13%	
43	Technetium	98	^{98}Tc	97.907 215	β^-	4.2×10^6y
44	Ruthenium	102	^{102}Ru	101.904 348	31.6%	
45	Rhodium	103	^{103}Rh	102.905 500	100%	
46	Palladium	106	^{106}Pd	105.903 478	27.33%	
47	Silver	107	^{107}Ag	106.905 092	51.84%	
		109	^{109}Ag	108.904 757	48.16%	
48	Cadmium	114	^{114}Cd	113.903 357	28.73%	
49	Indium	115	^{115}In	114.903 880	95.7%, β^-	4.4×10^{14}y
50	Tin	120	^{120}Sn	119.902 200	32.59%	
51	Antimony	121	^{121}Sb	120.903 821	57.3%	

Atomic Number, *Z*	Name	Atomic Mass Number, *A*	Symbol	Atomic Mass (u)	Percent Abundance or Decay Mode	Half-life, $t_{1/2}$
52	Tellurium	130	^{130}Te	129.906 229	33.8%, β^-	2.5×10^{21}y
53	Iodine	127	^{127}I	126.904 473	100%	
		131	^{131}I	130.906 114	β^-	8.040 d
54	Xenon	132	^{132}Xe	131.904 144	26.9%	
		136	^{136}Xe	135.907 214	8.9%	
55	Cesium	133	^{133}Cs	132.905 429	100%	
		134	^{134}Cs	133.906 696	EC, β^-	2.06 y
56	Barium	137	^{137}Ba	136.905 812	11.23%	
		138	^{138}Ba	137.905 232	71.70%	
57	Lanthanum	139	^{139}La	138.906 346	99.91%	
58	Cerium	140	^{140}Ce	139.905 433	88.48%	
59	Praseodymium	141	^{141}Pr	140.907 647	100%	
60	Neodymium	142	^{142}Nd	141.907 719	27.13%	
61	Promethium	145	^{145}Pm	144.912 743	EC, α	17.7 y
62	Samarium	152	^{152}Sm	151.919 729	26.7%	
63	Europium	153	^{153}Eu	152.921 225	52.2%	
64	Gadolinium	158	^{158}Gd	157.924 099	24.84%	

Atomic Number, *Z*	**Name**	**Atomic Mass Number, *A***	**Symbol**	**Atomic Mass (u)**	**Percent Abundance or Decay Mode**	**Half-life, $t_{1/2}$**
65	Terbium	159	$^{159}\mathrm{Tb}$	158.925 342	100%	
66	Dysprosium	164	$^{164}\mathrm{Dy}$	163.929 171	28.2%	
67	Holmium	165	$^{165}\mathrm{Ho}$	164.930 319	100%	
68	Erbium	166	$^{166}\mathrm{Er}$	165.930 290	33.6%	
69	Thulium	169	$^{169}\mathrm{Tm}$	168.934 212	100%	
70	Ytterbium	174	$^{174}\mathrm{Yb}$	173.938 859	31.8%	
71	Lutecium	175	$^{175}\mathrm{Lu}$	174.940 770	97.41%	
72	Hafnium	180	$^{180}\mathrm{Hf}$	179.946 545	35.10%	
73	Tantalum	181	$^{181}\mathrm{Ta}$	180.947 992	99.98%	
74	Tungsten	184	$^{184}\mathrm{W}$	183.950 928	30.67%	
75	Rhenium	187	$^{187}\mathrm{Re}$	186.955 744	62.6%, β^-	4.6×10^{10}y
76	Osmium	191	$^{191}\mathrm{Os}$	190.960 920	β^-	15.4 d
		192	$^{192}\mathrm{Os}$	191.961 467	41.0%	
77	Iridium	191	$^{191}\mathrm{Ir}$	190.960 584	37.3%	
		193	$^{193}\mathrm{Ir}$	192.962 917	62.7%	
78	Platinum	195	$^{195}\mathrm{Pt}$	194.964 766	33.8%	
79	Gold	197	$^{197}\mathrm{Au}$	196.966 543	100%	

Atomic Number, *Z*	Name	Atomic Mass Number, *A*	Symbol	Atomic Mass (u)	Percent Abundance or Decay Mode	Half-life, $t_{1/2}$
		198	^{198}Au	197.968 217	β^-	2.696 d
80	Mercury	199	^{199}Hg	198.968 253	16.87%	
		202	^{202}Hg	201.970 617	29.86%	
81	Thallium	205	^{205}Tl	204.974 401	70.48%	
82	Lead	206	^{206}Pb	205.974 440	24.1%	
		207	^{207}Pb	206.975 872	22.1%	
		208	^{208}Pb	207.976 627	52.4%	
		210	^{210}Pb	209.984 163	α, β^-	22.3 y
		211	^{211}Pb	210.988 735	β^-	36.1 min
		212	^{212}Pb	211.991 871	β^-	10.64 h
83	Bismuth	209	^{209}Bi	208.980 374	100%	
		211	^{211}Bi	210.987 255	α, β^-	2.14 min
84	Polonium	210	^{210}Po	209.982 848	α	138.38 d
85	Astatine	218	^{218}At	218.008 684	α, β^-	1.6 s
86	Radon	222	^{222}Rn	222.017 570	α	3.82 d
87	Francium	223	^{223}Fr	223.019 733	α, β^-	21.8 min
88	Radium	226	^{226}Ra	226.025 402	α	1.60×10^3y

Atomic Number, Z	Name	Atomic Mass Number, A	Symbol	Atomic Mass (u)	Percent Abundance or Decay Mode	Half-life, $t_{1/2}$
89	Actinium	227	^{227}Ac	227.027 750	α, β^-	21.8 y
90	Thorium	228	^{228}Th	228.028 715	α	1.91 y
		232	^{232}Th	232.038 054	100%, α	1.41×10^{10}y
91	Protactinium	231	^{231}Pa	231.035 880	α	3.28×10^4y
92	Uranium	233	^{233}U	233.039 628	α	1.59×10^3y
		235	^{235}U	235.043 924	0.720%, α	7.04×10^8y
		236	^{236}U	236.045 562	α	2.34×10^7y
		238	^{238}U	238.050 784	99.2745%, α	4.47×10^9y
		239	^{239}U	239.054 289	β^-	23.5 min
93	Neptunium	239	^{239}Np	239.052 933	β^-	2.355 d
94	Plutonium	239	^{239}Pu	239.052 157	α	2.41×10^4y
95	Americium	243	^{243}Am	243.061 375	α, fission	7.37×10^3y
96	Curium	245	^{245}Cm	245.065 483	α	8.50×10^3y
97	Berkelium	247	^{247}Bk	247.070 300	α	1.38×10^3y
98	Californium	249	^{249}Cf	249.074 844	α	351 y
99	Einsteinium	254	^{254}Es	254.088 019	α, β^-	276 d
100	Fermium	253	^{253}Fm	253.085 173	EC, α	3.00 d

Atomic Number, *Z*	**Name**	**Atomic Mass Number, *A***	**Symbol**	**Atomic Mass (u)**	**Percent Abundance or Decay Mode**	**Half-life, $t_{1/2}$**
101	Mendelevium	255	^{255}Md	255.091 081	EC, α	27 min
102	Nobelium	255	^{255}No	255.093 260	EC, α	3.1 min
103	Lawrencium	257	^{257}Lr	257.099 480	EC, α	0.646 s
104	Rutherfordium	261	^{261}Rf	261.108 690	α	1.08 min
105	Dubnium	262	^{262}Db	262.113 760	α, fission	34 s
106	Seaborgium	263	^{263}Sg	263.11 86	α, fission	0.8 s
107	Bohrium	262	^{262}Bh	262.123 1	α	0.102 s
108	Hassium	264	^{264}Hs	264.128 5	α	0.08 ms
109	Meitnerium	266	^{266}Mt	266.137 8	α	3.4 ms

Atomic Masses

Selected Radioactive Isotopes

Decay modes are α, β^-, β^+, electron capture (EC) and isomeric transition (IT). EC results in the same daughter nucleus as would β^+ decay. IT is a transition from a metastable excited state. Energies for $\beta^\pm$ decays are the maxima; average energies are roughly one-half the maxima.

Isotope	$t_{1/2}$	**DecayMode(s)**	**Energy(MeV)**	**Percent**		**γ-Ray Energy(MeV)**
^3H	12.33 y	β^-	0.0186	100%		
^{14}C	5730 y	β^-	0.156	100%		
^{13}N	9.96 min	β^+	1.20	100%		
^{22}Na	2.602 y	β^+	0.55	90%	γ	1.27
^{32}P	14.28 d	β^-	1.71	100%		
^{35}S	87.4 d	β^-	0.167	100%		
^{36}Cl	3.00×10^5y	β^-	0.710	100%		
^{40}K	1.28×10^9y	β^-	1.31	89%		
^{43}K	22.3 h	β^-	0.827	87%	γs	0.373
						0.618
^{45}Ca	165 d	β^-	0.257	100%		
^{51}Cr	27.70 d	EC			γ	0.320
^{52}Mn	5.59d	β^+	3.69	28%	γs	1.33
						1.43
^{52}Fe	8.27 h	β^+	1.80	43%		0.169
						0.378
^{59}Fe	44.6 d	β^-s	0.273	45%	γs	1.10
			0.466	55%		1.29
^{60}Co	5.271 y	β^-	0.318	100%	γs	1.17
						1.33
^{65}Zn	244.1 d	EC			γ	1.12

Isotope	$t_{1/2}$	DecayMode(s)	Energy(MeV)	Percent		γ-Ray Energy(MeV)
^{67}Ga	78.3 h	EC			γs	0.0933
						0.185
						0.300
						others
^{75}Se	118.5 d	EC			γs	0.121
						0.136
						0.265
						0.280
						others
^{86}Rb	18.8 d	β^{-}s	0.69	9%	γ	1.08
			1.77	91%		
^{85}Sr	64.8 d	EC			γ	0.514
^{90}Sr	28.8 y	β^{-}	0.546	100%		
^{90}Y	64.1 h	β^{-}	2.28	100%		
^{99m}Tc	6.02 h	IT			γ	0.142
^{113m}In	99.5 min	IT			γ	0.392
^{123}I	13.0 h	EC			γ	0.159
^{131}I	8.040 d	β^{-}s	0.248	7%	γs	0.364
			0.607	93%		others
			others			
^{129}Cs	32.3 h	EC			γs	0.0400
						0.372
						0.411
						others
^{137}Cs	30.17 y	β^{-}s	0.511	95%	γ	0.662
			1.17	5%		

Isotope	$t_{1/2}$	DecayMode(s)	Energy(MeV)	Percent		γ-Ray Energy(MeV)
$^{140}\mathrm{Ba}$	12.79 d	β^-	1.035	$\approx$100%	γs	0.030
						0.044
						0.537
						others
$^{198}\mathrm{Au}$	2.696 d	β^-	1.161	$\approx$100%	γ	0.412
$^{197}\mathrm{Hg}$	64.1 h	EC			γ	0.0733
$^{210}\mathrm{Po}$	138.38 d	α	5.41	100%		
$^{226}\mathrm{Ra}$	1.60×10^3y	αs	4.68	5%	γ	0.186
			4.87	95%		
$^{235}\mathrm{U}$	7.038×10^8y	α	4.68	$\approx$100%	γs	numerous
$^{238}\mathrm{U}$	4.468×10^9y	αs	4.22	23%	γ	0.050
			4.27	77%		
$^{237}\mathrm{Np}$	2.14×10^6y	αs	numerous		γs	numerous
			4.96 (max.)			
$^{239}\mathrm{Pu}$	2.41×10^4y	αs	5.19	11%	γs	7.5×10^{-5}
			5.23	15%		0.013
			5.24	73%		0.052
						others
$^{243}\mathrm{Am}$	7.37×10^3y	αs	Max. 5.44		γs	0.075
			5.37	88%		others
			5.32	11%		
			others			

Selected Radioactive Isotopes

Useful Information

This appendix is broken into several tables.

- [link], Important Constants
- [link], Submicroscopic Masses
- [link], Solar System Data
- [link], Metric Prefixes for Powers of Ten and Their Symbols
- [link], The Greek Alphabet
- [link], SI units
- [link], Selected British Units
- [link], Other Units
- [link], Useful Formulae

Symbol	Meaning	Best Value	Approximate Value
c	Speed of light in vacuum	$2.99792458 \times 10^{8}\,\text{m/s}$	$3.00 \times 10^{8}\,\text{m/s}$
G	Gravitational constant	$6.67408(31) \times 10^{-11}\,\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2$	$6.67 \times 10^{-11}\,\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2$
N_A	Avogadro’s number	$6.02214076 \times 10^{23}$	6.02×10^{23}
k	Boltzmann’s constant	$1.380649 \times 10^{-23}\,\text{J/K}$	$1.38 \times 10^{-23}\,\text{J/K}$
R	Gas constant	$8.3144621(75)\,\text{J/mol}\cdot\text{K}$	$8.31\,\text{J/mol}\cdot\text{K} = 1.99\,\text{cal/mol}\cdot\text{K} =$
σ	Stefan-Boltzmann constant	$5.670373(21) \times 10^{-8}\,\text{W/m}^2\cdot\text{K}$	$5.67 \times 10^{-8}\,\text{W/m}^2\cdot\text{K}$
k	Coulomb force constant	$8.987551788... \times 10^{9}\,\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$	$8.99 \times 10^{9}\,\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$
q_e	Charge on electron	$-1.602176634 \times 10^{-19}\,\text{C}$	$-1.60 \times 10^{-19}\,\text{C}$
ε_0	Permittivity of free space	$8.854187817... \times 10^{-12}\,\text{C}^2/\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2$	$8.85 \times 10^{-12}\,\text{C}^2/\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2$
μ_0	Permeability of free space	$4\pi \times 10^{-7}\,\text{T}\cdot\text{m/A}$	$1.26 \times 10^{-6}\,\text{T}\cdot\text{m/A}$
h	Planck’s constant	$6.62607015 \times 10^{-34}\,\text{J}\cdot\text{s}$	$6.63 \times 10^{-34}\,\text{J}\cdot\text{s}$

Important Constants[footnote]

Stated values are according to the National Institute of Standards and Technology Reference on Constants, Units, an www.physics.nist.gov/cuu (accessed May 18, 2012). Values in parentheses are the uncertainties in the last digits. Nu are exact as defined.

Symbol	Meaning	Best Value	Approximate Value
m_e	Electron mass	$9.10938291(40) \times 10^{-31}\mathrm{kg}$	$9.11 \times 10^{-31}\mathrm{kg}$
m_p	Proton mass	$1.672621777(74) \times 10^{-27}\mathrm{kg}$	$1.6726 \times 10^{-27}\mathrm{kg}$
m_n	Neutron mass	$1.674927351(74) \times 10^{-27}\mathrm{kg}$	$1.6749 \times 10^{-27}\mathrm{kg}$
u	Atomic mass unit	$1.660538921(73) \times 10^{-27}\mathrm{kg}$	$1.6605 \times 10^{-27}\mathrm{kg}$

Submicroscopic Masses[footnote]
Stated values are according to the National Institute of Standards and Technology Reference on Constants, Units, and Uncertainty, www.physics.nist.gov/cuu (accessed May 18, 2012). Values in parentheses are the uncertainties in the last digits. Numbers without uncertainties are exact as defined.

Sun	mass	$1.99 \times 10^{30}\mathrm{kg}$
	average radius	$6.96 \times 10^{8}\mathrm{m}$
	Earth-sun distance (average)	$1.496 \times 10^{11}\mathrm{m}$
Earth	mass	$5.9736 \times 10^{24}\mathrm{kg}$
	average radius	$6.376 \times 10^{6}\mathrm{m}$
	orbital period	$3.16 \times 10^{7}\mathrm{s}$

Moon	mass	$7.35 \times 10^{22}\text{kg}$
	average radius	$1.74 \times 10^{6}\text{m}$
	orbital period (average)	$2.36 \times 10^{6}\text{s}$
	Earth-moon distance (average)	$3.84 \times 10^{8}\text{m}$

Solar System Data

Prefix	**Symbol**	**Value**	**Prefix**	**Symbol**	**Value**
tera	T	10^{12}	deci	d	10^{-1}
giga	G	10^{9}	centi	c	10^{-2}
mega	M	10^{6}	milli	m	10^{-3}
kilo	k	10^{3}	micro	μ	10^{-6}
hecto	h	10^{2}	nano	n	10^{-9}
deka	da	10^{1}	pico	p	10^{-12}
—	—	$10^{0}(=1)$	femto	f	10^{-15}

Metric Prefixes for Powers of Ten and Their Symbols

Alpha	Α	α	Eta	Η	η	Nu	Ν	ν	Tau	Τ	τ
Beta	Β	β	Theta	Θ	θ	Xi	Ξ	ξ	Upsilon	Υ	υ
Gamma	Γ	γ	Iota	Ι	ι	Omicron	Ο	o	Phi	Φ	ϕ
Delta	Δ	δ	Kappa	Κ	κ	Pi	Π	π	Chi	Χ	χ

Epsilon	E	ε	Lambda	Λ	λ	Rho	P	ρ	Psi	Ψ	ψ
Zeta	Z	ζ	Mu	M	μ	Sigma	Σ	σ	Omega	Ω	ω

The Greek Alphabet

	Entity	**Abbreviation**	**Name**
Fundamental units	Length	m	meter
	Mass	kg	kilogram
	Time	s	second
	Current	A	ampere
Supplementary unit	Angle	rad	radian
Derived units	Force	$\mathrm{N} = \mathrm{kg} \cdot \mathrm{m}/\mathrm{s}^2$	newton
	Energy	$\mathrm{J} = \mathrm{kg} \cdot \mathrm{m}^2/\mathrm{s}^2$	joule
	Power	$\mathrm{W} = \mathrm{J}/\mathrm{s}$	watt
	Pressure	$\mathrm{Pa} = \mathrm{N}/\mathrm{m}^2$	pascal
	Frequency	$\mathrm{Hz} = 1/\mathrm{s}$	hertz
	Electronic potential	$\mathrm{V} = \mathrm{J}/\mathrm{C}$	volt
	Capacitance	$\mathrm{F} = \mathrm{C}/\mathrm{V}$	farad
	Charge	$\mathrm{C} = \mathrm{s} \cdot \mathrm{A}$	coulomb
	Resistance	$\Omega = \mathrm{V}/\mathrm{A}$	ohm

	Entity	Abbreviation	Name
	Magnetic field	$\mathrm{T} = \mathrm{N}/(\mathrm{A} \cdot \mathrm{m})$	tesla
	Nuclear decay rate	$\mathrm{Bq} = 1/\mathrm{s}$	becquerel

SI Units

Length	$1\ \text{inch (in.)} = 2.54\ \text{cm (exactly)}$
	$1\ \text{foot (ft)} = 0.3048\ \text{m}$
	$1\ \text{mile (mi)} = 1.609\ \text{km}$
Force	$1\ \text{pound (lb)} = 4.448\ \text{N}$
Energy	$1\ \text{British thermal unit (Btu)} = 1.055 \times 10^3\ \text{J}$
Power	$1\ \text{horsepower (hp)} = 746\ \text{W}$
Pressure	$1\ \text{lb/in}^2 = 6.895 \times 10^3\ \text{Pa}$

Selected British Units

Length	$1\ \text{light year (ly)} = 9.46 \times 10^{15}\ \text{m}$
	$1\ \text{astronomical unit (au)} = 1.50 \times 10^{11}\ \text{m}$
	$1\ \text{nautical mile} = 1.852\ \text{km}$
	$1\ \text{angstrom(Å)} = 10^{-10}\ \text{m}$
Area	$1\ \text{acre (ac)} = 4.05 \times 10^3\ \text{m}^2$
	$1\ \text{square foot}\ (\text{ft}^2) = 9.29 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m}^2$
	$1\ \text{barn}\ (b) = 10^{-28}\ \text{m}^2$
Volume	$1\ \text{liter}\ (L) = 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3$

	1 U.S. gallon (gal) $= 3.785 \times 10^{-3}\,\mathrm{m}^3$
Mass	1 solar mass $= 1.99 \times 10^{30}\,\mathrm{kg}$
	1 metric ton $= 10^3\,\mathrm{kg}$
	1 atomic mass unit $(u) = 1.6605 \times 10^{-27}\,\mathrm{kg}$
Time	1 year $(y) = 3.16 \times 10^7\,\mathrm{s}$
	1 day $(d) = 86{,}400\,\mathrm{s}$
Speed	1 mile per hour (mph) $= 1.609\,\mathrm{km/h}$
	1 nautical mile per hour (naut) $= 1.852\,\mathrm{km/h}$
Angle	1 degree $(^\circ) = 1.745 \times 10^{-2}\,\mathrm{rad}$
	1 minute of arc $(')= 1/60$ degree
	1 second of arc $('') = 1/60$ minute of arc
	1 grad $= 1.571 \times 10^{-2}\,\mathrm{rad}$
Energy	1 kiloton TNT (kT) $= 4.2 \times 10^{12}\,\mathrm{J}$
	1 kilowatt hour $(\mathrm{kW} \cdot h) = 3.60 \times 10^6\,\mathrm{J}$
	1 food calorie (kcal) $= 4186\,\mathrm{J}$
	1 calorie (cal) $= 4.186\,\mathrm{J}$
	1 electron volt (eV) $= 1.60 \times 10^{-19}\,\mathrm{J}$
Pressure	1 atmosphere (atm) $= 1.013 \times 10^5\,\mathrm{Pa}$
	1 millimeter of mercury (mm Hg) $= 133.3\,\mathrm{Pa}$
	1 torricelli (torr) $= 1$ mm Hg $= 133.3\,\mathrm{Pa}$
Nuclear decay rate	1 curie (Ci) $= 3.70 \times 10^{10}\,\mathrm{Bq}$

Other Units

Circumference of a circle with radius r or diameter d	$C = 2\pi r = \pi d$
Area of a circle with radius r or diameter d	$A = \pi r^2 = \pi d^2/4$
Area of a sphere with radius r	$A = 4\pi r^2$

Volume of a sphere with radius r	$V = (4/3)\ \pi r^3$

Useful Formulae

Glossary of Key Symbols and Notation

In this glossary, key symbols and notation are briefly defined.

Symbol	Definition
any symbol	average (indicated by a bar over a symbol—e.g., v is average velocity)
$^\circ\mathrm{C}$	Celsius degree
$^\circ\mathrm{F}$	Fahrenheit degree
$//$	parallel
$\perp$	perpendicular
$\propto$	proportional to
$\pm$	plus or minus

Symbol	Definition
0	zero as a subscript denotes an initial value
α	alpha rays
α	angular acceleration
α	temperature coefficient(s) of resistivity
β	beta rays
β	sound level
β	volume coefficient of expansion
β^{-}	electron emitted in nuclear beta decay
β^{+}	positron decay
γ	gamma rays

Symbol	Definition
γ	surface tension
$\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$	a constant used in relativity
Δ	change in whatever quantity follows
δ	uncertainty in whatever quantity follows
$\varDelta E$	change in energy between the initial and final orbits of an electron in an atom
$\varDelta E$	uncertainty in energy
$\varDelta m$	difference in mass between initial and final products
$\varDelta N$	number of decays that occur
$\varDelta p$	change in momentum

Symbol	**Definition**
Δp	uncertainty in momentum
$\Delta \mathrm{PE}_{\mathrm{g}}$	change in gravitational potential energy
$\Delta\theta$	rotation angle
Δs	distance traveled along a circular path
Δt	uncertainty in time
Δt_0	proper time as measured by an observer at rest relative to the process
ΔV	potential difference
Δx	uncertainty in position
ε_0	permittivity of free space
η	viscosity

Symbol	Definition
θ	angle between the force vector and the displacement vector
θ	angle between two lines
θ	contact angle
θ	direction of the resultant
θ_b	Brewster's angle
θ_c	critical angle
κ	dielectric constant
λ	decay constant of a nuclide
λ	wavelength
λ_n	wavelength in a medium

Symbol	Definition
μ_0	permeability of free space
μ_{k}	coefficient of kinetic friction
μ_{s}	coefficient of static friction
v_e	electron neutrino
π^+	positive pion
π^-	negative pion
π^0	neutral pion
ρ	density
ρ_{c}	critical density, the density needed to just halt universal expansion
ρ_{fl}	fluid density

Symbol	Definition
ρ_{obj}	average density of an object
ρ/ρ_{w}	specific gravity
τ	characteristic time constant for a resistance and inductance (RL) or resistance and capacitance (RC) circuit
τ	characteristic time for a resistor and capacitor (RC) circuit
τ	torque
Υ	upsilon meson
Φ	magnetic flux
ϕ	phase angle
Ω	ohm (unit)
ω	angular velocity

Symbol	Definition
A	ampere (current unit)
A	area
A	cross-sectional area
A	total number of nucleons
a	acceleration
a_{B}	Bohr radius
a_{c}	centripetal acceleration
a_{t}	tangential acceleration
AC	alternating current
AM	amplitude modulation

Symbol	Definition
atm	atmosphere
B	baryon number
B	blue quark color
B	antiblue (yellow) antiquark color
b	quark flavor bottom or beauty
B	bulk modulus
B	magnetic field strength
$\mathrm{B_{int}}$	electron’s intrinsic magnetic field
$\mathrm{B_{orb}}$	orbital magnetic field
BE	binding energy of a nucleus—it is the energy required to completely disassemble it into separate protons and neutrons

Symbol	Definition
BE/A	binding energy per nucleon
Bq	becquerel—one decay per second
C	capacitance (amount of charge stored per volt)
C	coulomb (a fundamental SI unit of charge)
C_{p}	total capacitance in parallel
C_{s}	total capacitance in series
CG	center of gravity
CM	center of mass
c	quark flavor charm
c	specific heat

Symbol	Definition
c	speed of light
Cal	kilocalorie
cal	calorie
COP_{hp}	heat pump’s coefficient of performance
COP_{ref}	coefficient of performance for refrigerators and air conditioners
$\cos\theta$	cosine
$\cot\theta$	cotangent
$\csc\theta$	cosecant
D	diffusion constant
d	displacement

Symbol	Definition
d	quark flavor down
dB	decibel
d_{i}	distance of an image from the center of a lens
d_{o}	distance of an object from the center of a lens
DC	direct current
E	electric field strength
ε	emf (voltage) or Hall electromotive force
emf	electromotive force
E	energy of a single photon
E	nuclear reaction energy

Symbol	Definition
E	relativistic total energy
E	total energy
E_0	ground state energy for hydrogen
E_0	rest energy
EC	electron capture
E_{cap}	energy stored in a capacitor
Eff	efficiency—the useful work output divided by the energy input
Eff_C	Carnot efficiency
E_{in}	energy consumed (food digested in humans)
E_{ind}	energy stored in an inductor

Symbol	Definition
E_{out}	energy output
e	emissivity of an object
e^{+}	antielectron or positron
eV	electron volt
F	farad (unit of capacitance, a coulomb per volt)
F	focal point of a lens
$\mathbf{F}$	force
F	magnitude of a force
F	restoring force
F_{B}	buoyant force

Symbol	Definition
F_{c}	centripetal force
F_{i}	force input
$\mathbf{F}_{\mathrm{net}}$	net force
F_{o}	force output
FM	frequency modulation
f	focal length
f	frequency
f_0	resonant frequency of a resistance, inductance, and capacitance (RLC) series circuit
f_0	threshold frequency for a particular material (photoelectric effect)

Symbol	Definition
f_1	fundamental
f_2	first overtone
f_3	second overtone
f_{B}	beat frequency
f_{k}	magnitude of kinetic friction
f_{s}	magnitude of static friction
G	gravitational constant
G	green quark color
G	antigreen (magenta) antiquark color

Symbol	Definition
g	acceleration due to gravity
g	gluons (carrier particles for strong nuclear force)
h	change in vertical position
h	height above some reference point
h	maximum height of a projectile
h	Planck's constant
hf	photon energy
h_{i}	height of the image
h_{o}	height of the object
I	electric current

Symbol	Definition
I	intensity
I	intensity of a transmitted wave
I	moment of inertia (also called rotational inertia)
I_0	intensity of a polarized wave before passing through a filter
I_{ave}	average intensity for a continuous sinusoidal electromagnetic wave
I_{rms}	average current
J	joule
J/Ψ	Joules/psi meson
K	kelvin
k	Boltzmann constant

Symbol	Definition
k	force constant of a spring
K_α	x rays created when an electron falls into an $n = 1$ shell vacancy from the $n = 3$ shell
K_β	x rays created when an electron falls into an $n = 2$ shell vacancy from the $n = 3$ shell
kcal	kilocalorie
KE	translational kinetic energy
$\mathrm{KE} + \mathrm{PE}$	mechanical energy
KE_e	kinetic energy of an ejected electron
$\mathrm{KE}_{\mathrm{rel}}$	relativistic kinetic energy
$\mathrm{KE}_{\mathrm{rot}}$	rotational kinetic energy
KE	thermal energy

Symbol	Definition
kg	kilogram (a fundamental SI unit of mass)
L	angular momentum
L	liter
L	magnitude of angular momentum
L	self-inductance
ℓ	angular momentum quantum number
L_α	x rays created when an electron falls into an $n=2$ shell from the $n=3$ shell
L_e	electron total family number
L_μ	muon family total number
L_τ	tau family total number

Symbol	Definition
L_{f}	heat of fusion
L_{f} and L_{v}	latent heat coefficients
$\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{orb}}$	orbital angular momentum
L_{s}	heat of sublimation
L_{v}	heat of vaporization
L_z	*z* - component of the angular momentum
M	angular magnification
M	mutual inductance
m	indicates metastable state
m	magnification

Symbol	Definition
m	mass
m	mass of an object as measured by a person at rest relative to the object
m	meter (a fundamental SI unit of length)
m	order of interference
m	overall magnification (product of the individual magnifications)
$m\left({}^{A}\mathrm{X}\right)$	atomic mass of a nuclide
MA	mechanical advantage
m_{e}	magnification of the eyepiece
m_e	mass of the electron
m_ℓ	angular momentum projection quantum number

Symbol	Definition
m_n	mass of a neutron
m_{o}	magnification of the objective lens
mol	mole
m_p	mass of a proton
m_{s}	spin projection quantum number
N	magnitude of the normal force
N	newton
$\mathbf{N}$	normal force
N	number of neutrons
n	index of refraction

Symbol	Definition
n	number of free charges per unit volume
N_{A}	Avogadro's number
N_{r}	Reynolds number
$\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$	newton-meter (work-energy unit)
$\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$	newtons times meters (SI unit of torque)
OE	other energy
P	power
P	power of a lens
P	pressure
$\mathbf{p}$	momentum

Symbol	Definition
p	momentum magnitude
p	relativistic momentum
$\mathbf{p}_{\mathrm{tot}}$	total momentum
$\mathbf{p}'_{\mathrm{tot}}$	total momentum some time later
P_{abs}	absolute pressure
P_{atm}	atmospheric pressure
P_{atm}	standard atmospheric pressure
PE	potential energy
$\mathrm{PE}_{\mathrm{el}}$	elastic potential energy
$\mathrm{PE}_{\mathrm{elec}}$	electric potential energy

Symbol	Definition
$\mathrm{PE_s}$	potential energy of a spring
P_{g}	gauge pressure
P_{in}	power consumption or input
P_{out}	useful power output going into useful work or a desired, form of energy
Q	latent heat
Q	net heat transferred into a system
Q	flow rate—volume per unit time flowing past a point
$+Q$	positive charge
$-Q$	negative charge

Symbol	Definition
q	electron charge
q_p	charge of a proton
q	test charge
QF	quality factor
R	activity, the rate of decay
R	radius of curvature of a spherical mirror
R	red quark color
R	antired (cyan) quark color
R	resistance
R	resultant or total displacement

Symbol	Definition
R	Rydberg constant
R	universal gas constant
r	distance from pivot point to the point where a force is applied
r	internal resistance
$r_{\perp}$	perpendicular lever arm
r	radius of a nucleus
r	radius of curvature
r	resistivity
r or rad	radiation dose unit
rem	roentgen equivalent man

Symbol	Definition
rad	radian
RBE	relative biological effectiveness
RC	resistor and capacitor circuit
rms	root mean square
r_n	radius of the *n*th H-atom orbit
R_p	total resistance of a parallel connection
R_s	total resistance of a series connection
R_s	Schwarzschild radius
S	entropy
$\mathbf{S}$	intrinsic spin (intrinsic angular momentum)

Symbol	Definition
S	magnitude of the intrinsic (internal) spin angular momentum
S	shear modulus
S	strangeness quantum number
s	quark flavor strange
s	second (fundamental SI unit of time)
s	spin quantum number
$\mathbf{s}$	total displacement
$\sec\theta$	secant
$\sin\theta$	sine
s_z	*z*-component of spin angular momentum

Symbol	Definition
T	period—time to complete one oscillation
T	temperature
T_c	critical temperature—temperature below which a material becomes a superconductor
T	tension
T	tesla (magnetic field strength *B*)
t	quark flavor top or truth
t	time
$t_{1/2}$	half-life—the time in which half of the original nuclei decay
$\tan\theta$	tangent
U	internal energy

Symbol	Definition
u	quark flavor up
u	unified atomic mass unit
$\mathbf{u}$	velocity of an object relative to an observer
$\mathbf{u}'$	velocity relative to another observer
V	electric potential
V	terminal voltage
V	volt (unit)
V	volume
$\mathbf{v}$	relative velocity between two observers
v	speed of light in a material

Symbol	Definition
$\mathbf{v}$	velocity
$\mathbf{v}$	average fluid velocity
$V_{\mathrm{B}} - V_{\mathrm{A}}$	change in potential
$\mathbf{v}_{\mathrm{d}}$	drift velocity
V_{p}	transformer input voltage
V_{rms}	rms voltage
V_{s}	transformer output voltage
$\mathbf{v}_{\mathrm{tot}}$	total velocity
v_{w}	propagation speed of sound or other wave
$\mathbf{v}_{\mathrm{w}}$	wave velocity

Symbol	Definition
W	work
W	net work done by a system
W	watt
w	weight
w_{fl}	weight of the fluid displaced by an object
W_{c}	total work done by all conservative forces
W_{nc}	total work done by all nonconservative forces
W_{out}	useful work output
X	amplitude
X	symbol for an element

Symbol	Definition
${}_{A}^{Z}X_{N}$	notation for a particular nuclide
x	deformation or displacement from equilibrium
x	displacement of a spring from its undeformed position
x	horizontal axis
X_{C}	capacitive reactance
X_{L}	inductive reactance
x_{rms}	root mean square diffusion distance
y	vertical axis
Y	elastic modulus or Young's modulus
Z	atomic number (number of protons in a nucleus)

Symbol	Definition
Z	impedance